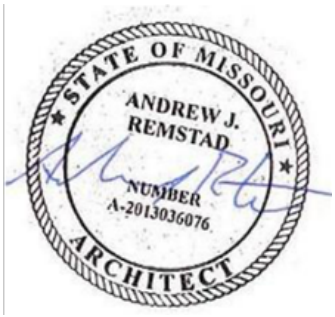
CONTRACT DOCUMENTS & TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Air Traffic Control Tower



Jefferson City Memorial Airport

Jefferson City, MO

JVIATION®

931Wildwood Drive, Suite 101
Jefferson City, MO 65101

JVIATION.COM

Issued for Bid
April 21 2024

SEAL PAGE

Project: JEF ATCT

1.1 DESIGN PROFESSIONALS OF RECORD

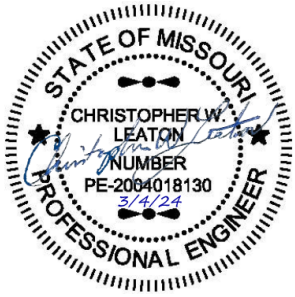
ARCHITECT

CIVIL ENGINEER

ELECTRICAL ENGINEER

MECHANICAL/PLUMBING ENGINEER

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER



CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

CONSTRUCT AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL TOWER

Schedule 1
(Base bid)- all Civil, site work, utilities, etc.
Schedule 2
All foundation work including the slab and all cast in place concrete
Schedule 3
All Precast concrete including all Tower Walls, floor slabs, stairs, catwalk, 1st floor bathroom hardened room. Will also include windows of tower and exit door of the tower to complete the building shell
Schedule 4
The entire base building: all structural and architectural elements
Schedule 5
The Control Cab and Roof including lightning protection and antennas
Schedule 6
All remaining interior work for the Tower including interior walls, finishes, flooring, insulation, doors, drop ceilings, furniture, casework, etc.
Schedule 7
All MEP including equipment, Telecomm, Fire (Splitting this up between base building and tower won't work if those get built separately)

MoDOT Project No. 24-040B-1

Jefferson City Memorial Airport

Jefferson City, Missouri

Sponsored By:

Jefferson City Airport Board

Federal Aviation Administration

Issued for Bid
April 21, 2024

JVIATION®
A WOOLPERT COMPANY
720 South Colorado Boulevard | Suite 1200-S | Glendale, CO | 80246
Main 303.524.3030
JVIATION.COM

REQUEST FOR BIDS/INVITATION FOR BIDS

Jefferson City Memorial Airport
Jefferson City, MO

Sealed bids will be received until 1:00 p.m., Tuesday, May 21, 2024, and then publicly opened and read by the City of Jefferson City at City Hall, for furnishing all labor, materials and equipment and performing all work necessary to construct an **Air Traffic Control Tower (ATCT).**

Schedule 1 (base bid) - all Civil, site work , and utilities.
Schedule 2 - All foundation work including the slab and all cast in place concrete
Schedule 3 - All Precast concrete including all Tower Walls, floor slabs, stairs, catwalk, 1st floor bathroom hardened room . Will also include windows of tower and exit door of the tower to complete the building shell.
Schedule 4 - The entire base building: all structural and architectural elements
Schedule 5 - The Control Cab and Roof including lightning protection and antennas
Schedule 6 - All remaining interior work for the Tower including interior walls, finishes, flooring, insulation, doors, drop ceilings, furniture, and casework.
Schedule 7 - All MEP including equipment , Telecomm, Fire
Schedule 8 - Demolition of the existing ATCT (the owner will remove any equipment we wish to salvage within 30 days of opening of the new tower)

Contract Documents. Plans may be obtained electronically at the following site: https://jeffersoncitymo.bonfirehub.com.

Pre-Bid Conference. The pre-bid conference for this project will be held at the Boone Bancroft Conference Room at City Hall, 320 E. McCarty Street, Jefferson City MO 65101 on Tuesday May 7th at 1:00 p.m. All bidders are required to examine the site to become familiar with all site conditions.

Bid Conditions. The bidder is required to provide all information as required within the Contract Documents. The bidder is required to bid on all items of every schedule or as otherwise detailed in the Instructions to Bidders.

Each proposal must be accompanied by a bid guaranty in the amount of five (5) percent of the total amount of the bid. The bid guaranty may be by certified check or bid bond made payable to City of Jefferson City.

Bids may be held by City of Jefferson City for a period not to exceed 120 calendar days from the date of the bid opening for the purpose of evaluating bids prior to award of contract.

The right is reserved, as City of Jefferson City may require, to reject any and all bids and to waive any informality in the bids received.

All questions regarding the bid are to be directed to Kevin Costello with Jviation, a Woolpert Company at (508)274-3468 or email Kevin.Costello@woolpert.com.

Construction for this project is expected to take 400 working days.

In accordance with the Davis-Bacon Act, and the Missouri Prevailing Wage Law, the Contractor will be required to comply with the wage and labor requirements and to pay minimum wages in accordance with the schedule of wage rates established by the United States Department of Labor and the Missouri Division of Labor Standards, respectively. The highest rate between the two (Federal and State) for each job classification shall be considered the prevailing wage.

Equal Employment Opportunity and Affirmative Action Requirement. The proposed contract is under and subject to 41 CFR Part 60-4 and Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, as amended, and to the equal opportunity clause and the Standard Federal Equal Employment Opportunity Construction Contract specifications including the goals and timetables for minority and female participation.

Title VI Solicitation Notice: The City of Jefferson City, in accordance with the provisions of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (78 Stat. 252, 42 U.S.C. §§ 2000d to 2000d-4) and the Regulations, hereby notifies all bidders that it will affirmatively ensure that any contract entered into pursuant to this advertisement, disadvantaged business enterprises will be afforded full and fair opportunity to submit bids in response to this invitation and no businesses will be discriminated against on the grounds of race, color, national origin (including limited English proficiency), creed, sex (including sexual orientation and gender identity), age, or disability in consideration for an award.

DBE Requirement.

"The requirements of 49 CFR part 26 apply to this contract. It is the policy of the Jefferson City to practice nondiscrimination based on race, color, sex, or national origin in the award or performance of this contract. The Owner encourages participation by all firms qualifying under this solicitation regardless of business size or ownership."

"Contractor shall provide a certified statement signed by the subcontractors, indicating actual amounts paid to the Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) subcontractors and/or suppliers that were used on the project through race neutral means."

FAA Buy American Preference

The Contractor certifies that its bid/offer is in compliance with 49 USC § 50101, BABA and other related Made in America Laws,1 U.S. statutes, guidance, and FAA policies, which provide that Federal funds may not be obligated unless all iron, steel and manufactured goods used in AIP funded projects are produced in the United States, unless the Federal Aviation Administration has issued a waiver for the product; the product is listed as an Excepted Article, Material Or Supply in Federal Acquisition Regulation subpart 25.108; or is included in the FAA Nationwide Buy American Waivers Issued list.

The bidder or offeror must complete and submit the certification of compliance with FAA's Buy American Preference, BABA and Made in America laws included herein with their bid or offer. The Airport Sponsor/Owner will reject as nonresponsive any bid or offer that does not include a completed certification of compliance with FAA's Buy American Preference and BABA.

The bidder or offeror certifies that all constructions materials, defined to mean an article, material, or supply other than an item of primarily iron or steel; a manufactured product; cement and cementitious materials; aggregates such as stone, sand, or gravel; or aggregate binding agents or additives that are or consist primarily of: non-ferrous metals; plastic and polymer-based products (including polyvinylchloride, composite building materials, and polymers used in fiber optic cables); glass (including optic glass); lumber; or drywall used in the project are manufactured in the U.S.

Trade Restriction Certification

[1] Per Executive Order 14005 "Made in America Laws" means all statutes, regulations, rules, and Executive Orders relating to federal financial assistance awards or federal procurement, including those that refer to "Buy America" or "Buy American," that require, or provide a preference for, the purchase or acquisition of goods, products, or materials produced in the United States, including iron, steel, and manufactured products offered in the United States.

By submission of an offer, the Offeror certifies that with respect to this solicitation and any resultant contract, the Offeror –

1) is not owned or controlled by one or more citizens of a foreign country included in the list of countries that discriminate against U.S. firms as published by the Office of the United States Trade Representative (USTR);

2) has not knowingly entered into any contract or subcontract for this project with a person that is a citizen or national of a foreign country included on the list of countries that discriminate against U.S. firms as published by the USTR; and

3) has not entered into any subcontract for any product to be used on the Federal project that is produced in a foreign country included on the list of countries that discriminate against U.S. firms published by the USTR.

This certification concerns a matter within the jurisdiction of an agency of the United States of America and the making of a false, fictitious, or fraudulent certification may render the maker subject to prosecution under Title 18 USC § 1001.

The Offeror/Contractor must provide immediate written notice to the Owner if the Offeror/Contractor learns that its certification or that of a subcontractor was erroneous when submitted or has become erroneous by reason of changed circumstances. The Contractor must require subcontractors provide immediate written notice to the Contractor if at any time it learns that its certification was erroneous by reason of changed circumstances.

Unless the restrictions of this clause are waived by the Secretary of Transportation in accordance with 49 CFR § 30.17, no contract shall be awarded to an Offeror or subcontractor:

1) who is owned or controlled by one or more citizens or nationals of a foreign country included on the list of countries that discriminate against U.S. firms published by the USTR; or
2) whose subcontractors are owned or controlled by one or more citizens or nationals of a foreign country on such USTR list; or
3) who incorporates in the public works project any product of a foreign country on such USTR list.

Nothing contained in the foregoing shall be construed to require establishment of a system of records in order to render, in good faith, the certification required by this provision. The knowledge and information of a contractor is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.

The Offeror agrees that, if awarded a contract resulting from this solicitation, it will incorporate this provision for certification without modification in all lower tier subcontracts. The Contractor may rely on the certification of a prospective subcontractor that it is not a firm from a foreign country included on the list of countries that discriminate against U.S. firms as published by USTR, unless the Offeror has knowledge that the certification is erroneous.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when making an award. If it is later determined that the Contractor or subcontractor knowingly rendered an

erroneous certification, the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) may direct through the Owner cancellation of the contract or subcontract for default at no cost to the Owner or the FAA.

Notice Of The Requirement For Affirmative Action To Ensure Equal Employment Opportunity

1. The Offeror's or Bidder's attention is called to the "Equal Opportunity Clause" and the "Standard Federal Equal Employment Opportunity Construction Contract Specifications" set forth herein.

2. The goals and timetables for minority and female participation, expressed in percentage terms for the Contractor's aggregate workforce in each trade on all construction work in the covered area, are as follows:

Timetables

Goals for female participation in each trade: 6.9%

TABLE 1

MISSOURI ECONOMIC AREA (by counties)	GOAL %
Cass, Clay, Jackson, Platte, Ray	12.7
Andrew, Buchannan	3.2
Atchison, Bates, Benton, Caldwell, Carroll, Clinton, Daviess, DeKalb, Gentry, Grundy, Harrison, Henry, Holt, Johnson, Lafayette, Livingston, Mercer, Nodaway, Pettis, Saline, Worth	10.0
Boone	6.3
Adair, Audrain, Callaway, Camden, Chariton, Cole, Cooper, Howard, Knox, Linn, Macon, Miller, Moniteau, Monroe, Morgan, Osage, Putnam, Randolph, Schuyler, Scotland, Shelby, Sullivan	4.0
Franklin, Jefferson, St. Charles, St. Louis	14.7
Bollinger, Butler, Cape Girardeau, Carter, Crawford, Dent, Gasconade, Iron, Lincoln, Madison, Maries, Mississippi, Montgomery, Perry, Phelps, Reynolds, Ripley, St. Francois, Ste. Genevieve, Scott, Stoddard, Warren, Washington, Wayne	11.4
Christian, Greene	2.0
Barry, Barton, Cedar, Dade, Dallas, Douglas, Hickory, Howell, Jasper, Laclede, Lawrence, McDonald, Newton, Oregon, Ozark, Polk, Pulaski, St. Clair, Shannon, Stone, Taney, Texas, Vernon, Webster, Wright	2.3
Lewis, Marion, Pike, Ralls	3.1
Clark	3.4
Dunklin, New Madrid, Pemiscot	26.5

These goals are applicable to all of the Contractor's construction work (whether or not it is Federal or federally assisted) performed in the covered area. If the Contractor performs construction work in a geographical area located outside of the covered area, it shall apply the goals established for such geographical area where the work is actually performed. With regard to this second area, the Contractor also is subject to the goals for both its federally involved and non-federally involved construction.

The Contractor's compliance with the Executive Order and the regulations in 41 CFR Part 60-4 shall be based on its implementation of the Equal Opportunity Clause, specific affirmative action

obligations required by the specifications set forth in 41 CFR 60-4.3(a) and its efforts to meet the goals. The hours of minority and female employment and training must be substantially uniform throughout the length of the contract, and in each trade, and the Contractor shall make a good faith effort to employ minorities and women evenly on each of its projects. The transfer of minority or female employees or trainees from Contractor to Contractor or from project to project for the sole purpose of meeting the Contractor's goals shall be a violation of the contract, the Executive Order and the regulations in 41 CFR Part 60-4. Compliance with the goals will be measured against the total work hours performed.

3. The Contractor shall provide written notification to the Director of the Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs (OFCCP) within 10 working days of award of any construction subcontract in excess of $10,000 at any tier for construction work under the contract resulting from this solicitation. The notification shall list the name, address, and telephone number of the subcontractor; employer identification number of the subcontractor; estimated dollar amount of the subcontract; estimated starting and completion dates of the subcontract; and the geographical area in which the subcontract is to be performed.

4. As used in this notice and in the contract resulting from this solicitation, the "covered area" is City of Jefferson City, Callaway, and state of Missouri.

Federal Fair Labor Standards Act (Federal Minimum Wage)

All contracts and subcontracts that result from this solicitation incorporate by reference the provisions of 29 CFR part 201, et seq, the Federal Fair Labor Standards Act (FLSA), with the same force and effect as if given in full text. The FLSA sets minimum wage, overtime pay, recordkeeping, and child labor standards for full and part-time workers.

The *Consultant* has full responsibility to monitor compliance to the referenced statute or regulation. The *Contractor* must address any claims or disputes that arise from this requirement directly with the U.S. Department of Labor – Wage and Hour Division.

Certification of Offeror/Bidder Regarding Debarment

By submitting a bid/proposal under this solicitation, the bidder or offeror certifies that neither it nor its principals are presently debarred or suspended by any Federal department or agency from participation in this transaction.

Other Federal Provisions Award of contract is also subject to the following Federal Provisions:

- Civil Rights – Title VI Assurances
- Lobbying Federal Employees
- Recovered Materials
- Other Federal Provisions included in Part A of the Special Provisions

BID DOCUMENTS & TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 1
NOTICE TO BIDDERS

Jefferson City Memorial Airport
Jefferson City, MO
State Block Grant Project No. Project No: 24-040B-1

Sealed bids will be received until 1:00 p.m., Tuesday, May 21, 2024, and then publicly opened and read by the City of Jefferson City at City Hall, for furnishing all labor, materials and equipment and performing all work necessary to

Schedule 1 (base bid) – all Civil, site work , and utilities.
Schedule 2 – All foundation work including the slab and all cast in place concrete
Schedule 3 – All Precast concrete including all Tower Walls, floor slabs, stairs, catwalk, 1st floor bathroom hardened room . Will also include windows of tower and exit door of the tower to complete the building shell.
Schedule 4 – The entire base building: all structural and architectural elements
Schedule 5 – The Control Cab and Roof including lightning protection and antennas
Schedule 6 – All remaining interior work for the Tower including interior walls, finishes, flooring, insulation, doors, drop ceilings, furniture, and casework.
Schedule 7 – All MEP including equipment , Telecomm, Fire
Schedule 8 – Demolition of the existing ATCT (the owner will remove any equipment we wish to salvage within 30 days of opening of the new tower)

Contract Documents. Plans may be obtained electronically at the following site: https://jeffersoncitymo.bonfirehub.com

Pre-Bid Conference. The pre-bid conference for this project will be held on Tuesday, May 7th at 1:00 p.m., at City Hall. All bidders are required to examine the site to become familiar with all site conditions.

Contract Work Items. This project will involve the following work items per lump sum by Schedule.

Contract Time. The owner has established a contract perform time of 400 working day(s) from the date of the Notice-to-Proceed. All project work shall be substantially completed within the stated timeframe. This project is subject to liquidated damages as prescribed in the project manual.

Bid Security. No bid will be considered unless accompanied by a certified check or cashier's check on any bank or trust company insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, payable to the Owner, for not less than five (5) percent of the total amount of the bid, or by a bid bond secured by an approved surety or sureties, payable to the City of Jefferson City, for not less than five (5) percent of the total amount of the bid.

Bonding Requirements. The successful bidder will be required to furnish separate performance and payment bonds each in an amount equal to 100% of the contract price at the time of contract execution.

Award of Contract. The Owner intends to award a contract resulting from this solicitation to the lowest, responsive, responsible bidder, whose offer, conforming to the solicitation, will be most advantageous to, and in the best interest of, the Owner, cost or price and other factors considered.

a. In addition to other factors, bid offers will be evaluated on the basis of advantages and disadvantages to the Owner that might result from offers received.

b. The Owner reserves the right to reject any or all proposals and to waive informalities and/or irregularities in the bid offer. Bids may be held by the owner for a period not to exceed 120

calendar days from the date of the bid opening for the purpose of conducting the bid evaluation.

c. Total bid will be evaluated and awarded as follows: It is the Owner's intent to award this bid based on the **TOTAL BASE BID FOR ALL ITEMS, split awards will not be made.**

d. The Owner will determine which Schedules and/or Bid Alternates will be awarded based on the received bid prices and available funding. The project award will be based on the low bid sum of the Schedules and Bid Alternates awarded by the Owner. Not all Schedules and/or Bid Alternates may be awarded. A combination of Schedules and Bid Alternates may be awarded, including only a single Schedule. The numbering of the Schedules or Bid Alternates does not necessarily indicate the order of award.

e. The project award is contingent on the availability of funding.

Federal Provision. This project is subject to the following Federal provisions, statutes and regulations;

Equal Employment Opportunity - Executive Order 11246 and 41 CFR Part 60: The Bidder's attention is called to the "Equal Opportunity Clause" and the "Standard Federal Equal Employment Opportunity Construction Contract Specifications" set forth within the supplementary provisions. The successful Bidder shall not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin. The Contractor will take affirmative action to ensure the applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment without regard to their race, color, religion, sex, or national origin.

Disadvantaged Business Enterprise – 49 CFR Part 26: The requirements of 49 CFR Part 26, Regulations of the U.S. Department of Transportation, apply to this contract. It is the policy of MoDOT and the **City of Jefferson City** to practice nondiscrimination based on race, color, sex or national origin in the award or performance of this contract. All firms qualifying under this solicitation are encouraged to submit bids/proposals regardless of their business size or ownership. Awards of this contract will be conditioned upon satisfying the requirements of this section. **DBE Requirement.**

"The requirements of 49 CFR part 26 apply to this contract. It is the policy of Jefferson City to practice nondiscrimination based on race, color, sex, or national origin in the award or performance of this contract. The Owner encourages participation by all firms qualifying under this solicitation regardless of business size or ownership."

"Contractor shall provide a certified statement signed by the subcontractors, indicating actual amounts paid to the Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) subcontractors and/or suppliers that were used on the project through race neutral means."

The apparent successful competitor will be required to submit the following information as a condition of bid responsiveness: (1) the names and addresses of DBE firms that will participate in the contract; (2) a description of the work that each DBE firm will perform; (3) the dollar amount of the participation of each DBE firm participating; (4) written statement from bidder that attests their commitment to use the DBE firm(s) listed under (1) above to meet the owner's project goal; and (5) if the contract goal is not met, evidence of good faith efforts undertaken by the bidder, as described in Appendix A to 49 CFR Part 26.

The apparent successful competitor must provide written confirmation of participation from each of the DBE firms listed in their commitment with the proposal documents as a condition of bid responsiveness.

Davis-Bacon Act, as amended – 29 CFR Part 5: The Contractor is required to comply with wage and labor provisions and to pay minimum wages in accordance with the current schedule of wage rates established by the United States Department of Labor included in the supplementary provisions.

In addition, the contractor will also be required to comply with the wage and labor requirements and pay minimum wages in accordance with the schedule of wage rates established by the Missouri Division of Labor Standards included in the Supplementary Provisions.

The highest rate between the two (Federal and State) for each job classification shall be considered the prevailing wage.

Additional Provisions: Modification to the project documents may only be made by written addendum by the Owner or Owner's authorized Representative.

The proposal must be made on the forms provided within the bound project manual. Bidders must supply all required information prior to the time of bid opening.

Additional Federal provisions can be found in Section 4 of this document.

SECTION 2
INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

This section contains excerpts of the bidding requirements from Section 20 of the General Provisions. The bidder's attention is directed to Section 20 for complete details.

1. **THE EXECUTED PROPOSAL FORM MUST BE SUBMITTED WITH EACH PAGE FROM SECTION B-1 THROUGH B. EACH FORM MUST BE COMPLETELY FILLED OUT.**

2. The apparent low bidder shall submit "evidence of competency" and "evidence of financial responsibility" to the owner with the bid proposal in accordance with Section 20-02 of the General Provisions. In addition, the resumes of all key personnel shall be provided with the bid proposal detailing experience on similar airfield construction projects.

3. Each bidder shall certify in the Proposal Form at the time of bid submittal that they acknowledge receipt of all issued addenda.

4. No bid will be considered unless accompanied by a certified check or cashier's check on any bank or trust company insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, payable to the owner, for not less than five (5) percent of the amount of the bid, or by a bid bond secured by an approved surety or sureties (licensed to conduct surety business in the state of Missouri), payable to the owner, for not less than five (5) percent of the amount of the bid.

5. Proposals shall be sent to arrive at the time and date specified in Section 1, Notice to Bidders. Proposals received after the specified time and date will not receive consideration and will be returned unopened. Bidders are encouraged to submit bids electronically through Bonfire (https://jeffersoncitymo.bonfirehub.com) or may be submitted hard-copy to City of Jefferson, Purchasing – Room 202, 320 E McCarty St, Jefferson City, MO. Prior to submittal, the proposal shall be placed in a sealed opaque envelope and addressed to:
   Boone Bancroft Conference Room at City Hall

   The upper left hand corner of the envelope should be marked as follows:
   Sealed Bid Proposal
   Bid of NAME OF BIDDER
   For construction improvements at Jefferson City Memorial Airport
   State Block Grant Project No: 24-040B-1
   To be opened at: 1:00 p.m., Tuesday, May 21, 2024

For a modification to a previously submitted proposal, insert "Modification to Proposal" in place of "Sealed Bid Proposal".

6. The Owner reserves the right to reject any or all bids, as determined to be in the best interest of the Owner. Causes for rejection of proposals include but are not limited to:

   - Submittal of more than one proposal from the same partnership, firm or corporation;
   - Failure by Bidder to submit the bid prior to the stated time and date for receipt of bids;
   - Failure by Bidder to furnish satisfactory bid guarantee;
   - Failure by Bidder to provide all information required of the bid forms;
   - Failure by Bidder to comply with the requirements of bid instructions;
   - Failure by Bidder to complete the applicable Buy American Certification;
   - Failure by the Bidder to demonstrate good faith efforts in obtaining participation by certified DBE firms;
   - Determination by the Owner that Bidder is not qualified to accomplish the project work;

- Determination by the Owner that the Bidder has placed conditions on or qualified their proposal;
- Discovery of any alteration, interlineations or erasure of any project requirement by the Bidder;
- Inclusion of the Bidder as an Excluded Party in the System for Award Management;
- Evidence of collusion among bidders.

7. Construction and building materials sold to the contractors and subcontractors for use on public works owned by City of Jefferson City are exempt from State Sales and Use Taxes. However, such materials will be subject to any Sales and Use Taxes imposed by local cities and counties. This change in the State Tax Law has no effect of Sales and Use Taxes imposed by other local taxing authorities. Contractor shall provide proof of exemption prior to commencing work.

SECTION 3

PART 1 – GENERAL CONTRACT PROVISIONS

SECTION 10	**DEFINITION OF TERMS**
SECTION 20	**PROPOSAL REQUIREMENTS AND CONDITIONS**
SECTION 30	**AWARD AND EXECUTION OF CONTRACT**
SECTION 40	**SCOPE OF WORK**
SECTION 50	**CONTROL OF WORK**
SECTION 60	**CONTROL OF MATERIALS**
SECTION 70	**LEGAL RELATIONS AND RESPONSIBLITY TO PUBLIC**
SECTION 80	**PROSECUTION AND PROGRESS**
SECTION 90	**MEASUREMENT OF PAYMENT**

PART 2 - GENERAL CONSTRUCTION ITEMS

ITEM C-100	**CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL PROGRAM (CQCP)**
ITEM C-102	**TEMPORARY AIR AND WATER POLLUTION, SOIL EROSION, AND SILT CONTROL**
ITEM C-105	**MOBILIZATION**
ITEM C-110	**METHOD OF ESTIMATING PERCENTAGE OF MATERIAL WITHIN SPECIFICATION LIMITS (PWL)**

SECTION 10
DEFINITION OF TERMS

Whenever the following terms are used in these specifications, in the contract, or in any documents or other instruments pertaining to construction where these specifications govern, the intent and meaning shall be interpreted as follows:

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
10-01	**AASHTO**	The American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials.
10-02	**Access Road**	The right-of-way, the roadway and all improvements constructed thereon connecting the airport to a public roadway.
10-03	**Advertisement**	A public announcement, as required by local law, inviting bids for work to be performed and materials to be furnished.
10-04	**Airport**	Airport means an area of land or water which is used or intended to be used for the landing and takeoff of aircraft; an appurtenant area used or intended to be used for airport buildings or other airport facilities or rights of way; airport buildings and facilities located in any of these areas, and a heliport.
10-05	**Airport Improvement Program (AIP)**	A grant-in-aid program, administered by the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA).
10-06	**Air Operations Area (AOA)**	The term air operations area (AOA) shall mean any area of the airport used or intended to be used for the landing, takeoff, or surface maneuvering of aircraft. An air operation area shall include such paved or unpaved areas that are used or intended to be used for the unobstructed movement of aircraft in addition to its associated runway, taxiway, or apron.
10-07	**Apron**	Area where aircraft are parked, unloaded or loaded, fueled and/or serviced.
10-08	**ASTM International (ASTM)**	Formerly known as the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).
10-09	**Award**	The Owner's notice to the successful bidder of the acceptance of the submitted bid.
10-10	**Bidder**	Any individual, partnership, firm, or corporation, acting directly or through a duly authorized representative, who submits a proposal for the work contemplated.
10-11	**Building Area**	An area on the airport to be used, considered, or intended to be used for airport buildings or other airport facilities or rights-of-way together with all airport buildings and facilities located thereon.
10-12	**Calendar Day**	Every day shown on the calendar.
10-13	**Certificate of Analysis (COA)**	The COA is the manufacturer's Certificate of Compliance (COC) including all applicable test results required by the specifications.
10-14	**Certificate of Compliance (COC)**	The manufacturer's certification stating that materials or assemblies furnished fully comply with the requirements of the contract. The certificate shall be signed by the manufacturer's authorized representative.
10-15	**Change Order**	A written order to the Contractor covering changes in the plans, specifications, or proposal quantities and establishing the basis

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
		of payment and contract time adjustment, if any, for work within the scope of the contract and necessary to complete the project.
10-16	**Contract**	A written agreement between the Owner and the Contractor that establishes the obligations of the parties including but not limited to performance of work, furnishing of labor, equipment and materials and the basis of payment. The awarded contract includes but may not be limited to: Advertisement, Contract form, Proposal, Performance bond, payment bond, General provisions, certifications and representations, Technical Specifications, Plans, Supplemental Provisions, standards incorporated by reference and issued addenda.
10-17	**Contract Item (Pay Item)**	A specific unit of work for which a price is provided in the contract.
10-18	**Contract Time**	The number of calendar days or working days, stated in the proposal, allowed for completion of the contract, including authorized time extensions. If a calendar date of completion is stated in the proposal, in lieu of a number of calendar or working days, the contract shall be completed by that date.
10-19	**Contractor**	The individual, partnership, firm, or corporation primarily liable for the acceptable performance of the work contracted and for the payment of all legal debts pertaining to the work who acts directly or through lawful agents or employees to complete the contract work.
10-20	**Contractors Quality Control (QC) Facilities**	The Contractor's QC facilities in accordance with the Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP).
10-21	**Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP)**	Details the methods and procedures that will be taken to assure that all materials and completed construction required by the contract conform to contract plans, technical specifications and other requirements, whether manufactured by the Contractor, or procured from subcontractors or vendors.
10-22	**Control Strip**	A demonstration by the Contractor that the materials, equipment, and construction processes results in a product meeting the requirements of the specification.
10-23	**Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP)**	The overall plan for safety and phasing of a construction project developed by the airport operator, or developed by the airport operator's consultant and approved by the airport operator. It is included in the invitation for bids and becomes part of the project specifications.
10-24	**Drainage System**	The system of pipes, ditches, and structures by which surface or subsurface waters are collected and conducted from the airport area.
10-25	**Engineer**	The individual, partnership, firm, or corporation duly authorized by the Owner to be responsible for engineering, inspection, and/or observation of the contract work and acting directly or through an authorized representative.
10-26	**Equipment**	All machinery, together with the necessary supplies for upkeep and maintenance; and all tools and apparatus necessary for the proper construction and acceptable completion of the work.

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
10-27	**Extra Work**	An item of work not provided for in the awarded contract as previously modified by change order or supplemental agreement, but which is found by the Owner's Engineer or Resident Project Representative (RPR) to be necessary to complete the work within the intended scope of the contract as previously modified.
10-28	**FAA**	The Federal Aviation Administration. When used to designate a person, FAA shall mean the Administrator or their duly authorized representative.
10-29	**Federal Specifications**	The federal specifications and standards, commercial item descriptions, and supplements, amendments, and indices prepared and issued by the General Services Administration.
10-30	**Force Account**	**a.** Contract Force Account - A method of payment that addresses extra work performed by the Contractor on a time and material basis. **b.** Owner Force Account - Work performed for the project by the Owner's employees.
10-31	**Intention of Terms**	Whenever, in these specifications or on the plans, the words "directed," "required," "permitted," "ordered," "designated," "prescribed," or words of like import are used, it shall be understood that the direction, requirement, permission, order, designation, or prescription of the Engineer and/or Resident Project Representative (RPR) is intended; and similarly, the words "approved," "acceptable," "satisfactory," or words of like import, shall mean approved by, or acceptable to, or satisfactory to the Engineer and/or RPR, subject in each case to the final determination of the Owner. Any reference to a specific requirement of a numbered paragraph of the contract specifications or a cited standard shall be interpreted to include all general requirements of the entire section, specification item, or cited standard that may be pertinent to such specific reference.
10-32	**Lighting**	A system of fixtures providing or controlling the light sources used on or near the airport or within the airport buildings. The field lighting includes all luminous signals, markers, floodlights, and illuminating devices used on or near the airport or to aid in the operation of aircraft landing at, taking off from, or taxiing on the airport surface.
10-33	**Major and Minor Contract Items**	A major contract item shall be any item that is listed in the proposal, the total cost of which is equal to or greater than 20% of the total amount of the award contract. All other items shall be considered minor contract items.
10-34	**Materials**	Any substance specified for use in the construction of the contract work.
10-35	**Modification of Standards (MOS)**	Any deviation from standard specifications applicable to material and construction methods in accordance with FAA Order 5300.1.

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
10-36	**Notice to Proceed (NTP)**	A written notice to the Contractor to begin the actual contract work on a previously agreed to date. If applicable, the Notice to Proceed shall state the date on which the contract time begins.
10-37	**Owner**	The term "Owner" shall mean the party of the first part or the contracting agency signatory to the contract. Where the term "Owner" is capitalized in this document, it shall mean airport Sponsor only. The Owner for this project is City of Jefferson City.
10-38	**Passenger Facility Charge (PFC)**	Per 14 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 158 and 49 United States Code (USC) § 40117, a PFC is a charge imposed by a public agency on passengers enplaned at a commercial service airport it controls.
10-39	**Pavement Structure**	The combined surface course, base course(s), and subbase course(s), if any, considered as a single unit.
10-40	**Payment bond**	The approved form of security furnished by the Contractor and their own surety as a guaranty that the Contractor will pay in full all bills and accounts for materials and labor used in the construction of the work.
10-41	**Performance bond**	The approved form of security furnished by the Contractor and their own surety as a guaranty that the Contractor will complete the work in accordance with the terms of the contract.
10-42	**Plans**	The official drawings or exact reproductions which show the location, character, dimensions and details of the airport and the work to be done and which are to be considered as a part of the contract, supplementary to the specifications. Plans may also be referred to as 'contract drawings.'
10-43	**Project**	The agreed scope of work for accomplishing specific airport development with respect to a particular airport.
10-44	**Proposal**	The written offer of the bidder (when submitted on the approved proposal form) to perform the contemplated work and furnish the necessary materials in accordance with the provisions of the plans and specifications.
10-45	**Proposal guaranty**	The security furnished with a proposal to guarantee that the bidder will enter into a contract if their own proposal is accepted by the Owner.
10-46	**Quality Assurance (QA)**	Owner's responsibility to assure that construction work completed complies with specifications for payment.
10-47	**Quality Control (QC)**	Contractor's responsibility to control material(s) and construction processes to complete construction in accordance with project specifications.
10-48	**Quality Assurance (QA) Inspector**	An authorized representative of the Engineer and/or Resident Project Representative (RPR) assigned to make all necessary inspections, observations, tests, and/or observation of tests of the work performed or being performed, or of the materials furnished or being furnished by the Contractor.
10-49	**Quality Assurance (QA) Laboratory**	The official quality assurance testing laboratories of the Owner or such other laboratories as may be designated by the Engineer or RPR. May also be referred to as Engineer's, Owner's, or QA Laboratory.
10-50	**Resident Project Representative (RPR)**	The individual, partnership, firm, or corporation duly authorized by the Owner to be responsible for all necessary inspections,

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
		observations, tests, and/or observations of tests of the contract work performed or being performed, or of the materials furnished or being furnished by the Contractor, and acting directly or through an authorized representative.
10-51	**Runway**	The area on the airport prepared for the landing and takeoff of aircraft.
10-52	**Runway Safety Area (RSA)**	A defined surface surrounding the runway prepared or suitable for reducing the risk of damage to aircraft. See the construction safety and phasing plan (CSPP) for limits of the RSA.
10-53	**Safety Plan Compliance Document (SPCD)**	Details how the Contractor will comply with the CSPP.
10-54	**Specifications**	A part of the contract containing the written directions and requirements for completing the contract work. Standards for specifying materials or testing which are cited in the contract specifications by reference shall have the same force and effect as if included in the contract physically.
10-55	**Sponsor**	A Sponsor is defined in 49 USC § 47102(24) as a public agency that submits to the FAA for an AIP grant; or a private Owner of a public-use airport that submits to the FAA an application for an AIP grant for the airport.
10-56	**Structures**	Airport facilities such as bridges; culverts; catch basins, inlets, retaining walls, cribbing; storm and sanitary sewer lines; water lines; underdrains; electrical ducts, manholes, handholes, lighting fixtures and bases; transformers; navigational aids; buildings; vaults; and, other manmade features of the airport that may be encountered in the work and not otherwise classified herein.
10-57	**Subgrade**	The soil that forms the pavement foundation.
10-58	**Superintendent**	The Contractor's executive representative who is present on the work during progress, authorized to receive and fulfill instructions from the RPR, and who shall supervise and direct the construction.
10-59	**Supplemental Agreement**	A written agreement between the Contractor and the Owner that establishes the basis of payment and contract time adjustment, if any, for the work affected by the supplemental agreement. A supplemental agreement is required if: (1) in scope work would increase or decrease the total amount of the awarded contract by more than 25%: (2) in scope work would increase or decrease the total of any major contract item by more than 25%; (3) work that is not within the scope of the originally awarded contract; or (4) adding or deleting of a major contract item.
10-60	**Surety**	The corporation, partnership, or individual, other than the Contractor, executing payment or performance bonds that are furnished to the Owner by the Contractor.
10-61	**Taxilane**	A taxiway designed for low speed movement of aircraft between aircraft parking areas and terminal areas.
10-62	**Taxiway**	The portion of the air operations area of an airport that has been designated by competent airport authority for movement of aircraft to and from the airport's runways, aircraft parking areas, and terminal areas.

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
10-63	**Taxiway/Taxilane Safety Area (TSA)**	A defined surface alongside the taxiway prepared or suitable for reducing the risk of damage to an aircraft. See the construction safety and phasing plan (CSPP) for limits of the TSA.
10-64	**Work**	The furnishing of all labor, materials, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary or convenient to the Contractor's performance of all duties and obligations imposed by the contract, plans, and specifications.
10-65	**Working day**	A working day shall be any day other than a legal holiday, Saturday, or Sunday on which the normal working forces of the Contractor may proceed with regular work for at least six (6) hours toward completion of the contract. When work is suspended for causes beyond the Contractor's control, it will not be counted as a working day. Saturdays, Sundays and holidays on which the Contractor's forces engage in regular work will be considered as working days.
10-66	**Owner Defined terms**	None

END OF SECTION 10

SECTION 20
PROPOSAL REQUIREMENTS AND CONDITIONS

20-01 ADVERTISEMENT (Notice to Bidders). This project has been advertised on the following dates:

Jefferson City News Tribune: March 10th 2024
Home - Jviation Bid Site: March 10th 2024
https://www.modot.org/projects-be-let-others): March 10th 2024

20-02 QUALIFICATION OF BIDDERS. Each bidder shall submit evidence of competency and evidence of financial responsibility to perform the work to the Owner at the time of bid opening.

Evidence of competency, unless otherwise specified, shall consist of statements covering the bidder's past experience on similar work, and a list of equipment and a list of key personnel that would be available for the work.

Each bidder shall furnish the Owner satisfactory evidence of their financial responsibility. Evidence of financial responsibility, unless otherwise specified, shall consist of a confidential statement or report of the bidder's financial resources and liabilities as of the last calendar year or the bidder's last fiscal year. Such statements or reports shall be certified by a public accountant. At the time of submitting such financial statements or reports, the bidder shall further certify whether their financial responsibility is approximately the same as stated or reported by the public accountant. If the bidder's financial responsibility has changed, the bidder shall qualify the public accountant's statement or report to reflect the bidder's true financial condition at the time such qualified statement or report is submitted to the Owner.

Unless otherwise specified, a bidder may submit evidence that they are prequalified with the State Highway Division and are on the current "bidder's list" of the state in which the proposed work is located. Evidence of State Highway Division prequalification may be submitted as evidence of financial responsibility in lieu of the certified statements or reports specified above.

20-03 CONTENTS OF PROPOSAL FORMS. The Owner's proposal forms state the location and description of the proposed construction; the place, date, and time of opening of the proposals; and the estimated quantities of the various items of work to be performed and materials to be furnished for which unit bid prices are asked. The proposal form states the time in which the work must be completed, and the amount of the proposal guaranty that must accompany the proposal. The Owner will accept only those Proposals properly executed on physical forms or electronic forms provided by the Owner. Bidder actions that may cause the Owner to deem a proposal irregular are given in paragraph 20-09, *IRREGULAR PROPOSALS*.

A prebid conference on Thursday Feb 29th at 1:00 p.m., at City Hall is required on this project to discuss as a minimum, the following items: material requirements; submittals; Quality Control/Quality Assurance requirements; the construction safety and phasing plan including airport access and staging areas; and unique airfield paving construction requirements.

20-04 ISSUANCE OF PROPOSAL FORMS. The Owner reserves the right to refuse to issue a proposal form to a prospective bidder should such bidder be in default for any of the following reasons:

a. Failure to comply with any prequalification regulations of the Owner, if such regulations are cited, or otherwise included, in the proposal as a requirement for bidding.

b. Failure to pay, or satisfactorily settle, all bills due for labor and materials on former contracts in force with the Owner at the time the Owner issues the proposal to a prospective bidder.

c. Documented record of Contractor default under previous contracts with the Owner.

d. Documented record of unsatisfactory work on previous contracts with the Owner.

20-05 INTERPRETATION OF ESTIMATED PROPOSAL QUANTITIES. An estimate of quantities of work to be done and materials to be furnished under these specifications is given in the proposal. It is the result of careful calculations and is believed to be correct. It is given only as a basis for comparison of proposals and the award of the contract. The Owner does not expressly, or by implication, agree that the actual quantities involved will correspond exactly therewith; nor shall the bidder plead misunderstanding or deception because of such estimates of quantities, or of the character, location, or other conditions pertaining to the work. Payment to the Contractor will be made only for the actual quantities of work performed or materials furnished in accordance with the plans and specifications. It is understood that the quantities may be increased or decreased as hereinafter provided in the Section 40, paragraph 40-02, *ALTERATION OF WORK AND QUANTITIES*, without in any way invalidating the unit bid prices.

20-06 EXAMINATION OF PLANS, SPECIFICATIONS, AND SITE. The bidder is expected to carefully examine the site of the proposed work, the proposal, plans specifications, and contract forms. Bidders shall satisfy themselves as to the character, quality, and quantities of work to be performed, materials to be furnished, and as to the requirements of the proposed contract. The submission of a proposal shall be prima facie evidence that the bidder has made such examination and is satisfied as to the conditions to be encountered in performing the work and as to the requirements of the proposed contract, plans, and specifications.

[Boring logs and other records of subsurface investigations and tests are available for inspection of bidders. It is understood and agreed that such subsurface information, whether included in the plans, specifications, or otherwise made available to the bidder, was obtained and is intended for the Owner's design and estimating purposes only. Such information has been made available for the convenience of all bidders. It is further understood and agreed that each bidder is solely responsible for all assumptions, deductions, or conclusions which the bidder may make or obtain from his or her examination of the boring logs and other records of subsurface investigations and tests that are furnished by the Owner.]

20-07 PREPARATION OF PROPOSAL. The bidder shall submit his or her proposal on the forms furnished by the Owner. All blank spaces in the proposal forms, unless explicitly stated otherwise, must be correctly filled in where indicated for each and every item for which a quantity is given. The bidder shall state the price (written in ink or typed) both in words and numerals which they propose to do for each pay item furnished in the proposal. In case of conflict between words and numerals, the words, unless obviously incorrect, shall govern.

****

Prices should generally be written in whole dollars and cents. The extended total amount of each item should not be rounded.

****

The bidder shall correctly sign the proposal in ink. If the proposal is made by an individual, their name and post office address must be shown. If made by a partnership, the name and post office address of each member of the partnership must be shown. If made by a corporation, the person signing the proposal shall give the name of the state where the corporation was chartered and the name, titles, and business address of the president, secretary, and the treasurer. Anyone signing a proposal as an agent shall file evidence of their authority to do so and that the signature is binding upon the firm or corporation.

20-08 RESPONSIVE AND RESPONSIBLE BIDDER. A responsive bid conforms to all significant terms and conditions contained in the Owner's invitation for bid. It is the Owner's responsibility to decide if the exceptions taken by a bidder to the solicitation are material or not and the extent of deviation it is willing to accept.

A responsible bidder has the ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of a proposed procurement, as defined in 2 CFR § 200.318(h). This includes such matters as Contractor integrity, compliance with public policy, record of past performance, and financial and technical resources.

20-09 IRREGULAR PROPOSALS. Proposals shall be considered irregular for the following reasons:

a. If the proposal is on a form other than that furnished by the Owner, or if the Owner's form is altered, or if any part of the proposal form is detached.

b. If there are unauthorized additions, conditional or alternate pay items, or irregularities of any kind that make the proposal incomplete, indefinite, or otherwise ambiguous.

c. If the proposal does not contain a unit price for each pay item listed in the proposal, except in the case of authorized alternate pay items, for which the bidder is not required to furnish a unit price.

d. If the proposal contains unit prices that are obviously unbalanced.

e. If the proposal is not accompanied by the proposal guaranty specified by the Owner.

f. If the applicable Disadvantaged Business Enterprise information is incomplete.

The Owner reserves the right to reject any irregular proposal and the right to waive technicalities if such waiver is in the best interest of the Owner and conforms to local laws and ordinances pertaining to the letting of construction contracts.

20-10 BID GUARANTEE. Each separate proposal shall be accompanied by a bid bond, certified check, or other specified acceptable collateral, in the amount specified in the proposal form. Such bond, check, or collateral shall be made payable to the Owner.

20-11 DELIVERY OF PROPOSAL. Each proposal submitted shall be placed in a sealed envelope plainly marked with the project number, location of airport, and name and business address of the bidder on the outside. When sent by mail, preferably registered, the sealed proposal, marked as indicated above, should be enclosed in an additional envelope. No proposal will be considered unless received at the place specified in the advertisement or as modified by Addendum before the time specified for opening all bids. Proposals received after the bid opening time shall be returned to the bidder unopened.

20-12 WITHDRAWAL OR REVISION OF PROPOSALS. A bidder may withdraw or revise (by withdrawal of one proposal and submission of another) a proposal provided that the bidder's request for withdrawal is received by the Owner by email before the time specified for opening bids. Revised proposals must be received at the place specified in the advertisement before the time specified for opening all bids.

20-13 PUBLIC OPENING OF PROPOSALS. Proposals shall be opened, and read, publicly at the time and place specified in the advertisement. Bidders, their authorized agents, and other interested persons are invited to attend. Proposals that have been withdrawn (by written or telegraphic request) or received after the time specified for opening bids shall be returned to the bidder unopened.

20-14 DISQUALIFICATION OF BIDDERS. A bidder shall be considered disqualified for any of the following reasons:

a. Submitting more than one proposal from the same partnership, firm, or corporation under the same or different name.

b. Evidence of collusion among bidders. Bidders participating in such collusion shall be disqualified as bidders for any future work of the Owner until any such participating bidder has been reinstated by the Owner as a qualified bidder.

c. If the bidder is considered to be in "default" for any reason specified in the paragraph 20-04, *ISSUANCE OF PROPOSAL FORMS*, of this section.

20-15 Discrepancies and Omissions. A Bidder who discovers discrepancies or omissions with the project bid documents shall immediately notify the Owner's Engineer of the matter. A bidder that has doubt as to the true meaning of a project requirement may submit to the Owner's Engineer a written request for interpretation no later than **[** 7**]** days prior to bid opening.

Any interpretation of the project bid documents by the Owner's Engineer will be by written addendum issued by the Owner. The Owner will not consider any instructions, clarifications or interpretations of the bidding documents in any manner other than written addendum.

END OF SECTION 20

SECTION 30
AWARD AND EXECUTION OF CONTRACT

30-01 CONSIDERATION OF PROPOSALS. After the proposals are publicly opened and read, they will be compared on the basis of the summation of the products obtained by multiplying the estimated quantities shown in the proposal by the unit bid prices. If a bidder's proposal contains a discrepancy between unit bid prices written in words and unit bid prices written in numbers, the unit price written in words shall govern.

Until the award of a contract is made, the Owner reserves the right to reject a bidder's proposal for any of the following reasons:

a. If the proposal is irregular as specified in the Section 20, paragraph 20-09, *IRREGULAR PROPOSALS*.

b. If the bidder is disqualified for any of the reasons specified in the section 20, paragraph 20-14, *DISQUALIFICATION OF BIDDERS*.

In addition, until the award of a contract is made, the Owner reserves the right to reject any or all proposals, waive technicalities, if such waiver is in the best interest of the Owner and is in conformance with applicable state and local laws or regulations pertaining to the letting of construction contracts; advertise for new proposals; or proceed with the work otherwise. All such actions shall promote the Owner's best interests.

30-02 AWARD OF CONTRACT. The award of a contract, if it is to be awarded, shall be made within 120 calendar days of the date specified for publicly opening proposals, unless otherwise specified herein.

If the Owner elects to proceed with an award of contract, the Owner will make award to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming with all the material terms and conditions of the bid documents, is the lowest in price.

30-03 CANCELLATION OF AWARD. The Owner reserves the right to cancel the award without liability to the bidder, except return of proposal guaranty, at any time before a contract has been fully executed by all parties and is approved by the Owner in accordance with the paragraph 30-07, *APPROVAL OF CONTRACT*.

30-04 RETURN OF PROPOSAL GUARANTY. All proposal guaranties, except those of the two lowest bidders, will be returned immediately after the Owner has made a comparison of bids as specified in the paragraph 30-01, *CONSIDERATION OF PROPOSALS*. Proposal guaranties of the two lowest bidders will be retained by the Owner until such time as an award is made, at which time, the unsuccessful bidder's proposal guaranty will be returned. The successful bidder's proposal guaranty will be returned as soon as the Owner receives the contract bonds as specified in the paragraph 30-05, *REQUIREMENTS OF CONTRACT BONDS*.

30-05 REQUIREMENTS OF CONTRACT BONDS. At the time of the execution of the contract, the successful bidder shall furnish the Owner a surety bond or bonds that have been fully executed by the bidder and the surety guaranteeing the performance of the work and the payment of all legal debts that may be incurred by reason of the Contractor's performance of the work. The surety and the form of the bond or bonds shall be acceptable to the Owner. Unless otherwise specified in this subsection, the surety bond or bonds shall be in a sum equal to the full amount of the contract.

30-06 EXECUTION OF CONTRACT. The successful bidder shall sign (execute) the necessary agreements for entering into the contract and return the signed contract to the Owner, along with the fully executed surety bond or bonds specified in the paragraph 30-05, *REQUIREMENTS OF CONTRACT BONDS* of this section, within 30 calendar days from the date mailed or otherwise delivered to the successful bidder.

30-07 APPROVAL OF CONTRACT. Upon receipt of the contract and contract bond or bonds that have been executed by the successful bidder, the Owner shall complete the execution of the contract in accordance with local laws or ordinances, and return the fully executed contract to the Contractor. Delivery of the fully executed contract

to the Contractor shall constitute the Owner's approval to be bound by the successful bidder's proposal and the terms of the contract.

30-08 FAILURE TO EXECUTE CONTRACT. Failure of the successful bidder to execute the contract and furnish an acceptable surety bond or bonds within the period specified in paragraph 30-06, *EXECUTION OF CONTRACT*, of this section shall be just cause for cancellation of the award and forfeiture of the proposal guaranty, not as a penalty, but as liquidation of damages to the Owner.

END OF SECTION 30

Intentionally Left Blank

SECTION 40
SCOPE OF WORK

40-01 INTENT OF CONTRACT. The intent of the contract is to provide for construction and completion, in every detail, of the work described. It is further intended that the Contractor shall furnish all labor, materials, equipment, tools, transportation, and supplies required to complete the work in accordance with the plans, specifications, and terms of the contract.

40-02 ALTERATION OF WORK AND QUANTITIES. The Owner reserves the right to make such changes in quantities and work as may be necessary or desirable to complete, in a satisfactory manner, the original intended work. Unless otherwise specified in the Contract, the Owner's Engineer or RPR shall be and is hereby authorized to make, in writing, such in-scope alterations in the work and variation of quantities as may be necessary to complete the work, provided such action does not represent a significant change in the character of the work.

For purpose of this section, a significant change in character of work means: any change that is outside the current contract scope of work; any change (increase or decrease) in the total contract cost by more than 25%; or any change in the total cost of a major contract item by more than 25%.

Work alterations and quantity variances that do not meet the definition of significant change in character of work shall not invalidate the contract nor release the surety. Contractor agrees to accept payment for such work alterations and quantity variances in accordance with Section 90, paragraph 90-03, *COMPENSATION FOR ALTERED QUANTITIES*.

Should the value of altered work or quantity variance meet the criteria for significant change in character of work, such altered work and quantity variance shall be covered by a supplemental agreement. Supplemental agreements shall also require consent of the Contractor's surety and separate performance and payment bonds. If the Owner and the Contractor are unable to agree on a unit adjustment for any contract item that requires a supplemental agreement, the Owner reserves the right to terminate the contract with respect to the item and make other arrangements for its completion.

40-03 OMITTED ITEMS. The Owner, the Owner's Engineer or the RPR may provide written notice to the Contractor to omit from the work any contract item that does not meet the definition of major contract item. Major contract items may be omitted by a supplemental agreement. Such omission of contract items shall not invalidate any other contract provision or requirement.

Should a contract item be omitted or otherwise ordered to be non-performed, the Contractor shall be paid for all work performed toward completion of such item prior to the date of the order to omit such item. Payment for work performed shall be in accordance with Section 90, paragraph 90-04, *PAYMENT FOR OMITTED ITEMS*.

40-04 EXTRA WORK. Should acceptable completion of the contract require the Contractor to perform an item of work not provided for in the awarded contract as previously modified by change order or supplemental agreement, Owner may issue a Change Order to cover the necessary extra work. Change orders for extra work shall contain agreed unit prices for performing the change order work in accordance with the requirements specified in the order, and shall contain any adjustment to the contract time that, in the RPR's opinion, is necessary for completion of the extra work.

When determined by the RPR to be in the Owner's best interest, the RPR may order the Contractor to proceed with extra work as provided in Section 90, paragraph 90-05, *PAYMENT FOR EXTRA WORK*. Extra work that is necessary for acceptable completion of the project, but is not within the general scope of the work covered by the original contract shall be covered by a supplemental agreement as defined in Section 10, paragraph 10-59, *SUPPLEMENTAL AGREEMENT*.

If extra work is essential to maintaining the project critical path, RPR may order the Contractor to commence the extra work under a Time and Material contract method. Once sufficient detail is available to establish the level of effort necessary for the extra work, the Owner shall initiate a change order or supplemental agreement to cover the extra work.

Any claim for payment of extra work that is not covered by written agreement (change order or supplemental agreement) shall be rejected by the Owner.

40-05 MAINTENANCE OF TRAFFIC. It is the explicit intention of the contract that the safety of aircraft, as well as the Contractor's equipment and personnel, is the most important consideration. The Contractor shall maintain traffic in the manner detailed in the Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP).

a. It is understood and agreed that the Contractor shall provide for the free and unobstructed movement of aircraft in the air operations areas (AOAs) of the airport with respect to their own operations and the operations of all subcontractors as specified in the Section 80, paragraph 80-04, *LIMITATION OF OPERATIONS*. It is further understood and agreed that the Contractor shall provide for the uninterrupted operation of visual and electronic signals (including power supplies thereto) used in the guidance of aircraft while operating to, from, and upon the airport as specified in the Section 70, paragraph 70-15, *CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY FOR UTILITY SERVICE AND FACILITIES OF OTHERS*.

b. With respect to their own operations and the operations of all subcontractors, the Contractor shall provide marking, lighting, and other acceptable means of identifying personnel, equipment, vehicles, storage areas, and any work area or condition that may be hazardous to the operation of aircraft, fire- rescue equipment, or maintenance vehicles at the airport in accordance with the construction safety and phasing plan (CSPP) and the safety plan compliance document (SPCD).

c. When the contract requires the maintenance of an existing road, street, or highway during the Contractor's performance of work that is otherwise provided for in the contract, plans, and specifications, the Contractor shall keep such road, street, or highway open to all traffic and shall provide maintenance as may be required to accommodate traffic. The Contractor, at their expense, shall be responsible for the repair to equal or better than preconstruction conditions of any damage caused by the Contractor's equipment and personnel. The Contractor shall furnish, erect, and maintain barricades, warning signs, flag person, and other traffic control devices in reasonable conformity with the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) (http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/), unless otherwise specified. The Contractor shall also construct and maintain in a safe condition any temporary connections necessary for ingress to and egress from abutting property or intersecting roads, streets or highways.

40-06 REMOVAL OF EXISTING STRUCTURES.

All existing structures encountered within the established lines, grades, or grading sections shall be removed by the Contractor, unless such existing structures are otherwise specified to be relocated, adjusted up or down, salvaged, abandoned in place, reused in the work or to remain in place. The cost of removing such existing structures shall not be measured or paid for directly, but shall be included in the various contract items.

Should the Contractor encounter an existing structure (above or below ground) in the work for which the disposition is not indicated on the plans, the Resident Project Representative (RPR) shall be notified prior to disturbing such structure. The disposition of existing structures so encountered shall be immediately determined by the RPR in accordance with the provisions of the contract.

Except as provided in Section 40, paragraph 40-07, *RIGHTS IN AND USE OF MATERIALS FOUND IN THE WORK*, it is intended that all existing materials or structures that may be encountered (within the lines, grades, or grading sections established for completion of the work) shall be used in the work as

otherwise provided for in the contract and shall remain the property of the Owner when so used in the work.

40-07 RIGHTS IN AND USE OF MATERIALS FOUND IN THE WORK. Should the Contractor encounter any material such as (but not restricted to) sand, stone, gravel, slag, or concrete slabs within the established lines, grades, or grading sections, the use of which is intended by the terms of the contract to be embankment, the Contractor may at their own option either:

a. Use such material in another contract item, providing such use is approved by the RPR and is in conformance with the contract specifications applicable to such use; or,

b. Remove such material from the site, upon written approval of the RPR; or

c. Use such material for the Contractor's own temporary construction on site; or,

d. Use such material as intended by the terms of the contract.

Should the Contractor wish to exercise option a., b., or c., the Contractor shall request the RPR's approval in advance of such use.

Should the RPR approve the Contractor's request to exercise option a., b., or c., the Contractor shall be paid for the excavation or removal of such material at the applicable contract price. The Contractor shall replace, at their expense, such removed or excavated material with an agreed equal volume of material that is acceptable for use in constructing embankment, backfills, or otherwise to the extent that such replacement material is needed to complete the contract work. The Contractor shall not be charged for use of such material used in the work or removed from the site.

Should the RPR approve the Contractor's exercise of option a., the Contractor shall be paid, at the applicable contract price, for furnishing and installing such material in accordance with requirements of the contract item in which the material is used.

It is understood and agreed that the Contractor shall make no claim for delays by reason of their own exercise of option a., b., or c.

The Contractor shall not excavate, remove, or otherwise disturb any material, structure, or part of a structure which is located outside the lines, grades, or grading sections established for the work, except where such excavation or removal is provided for in the contract, plans, or specifications.

.

40-08 FINAL CLEANING UP. Upon completion of the work and before acceptance and final payment will be made, the Contractor shall remove from the site all machinery, equipment, surplus and discarded materials, rubbish, temporary structures, and stumps or portions of trees. The Contractor shall cut all brush and woods within the limits indicated and shall leave the site in a neat and presentable condition. Material cleared from the site and deposited on adjacent property will not be considered as having been disposed of satisfactorily, unless the Contractor has obtained the written permission of such property owner.

END OF SECTION 40

SECTION 50
CONTROL OF WORK

50-01 AUTHORITY OF THE RESIDENT PROJECT REPRESENTATIVE (RPR). The RPR has final authority regarding the interpretation of project specification requirements. The RPR shall determine acceptability of the quality of materials furnished, method of performance of work performed, and the manner and rate of performance of the work. The RPR does not have the authority to accept work that does not conform to specification requirements.

50-02 CONFORMITY WITH PLANS AND SPECIFICATIONS. All work and all materials furnished shall be in reasonably close conformity with the lines, grades, grading sections, cross-sections, dimensions, material requirements, and testing requirements that are specified (including specified tolerances) in the contract, plans or specifications.

If the RPR finds the materials furnished, work performed, or the finished product not within reasonably close conformity with the plans and specifications but that the portion of the work affected will, in their opinion, result in a finished product having a level of safety, economy, durability, and workmanship acceptable to the Owner, the RPR will advise the Owner of his or her determination that the affected work be accepted and remain in place. The RPR will document the determination and recommend to the Owner a basis of acceptance that will provide for an adjustment in the contract price for the affected portion of the work. Changes in the contract price must be covered by contract change order or supplemental agreement as applicable.

If the RPR finds the materials furnished, work performed, or the finished product are not in reasonably close conformity with the plans and specifications and have resulted in an unacceptable finished product, the affected work or materials shall be removed and replaced or otherwise corrected by and at the expense of the Contractor in accordance with the RPR's written orders.

The term "reasonably close conformity" shall not be construed as waiving the Contractor's responsibility to complete the work in accordance with the contract, plans, and specifications. The term shall not be construed as waiving the RPR 's responsibility to insist on strict compliance with the requirements of the contract, plans, and specifications during the Contractor's execution of the work, when, in the RPR's opinion, such compliance is essential to provide an acceptable finished portion of the work.

The term "reasonably close conformity" is also intended to provide the RPR with the authority, after consultation with the FAA/MoDOT, to use sound engineering judgment in his or her determinations as to acceptance of work that is not in strict conformity, but will provide a finished product equal to or better than that intended by the requirements of the contract, plans and specifications.

The RPR will not be responsible for the Contractor's means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures of construction or the safety precautions incident thereto.

50-03 COORDINATION OF CONTRACT, PLANS, AND SPECIFICATIONS. The contract, plans, specifications, and all referenced standards cited are essential parts of the contract requirements. If electronic files are provided and used on the project and there is a conflict between the electronic files and hard copy plans, the hard copy plans shall govern. A requirement occurring in one is as binding as though occurring in all. They are intended to be complementary and to describe and provide for a complete work. In case of discrepancy, calculated dimensions will govern over scaled dimensions; contract technical specifications shall govern over contract general provisions, plans, cited standards for materials or testing, and cited advisory circulars (ACs); contract general provisions shall govern over plans, cited standards for materials or testing, and cited ACs; plans shall govern over cited standards for materials or testing and cited ACs. If any paragraphs contained in the Special Provisions conflict with General Provisions or Technical Specifications, the Special Provisions shall govern.

From time to time, discrepancies within cited testing standards occur due to the timing of the change, edits, and/or replacement of the standards. If the Contractor discovers any apparent discrepancy within standard test methods, the Contractor shall immediately ask the RFR for an interpretation and decision, and such decision shall be final.

The Contractor shall not take advantage of any apparent error or omission on the plans or specifications. In the event the Contractor discovers any apparent error or discrepancy, Contractor shall immediately notify the Owner or the designated representative in writing requesting their written interpretation and decision.

50-04 SUBMITTAL TRACKING. The Contractor will be responsible for provision of a submittal tracking software and using it for all submittal tracking purposes throughout the submittal process. The basis of design for submittal tracking software may be Newforma, Procore, or approved equal

50-05 LIST OF SPECIAL PROVISIONS. See Section 4 for the Project Special Provisions.

50-06 COOPERATION OF CONTRACTOR. The Contractor will be supplied with 2 hard copies or an electronic PDF of the plans and specifications. The Contractor shall have available on the construction site at all times one hard copy each of the plans and specifications. Additional hard copies of plans and specifications may be obtained by the Contractor for the cost of reproduction.

The Contractor shall give constant attention to the work to facilitate the progress thereof, and shall cooperate with the RPR and their inspectors and with other Contractors in every way possible. The Contractor shall have a competent superintendent on the work at all times who is fully authorized as their agent on the work. The superintendent shall be capable of reading and thoroughly understanding the plans and specifications and shall receive and fulfill instructions from the RPR or their authorized representative.

50-07 COOPERATION BETWEEN CONTRACTORS. The Owner reserves the right to contract for and perform other or additional work on or near the work covered by this contract.

When separate contracts are let within the limits of any one project, each Contractor shall conduct the work not to interfere with or hinder the progress of completion of the work being performed by other Contractors. Contractors working on the same project shall cooperate with each other as directed.

Each Contractor involved shall assume all liability, financial or otherwise, in connection with their own contract and shall protect and save harmless the Owner from any and all damages or claims that may arise because of inconvenience, delays, or loss experienced because of the presence and operations of other Contractors working within the limits of the same project.

The Contractor shall arrange his or her work and shall place and dispose of the materials being used to not interfere with the operations of the other Contractors within the limits of the same project. The Contractor shall join their work with that of the others in an acceptable manner and shall perform it in proper sequence to that of the others.

50-08 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT AND STAKES. The Engineer/RPR shall establish necessary horizontal and vertical control. The establishment of Survey Control and/or reestablishment of survey control shall be by a State Licensed Land Surveyor. Contractor is responsible for preserving integrity of horizontal and vertical controls established by Engineer/RPR. In case of negligence on the part of the Contractor or their employees, resulting in the destruction of any horizontal and vertical control, the resulting costs will be deducted as a liquidated damage against the Contractor.

Prior to the start of construction, the Contractor will check all control points for horizontal and vertical accuracy and certify in writing to the RPR that the Contractor concurs with survey control established for the project. All lines, grades and measurements from control points necessary for the proper execution and control of the work on this project will be provided to the RPR. The Contractor is responsible to establish all layout required for the construction of the project.

Copies of survey notes will be provided to the RPR for each area of construction and for each placement of material as specified to allow the RPR to make periodic checks for conformance with plan grades, alignments and grade tolerances required by the applicable material specifications. Surveys will be provided to the RPR prior to commencing work items that cover or disturb the survey staking. Survey(s) and notes shall be provided in the following format(s): PDF

Laser, GPS, String line, or other automatic control shall be checked with temporary control as necessary. In the case of error, on the part of the Contractor, their surveyor, employees or subcontractors, resulting in established grades, alignment or grade tolerances that do not concur with those specified or shown on the plans, the Contractor is solely responsible for correction, removal, replacement and all associated costs at no additional cost to the Owner.

No direct payment will be made, unless otherwise specified in contract documents, for this labor, materials, or other expenses. The cost shall be included in the price of the bid for the various items of the Contract.

50-09 AUTHORITY AND DUTIES OF QUALITY ASSURANCE (QA) INSPECTORS. QA inspectors shall be authorized to inspect all work done and all material furnished. Such QA inspection may extend to all or any part of the work and to the preparation, fabrication, or manufacture of the materials to be used. QA inspectors are not authorized to revoke, alter, or waive any provision of the contract. QA inspectors are not authorized to issue instructions contrary to the plans and specifications or to act as foreman for the Contractor.

QA Inspectors are authorized to notify the Contractor or their representatives of any failure of the work or materials to conform to the requirements of the contract, plans, or specifications and to reject such nonconforming materials in question until such issues can be referred to the RPR for a decision.

50-10 INSPECTION OF THE WORK. All materials and each part or detail of the work shall be subject to inspection. The RPR shall be allowed access to all parts of the work and shall be furnished with such information and assistance by the Contractor as is required to make a complete and detailed inspection.

If the RPR requests it, the Contractor, at any time before acceptance of the work, shall remove or uncover such portions of the finished work as may be directed. After examination, the Contractor shall restore said portions of the work to the standard required by the specifications. Should the work thus exposed or examined prove acceptable, the uncovering, or removing, and the replacing of the covering or making good of the parts removed will be paid for as extra work; but should the work so exposed or examined prove unacceptable, the uncovering, or removing, and the replacing of the covering or making good of the parts removed will be at the Contractor's expense.

Provide advance written notice to the RPR of work the Contractor plans to perform each week and each day. Any work done or materials used without written notice and allowing opportunity for inspection by the RPR may be ordered removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.

Should the contract work include relocation, adjustment, or any other modification to existing facilities, not the property of the (contract) Owner, authorized representatives of the Owners of such facilities shall have the right to inspect such work. Such inspection shall in no sense make any facility owner a party to the contract, and shall in no way interfere with the rights of the parties to this contract.

50-11 REMOVAL OF UNACCEPTABLE AND UNAUTHORIZED WORK. All work that does not conform to the requirements of the contract, plans, and specifications will be considered unacceptable, unless otherwise determined acceptable by the RPR as provided in paragraph 50-02, *CONFORMITY WITH PLANS AND SPECIFICATIONS*.

Unacceptable work, whether the result of poor workmanship, use of defective materials, damage through carelessness, or any other cause found to exist prior to the final acceptance of the work, shall be removed immediately and replaced in an acceptable manner in accordance with the provisions of Section 70, paragraph 70-14, *CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY FOR WORK.*

No removal work made under provision of this paragraph shall be done without lines and grades having been established by the RPR. Work done contrary to the instructions of the RPR, work done beyond the lines shown on the plans or as established by the RPR, except as herein specified, or any extra work done without authority, will be considered as unauthorized and will not be paid for under the provisions of the contract. Work so done may be ordered removed or replaced at the Contractor's expense.

Upon failure on the part of the Contractor to comply with any order of the RPR made under the provisions of this subsection, the RPR will have authority to cause unacceptable work to be remedied or removed and replaced; and unauthorized work to be removed and recover the resulting costs as a liquidated damage against the Contractor.

50-12 LOAD RESTRICTIONS The Contractor shall comply with all legal load restrictions in the hauling of materials on public roads beyond the limits of the work. A special permit will not relieve the Contractor of liability for damage that may result from the moving of material or equipment.

The operation of equipment of such weight or so loaded as to cause damage to structures or to any other type of construction will not be permitted. Hauling of materials over the base course or surface course under construction shall be limited as directed. No loads will be permitted on a concrete pavement, base, or structure before the expiration of the curing period. The Contractor, at their own expense, shall be responsible for the repair to equal or better than preconstruction conditions of any damage caused by the Contractor's equipment and personnel.

50-13 MAINTENANCE DURING CONSTRUCTION. The Contractor shall maintain the work during construction and until the work is accepted. Maintenance shall constitute continuous and effective work prosecuted day by day, with adequate equipment and forces so that the work is maintained in satisfactory condition at all times.

In the case of a contract for the placing of a course upon a course or subgrade previously constructed, the Contractor shall maintain the previous course or subgrade during all construction operations.

All costs of maintenance work during construction and before the project is accepted shall be included in the unit prices bid on the various contract items, and the Contractor will not be paid an additional amount for such work.

50-14 FAILURE TO MAINTAIN THE WORK. Should the Contractor at any time fail to maintain the work as provided in paragraph 50-12, *MAINTENANCE DURING CONSTRUCTION*, the RPR shall immediately notify the Contractor of such noncompliance. Such notification shall specify a reasonable time within which the Contractor shall be required to remedy such unsatisfactory maintenance condition. The time specified will give due consideration to the exigency that exists.

Should the Contractor fail to respond to the RPR's notification, the Owner may suspend any work necessary for the Owner to correct such unsatisfactory maintenance condition, depending on the exigency that exists. Any maintenance cost incurred by the Owner, shall be recovered as a liquidated damage against the Contractor.

50-15 PARTIAL ACCEPTANCE. If at any time during the execution of the project the Contractor substantially completes a usable unit or portion of the work, the occupancy of which will benefit the Owner, the Contractor may request the RPR to make final inspection of that unit. If the RPR finds upon inspection that the unit has been satisfactorily completed in compliance with the contract, the RPR may accept it as being complete, and the Contractor may be relieved of further responsibility for that unit. Such partial acceptance and beneficial occupancy by the Owner shall not void or alter any provision of the contract.

50-16 FINAL ACCEPTANCE. Upon due notice from the Contractor of presumptive completion of the entire project, the RPR and Owner will make an inspection. If all construction provided for and contemplated by the contract is found to be complete in accordance with the contract, plans, and specifications, such inspection shall constitute the final inspection. The RPR shall notify the Contractor in writing of final acceptance as of the date of the final inspection.

If, however, the inspection discloses any work, in whole or in part, as being unsatisfactory, the RPR will notify the Contractor and the Contractor shall correct the unsatisfactory work. Upon correction of the work, another inspection will be made which shall constitute the final inspection, provided the work has been satisfactorily completed. In such event, the RPR will make the final acceptance and notify the Contractor in writing of this acceptance as of the date of final inspection.

50-17 CLAIMS FOR ADJUSTMENT AND DISPUTES. If for any reason the Contractor deems that additional compensation is due for work or materials not clearly provided for in the contract, plans, or specifications or previously authorized as extra work, the Contractor shall notify the RPR in writing of their intention to claim such additional compensation before the Contractor begins the work on which the Contractor bases the claim. If such notification is not given or the RPR is not afforded proper opportunity by the Contractor for keeping strict account of actual cost as required, then the Contractor hereby agrees to waive any claim for such additional compensation. Such notice by the Contractor and the fact that the RPR has kept account of the cost of the work shall not in any way be construed as proving or substantiating the validity of the claim. When the work on which the claim for additional compensation is based has been completed, the Contractor shall, within 10 calendar days, submit a written claim to the RPR who will present it to the Owner for consideration in accordance with local laws or ordinances.

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed as a waiver of the Contractor's right to dispute final payment based on differences in measurements or computations.

END OF SECTION 50

Intentionally Left Blank

SECTION 60
CONTROL OF MATERIALS

60-01 SOURCE OF SUPPLY AND QUALITY REQUIREMENTS. The materials used in the work shall conform to the requirements of the contract, plans, and specifications. Unless otherwise specified, such materials that are manufactured or processed shall be new (as compared to used or reprocessed).

In order to expedite the inspection and testing of materials, the Contractor shall furnish documentation to the RPR as to the origin, composition, and manufacture of all materials to be used in the work. Documentation shall be furnished promptly after execution of the contract but, in all cases, prior to delivery of such materials.

At the RPR's option, materials may be approved at the source of supply before delivery. If it is found after trial that sources of supply for previously approved materials do not produce specified products, the Contractor shall furnish materials from other sources.

The Contractor shall furnish airport lighting equipment that meets the requirements of the specifications; and is listed in AC 150/5345-53, *Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program, and Addendum* that is in effect on the date of advertisement

60-02 SAMPLES, TESTS, AND CITED SPECIFICATIONS. All materials used in the work shall be inspected, tested, and approved by the RPR before incorporation in the work unless otherwise designated. Any work in which untested materials are used without approval or written permission of the RPR shall be performed at the Contractor's risk. Materials found to be unacceptable and unauthorized will not be paid for and, if directed by the RPR, shall be removed at the Contractor's expense.

Unless otherwise designated, quality assurance tests will be made by and at the expense of the Owner in accordance with the cited standard methods of ASTM, American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO), federal specifications, Commercial Item Descriptions, and all other cited methods, which are current on the date of advertisement for bids.

The testing organizations performing on-site quality assurance field tests shall have copies of all referenced standards on the construction site for use by all technicians and other personnel. Unless otherwise designated, samples for quality assurance will be taken by a qualified representative of the RPR. All materials being used are subject to inspection, test, or rejection at any time prior to or during incorporation into the work. Copies of all tests will be furnished to the Contractor's representative at their request after review and approval of the RPR.

A **legible, hand written** copy of all Contractor QC test data shall be provided to the RPR daily, along with printed reports, in an **electronic spreadsheet file**, on a weekly basis. After completion of the project, and prior to final payment, the Contractor shall submit a final report to the RPR showing all test data reports, plus an analysis of all results showing ranges, averages, and corrective action taken on all failing tests.

The Contractor shall employ a Quality Control (QC) testing organization to perform all Contractor required QC tests in accordance with Item C-100

60-03 CERTIFICATION OF COMPLIANCE/ANALYSIS (COC/COA). The RPR may permit the use, prior to sampling and testing, of certain materials or assemblies when accompanied by manufacturer's COC stating that such materials or assemblies fully comply with the requirements of the contract. The certificate shall be signed by the manufacturer. Each lot of such materials or assemblies delivered to the work must be accompanied by a certificate of compliance in which the lot is clearly identified. The COA is the manufacturer's COC and includes all applicable test results.

Materials or assemblies used on the basis of certificates of compliance may be sampled and tested at any time and if found not to be in conformity with contract requirements will be subject to rejection whether in place or not.

The form and distribution of certificates of compliance shall be as approved by the RPR.

When a material or assembly is specified by "brand name or equal" and the Contractor elects to furnish the specified "or equal," the Contractor shall be required to furnish the manufacturer's certificate of compliance for each lot of such material or assembly delivered to the work. Such certificate of compliance shall clearly identify each lot delivered and shall certify as to:

a. Conformance to the specified performance, testing, quality or dimensional requirements; and,

b. Suitability of the material or assembly for the use intended in the contract work.

The RPR shall be the sole judge as to whether the proposed "or equal" is suitable for use in the work.

The RPR reserves the right to refuse permission for use of materials or assemblies on the basis of certificates of compliance.

60-04 PLANT INSPECTION. The RPR or their authorized representative may inspect, at its source, any specified material or assembly to be used in the work. Manufacturing plants may be inspected from time to time for the purpose of determining compliance with specified manufacturing methods or materials to be used in the work and to obtain samples required for acceptance of the material or assembly.

Should the RPR conduct plant inspections, the following conditions shall exist:

a. The RPR shall have the cooperation and assistance of the Contractor and the producer with whom the Contractor has contracted for materials.

b. The RPR shall have full entry at all reasonable times to such parts of the plant that concern the manufacture or production of the materials being furnished.

c. If required by the RPR, the Contractor shall arrange for adequate office or working space that may be reasonably needed for conducting plant inspections. Place office or working space in a convenient location with respect to the plant.

It is understood and agreed that the Owner shall have the right to retest any material that has been tested and approved at the source of supply after it has been delivered to the site. The RPR shall have the right to reject only material which, when retested, does not meet the requirements of the contract, plans, or specifications

60-05 ENGINEER/RESIDENT PROJECT REPRESENTATIVE (RPR) FIELD OFFICE. An Engineer/RPR field office is not required.

60-06 STORAGE OF MATERIALS. Materials shall be stored to assure the preservation of their quality and fitness for the work. Stored materials, even though approved before storage, may again be inspected prior to their use in the work. Stored materials shall be located to facilitate their prompt inspection. The Contractor shall coordinate the storage of all materials with the RPR. Materials to be stored on airport property shall not create an obstruction to air navigation nor shall they interfere with the free and unobstructed movement of aircraft. Unless otherwise shown on the plans and/or CSPP, the storage of materials and the location of the Contractor's plant and parked equipment or vehicles shall be as directed by the RPR. Private property shall not be used for storage purposes without written permission of the Owner or lessee of such property. The Contractor shall make all arrangements and bear all expenses for the storage of materials on private property. Upon request, the Contractor shall furnish the RPR a copy of the property Owner's permission.

All storage sites on private or airport property shall be restored to their original condition by the Contractor at their expense, except as otherwise agreed to (in writing) by the Owner or lessee of the property.

60-07 UNACCEPTABLE MATERIALS. Any material or assembly that does not conform to the requirements of the contract, plans, or specifications shall be considered unacceptable and shall be rejected. The Contractor shall remove any rejected material or assembly from the site of the work, unless otherwise instructed by the RPR.

Rejected material or assembly, the defects of which have been corrected by the Contractor, shall not be returned to the site of the work until such time as the RPR has approved its use in the work.

60-08 OWNER FURNISHED MATERIALS. The Contractor shall furnish all materials required to complete the work, except those specified, if any, to be furnished by the Owner. Owner-furnished materials shall be made available to the Contractor at the location specified.

All costs of handling, transportation from the specified location to the site of work, storage, and installing Owner-furnished materials shall be included in the unit price bid for the contract item in which such Owner-furnished material is used.

After any Owner-furnished material has been delivered to the location specified, the Contractor shall be responsible for any demurrage, damage, loss, or other deficiencies that may occur during the Contractor's handling, storage, or use of such Owner-furnished material. The Owner will deduct from any monies due or to become due the Contractor any cost incurred by the Owner in making good such loss due to the Contractor's handling, storage, or use of Owner-furnished materials.

END OF SECTION 60

Intentionally Left Blank

SECTION 70
LEGAL REGULATIONS AND RESPONSIBILITY TO PUBLIC

70-01 LAWS TO BE OBSERVED. The Contractor shall keep fully informed of all federal and state laws, all local laws, ordinances, and regulations and all orders and decrees of bodies or tribunals having any jurisdiction or authority, which in any manner affect those engaged or employed on the work, or which in any way affect the conduct of the work. The Contractor shall at all times observe and comply with all such laws, ordinances, regulations, orders, and decrees; and shall protect and indemnify the Owner and all their officers, agents, or servants against any claim or liability arising from or based on the violation of any such law, ordinance, regulation, order, or decree, whether by the Contractor or the Contractor's employees.

70-02 PERMITS, LICENSES, AND TAXES. The Contractor shall procure all permits and licenses, pay all charges, fees, and taxes, and give all notices necessary and incidental to the due and lawful execution of the work.

70-03 PATENTED DEVICES, MATERIALS, AND PROCESSES. If the Contractor is required or desires to use any design, device, material, or process covered by letters of patent or copyright, the Contractor shall provide for such use by suitable legal agreement with the Patentee or Owner. The Contractor and the surety shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, any third party, or political subdivision from any and all claims for infringement by reason of the use of any such patented design, device, material or process, or any trademark or copyright, and shall indemnify the Owner for any costs, expenses, and damages which it may be obliged to pay by reason of an infringement, at any time during the execution or after the completion of the work.

70-04 RESTORATION OF SURFACES DISTURBED BY OTHERS. The Owner reserves the right to authorize the construction, reconstruction, or maintenance of any public or private utility service, FAA or National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) facility, or a utility service of another government agency at any time during the progress of the work. To the extent that such construction, reconstruction, or maintenance has been coordinated with the Owner, such authorized work (by others) must be shown on the plans

Except as listed above, the Contractor shall not permit any individual, firm, or corporation to excavate or otherwise disturb such utility services or facilities located within the limits of the work without the written permission of the RPR.

Should the Owner of public or private utility service, FAA, or NOAA facility, or a utility service of another government agency be authorized to construct, reconstruct, or maintain such utility service or facility during the progress of the work, the Contractor shall cooperate with such Owners by arranging and performing the work in this contract to facilitate such construction, reconstruction or maintenance by others whether or not such work by others is listed above. When ordered as extra work by the RPR, the Contractor shall make all necessary repairs to the work which are due to such authorized work by others, unless otherwise provided for in the contract, plans, or specifications. It is understood and agreed that the Contractor shall not be entitled to make any claim for damages due to such authorized work by others or for any delay to the work resulting from such authorized work.

70-05 Federal aid participation. The United States Government has agreed to reimburse the Owner for some portion of the contract costs. The contract work is subject to the inspection and approval of duly authorized representatives of the FAA Administrator. No requirement of this contract shall be construed as making the United States a party to the contract nor will any such requirement interfere, in any way, with the rights of either party to the contract.

70-06 SANITARY, HEALTH, AND SAFETY PROVISIONS.
The Contractor shall provide and maintain in a neat, sanitary condition such accommodations for the use of his/her employees as may be necessary to comply with the requirements of the state and local Board of Health, or of other bodies or tribunals having jurisdiction.

Attention is directed to Federal, state, and local laws, rules and regulations concerning construction safety and health standards. The Contractor shall not require any worker to work in surroundings or under conditions that are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous to his/her health or safety.

The contractor shall be aware of all COVID-19 guidance from the Center for Disease Control (CDC) and other government health mandates and conduct all operations in conformance with these safety directives. The guidance may change during the project construction and the contractor shall change and adapt their operation and safety protocols accordingly.

The contractor shall include these procedures in the project safety plan as called for in the contract documents and revise the safety plan as needed.

The contractor shall be aware of the Missouri Standard Specifications for Highway Construction Section 107.1 "Laws to be Observed".

70-07 PUBLIC CONVENIENCE AND SAFETY. The Contractor shall control their operations and those of their subcontractors and all suppliers, to assure the least inconvenience to the traveling public. Under all circumstances, safety shall be the most important consideration.

The Contractor shall maintain the free and unobstructed movement of aircraft and vehicular traffic with respect to their own operations and those of their own subcontractors and all suppliers in accordance with Section 40, paragraph 40-05, *MAINTENANCE OF TRAFFIC,* and shall limit such operations for the convenience and safety of the traveling public as specified in Section 80, paragraph 80-04, *LIMITATION OF OPERATIONS*.

The Contractor shall remove or control debris and rubbish resulting from its work operations at frequent intervals, and upon the order of the RPR. If the RPR determines the existence of Contractor debris in the work site represents a hazard to airport operations and the Contractor is unable to respond in a prompt and reasonable manner, the RPR reserves the right to assign the task of debris removal to a third party and recover the resulting costs as a liquidated damage against the Contractor.

70-08 CONSTRUCTION SAFETY AND PHASING PLAN (CSPP). The Contractor shall complete the work in accordance with the approved Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP) developed in accordance with AC 150/5370-2, Operational Safety on Airports During Construction. The CSPP is on sheet(s) **[** C-050 **]** of the project plans.

70-09 USE OF EXPLOSIVES. The use of explosives is not permitted on this project.

70-10 PROTECTION AND RESTORATION OF PROPERTY AND LANDSCAPE. The Contractor shall be responsible for the preservation of all public and private property, and shall protect carefully from disturbance

or damage all land monuments and property markers until the Engineer/RPR has witnessed or otherwise referenced their location and shall not move them until directed.

The Contractor shall be responsible for all damage or injury to property of any character, during the execution of the work, resulting from any act, omission, neglect, or misconduct in manner or method of executing the work, or at any time due to defective work or materials, and said responsibility shall not be released until the project has been completed and accepted.

When or where any direct or indirect damage or injury is done to public or private property by or on account of any act, omission, neglect, or misconduct in the execution of the work, or in consequence of the non-execution thereof by the Contractor, the Contractor shall restore, at their own expense, such property to a condition similar or equal to that existing before such damage or injury was done, by repairing, or otherwise restoring as may be directed, or the Contractor shall make good such damage or injury in an acceptable manner.

70-11 RESPONSIBILITY FOR DAMAGE CLAIMS. The Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Engineer/RPR and the Owner and their officers, agents, and employees from all suits, actions, or claims, of any character, brought because of any injuries or damage received or sustained by any person, persons, or property on account of the operations of the Contractor; or on account of or in consequence of any neglect in safeguarding the work; or through use of unacceptable materials in constructing the work; or because of any act or omission, neglect, or misconduct of said Contractor; or because of any claims or amounts recovered from any infringements of patent, trademark, or copyright; or from any claims or amounts arising or recovered under the "Workmen's Compensation Act," or any other law, ordinance, order, or decree. Money due the Contractor under and by virtue of their own contract considered necessary by the Owner for such purpose may be retained for the use of the Owner or, in case no money is due, their own surety may be held until such suits, actions, or claims for injuries or damages shall have been settled and suitable evidence to that effect furnished to the Owner, except that money due the Contractor will not be withheld when the Contractor produces satisfactory evidence that he or she is adequately protected by public liability and property damage insurance.

70-12 THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY CLAUSE. It is specifically agreed between the parties executing the contract that it is not intended by any of the provisions of any part of the contract to create for the public or any member thereof, a third-party beneficiary or to authorize anyone not a party to the contract to maintain a suit for personal injuries or property damage pursuant to the terms or provisions of the contract.

70-13 OPENING SECTIONS OF THE WORK TO TRAFFIC. If it is necessary for the Contractor to complete portions of the contract work for the beneficial occupancy of the Owner prior to completion of the entire contract, such "phasing" of the work must be specified below and indicated on the approved Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP) and the project plans.

Upon completion of any portion of work listed above, such portion shall be accepted by the Owner in accordance with Section 50, paragraph 50-14, *PARTIAL ACCEPTANCE*.

No portion of the work may be opened by the Contractor until directed by the Owner in writing. Should it become necessary to open a portion of the work to traffic on a temporary or intermittent basis, such openings shall be made when, in the opinion of the RPR, such portion of the work is in an acceptable condition to support the intended traffic. Temporary or intermittent openings are considered to be inherent in the work and shall not constitute either acceptance of the portion of the work so opened or a waiver of any provision of the contract. Any damage to the portion of the work so opened that is not attributable to traffic which is permitted by the Owner shall be repaired by the Contractor at their expense.

The Contractor shall make their own estimate of the inherent difficulties involved in completing the work under the conditions herein described and shall not claim any added compensation by reason of delay or increased cost due to opening a portion of the contract work.

The Contractor must conform to safety standards contained AC 150/5370-2 and the approved CSPP.

Contractor shall refer to the plans, specifications, and the approved CSPP to identify barricade requirements, temporary and/or permanent markings, airfield lighting, guidance signs and other safety requirements prior to opening up sections of work to traffic.

70-14 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY FOR WORK. Until the RPR's final written acceptance of the entire completed work, excepting only those portions of the work accepted in accordance with Section 50, paragraph 50-14, *PARTIAL ACCEPTANCE*, the Contractor shall have the charge and care thereof and shall take every precaution against injury or damage to any part due to the action of the elements or from any other cause, whether arising from the execution or from the non-execution of the work. The Contractor shall rebuild, repair, restore, and make good all injuries or damages to any portion of the work occasioned by any of the above causes before final acceptance and shall bear the expense thereof except damage to the work due to unforeseeable causes beyond the control of and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor, including but not restricted to acts of God such as earthquake, tidal wave, tornado, hurricane or other cataclysmic phenomenon of nature, or acts of the public enemy or of government authorities.

If the work is suspended for any cause whatever, the Contractor shall be responsible for the work and shall take such precautions necessary to prevent damage to the work. The Contractor shall provide for normal drainage and shall erect necessary temporary structures, signs, or other facilities at their own expense. During such period of suspension of work, the Contractor shall properly and continuously maintain in an acceptable growing condition all living material in newly established planting, seeding, and sodding furnished under the contract, and shall take adequate precautions to protect new tree growth and other important vegetative growth against injury.

70-15 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY FOR UTILITY SERVICE AND FACILITIES OF OTHERS. As provided in paragraph 70-04, *RESTORATION OF SURFACES DISTURBED BY OTHERS*, the Contractor shall cooperate with the owner of any public or private utility service, FAA or NOAA, or a utility service of another government agency that may be authorized by the Owner to construct, reconstruct or maintain such utility services or facilities during the progress of the work. In addition, the Contractor shall control their operations to prevent the unscheduled interruption of such utility services and facilities.

To the extent that such public or private utility services, FAA, or NOAA facilities, or utility services of another governmental agency are known to exist within the limits of the contract work, the approximate locations have been indicated on the plans and/or in the contract documents.

It is understood and agreed that the Owner does not guarantee the accuracy or the completeness of the location information relating to existing utility services, facilities, or structures that may be shown on the plans or encountered in the work. Any inaccuracy or omission in such information shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to protect such existing features from damage or unscheduled interruption of service.

It is further understood and agreed that the Contractor shall, upon execution of the contract, notify the Owners of all utility services or other facilities of their plan of operations. Such notification shall be in writing addressed to "The Person to Contact" as provided in this paragraph and paragraph 70-04, *RESTORATION OF SURFACES DISTURBED BY OTHERS*. A copy of each notification shall be given to the RPR.

In addition to the general written notification provided, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to keep such individual Owners advised of changes in their plan of operations that would affect such Owners.

Prior to beginning the work in the general vicinity of an existing utility service or facility, the Contractor shall again notify each such Owner of their plan of operation. If, in the Contractor's opinion, the Owner's assistance is needed to locate the utility service or facility or the presence of a representative of the Owner is desirable to observe the work, such advice should be included in the notification. Such notification shall be given by the most expeditious means to reach the utility owner's 'Person to Contact" no later than two normal business days prior to the Contractor's commencement of operations in such general vicinity. The Contractor shall furnish a written summary of the notification to the RPR.

The Contractor's failure to give the two days' notice shall be cause for the Owner to suspend the Contractor's operations in the general vicinity of a utility service or facility.

Where the outside limits of an underground utility service have been located and staked on the ground, the Contractor shall be required to use hand excavation methods within 3 feet (1 m) of such outside limits at such points as may be required to ensure protection from damage due to the Contractor's operations.

Should the Contractor damage or interrupt the operation of a utility service or facility by accident or otherwise, the Contractor shall immediately notify the proper authority and the RPR and shall take all reasonable measures to prevent further damage or interruption of service. The Contractor, in such events, shall cooperate with the utility service or facility owner and the RPR continuously until such damage has been repaired and service restored to the satisfaction of the utility or facility owner.

The Contractor shall bear all costs of damage and restoration of service to any utility service or facility due to their operations whether due to negligence or accident. The Owner reserves the right to deduct such costs from any monies due or which may become due the Contractor, or their surety.

70-16 FURNISHING RIGHTS-OF-WAY. The Owner will be responsible for furnishing all rights-of-way upon which the work is to be constructed in advance of the Contractor's operations.

70-17 PERSONAL LIABILITY OF PUBLIC OFFICIALS. In carrying out any of the contract provisions or in exercising any power or authority granted by this contract, there shall be no liability upon the Engineer, RPR, their authorized representatives, or any officials of the Owner either personally or as an official of the Owner. It is understood that in such matters they act solely as agents and representatives of the Owner.

70-18 NO WAIVER OF LEGAL RIGHTS. Upon completion of the work, the Owner will expeditiously make final inspection and notify the Contractor of final acceptance. Such final acceptance, however, shall not preclude or stop the Owner from correcting any measurement, estimate, or certificate made before or after completion of the work, nor shall the Owner be precluded or stopped from recovering from the Contractor or his or her surety, or both, such overpayment as may be sustained, or by failure on the part of the Contractor to fulfill his or her obligations under the contract. A waiver on the part of the Owner of any breach of any part of the contract shall not be held to be a waiver of any other or subsequent breach.

The Contractor, without prejudice to the terms of the contract, shall be liable to the Owner for latent defects, fraud, or such gross mistakes as may amount to fraud, or as regards the Owner's rights under any warranty or guaranty.

70-19 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION. The Contractor shall comply with all federal, state, and local laws and regulations controlling pollution of the environment. The Contractor shall take necessary precautions to prevent pollution of streams, lakes, ponds, and reservoirs with fuels, oils, asphalts, chemicals, or other harmful materials and to prevent pollution of the atmosphere from particulate and gaseous matter.

70-20 ARCHAEOLOGICAL AND HISTORICAL FINDINGS. Unless otherwise specified in this subsection, the Contractor is advised that the site of the work is not within any property, district, or site, and does not contain any building, structure, or object listed in the current National Register of Historic Places published by the United States Department of Interior.

Should the Contractor encounter, during his or her operations, any building, part of a building, structure, or object that is incongruous with its surroundings, the Contractor shall immediately cease operations in that location and notify the Engineer. The Engineer will immediately investigate the Contractor's finding and the Owner will direct the Contractor to either resume operations or to suspend operations as directed.

Should the Owner order suspension of the Contractor's operations in order to protect an archaeological or historical finding, or order the Contractor to perform extra work, such shall be covered by an appropriate contract change order or supplemental agreement as provided in Section 40, paragraph 40-04, *EXTRA WORK*, and Section 90, paragraph 90-05, *PAYMENT FOR EXTRA WORK*. If appropriate, the contract change order or supplemental agreement shall include an extension of contract time in accordance with the Section 80, paragraph 80-07, *DETERMINATION AND EXTENSION OF CONTRACT TIME*.

70-21 INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS.

The Contractor shall pay for and maintain during the life of this contract adequate Workmen's Compensation, Public Liability and Property Damage Insurance. The Contractor is charged with the responsibility for adequate and proper coverage for all his subcontract operations. Contractor shall furnish to the Sponsor satisfactory proof of carriage of the insurance required. City insurance requirements are $3,500,000 aggregate/ $1,000,000 single occurrence and $3,500,000 property damage. Total coverage amounts can be achieved using a combination of primary and umbrella policies. Such Liability Insurance shall include completed operation coverage.

The contractor shall provide property insurance for the building work under construction, a.k.a. Builders Risk Insurance, for the duration of the contract. This shall equal an amount sufficient to cover the replacement cost of the property during the course of construction at the estimated value of the total project. This policy shall remain in place until the date indicated for the owners occupancy on the certificate of substantial completion.

~

END OF SECTION 70

SECTION 80
EXECUTION AND PROGRESS

80-01 SUBLETTING OF CONTRACT. The Owner will not recognize any subcontractor on the work. The Contractor shall at all times when work is in progress be represented either in person, by a qualified superintendent, or by other designated, qualified representative who is duly authorized to receive and execute orders of the Resident Project Representative (RPR).

The Contractor shall perform, with his organization, an amount of work equal to at least 50 percent of the total contract cost.

Should the Contractor elect to assign their contract, said assignment shall be concurred in by the surety, shall be presented for the consideration and approval of the Owner, and shall be consummated only on the written approval of the Owner.

The Contractor shall provide copies of all subcontracts to the RPR [14 **] days prior to being utilized on the project. As a minimum, the information shall include the following:**

- Subcontractor's legal company name.
- Subcontractor's legal company address, including County name.
- Principal contact person's name, telephone and fax number.
- Complete narrative description, and dollar value of the work to be performed by the subcontractor.
- Copies of required insurance certificates in accordance with the specifications.
- Minority/ non-minority status.

80-02 NOTICE TO PROCEED. The Owners notice to proceed will state the date on which contract time commences. The Contractor is expected to commence project operations within **[**10 **]** days of the NTP date. The Contractor shall notify the RPR at least **[** 24 hours **]** in advance of the time contract operations begins. The Contractor shall not commence any actual operations prior to the date on which the notice to proceed is issued by the Owner.

****

Notification time in excess of 24 hours must be justified. Owner may allow limited mobilization to the work site provided such action does not require presence of the RPR and the Contractor assumes all risks associated with a delay to the NTP issuance.

****

80-03 EXECUTION AND PROGRESS. Unless otherwise specified, the Contractor shall submit their coordinated construction schedule showing all work activities for the RPR's review and acceptance at least **[** 10 days **]** prior to the start of work. The Contractor's progress schedule, once accepted by the RPR, will represent the Contractor's baseline plan to accomplish the project in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Contract. The RPR will compare actual Contractor progress against the baseline schedule to determine that status of the Contractor's performance. The Contractor shall provide sufficient materials, equipment, and labor to guarantee the completion of the project in accordance with the plans and specifications within the time set forth in the proposal.

If the Contractor falls significantly behind the submitted schedule, the Contractor shall, upon the RPR's request, submit a revised schedule for completion of the work within the contract time and modify their operations to provide such additional materials, equipment, and labor necessary to meet the revised schedule. Should the execution of the work be discontinued for any reason, the Contractor shall notify the RPR at least **[** 24 hours **]** in advance of resuming operations.

The Contractor shall not commence any actual construction prior to the date on which the NTP is issued by the Owner.

[The project schedule shall be prepared as a network diagram in Critical Path Method (CPM), Program Evaluation and Review Technique (PERT), or other format, or as otherwise specified. It shall include information on the sequence of work activities, milestone dates, and activity duration. The schedule shall show all work items identified in the project proposal for each work area and shall include the project start date and end date. **]**

The Contractor shall maintain the work schedule and provide an update and analysis of the progress schedule on a **[** twice **]** monthly basis, or as otherwise specified in the contract. Submission of the work schedule shall not relieve the Contractor of overall responsibility for scheduling, sequencing, and coordinating all work to comply with the requirements of the contract.

80-04 LIMITATION OF OPERATIONS. The Contractor shall control their operations and the operations of their subcontractors and all suppliers to provide for the free and unobstructed movement of aircraft in the air operations areas (AOA) of the airport.

When the work requires the Contractor to conduct their operations within an AOA of the airport, the work shall be coordinated with airport operations (through the RPR) at least 48 hours prior to commencement of such work. The Contractor shall not close an AOA until so authorized by the RPR and until the necessary temporary marking and associated lighting is in place as provided in the Section 70, paragraph 70-08, CONSTRUCTION SAFETY AND PHASING PLAN (CSPP).

When the contract work requires the Contractor to work within an AOA of the airport on an intermittent basis (intermittent opening and closing of the AOA), the Contractor shall maintain constant communications as specified; immediately obey all instructions to vacate the AOA; and immediately obey all instructions to resume work in such AOA. Failure to maintain the specified communications or to obey instructions shall be cause for suspension of the Contractor's operations in the AOA until satisfactory conditions are provided. The areas of the AOA identified in the Construction Safety Phasing Plan (CSPP) and as listed below, cannot be closed to operating aircraft to permit the Contractor's operations on a continuous basis and will therefore be closed to aircraft operations intermittently as follows:

AOA	Time Periods for Closure	Type of Communications Required	Control Authority
Refer to the Safety Plan of the Construction Drawings			Airport Supervisor

Contractor shall be required to conform to safety standards contained in AC 150/5370-2, Operational Safety on Airports During Construction (see Special Provisions).

80-04.1 OPERATIONAL SAFETY ON AIRPORT DURING CONSTRUCTION. All Contractors' operations shall be conducted in accordance with the approved project Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP) and the Safety Plan Compliance Document (SPCD) and the provisions set forth within the current version of AC 150/5370-2, Operational Safety on Airports During Construction. The CSPP included within the contract documents conveys minimum requirements for operational safety on the airport during construction activities. The Contractor shall prepare and submit a SPCD that details how it proposes to comply with the requirements presented within the CSPP.

The Contractor shall implement all necessary safety plan measures prior to commencement of any work activity. The Contractor shall conduct routine checks to assure compliance with the safety plan measures.

The Contractor is responsible to the Owner for the conduct of all subcontractors it employs on the project. The Contractor shall assure that all subcontractors are made aware of the requirements of the CSPP and that they implement and maintain all necessary measures.

No deviation or modifications may be made to the approved CSPP unless approved in writing by the Owner or Engineer. The necessary coordination actions to review Contractor proposed modifications to an approved CSPP or approved SPCD can require a significant amount of time.

The Owner must coordinate any changes to the CSPP with the FAA.

80-05 CHARACTER OF WORKERS, METHODS, AND EQUIPMENT. The Contractor shall, at all times, employ sufficient labor and equipment for prosecuting the work to full completion in the manner and time required by the contract, plans, and specifications.

All workers shall have sufficient skill and experience to perform properly the work assigned to them. Workers engaged in special work or skilled work shall have sufficient experience in such work and in the operation of the equipment required to perform the work satisfactorily.

Any person employed by the Contractor or by any subcontractor who violates any operational regulations or operational safety requirements and, in the opinion of the RPR, does not perform his work in a proper and skillful manner or is intemperate or disorderly shall, at the written request of the RPR, be removed immediately by the Contractor or subcontractor employing such person, and shall not be employed again in any portion of the work without approval of the RPR.

Should the Contractor fail to remove such person or persons, or fail to furnish suitable and sufficient personnel for the proper execution of the work, the RPR may suspend the work by written notice until compliance with such orders.

All equipment that is proposed to be used on the work shall be of sufficient size and in such mechanical condition as to meet requirements of the work and to produce a satisfactory quality of work. Equipment used on any portion of the work shall not cause injury to previously completed work, adjacent property, or existing airport facilities due to its use.

When the methods and equipment to be used by the Contractor in accomplishing the work are not prescribed in the contract, the Contractor is free to use any methods or equipment that will accomplish the work in conformity with the requirements of the contract, plans, and specifications.

When the contract specifies the use of certain methods and equipment, such methods and equipment shall be used unless otherwise authorized by the RPR. If the Contractor desires to use a method or type of equipment other than specified in the contract, the Contractor may request authority from the RPR to do so. The request shall be in writing and shall include a full description of the methods and equipment proposed and of the reasons for desiring to make the change. If approval is given, it will be on the condition that the Contractor will be fully responsible for producing work in conformity with contract requirements. If, after trial use of the substituted methods or equipment, the RPR determines that the work produced does not meet contract requirements, the Contractor shall discontinue the use of the substitute method or equipment and shall complete the remaining work with the specified methods and equipment. The Contractor shall remove any deficient work and replace it with work of specified quality, or take such other corrective action as the RPR may direct. No change will be made in basis of payment for the contract items involved nor in contract time as a result of authorizing a change in methods or equipment under this paragraph.

80-06 TEMPORARY SUSPENSION OF THE WORK. The Owner shall have the authority to suspend the work wholly, or in part, for such period or periods the Owner may deem necessary, due to unsuitable weather, or other conditions considered unfavorable for the execution of the work, or for such time necessary due to the failure on the part of the Contractor to carry out orders given or perform any or all provisions of the contract.

In the event that the Contractor is ordered by the Owner, in writing, to suspend work for some unforeseen cause not otherwise provided for in the contract and over which the Contractor has no control, the Contractor may be

reimbursed for actual money expended on the work during the period of shutdown. No allowance will be made for anticipated profits. The period of shutdown shall be computed from the effective date of the written order to suspend work to the effective date of the written order to resume the work. Claims for such compensation shall be filed with the RPR within the time period stated in the RPR's order to resume work. The Contractor shall submit with their own claim information substantiating the amount shown on the claim. The RPR will forward the Contractor's claim to the Owner for consideration in accordance with local laws or ordinances. No provision of this article shall be construed as entitling the Contractor to compensation for delays due to inclement weather or for any other delay provided for in the contract, plans, or specifications.

If it becomes necessary to suspend work for an indefinite period, the Contractor shall store all materials in such manner that they will not become an obstruction nor become damaged in any way. The Contractor shall take every precaution to prevent damage or deterioration of the work performed and provide for normal drainage of the work. The Contractor shall erect temporary structures where necessary to provide for traffic on, to, or from the airport.

80-07 DETERMINATION AND EXTENSION OF CONTRACT TIME. The **400 Working Days** shall be stated in the proposal and contract and shall be known as the Contract Time.

If the contract time requires extension for reasons beyond the Contractor's control, it shall be adjusted as follows:

80-07.1 [CONTRACT TIME BASED ON WORKING DAYS. Contract time based on working days shall be calculated weekly by the Resident Project Representative (RPR). The RPR will furnish the Contractor a copy of their weekly statement of the number of working days charged against the contract time during the week and the number of working days currently specified for completion of the contract (the original contract time plus the number of working days, if any, that have been included in approved Change Orders or Supplemental Agreements covering Extra Work).

The weekly statement of contract time charged is based on the following considerations:

(1) Time will be charged for days on which the Contractor could proceed with scheduled work under construction at the time for at least six (6) hours with the normal work force employed on such items. When normal work force is a double-shift, use 12 hours; and when the normal work force is on a triple-shift, use 18 hours. Conditions beyond the Contractor's control such as strikes, lockouts, unusual delays in transportation, temporary suspension of the scheduled work items under construction or temporary suspension of the entire work which have been ordered by the Owner for reasons not the fault of the Contractor, shall not be charged against the contract time.

(2) The RPR will not make charges against the contract time prior to the effective date of the notice to proceed.

(3) The RPR will begin charges against the contract time on the first working day after the effective date of the notice to proceed.

(4) The RPR will not make charges against the contract time after the date of final acceptance as defined in Section 50, paragraph 50-14, *Final Acceptance*.

(5) The Contractor will be allowed one (1) week in which to file a written protest setting forth their own objections to the RPR's weekly statement. If no objection is filed within such specified time, the weekly statement shall be considered as acceptable to the Contractor.

The contract time (stated in the proposal) is based on the originally estimated quantities as described in the Section 20, paragraph 20-05, *INTERPRETATION OF ESTIMATED PROPOSAL QUANTITIES*. Should the satisfactory completion of the contract require performance of work in greater quantities than those estimated in the proposal, the contract time shall be increased in the same proportion as the cost of the actually completed

quantities bears to the cost of the originally estimated quantities in the proposal. Such increase in contract time shall not consider either the cost of work or the extension of contract time that has been covered by change order or supplemental agreement and shall be made at the time of final payment.**]**

80-08 FAILURE TO COMPLETE ON TIME. For each calendar day or working day, as specified in the contract, that any work remains uncompleted after the contract time (including all extensions and adjustments as provided in the paragraph 80-07, *DETERMINATION AND EXTENSION OF CONTRACT TIME,* the sum specified in the contract and proposal as liquidated damages will be deducted from any money due or to become due the Contractor or his or her surety. Such deducted sums shall not be deducted as a penalty but shall be considered as liquidation of a reasonable portion of damages including but not limited to additional engineering services that will be incurred by the Owner should the Contractor fail to complete the work in the time provided in their contract.

Schedule	Liquidated Damages Cost	Allowed Construction Time
Schedule 1-8	$500 /working day(s)	400 Working Days

The maximum construction time allowed for all Schedules will be the sum of the time allowed for individual schedules but not more than **400** days. Permitting the Contractor to continue and finish the work or any part of it after the time fixed for its completion, or after the date to which the time for completion may have been extended, will in no way operate as a wavier on the part of the Owner of any of its rights under the contract.

80-09 DEFAULT AND TERMINATION OF CONTRACT. The Contractor shall be considered in default of their contract and such default will be considered as cause for the Owner to terminate the contract for any of the following reasons if the Contractor:

a. Fails to begin the work under the contract within the time specified in the Notice to Proceed, or

b. Fails to perform the work or fails to provide sufficient workers, equipment and/or materials to assure completion of work in accordance with the terms of the contract, or

c. Performs the work unsuitably or neglects or refuses to remove materials or to perform anew such work as may be rejected as unacceptable and unsuitable, or

d. Discontinues the execution of the work, or

e. Fails to resume work which has been discontinued within a reasonable time after notice to do so, or

f. Becomes insolvent or is declared bankrupt, or commits any act of bankruptcy or insolvency, or

g. Allows any final judgment to stand against the Contractor unsatisfied for a period of 10 days, or

h. Makes an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or

i. For any other cause whatsoever, fails to carry on the work in an acceptable manner.

Should the Owner consider the Contractor in default of the contract for any reason above, the Owner shall immediately give written notice to the Contractor and the Contractor's surety as to the reasons for considering the Contractor in default and the Owner's intentions to terminate the contract.

If the Contractor or surety, within a period of 10 days after such notice, does not proceed in accordance therewith, then the Owner will, upon written notification from the RPR of the facts of such delay, neglect, or default and the Contractor's failure to comply with such notice, have full power and authority without violating the contract, to

take the execution of the work out of the hands of the Contractor. The Owner may appropriate or use any or all materials and equipment that have been mobilized for use in the work and are acceptable and may enter into an agreement for the completion of said contract according to the terms and provisions thereof, or use such other methods as in the opinion of the RPR will be required for the completion of said contract in an acceptable manner.

All costs and charges incurred by the Owner, together with the cost of completing the work under contract, will be deducted from any monies due or which may become due the Contractor. If such expense exceeds the sum which would have been payable under the contract, then the Contractor and the surety shall be liable and shall pay to the Owner the amount of such excess.

80-10 TERMINATION FOR NATIONAL EMERGENCIES. The Owner shall terminate the contract or portion thereof by written notice when the Contractor is prevented from proceeding with the construction contract as a direct result of an Executive Order of the President with respect to the execution of war or in the interest of national defense.

When the contract, or any portion thereof, is terminated before completion of all items of work in the contract, payment will be made for the actual number of units or items of work completed at the contract price or as mutually agreed for items of work partially completed or not started. No claims or loss of anticipated profits shall be considered.

Reimbursement for organization of the work, and other overhead expenses, (when not otherwise included in the contract) and moving equipment and materials to and from the job will be considered, the intent being that an equitable settlement will be made with the Contractor.

Acceptable materials, obtained or ordered by the Contractor for the work and that are not incorporated in the work shall, at the option of the Contractor, be purchased from the Contractor at actual cost as shown by receipted bills and actual cost records at such points of delivery as may be designated by the Engineer.

Termination of the contract or a portion thereof shall neither relieve the Contractor of his or her responsibilities for the completed work nor shall it relieve his or her surety of its obligation for and concerning any just claim arising out of the work performed.

80-11 WORK AREA, STORAGE AREA AND SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS. The Contractor shall obtain approval from the RPR prior to beginning any work in all areas of the airport. No operating runway, taxiway, or air operations area (AOA) shall be crossed, entered, or obstructed while it is operational. The Contractor shall plan and coordinate work in accordance with the approved CSPP and SPCD.

END OF SECTION 80

SECTION 90
MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

90-01 MEASUREMENT OF QUANTITIES. All work completed under the contract will be measured by the RPR, or their authorized representatives, using United States Customary Units of Measurement

The method of measurement and computations to be used in determination of quantities of material furnished and of work performed under the contract will be those methods generally recognized as conforming to good engineering practice.

Unless otherwise specified, longitudinal measurements for area computations will be made horizontally, and no deductions will be made for individual fixtures (or leave-outs) having an area of 9 square feet (0.8 square meters) or less. Unless otherwise specified, transverse measurements for area computations will be the neat dimensions shown on the plans or ordered in writing by the RPR.

Unless otherwise specified, all contract items which are measured by the linear foot such as electrical ducts, conduits, pipe culverts, underdrains, and similar items shall be measured parallel to the base or foundation upon which such items are placed.

The term "lump sum" when used as an item of payment will mean complete payment for the work described in the contract. When a complete structure or structural unit (in effect, "lump sum" work) is specified as the unit of measurement, the unit will be construed to include all necessary fittings and accessories.

When requested by the Contractor and approved by the RPR in writing, material specified to be measured by the cubic yard (cubic meter) may be weighed, and such weights will be converted to cubic yards (cubic meters) for payment purposes. Factors for conversion from weight measurement to volume measurement will be determined by the RPR and shall be agreed to by the Contractor before such method of measurement of pay quantities is used.

Measurement and Payment Terms

Term	Description
Excavation and Embankment Volume	In computing volumes of excavation, the average end area method will be used unless otherwise specified.
Measurement and Proportion by Weight	The term "ton" will mean the short ton consisting of 2,000 pounds (907 km) avoirdupois. All materials that are measured or proportioned by weights shall be weighed on accurate, independently certified scales by competent, qualified personnel at locations designated by the RPR. If material is shipped by rail, the car weight may be accepted provided that only the actual weight of material is paid for. However, car weights will not be acceptable for material to be passed through mixing plants. Trucks used to haul material being paid for by weight shall be weighed empty daily at such times as the RPR directs, and each truck shall bear a plainly legible identification mark.
Measurement by Volume	Materials to be measured by volume in the hauling vehicle shall be hauled in approved vehicles and measured therein at the point of delivery. Vehicles for this purpose may be of any size or type acceptable for the materials hauled, provided that the body is of such shape that the actual contents may be readily and accurately determined. All vehicles shall be loaded to at least their water level capacity, and all loads shall be leveled when the vehicles arrive at the point of delivery.
Asphalt Material	Asphalt materials will be measured by the gallon (liter) or ton (kg). When measured by volume, such volumes will be measured at 60°F (16°C) or will be corrected to the volume at 60°F (16°C) using ASTM D1250 for asphalts. Net certified scale

Term	Description
	weights or weights based on certified volumes in the case of rail shipments will be used as a basis of measurement, subject to correction when asphalt material has been lost from the car or the distributor, wasted, or otherwise not incorporated in the work. When asphalt materials are shipped by truck or transport, net certified weights by volume, subject to correction for loss or foaming, will be used for computing quantities.
Cement	Cement will be measured by the ton (kg) or hundredweight (km).
Structure	Structures will be measured according to neat lines shown on the plans or as altered to fit field conditions.
Timber	Timber will be measured by the thousand feet board measure (MFBM) actually incorporated in the structure. Measurement will be based on nominal widths and thicknesses and the extreme length of each piece.
Plates and Sheets	The thickness of plates and galvanized sheet used in the manufacture of corrugated metal pipe, metal plate pipe culverts and arches, and metal cribbing will be specified and measured in decimal fraction of inch.
Miscellaneous Items	When standard manufactured items are specified such as fence, wire, plates, rolled shapes, pipe conduit, etc., and these items are identified by gauge, unit weight, section dimensions, etc., such identification will be considered to be nominal weights or dimensions. Unless more stringently controlled by tolerances in cited specifications, manufacturing tolerances established by the industries involved will be accepted.
Scales	Scales must be tested for accuracy and serviced before use. Scales for weighing materials which are required to be proportioned or measured and paid for by weight shall be furnished, erected, and maintained by the Contractor, or be certified permanently installed commercial scales. Platform scales shall be installed and maintained with the platform level and rigid bulkheads at each end. Scales shall be accurate within 0.5% of the correct weight throughout the range of use. The Contractor shall have the scales checked under the observation of the RPR before beginning work and at such other times as requested. The intervals shall be uniform in spacing throughout the graduated or marked length of the beam or dial and shall not exceed 0.1% of the nominal rated capacity of the scale, but not less than one pound (454 grams). The use of spring balances will not be permitted. In the event inspection reveals the scales have been "overweighing" (indicating more than correct weight) they will be immediately adjusted. All materials received subsequent to the last previous correct weighting-accuracy test will be reduced by the percentage of error in excess of 0.5%. In the event inspection reveals the scales have been under-weighing (indicating less than correct weight), they shall be immediately adjusted. No additional payment to the Contractor will be allowed for materials previously weighed and recorded. Beams, dials, platforms, and other scale equipment shall be so arranged that the operator and the RPR can safely and conveniently view them. Scale installations shall have available ten standard 50-pound (2.3 km) weights for testing the weighing equipment or suitable weights and devices for other approved equipment. All costs in connection with furnishing, installing, certifying, testing, and maintaining scales; for furnishing check weights and scale house; and for all other items specified in this subsection, for the weighing of materials for proportioning or

Term	Description
	payment, shall be included in the unit contract prices for the various items of the project.
Rental Equipment	Rental of equipment will be measured by time in hours of actual working time and necessary traveling time of the equipment within the limits of the work. Special equipment ordered in connection with extra work will be measured as agreed in the change order or supplemental agreement authorizing such work as provided in paragraph 90-05 *Payment for Extra Work*.
Pay Quantities	When the estimated quantities for a specific portion of the work are designated as the pay quantities in the contract, they shall be the final quantities for which payment for such specific portion of the work will be made, unless the dimensions of said portions of the work shown on the plans are revised by the RPR. If revised dimensions result in an increase or decrease in the quantities of such work, the final quantities for payment will be revised in the amount represented by the authorized changes in the dimensions.

90-02 SCOPE OF PAYMENT. The Contractor shall receive and accept compensation provided for in the contract as full payment for furnishing all materials, for performing all work under the contract in a complete and acceptable manner, and for all risk, loss, damage, or expense of whatever character arising out of the nature of the work or the execution thereof, subject to the provisions of the Section 70, paragraph 70-18, *NO WAIVER OF LEGAL RIGHTS*.

When the "basis of payment" subsection of a technical specification requires that the contract price (price bid) include compensation for certain work or material essential to the item, this same work or material will not also be measured for payment under any other contract item which may appear elsewhere in the contract, plans, or specifications.

90-03 COMPENSATION FOR ALTERED QUANTITIES. When the accepted quantities of work vary from the quantities in the proposal, the Contractor shall accept as payment in full, so far as contract items are concerned, payment at the original contract price for the accepted quantities of work actually completed and accepted. No allowance, except as provided for in the Section 40, paragraph 40-02, *ALTERATION OF WORK AND QUANTITIES*, will be made for any increased expense, loss of expected reimbursement, or loss of anticipated profits suffered or claimed by the Contractor which results directly from such alterations or indirectly from their unbalanced allocation of overhead and profit among the contract items, or from any other cause.

90-04 PAYMENT FOR OMITTED ITEMS. As specified in the Section 40, paragraph 40-03, *OMITTED ITEMS*, the RPR shall have the right to omit from the work (order nonperformance) any contract item, except major contract items, in the best interest of the Owner.

Should the RPR omit or order nonperformance of a contract item or portion of such item from the work, the Contractor shall accept payment in full at the contract prices for any work actually completed and acceptable prior to the RPR's order to omit or non-perform such contract item.

Acceptable materials ordered by the Contractor or delivered on the work prior to the date of the RPR's order will be paid for at the actual cost to the Contractor and shall thereupon become the property of the Owner.

In addition to the reimbursement hereinbefore provided, the Contractor shall be reimbursed for all actual costs incurred for the purpose of performing the omitted contract item prior to the date of the RPR's order. Such additional costs incurred by the Contractor must be directly related to the deleted contract item and shall be supported by certified statements by the Contractor as to the nature the amount of such costs.

90-05 PAYMENT FOR EXTRA WORK. Extra work, performed in accordance with the Section 40, paragraph 40-04, *EXTRA WORK*, will be paid for at the contract prices or agreed prices specified in the change order or supplemental agreement authorizing the extra work.

90-06 PARTIAL PAYMENTS. Partial payments will be made to the Contractor at least once each month as the work progresses. Said payments will be based upon estimates, prepared by the RPR, of the value of the work performed and materials complete and in place, in accordance with the contract, plans, and specifications. Such partial payments may also include the delivered actual cost of those materials stockpiled and stored in accordance with paragraph 90-07, *PAYMENT FOR MATERIALS ON HAND*. No partial payment will be made when the amount due to the Contractor since the last estimate amounts to less than five hundred dollars.

Retainage shall be 5% for all pay items.

The Owner may hold retainage from prime Contractors and provide for prompt and regular incremental acceptances of portions of the prime contract, pay retainage to prime Contractors based on these acceptances, and require a contract clause obligating the prime Contractor to pay all retainage owed to the subcontractor for satisfactory completion of the accepted work within 30 days after the Owner's payment to the prime Contractor. If Option 3 is selected, the percent withheld may range from 0% to 10% but in no case may it exceed 10%. When establishing a suitable retainage value that protects the Owner's interests, give consideration that the performance and payment bonds also provide similar protection of Owner interests. Owner may elect to incrementally release retainage if owner is satisfied its interest with completion of the project are protected in an adequate manner. If Option 3 is selected, insert the following clause and specify a suitable value where indicated:

a. From the total of the amount determined to be payable on a partial payment, five percent (5%) of such total amount will be deducted and retained by the Owner for protection of the Owner's interests. Unless otherwise instructed by the Owner, the amount retained by the Owner will be in effect until the final payment is made except as follows:

(1) Contractor may request release of retainage on work that has been partially accepted by the Owner in accordance with Section 50-14. Contractor must provide a certified invoice to the RPR that supports the value of retainage held by the Owner for partially accepted work.

(2) In lieu of retainage, the Contractor may exercise at its option the establishment of an escrow account per paragraph 90-08.

b. The Contractor is required to pay all subcontractors for satisfactory performance of their contracts no later than 30 days after the Contractor has received a partial payment. Contractor must provide the Owner evidence of prompt and full payment of retainage held by the prime Contractor to the subcontractor within 30 days after the subcontractor's work is satisfactorily completed. A subcontractor's work is satisfactorily completed when all the tasks called for in the subcontract have been accomplished and documented as required by the Owner. When the Owner has made an incremental acceptance of a portion of a prime contract, the work of a subcontractor covered by that acceptance is deemed to be satisfactorily completed.

c. When at least 95% of the work has been completed to the satisfaction of the RPR, the RPR shall, at the Owner's discretion and with the consent of the surety, prepare estimates of both the contract value and the cost of the remaining work to be done. The Owner may retain an amount not less than twice the contract value or estimated cost, whichever is greater, of the work remaining to be done. The remainder, less all previous payments and deductions, will then be certified for payment to the Contractor.

It is understood and agreed that the Contractor shall not be entitled to demand or receive partial payment based on quantities of work in excess of those provided in the proposal or covered by approved change orders or supplemental agreements, except when such excess quantities have been determined by the RPR to be a part of the final quantity for the item of work in question.

No partial payment shall bind the Owner to the acceptance of any materials or work in place as to quality or quantity. All partial payments are subject to correction at the time of final payment as provided in paragraph 90-09, *ACCEPTANCE AND FINAL PAYMENT*.

The Contractor shall deliver to the Owner a complete release of all claims for labor and material arising out of this contract before the final payment is made. If any subcontractor or supplier fails to furnish such a release in full, the Contractor may furnish a bond or other collateral satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against any potential lien or other such claim. The bond or collateral shall include all costs, expenses, and attorney fees the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging any such lien or claim.

90-07 PAYMENT FOR MATERIALS ON HAND. Partial payments may be made to the extent of the delivered cost of materials to be incorporated in the work, provided that such materials meet the requirements of the contract, plans, and specifications and are delivered to acceptable sites on the airport property or at other sites in the vicinity that are acceptable to the Owner. Such delivered costs of stored or stockpiled materials may be included in the next partial payment after the following conditions are met:

a. The material has been stored or stockpiled in a manner acceptable to the RPR at or on an approved site.

b. The Contractor has furnished the RPR with acceptable evidence of the quantity and quality of such stored or stockpiled materials.

c. The Contractor has furnished the RPR with satisfactory evidence that the material and transportation costs have been paid.

d. The Contractor has furnished the Owner legal title (free of liens or encumbrances of any kind) to the material so stored or stockpiled.

e. The Contractor has furnished the Owner evidence that the material so stored or stockpiled is insured against loss by damage to or disappearance of such materials at any time prior to use in the work.

It is understood and agreed that the transfer of title and the Owner's payment for such stored or stockpiled materials shall in no way relieve the Contractor of his or her responsibility for furnishing and placing such materials in accordance with the requirements of the contract, plans, and specifications.

In no case will the amount of partial payments for materials on hand exceed the contract price for such materials or the contract price for the contract item in which the material is intended to be used.

No partial payment will be made for stored or stockpiled living or perishable plant materials.

The Contractor shall bear all costs associated with the partial payment of stored or stockpiled materials in accordance with the provisions of this paragraph.

90-08 PAYMENT OF WITHHELD FUNDS. At the Contractor's option, if an Owner withholds retainage in accordance with the methods described in paragraph 90-06, *PARTIAL PAYMENTS*, the Contractor may request that the Owner deposit the retainage into an escrow account. The Owner's deposit of retainage into an escrow account is subject to the following conditions:

a. The Contractor shall bear all expenses of establishing and maintaining an escrow account and escrow agreement acceptable to the Owner.

b. The Contractor shall deposit to and maintain in such escrow only those securities or bank certificates of deposit as are acceptable to the Owner and having a value not less than the retainage that would otherwise be withheld from partial payment.

c. The Contractor shall enter into an escrow agreement satisfactory to the Owner.

d. The Contractor shall obtain the written consent of the surety to such agreement.

90-09 ACCEPTANCE AND FINAL PAYMENT. When the contract work has been accepted in accordance with the requirements of the Section 50, paragraph 50-15, *FINAL ACCEPTANCE*, the RPR will prepare the final estimate of the items of work actually performed. The Contractor shall approve the RPR's final estimate or advise the RPR of the Contractor's objections to the final estimate which are based on disputes in measurements or computations of the final quantities to be paid under the contract as amended by change order or supplemental agreement. The Contractor and the RPR shall resolve all disputes (if any) in the measurement and computation of final quantities to be paid within 30 calendar days of the Contractor's receipt of the RPR's final estimate. If, after such 30-day period, a dispute still exists, the Contractor may approve the RPR's estimate under protest of the quantities in dispute, and such disputed quantities shall be considered by the Owner as a claim in accordance with the Section 50, paragraph 50-16, *CLAIMS FOR ADJUSTMENT AND DISPUTES*.

After the Contractor has approved, or approved under protest, the RPR's final estimate, and after the RPR's receipt of the project closeout documentation required in paragraph 90-11, *CONTRACTOR FINAL PROJECT DOCUMENTATION*, final payment will be processed based on the entire sum, or the undisputed sum in case of approval under protest, determined to be due the Contractor less all previous payments and all amounts to be deducted under the provisions of the contract. All prior partial estimates and payments shall be subject to correction in the final estimate and payment.

If the Contractor has filed a claim for additional compensation under the provisions of the Section 50, paragraph 50- 16, *CLAIMS FOR ADJUSTMENTS AND DISPUTES*, or under the provisions of this subsection, such claims will be considered by the Owner in accordance with local laws or ordinances. Upon final adjudication of such claims, any additional payment determined to be due the Contractor will be paid pursuant to a supplemental final estimate.

90-10 CONSTRUCTION WARRANTY.

b. In addition to any other warranties in this contract, the Contractor warrants that work performed under this contract conforms to the contract requirements and is free of any defect in equipment, material, workmanship, or design furnished, or performed by the Contractor or any subcontractor or supplier at any tier.

b. This warranty shall continue for a period of one year from the date of final acceptance of the work, except as noted. If the Owner takes possession of any part of the work before final acceptance, this warranty shall continue for a period of one year from the date the Owner takes possession. **However, this will not relieve the Contractor from corrective items required by the final acceptance of the project work. Light Emitting Diode emitting diode (LED) light fixtures with the exception of obstruction lighting, must be warranted by the manufacturer for a minimum of four (4) years after date of installation inclusive of all electronics.**

c. The Contractor shall remedy at the Contractor's expense any failure to conform, or any defect. In addition, the Contractor shall remedy at the Contractor's expense any damage to Owner real or personal property, when that damage is the result of the Contractor's failure to conform to contract requirements; or any defect of equipment, material, workmanship, or design furnished by the Contractor.

d. The Contractor shall restore any work damaged in fulfilling the terms and conditions of this clause. The Contractor's warranty with respect to work repaired or replaced will run for one year from the date of repair or replacement.

e. The Owner will notify the Contractor, in writing, within [seven (7)] days after the discovery of any failure, defect, or damage.

f. If the Contractor fails to remedy any failure, defect, or damage within [14] days after receipt of notice, the Owner shall have the right to replace, repair, or otherwise remedy the failure, defect, or damage at the Contractor's expense.

g. With respect to all warranties, express or implied, from subcontractors, manufacturers, or suppliers for work performed and materials furnished under this contract, the Contractor shall: (1) Obtain all warranties that would be given in normal commercial practice; (2) Require all warranties to be executed, in writing, for the benefit of the Owner, as directed by the Owner, and (3) Enforce all warranties for the benefit of the Owner.

h. This warranty shall not limit the Owner's rights with respect to latent defects, gross mistakes, or fraud.

90-11 CONTRACTOR FINAL PROJECT DOCUMENTATION. Approval of final payment to the Contractor is contingent upon completion and submittal of the items listed below. The final payment will not be approved until the RPR approves the Contractor's final submittal. The Contractor shall:

a. Provide two (2) copies of all manufacturer's warranties specified for materials, equipment, and installations.

b. Provide weekly payroll records (not previously received) from the general Contractor and all subcontractors.

c. Complete final cleanup in accordance with Section 40, paragraph 40-08, *FINAL CLEANUP*.

d. Complete all punch list items identified during the Final Inspection.

e. Provide complete release of all claims for labor and material arising out of the Contract.

f. Provide a certification statement signed by the subcontractors, indicating actual amounts paid to the Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) subcontractors and/or suppliers associated with the project. A sample certification letter is available on the MoDOT Aviation website.

g. When applicable per state requirements, return copies of sales tax completion forms.

h. Manufacturer's certifications for all items incorporated in the work.

i. All required record drawings, as-built drawings or as-constructed drawings.

j. Project Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Manual.

k. Security for Construction Warranty.

l. Equipment commissioning documentation submitted, if required.

m. After the final inspection has been completed, a Notice of Contractor's Final Settlement will be issued for publication in accordance with applicable state, local, and federal requirements.

n. Contractor is required to submit on company letterhead that all wages, material purchases, and subcontractors have been paid in full.

o. Provide an Affidavit of Compliance (PW-4) from the general Contractor and all subcontractors that affirms under oath that the party has fully complied with Missouri Prevailing Wage Law.

p. List of all subcontractors used on the project with final dollar value of subcontracts and DBE subcontractors identified.

q. All test results in format required by the FAA. All tests results must be approved and accepted by the FAA before the RPR is authorized to release any retainage amounts.

Final payment will not be authorized until these items have been completed."

~~~~~~

END OF SECTION 90
~~~~~~

Intentionally Left Blank

GENERAL CONSTRUCTION ITEMS

ITEM C-100
CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL PROGRAM (CQCP)

100-01 GENERAL. Quality is more than test results. Quality is the combination of proper materials, testing, workmanship, equipment, inspection, and documentation of the project. Establishing and maintaining a culture of quality is key to achieving a quality project. The Contractor shall establish, provide, and maintain an effective Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP) that details the methods and procedures that will be taken to assure that all materials and completed construction required by this contract conform to contract plans, technical specifications and other requirements, whether manufactured by the Contractor, or procured from subcontractors or vendors. Although guidelines are established and certain minimum requirements are specified here and elsewhere in the contract technical specifications, the Contractor shall assume full responsibility for accomplishing the stated purpose.

The Contractor shall establish a CQCP that will:

a. Provide qualified personnel to develop and implement the CQCP.
b. Provide for the production of acceptable quality materials.
c. Provide sufficient information to assure that the specification requirements can be met.
d. Document the CQCP process.

The Contractor shall not begin any construction or production of materials to be incorporated into the completed work until the CQCP has been reviewed and approved by the Resident Project Representative (RPR). No partial payment will be made for materials subject to specific quality control (QC) requirements until the CQCP has been reviewed and approved.

The QC requirements contained in this section and elsewhere in the contract technical specifications are in addition to and separate from the quality assurance (QA) testing requirements. QA testing requirements are the responsibility of the RPR or Contractor as specified in the specifications.

A Quality Control (QC)/Quality Assurance (QA) workshop with the Engineer, Resident Project Representative (RPR), Contractor, subcontractors, testing laboratories, and Owner's representative must be held prior to start of construction. The QC/QA workshop will be facilitated by the Contractor. The Contractor shall coordinate with the Airport and the RPR on time and location of the QC/QA workshop. Items to be addressed, at a minimum, will include:

a. Review of the CQCP including submittals, QC Testing, Action & Suspension Limits for Production, Corrective Action Plans, Distribution of QC reports, and Control Charts.
b. Discussion of the QA program.
c. Discussion of the QC and QA Organization and authority including coordination and information exchange between QC and QA.
d. Establish regular meetings to discuss control of materials, methods and testing.
e. Establishment of the overall QC culture.

100-02 DESCRIPTION OF PROGRAM.

a. General description. The Contractor shall establish a CQCP to perform QC inspection and testing of all items of work required by the technical specifications, including those performed by subcontractors. The CQCP shall ensure conformance to applicable specifications and plans with respect to materials, off-site fabrication, workmanship, construction, finish, and functional performance. The CQCP shall be effective for control of all construction work performed under this Contract and shall specifically include

surveillance and tests required by the technical specifications, in addition to other requirements of this section and any other activities deemed necessary by the Contractor to establish an effective level of QC.

b. Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP). The Contractor shall describe the CQCP in a written document that shall be reviewed and approved by the RPR prior to the start of any production, construction, or off-site fabrication. The written CQCP shall be submitted to the RPR for review and approval at least [ten] calendar days before the CQCP Workshop. The Contractor's CQCP and QC testing laboratory must be approved in writing by the RPR prior to the Notice to Proceed (NTP).

The CQCP shall be organized to address, as a minimum, the following items:

1. QC organization and resumes of key staff
2. Project progress schedule
3. Submittals schedule
4. Inspection requirements
5. QC testing plan
6. Documentation of QC activities and distribution of QC reports
7. Requirements for corrective action when QC and/or QA acceptance criteria are not met
8. Material quality and construction means and methods. Address all elements applicable to the project that affect the quality of the pavement structure including subgrade, subbase, base, and surface course. Some elements that must be addressed include, but is not limited to mix design, aggregate grading, stockpile management, mixing and transporting, placing and finishing, quality control testing and inspection, smoothness, laydown plan, equipment, and temperature management plan.

The Contractor must add any additional elements to the CQCP that is necessary to adequately control all production and/or construction processes required by this contract.

100-03 CQCP ORGANIZATION. The CQCP shall be implemented by the establishment of a QC organization. An organizational chart shall be developed to show all QC personnel, their authority, and how these personnel integrate with other management/production and construction functions and personnel.

The organizational chart shall identify all QC staff by name and function, and shall indicate the total staff required to implement all elements of the CQCP, including inspection and testing for each item of work. If necessary, different technicians can be used for specific inspection and testing functions for different items of work. If an outside organization or independent testing laboratory is used for implementation of all or part of the CQCP, the personnel assigned shall be subject to the qualification requirements of paragraph 100-03a and 100-03b. The organizational chart shall indicate which personnel are Contractor employees and which are provided by an outside organization.

The QC organization shall, as a minimum, consist of the following personnel:

a. Program Administrator. The Contractor Quality Control Program Administrator (CQCPA) must be a full-time employee of the Contractor, or a consultant engaged by the Contractor. The CQCPA must have a minimum of five (5) years of experience in QC construction with prior QC experience on a project of comparable size and scope as the contract.

Included in the five (5) years of paving experience, the CQCPA must meet at least one of the following requirements:

(1) Professional Engineer with one (1) year of airport paving experience.
(2) Engineer-in-training with two (2) years of airport paving experience.
(3) National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) Civil Engineering Technology Level IV with three (3) years of highway and/or airport paving experience.

(4) An individual with four (4) years of highway and/or airport paving experience, with a Bachelor of Science Degree in Civil Engineering, Civil Engineering Technology or Construction.

CQCPA must have full authority to institute any and all actions necessary for the successful implementation of the CQCP to ensure compliance with the contract plans and technical specifications. The CQCPA authority must include the ability to immediately stop production until materials and/or processes are in compliance with contract specifications. The CQCPA must report directly to a principal officer of the construction firm. The CQCPA may supervise the Quality Control Program on more than one project provided that person can be at the job site within two (2) hours after being notified of a problem.

b. QC technicians. A sufficient number of QC technicians necessary to adequately implement the CQCP shall be provided. These personnel shall be either Engineers, engineering technicians, or experienced craftsman with qualifications in the appropriate field equivalent to NICET Level II in Civil Engineering Technology or higher, and shall have a minimum of two (2) years of experience in their area of expertise.

The QC technicians must report directly to the CQPA and shall perform the following functions:

(1) Inspection of all materials, construction, plant, and equipment for conformance to the technical specifications, and as required by subsection 100-06.
(2) Performance of all QC tests as required by the technical specifications and subsection 100-07.
(3) Performance of tests for the RPR when required by the technical specifications.

Certification at an equivalent level of qualification and experience by a state or nationally recognized organization will be acceptable in lieu of NICET certification.

c. Staffing levels. The Contractor shall provide sufficient qualified QC personnel to monitor each work activity at all times. Where material is being produced in a plant for incorporation into the work, separate plant and field technicians shall be provided at each plant and field placement location. The scheduling and coordinating of all inspection and testing must match the type and pace of work activity. The CQCP shall state where different technicians will be required for different work elements.

100-04 PROJECT PROGRESS SCHEDULE. Critical QC activities must be shown on the project schedule as required by Section 80, paragraph 80-03, *EXECUTION AND PROGRESS*.

100-05 SUBMITTALS SCHEDULE. The Contractor shall submit a detailed listing of all submittals (for example, mix designs, material certifications) and shop drawings required by the technical specifications. The listing can be developed in a spreadsheet format and shall include as a minimum:

a. Specification item number
b. Item description
c. Description of submittal
d. Specification paragraph requiring submittal
e. Scheduled date of submittal

100-06 INSPECTION REQUIREMENTS. QC inspection functions shall be organized to provide inspections for all definable features of work, as detailed below. All inspections shall be documented by the Contractor as specified by paragraph 100-09.

Inspections shall be performed daily as needed to ensure continuing compliance with contract requirements until completion of the particular feature of work. These shall include the following minimum requirements:

a. During plant operation for material production, QC test results and periodic inspections shall be used to ensure the quality of aggregates and other mix components, and to adjust and control mix proportioning to meet the approved mix design and other requirements of the technical specifications. All equipment

used in proportioning and mixing shall be inspected to ensure its proper operating condition. The CQCP shall detail how these and other functions will be accomplished and used.

b. During field operations, QC test results and periodic inspections shall be used to ensure the quality of all materials and workmanship. All equipment used in placing, finishing, and compacting shall be inspected to ensure its proper operating condition and to ensure that all such operations are in conformance to the technical specifications and are within the plan dimensions, lines, grades, and tolerances specified. The CQCP shall document how these and other functions will be accomplished and used.

100-07 CONTRACTOR QC TESTING FACILITY.

a. For projects that include Item P-401, Item P-403, and Item P-404, the Contractor shall ensure facilities, including all necessary equipment, materials, and current reference standards, are provided that meet requirements in the following paragraphs of ASTM D3666, *Standard Specification for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Testing and Inspecting Road and Paving Materials*:

- 8.1.3 Equipment Calibration and Checks;
- 8.1.9 Equipment Calibration, Standardization, and Check Records;
- 8.1.12 Test Methods and Procedures

b. For projects that include P-501, the Contractor shall ensure facilities, including all necessary equipment, materials, and current reference standards, are provided that meet requirements in the following paragraphs of ASTM C1077, Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation:

- 7 Test Methods and Procedures
- 8 Facilities, Equipment, and Supplemental Procedures

100-08 QC TESTING PLAN. As a part of the overall CQCP, the Contractor shall implement a QC testing plan, as required by the technical specifications. The testing plan shall include the minimum tests and test frequencies required by each technical specification Item, as well as any additional QC tests that the Contractor deems necessary to adequately control production and/or construction processes.

The QC testing plan can be developed in a spreadsheet fashion and shall, as a minimum, include the following:

a. Specification item number (e.g., P-401)
b. Item description (e.g., Hot Mix Asphalt Pavements)
c. Test type (e.g., gradation, grade, asphalt content)
d. Test standard (e.g., ASTM or American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) test number, as applicable)
e. Test frequency (e.g., as required by technical specifications or minimum frequency when requirements are not stated)
f. Responsibility (e.g., plant technician)
g. Control requirements (e.g., target, permissible deviations)

The QC testing plan shall contain a statistically-based procedure of random sampling for acquiring test samples in accordance with ASTM D3665. The RPR shall be provided the opportunity to witness QC sampling and testing.

All QC test results shall be documented by the Contractor as required by subsection 100-09.

100-09 DOCUMENTATION. The Contractor shall maintain current QC records of all inspections and tests performed. These records shall include factual evidence that the required QC inspections or tests have been

performed, including type and number of inspections or tests involved; results of inspections or tests; nature of defects, deviations, causes for rejection, etc.; proposed remedial action; and corrective actions taken.

These records must cover both conforming and defective or deficient features, and must include a statement that all supplies and materials incorporated in the work are in full compliance with the terms of the contract. Legible copies of these records shall be furnished to the RPR daily. The records shall cover all work placed subsequent to the previously furnished records and shall be verified and signed by the CQCPA.

Contractor QC records required for the contract shall include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following records:

a. Daily inspection reports. Each Contractor QC technician shall maintain a daily log of all inspections performed for both Contractor and subcontractor operations. These technician's daily reports shall provide factual evidence that continuous QC inspections have been performed and shall, as a minimum, include the following:

(1) Technical specification item number and description
(2) Compliance with approved submittals
(3) Proper storage of materials and equipment
(4) Proper operation of all equipment
(5) Adherence to plans and technical specifications
(6) Summary of any necessary corrective actions
(7) Safety inspection.
[(8) Photographs and/or video]

The daily inspection reports shall identify all QC inspections and QC tests conducted, results of inspections, location and nature of defects found, causes for rejection, and remedial or corrective actions taken or proposed.

The daily inspection reports shall be signed by the responsible QC technician and the CQCPA. The RPR shall be provided at least one copy of each daily inspection report on the work day following the day of record. When QC inspection and test results are recorded and transmitted electronically, the results must be archived.

b. Daily test reports. The Contractor shall be responsible for establishing a system that will record all QC test results. Daily test reports shall document the following information:

(1) Technical specification item number and description
(2) Test designation
(3) Location
(4) Date of test
(5) Control requirements
(6) Test results
(7) Causes for rejection
(8) Recommended remedial actions
(9) Retests

Test results from each day's work period shall be submitted to the RPR prior to the start of the next day's work period. When required by the technical specifications, the Contractor shall maintain statistical QC charts. When QC daily test

100-10 CORRECTIVE ACTION REQUIREMENTS. The CQCP shall indicate the appropriate action to be taken when a process is deemed, or believed, to be out of control (out of tolerance) and detail what action will be taken to bring the process into control. The requirements for corrective action shall include both general

requirements for operation of the CQCP as a whole, and for individual items of work contained in the technical specifications.

The CQCP shall detail how the results of QC inspections and tests will be used for determining the need for corrective action and shall contain clear sets of rules to gauge when a process is out of control and the type of correction to be taken to regain process control.

When applicable or required by the technical specifications, the Contractor shall establish and use statistical QC charts for individual QC tests. The requirements for corrective action shall be linked to the control charts.

100-11 INSPECTION AND/OR OBSERVATIONS BY RPR. All items of material and equipment are subject to inspection and/or observation by the RPR at the point of production, manufacture or shipment to determine if the Contractor, producer, manufacturer or shipper maintains an adequate QC system in conformance with the requirements detailed here and the applicable technical specifications and plans. In addition, all items of materials, equipment and work in place shall be subject to inspection and/or observation by the RPR at the site for the same purpose.

Inspection and/or observations by the RPR does not relieve the Contractor of performing QC inspections of either on-site or off-site Contractor's or subcontractor's work.

100-12 NONCOMPLIANCE.

a. The Resident Project Representative (RPR) will provide written notice to the Contractor of any noncompliance with their CQCP. After receipt of such notice, the Contractor must take corrective action.

b. When QC activities do not comply with either the CQCP or the contract provisions, or when the Contractor fails to properly operate and maintain an effective CQCP, and no effective corrective actions have been taken after notification of noncompliance, the RPR will recommend the Owner take the following actions:

(1) Order the Contractor to replace ineffective or unqualified QC personnel or subcontractors and/or.
(2) Order the Contractor to stop operations until appropriate corrective actions are taken.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

100-13 BASIS OF MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT. Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP) is for the personnel, tests, facilities and documentation required to implement the CQCP. The CQCP will be paid as a lump sum with the following schedule of partial payments:

a. With first pay request, 25% with approval of CQCP and completion of the Quality Control (QC)/Quality Assurance (QA) workshop.
b. When 25% or more of the original contract is earned, an additional 25%.
c. When 50% or more of the original contract is earned, an additional 20%.
d. When 75% or more of the original contract is earned, an additional 20%
e. After final inspection and acceptance of project, the final 10%.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

100-14 Payment will be made under:

[Item C-100 Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP) **]**

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET)

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C1077	Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation
ASTM D3665	Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials
ASTM D3666	Standard Specification for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Testing and Inspecting Road and Paving Materials

END OF ITEM C-100

Item C-102
TEMPORARY AIR AND WATER POLLUTION, SOIL EROSION, AND SILTATION CONTROL

Refer to advisory circular (AC) 150/5200-33, Hazardous Wildlife Attractants on or Near Airports, and the FAA/USDA Wildlife Hazard Management at Airports, A Manual for Airport Personnel, for information on hazardous wildlife attractants. The documents are available at the following website: www.faa.gov/airports/airport_safety/wildlife/**.**

102-1. Description. This item shall consist of temporary control measures as shown on the plans or as ordered by the Resident Project Representative (RPR) during the life of a contract to control pollution of air and water, soil erosion, and siltation through the use of silt fences, berms, dikes, dams, sediment basins, fiber mats, gravel, mulches, grasses, slope drains, and other erosion control devices or methods.

Temporary erosion control shall be in accordance with the approved erosion control plan; the approved Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP) and AC 150/5370-2, *Operational Safety on Airports During Construction*. The temporary erosion control measures contained herein shall be coordinated with the permanent erosion control measures specified as part of this contract to the extent practical to assure economical, effective, and continuous erosion control throughout the construction period.

Temporary control may include work outside the construction limits such as borrow pit operations, equipment and material storage sites, waste areas, and temporary plant sites.

Temporary control measures shall be designed, installed and maintained to minimize the creation of wildlife attractants that have the potential to attract hazardous wildlife on or near public-use airports.

MATERIALS

102-2.1 Grass. Grass that will not compete with the grasses sown later for permanent cover per Item T-901shall be a quick-growing species (such as ryegrass, Italian ryegrass, or cereal grasses) suitable to the area providing a temporary cover. Selected grass species shall not create a wildlife attractant.

102-2.2 Mulches. Mulches may be hay, straw, fiber mats, netting, bark, wood chips, or other suitable material reasonably clean and free of noxious weeds and deleterious materials per Item T-908. Mulches shall not create a wildlife attractant.

102-2.3 Fertilizer. Fertilizer shall be a standard commercial grade and shall conform to all federal and state regulations and to the standards of the Association of Official Agricultural Chemists.

102-2.4 Slope drains. Slope drains may be constructed of pipe, fiber mats, rubble, concrete, asphalt, or other materials that will adequately control erosion.

102-2.5 Silt fence. Silt fence shall consist of polymeric filaments which are formed into a stable network such that filaments retain their relative positions. Synthetic filter fabric shall contain ultraviolet ray inhibitors and stabilizers to provide a minimum of six months of expected usable construction life. Silt fence shall meet the requirements of ASTM D6461.

102-2.6 Other. All other materials shall meet commercial grade standards and shall be approved by the RPR before being incorporated into the project.

CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

102-3.1 General. In the event of conflict between these requirements and pollution control laws, rules, or regulations of other federal, state, or local agencies, the more restrictive laws, rules, or regulations shall apply. The RPR shall be responsible for assuring compliance to the extent that construction practices, construction operations, and construction work are involved.

102-3.2 Schedule. Prior to the start of construction, the Contractor shall submit schedules in accordance with the approved Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP) and the plans for accomplishment of temporary and permanent erosion control work for clearing and grubbing; grading; construction; paving; and structures at watercourses. The Contractor shall also submit a proposed method of erosion and dust control on haul roads and borrow pits and a plan for disposal of waste materials. Work shall not be started until the erosion control schedules and methods of operation for the applicable construction have been accepted by the RPR.

102-3.3 Construction details. The Contractor will be required to incorporate all permanent erosion control features into the project at the earliest practicable time as outlined in the plans and approved CSPP. Except where future construction operations will damage slopes, the Contractor shall perform the permanent seeding and mulching and other specified slope protection work in stages, as soon as substantial areas of exposed slopes can be made available. Temporary erosion and pollution control measures will be used to correct conditions that develop during construction that were not foreseen during the design stage; that are needed prior to installation of permanent control features; or that are needed temporarily to control erosion that develops during normal construction practices, but are not associated with permanent control features on the project.

Where erosion may be a problem, schedule and perform clearing and grubbing operations so that grading operations and permanent erosion control features can follow immediately if project conditions permit. Temporary erosion control measures are required if permanent measures cannot immediately follow grading operations. The RPR shall limit the area of clearing and grubbing, excavation, borrow, and embankment operations in progress, commensurate with the Contractor's capability and progress in keeping the finish grading, mulching, seeding, and other such permanent control measures current with the accepted schedule. If seasonal limitations make such coordination unrealistic, temporary erosion control measures shall be taken immediately to the extent feasible and justified as directed by the RPR.

The Contractor shall provide immediate permanent or temporary pollution control measures to minimize contamination of adjacent streams or other watercourses, lakes, ponds, or other areas of water impoundment as directed by the RPR. If temporary erosion and pollution control measures are required due to the Contractor's negligence, carelessness, or failure to install permanent controls as a part of the work as scheduled or directed by the RPR, the work shall be performed by the Contractor and the cost shall be incidental to this item.

The RPR may increase or decrease the area of erodible earth material that can be exposed at any time based on an analysis of project conditions.

The erosion control features installed by the Contractor shall be maintained by the Contractor during the construction period.

Provide temporary structures whenever construction equipment must cross watercourses at frequent intervals. Pollutants such as fuels, lubricants, bitumen, raw sewage, wash water from concrete mixing operations, and other harmful materials shall not be discharged into any waterways, impoundments or into natural or manmade channels.

102-3.4 Installation, maintenance and removal of silt fence. Silt fences shall extend a minimum of 16 inches (41 cm) and a maximum of 34 inches (86 cm) above the ground surface. Posts shall be set no more than 10 feet (3 m) on center. Filter fabric shall be cut from a continuous roll to the length required minimizing joints where possible. When joints are necessary, the fabric shall be spliced at a support post with a minimum 12-inch (300-mm) overlap and securely sealed. A trench shall be excavated approximately 4 inches (100 mm) deep by 4 inches (100 mm) wide on the upslope side of the silt fence. The trench shall be backfilled and the soil compacted over the silt fence fabric. The Contractor shall remove and dispose of silt that accumulates during construction and prior to establishment of permanent erosion control. The fence shall be maintained in good working condition until permanent erosion control is established. Silt fence shall be removed upon approval of the RPR.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

102-4.1 Temporary erosion and pollution control work required will be performed as scheduled or directed by the RPR. Completed and accepted work will be measured as follows:

a. Temporary seeding and mulching will be measured by the square yard (square meter).
b. Temporary slope drains will be measured by the linear foot (meter).
c. Temporary benches, dikes, dams, and sediment basins will be measured by the cubic yard (cubic meter) of excavation performed, including necessary cleaning of sediment basins, and the cubic yard (cubic meter) of embankment placed as directed by the RPR.
d. All fertilizing will be measured by the ton (kg).
e. Installation and removal of silt fence will be measured by the Lump sum.

102-4.2 Control work performed for protection of construction areas outside the construction limits, such as borrow and waste areas, haul roads, equipment and material storage sites, and temporary plant sites, will not be measured and paid for directly but shall be considered as a subsidiary obligation of the Contractor.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

102-5.1 Accepted quantities of temporary water pollution, soil erosion, and siltation control work ordered by the RPR and measured as provided in paragraph 102-4.1 will be paid for under:

Item C-102-5.1a	Temporary seeding and mulching - per square yard (square meter)
Item C-102-5.1b	Temporary slope drains - per linear foot (meter)
Item C-102-5.1c	Temporary benches, dikes, dams and sediment basins - per cubic yard (cubic meter)
Item C-102-5.1d	Fertilizing - per ton (kg)
Item C-102-5.1e	Installation and removal of silt fence per lump sum

Where other directed work falls within the specifications for a work item that has a contract price, the units of work shall be measured and paid for at the contract unit price bid for the various items.

Temporary control features not covered by contract items that are ordered by the RPR will be paid for in accordance with Section 90, paragraph 90-05 *PAYMENT FOR EXTRA WORK*.

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

Advisory Circulars (AC)

AC 150/5200-33	*Hazardous Wildlife Attractants on or Near Airports*
AC 150/5370-2	*Operational Safety on Airports During Construction*

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM D6461	*Standard Specification for Silt Fence Materials*

United States Department of Agriculture (USDA)

FAA/USDA Wildlife Hazard Management at Airports, A Manual for Airport Personnel

END OF ITEM C-102

ITEM C-105
MOBILIZATION

105-1 DESCRIPTION. This item shall consist of, but is not limited to, work and operations necessary for the movement of personnel, equipment, facilities, material and supplies to and from the project site for work on the project except as provided in the contract as separate pay items.

105-2 Mobilization limit. Mobilization shall be limited to **[** 10 **]** percent of the total project cost.

105-3 POSTED NOTICES. Prior to commencement of construction activities, the Contractor must post the following documents in a prominent and accessible place where they may be easily viewed by all employees of the prime Contractor and by all employees of subcontractors engaged by the prime Contractor: Equal Employment Opportunity (EEO) Poster "Equal Employment Opportunity is the Law" in accordance with the Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs Executive Order 11246, as amended; Davis Bacon Wage Poster (WH 1321) - DOL "Notice to All Employees" Poster; and State Wage Rates from the Project Manual and Applicable Davis-Bacon Wage Rate Determination. These notices must remain posted until final acceptance of the work by the Owner.

105-4 ENGINEER/RPR FIELD OFFICE. An Engineer/RPR field office is not required.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

105-5 BASIS OF MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT. Based upon the contract lump sum price for "Mobilization" partial payments will be allowed as follows:

- **a.** With first pay request, 25%.
- **b.** When 25% or more of the original contract is earned, an additional 25%.
- **c.** When 50% or more of the original contract is earned, an additional 40%.
- **d.** After Final Inspection, Staging area clean-up and delivery of all Project Closeout materials as required by Section 90, paragraph 90-11, *Contractor Final Project Documentation,* the final 10%.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

105-6 Payment will be made under:

[Item C-105 Mobilization **]**

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs (OFCCP)

Executive Order 11246, as amended

EEOC-P/E-1 – Equal Employment Opportunity is the Law Poster

END OF ITEM C-105

2702

ITEM C-110
METHOD OF ESTIMATING PERCENTAGE OF MATERIAL WITHIN SPECIFICATION LIMITS (PWL)

110-01 GENERAL. When the specifications provide for acceptance of material based on the method of estimating percentage of material within specification limits (PWL), the PWL will be determined in accordance with this section. All test results for a lot will be analyzed statistically to determine the total estimated percent of the lot that is within specification limits. The PWL is computed using the sample average (X) and sample standard deviation (S_n) of the specified number (n) of sublots for the lot and the specification tolerance limits, L for lower and U for upper, for the particular acceptance parameter. From these values, the respective Quality index, Q_L for Lower Quality Index and/or Q_U for Upper Quality Index, is computed and the PWL for the lot for the specified n is determined from Table 1. All specification limits specified in the technical sections shall be absolute values. Test results used in the calculations shall be to the significant figure given in the test procedure.

There is some degree of uncertainty (risk) in the measurement for acceptance because only a small fraction of production material (the population) is sampled and tested. This uncertainty exists because all portions of the production material have the same probability to be randomly sampled. The Contractor's risk is the probability that material produced at the acceptable quality level is rejected or subjected to a pay adjustment. The Owner's risk is the probability that material produced at the rejectable quality level is accepted.

It is the intent of this section to inform the Contractor that, in order to consistently offset the Contractor's risk for material evaluated, production quality (using population average and population standard deviation) must be maintained at the acceptable quality specified or higher. In all cases, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to produce at quality levels that will meet the specified acceptance criteria when sampled and tested at the frequencies specified.

110-02 METHOD FOR COMPUTING PWL. The computational sequence for computing PWL is as follows:

a. Divide the lot into n sublots in accordance with the acceptance requirements of the specification.

b. Locate the random sampling position within the sublot in accordance with the requirements of the specification.

c. Make a measurement at each location, or take a test portion and make the measurement on the test portion in accordance with the testing requirements of the specification.

d. Find the sample average (X) for all sublot values within the lot by using the following formula:

$$\mathbf{X = (x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \ldots x_n) / n}$$

Where: X = Sample average of all sublot values within a lot
$x_1, x_2, \ldots x_n$ = Individual sublot values
n = Number of sublot test values

e. Find the sample standard deviation (S_n) by use of the following formula:

$$\mathbf{S_n = [(d_1^2 + d_2^2 + d_3^2 + \ldots d_n^2)/(n-1)]^{1/2}}$$

Where: S_n = Sample standard deviation of the number of sublot test values in the set
$d_1, d_2, \ldots d_n$ = Deviations of the individual sublot test values $x_1, x_2, \ldots$ from the average value X that is: $d_1 = (x_1 - X)$, $d_2 = (x_2 - X) \ldots d_n = (x_n - X)$
n = Number of sublots test values

f. For single sided specification limits (that is, L only), compute the Lower Quality Index Q_L by use of the following formula:

$$\mathbf{Q_L = (X - L) / S_n}$$

Where: L = specification lower tolerance limit

Estimate the percentage of material within limits (PWL) by entering Table 1 with Q_L, using the column appropriate to the total number (n) of measurements. If the value of Q_L falls between values shown on the table, use the next higher value of PWL.

g. For double-sided specification limits (that is, L and U), compute the Quality Indexes Q_L and Q_U by use of the following formulas:

$$\mathbf{Q_L = (X - L) / S_n}$$

and

$$\mathbf{Q_U = (U - X) / S_n}$$

Where: L and U = specification lower and upper tolerance limits

Estimate the percentage of material between the lower (L) and upper (U) tolerance limits (PWL) by entering Table 1 separately with Q_L and Q_U, using the column appropriate to the total number (n) of measurements, and determining the percent of material above P_L and percent of material below P_U for each tolerance limit. If the values of Q_L fall between values shown on the table, use the next higher value of P_L or P_U. Determine the PWL by use of the following formula:

$$\mathbf{PWL = (P_U + P_L) - 100}$$

Where: P_L = percent within lower specification limit
P_U = percent within upper specification limit

EXAMPLE OF PWL CALCULATION

Project: Example Project

Test Item: Item P-401, Lot A.

A. PWL Determination for Mat Density.

1. Density of four random cores taken from Lot A.
   A-1 = 96.60
   A-2 = 97.55
   A-3 = 99.30
   A-4 = 98.35
   n = 4

2. Calculate average density for the lot.
   $X = (x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \ldots x_n) / n$
   $X = (96.60 + 97.55 + 99.30 + 98.35) / 4$
   X = 97.95% density

3. Calculate the standard deviation for the lot.
   $S_n = [((96.60 - 97.95)^2 + (97.55 - 97.95)^2 + (99.30 - 97.95)^2 + (98.35 - 97.95)^2)) / (4 - 1)]^{1/2}$
   $S_n = [(1.82 + 0.16 + 1.82 + 0.16) / 3]^{1/2}$
   $S_n = 1.15$

4. Calculate the Lower Quality Index Q_L for the lot. (L=96.3)
   $Q_L = (X - L) / S_n$
   $Q_L = (97.95 - 96.30) / 1.15$
   $Q_L = 1.4348$

5. Determine PWL by entering Table 1 with $Q_L = 1.44$ and n= 4.
   PWL = 98

B. PWL Determination for Air Voids.

1. Air Voids of four random samples taken from Lot A.
   A-1 = 5.00
   A-2 = 3.74
   A-3 = 2.30
   A-4 = 3.25

2. Calculate the average air voids for the lot.
   $X = (x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \ldots x_n) / n$
   $X = (5.00 + 3.74 + 2.30 + 3.25) / 4$
   X = 3.57%

3. Calculate the standard deviation S_n for the lot.
   $S_n = [((3.57 - 5.00)^2 + (3.57 - 3.74)^2 + (3.57 - 2.30)^2 + (3.57 - 3.25)^2) / (4 - 1)]^{1/2}$
   $S_n = [(2.04 + 0.03 + 1.62 + 0.10) / 3]^{1/2}$
   $S_n = 1.12$

4. Calculate the Lower Quality Index Q_L for the lot. (L= 2.0)
   $Q_L = (X - L) / S_n$
   $Q_L = (3.57 - 2.00) / 1.12$
   $Q_L = 1.3992$

5. Determine P_L by entering Table 1 with $Q_L = 1.41$ and n = 4.
   $P_L = 97$

6. Calculate the Upper Quality Index Q_U for the lot. (U= 5.0)
   $Q_U = (U - X) / S_n$
   $Q_U = (5.00 - 3.57) / 1.12$
   $Q_U = 1.2702$

7. Determine P_U by entering Table 1 with $Q_U = 1.29$ and n = 4.
   $P_U = 93$

8. Calculate Air Voids PWL
   $PWL = (P_L + P_U) - 100$
   $PWL = (97 + 93) - 100 = 90$

EXAMPLE OF OUTLIER CALCULATION (REFERENCE ASTM E178)

Project: Example Project

Test Item: Item P-401, Lot A.

A. Outlier Determination for Mat Density.

1. Density of four random cores taken from Lot A arranged in descending order.
   A-3 = 99.30
   A-4 = 98.35
   A-2 = 97.55
   A-1 = 96.60

2. From ASTM E178, Table 1, for n=4 an upper 5% significance level, the critical value for test criterion = 1.463.

3. Use average density, standard deviation, and test criterion value to evaluate density measurements.

   a. For measurements greater than the average:
   If (measurement - average)/(standard deviation) is less than test criterion, then the measurement is not considered an outlier
   For A-3, check if (99.30 - 97.95) / 1.15 is greater than 1.463.
   Since 1.174 is less than 1.463, the value is not an outlier.

   b. For measurements less than the average:
   If (average - measurement)/(standard deviation) is less than test criterion, then the measurement is not considered an outlier.
   For A-1, check if (97.95 - 96.60) / 1.15 is greater than 1.463.
   Since 1.435 is less than 1.463, the value is not an outlier.

Note: In this example, a measurement would be considered an outlier if the density were:

Greater than (97.95 + 1.463 × 1.15) = 99.63%

OR

less than (97.95 - 1.463 × 1.15) = 96.27%.

Table 1. Table for Estimating Percent of Lot Within Limits (PWL)

Percent Within Limits (P_L and P_U)	Positive Values of Q (Q_L and Q_U)							
	n=3	n=4	n=5	n=6	n=7	n=8	n=9	n=10
99	1.1541	1.4700	1.6714	1.8008	1.8888	1.9520	1.9994	2.0362
98	1.1524	1.4400	1.6016	1.6982	1.7612	1.8053	1.8379	1.8630
97	1.1496	1.4100	1.5427	1.6181	1.6661	1.6993	1.7235	1.7420
96	1.1456	1.3800	1.4897	1.5497	1.5871	1.6127	1.6313	1.6454
95	1.1405	1.3500	1.4407	1.4887	1.5181	1.5381	1.5525	1.5635
94	1.1342	1.3200	1.3946	1.4329	1.4561	1.4717	1.4829	1.4914
93	1.1269	1.2900	1.3508	1.3810	1.3991	1.4112	1.4199	1.4265
92	1.1184	1.2600	1.3088	1.3323	1.3461	1.3554	1.3620	1.3670
91	1.1089	1.2300	1.2683	1.2860	1.2964	1.3032	1.3081	1.3118
90	1.0982	1.2000	1.2290	1.2419	1.2492	1.2541	1.2576	1.2602
89	1.0864	1.1700	1.1909	1.1995	1.2043	1.2075	1.2098	1.2115
88	1.0736	1.1400	1.1537	1.1587	1.1613	1.1630	1.1643	1.1653
87	1.0597	1.1100	1.1173	1.1192	1.1199	1.1204	1.1208	1.1212
86	1.0448	1.0800	1.0817	1.0808	1.0800	1.0794	1.0791	1.0789
85	1.0288	1.0500	1.0467	1.0435	1.0413	1.0399	1.0389	1.0382
84	1.0119	1.0200	1.0124	1.0071	1.0037	1.0015	1.0000	0.9990
83	0.9939	0.9900	0.9785	0.9715	0.9671	0.9643	0.9624	0.9610
82	0.9749	0.9600	0.9452	0.9367	0.9315	0.9281	0.9258	0.9241
81	0.9550	0.9300	0.9123	0.9025	0.8966	0.8928	0.8901	0.8882
80	0.9342	0.9000	0.8799	0.8690	0.8625	0.8583	0.8554	0.8533
79	0.9124	0.8700	0.8478	0.8360	0.8291	0.8245	0.8214	0.8192
78	0.8897	0.8400	0.8160	0.8036	0.7962	0.7915	0.7882	0.7858
77	0.8662	0.8100	0.7846	0.7716	0.7640	0.7590	0.7556	0.7531
76	0.8417	0.7800	0.7535	0.7401	0.7322	0.7271	0.7236	0.7211
75	0.8165	0.7500	0.7226	0.7089	0.7009	0.6958	0.6922	0.6896
74	0.7904	0.7200	0.6921	0.6781	0.6701	0.6649	0.6613	0.6587
73	0.7636	0.6900	0.6617	0.6477	0.6396	0.6344	0.6308	0.6282
72	0.7360	0.6600	0.6316	0.6176	0.6095	0.6044	0.6008	0.5982
71	0.7077	0.6300	0.6016	0.5878	0.5798	0.5747	0.5712	0.5686
70	0.6787	0.6000	0.5719	0.5582	0.5504	0.5454	0.5419	0.5394
69	0.6490	0.5700	0.5423	0.5290	0.5213	0.5164	0.5130	0.5105
68	0.6187	0.5400	0.5129	0.4999	0.4924	0.4877	0.4844	0.4820
67	0.5878	0.5100	0.4836	0.4710	0.4638	0.4592	0.4560	0.4537
66	0.5563	0.4800	0.4545	0.4424	0.4355	0.4310	0.4280	0.4257
65	0.5242	0.4500	0.4255	0.4139	0.4073	0.4030	0.4001	0.3980
64	0.4916	0.4200	0.3967	0.3856	0.3793	0.3753	0.3725	0.3705
63	0.4586	0.3900	0.3679	0.3575	0.3515	0.3477	0.3451	0.3432
62	0.4251	0.3600	0.3392	0.3295	0.3239	0.3203	0.3179	0.3161
61	0.3911	0.3300	0.3107	0.3016	0.2964	0.2931	0.2908	0.2892
60	0.3568	0.3000	0.2822	0.2738	0.2691	0.2660	0.2639	0.2624
59	0.3222	0.2700	0.2537	0.2461	0.2418	0.2391	0.2372	0.2358
58	0.2872	0.2400	0.2254	0.2186	0.2147	0.2122	0.2105	0.2093
57	0.2519	0.2100	0.1971	0.1911	0.1877	0.1855	0.1840	0.1829
56	0.2164	0.1800	0.1688	0.1636	0.1607	0.1588	0.1575	0.1566
55	0.1806	0.1500	0.1406	0.1363	0.1338	0.1322	0.1312	0.1304
54	0.1447	0.1200	0.1125	0.1090	0.1070	0.1057	0.1049	0.1042
53	0.1087	0.0900	0.0843	0.0817	0.0802	0.0793	0.0786	0.0781
52	0.0725	0.0600	0.0562	0.0544	0.0534	0.0528	0.0524	0.0521
51	0.0363	0.0300	0.0281	0.0272	0.0267	0.0264	0.0262	0.0260
50	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000

Percent Within Limits (P_L and P_U)	Negative Values of Q (Q_L and Q_U)							
	n=3	n=4	n=5	n=6	n=7	n=8	n=9	n=10
49	-0.0363	-0.0300	-0.0281	-0.0272	-0.0267	-0.0264	-0.0262	-0.0260
48	-0.0725	-0.0600	-0.0562	-0.0544	-0.0534	-0.0528	-0.0524	-0.0521
47	-0.1087	-0.0900	-0.0843	-0.0817	-0.0802	-0.0793	-0.0786	-0.0781
46	-0.1447	-0.1200	-0.1125	-0.1090	-0.1070	-0.1057	-0.1049	-0.1042
45	-0.1806	-0.1500	-0.1406	-0.1363	-0.1338	-0.1322	-0.1312	-0.1304
44	-0.2164	-0.1800	-0.1688	-0.1636	-0.1607	-0.1588	-0.1575	-0.1566
43	-0.2519	-0.2100	-0.1971	-0.1911	-0.1877	-0.1855	-0.1840	-0.1829
42	-0.2872	-0.2400	-0.2254	-0.2186	-0.2147	-0.2122	-0.2105	-0.2093
41	-0.3222	-0.2700	-0.2537	-0.2461	-0.2418	-0.2391	-0.2372	-0.2358
40	-0.3568	-0.3000	-0.2822	-0.2738	-0.2691	-0.2660	-0.2639	-0.2624
39	-0.3911	-0.3300	-0.3107	-0.3016	-0.2964	-0.2931	-0.2908	-0.2892
38	-0.4251	-0.3600	-0.3392	-0.3295	-0.3239	-0.3203	-0.3179	-0.3161
37	-0.4586	-0.3900	-0.3679	-0.3575	-0.3515	-0.3477	-0.3451	-0.3432
36	-0.4916	-0.4200	-0.3967	-0.3856	-0.3793	-0.3753	-0.3725	-0.3705
35	-0.5242	-0.4500	-0.4255	-0.4139	-0.4073	-0.4030	-0.4001	-0.3980
34	-0.5563	-0.4800	-0.4545	-0.4424	-0.4355	-0.4310	-0.4280	-0.4257
33	-0.5878	-0.5100	-0.4836	-0.4710	-0.4638	-0.4592	-0.4560	-0.4537
32	-0.6187	-0.5400	-0.5129	-0.4999	-0.4924	-0.4877	-0.4844	-0.4820
31	-0.6490	-0.5700	-0.5423	-0.5290	-0.5213	-0.5164	-0.5130	-0.5105
30	-0.6787	-0.6000	-0.5719	-0.5582	-0.5504	-0.5454	-0.5419	-0.5394
29	-0.7077	-0.6300	-0.6016	-0.5878	-0.5798	-0.5747	-0.5712	-0.5686
28	-0.7360	-0.6600	-0.6316	-0.6176	-0.6095	-0.6044	-0.6008	-0.5982
27	-0.7636	-0.6900	-0.6617	-0.6477	-0.6396	-0.6344	-0.6308	-0.6282
26	-0.7904	-0.7200	-0.6921	-0.6781	-0.6701	-0.6649	-0.6613	-0.6587
25	-0.8165	-0.7500	-0.7226	-0.7089	-0.7009	-0.6958	-0.6922	-0.6896
24	-0.8417	-0.7800	-0.7535	-0.7401	-0.7322	-0.7271	-0.7236	-0.7211
23	-0.8662	-0.8100	-0.7846	-0.7716	-0.7640	-0.7590	-0.7556	-0.7531
22	-0.8897	-0.8400	-0.8160	-0.8036	-0.7962	-0.7915	-0.7882	-0.7858
21	-0.9124	-0.8700	-0.8478	-0.8360	-0.8291	-0.8245	-0.8214	-0.8192
20	-0.9342	-0.9000	-0.8799	-0.8690	-0.8625	-0.8583	-0.8554	-0.8533
19	-0.9550	-0.9300	-0.9123	-0.9025	-0.8966	-0.8928	-0.8901	-0.8882
18	-0.9749	-0.9600	-0.9452	-0.9367	-0.9315	-0.9281	-0.9258	-0.9241
17	-0.9939	-0.9900	-0.9785	-0.9715	-0.9671	-0.9643	-0.9624	-0.9610
16	-1.0119	-1.0200	-1.0124	-1.0071	-1.0037	-1.0015	-1.0000	-0.9990
15	-1.0288	-1.0500	-1.0467	-1.0435	-1.0413	-1.0399	-1.0389	-1.0382
14	-1.0448	-1.0800	-1.0817	-1.0808	-1.0800	-1.0794	-1.0791	-1.0789
13	-1.0597	-1.1100	-1.1173	-1.1192	-1.1199	-1.1204	-1.1208	-1.1212
12	-1.0736	-1.1400	-1.1537	-1.1587	-1.1613	-1.1630	-1.1643	-1.1653
11	-1.0864	-1.1700	-1.1909	-1.1995	-1.2043	-1.2075	-1.2098	-1.2115
10	-1.0982	-1.2000	-1.2290	-1.2419	-1.2492	-1.2541	-1.2576	-1.2602
9	-1.1089	-1.2300	-1.2683	-1.2860	-1.2964	-1.3032	-1.3081	-1.3118
8	-1.1184	-1.2600	-1.3088	-1.3323	-1.3461	-1.3554	-1.3620	-1.3670
7	-1.1269	-1.2900	-1.3508	-1.3810	-1.3991	-1.4112	-1.4199	-1.4265
6	-1.1342	-1.3200	-1.3946	-1.4329	-1.4561	-1.4717	-1.4829	-1.4914
5	-1.1405	-1.3500	-1.4407	-1.4887	-1.5181	-1.5381	-1.5525	-1.5635
4	-1.1456	-1.3800	-1.4897	-1.5497	-1.5871	-1.6127	-1.6313	-1.6454
3	-1.1496	-1.4100	-1.5427	-1.6181	-1.6661	-1.6993	-1.7235	-1.7420
2	-1.1524	-1.4400	-1.6016	-1.6982	-1.7612	-1.8053	-1.8379	-1.8630
1	-1.1541	-1.4700	-1.6714	-1.8008	-1.8888	-1.9520	-1.9994	-2.0362

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM E178 Standard Practice for Dealing with Outlying Observations

END OF ITEM C-110

Intentionally Left Blank

SECTION 4

SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

PART A
FEDERAL AND STATE PROVISIONS

1. CIVIL RIGHTS ACT OF 1964, TITLE VI ASSURANCES (Reference: 49 USC § 47123, FAA Order 1400.11)

2. CIVIL RIGHTS – GENERAL (Reference: 49 USC § 47123)

3. ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS (Reference: 2 CFR § 200.333, 2 CFR § 200.336, FAA Order 5100.38)

4. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (Reference: 49 CFR Part 26)

5. PROHIBITION ON CERTAIN TELECOMMUNICATIONS AND VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SERVICES OR EQUIPMENT (Reference: *2 CFR § 200 Appendix II(K); 2 CFR § 200.216*)

6. BREACH OF CONTRACT TERMS (Reference: 2 CFR § 200 Appendix II(A))

7. VETERAN's PREFERENCE (Reference: 49 USC § 47112(c)) 7711885

8. OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH ADMINISTRATION CONSTRUCTION SAFETY TRAINING

9. DAVIS-BACON REQUIREMENTS (Reference: 2 CFR § 200 Appendix II(D), 29 CFR Part 5)

10. EQUAL OPPORTUNITY CLAUSE AND SPECIFICATIONS (Reference: 2 CFR 200, Appendix II(C), 41 CFR § 60-1.4, CFR § 60-4.3, Executive Order 11246)

11. PROHIBITION OF SEGREGATED FACILITIES (Reference: 41 CFR § 60)

12. AFFIRMATIVE ACTION REQUIREMENT (Reference: 41 CFR Part 60-4, Executive Order 11246)

13. TERMINATION OF CONTRACT (Reference: 2 CFR § 200 Appendix II(B), FAA Advisory Circular 150/5370-10, Section 80-09)

14. CONTRACT WORKHOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT REQUIREMENTS (Reference: 2 CFR § 200 Appendix II(E))

15. CLEAN AIR AND WATER POLLUTION CONTROL (Reference: 2 CFR § 200 Appendix II(G))

16. BUY AMERICAN PREFERENCE (Reference: 49 USC § 50101)

17. COPELAND "ANTI-KICKBACK" ACT (Reference: 2 CFR § 200 Appendix II(D), 29 CFR Parts 3 & 5)

18. FEDERAL FAIR LABOR STANDARDS ACT (FEDERAL MINIMUM WAGE) (Reference: 29 USC § 201, et seq.)

19. OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH ACT OF 1970 (Reference 20 CFR Part 1910)

20. DISTRACTED DRIVING (Executive Order 13513, DOT Order 3902.10)

21. PROCUREMENT OF RECOVERED MATERIALS (Reference 2 CFR § 200.322, 40 CFR Part 247)

22. RIGHT TO INVENTIONS (Reference: 2 CFR § 200 Appendix II(F), 37 CFR § 401)

23. DOMESTIC PREFERENCES FOR PROCUREMENTS

1. CIVIL RIGHTS ACT OF 1964, TITLE VI ASSURANCES

Compliance with Nondiscrimination Requirements:

During the performance of this contract, the contractor, for itself, its assignees and successors in interest (hereinafter referred to as the "contractor") agrees as follows:

1.1(a) Compliance with Regulations. The contractor (hereinafter includes consultants) will comply with the **Title VI List of Pertinent Nondiscrimination Acts and Authorities**, as they may be amended from time to time, which are herein incorporated by reference and made a part of this contract.

1.1(b) Non-discrimination. The contractor, with regard to the work performed by it during the contract, will not discriminate on the grounds of race, color, or national origin in the selection and retention of subcontractors, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment. The contractor will not participate directly or indirectly in the 7discrimination prohibited by the Acts and the Regulations, including employment practices when the contract covers any activity, project, or program set forth in Appendix B of 49 CFR part 21.

1.1(c) Solicitations for Subcontracts, Including Procurements of Materials and Equipment. In all solicitations, either by competitive bidding, or negotiation made by the contractor for work to be performed under a subcontract, including procurements of materials, or leases of equipment, each potential subcontractor or supplier will be notified by the contractor of the contractor's obligations under this contract and the Acts and the Regulations relative to Non-discrimination on the grounds of race, color, or national origin.

1.1(d) Information and Reports. The contractor will provide all information and reports required by the Acts, the Regulations, and directives issued pursuant thereto and will permit access to its books, records, accounts, other sources of information, and its facilities as may be determined by the sponsor or the Federal Aviation Administration to be pertinent to ascertain compliance with such Nondiscrimination Acts and Authorities and instructions. Where any information required of a contractor is in the exclusive possession of another who fails or refuses to furnish the information, the contractor will so certify to the sponsor or the Federal Aviation Administration, as appropriate, and will set forth what efforts it has made to obtain the information.

1.1(e) Sanctions for Noncompliance. In the event of a contractor's noncompliance with the Non-discrimination provisions of this contract, the sponsor will impose such contract sanctions as it or the Federal Aviation Administration may determine to be appropriate, including, but not limited:

a. Withholding of payments to the contractor under the contract until the contractor complies, and/or

b. Cancellation, termination, or suspension of the contract, in whole or in part.

1.1(f) Incorporation of Provisions. The contractor will include the provisions of paragraphs 1.1(a) through 1.1(f) in every subcontract, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment, unless exempt by the Acts, the Regulations and directives issued pursuant thereto. The contractor will take action with respect to any subcontract or procurement as the sponsor or the Federal Aviation Administration may direct as a means of enforcing such provisions including sanctions for noncompliance. Provided, that if the contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with litigation by a subcontractor, or supplier because of such direction, the contractor may request the sponsor to enter into any litigation to protect the interests of the sponsor. In addition, the

contractor may request the United States to enter into the litigation to protect the interests of the United States.

1.2 Title VI List of Pertinent Nondiscrimination Authorities. During the performance of this contract, the contractor, for itself, its assignees, and successors in interest (hereinafter referred to as the "contractor") agrees to comply with the following non-discrimination statutes and authorities; including but not limited to:

- Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. § 2000d *et seq*., 78 stat. 252), (prohibits discrimination on the basis of race, color, national origin);
- 49 CFR part 21 (Non-discrimination In Federally-Assisted Programs of The Department of Transportation—Effectuation of Title VI of The Civil Rights Act of 1964);
- The Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act of 1970, (42 U.S.C. § 4601), (prohibits unfair treatment of persons displaced or whose property has been acquired because of Federal or Federal-aid programs and projects);
- Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, (29 U.S.C. § 794 *et seq*.), as amended, (prohibits discrimination on the basis of disability); and 49 CFR part 27 (Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Disability in Programs or Activities Receiving Federal Financial Assistance);
- The Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended, (42 U.S.C. § 6101 *et seq*.), (prohibits discrimination on the basis of age);
- Airport and Airway Improvement Act of 1982, (49 USC § 471, Section 47123), as amended, (prohibits discrimination based on race, creed, color, national origin, or sex);
- The Civil Rights Restoration Act of 1987, (PL 100-209), (Broadened the scope, coverage and applicability of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, The Age Discrimination Act of 1975 and Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, by expanding the definition of the terms "programs or activities" to include all of the programs or activities of the Federal-aid recipients, sub-recipients and contractors, whether such programs or activities are Federally funded or not);
- Titles II and III of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, (42 USC § 12101, et seq) (prohibit discrimination on the basis of disability in the operation of public entities, public and private transportation systems, places of public accommodation, and certain testing entities) as implemented by U.S. Department of Transportation regulations at 49 CFR parts 37 and 38;
- The Federal Aviation Administration's Non-discrimination statute (49 U.S.C. § 47123) (prohibits discrimination on the basis of race, color, national origin, and sex);
- Executive Order 12898, Federal Actions to Address Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low-Income Populations(ensures nondiscrimination against minority populations by discouraging programs, policies, and activities with disproportionately high and adverse human health or environmental effects on minority and low-income populations);

- Executive Order 13166, Improving Access to Services for Persons with Limited English Proficiency, and resulting agency guidance, national origin discrimination includes discrimination because of limited English proficiency (LEP). To ensure compliance with Title VI, you must take reasonable steps to ensure that LEP persons have meaningful access to your programs ([70 Fed. Reg. 74087 (2005)];

- Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972, as amended, which prohibits you from discriminating because of sex in education programs or activities (20 USC § 1681, et seq)..

References: 49 USC § 47123, FAA Order 1400.11

2. GENERAL CIVIL RIGHTS PROVISIONS

Contract Types – The General Civil Rights Provisions found in 49 USC § 47123, derived from the Airport and Airway Improvement Act of 1982, Section 520, apply to all sponsor contracts regardless of funding source.

Use of Provision Each contract must include two civil rights provisions. The first general clause must be included in all contracts, lease agreements, or transfer agreements. An additional specific provision must be included; the applicable text is based on whether the contract is a general contract or whether the contract is a lease or transfer agreement. The Sponsor must incorporate the text of the appropriate general clause and specific clause without modification into the contract, lease, or transfer agreement.

GENERAL CIVIL RIGHTS PROVISIONS

In all its activities within the scope of its airport program, the Contractor agrees to comply with pertinent statutes, Executive Orders, and such rules as identified in Title VI List of Pertinent Nondiscrimination Acts and Authorities to ensure that no person shall, on the grounds of race, color, national origin (including limited English proficiency), creed, sex (including sexual orientation and gender identity), age, or disability be excluded from participating in any activity conducted with or benefiting from Federal assistance.

This provision is in addition to that required by Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964

The above provision binds the Contractor and subcontractors from the bid solicitation period through the completion of the contract

If the Contractor transfers its obligation to another, the transferee is obligated in the same manner as the Contractor.

The above provision obligates the Contractor for the period during which the property is owned, used or possessed by the Contractor and the airport remains obligated to the Federal Aviation Administration.

References: 49 USC § 47123

3. ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS

The Contractor must maintain an acceptable cost accounting system. The Contractor agrees to provide the Owner, the Federal Aviation Administration and the Comptroller General of the United States or any of their duly authorized representatives access to any books, documents, papers, and records of the Contractor which are directly pertinent to the specific contract for the purpose of making audit, examination, excerpts and transcriptions. The Contractor agrees to maintain all books, records and reports required under this contract for a period of not less than three years after final payment is made and all pending matters are closed.

References: 2 CFR § 200.333, 2 CFR § 200.336, FAA Order 5100.38

4. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISES

Where used in this provision, "Department of Transportation" or "DOT" refers to the United States Department of Transportation. "MoDOT" refers to the Missouri Department of Transportation and the Missouri Highways and Transportation Commission.

Policy. It is the policy of the Department of Transportation that disadvantaged business enterprises as defined in 49 CFR Part 26 shall have the maximum opportunity to participate in the performance of contracts financed in whole or in part with Federal funds under this agreement. Consequently, the DBE requirements of 49 CFR Part 26, apply to this agreement.

Contract Assurance. MoDOT and the Sponsor will ensure that the following clause is placed in every USDOT assisted contract and subcontract.

"The contractor or subcontractor shall not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, or sex in the performance of this contract. The contractor shall carry out applicable requirements of 49 CFR Part 26 in the award and administration of DOT assisted contracts. Failure by the contractor to carry out these requirements is a material breach of this contract, which may result in the termination of this contract or such other remedy, as the recipient deems appropriate."

(This assurance shall be included in each subcontract the prime contractor signs with a subcontractor.)

Federal Financial Assistance Agreement Assurances. MoDOT and the Sponsor agree to and incorporate the following assurance into the day to day operations and the administration of all USDOT assisted contracts; where "recipient" mean MoDOT and any MoDOT grantee receiving USDOT assistance:

"MoDOT or the Sponsor shall not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, or sex in the award and performance of any USDOT assisted contract or in the administration of its DBE Program or the requirements of 49 CFR Part 26. The recipient shall take all necessary and reasonable steps under 49 CFR Part 26 to ensure nondiscrimination in the award and administration of USDOT assisted contracts. The recipient's DBE Program, as required by 49 CFR Part 26 and as approved by USDOT, is incorporated by reference in this agreement.

Implementation of this program is a legal obligation and failure to carry out its approved program, the Department may impose sanctions as provided for under Part 26 and may, in appropriate cases, refer the matter for enforcement under 18 U.S.C. 1001 and/or the Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act of 1986 (31 U.S.C. 3801 et seq.)."

MoDOT and the Sponsor ensure that all recipients of USDOT assisted contracts, funds, or grants incorporate, agree to and comply with the assurance statement.

Prompt Payment. MoDOT and the Sponsor require all contractors to pay all subcontractors and suppliers under this prime contract for satisfactory performance of its contract in compliance with the prompt payment statute, Mo. Revised Statutes, Chapter 34, Section 34.057 (included below). MoDOT and the Sponsor also requires the prompt, as defined in Section 34.057, return of all retainage held on all subcontractors after the subcontractor's work is satisfactorily completed, as MoDOT and the Sponsor personnel may ultimately determine (if necessary). These prompt payment requirements apply to both DBE and non-DBE subcontractors.

All contractors and subcontractors must retain records of all payments, made or received, for 3 years from the date of final payment and must be available for inspection, upon request, by any authorized representative of MoDOT, the Sponsor or USDOT. MoDOT and the city will maintain records of actual payments to DBE firms for work committed to at the time of contract award.

MoDOT and the Sponsor will perform audits of contract payments to firms. The audits will review payments to subcontractors to ensure that the actual amount paid to DBE subcontractors equals or exceeds the dollar amounts stated in the schedule of DBE participation and that payment was made in compliance with Missouri Revised Statutes, Chapter 34, Section 34.057.

Termination of DBE Subcontracts (49 CFR § 26.53(f); The prime contractor must not terminate a DBE subcontractor listed in response to [include Solicitation paragraph number where paragraph 12.3.1, Solicitation Language appears] (or an approved substitute DBE firm) without prior written consent of [Name of Recipient]. This includes, but is not limited to, instances in which the prime contractor seeks to perform work originally designated for a DBE subcontractor with its own forces or those of an affiliate, a non-DBE firm, or with another DBE firm.

The prime contractor shall utilize the specific DBEs listed to perform the work and supply the materials for which each is listed unless the contractor obtains written consent [Name of Recipient]. Unless [Name of Recipient] consent is provided, the prime contractor shall not be entitled to any payment for work or material unless it is performed or supplied by the listed DBE.

[Name of Recipient] may provide such written consent only if [Name of Recipient] agrees, for reasons stated in the concurrence document, that the prime contractor has good cause to terminate the DBE firm. For purposes of this paragraph, good cause includes the circumstances listed in 49 CFR §26.53. Before transmitting to [Name of Recipient] its request to terminate and/or substitute a DBE subcontractor, the prime contractor must give notice in writing to the DBE subcontractor, with a copy to [Name of Recipient], of its intent to request to terminate and/or substitute, and the reason for the request. The prime contractor must give the DBE five days to respond to the prime contractor's notice and advise [Name of Recipient] and the contractor of the reasons, if any, why it objects to the proposed termination of its subcontract and why [Name of Recipient] should not approve the prime contractor's action. If required in a particular case as a matter of public necessity (e.g., safety), [Name of Recipient] may provide a response period shorter than five days.

In addition to post-award terminations, the provisions of this section apply to preaward deletions of or substitutions for DBE firms put forward by offerors in negotiated procurements.

MISSOURI REVISED STATUTES

Chapter 34
State Purchasing and Printing
Section 34.057

August 28, 2014

Public works contracts--prompt payment by public owner to contractor, engineer, architect, or surveyor--prompt payment by contractor to subcontractor-- progress payments--retainage--late payment charges-- withholding of payments.

34.057. 1. Unless contrary to any federal funding requirements or unless funds from a state grant are not timely received by the contracting public municipality but notwithstanding any other law to the contrary, all public works contracts made and awarded by the appropriate officer, board or agency of the state or of a political subdivision of the state or of any district therein, including any municipality, county and any board referred to as the public owner, for construction, reconstruction or alteration of any public works project, shall provide for prompt payment by the public owner to the contractor, and any professional engineer, architect, landscape architect, or land surveyor, as well as prompt payment by the contractor to the subcontractor and material supplier in accordance with the following:

(1) A public owner shall make progress payments to the contractor and any professional engineer, architect, landscape architect or land surveyor on at least a monthly basis as the work progresses, or, on a lump sum basis according to the terms of the lump sum contract. Except in the case of lump sum contracts, payments shall be based upon estimates prepared at least monthly of work performed and material delivered, as determined by the project architect or engineer. Retainage withheld on any construction contract or subcontract for public works projects shall not exceed five percent of the value of the contract or subcontract. If the contractor is not required to obtain a bond under section 107.170 because the cost of the public works contract is not estimated to exceed fifty thousand dollars, the public owner may withhold retainage on the public works project in an amount not to exceed ten percent of the value of the contract or subcontract. The public owner shall pay the contractor the amount due, less a retainage, within thirty days following the latter of the following:

(a) The date of delivery of materials or construction services purchased;

(b) The date, as designated by the public owner, upon which the invoice is duly delivered to the person or place designated by the public owner; or

(c) In those instances in which the contractor approves the public owner's estimate, the date upon which such notice of approval is duly delivered to the person or place designated by the public owner;

(2) Payments shall be considered received within the context of this section when they are duly posted with the United States Postal Service or other agreed upon delivery service or when they are hand-delivered to an authorized person or place as agreed to by the contracting parties;

(3) If, in the discretion of the owner and the project architect or engineer and the contractor, it is determined that a subcontractor's performance has been completed and the subcontractor can be released prior to substantial completion of the public works contract without risk to the public owner, the contractor shall request such adjustment in retainage, if any, from the public owner as necessary to enable the contractor to pay the subcontractor

in full. The public owner may reduce or eliminate retainage on any contract payment if, in the public owner's opinion, the work is proceeding satisfactorily. If retainage is released and there are any remaining minor items to be completed, an amount equal to one hundred fifty percent of the value of each item as determined by the public owner's duly authorized representatives shall be withheld until such item or items are completed;

(4) The public owner shall pay at least ninety-eight percent of the retainage, less any offsets or deductions authorized in the contract or otherwise authorized by law, to the contractor. The contractor shall pay the subcontractor or supplier after substantial completion of the contract work and acceptance by the public owner's authorized contract representative, or as may otherwise be provided by the contract specifications for state highway, road or bridge projects administered by the state highways and transportation commission. Such payment shall be made within thirty days after acceptance, and the invoice and all other appropriate documentation and certifications in complete and acceptable form are provided, as may be required by the contract documents. If the public owner or the owner's representative determines the work is not substantially completed and accepted, then the owner or the owner's representative shall provide a written explanation of why the work is not considered substantially completed and accepted within fourteen calendar days to the contractor, who shall then provide such notice to the subcontractor or suppliers responsible for such work. If such written explanation is not given by the public body, the public body shall pay at least ninety-eight percent of the retainage within thirty calendar days. If at that time there are any remaining minor items to be completed, an amount equal to one hundred fifty percent of the value of each item as determined by the public owner's representative shall be withheld until such items are completed;

(5) All estimates or invoices for supplies and services purchased, approved and processed, or final payments, shall be paid promptly and shall be subject to late payment charges provided in this section. Except as provided in subsection 4 of this section, if the contractor has not been paid within thirty days as set forth in subdivision (1) of subsection 1 of this section, the contracting agency shall pay the contractor, in addition to the payment due him, interest at the rate of one and one-half percent per month calculated from the expiration of the thirty-day period until fully paid;

(6) When a contractor receives any payment, the contractor shall pay each subcontractor and material supplier in proportion to the work completed by each subcontractor and material supplier his application less any retention not to exceed five percent. If the contractor receives less than the full payment due under the public construction contract, the contractor shall be obligated to disburse on a pro rata basis those funds received, with the contractor, subcontractors and material suppliers each receiving a prorated portion based on the amount of payment. When, however, the public owner does not release the full payment due under the contract because there are specific areas of work or materials he is rejecting or because he has otherwise determined such areas are not suitable for payment then those specific subcontractors or suppliers involved shall not be paid for that portion of the work rejected or deemed not suitable for payment; provided the public owner or the owner's representative gives a written explanation to the contractor, subcontractor, or supplier involved as to why the work or supplies were rejected or deemed not suitable for payment, and all other subcontractors and suppliers shall be paid in full;

(7) If the contractor, without reasonable cause, fails to make any payment to his subcontractors and material suppliers within fifteen days after receipt of payment under the public construction contract, the contractor shall pay to his subcontractors and material suppliers, in addition to the payment due them, interest in the amount of one and one-half percent per month, calculated from the expiration of the fifteen-day period until fully paid. This subdivision shall also apply to any payments made by subcontractors and material suppliers to their subcontractors and material suppliers and to all payments made to lower tier subcontractors and material suppliers throughout the contracting chain;

(8) The public owner shall make final payment of all moneys owed to the contractor, including any retainage withheld under subdivision (4) of this subsection, less any offsets or deductions authorized in the contract or otherwise authorized by law, within thirty days of the due date. Final payment shall be considered due upon the earliest of the following events:

(a) Completion of the project and filing with the owner of all required documentation and certifications, in complete and acceptable form, in accordance with the terms and conditions of the contract;

(b) The project is certified by the architect or engineer authorized to make such certification on behalf of the owner as having been completed, including the filing of all documentation and certifications required by the contract, in complete and acceptable form; or

(c) The project is certified by the contracting authority as having been completed, including the filing of all documentation and certifications required by the contract, in complete and acceptable form.

(9) Nothing in this section shall prevent the contractor or subcontractor, at the time of application or certification to the public owner or contractor, from withholding such applications or certifications to the owner or contractor for payment to the subcontractor or material supplier. Amounts intended to be withheld shall not be included in such applications or certifications to the public owner or contractor. Reasons for withholding such applications or certifications shall include, but not be limited to, the following: unsatisfactory job progress; defective construction work or material not remedied; disputed work; failure to comply with other material provisions of the contract; third-party claims filed or reasonable evidence that a claim will be filed; failure of the subcontractor to make timely payments for labor, equipment and materials; damage to a contractor or another subcontractor or material supplier; reasonable evidence that the contract cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the subcontract sum or a reasonable amount for retention, not to exceed the initial percentage retained by the owner.

(10) Should the contractor determine, after application or certification has been made and after payment has been received from the public owner, or after payment has been received by a contractor based upon the public owner's estimate of materials in place and work performed as provided by contract, that all or a portion of the moneys needs to be withheld from a specific subcontractor or material supplier for any of the reasons enumerated in this section, and such moneys are withheld from such subcontractor or material supplier, then such undistributed amounts shall be specifically identified in writing and deducted from the next application or certification made to the public owner or from the next estimate by the public owner of payment due the contractor, until a resolution of the matter has been achieved. Disputes shall be resolved in accordance with the terms of the contract documents. Upon such resolution the amounts withheld by the contractor from the subcontractor or material supplier shall be included in the next application or certification made to the public owner or the next estimate by the public owner and shall be paid promptly in accordance with the provisions of this section. This subsection shall also apply to applications or certifications made by subcontractors or material suppliers to the contractor and throughout the various tiers of the contracting chain.

(11) The contracts which provide for payments to the contractor based upon the public owner's estimate of materials in place and work performed rather than applications or certifications submitted by the contractor, the public owner shall pay the contractor within thirty days following the date upon which the estimate is required by contract to be completed by the public owner, the amount due less a retainage not to exceed five percent. All such estimates by the public owner shall be paid promptly and shall be subject to late payment charges as provided in this subsection. After the thirtieth day following the date upon which the estimate is required by contract to be completed by the public owner, the contracting agency shall pay the contractor, in addition to the payment due him, interest at a rate of one and one-half percent per month calculated from the expiration of the thirty-day period until fully paid.

(12) The public owner shall pay or cause to be paid to any professional engineer, architect, landscape architect, or land surveyor the amount due within thirty days following the receipt of an invoice prepared and submitted in accordance with the contract terms. In addition to the payment due, the contracting agency shall pay interest at the rate of one and one-half percent per month calculated from the expiration of the thirty-day period until fully paid.

(13) Nothing in this section shall prevent the owner from withholding payment or final payment from the contractor, or a subcontractor or material supplier. Reasons for withholding payment or final payment shall include, but not be limited to, the following: liquidated damages; unsatisfactory job progress; defective construction work or material not remedied; disputed work; failure to comply with any material provision of the contract; third party claims filed or reasonable evidence that a claim will be filed; failure to make timely payments for labor, equipment or materials; damage to a contractor, subcontractor or material supplier; reasonable evidence that a subcontractor

or material supplier cannot be fully compensated under its contract with the contractor for the unpaid balance of the contract sum; or citation by the enforcing authority for acts of the contractor or subcontractor which do not comply with any material provision of the contract and which result in a violation of any federal, state or local law, regulation or ordinance applicable to that project causing additional costs or damages to the owner.

(14) Nothing in this section shall be construed to require direct payment by a public owner to a subcontractor or supplier, except in the case of the default, as determined by a court, of the contractor on the contract with the public owner where no performance or payment bond is required or where the surety fails to execute its duties, as determined by a court.

(15) Notwithstanding any other provisions in this section to the contrary, no late payment interest shall be due and owing for payments which are withheld in good faith for reasonable cause pursuant to subsections 2, 5 and 6 of this section. If it is determined by a court of competent jurisdiction that a payment which was withheld pursuant to subsections 2, 5 and 6 of this section was not withheld in good faith for reasonable cause, the court may impose interest at the rate of one and one-half percent per month calculated from the date of the invoice and may, in its discretion, award reasonable attorney fees to the prevailing party. In any civil action or part of a civil action brought pursuant to this section, if a court determines after a hearing for such purpose that the cause was initiated, or a defense was asserted, or a motion was filed, or any proceeding therein was done frivolously and in bad faith, the court shall require the party who initiated such cause, asserted such defense, filed such motion, or caused such proceeding to be had to pay the other party named in such action the amount of the costs attributable thereto and reasonable expenses incurred by such party, including reasonable attorney fees.

(L. 1990 S.B. 808 & 672 § 1, A.L. 2014 S.B. 529)

(2004) Act contemplates a contract between the parties to such a cause of action and provides for such action against a public owner only by the contractor, not a subcontractor or supplier. Mays-Maune & Associates v. Werner Brothers, 139 S.W.3d 201 (Mo.App. E.D.).

MoDOT DBE Program Regulations. The Sponsor, contractor and each subcontractor are bound by the new MoDOT DBE Program regulations at Title 7 CSR, Division 10, Chapter 8.

Reference: 49 CFR Part 26

5. PROHIBITION ON CERTAIN TELECOMMUNICATIONS AND VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SERVICES OR EQUIPMENT

Sponsors and subgrant recipients are prohibited from using AIP grant funds to:

a) Procure or obtain,

b) Extend or renew a contract to procure or obtain, or

c) Enter into a contract to procure or obtain certain covered telecommunications equipment.

These restrictions apply to telecommunication equipment, services, or systems that use covered telecommunications equipment or services as a substantial or essential component of any system or as critical technology as part of any system. Covered telecommunications equipment is equipment produced or provided by Huawei Technologies Company or ZTE Corporation (or any subsidiary or affiliate of either).

The Sponsor must include this provision in all AIP funded contracts and lower-tier contracts.

Contractor and Subcontractor agree to comply with mandatory standards and policies relating to use and procurement of certain telecommunications and video surveillance services or equipment in compliance with the National Defense Authorization Act [Public Law 115-232 § 889(f)(1)].

6. BREACH OF CONTRACT TERMS

Any violation or breach of terms of this contract on the part of the Contractor or its subcontractors may result in the suspension or termination of this contract or such other action that may be necessary to enforce the rights of the parties of this agreement.

Owner will provide Contractor written notice that describes the nature of the breach and corrective actions the Contractor must undertake in order to avoid termination of the contract. The Owner reserves the right to withhold payments to the Contractor until such time the Contractor corrects the breach or the Owner elects to terminate the contract. The Owner's notice will identify a specific date by which the Contractor must correct the breach. The Owner may proceed with termination of the contract if the Contractor fails to correct the breach by the deadline indicated in the Owner's notice.

The duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and the rights and remedies available thereunder are in addition to, and not a limitation of, any duties, obligations, rights and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.

Reference: 2 CFR § 200 Appendix II(A)

7. VETERAN'S PREFERENCE

In the employment of labor (excluding executive, administrative, and supervisory positions), the Contractor and all sub-tier contractors must give preference to covered veterans as defined within Title 49 United States Code Section 47112. Covered veterans include Vietnam-era veterans, Persian Gulf veterans, Afghanistan-Iraq war veterans, disabled veterans, and small business concerns (as defined by 15 U.S.C. 632) owned and controlled by disabled veterans. This preference only applies when there are covered veterans readily available and qualified to perform the work to which the employment relates.

References: Title 49 U.S.C. 47112(c)

8. OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH ADMINISTRATION CONSTRUCTION SAFETY TRAINING

The Contractor and its subcontractors (if any subcontractors are retained) shall comply with all applicable provisions of section 292.675, Revised Statutes of Missouri, which statute is incorporated herein by reference and is made a part of this contract. Section 292.675 states that any person signing a contract to work on the construction of public works for any public body shall provide a ten hour Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) construction safety program for their on-site employees, which includes a course in construction safety and health approved by OSHA or a similar program approved by the Department of Labor and Industrial Relations which is at least as stringent as an approved OSHA program, unless such employees have previously completed the required program and hold documentation of such prior completion. All employees who have not previously completed the program are required to

complete the program within sixty (60) days of beginning work on such construction project. Any employee found on a worksite subject to section 292.675's requirements without documentation of the successful completion of this course shall have twenty (20) days to produce such documentation before being subject to removal from the project.

The Contractor shall forfeit as penalty to the public body on whose behalf the contract is made or awarded two thousand five hundred dollars ($2,500) plus one hundred dollars ($100) for each employee employed by the contractor or subcontractor, for each calendar day, or portion thereof, such employee is employed by the contractor or subcontractor without the required training. These penalties shall not begin to accrue until the sixty (60) day and twenty (20) day time periods described above have elapsed. The public body awarding the contract shall withhold and retain therefrom all sums and amounts due and owing as a result of any violation of section 292.675 when making payments to the Contractor under the contract. The Contractor may withhold from any subcontractor sufficient sums to cover any penalties the public body has withheld from the Contractor resulting from the subcontractor's failure to comply with the terms of section 292.675.

9 DAVIS BACON REQUIREMENTS

9.1 Minimum Wages.

(i) All laborers and mechanics employed or working upon the site of the work will be paid unconditionally and not less often than once a week, and without subsequent deduction or rebate on any account (except such payroll deductions as are permitted by the Secretary of Labor under the Copeland Act (29 CFR Part 3)), the full amount of wages and bona fide fringe benefits (or cash equivalent thereof) due at time of payment computed at rates not less than those contained in the wage determination of the Secretary of Labor which is attached hereto and made a part hereof, regardless of any contractual relationship which may be alleged to exist between the contractor and such laborers and mechanics.

Contributions made or costs reasonably anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits under section 1(b)(2) of the Davis-Bacon Act on behalf of laborers or mechanics are considered wages paid to such laborers or mechanics, subject to the provisions of paragraph 9.1(iv) of this section; also, regular contributions made or costs incurred for more than a weekly period (but not less often than quarterly) under plans, funds, or programs which cover the particular weekly period, are deemed to be constructively made or incurred during such weekly period. Such laborers and mechanics shall be paid the appropriate wage rate and fringe benefits on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed, without regard to skill, except as provided in 29 CFR Part 5.5(a)(4). Laborers or mechanics performing work in more than one classification may be compensated at the rate specified for each classification for the time actually worked therein: *Provided*, That the employer's payroll records accurately set forth the time spent in each classification in which work is performed. The wage determination (including any additional classification and wage rates conformed under 9.1(ii) of this section) and the Davis-Bacon poster (WH-1321) shall be posted at all times by the contractor and its subcontractors at the site of the work in a prominent and accessible place where it can easily be seen by the workers.

(ii)

(A) The contracting officer shall require that any class of laborers or mechanics, including helpers, which is not listed in the wage determination and which is to be employed under the contract shall be classified in conformance with the wage determination. The contracting officer shall approve an additional classification and wage rate and fringe benefits therefore only when the following criteria have been met:

(1) The work to be performed by the classification requested is not performed by a classification in the wage determinations; and

(2) The classification is utilized in the area by the construction industry; and

(3) The proposed wage rate, including any bona fide fringe benefits, bears a reasonable relationship to the wage rates contained in the wage determination.

(B) If the contractor and the laborers and mechanics to be employed in the classification (if known), or their representatives, and the contracting officer agree on the classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits where appropriate), a report of the action taken shall be sent by the contracting officer to the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division, Employment Standards Administration, U.S. Department of Labor, Washington, D.C. 20210. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will approve, modify, or disapprove every additional classification action within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

(C) In the event the contractor, the laborers or mechanics to be employed in the classification or their representatives, and the contracting officer do not agree on the proposed classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits where appropriate), the contracting officer shall refer the questions, including the views of all interested parties and the recommendation of the contracting officer, to the Administrator for determination. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will issue a determination within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

(D) The wage rate (including fringe benefits where appropriate) determined pursuant to subparagraphs 9.1(ii) (B) or (C) of this paragraph, shall be paid to all workers performing work in the classification under this contract from the first day on which work is performed in the classification.

(iii) Whenever the minimum wage rate prescribed in the contract for a class of laborers or mechanics includes a fringe benefit which is not expressed as an hourly rate, the contractor shall either pay the benefit as stated in the wage determination or shall pay another bona fide fringe benefit or an hourly cash equivalent thereof.

(iv) If the contractor does not make payments to a trustee or other third person, the contractor may consider as part of the wages of any laborer or mechanic the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing bona fide fringe benefits under a plan or program, *Provided*, That the Secretary of Labor has found, upon the written request of the contractor, that the applicable standards of the Davis-Bacon Act have been met. The Secretary of Labor may require the contractor to set aside in a separate account assets for the meeting of obligations under the plan or program.

9.2 Withholding. The Federal Aviation Administration or the Sponsor shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld from the contractor under this contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other Federally-assisted contract subject to Davis-Bacon prevailing wage requirements, which is held by the same prime contractor, so much of the accrued payments or advances as may be considered necessary to pay laborers and mechanics, including apprentices, trainees, and helpers, employed by the contractor or any subcontractor the full amount of wages required by the contract. In the event of failure to pay any laborer or mechanic,

including any apprentice, trainee, or helper, employed or working on the site of work, all or part of the wages required by the contract, the Federal Aviation Administration may, after written notice to the contractor, sponsor, applicant, or owner, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds until such violations have ceased.

9.3 Payrolls and basic records.

(i) Payrolls and basic records relating thereto shall be maintained by the contractor during the course of the work and preserved for a period of three years thereafter for all laborers and mechanics working at the site of the work. Such records shall contain the name, address, and social security number of each such worker, his or her correct classification, hourly rates of wages paid (including rates of contributions or costs anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits or cash equivalents thereof of the types described in 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act), daily and weekly number of hours worked, deductions made and actual wages paid. Whenever the Secretary of Labor has found under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(iv) that the wages of any laborer or mechanic include the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing benefits under a plan or program described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act, the contractor shall maintain records which show that the commitment to provide such benefits is enforceable, that the plan or program is financially responsible, and that the plan or program has been communicated in writing to the laborers or mechanics affected, and records which show the costs anticipated or the actual costs incurred in providing such benefits. Contractors employing apprentices or trainees under approved programs shall maintain written evidence of the registration of apprenticeship programs and certification of trainee programs, the registration of the apprentices and trainees, and the ratios and wage rates prescribed in the applicable programs.

(ii)

(A) The contractor shall submit weekly for each week in which any contract work is performed a copy of all payrolls to the (write in name of appropriate federal agency) if the agency is a party to the contract, but if the agency is not such a party, the contractor will submit the payrolls to the applicant, sponsor, or owner, as the case may be, for transmission to the Federal Aviation Administration. The payrolls submitted shall set out accurately and completely all of the information required to be maintained under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(3)(i), except that full social security numbers and home addresses shall not be included on weekly transmittals. Instead the payrolls shall only need to include an individually identifying number for each employee (*e.g.* , the last four digits of the employee's social security number). The required weekly payroll information may be submitted in any form desired. Optional Form WH–347 is available for this purpose from the Wage and Hour Division Web site at http://www.dol.gov/whd/forms/wh347instr.htm or its successor site. The prime contractor is responsible for the submission of copies of payrolls by all subcontractors. Contractors and subcontractors shall maintain the full social security number and current address of each covered worker, and shall provide them upon request to the (write in name of appropriate federal agency) if the agency is a party to the contract, but if the agency is not such a party, the contractor will submit them to the applicant, sponsor, or owner, as the case may be, for transmission to the (write in name of agency), the contractor, or the Wage and Hour Division of the Department of Labor for purposes of an investigation or audit of compliance with prevailing wage requirements. It is not a violation of this section for a prime contractor to require a subcontractor to provide addresses and social security numbers to the prime contractor for its own records, without weekly submission to the sponsoring government agency (or the applicant, sponsor, or owner).

(B) Each payroll submitted shall be accompanied by a "Statement of Compliance," signed by the contractor or subcontractor or his or her agent who pays or supervises the payment of the persons employed under the contract and shall certify the following:

(1) That the payroll for the payroll period contains the information required to be provided under 29 CFR § 5.5(a)(3)(ii), the appropriate information is being maintained under 29 CFR § 5.5 (a)(3)(i) and that such information is correct and complete;

(2) That each laborer and mechanic (including each helper, apprentice and trainee) employed on the contract during the payroll period has been paid the full weekly wages earned, without rebate, either directly or indirectly, and that no deductions have been made either directly or indirectly from the full wages earned, other than permissible deductions as set forth in Regulations 29 CFR Part 3;

(3) That each laborer or mechanic has been paid not less than the applicable wage rates and fringe benefits or cash equivalents for the classification of work performed, as specified in the applicable wage determination incorporated into the contract.

(C) The weekly submission of a properly executed certification set forth on the reverse side of Optional Form WH-347 shall satisfy the requirement for submission of the "Statement of Compliance" required by paragraph (3)(ii)(B) of this section.

(D) The falsification of any of the above certifications may subject the contractor or subcontractor to civil or criminal prosecution under Section 1001 of Title 18 and Section 231 of Title 31 of the United States Code.

(iii) The contractor or subcontractor shall make the records required under paragraph 9.3(i) of this section available for inspection, copying or transcription by authorized representatives of the Sponsor, the Federal Aviation Administration or the Department of Labor, and shall permit such representatives to interview employees during working hours on the job. If the contractor or subcontractor fails to submit the required records or to make them available, the Federal agency may, after written notice to the contractor, sponsor, applicant or owner, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds. Furthermore, failure to submit the required records upon request or to make such records available may be grounds for debarment action pursuant to 29 CFR 5.12.

9.4 Apprentices and Trainees.

(i) **Apprentices**. Apprentices will be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work they performed when they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a bona fide apprenticeship program registered with the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training, or with a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Bureau, or if a person is employed in his or her first 90 days of probationary employment as an apprentice in such an apprenticeship program, who is not individually registered in the program, but who has been certified by the Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training or a State Apprenticeship Agency (where appropriate) to be eligible for probationary employment as an apprentice. The allowable ratio of apprentices to journeymen on the job site in any craft classification shall not be greater than the ratio permitted to the contractor as to the entire work force under the registered program. Any worker listed on a payroll at an apprentice wage rate, who is not registered or otherwise employed as stated above, shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any

apprentice performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. Where a contractor is performing construction on a project in a locality other than that in which its program is registered, the ratios and wage rates (expressed in percentages of the journeyman's hourly rate) specified in the contractor's or subcontractor's registered program shall be observed. Every apprentice must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the registered program for the apprentice's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeymen hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Apprentices shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the apprenticeship program. If the apprenticeship program does not specify fringe benefits, apprentices must be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination for the applicable classification. If the Administrator determines that a different practice prevails for the applicable apprentice classification, fringes shall be paid in accordance with that determination. In the event the Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training, or a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Bureau, withdraws approval of an apprenticeship program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize apprentices at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.

(ii) **Trainees**. Except as provided in 29 CFR 5.16, trainees will not be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work performed unless they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a program which has received prior approval, evidenced by formal certification by the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration. The ratio of trainees to journeymen on the job site shall not be greater than permitted under the plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration. Every trainee must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the approved program for the trainee's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeyman hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Trainees shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the trainee program. If the trainee program does not mention fringe benefits, trainees shall be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination unless the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division determines that there is an apprenticeship program associated with the corresponding journeyman wage rate on the wage determination which provides for less than full fringe benefits for apprentices. Any employee listed on the payroll at a trainee rate who is not registered and participating in a training plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any trainee performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. In the event the Employment and Training Administration withdraws approval of a training program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize trainees at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.

(iii) **Equal Employment Opportunity**. The utilization of apprentices, trainees and journeymen under this part shall be in conformity with the equal employment opportunity requirements of Executive Order 11246, as amended, and 29 CFR Part 30.

9.5 Compliance With Copeland Act Requirements. The contractor shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR Part 3, which are incorporated by reference in this contract.

9.6 Subcontracts. The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses contained in 29 CFR Part 5.5(a)(1) through (10) and such other clauses as the Federal Aviation Administration may by appropriate instructions require, and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall

be responsible for the compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with all the contract clauses in 29 CFR Part 5.5.

9.7 Contract Termination: Debarment. A breach of the contract clauses in paragraphs 9.1 through 9.10 of this section may be grounds for termination of the contract, and for debarment as a contractor and a subcontractor as provided in 29 CFR 5.12.

9.8 Compliance With Davis-Bacon and Related Act Requirements. All rulings and interpretations of the Davis-Bacon and Related Acts contained in 29 CFR Parts 1, 3, and 5 are herein incorporated by reference in this contract.

9.9 Disputes Concerning Labor Standards. Disputes arising out of the labor standards provisions of this contract shall not be subject to the general disputes clause of this contract. Such disputes shall be resolved in accordance with the procedures of the Department of Labor set forth in 29 CFR Parts 5, 6 and 7. Disputes within the meaning of this clause include disputes between the contractor (or any of its subcontractors) and the contracting agency, the U.S. Department of Labor, or the employees or their representatives.

9.10 Certification of Eligibility.

(i) By entering into this contract, the contractor certifies that neither it (nor he or she) nor any person or firm who has an interest in the contractor's firm is a person or firm ineligible to be awarded Government contracts by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).

(ii) No part of this contract shall be subcontracted to any person or firm ineligible for award of a Government contract by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).

(iii) The penalty for making false statements is prescribed in the U.S. Criminal Code, 18 U.S.C. 1001.

Reference: 2 CFR § 200 Appendix II(D), 29 CFR Part 5

10. EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY CLAUSE AND SPECIFICATIONS

EQUAL OPPORTUNITY CLAUSE

During the performance of this contract, the contractor agrees as follows:

10.1 The contractor will not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, religion, sex, sexual orientation, gender identity, or national origin. The contractor will take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment without regard to their race, color, religion, sex, sexual orientation, gender identity or national origin. Such action shall include, but not be limited to the following:

Employment, upgrading, demotion, or transfer; recruitment or recruitment advertising; layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. The contractor agrees to post in conspicuous places, available to employees and applicants for employment, notices to be provided setting forth the provisions of this nondiscrimination clause.

10.2 The contractor will, in all solicitations or advertisements for employees placed by or on behalf of the contractor, state that all qualified applicants will receive considerations for employment

without regard to race, color, religion, sex, sexual orientation, gender identity, or national origin.

10.3 The Contractor will not discharge or in any other manner discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because such employee or applicant has inquired about, discussed, or disclosed the compensation of the employee or applicant or another employee or applicant. This provision shall not apply to instances in which an employee who has access to the compensation information of other employees or applicants as a part of such employee's essential job functions discloses the compensation of such other employees or applicants to individuals who do not otherwise have access to such information, unless such disclosure is in response to a formal complaint or charge, in furtherance of an investigation, proceeding, hearing, or action, including an investigation conducted by the employer, or is consistent with the contractor's legal duty to furnish information.

10.4 The Contractor will send to each labor union or representative of workers with which it has a collective bargaining agreement or other contract or understanding, a notice to be provided by the agency contracting officer, advising the labor union or workers' representative of the Contractor's commitments under this section 202 of Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, and shall post copies of the notice in conspicuous places available to employees and applicants for employment.

10.5 The contractor will comply with all provisions of Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, as amended, and of the rules, regulations, and relevant orders of the Secretary of Labor.

10.6 The contractor will furnish all information and reports required by Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, and by rules, regulations, and orders of the Secretary of Labor, or pursuant thereto, and will permit access to his books, records, and accounts by the contracting agency and the Secretary of Labor for purposes of investigation to ascertain compliance with such rules, regulations, and orders.

10.7 In the event of the Contractor's noncompliance with the nondiscrimination clauses of this contract or with any such rules, regulations, or orders, this contract may be canceled, terminated, or suspended in whole or in part and the Contractor may be declared ineligible for further Government contracts in accordance with procedures authorized in Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, and such other sanctions may be imposed and remedies invoked as provided in Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, or by rule, regulation, or order of the Secretary of Labor, or as otherwise provided by law.

10.8 The Contractor will include the provisions of paragraphs (1) through (8) in every subcontract or purchase order unless exempted by rules, regulations, or orders of the Secretary of Labor issued pursuant to section 204 of Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, so that such provisions will be binding upon each subcontractor or vendor. The Contractor will take such action with respect to any subcontract or purchase order as may be directed by the Secretary of Labor as a means of enforcing such provisions, including sanctions for noncompliance*: Provided,* however, that in the event the contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with, litigation with a subcontractor or vendor as a result of such direction, the Contractor may request the United States to enter into such litigation to protect the interests of the United States.

STANDARD FEDERAL EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT SPECIFICATIONS

10.9. As used in these specifications:

a. "Covered area" means the geographical area described in the solicitation from which this contract resulted;

b. "Director" means Director, Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs (OFCCP), U.S. Department of Labor, or any person to whom the Director delegates authority;

c. "Employer identification number" means the Federal social security number used on the Employer's Quarterly Federal Tax Return, U.S. Treasury Department Form 941;

d. "Minority" includes:

(1) Black (all) persons having origins in any of the Black African racial groups not of Hispanic origin);

(2) Hispanic (all persons of Mexican, Puerto Rican, Cuban, Central or South American, or other Spanish culture or origin regardless of race);

(3) Asian and Pacific Islander (all persons having origins in any of the original peoples of the Far East, Southeast Asia, the Indian Subcontinent, or the Pacific Islands); and

(4) American Indian or Alaskan native (all persons having origins in any of the original peoples of North America and maintaining identifiable tribal affiliations through membership and participation or community identification).

10.10. Whenever the contractor, or any subcontractor at any tier, subcontracts a portion of the work involving any construction trade, it shall physically include in each subcontract in excess of $10,000 the provisions of these specifications and the Notice which contains the applicable goals for minority and female participation and which is set forth in the solicitations from which this contract resulted.

10.11. If the contractor is participating (pursuant to 41 CFR 60-4.5) in a Hometown Plan approved by the U.S. Department of Labor in the covered area either individually or through an association, its affirmative action obligations on all work in the Plan area (including goals and timetables) shall be in accordance with that Plan for those trades which have unions participating in the Plan. Contractors must be able to demonstrate their participation in and compliance with the provisions of any such Hometown Plan. Each contractor or subcontractor participating in an approved plan is individually required to comply with its obligations under the EEO clause and to make a good faith effort to achieve each goal under the Plan in each trade in which it has employees. The overall good faith performance by other contractors or subcontractors toward a goal in an approved Plan does not excuse any covered contractor's or subcontractor's failure to take good faith efforts to achieve the Plan goals and timetables.

10.12 The contractor shall implement the specific affirmative action standards provided in paragraphs 10.14a through 10.14p of these specifications. The goals set forth in the solicitation from which this contract resulted are expressed as percentages of the total hours of employment and training of minority and female utilization the contractor should reasonably be able to achieve in each construction trade in which it has employees in the covered area. Covered construction contractors performing construction work in a geographical area where they do not have a Federal or federally assisted construction contract shall apply the minority and female goals established for the geographical area where the work is being performed. Goals are published periodically in the Federal Register in notice form, and such notices may be obtained from any Office of Federal

Contract Compliance Programs office or from Federal procurement contracting officers. The contractor is expected to make substantially uniform progress in meeting its goals in each craft during the period specified.

10.13. Neither the provisions of any collective bargaining agreement nor the failure by a union with whom the contractor has a collective bargaining agreement to refer either minorities or women shall excuse the contractor's obligations under these specifications, Executive Order 11246 or the regulations promulgated pursuant thereto.

10.14. In order for the nonworking training hours of apprentices and trainees to be counted in meeting the goals, such apprentices and trainees shall be employed by the contractor during the training period and the contractor shall have made a commitment to employ the apprentices and trainees at the completion of their training, subject to the availability of employment opportunities. Trainees shall be trained pursuant to training programs approved by the U.S. Department of Labor.

10.15. The contractor shall take specific affirmative actions to ensure equal employment opportunity. The evaluation of the contractor's compliance with these specifications shall be based upon its effort to achieve maximum results from its actions. The contractor shall document these efforts fully and shall implement affirmative action steps at least as extensive as the following:

a. Ensure and maintain a working environment free of harassment, intimidation, and coercion at all sites, and in all facilities at which the contractor's employees are assigned to work. The contractor, where possible, will assign two or more women to each construction project. The contractor shall specifically ensure that all foremen, superintendents, and other onsite supervisory personnel are aware of and carry out the contractor's obligation to maintain such a working environment, with specific attention to minority or female individuals working at such sites or in such facilities.

b. Establish and maintain a current list of minority and female recruitment sources, provide written notification to minority and female recruitment sources and to community organizations when the contractor or its unions have employment opportunities available, and maintain a record of the organizations' responses.

c. Maintain a current file of the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of each minority and female off-the-street applicant and minority or female referral from a union, a recruitment source, or community organization and of what action was taken with respect to each such individual. If such individual was sent to the union hiring hall for referral and was not referred back to the contractor by the union or, if referred, not employed by the contractor, this shall be documented in the file with the reason therefore along with whatever additional actions the contractor may have taken.

d. Provide immediate written notification to the Director when the union or unions with which the contractor has a collective bargaining agreement has not referred to the contractor a minority person or female sent by the contractor, or when the contractor has other information that the union referral process has impeded the contractor's efforts to meet its obligations.

e. Develop on-the-job training opportunities and/or participate in training programs for the area which expressly include minorities and women, including upgrading programs and apprenticeship and trainee programs relevant to the contractor's employment needs, especially those programs funded or approved by the Department of Labor. The contractor shall provide notice of these programs to the sources compiled under 10.8b above.

f. Disseminate the contractor's EEO policy by providing notice of the policy to unions and training programs and requesting their cooperation in assisting the contractor in meeting its EEO obligations; by including it in any policy manual and collective bargaining agreement; by publicizing it in the company newspaper, annual report, etc.; by specific review of the policy with all management personnel and with all minority and female employees at least once a year; and by posting the company EEO policy on bulletin boards accessible to all employees at each location where construction work is performed.

g. Review, at least annually, the company's EEO policy and affirmative action obligations under these specifications with all employees having any responsibility for hiring, assignment, layoff, termination, or other employment decisions including specific review of these items with onsite supervisory personnel such a superintendents, general foremen, etc., prior to the initiation of construction work at any job site. A written record shall be made and maintained identifying the time and place of these meetings, persons attending, subject matter discussed, and disposition of the subject matter.

h. Disseminate the contractor's EEO policy externally by including it in any advertising in the news media, specifically including minority and female news media, and providing written notification to and discussing the contractor's EEO policy with other contractors and subcontractors with whom the contractor does or anticipates doing business.

i. Direct its recruitment efforts, both oral and written, to minority, female, and community organizations, to schools with minority and female students; and to minority and female recruitment and training organizations serving the contractor's recruitment area and employment needs. Not later than one month prior to the date for the acceptance of applications for apprenticeship or other training by any recruitment source, the contractor shall send written notification to organizations, such as the above, describing the openings, screening procedures, and tests to be used in the selection process.

j. Encourage present minority and female employees to recruit other minority persons and women and, where reasonable provide after school, summer, and vacation employment to minority and female youth both on the site and in other areas of a contractor's workforce.

k. Validate all tests and other selection requirements where there is an obligation to do so under 41 CFR Part 60-3.

l. Conduct, at least annually, an inventory and evaluation at least of all minority and female personnel, for promotional opportunities and encourage these employees to seek or to prepare for, through appropriate training, etc., such opportunities.

m. Ensure that seniority practices, job classifications, work assignments, and other personnel practices do not have a discriminatory effect by continually monitoring all personnel and employment related activities to ensure that the EEO policy and the contractor's obligations under these specifications are being carried out.

n. Ensure that all facilities and company activities are non-segregated except that separate or single user toilet and necessary changing facilities shall be provided to assure privacy between the sexes.

o. Document and maintain a record of all solicitations of offers for subcontracts from minority and female construction contractors and suppliers, including circulation of solicitations to minority and female contractor associations and other business associations.

p. Conduct a review, at least annually, of all supervisors' adherence to and performance under the contractor's EEO policies and affirmative action obligations.

10.16. Contractors are encouraged to participate in voluntary associations, which assist in fulfilling one or more of their affirmative action obligations (10.14a through 10.14p). The efforts of a contractor association, joint contractor union, contractor community, or other similar groups of which the contractor is a member and participant, may be asserted as fulfilling any one or more of its obligations under 10.14a through 10.14p of these specifications provided that the contractor actively participates in the group, makes every effort to assure that the group has a positive impact on the employment of minorities and women in the industry, ensures that the concrete benefits of the program are reflected in the contractor's minority and female workforce participation, makes a good faith effort to meet its individual goals and timetables, and can provide access to documentation which demonstrates the effectiveness of actions taken on behalf of the contractor. The obligation to comply, however, is the contractor's and failure of such a group to fulfill an obligation shall not be a defense for the contractor's noncompliance.

10.17. A single goal for minorities and a separate single goal for women have been established. The Contractor, however, is required to provide equal employment opportunity and to take affirmative action for all minority groups, both male and female, and all women, both minority and non-minority. Consequently, the Contractor may be in violation of the Executive Order if a particular group is employed in a substantially disparate manner (for example, even though the Contractor has achieved its goals for women generally, the Contractor may be in violation of the Executive Order if a specific minority group of women is underutilized).

10.18. The contractor shall not use the goals and timetables or affirmative action standards to discriminate against any person because of race, color, religion, sex, sexual orientation, gender identity, or national origin.

10.19. The contractor shall not enter into any subcontract with any person or firm debarred from Government contracts pursuant to Executive Order 11246.

10.20. The contractor shall carry out such sanctions and penalties for violation of these specifications and of the Equal Opportunity Clause, including suspension, termination, and cancellation of existing subcontracts as may be imposed or ordered pursuant to Executive Order 11246, as amended, and its implementing regulations, by the Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs. Any contractor who fails to carry out such sanctions and penalties shall be in violation of these specifications and Executive Order 11246, as amended.

10.21. The contractor, in fulfilling its obligations under these specifications, shall implement specific affirmative action steps, at least as extensive as those standards prescribed in paragraph 10.14 of these specifications, so as to achieve maximum results from its efforts to ensure equal employment opportunity. If the contractor fails to comply with the requirements of the Executive Order, the implementing regulations, or these specifications, the Director shall proceed in accordance with 41 CFR 60-4.8.

10.22. The contractor shall designate a responsible official to monitor all employment related activity to ensure that the company EEO policy is being carried out, to submit reports relating to the provisions hereof as may be required by the Government, and to keep records. Records shall at least include for each employee, the name, address, telephone number, construction trade, union affiliation if any, employee identification number when assigned, social security number, race, sex, status (e.g., mechanic, apprentice, trainee, helper, or laborer), dates of changes in status, hours worked per week in the indicated trade, rate of pay, and locations at which the work was performed. Records shall be maintained in an easily understandable and retrievable form;

however, to the degree that existing records satisfy this requirement, contractors shall not be required to maintain separate records.

10.23. Nothing herein provided shall be construed as a limitation upon the application of other laws which establish different standards of compliance or upon the application of requirements for the hiring of local or other area residents (e.g., those under the Public Works Employment Act of 1977 and the Community Development Block Grant Program.

References: 2 CFR 200, Appendix II(C), 41 CFR § 60-1.4, 41 CFR § 60-4.3, Executive Order 11246

11. PROHIBITION OF SEGREGATED FACILITIES

11.1 The contractor agrees that it does not and will not maintain or provide for its employees any segregated facilities at any of its establishments, and that it does not and will permit its employees to perform their services at any location under its control where segregated facilities are maintained. The contractor agrees that a breach of this clause is a violation of the Equal Opportunity clause in this contract.

11.2 "Segregated facilities," as used in this clause, means any waiting rooms, work areas, rest rooms and wash rooms, restaurants and other eating areas, time clocks, locker rooms and other storage or dressing areas, parking lots, drinking fountains, recreation or entertainment areas, transportation, and housing facilities provided for employees, that are segregated by explicit directive or are in fact segregated on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, sexual orientation, gender identity, or national origin because of written or oral policies or employees custom. The term does not include separate or single-user rest rooms or necessary dressing or sleeping areas provided to assure privacy between the sexes.

11.3 The contractor shall include this clause in every subcontract and purchase order that is subject to the Equal Opportunity clause of this contract.

References: 41 CFR § 60. 2 CFR Part 200, Appendix II(C)

12. AFFIRMATIVE ACTION REQUIREMENT

12.1 The Offeror's or Bidder's attention is called to the "Equal Opportunity Clause" and the "Standard Federal Equal Employment Opportunity Construction Contract Specifications" set forth herein.

12.2 The goals and timetables for minority and female participation, expressed in percentage terms for the contractor's aggregate workforce in each trade on all construction work in the covered area, are as follows:

Timetables:

-Goals for minority participation for each trade: Minority Goal 0%
(Vol.45 Federal Register pg. 65984 10/3/80
Participation Goals for Minorities and Females

-Goals for female participation in each trade: 6.9% (Nationwide Percentage)

If the contractor performs construction work in a geographical area located outside of the covered area, it shall apply the goals established for such geographical area where the work is actually performed. With regard to this second area, the contractor also is subject to the goals for both its federally involved and non-federally involved construction.

The contractor's compliance with the Executive Order and the regulations in 41 CFR Part 60-4 shall be based on its implementation of the Equal Opportunity Clause, specific affirmative action obligations required by the specifications set forth in 41 CFR 60-4.3(a), and its efforts to meet the goals. The hours of minority and female employment and training must be substantially uniform throughout the length of the contract, and in each trade, and the contractor shall make a good faith effort to employ minorities and women evenly on each of its projects. The transfer of minority or female employees or trainees from contractor to contractor or from project to project, for the sole purpose of meeting the contractor's goals, shall be a violation of the contract, the Executive Order, and the regulations in 41 CFR Part 60-4. Compliance with the goals will be measured against the total work hours performed

12.3 The contractor shall provide written notification to the Director of the Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs (OFCCP), within 10 working days of award of any construction subcontract in excess of $10,000 at any tier for construction work under the contract resulting from this solicitation. The notification shall list the name, address, and telephone number of the subcontractor; employer identification number of the subcontractor; estimated dollar amount of the subcontract; estimated starting and completion dates of the subcontract; and the geographical area in which the subcontract is to be performed

12.4 As used in this notice and in the contract resulting from this solicitation, the "covered area" is Jefferson City in the State of Missouri .

References: 41 CFR Part 60-4, Executive Order 11246

13. TERMINATION OF CONTRACT

13.1 Termination for Convenience (Construction and Equipment Contracts):

The Owner may terminate this contract in whole or in part at any time by providing written notice to the Contractor. Such action may be without cause and without prejudice to any other right or remedy of Owner. Upon receipt of a written notice of termination, except as explicitly directed by the Owner, the Contractor shall immediately proceed with the following obligations regardless of any delay in determining or adjusting amounts under this clause:

a. Contractor must immediately discontinue work as specified in the written notice.

b. Terminate all subcontracts to the extent they relate to the work terminated under the notice.

c. Discontinue orders for materials and services except as directed by the written notice.

d. Deliver to the Owner all fabricated and partially fabricated parts, completed and partially completed work, supplies, equipment and materials acquired prior to termination of the work and as directed in the written notice.

e. Complete performance of the work not terminated by the notice.

f. Take action as directed by the Owner to protect and preserve property and work related to this contract of which Owner will take possession.

Owner agrees to pay Contractor for:

a. Completed and acceptable work executed in accordance with the contract documents prior to the effective date of termination;

b. Documented expenses sustained prior to the effective date of termination in performing work and furnishing labor, materials, or equipment as required by the contract documents in connection with uncompleted work;

c. Reasonable and substantiated claims, costs and damages incurred in settlement of terminated contracts with subcontractors and suppliers; and

d. Reasonable and substantiated expenses to the contractor directly attributable to Owner's termination action.

Owner will not pay Contractor for loss of anticipated profits or revenues or other economic loss arising out of or resulting from the Owner's termination action.

The rights and remedies this clause provides are in addition to any other rights and remedies provided by law or under this contract.

13.2 Termination for Cause (Construction):

Section 80-09 of FAA Advisory Circular 150/5370-10 establishes standard language for conditions, rights and remedies associated with Owner termination of this contract for cause due to default of the Contractor.

13.3 Termination for Cause (Equipment):

The Owner may, by written notice of default to the Contractor, terminate all or part of this Contract for cause if the Contractor:

a. Fails to begin the Work under the Contract within the time specified in the Notice to Proceed;

b. Fails to make adequate progress as to endanger performance of this Contract in accordance with its terms;

c. Fails to make delivery of the equipment within the time specified in the Contract, including any Owner approved extensions;

d. Fails to comply with material provisions of the Contract;

e. Submits certifications made under the Contract and as part of their proposal that include false or fraudulent statements;

f. Becomes insolvent or declares bankruptcy;

If one or more of the stated events occur, the Owner will give notice in writing to the Contractor and Surety of its intent to terminate the contract for cause. At the Owner's discretion, the notice may allow the Contractor and Surety an opportunity to cure the breach or default.

If within ten days of the receipt of notice, the Contractor or Surety fails to remedy the breach or default to the satisfaction of the Owner, the Owner has authority to acquire equipment by other procurement

action. The Contractor will be liable to the Owner for any excess costs the Owner incurs for acquiring such similar equipment.

Payment for completed equipment delivered to and accepted by the Owner shall be at the Contract price. The Owner may withhold from amounts otherwise due the Contractor for such completed equipment such sum as the Owner determines to be necessary to protect the Owner against loss because of Contractor default.

Owner will not terminate the Contractor's right to proceed with the Work under this clause if the delay in completing the work arises from unforeseeable causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor. Examples of such acceptable causes include: acts of God; acts of the Owner; acts of another Contractor in the performance of a contract with the Owner; and severe weather events that substantially exceed normal conditions for the location.

If, after termination of the Contractor's right to proceed, the Owner determines that the Contractor was not in default, or that the delay was excusable, the rights and obligations of the parties will be the same as if the Owner issued the termination for the convenience of the Owner.

The rights and remedies of the Owner in this clause are in addition to any other rights and remedies provided by law or under this contract

References: 2 CFR § 200 Appendix II(B), FAA Advisory Circular 150/5370-10, Section 80-09

14. CONTRACT WORKHOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT REQUIREMENTS

14.1 Overtime Requirements. No contractor or subcontractor contracting for any part of the contract work which may require or involve the employment of laborers or mechanics shall require or permit any such laborer or mechanic, including watchmen and guards, in any workweek in which he or she is employed on such work to work in excess of forty hours in such workweek unless such laborer or mechanic receives compensation at a rate not less than one and one-half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of forty hours in such work week.

14.2 Violation; Liability for Unpaid Wages; Liquidated Damages. In the event of any violation of the clause set forth in paragraph 14.1 above, the contractor or any subcontractor responsible therefore shall be liable for the unpaid wages. In addition, such contractor and subcontractor shall be liable to the United States (in the case of work done under contract for the District of Columbia or a territory, to such District or to such territory), for liquidated damages. Such liquidated damages shall be computed with respect to each individual laborer or mechanic, including watchmen and guards, employed in violation of the clause set forth in paragraph 14.1 above, in the sum of $29 for each calendar day on which such individual was required or permitted to work in excess of the standard workweek of forty hours without payment of the overtime wages required by the clause set forth in paragraph 14.1 above.

14.3 Withholding for Unpaid Wages and Liquidated Damages. The Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) or the Owner shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld, from any moneys payable on account of work performed by the contractor or subcontractor under any such contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other Federally-assisted contract subject to the Coact Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, which is held by the same prime contractor, such sums as may be determined to be necessary to satisfy any liabilities of such contractor or subcontractor for unpaid wages and liquidated damages as provided in the clause set forth in paragraph 14.2 of this clause.

14.4 Subcontractors. The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses set forth in paragraphs 14.1 through 14.4 and also a clause requiring the subcontractor to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with the clauses set forth in paragraphs 141 through 14.4 of this clause.

References: 2 CFR § 200 Appendix II (E). 2 CFR § 5.5(b), 40 USC § 3702, 40 USC § 3704

15. CLEAN AIR AND WATER POLLUTION CONTROL

Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders, and regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. § 740-7671q) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act as amended (33 U.S.C. § 1251-1387). The Contractor agrees to report any violation to the Owner immediately upon discovery. The Owner assumes responsibility for notifying the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and the Federal Aviation Administration.

Contractor must include this requirement in all subcontracts that exceed $150,000.

References: 2 CFR § 200 Appendix II(G)

16. BUY AMERICAN PREFERENCE

The Contractor certifies that its bid/offer is in compliance with 49 USC § 50101, BABA and other related Made in America Laws,2 U.S. statutes, guidance, and FAA policies, which provide that Federal funds may not be obligated unless all iron, steel and manufactured goods used in AIP funded projects are produced in the United States, unless the Federal Aviation Administration has issued a waiver for the product; the product is listed as an Excepted Article, Material Or Supply in Federal Acquisition Regulation subpart 25.108; or is included in the FAA Nationwide Buy American Waivers Issued list.

The bidder or offeror must complete and submit the certification of compliance with FAA's Buy American Preference, BABA and Made in America laws included herein with their bid or offer. The Airport Sponsor/Owner will reject as nonresponsive any bid or offer that does not include a completed certification of compliance with FAA's Buy American Preference and BABA.

The bidder or offeror certifies that all constructions materials, defined to mean an article, material, or supply other than an item of primarily iron or steel; a manufactured product; cement and cementitious materials; aggregates such as stone, sand, or gravel; or aggregate binding agents or additives that are or consist primarily of: non-ferrous metals; plastic and polymer-based products (including polyvinylchloride, composite building materials, and polymers used in fiber optic cables); glass (including optic glass); lumber; or drywall used in the project are manufactured in the U.S.

[1] Per Executive Order 14005 "Made in America Laws" means all statutes, regulations, rules, and Executive Orders relating to federal financial assistance awards or federal procurement, including those that refer to "Buy America" or "Buy American," that require, or provide a preference for, the purchase or acquisition of goods, products, or materials produced in the United States, including iron, steel, and manufactured products offered in the United States.

The Buy American Preference incorporates statutory requirements and policies outlined in the in 49 USC § 50101, Executive Order 14005, and BABA.

16.1 Section 50101 of 49 USC requires that all steel and manufactured goods used on AIP projects be produced in the United States. This section also gives the FAA the ability to issue a waiver to a Sponsor to use non-domestic material on an AIP funded project subject to meeting certain conditions. A Sponsor may request that the FAA issue a waiver from the Buy American Preference requirements if the FAA finds that:

1) Applying the provision is not in the public interest.
2) The steel or manufactured goods are not available in sufficient quantity or quality in the United States.
3) The cost of components and subcomponents produced in the United States is more than 60 percent of the total components of a facility or equipment, and final assembly has taken place in the United States. Items that have an FAA standard specification item number (such as specific airport lighting equipment) are considered the equipment.
4) Applying this provision would increase the cost of the overall project by more than 25 percent.

16.2 The FAA Office of Airports maintains listings of projects and products that have received a waiver from the Buy American Preference requirements for project specific and nationwide use. Each of these conformance lists is available online at www.faa.gov/airports/aip/buy_american/.

Products listed on the FAA Nationwide Buy American Conformance list do not require additional submittal of domestic content information. Nationwide waivers expire five years from the date issued, unless revoked earlier by the FAA.

16.3 Bids or offers that are not accompanied by a completed Buy America Certification must be rejected as nonresponsive.

Buy America Certification is included in Division 2 of these Contract Documents.

References: Title 49 U.S.C. § 50101

17. COPELAND "ANTI-KICKBACK" ACT

Contractor must comply with the requirements of the Copeland "Anti-Kickback" Act (18 U.S.C. 874 and 40 U.S.C. 3145), as supplemented by Department of Labor regulation 29 CFR part 3. Contractor and subcontractor are prohibited from inducing, by any means, any person employed on the project to give up any part of the compensation to which the employee is entitled. The contractor and each subcontractor must submit to the Owner, a weekly statement on the wages paid to each employee performing on covered work during the prior week. Owner must report any violation of the Act to the Federal Aviation Administration.

Reference: 2 CFR § 200 Appendix II(D), 29 CFR parts 3 & 5

18. FEDERAL FAIR LABOR STANDARDS ACT (FEDERAL MINIMUM WAGE)

All contracts and subcontracts that result from this solicitation incorporate by reference the provisions of 29 CFR par 201 et seq, the Federal Fair Labor Standards Act (FLSA), with the same force and effect as if given in full text. The FLSA sets minimum wage, overtime pay, recordkeeping, and child labor standards for full and part time workers. The contractor has full responsibility to monitor compliance to the referenced statute or regulation. The contractor must address any claims or disputes that arise from this requirement directly with the U.S. Department of Labor – Wage and Hour Division.

Reference: 29 USC § 201, et seq. 2 CFR § 200.430

19. OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH ACT OF 1970

All contracts and subcontracts that result from this solicitation incorporate by reference the requirements of 29 CFR Part 1910 with the same force and effect as if given in full text. Contractor must provide a work environment that is free from recognized hazards that may cause death or serious physical harm to the employee. The contractor retains full responsibility to monitor its compliance and their subcontractor's compliance with the applicable requirements of the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (20 CFR Part 1910). Contractor must address any claims or disputes that pertain to a referenced requirement directly with the U.S. Department of Labor – Occupational Safety and Health Administration.

Reference: 20 CFR part 1910

20. DISTRACTED DRIVING

Texting When Driving. In accordance with Executive Order 13513, "Federal Leadership on Reducing Text Messaging While Driving" (10/1/2009) and DOT Order 3902.10 "Text Messaging While Driving" (12/30/2009), THE FAA encourages recipients of Federal grant funds to adopt and enforce safety policies that decrease crashes by distracted drivers, including policies to ban text messaging while driving when performing work related to a grant or sub-grant.

In support of this initiative, the Owner encourages the Contractor to promote policies and initiatives for its employees and other work personnel that decrease crashes by distracted drivers, including policies that ban text messaging while driving motor vehicles while performing work activities associated with the project. The Contractor must include the substance of this clause in all sub-tier contracts exceeding $10,000 and involve driving a motor vehicle in performance of work activities associated with the project.

Reference: Executive Order 13513, and DOT Order 3902.10

21. PROCUREMENT OF RECOVERED MATERIALS

Contractor and subcontractor agree to comply with Section 6002 of the Solid Waste Disposal Act, as amended by the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act, and the regulatory provisions of 40 CFR Part 247. In the performance of this contract and to the extent practicable, the Contractor and subcontractors are to use products containing the highest percentage of recovered materials for items designated by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) under 40 CFR Part 247 whenever:

a. The contract requires procurement of $10,000 or more of a designated item during the fiscal year; or,

b. The contractor has procured $10,000 or more of a designated item using Federal funding during the previous fiscal year.

The list of EPA-designated items is available at www.epa.gov/smm/comprehensive-procurement-guidelines-construction-products.

Section 6002(c) establishes exceptions to the preference for recovery of EPA-designated products if the contractor can demonstrate the item is:

a. Not reasonably available within a timeframe providing for compliance with the contract performance schedule;

b. Fails to meet reasonable contract performance requirements; or

c. Is only available at an unreasonable price.

Reference: 2 CFR § 200.322, 40 CFR Part 247

22. RIGHTS TO INVENTIONS

Contracts or agreements that include the performance of experimental, developmental, or research work must provide for the rights of the Federal Government and the Owner in any resulting invention as established by 37 CFR Part 401, Rights to Inventions Made by Non-Profit Organizations and Small Business Firms Under Government Grants, Contracts, and Cooperative Agreements. This contract incorporates by reference the patent and inventions rights as specified within 37 CFR §401.14. Contractor must include this requirement in all sub-tier contracts involving experimental, developmental or research work.

23. DOMESTIC PREFERENCES FOR PROCUREMENTS

CERTIFICATION REGARDING DOMESTIC PREFERENCES FOR PROCUREMENTS

The Bidder or Offeror certifies by signing and submitting this bid or proposal that, to the greatest extent practicable, the Bidder or Offeror has provided a preference for the purchase, acquisition, or use of goods, products, or materials produced in the United States (including, but not limited to, iron, aluminum, steel, cement, and other manufactured products) in compliance with 2 CFR § 200.322.

PART B
DBE ADMINISTRATION

1. Eligibility of DBEs:

Only those firms currently certified as DBEs by the Missouri Department of Transportation (MoDOT), City of St. Louis, Metro, City of Kansas City, and Kansas City Area Transportation Authority are eligible to participate as DBEs on this contract. A list of these firms is available on MoDOT's Office of External Civil Rights webpage at the following address:

http://www.modot.org/dbe-program/mrcc-directory

2. Counting DBE Participation Towards DBE Goals:

DBE participation toward attainment of the goal will be computed on the basis of the subcontract prices agreed to between the contractor and subcontractors for the contract items or portions of items being sublet, as shown on the DBE Participation Form and attachments. Credit will only be given for use of DBEs that are certified or accepted according to this specification. DBE participation shall be counted toward meeting the DBE goal in accordance with the following:

a. Commercially Useful Function:

The Sponsor shall count toward the DBE goal only those expenditures to DBEs that perform a commercially useful function in the work of the contract. A DBE performs a commercially useful function when it is responsible for execution of a distinct element of work by actually performing, managing, and supervising that work. To determine if a DBE is performing a commercially useful function, the amount of work subcontracted, industry practices, and other relevant factors will be evaluated. If consistent with industry practices, a DBE shall enter into a subcontract or other contractual written agreement. A DBE Contractor may subcontract a portion of the work up to the amount allowed under standard subcontracting contract provisions of normal industry practices. A DBE is presumed not to be performing a commercially useful function if the DBE is performing outside these guidelines.

b. Materials and Supplies:

The Sponsor shall count toward the DBE goal the expenditures for materials and supplies obtained from DBE suppliers and manufacturers as described below. The DBEs must assume the actual and contractual responsibility for the provision of the materials and supplies:

(1) The entire expenditure to a DBE manufacturer will be counted toward the DBE goal. A manufacturer must operate or maintain a factory or establishment that produces on the premises the materials or supplies that are obtained by the contractor.

(2) Sixty percent of expenditures to a DBE regular dealer will be counted toward the DBE goal. A regular dealer must perform a commercially useful function in the supply process including buying the materials or supplies, maintaining an inventory and regularly selling materials to the public. Bulk items such as steel, cement, gravel, stone and petroleum products need not be kept in stock, but the dealer must own or operate distribution equipment.

(3) No credit will be given toward the DBE goal if the prime contractor makes a direct payment to a non-DBE material supplier. However, it will be permissible for a material supplier to invoice the prime contractor and the DBE jointly and be paid by the prime contractor making remittance to the DBE firm and material supplier jointly.

(4) No credit toward the DBE goal will be given for the cost of materials or equipment used in a DBE firm's work when those costs are paid by a deduction from the prime contractor's payment(s) to the DBE firm.

c. Work Classifications: DBE credit will count toward the contractual goal only for work actually performed by the DBE firm and within the Standard Industry Classification (SIC) code approved for that firm. The credit will be counted in the following manner:

(1) Manufacturer: Credit is given for 100 percent of the value paid for materials furnished which become a permanent part of the project. A manufacturer is a firm that owns and operates the facilities to produce a product required by the project and purchased by the contractor.

(2) Supplier: Credit is given for 60 percent of the value paid for materials furnished which becomes a permanent part of the project. A supplier sells goods to the general public and maintains an inventory at an owned or leased warehouse or store. Bulk items such as steel, petroleum projects, or rock do not have to be maintained in an on-site inventory. Credit will not be given for the cost of the materials and separate credit for the hauling of those same materials. Transportation of the materials is deemed part of the total cost.

(3) Broker: Credit is given for 100 percent of the **fees** or **commission** received by the DBE firm for materials purchased, services provided, or equipment secured and resold to the contractor. Fees or commissions are defined as the difference between what the DBE firm paid for the materials purchased, services provided, or equipment secured and the price paid by the contractor to the DBE firm for those items. A broker does not manufacture or supply on a regular basis.

(4) Trucker: Credit is given for 100 percent of the amount paid to the DBE trucker if that trucking is performed by the DBE, with employees of the DBE, using equipment owned or long-term leased by the DBE. However, if the DBE firm uses leased trucks, at least one truck owned by the firm **must** be used on the project.

Full credit will not be given for leased trucks unless they are leased on a long-term basis from another DBE firm, DBE owner operators, or a recognized commercial leasing operation. Firms licensed by the Missouri Public Service Commission as leasing agents qualify as a recognized leasing operation. Lease of trucks from the prime contractor will not be credited toward the DBE goal, other than possibly the portion constituting broker fees and commissions. This type of relationship will be subject to strict scrutiny.

All trucks used must be labeled clearly and visibly with a sign indicating the firm owning or leasing the vehicle. MoDOT will require submittal of a truck roster report, including ownership and vehicle identification information, on a regular basis. MoDOT project office or other designated personnel will review the rosters for verification and will monitor the trucks operating on the project. MoDOT will conduct random verification and report any irregularities to the External Civil Rights Unit for review.

In order for the use of a DBE trucker to be credited for the delivered price of materials supplies, the trucker must be certified as a supplier or manufacturer of the material, responsible for the quality standards of the material, negotiating the material price, payment, and select the source.

(a) Owner-Operator Trucking: The Sponsor shall count toward the DBE goal, the entire delivery fee paid to DBE owner-operators performing trucking for the contractor, if they appear on the contractor's payroll and separate records are furnished to the Sponsor documenting the expenditures. The records shall include for each owner-operator; their social security number; driver's license number; vehicle registration number; current vehicle license number; truck number; and a complete record of the contract fees paid to them.

If the DBE firm uses owner-operators to supplement their owned trucks, the DBE must be responsible for management and supervision of the entire trucking operation. The trucking arrangement or contract *cannot* be a contrived arrangement to meet the DBE goal. The DBE will be considered a broker, and only fees or commissions received will count toward the goal, if the DBE is not in full control, or does not have employees or trucks on the project.

d. Joint Venture: When a joint venture contract is involved, the Sponsor shall count towards the DBE goal that portion of the contract total dollar value equal to the percentage of ownership and control of each DBE firm within the joint venture. Such crediting is subject to the sponsor's acceptance of the joint venture agreement. The Bidder must furnish the joint venture agreement with the DBE Participation Form. The joint venture agreement must include a detailed breakdown of the following:

(1) Contract responsibility of the DBE for specific contract items of work,
(2) Capital participation by the DBE,
(3) Specific equipment to be provided by the DBE,
(4) Specific responsibilities of the DBE regarding control of the joint venture,
(5) Specific workers and skills to be provided by the DBE, and
(6) Percentage distribution to the DBE of the projected profit or loss incurred by the joint venture.

The joint venture must be certified in writing by MoDOT.

3. Award Documentation and Procedure: All bidders shall certify in the Proposal Form their intent to meet or exceed the established goal or to demonstrate good faith efforts to meet the goal. Failure to make such certification or failure to demonstrate good faith efforts will render a bid non-responsive and will not be considered.

a. DBE Participation Information: All bidders must complete the required DBE participation information in the Proposal Form, when a DBE goal has been established for the project. The information shall demonstrate the contractor's intended participation by certified DBEs. The information furnished shall consist of:

(1) The names and addresses of DBE firms that will participate in the contract;
(2) A description of the work that each DBE will perform;
(3) The dollar amount of the participation of each DBE firm;
(4) Written documentation (signed contract proposal) of the bidder/offeror's commitment to use a DBE subcontractor whose participation it submits to meet a contract goal;
(5) If the contract goal is not met, evidence of good faith efforts (see paragraph c below).

(Note: After award of the contract, the MoDOT External Civil Rights Office will contact by mail each DBE firm participating in the contract, requesting written confirmation from the DBE that it is participating in the contract as provided in the Proposal Form.)

b. Sponsor Evaluation: In selecting the lowest responsible bidder, the Sponsor and MoDOT will evaluate the DBE information provided with the bid. The Sponsor and MoDOT may request additional DBE information. Prior to awarding the contract the Sponsor will verify verbally and/or in writing that the information submitted by the apparent successful bidder is accurate and complete.

c. Good Faith Efforts: If the bidder is unable to meet the DBE goal, the bidder must submit, as part of its bid, written documentation and evidence of good faith efforts taken to meet the goal. Good faith efforts conducted after the bid opening will not be considered adequate to fulfill these bid requirements. Good faith efforts may include but are not limited to:

(1) Efforts to select portions of the work for performance by DBEs, in order to increase the likelihood of achieving the DBE goal. This can include, but is not limited to, breaking down contracts into economically feasible units to facilitate DBE participation. Selection of portions of work shall be at least equal to the DBE goal.

(2) Written notification to individual DBEs likely to participate in the contract sent at least 7 calendar days prior to the bid opening. The notification shall list specific items or types of work and shall be sent to a reasonable number of DBE's qualified to participate in the contract.

(3) Efforts to negotiate with DBEs for specific items of work including:

(a) Names, addresses, and telephone numbers of DBEs who were contacted, the dates of initial contact and information on further contacts made to determine with certainty if the DBEs were interested. Personal or phone contacts are expected;
(b) Description of the information provided to the DBEs regarding the plans, specifications and estimated quantities for portions of the work to be performed;
(c) Individual statements as to why agreements with DBEs were not reached; and
(d) Information on each DBE contacted but rejected and the reasons for the rejection.

(4) Efforts to assist the DBEs that need assistance in obtaining bonding, insurance, or lines of credit required by the contractor.

(5) Documentation that qualified DBEs are not available or not interested.

(6) Advertisements in general circulation media, trade association publications and disadvantaged-focus media concerning subcontracting opportunities.

(7) Efforts to use the services of available disadvantaged community organizations; disadvantaged contractor's groups; local, state and federal disadvantaged business assistance offices; and other organizations that provide assistance in recruitment and placement of DBEs.

The demonstration of good faith efforts by the contractor must prove the contractor actively and aggressively sought out DBEs to participate in the project. The following actions would not be considered acceptable reasons for failure to meet the DBE goal and would not constitute a good faith effort:

(1) The DBE was unable to provide adequate performance and/or payment bonds.
(2) A reasonable DBE bid was rejected based on price.
(3) The DBE would not agree to perform the subcontract work at the prime contractors unit bid price.
(4) Union versus non-union status of the DBE firm.
(5) The prime contractor would normally perform all work included in this contract.
(6) The prime contractor solicited DBE participation by mail only.

Should MoDOT and the city determine that the bidder's submitted documentation on good faith efforts are inadequate, the bidder must make a written request for administrative reconsideration within 2 working days of the notification on lack of good faith efforts. That notice may be faxed or emailed to:

Missy Stuedle
External Civil Rights Director
P.O. Box 270
Jefferson City, Missouri 65102
Telephone: (573) 526-2978
Fax: (573) 526-0558
E-Mail: Missy.Stuedler@modot.mo.gov

The Administrative Reconsideration Committee will include 3 individuals MoDOT deems appropriate and the members will be familiar with the DBE program, bidding, construction, and/or contracting matters. The External Civil Rights Unit will process the request, including providing documentation of the determination, and notify the Administrative Reconsideration Committee of the request for review, however, the administrator, nor any member of MoDOT that had a part in the initial determination will be a part of the reconsideration determination.

As part of this reconsideration, the bidder will have the opportunity to provide written documentation or argument concerning the issue of whether it met the goal or made adequate good faith efforts to do so to the committee. The bidder may choose to meet in person with the Administrative Reconsideration Committee to discuss the finding. MoDOT and the city will notify the bidder, in writing of the decision on reconsideration, explaining the basis for finding that the bidder did or did not make adequate good faith efforts to meet the goal. The result of the reconsideration process is not administratively appealable to the USDOT.

4. Post Award Compliance: If the contract is awarded on less than full DBE goal participation, the contractor is not relieved of the responsibility to make a determined effort to meet the full goal amount during the life of the contract. In such a case, the contractor shall continue good faith efforts throughout the life of the contract to increase the DBE participation to meet the contract goal.

   If a DBE is unwilling or unable to perform the work specified, the contractor shall request from the Sponsor and FAA, relief from the obligation to use that DBE. Efforts will be made by the contractor to acquire from the DBE a letter which states the reason the DBE is unwilling or unable to complete its obligations under the project. If this results in a DBE contract shortfall, the contractor shall immediately take steps to obtain another certified DBE to perform an equal dollar value of allowable credit. If a new DBE cannot be found, the contractor shall submit evidence of good faith efforts within 15 calendar days of the request for relief. The contractor shall submit the new DBE's name, address, work items and the dollar amount of each item. The sponsor and the FAA shall approve the new DBE before the DBE starts work.

   If the contractor fails to conform to the approved DBE participation or if it becomes evident that the remaining work will not meet the approved participation, then the contractor shall submit evidence showing either how the contractor intends to meet the DBE participation, or what circumstances have changed affecting the DBE participation. If the sponsor is not satisfied with the evidence, then liquidated damages may be assessed for the difference between the approved and actual DBE participation.

5. Records and Reports: The contractor shall keep records as necessary to determine compliance with the DBE obligations. The records shall include but are not limited to:

   a. Record of DBE Participation: The names of disadvantaged and non-disadvantaged subcontractors, regular dealers, manufacturers, consultant and service agencies; the type of work or materials or services performed on or incorporated in the project; and the actual value of such work.

   b. Efforts to Utilize DBE Firms: Documentation of all efforts made to seek out disadvantaged contractor organizations and individual disadvantaged contractors for work on this project. All correspondence, personal contacts, telephone calls, etc., to obtain the services of DBE's should be documented.

   c. Final DBE Certification: Upon completion of the individual DBE firm's work, the prime contractor shall submit a certification attesting to the actual work performed by the DBE firm and the amount paid the DBE firm. This certification shall be signed by both the prime contractor and the DBE firm.

Intentionally Left Blank

PART C – LOCAL PROVISIONS

1. HAUL ROADS:

The Contractor shall obtain approval from the Engineer prior to establishing haul roads within the airport property. Once established, the haul roads shall be utilized for all equipment traffic, and the equipment shall not be allowed to stray or wander away from the established routes. The haul roads shall be the responsibility of the Contractor and shall be maintained and kept in good order at all times. Water, when required, shall be applied at the locations and in the amounts necessary to minimize dust and dirt in the air operations area. Haul roads across any active runway or taxiway shall be kept clean and in good order at all times. The Contractor shall repair any damage caused by the movement of equipment on any of the haul roads, whether in designated or undesignated areas. After completion of the project, the Contractor shall be required to re-grade any unpaved portions of the haul road and to reseed the area with local native grasses to match the existing conditions of the area. The performance of any work as specified by this provision, including watering, maintenance, and repair of the haul roads, shall not be measured and paid for directly, but shall be considered as necessary and incidental to the work.

Establishment of haul roads off of Airport property shall be the sole responsibility of the Contractor.

2. AIRPORT SECURITY:

During the course of the construction operations, the Contractor will be allowed to utilize a maximum of two (2) airport access "Security Gates" as entrance to the construction site. This gate and the associated haul roads shall be designated by the Engineer. The Contractor shall be required to keep this gate guarded and closed during construction hours. The gate may be opened only for authorized vehicle traffic flow. At such times as this gate is not guarded, it shall be closed and securely locked. The Contractor will be required to obtain an "airport security" permit from the Office of the Airport Manager for all vehicles and personnel used on the construction project. Said permit shall hold the Contractor responsible for all vehicles and personnel on the airport property other than those that have individual authorization. All authorized vehicles and construction equipment must display a three foot by three foot flag with international orange and white 12 inch squares displayed in full view above the vehicles. Passengers in any authorized vehicles shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. The "gate guard" shall allow no unauthorized vehicle or person to enter the "air operations" side of the airport without the above stipulated "security clearance." The Contractor and the Contractor's "security gate guard" shall be held duly responsible to uphold the above security stipulations at all times during the progress of the construction project. No deviations from these security measures shall be allowed at any time. There shall be a $1,000.00 penalty for each deviation from these security provisions.

3. RADIO COMMUNICATIONS:

The Contractor's superintendent and flagman shall be required to monitor transceiver radios tuned to the (Frequency) MH_z frequency at all times. Radios shall be supplied by the Contractor. Such radios shall be used to obtain proper clearance in regard to the movement of equipment, trucks, etc., on the airport. Further, any unusual occurrences in the flight pattern of approaching or departing aircraft shall be acknowledged by all concerned so that operation of the airport and the construction work can be safely carried on at all times.

4. WORK SCHEDULE:

Immediately after the award of contract, the Contractor shall file with the Engineer a time chart or schedule of proposed progress, a plan of construction and proposed detailed methods of carrying out the work, including a full statement of equipment and equipment layout for the job.

The Sponsor reserves the right to request changes in the sequence of project schedules if such change is required in the interest of safety or airport operation.

5. CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY CONTROL PROGRAM:

The contractor and their chosen testing laboratory shall submit a quality control plan submitted and approved prior to the Notice to Proceed (NTP). The quality control plan should contain the following items:

a. Names of testing laboratories and consulting engineer firms with quality control responsibilities on the project, together with a description of the services to be provided.

b. Procedures for the testing laboratories to meet the requirements of the applicable ASTM, AASHTO or other standards referenced in the contract specifications.

c. Qualifications of engineering supervision and construction inspection personnel.

d. A listing of all tests required by the contract specifications, including the type and frequency of tests to be taken, the method of sampling, the applicable test standard, and the acceptance criteria or tolerance permitted for each type of test.

e. Procedures for ensuring that the tests are taken in accordance with the program, that they are documented daily, that the proper corrective actions, where necessary, are undertaken, and that the quantity of materials used is adequate.

6. SEQUENCE OF WORK:

The Contractor will be required to accomplish the work items according to the schedule of construction as submitted to the Engineer following the award of the contract. Prior to closing any taxiways or apron area, they shall be marked in conformance with the FAA Advisory Circular 150/5340-1 latest edition. This shall consist of placing barricades and flashers on each taxiway and closed runway crosses on the effected runways. Flashers must be well anchored so they do not blow over from jet blasts or strong winds. Closed taxiway, apron area, and other airfield markings and maintenance of these items are considered a necessity and an incidental part of the work, and no separate measurement or payment will be made. The Contractor shall consider the costs and distribute them to the various bid items.

There is no need for the contractor to get within 500 feet of any runway or taxiway during the entire period of this project without first obtaining approval of the Engineer. When the Contractor's operations require the closing of any runway or taxiway, the Contractor shall mark said runway or taxiway in accordance with the plans and specifications at no additional cost to the Sponsor.

Prior to construction on any taxiway or runway, the Contractor shall, upon approval by the Engineer, close the taxiway or runway and begin work. The Contractor shall be responsible for clearly marking and defining the closed taxiways or runways by use of warning lights, barricades, flags and closed taxiway or runway markings in conformance with FAA Advisory Circular 150/5370-2 latest edition. The Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining these barricades and keeping them clearly visible at all times.

The Sponsor shall meet with the Contractor immediately after the award of the contract to work up the sequence of work for the project.

7. CLOSURE OF AIR OPERATIONS AREAS:

Barricades are considered a necessary and incidental part of the work and no separate measurement or payment will be made therefore. The Contractor shall consider the costs and distribute them to the various bid items.

8. ACCIDENT PREVENTION:

Precautions shall be exercised at all times for the protection of persons (including employees) and property, and that the safety provisions of applicable laws and of applicable building construction codes shall be observed, and that machinery, equipment, and explosives shall be guarded and all hazards shall be eliminated in accordance with the safety provisions of the Manual of Accident Prevention in Construction, published by the Associated General Contractors of America, to the extent that such provisions are not in contravention of applicable law.

9. UTILITIES:

Any utilities required by the Contractor for the prosecution of the work shall be paid for by said Contractor.

10. INDEMNIFICATION:

The Contractor agrees to indemnify and save harmless Airport Board/City of Jefferson City, its officers, agents, and employees, against any and all damages to property or injuries to or death of any person or persons, including property and employees or agents of Airport Board/City of Jefferson City, and further agrees to defend, indemnify and save harmless, Airport Board/City of Jefferson City, its officers, agents, and employees from any claims, demands, suits, actions, proceedings of any kind or nature resulting from or arising out of operations in connection herewith, including operations of subcontractors and acts of omissions of employees or agents of the Contractor or his subcontractors.

11. SALES AND USE TAXES:

Construction and building materials sold to the contractors and subcontractors for use on public works owned by City of Jefferson City, are exempt from State Sales and Use Taxes. However, such materials will be subject to any Sales and Use Taxes imposed by local cities and counties. This change in the State Tax Law has no effect of Sales and Use Taxes imposed by other local taxing authorities. Contractor shall provide proof of exemption prior to commencing work.

12. PERMITS AND COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS:

The Contractor shall procure and pay for all permits, licenses, and bonds necessary for the prosecution of his work, and/or required by Local, State, and Federal regulations and laws, as pertains particularly to permits and transportation of materials and equipment, or other operations which are not a specific requirement of these specifications. The Contractor shall give all notices, pay all fees and taxes, and comply with all Federal, State, and Local laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations, and building and construction codes bearing on the conduct of the work.

13. EXECUTED CONTRACTS:

Each contract shall be executed in five original copies and there shall be executed originals of the Contractor's Performance Bond and Payment Bond in equal number to the executed originals of the contract. Two copies of such executed documents will be retained by City of Jefferson City, one copy shall be delivered to the FAA, and two copies will be delivered to the Contractor. The cost of executing

the Contract, bonds and insurance, including all notary fees and incidental expenses are to be paid by the Contractor to whom the contract is awarded.

14. SUBLETTING OR ASSIGNING OF CONTRACTS:

The Contractor shall perform, with his organization, an amount of work equal to at least 50 percent of the total contract cost. No assignment by the Contractor of any principal construction contract or any part thereof or of the funds to be received thereunder by the Contractor will be recognized unless such assignment has received the prior written approval of the Sponsor, which shall be at Sponsor's sole discretion, and the Surety has been given due notice of such assignment and has also consented in writing thereto.

Such written approval of the Sponsor shall not relieve the Contractor of any obligation incurred by him, under the contract, unless otherwise expressly stated in the approval.

The following language must appear in any assignment:

"It is agreed that the funds to be paid to the assignee under this assignment are subject to a prior lien for services rendered or materials supplied for the performance of the work called for in said contract in favor of all persons, firms, or corporations rendering such services or supplying such materials."

15. QUALIFICATION OF DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISES:

A Contractor, or subcontractor, will be considered as certified if that company has received a letter of certification from an organization, whose procedures for certifying business, is acceptable to the FAA.

A Contractor is permitted to use 100 percent of the Contract amount for the unit of work if the Contractor, or subcontractor, performs the construction, installation, rehabilitation, etc. of that work item(s).

A Contractor is permitted to use only 60 percent of the Contract amount for the purchase of material from a certified DBE supplier.

The Contractor is required to submit, to the Engineer, the names, work terms and contract value of all subcontractors, prior to commencing work. The Contractor is required to submit the names, work items and final contract amounts of all subcontractors after the substantial completion of the project

16. LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:

Subject to the provisions of the Contract Documents, the Sponsor shall be entitled to liquidated damages for failure of the Contractor to complete the work within the specified contract time.

The Contractor further agrees to pay liquidated damages for failure to complete the work within the specified contract time and for expenses incurred by the Sponsor for unscheduled employment of the Engineer during the contract time overrun.

As compensation for non-use, the Contractor shall be assessed a liquidated damage of $500/working day(s) for each day that the work remains uncompleted beyond the contract period. As compensation for expenses incurred for unscheduled employment of the Engineer, up to $1,730/Calendar day for the construction manager plus up to $1,390/Calendar day for each additional resident engineer plus any incurred expenses (per diem, lodging, etc.) will be charged to the Contractor for that time which exceeds the number of working day(s) allowed in this paragraph. Further, each phase of work under the project has additional liquidated damage clauses, as outlined in Section 80-08 FAILURE TO COMPLETE ON TIME.

The Contractor further agrees to pay compensation for the unscheduled employment of the Engineer (and their Sub-Contractors) necessitated by the Contractor for any of the following: 1) working more than ten (10) hours per day, 2) furnishing materials or equipment not in conformance with the Contract Documents necessitating redesign, retesting, or additional review time by the Engineer and their Sub-Contractors, and 3) working beyond the time of completion established in the Notice to Proceed with Construction according to the following hourly rates:

Description	Straight Time
Staff Engineer	$173/hr
Engineer	$139/hr
Associate Engineer	$128/hr
Out of Pocket Cost, material, equipment, supplies, transportation, subsistence	At Cost

Sub-Contractor (Quality Assurance Testing)	Straight Time, at cost.
Out of Pocket Cost, material, equipment, supplies, transportation, subsistence	At Cost

Check all LDs and Costs/hr for each project, Liquidated damages will be paid to the airport at $500 per day.

Compensation shall be paid by deduction from monthly progress payments and the final payment.

The engineering budget will be analyzed at the end of the project to determine whether any unscheduled employment of the Engineer, during the scheduled contract time, resulted in a cost savings to the Sponsor. If, as a result of working more than (10) ten hours per day, the Contractor completes the project within the scheduled contract time, and if the overtime results in a reduced contract time and cost savings to the Sponsor, no liquidated damages will be assessed for the unscheduled employment of the Engineer during the scheduled contract time. Liquidated damages will be assessed as stipulated for each day the work remains uncompleted beyond the scheduled contract time.

17. ACCEPTANCE TESTING:

Acceptance testing shall be the responsibility of the Engineer.

18. CONSTRUCTION MANAGEMENT PLAN:

The Contractor and testing firm are required to prepare a Quality Control Program as required under SECTION 100, CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL PROGRAM, of the General provisions. The Contractor shall obtain from the testing laboratory a proposed schedule of material testing submitted on forms provided by the Engineer, an example of which, is included following this specification. The requirements for the quality control program specified under Section 100 shall formulate a portion of the **CONSTRUCTION MANAGEMENT PLAN (CMP)** required under this item.

The Engineer will assemble and submit the CMP. The Contractor must complete sections of the CMP as indicated on the following pages. All sections indicated to be completed by the Contractor must be titled as shown. Other sections will be completed by the Engineer as indicated. The plan will be submitted to the Sponsor and FAA for approval a minimum of 10 days prior to construction. Approval of the CMP must be obtained prior to commencing any paving operations. Changes in the Contractor's personnel, sub-contractor's personnel, testing laboratory's personnel or testing procedures will require revision to the plan. The Contractor is required to submit any changes immediately to the Engineer.

The following outline shall be utilized as a guide for preparation of the CMP. Modifications may be incorporated as approved by the Engineer.

I. Introduction/Summary (Completed by Engineer)

II. Personnel

1. Name of Sponsor representatives who have responsibility and authority for contract administration. (by Engineer)

2. Consulting Engineer and staff showing qualifications, experience and project responsibilities. (by Engineer)

3. Contractor project personnel and responsibilities. (by Contractor)

4. Quality Control Testing Laboratory project personnel and responsibilities. (by Contractor)

5. Acceptance Testing Laboratory project personnel and responsibilities (by Certified Testing Firm)

III. Inspection Procedures and Frequencies (by Contractor) (Refer to Section 100)

IV. Submittal Process (by Contractor) (Refer to Section 100)

V. Quality Control Testing (by Contractor) (Refer to Section 100)

VII. Test Results

1. Quality Control Testing (by Contractor) (Refer to Section 100)

VIII. Final Test and Quality Control Report (by Contractor)

At the end of the project and prior to final inspection and reduction of contract retainage, the prime contractor shall prepare and submit to the engineer for review and for FAA concurrence a final project summary report. Two bound copies and one loose leaf copy shall be submitted. The report shall include a summary of all tests taken with results, plus a narrative explaining the action taken for all failing tests within the context of the specifications. The Contractor shall correlate required tests shown in the specifications to those accomplished. Copies of all Certificates of Compliance for each material installed shall be included in the section pertaining to that material. Examples of typical Certificates of Compliance are for bituminous material, cement, fly ash, antistripping agent, pavement paint, etc. This summary shall contain all referenced material tests required by the Quality Control Program outlined in Section 100 of these specifications. In addition, it shall summarize all acceptance testing results.

The report shall be bound in booklet form with divisions for each bid item, i.e., excavation, base courses, pavement materials, electrical items, drainage items and any other materials. Each section shall be clearly marked with a divider including the section name and section table of contents. The report must contain a summary of all tests by lot or pay item, highlighted to indicate failed tests and/or reduced pay results, and reference to any approved change order that accepted any out of tolerance material. The individual sections shall begin with a narrative discussing any failed tests followed by a summary of the testing required and accomplished during the progress of the work. Within each section, the Contractor shall summarize individual test results in the format indicated on the following test summary forms provided by the Engineer. The forms are available in Microsoft Word format upon request. Additional or updated forms may be substituted by the Engineer prior to construction.

Any airfield lighting, electrical fixtures or other equipment used in the project shall have instruction books or factory installation sheets showing exploded views of the assembled parts with trouble shooting tips

clearly shown. This information is of the type normally supplied by the manufacturer but must be in a presentable form. Single line wiring diagrams and circuit directories shall also be included in the summary with any recommended maintenance procedures suggested by the supplier or manufacturer.

Contractor is responsible for providing information before Notice to Proceed.

PART D
FEDERAL AND STATE WAGE RATES

The Contractor shall post the prevailing wage rates on the project in a prominent and accessible place.

The Contractor and any Subcontractor shall submit weekly certified copies of their payrolls to the Owner. All payrolls must be submitted to Owner prior to contract acceptance and final payment. The Contractor shall file with the Owner an affidavit that he has complied with all requirements of the prevailing wage law. The affidavit shall accompany or precede the Contractor's request for final payment.

Section 290.250 of reference law requires that the Contractor shall forfeit as a penalty to the Owner $100.00 dollars for each workman employed, for each calendar day, or portion thereof, such workman is paid less than the stipulated rates for any work done under said contract, by him or by any Subcontractor under him.

The Contractor's Bond shall include such provisions as will guarantee the faithful performance of the prevailing hourly wage law.

Missouri
Division of Labor Standards
WAGE AND HOUR SECTION

MICHAEL L. PARSON, Governor

Annual Wage Order No. 31

Section 014
CALLAWAY COUNTY

In accordance with Section 290.262 RSMo 2000, within thirty (30) days after a certified copy of this Annual Wage Order has been filed with the Secretary of State as indicated below, any person who may be affected by this Annual Wage Order may object by filing an objection in triplicate with the Labor and Industrial Relations Commission, P.O. Box 599, Jefferson City, MO 65102-0599. Such objections must set forth in writing the specific grounds of objection. Each objection shall certify that a copy has been furnished to the Division of Labor Standards, P.O. Box 449, Jefferson City, MO 65102-0449 pursuant to 8 CSR 20-5.010(1). A certified copy of the Annual Wage Order has been filed with the Secretary of State of Missouri.

Original Signed by
Todd Smith, Director
Division of Labor Standards

Filed With Secretary of State: **March 8, 2024**

Last Date Objections May Be Filed: **April 8, 2024**

Prepared by Missouri Department of Labor and Industrial Relations

OCCUPATIONAL TITLE	**Prevailing Hourly Rate
Asbestos Worker	$64.74
Boilermaker	$77.09
Bricklayer-Stone Mason	$54.01
Carpenter	$52.31
Lather	
Linoleum Layer	
Millwright	
Pile Driver	
Cement Mason	$31.08*
Plasterer	
Communication Technician	$57.70
Electrician (Inside Wireman)	$57.92
Electrician Outside Lineman	$31.08*
Lineman Operator	
Lineman - Tree Trimmer	
Groundman	
Groundman - Tree Trimmer	
Elevator Constructor	$31.08*
Glazier	$28.75
Ironworker	$70.90
Laborer	$42.92
General Laborer	
First Semi-Skilled	
Second Semi-Skilled	
Mason	$31.08*
Marble Mason	
Marble Finisher	
Terrazzo Worker	
Terrazzo Finisher	
Tile Setter	
Tile Finisher	
Operating Engineer	$65.90
Group I	
Group II	
Group III	
Group III-A	
Group IV	
Group V	
Painter	$43.65
Plumber	$79.68
Pipe Fitter	
Roofer	$55.07
Sheet Metal Worker	$56.93
Sprinkler Fitter	$31.08*
Truck Driver	$44.57
Truck Control Service Driver	
Group I	
Group II	
Group III	
Group IV	

*The Division of Labor Standards received fewer than 1,000 reportable hours for this occupational title. The public works contracting minimum wage is established for this occupational title using data provided by Missouri Economic Research and Information Center.
**The Prevailing Hourly Rate includes any applicable fringe benefit amounts for each occupational title as defined in RSMo Section 290.210.

OCCUPATIONAL TITLE	**Prevailing Hourly Rate
Carpenter	$61.88
Millwright	
Pile Driver	
Electrician (Outside Lineman)	$31.08*
Lineman Operator	
Lineman - Tree Trimmer	
Groundman	
Groundman - Tree Trimmer	
Laborer	$49.26
General Laborer	
Skilled Laborer	
Operating Engineer	$66.97
Group I	
Group II	
Group III	
Group IV	
Truck Driver	$31.08*
Truck Control Service Driver	
Group I	
Group II	
Group III	
Group IV	

Use Heavy Construction Rates on Highway and Heavy construction in accordance with the classifications of construction work established in 8 CSR 30-3.040(3).

Use Building Construction Rates on Building construction in accordance with the classifications of construction work established in 8 CSR 30-3.040(2).

If a worker is performing work on a heavy construction project within an occupational title that is not listed on the Heavy Construction Rate Sheet, use the rate for that occupational title as shown on the Building Construction Rate Sheet.

*The Division of Labor Standards received fewer than 1,000 reportable hours for this occupational title. Public works contracting minimum wage is established for this occupational title using data provided by Missouri Economic Research and Information Center.

**The Prevailing Hourly Rate includes any applicable fringe benefit amounts for each occupational title.

OVERTIME
and
HOLIDAYS

OVERTIME

For all work performed on a Sunday or a holiday, not less than twice (2x) the prevailing hourly rate of wages for work of a similar character in the locality in which the work is performed or the public works contracting minimum wage, whichever is applicable, shall be paid to all workers employed by or on behalf of any public body engaged in the construction of public works, exclusive of maintenance work.

For all overtime work performed, not less than one and one-half (1½) the prevailing hourly rate of wages for work of a similar character in the locality in which the work is performed or the public works contracting minimum wage, whichever is applicable, shall be paid to all workers employed by or on behalf of any public body engaged in the construction of public works, exclusive of maintenance work or contractual obligation. For purposes of this subdivision, **"overtime work"** shall include work that exceeds ten hours in one day and work in excess of forty hours in one calendar week; and

A thirty-minute lunch period on each calendar day shall be allowed for each worker on a public works project, provided that such time shall not be considered as time worked.

HOLIDAYS

January first;
The last Monday in May;
July fourth;
The first Monday in September;
November eleventh;
The fourth Thursday in November; and
December twenty-fifth;

If any holiday falls on a Sunday, the following Monday shall be considered a holiday.

OUTLINE SPECIFICATION FOR TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

DIVISION 02 – EXTERIOR CONDITIONS

DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE

DIVISION 05 – METALS

DIVISION 26 & 27 – ELECTRICAL

DIVISION 28 – DIGITAL, ADDRESABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK

MODOT CIVIL TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

SECTION 00 31 32 - GEOTECHNICAL DATA

1.1 GEOTECHNICAL DATA

A. This Document with its referenced attachments is part of the Procurement and Contracting Requirements for Project. They provide Owner's information for Bidders' convenience and are intended to supplement rather than serve in lieu of Bidders' own investigations. They are made available for Bidders' convenience and information. This Document and its attachments are not part of the Contract Documents.

B. Because subsurface conditions indicated by the soil borings are a sampling in relation to the entire construction area, and for other reasons, the Owner, the Architect, the Architect's consultants, and the firm reporting the subsurface conditions do not warranty the conditions below the depths of the borings or that the strata logged from the borings are necessarily typical of the entire site. Any party using the information described in the soil borings and geotechnical report shall accept full responsibility for its use.

C. Soil-boring data for Project, obtained by <Insert agency or firm name>, dated <Insert date of logs>, is available for viewing [on Project Web site] [at the office of Architect] [at the office of Construction Manager] [at the office of Owner] [as appended to this Document].

D. A geotechnical investigation report for Project, prepared by <Insert agency or firm name>, dated <Insert date of report>, is available for viewing [on Project Web site] [at the office of Architect] [at the office of Construction Manager] [at the office of Owner] [as appended to this Document].

1. The opinions expressed in this report are those of a geotechnical engineer and represent interpretations of subsoil conditions, tests, and results of analyses conducted by a geotechnical engineer. Owner is not responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from the data.
2. Any party using information described in the geotechnical report shall make additional test borings and conduct other exploratory operations that may be required to determine the character of subsurface materials that may be encountered.

E. Related Requirements:

1. Document 002113 "Instructions to Bidders" for the Bidder's responsibilities for examination of Project site and existing conditions.
2. Document 003119 "Existing Condition Information" for information about existing conditions that is made available to bidders.
3. Document 003126 "Existing Hazardous Material Information" for hazardous materials reports that are made available to bidders.

END OF DOCUMENT 00 31 32

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 10 00 SUMMARY

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 DIVISION 01 SPECIFICATIONS

A. Division 01 General Requirements expand on the broad provisions of the Conditions of the Contract, and govern the execution of the work of Sections 01 1000 through 31 1000 of the specifications. Division 01 General Requirements specify administrative and procedural requirements relating to execution of this portion of the Work, and temporary facilities for use during the construction period.

1.02 PROJECT WARRANTY

A. Refer to General Provisions for warranty provisions applicable to this Contract.
   1. Project warranty period is governed by Utah state statutes and other provisions of the Contract (See Special Provision, Part C).

1.03 WORK BY OWNER

A. Items noted NIC (Not in Contract) will be supplied and installed by Owner after Substantial Completion. Some items include:
   1. Furnishings.
   2. Small equipment.
   3. Other items noted on Drawings.

1.04 OWNER OCCUPANCY

A. Owner intends to occupy the Project upon Substantial Completion.
   1. See front end Contact Document Section 80-08 for contract time.
   2. Substantial completion is the stage in progress when the work is sufficiently complete in accordance with the contract documents so that the owner can occupy or utilize the work for its intended purpose.
   3. When the contractor considers the work to be substantially complete, the contractor shall prepare and submit a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected before final payment.
   4. When the Work is substantially complete, the Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion, shall establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and shall fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

B. Cooperate with Owner to minimize conflict and to facilitate Owner's operations.

C. Schedule the Work to accommodate Owner occupancy.

1.05 CONTRACTOR USE OF SITE AND PREMISES

A. Construction Operations: Limited to areas noted on Drawings.

B. Arrange use of site and premises to allow:
1. Owner occupancy.
2. Work by Others.
3. Work by Owner.

C. Provide access to and from site as required by law and by Owner:
1. Emergency Response Vehicle Route: Keep a clear route from the adjacent airport fire station to the airfield free of construction equipment and personnel at all times as indicated on the phasing drawings.

1.06 DELEGATED DESIGN WORK

A. See Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements, for delegated design requirements.

B. Design of building systems, or components of systems, specified to be provided by Contractor; refer to applicable Sections:
1. Pre-Engineered Metal Building Structural Design (Engineered Drawings), per Section 133419.
2. Helical Pier System for Metal Building Foundation (Engineered Drawings), per performance and installation requirements described on the Structural Plans.

C. Contractor's Responsibilities:
1. Comply with specified design requirements for each applicable product or system.
2. Coordinate design and space requirements with other affected work and Architect/Engineer.
3. Review applicable submittals and coordinate selections with Architect/Engineer.
4. Receive and unload products and systems at the site; inspect for completeness and for damage.
5. Handle, store, install, and finish products and systems.
6. Repair or replace damaged, defective, or missing items.
7. Arrange for manufacturer's warranties, inspections, and service.
8. Comply with applicable provisions of Division 01 - General Requirements, specifically including administrative requirements, coordination, quality, regulatory, and product requirements.
9. Coordinate delegated design work with Division 08 Doors and Openings, Division 23 HVAC Sections, and other applicable sections that is applicable to delegated design work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED

END OF SECTION 01 10 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 21 00 - ALLOWANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.

1. Certain items are specified in the Contract Documents by allowances. Allowances have been established in lieu of additional requirements and to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when direction will be provided to Contractor. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.

B. Types of allowances include the following:
1. Quantity allowances.
2. Contingency allowances.

C. Related Requirements:
1. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for procedures governing the use of allowances for testing and inspecting.

1.3 SELECTION AND PURCHASE

A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, advise Architect of the date when final selection and purchase of each product or system described by an allowance must be completed to avoid delaying the Work.

B. At Architect's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections. Include recommendations that are relevant to performing the Work.

C. Purchase products and systems selected by Architect from the designated supplier.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances, in the form specified for Change Orders.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.

B. Submit time sheets and other documentation to show labor time and cost for installation of allowance items that include installation as part of the allowance.

C. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate allowance items with other portions of the Work. Furnish templates as required to coordinate installation.

1.7 QUANTITY ALLOWANCES

A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.

C. Unused Materials or Sums:
   1. Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.

   2. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

   3. ALL UNUSED SUMS OF THE ALLOWANCE SHALL BE RETURNED TO THE OWNER AT PROJECT COMPLETION. A final change order shall be prepared by the Owner’s Representative to reduce the contract value by the balance of the allowances.

1.8 CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCES

A. Use the contingency allowance only as directed by Architect for Owner's purposes and only by Change Orders that indicate amounts to be charged to the allowance.

B. Contractor's overhead, profit, and related costs for products and equipment ordered by Owner under the contingency allowance are included in the allowance and are not part of the Contract Sum. These costs include delivery, installation, taxes, insurance, equipment rental, and similar costs.

C. Change Orders authorizing use of funds from the contingency allowance will include Contractor's related costs and reasonable overhead and profit margins.

D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the contingency allowance to Owner by Change Order.

1.9 ADJUSTMENT OF ALLOWANCES

A. Allowance Adjustment: To adjust allowance amounts, prepare a Change Order proposal based on the difference between purchase amount and the allowance, multiplied by final measurement of work-in-place where applicable. If applicable, include reasonable allowances for cutting losses, tolerances, mixing wastes, normal product imperfections, and similar margins.

1. Include installation costs in purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
2. If requested, prepare explanation and documentation to substantiate distribution of overhead costs and other margins claimed.
3. Submit substantiation of a change in scope of work, if any, claimed in Change Orders related to unit-cost allowances.
4. Owner reserves the right to establish the quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.

B. Submit claims for increased costs because of a change in scope or nature of the allowance described in the Contract Documents, whether for the purchase order amount or Contractor's handling, labor, installation, overhead, and profit.

1. Do not include Contractor's or subcontractor's indirect expense in the Change Order cost amount unless it is clearly shown that the nature or extent of work has changed from what could have been foreseen from information in the Contract Documents.
2. No change to Contractor's indirect expense is permitted for selection of higher- or lower-priced materials or systems of the same scope and nature as originally indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects. Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.

3.3 SCHEDULE OF ALLOWANCES

A. The Contractor shall set Allowances in the GMP as agreed upon with the Owner's Representative during the bidding process to account for scope gap, anticipated design development from the 90% to the 100% contract documents, and other items agreed upon.

END OF SECTION 01 21 00

SECTION 01 25 00 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
2. Section 016000 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.

1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.

1. Substitution Request Form: Use facsimile of form provided in Project Manual.
2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:

a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.

b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
g. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses as well as names and addresses of architects and owners.
h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project.
j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.

3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.

a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.6 PROCEDURES

A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

1.7 SUBSTITUTIONS

A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.

1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

B. Substitutions for Convenience: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 45 days after the Notice to Proceed. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.

1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

a. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
b. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
c. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
d. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
e. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.

f. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
g. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
h. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
i. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
j. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 25 00

SECTION 01 26 00 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.

1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

A. Architect will issue Owners Representative supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.

1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Owners Representative will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.

1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Owners Representative are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
2. Within the time specified in Proposal Request after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.

a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and

finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.

e. Quotation Form: Use forms acceptable to Owner's Representative.

B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Owner's Representative.

1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
6. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
7. Proposal Request Form: Use forms acceptable to Owner's Representative.

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

A. Allowance Adjustment: See Section 012100 "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.

1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Owner's Representative will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on forms acceptable to Owner's Representative.

1.7 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

A. Construction Change Directive: Owner's Representative may issue a Construction Change Directive on a standard form. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.

1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.

B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.

1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

1.8 WORK CHANGE DIRECTIVE

A. Work Change Directive: Owner's Representative may issue a Work Change Directive. Work Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.

1. Work Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.

B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Work Change Directive.

1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

C. Contractor Change Order Mark up's
1. Contractor and Subcontractors shall provide detail breakdown of material and labor costs on prepared change orders.
2. Contractor's mark-up on Subcontractor work shall be in accordance with the prime contract with the owner.
3. Prime Contractor's Oversight (Project management and Superintendent of change order work by subcontractors is considered incidental unless documentation is provided to show time extension of project is approved.
4. Owner has the option to request change orders or change requests be done Time and material with previously noted O&P markups.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 26 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 29 00 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.

1.2 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.

1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect[through Construction Manager] at earliest possible date, but no later than [seven] <Insert number> days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.

B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.

1. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of [AIA Document G703] [EJCDC Document C-620] <Insert name and designation of standard form>.
2. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of [five] <Insert number> percent of the Contract Sum.
3. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.

    a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.

4. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
5. Overhead Costs: Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each line item.
6. Overhead Costs: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.

7. Closeout Costs. Include separate line items under Contractor and principal subcontracts for Project closeout requirements in an amount totaling [five] <Insert number> percent of the Contract Sum and subcontract amount.
8. Schedule of Values Revisions: Revise the schedule of values when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum. Include at least one separate line item for each Change Order and Construction Change Directive.

1.3 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect[and Construction Manager] and paid for by Owner.

B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Agreement between Owner and Contractor. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.

C. Payment Application Times: Submit Application for Payment to Architect by the <Insert day> of the month. The period covered by each Application for Payment is one month, ending on the [last day of the month] <Insert specific day of the month>.

1. Submit draft copy of Application for Payment [seven] <Insert number> days prior to due date for review by Architect.

D. Application for Payment Forms: Use [AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703] [AIA Document G732 and AIA Document G703] [EJCDC Document C-620] <Insert name and designation of standard form> as form for Applications for Payment.

E. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. [Architect] [Construction Manager] will return incomplete applications without action.

1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.

F. Transmittal: Submit [three] <Insert number> signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to [Architect] [Construction Manager] by a method ensuring receipt[within 24 hours]. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.

1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.

G. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from [entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and

related to the Work covered by the payment] [subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, and suppliers for construction period covered by the previous application].

1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
4. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
5. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.

H. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:

1. List of subcontractors.
2. Schedule of values.
3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
4. Products list (preliminary if not final).
5. Sustainable design action plans, including preliminary project materials cost data.
6. Schedule of unit prices.
7. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
8. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
9. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
10. Copies of building permits.
11. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
12. Initial progress report.
13. Report of preconstruction conference.
14. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
15. Performance and payment bonds.
16. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.

I. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.

1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.

J. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:

1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.

3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
4. AIA Document G706.
5. AIA Document G706A.
6. AIA Document G707.
7. Evidence that claims have been settled.
8. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
9. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 29 00

SECTION 01 31 00 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:

1. General coordination procedures.
2. Coordination drawings.
3. RFIs.
4. Digital project management procedures.
5. Project meetings.

B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility are assigned to a specific contractor.

C. Related Requirements:
1. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
2. Section 017300 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
3. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BIM: Building Information Modeling.

B. RFI: Request for Information. Request from Owner, Owner’s Representative, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:

1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.

B. Key Personnel Names: At time of Bid, submit resumes for proposed General Contractor Project Manager and superintendent. Prior to the Pre-construction meeting submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and cellular telephone numbers and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.

1. Post copies of list in project meeting room, in temporary field office. Keep list current at all times.

1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.

B. Coordination: Each contractor shall cooperate with Project coordinator who shall coordinate its construction operations with those of other contractors and entities to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Each contractor shall coordinate its own operations with operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
2. Coordinate installation of different components with other contractors to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.

C. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.

1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.

D. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
5. Progress meetings.
6. Preinstallation conferences.
7. Project closeout activities.
8. Startup and adjustment of systems.

1.6 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.

1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:

   a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
   b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to coordination drawings by multiple contractors in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
   c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
   d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
   e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
   f. Indicate required installation sequences.
   g. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternative sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.

B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:

1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of

visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.

2. Plenum Space: Indicate sub framing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to accommodate layout of light fixtures and other components indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:

    a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
    b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
    c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.

7. Electrical Work: Show the following:

    a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit (1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
    b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
    c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor-control center locations.
    d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.

8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:

    a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.

9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that in general the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.
10. Coordination Drawing Prints: Prepare coordination drawing prints according to requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."

C. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following requirements:

1. File Preparation Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as original Drawings.
2. File Preparation Format: DWG, Latest Version, operating in Microsoft Windows operating system.

3. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using PDF format.
4. BIM File Incorporation: Develop and incorporate coordination drawing files into BIM established for Project.

    a. Perform three-dimensional component conflict analysis as part of preparation of coordination drawings. Resolve component conflicts prior to submittal. Indicate where conflict resolution requires modification of design requirements by Architect.

5. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in preparing coordination digital data files.

    a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Drawings.
    b. Digital Data Software Program: Drawings are available in REVIT.

1.7 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.

1. Architect will return without response those RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor.
2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.

B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:

1. Project name.
2. Project number.
3. Date.
4. Name of Contractor.
5. Name of Owner’s Representative.
6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
7. RFI subject.
8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
12. Contractor's signature.
13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.

    a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.

C. RFI Forms: Per approved format by Owner's representative.

D. Owner's Representative's Action: Owner's Representative will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Owner's Representative after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.

1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:

   a. Requests for approval of submittals.
   b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
   c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
   d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
   e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
   f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
   g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.

2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt by Owner's Representative of additional information.
3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."

   a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Owner's Representative in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.

E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly.

1. Project name.
2. Name and address of Contractor.
3. Name and address of Owner's Representative.
4. RFI number including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
5. RFI description.
6. Date the RFI was submitted.
7. Date Owner's Representative response was received.
8. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
9. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.

F. On receipt of Owner's Representative action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Owner's Representative within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.

1.8 DIGITAL PROJECT MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

A. Use of Architect's Digital Data Files: Digital data files of Architect's BIM model will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use during construction.

1. Digital data files may be used by Contractor in preparing coordination drawings, Shop Drawings, and Project record Drawings.
2. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Contract Drawings.
3. Digital Drawing Software Program: Contract Drawings are available in REVIT 2019.
4. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of acceptable to Architect.

    a. Subcontractors, and other parties granted access by Contractor to Architect's digital data files shall execute a data licensing agreement in the same form.

5. The following digital data files will be furnished for each appropriate discipline:

    a. Floor plans.
    b. Reflected ceiling plans.

B. Web-Based Project Software: Provide, administer, and use web-based Project software site for purposes of hosting and managing Project communication and documentation until Final Completion as found to be acceptable by the Owner and Owner’s Representative.

1. Web-based Project software site includes, at a minimum, the following features:

    a. Compilation of Project data, including Contractor, subcontractors, Architect, architect's consultants, Owner, and other entities involved in Project. Include names of individuals and contact information.
    b. Access control for each entity for each workflow process, to determine entity's digital rights to create, modify, view, and print documents.
    c. Document workflow planning, allowing customization of workflow between project entities.
    d. Creation, logging, tracking, and notification for Project communications required in other Specification Sections, including, but not limited to, RFIs, submittals, Minor Changes in the Work, Construction Change Directives, and Change Orders.
    e. Track status of each Project communication in real time, and log time and date when responses are provided.
    f. Procedures for handling PDFs or similar file formats, allowing markups by each entity. Provide security features to lock markups against changes once submitted.
    g. Processing and tracking of payment applications.
    h. Processing and tracking of contract modifications.
    i. Creating and distributing meeting minutes.
    j. Document management for Drawings, Specifications, and coordination drawings, including revision control.
    k. Management of construction progress photographs.
    l. Mobile device compatibility, including smartphones and tablets.

2. Provide up to 10 web-based Project software user licenses for use of Owner, Owner's Representative, Architect and consultants. Provide 4 hours of software training at Architect's office for web-based Project software users if requested.
3. At completion of Project, provide digital archive in format that is readable by common desktop software applications in format acceptable to Architect. Provide data in locked format to prevent further changes.

C. PDF Document Preparation: Where PDFs are required to be submitted to Architect, prepare as follows:

1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
3. Certifications: Where digitally submitted certificates and certifications are required, provide a digital signature with digital certificate on where indicated.

1.9 PROJECT MEETINGS

A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.

1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times a minimum of 10 working days prior to meeting.
2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner, Owner's Representative, within three days of the meeting.

B. Preconstruction Conference: Owner's Representative will schedule a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Owner's Representative, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.

1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:

    a. Responsibilities and personnel assignments.
    b. Tentative construction schedule.
    c. Phasing.
    d. Critical work sequencing and long lead items.
    e. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
    f. Lines of communications.
    g. Use of web-based Project software.
    h. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
    i. Procedures for RFIs.
    j. Procedures for testing and inspecting.

k. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
l. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
m. Submittal procedures.
n. Sustainable design requirements.
o. Preparation of Record Documents.
p. Use of the premises
q. Work restrictions.
r. Working hours.
s. Owner's occupancy requirements.
t. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
u. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
v. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
w. Construction waste management and recycling.
x. Parking availability.
y. Office, work, and storage areas.
z. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
aa. First aid.
bb. Security.
cc. Progress cleaning.

3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.

C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity when required by other sections and when required for coordination with other construction.

1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:

a. Contract Documents.
b. Options.
c. Related RFIs.
d. Related Change Orders.
e. Purchases.
f. Deliveries.
g. Submittals.
h. Sustainable design requirements.
i. Review of mockups.
j. Possible conflicts.
k. Compatibility requirements.
l. Time schedules.
m. Weather limitations.
n. Manufacturer's written instructions.
o. Warranty requirements.
p. Compatibility of materials.
q. Acceptability of substrates.

r. Temporary facilities and controls.
s. Space and access limitations.
t. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
u. Testing and inspecting requirements.
v. Installation procedures.
w. Coordination with other work.
x. Required performance results.
y. Protection of adjacent work.
z. Protection of construction and personnel.

3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.

D. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 90 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.

1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:

a. Preparation of Record Documents.
b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
c. Procedures for completing and archiving web-based Project software site data files.
d. Submittal of written warranties.
e. Requirements for completing sustainable design documentation.
f. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
g. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
h. Requirements for demonstration and training.
i. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
j. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
k. Submittal procedures.
l. Coordination of separate contracts.
m. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
n. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
o. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.

4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.

E. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at weekly intervals.

1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.

    a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.

        1) Review schedule for next period.

    b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:

        1) Interface requirements.
        2) Sequence of operations.
        3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
        4) Status of submittals.
        5) Status of sustainable design documentation.
        6) Deliveries.
        7) Off-site fabrication.
        8) Access.
        9) Site use.
        10) Temporary facilities and controls.
        11) Progress cleaning.
        12) Quality and work standards.
        13) Status of correction of deficient items.
        14) Field observations.
        15) Status of RFIs.
        16) Status of Proposal Requests.
        17) Pending changes.
        18) Status of Change Orders.
        19) Pending claims and disputes.
        20) Documentation of information for payment requests.

4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.

    a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

F. Coordination Meetings: Conduct Project coordination meetings at weekly intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.

1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.

    a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
    b. Schedule Updating: Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
    c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:

        1) Interface requirements.
        2) Sequence of operations.
        3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
        4) Status of submittals.
        5) Deliveries.
        6) Off-site fabrication.
        7) Access.
        8) Site use.
        9) Temporary facilities and controls.
        10) Work hours.
        11) Hazards and risks.
        12) Progress cleaning.
        13) Quality and work standards.
        14) Status of RFIs.
        15) Proposal Requests.
        16) Change Orders.
        17) Pending changes.

3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 LAYOUT OF THE WORK

A. The General Contractor shall assume the leadership of the project, layout of work, and coordination of all items.

B. The General Contractor shall prepare a work schedule showing the sequence of all operations, their starting and completion dates and final date of completion of the project. This will be reviewed with the Owner and Architect.

C. Contractor shall coordinate with the Owner and TSA the setup of the temporary screening checkpoint. The movement of TSA owned equipment shall be performed by a TSA approved vender, the Contractor will assist with the timing and coordination of this work, as well as the connections to the electrical and IT systems to establish an operational checkpoint in the interim location.

D. Contractor shall coordinate with Owner the removal and storage of millwork, furniture and other items in areas to be worked. Such items shall be moved to an approved location outside the construction area.

3.2 SUPERVISION FULL-TIME

A. The General Contractor shall designate one of his employees as the job superintendent representing him on the job site. This person will be expected to be on the job full time and shall be at the job each working day from the start of operations until final completion and shall be the same person throughout the entire project. He shall be acquainted with the drawings and specifications and with the construction schedule, shall coordinate dimensions and timing and be considered the “Boss of the Work”. He shall be available for conferences with the Architect and Engineers and Subcontractors.

B. The job superintendent shall have available a complete set of drawings and specs. Superintendent shall keep an up to date red line set of “as constructed” set of drawings at this trailer at all times available for review by Owner’s Representative.

3.3 STAFF

A. Contractor shall, within 15 days of Notice to Proceed, submit a listing of Contractor’s principal staff assignments and consultants, naming persons and listing the addresses and telephone numbers.

3.4 ON-SITE COORDINATION

A. The General Contractor shall hold general project coordination meetings at regularly scheduled times convenient to all parties involved. These meetings are in addition to meetings and special pre-installation meetings. Request representation at each meeting by every party currently involved in coordination or planning for the work of the entire project. Conduct meetings in a manner, which will resolve coordination problems. Records results of the meetings and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting

B. All Sub-Contractors shall prepare detailed "2 week look-aheads" that shall be submitted to the General Contractor every week. This shall include any construction activities that may impact the operations of the airport.

C. Contractor shall coordinate with the Owner regarding any items that may impact the operations of the airport, movement of passengers or aircraft, placement and staging of large equipment and materials, during phases where the terminal is open.

D. Contractor shall notify and coordinate with the Owner regarding any electrical outages or switch over events that may occur when the terminal is open.

E. Contractor shall notify the Architect/Engineer regarding any schedule changes, proposed work methods, that differ from the approved Construction Safety and Phasing Plans.

END OF SECTION 01 31 00

SECTION 01 32 00 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

3.5 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:

1. Startup construction schedule.
2. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
3. Construction schedule updating reports.
4. Daily construction reports.
5. Material location reports.
6. Site condition reports.
7. Unusual event reports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction Project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.

1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.

B. Cost Loading: The allocation of the schedule of values for completing an activity as scheduled. The sum of costs for all activities must equal the total Contract Sum.

C. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine when activities can be performed and the critical path of Project.

D. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.

E. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.

F. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.

1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date. Both parties must agree on the use of the Project Float time.
2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.

G. Resource Loading: The allocation of manpower and equipment necessary for completing an activity as scheduled.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:

1. Working electronic copy of schedule file, where indicated.
2. PDF file.
3. Two paper copies, of sufficient size to display entire period or schedule, as required.

B. Startup construction schedule.

1. Submittal of cost-loaded, startup construction schedule will not constitute approval of schedule of values for cost-loaded activities.

C. Startup Network Diagram: Of size required to display entire network for entire construction period. Show logic ties for activities.

D. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.

1. Submit a working digital copy of schedule, using software indicated, and labeled to comply with requirements for submittals.

E. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit each of the following reports. Format for each activity in reports shall contain activity number, activity description, cost and resource loading, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.

1. Activity Report: List of activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
2. Logic Report: List of preceding and succeeding activities for each activity, sorted in ascending order by activity number and then by early start date, or actual start date if known.
3. Total Float Report: List of activities sorted in ascending order of total float.
4. Earnings Report: Compilation of Contractor's total earnings from the Notice to Proceed until most recent Application for Payment.

F. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.

G. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at weekly intervals.

H. Material Location Reports: Submit at weekly intervals.

I. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.

J. Unusual Event Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.

K. Qualification Data: For scheduling consultant.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Scheduling Consultant Qualifications: An experienced specialist in CPM scheduling and reporting, with capability of producing CPM reports and diagrams within 24 hours of Architect's request.

B. Prescheduling Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to the preliminary construction schedule and Contractor's Construction Schedule, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Review software limitations and content and format for reports.
2. Verify availability of qualified personnel needed to develop and update schedule.
3. Discuss constraints, including phasing, work stage, area separations, interim milestones, and partial Owner occupancy.
4. Review delivery dates for Owner-furnished products.
5. Review schedule for work of Owner's separate contracts.
6. Review submittal requirements and procedures.
7. Review time required for review of submittals and resubmittals.
8. Review requirements for tests and inspections by independent testing and inspecting agencies.
9. Review time required for Project closeout and Owner startup procedures, including commissioning activities.
10. Review and finalize list of construction activities to be included in schedule.
11. Review procedures for updating schedule.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.

1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

1.7 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.

1. Use mutually agreed upon scheduling software by Contractor, Owner, and Owner's Representative.

B. Scheduling Consultant: Engage a consultant to provide planning, evaluation, and reporting using CPM scheduling.

1. In-House Option: Owner may waive requirement to retain a consultant if Contractor employs skilled personnel with experience in CPM scheduling and reporting techniques. Submit qualifications.
2. Meetings: Scheduling consultant shall attend all meetings related to Project progress, alleged delays, and time impact.

C. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice of Award to date of Substantial Completion.

1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.

D. Activities: Treat each floor or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:

1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
    a. Structural Steel
    b. Architectural Concrete panels
    c. Generator
    d. Other long lead items
3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's Construction Schedule with submittal schedule.
4. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for startup and testing.
5. Commissioning Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for commissioning.
6. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
7. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and final completion.

E. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.

1. Phasing: Arrange list of activities on schedule by phase.
2. Work under More Than One Contract: Include a separate activity for each contract.
3. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by Owner.
4. Products Ordered in Advance: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
5. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
6. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:

    a. Coordination with existing construction.
    b. Limitations of continued occupancies.
    c. Uninterruptible services.
    d. Partial occupancy before Substantial Completion.
    e. Use-of-premises restrictions.
    f. Provisions for future construction.
    g. Seasonal variations.
    h. Environmental control.

7. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:

    a. Subcontract awards.
    b. Submittals.
    c. Purchases.
    d. Mockups.
    e. Fabrication.
    f. Sample testing.
    g. Deliveries.
    h. Installation.
    i. Tests and inspections.
    j. Adjusting.
    k. Curing.
    l. Building flush-out.
    m. Startup and placement into final use and operation.
    n. Commissioning.

8. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:

    a. Structural completion.
    b. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
    c. Permanent space enclosure.
    d. Completion of mechanical installation.
    e. Completion of electrical installation.
    f. Substantial Completion.

F. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and final completion.

G. Cost Correlation: Superimpose a cost correlation timeline, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show planned and actual dollar volume of the Work performed as of planned and actual dates used for preparation of payment requests.

1. See Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for cost reporting and payment procedures.

H. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:

1. Unresolved issues.
2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
4. Notations on returned submittals.
5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and the Contract Time.

I. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule three days before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.

1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
3. As the Work progresses, indicate final completion percentage for each activity.

J. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.

K. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect, Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.

1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

1.8 CPM SCHEDULE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Prepare network diagrams using AON (activity-on-node) format.

B. Startup Network Diagram: Submit diagram within 14 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed. Outline significant construction activities for the first 90 days of construction. Include

skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.

C. CPM Schedule: Prepare Contractor's Construction Schedule using a time-scaled CPM network analysis diagram for the Work.

1. Develop network diagram in sufficient time to submit CPM schedule so it can be accepted for use no later than 60 days after date established the Notice to Proceed.

    a. Failure to include any work item required for performance of this Contract shall not excuse Contractor from completing all work within applicable completion dates.

2. Conduct educational workshops to train and inform key Project personnel, including subcontractors' personnel, in proper methods of providing data and using CPM schedule information.
3. Establish procedures for monitoring and updating CPM schedule and for reporting progress. Coordinate procedures with progress meeting and payment request dates.
4. Use "one workday" as the unit of time for individual activities. Indicate nonworking days and holidays incorporated into the schedule to coordinate with the Contract Time.

D. CPM Schedule Preparation: Prepare a list of all activities required to complete the Work. Using the startup network diagram, prepare a skeleton network to identify probable critical paths.

1. Activities: Indicate the estimated time duration, sequence requirements, and relationship of each activity in relation to other activities. Include estimated time frames for the following activities:

    a. Preparation and processing of submittals.
    b. Mobilization and demobilization.
    c. Purchase of materials.
    d. Delivery.
    e. Fabrication.
    f. Utility interruptions.
    g. Installation.
    h. Work by Owner that may affect or be affected by Contractor's activities.
    i. Testing and inspection.
    j. Commissioning.
    k. Punch list and final completion.
    l. Activities occurring following final completion.

2. Critical Path Activities: Identify critical path activities, including those for interim completion dates. Scheduled start and completion dates shall be consistent with Contract milestone dates.
3. Processing: Process data to produce output data on a computer-drawn, time-scaled network. Revise data, reorganize activity sequences, and reproduce as often as necessary to produce the CPM schedule within the limitations of the Contract Time.
4. Format: Mark the critical path. Locate the critical path near center of network; locate paths with most float near the edges.

a. Subnetworks on separate sheets are permissible for activities clearly off the critical path.

5. Cost- and Resource-Loading of CPM Schedule: Assign cost to construction activities on the CPM schedule. Do not assign costs to submittal activities. Obtain Architect's approval prior to assigning costs to fabrication and delivery activities. Assign costs under main subcontracts for testing and commissioning activities, operation and maintenance manuals, punch list activities, Project record documents and demonstration and training (if applicable), in the amount of 5 percent of the Contract Sum.

a. Each activity cost shall reflect an appropriate value subject to approval by Architect.
b. Total cost assigned to activities shall equal the total Contract Sum.

E. Contract Modifications: For each proposed contract modification and concurrent with its submission, prepare a time-impact analysis using a network fragment to demonstrate the effect of the proposed change on the overall Project schedule.

F. Initial Issue of Schedule: Prepare initial network diagram from a sorted activity list indicating straight "early start-total float." Identify critical activities. Prepare tabulated reports showing the following:

1. Contractor or subcontractor and the Work or activity.
2. Description of activity.
3. Main events of activity.
4. Immediately preceding and succeeding activities.
5. Early and late start dates.
6. Early and late finish dates.
7. Activity duration in workdays.
8. Total float or slack time.
9. Average size of workforce.
10. Dollar value of activity (coordinated with the schedule of values).

G. Schedule Updating: Concurrent with making revisions to schedule, prepare tabulated reports showing the following:

1. Identification of activities that have changed.
2. Changes in early and late start dates.
3. Changes in early and late finish dates.
4. Changes in activity durations in workdays.
5. Changes in the critical path.
6. Changes in total float or slack time.
7. Changes in the Contract Time.

H. Value Summaries: Prepare two cumulative value lists, sorted by finish dates.

1. In first list, tabulate activity number, early finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
2. In second list, tabulate activity number, late finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.

3. In subsequent issues of both lists, substitute actual finish dates for activities completed as of list date.
4. Prepare list for ease of comparison with payment requests; coordinate timing with progress meetings.

    a. In both value summary lists, tabulate "actual percent complete" and "cumulative value completed" with total at bottom.
    b. Submit value summary printouts one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.

1.9 REPORTS

A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:

1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
4. Equipment at Project site.
5. Material deliveries.
6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
7. Testing and inspection.
8. Accidents.
9. Meetings and significant decisions.
10. Unusual events.
11. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
12. Meter readings and similar recordings.
13. Emergency procedures.
14. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
15. Change Orders received and implemented.
16. Construction Change Directives
17. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
18. Services connected and disconnected.
19. Equipment or system tests and startups.
20. Partial completions and occupancies.
21. Substantial Completions authorized.

B. Material Location Reports: At weekly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site. Indicate the following categories for stored materials:

1. Material stored prior to previous report and remaining in storage.
2. Material stored prior to previous report and since removed from storage and installed.
3. Material stored following previous report and remaining in storage.

C. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for

Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

D. Unusual Event Reports: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, responses by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.

1. Submit unusual event reports directly to Owner within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 32 00

SECTION 01 32 33 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:

1. Preconstruction photographs.
2. Periodic construction photographs.
3. Final completion construction photographs.
4. Construction webcam.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting photographic documentation as Project Record Documents at Project closeout.
2. Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Key Plan: Submit key plan of Project site and building with notation of vantage points marked for location and direction of each photograph and video recording. Indicate elevation or story of construction. Include same information as corresponding photographic documentation.

B. Digital Photographs: Submit image files within three days of taking photographs.

1. Submit photos by uploading to web-based project software site or as requested. Include copy of key plan indicating each photograph's location and direction.
2. Identification: Provide the following information with each image description in file metadata tag or in web-based project software site:

a. Name of Project.
b. Name and contact information for photographer.
c. Name of Owner’s Representative.
d. Name of Contractor.
e. Date photograph was taken.
f. Description of location, vantage point, and direction.

g. Unique sequential identifier keyed to accompanying key plan.

C. Time-Lapse Video / Construction Webcam: Submit time-lapse sequence video recordings within 5 days of recording.

1. Submit time-lapse sequence video recordings monthly as requested.
2. Identification: For each recording, provide the following information description in file metadata tag or in web-based project software site

a. Name of Project.
b. Name and contact information for photographer.
c. Name of Owner's Representative
d. Name of Contractor.
e. Date(s) and time(s) video recording was recorded.
f. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Photographer Qualifications: An individual who has been regularly engaged as a professional photographer of construction projects for not less than three years.

B. Construction Webcam Service Provider: A firm specializing in providing photographic equipment, web-based software, and related services for construction projects, with record of providing satisfactory services similar to those required for Project.

1.5 FORMATS AND MEDIA

A. Digital Photographs: Provide color images in JPG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor size of 12 megapixels, and at an image resolution of not less than 3200 by 2400 pixels, and with vibration-reduction technology. Use flash in low light levels or backlit conditions.

B. Digital Images: Submit digital media as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.

C. Metadata: Record accurate date and time and GPS location data from camera.

D. File Names: Name media files with date, Project area and sequential numbering suffix.

1.6 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

A. Photographer: Engage a qualified photographer to take construction photographs.

B. General: Take photographs with maximum depth of field and in focus.

1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.

C. Preconstruction Photographs: Before commencement of excavation, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by Owner's Representative.

1. Flag excavation areas and construction limits before taking construction photographs.
2. Take 20 photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
3. Take 20 photographs of existing site either on or adjoining property to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
4. Take additional photographs as required to record settlement or cracking of adjacent structures, pavements, and improvements.

D. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take a minimum of 20 photographs weekly coinciding with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.

E. Time-Lapse Sequence Construction Photographs: Take 20 photographs as indicated, to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.

1. Frequency: Take photographs daily, on the same time each day.
2. Vantage Points: Following suggestions by Owner's Representative and Contractor, photographer to select vantage points. During each of the following construction phases, take not less than two of the required shots from same vantage point each time to create a time-lapse sequence as follows:

    a. Commencement of the Work, through completion of subgrade construction.
    b. Above-grade structural framing.
    c. Exterior building enclosure.
    d. Interior Work, through date of Substantial Completion.

F. Final Completion Construction Photographs: Take 20 photographs after date of Substantial Completion for submission as Project Record Documents. Owner's Representative will inform photographer of desired vantage points.

G. Additional Photographs: Owner's Representative may request photographs in addition to periodic photographs specified. Additional photographs will be paid for by Change Order and are not included in the Contract Sum or in the allowance for construction photographs.

1. Three days' notice will be given, where feasible.
2. In emergency situations, take additional photographs within 24 hours of request.
3. Circumstances that could require additional photographs include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Special events planned at Project site.
    b. Immediate follow-up when on-site events result in construction damage or losses.
    c. Photographs to be taken at fabrication locations away from Project site. These photographs are not subject to unit prices or unit-cost allowances.
    d. Substantial Completion of a major phase or component of the Work.
    e. Extra record photographs at time of final acceptance.
    f. Owner's request for special publicity photographs.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 32 33

SECTION 01 33 00 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Submittal schedule requirements.
2. Administrative and procedural requirements for submittals.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
2. Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for submitting coordination drawings and subcontract list and for requirements for web-based Project software.
3. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
4. Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation" for submitting preconstruction photographs, periodic construction photographs, and final completion construction photographs.
5. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for submitting test and inspection reports, and schedule of tests and inspections.
6. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting closeout submittals and maintenance material submittals.
7. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
8. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.
9. Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Owner’s Representative responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."

B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Owner's Representative responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."

1.4 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

A. Submittal Schedule: Submit, as an action submittal, a list of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Owner's Representative and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.

1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.

    a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.

4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:

    a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
    b. Specification Section number and title.
    c. Submittal Category: Action; informational.
    d. Name of subcontractor.
    e. Description of the Work covered.
    f. Scheduled date for Owner's Representative final release or approval.
    g. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
    h. Scheduled date of fabrication.
    i. Scheduled dates for installation.
    j. Activity or event number.

1.5 SUBMITTAL FORMATS

A. Submittal Information: Include the following information in each submittal:

1. Project name.
2. Date.
3. Name of Owner's Representative.
4. Name of Construction Manager.
5. Name of Contractor.
6. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.

7. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
8. Unique submittal number, including revision identifier. Include Specification Section number with sequential alphanumeric identifier; and alphanumeric suffix for resubmittals.
9. Category and type of submittal.
10. Submittal purpose and description.
11. Number and title of Specification Section, with paragraph number and generic name for each of multiple items.
12. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
13. Indication of full or partial submittal.
14. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
15. Other necessary identification.
16. Remarks.
17. Signature of transmitter.

B. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.

C. Deviations and Additional Information: On each submittal, clearly indicate deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations; include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those requested by Owner's Representative on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached separate sheet.

D. Electronic Submittals:

1. Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal item for identification; include name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
2. Provide a space approximately 6 by 8 inches on label or beside title block to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Owner's Representative.
3. Transmittal for Submittals: Assemble each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using pre-approved transmittal form found to be acceptable by Owner's Representative.

E. PDF Submittals: Prepare submittals as PDF package, incorporating complete information into a single PDF file. Name PDF file with submittal number.

F. Submittals for Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals as PDF files, or other format indicated by Project software website.

1.6 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

A. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.

1. Email: Prepare submittals as PDF package and transmit to Owner's Representative by sending via email. Include PDF transmittal form. Include information in email subject line as requested by Architect.

a. Owner's Representative will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as a digital Project Record Document file.

2. Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
3. Paper: Prepare submittals in paper form and deliver to Owner's Representative.

B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.

1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
4. Coordinate transmittal of submittals for related parts of the Work specified in different Sections so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.

    a. Owner's Representative reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.

C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Owner's Representative receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.

1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Owner's Representative will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.

    a. Contractor to provide a list of submittals they wish to have partial or sequential reviews provided.

5. Concurrent Consultant Review: Where the Contract Documents indicate that submittals may be transmitted simultaneously to Architect and to Architect's consultants, allow 15 days for review of each submittal. Submittal will be returned to Owner's Representative before being returned to Contractor.

    a. Submit one copy of submittal to concurrent reviewer in addition to specified number of copies to Owner's Representative.

D. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.

1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.

3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Owner's Representative action stamp.

E. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.

F. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Owner's Representative action stamp.

1.7 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.

1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are unsuitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
3. Include the following information, as applicable:

    a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    c. Standard color charts.
    d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    g. Notation of coordination requirements.
    h. Availability and delivery time information.

4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:

    a. Wiring diagrams that show factory-installed wiring.
    b. Printed performance curves.
    c. Operational range diagrams.
    d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.

5. Submit Product Data before Shop Drawings, and before or concurrent with Samples.

B. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data unless submittal based on Owner's Representative 's digital data drawing files is otherwise permitted.

1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:

    a. Identification of products.
    b. Schedules.
    c. Compliance with specified standards.
    d. Notation of coordination requirements.

e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.

2. Paper Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size Drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches, but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.

C. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other materials.

1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
2. Identification: Permanently attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:

a. Project name and submittal number.
b. Generic description of Sample.
c. Product name and name of manufacturer.
d. Sample source.
e. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
f. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.

3. Email Transmittal: Provide PDF transmittal. Include digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and identification information for record.
4. Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
5. Paper Transmittal: Include paper transmittal including complete submittal information indicated.
6. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.

a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.

7. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.

a. Number of Samples: Submit a minimum of three full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Owner’s Representative will return submittal with options selected.

8. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the

following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.

a. Number of Samples: Submit four sets of Samples. Owner's Representative will retain three Sample sets; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one returned Sample set as a project record Sample.

1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least four sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.

D. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:

1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
3. Number and name of room or space.
4. Location within room or space.

E. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.

F. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information indicating compliance with indicated performance and design criteria in individual Specification Sections. Include list of assumptions and summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Number each page of submittal.

G. Certificates:

1. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Submit a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity. Provide a notarized signature where indicated.
2. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
3. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
4. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
5. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.

6. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.

H. Test and Research Reports:

1. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
2. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
3. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
4. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
5. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
6. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:

a. Name of evaluation organization.
b. Date of evaluation.
c. Time period when report is in effect.
d. Product and manufacturers' names.
e. Description of product.
f. Test procedures and results.
g. Limitations of use.

1.8 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

1. If criteria indicated are insufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.

B. Delegated-Design Services: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF file, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional:

1. Section 08 Aluminum Curtain Wall System: Engineered drawings and calculations.

2. Section 21 Fire Protection: Engineered drawings and calculations.

3. Section 31 Micro Pile Foundations: Engineered drawings and calculations.

1.9 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

A. Action Submittals and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Owner's Representative.

B. Contractor's Approval: Indicate Contractor's approval for each submittal with a uniform approval stamp. Include name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

1. Owner's Representative will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.

1.10 OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE REVIEW

A. Action Submittals: Owner's Representative will review each submittal, indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it.

1. PDF Submittals: Owner's Representative will indicate, via markup on each submittal, the appropriate action.

2. Paper Submittals: Owner's Representative will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action.

3. Submittals by Web-Based Project Software: Owner's Representative will indicate, on Project software website, the appropriate action.

B. Informational Submittals: Owner's Representative will review each submittal and will not return it or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Owner's Representative will forward each submittal to appropriate party.

C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Owner's Representative.

D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.

E. Owner's Representative will return without review or discard submittals received from sources other than Contractor.

F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will be returned by Architect without action.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 33 00

SECTION 01 40 00 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.

B. Testing and inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.

1. Specific quality-assurance and quality-control requirements for individual work results are specified in their respective Specification Sections. Requirements in individual Sections may also cover production of standard products.
2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by Architect, Owner, Commissioning Authority, Owner’s Representative or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
4. Specific test and inspection requirements are not specified in this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" unless otherwise further described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Field Quality-Control Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.

C. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, assembly, and similar operations.

1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).

D. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site either as freestanding temporary built elements or as part of permanent construction. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.

1. Laboratory Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies constructed and tested at testing facility to verify performance characteristics.
2. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope constructed on-site as freestanding temporary built elements or as part of permanent construction, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.

E. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.

F. Product Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) according to 29 CFR 1910.7, by a testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP), or by a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.

G. Source Quality-Control Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source; for example, plant, mill, factory, or shop.

H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.

I. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.

J. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Contractor's quality-control services do not include contract administration activities performed by Owner’s Representative.

1.4 DELEGATED-DESIGN

A. Delegated Design Criteria: Where professional design services by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor, the stamping design professional shall specify any third party testing, inspection, and quality control requirements. Delegated Design work shall be performed according to the industry professional standard of care.

1.5 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for direction before proceeding.

B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.

B. Qualification Data: For Contractor's quality-control personnel.

C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility submitted to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:

1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
2. Main wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.

D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.

E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:

1. Specification Section number and title.
2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
3. Description of test and inspection.
4. Identification of applicable standards.
5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
6. Number of tests and inspections required.
7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

F. Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports and documents as specified.

G. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's record, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

1.7 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan 3 days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Owner’s Representative. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities. Coordinate with Contractor's Construction Schedule.

B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.

1. Project quality-control manager shall not have other Project responsibilities.
2. Provide proposed quality manager resume for Owner’s Representative acceptance.
3. Quality Control Manager shall visit the site a minimum of every two weeks.

C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.

D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:

1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections including Subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections. Distinguish source quality-control tests and inspections from field quality-control tests and inspections.
2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the Statement of Special Inspections.
3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents, including tests and inspections indicated to be performed by Commissioning Authority.

E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.

F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports including log of approved and rejected results. Include work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Date of issue.
2. Project title and number.
3. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of testing agency.
4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
8. Complete test or inspection data.
9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspection.
11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.

B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of technical representative making report.
2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of factory-authorized service representative making report.
2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units. As applicable, procure products from manufacturers able to meet qualification requirements, warranty requirements, and technical or factory-authorized service representative requirements.

C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, applying, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.

1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.

G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspection indicated, as documented according to ASTM E329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.

H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:

1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:

    a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
    b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
    c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
    d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
    e. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.
    f. When testing is complete, remove test specimens and test assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.

2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Owner's Representative and Commissioning Authority, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.

K. Mockups: Before installing exposed board formed concrete stem walls, contractor shall build a mockup to review the finish required to comply with the project specifications, using materials indicated for the completed Work:

1. Build mockups in location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Owner's Representative; location may be in a portion of cast-in-place concrete that will not be part of the exposed finished work in order to verify the quality of the material finish.
2. Notify Owner's Representative 7 days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
3. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that will be employed to perform same tasks during the construction at Project.
4. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
5. Obtain Architect's approval of mockup before starting corresponding work, fabrication, or construction.

1.10 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.

1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspection they are engaged to perform.
2. Payment for these services will be made from testing and inspection allowances, as authorized by Change Orders.
3. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.

B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities, whether specified or not, to verify and document that the Work complies with requirements.

1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
2. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform quality-control services.

    a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.

3. Notify testing agencies at least 2 business days in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspection will be performed.
4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
5. Testing and inspection requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.

C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.

D. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Owner’s Representative, Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.

1. Notify Owner’s Representative, Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
2. Determine the locations from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
6. Do not perform duties of Contractor.

E. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."

F. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.

G. Associated Contractor Services: Cooperate with agencies and representatives performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:

1. Access to the Work.
2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspection. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.

H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and quality-control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspection.

1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.

I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents as a component of Contractor's quality-control plan. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's Construction Schedule. Update as the Work progresses.

1. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, Owner’s Representative, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

1.11 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency and/or special inspector to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner and as follows:

1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviewing the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
2. Notifying Architect, Commissioning Authority and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect and Commissioning Authority with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected work.

B. Special Tests and Inspections: Conducted by a qualified testing agency and/or special inspector as required by authorities having jurisdiction, as indicated in individual Specification Sections and as follows:

1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviewing the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
2. Notifying Architect and Commissioning Authority and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect and Commissioning Authority with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ACCEPTABLE TESTING AGENCIES

A. The Owner will have a testing contract with a third party testing and special inspection firm. Contractor shall employee another licensed and qualified testing agency.

3.2 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:

1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.

B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect and Commissioning Authority reference during normal working hours.

1. Submit log at Project closeout as part of Project Record Documents.

2. Contractor must provide a minimum 48 hour notice (2 business days) of testing to permit Owner’s testing company to do sample testing at the time if so desired.

3.3 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

A. General: On completion of testing, inspection, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.

1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution."

B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.

C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 01 40 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 42 00 – REFERENCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DEFINITIONS

A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.

B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.

C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "approved," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."

D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."

E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.

F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.

G. "Install": Operations at Project site including unloading, temporarily storing, unpacking, assembling, erecting, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar operations.

H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.

I. "Installer": Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.

1. Using a term such as "carpentry" does not imply that certain construction activities must be performed by accredited or unionized individuals of a corresponding generic name, such as "carpenter." It also does not imply that requirements specified apply exclusively to tradespeople of the corresponding generic name.

J. "Experienced": When used with an entity, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in size and scope to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

K. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

1.2 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.

B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Conflicting Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer uncertainties and requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

1. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

D. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project must be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.

1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source and make them available on request.

E. Abbreviations and Acronyms for Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the standards and regulations in the following list:

ADAAG Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)

CFR Code of Federal Regulations

CRD Handbook for Concrete and Cement

DOD Department of Defense Specifications and Standards

FED-STD Federal Standard (See FS)

FS Federal Specification

FTMS Federal Test Method Standard (See FS)

MILSPEC	Military Specification and Standards
UFAS	Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards

1.3 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale Research's "Encyclopedia of Associations" or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the U.S."

B. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list:

AA	Aluminum Association, Inc. (The)
AAADM	American Association of Automatic Door Manufacturers
AABC	Associated Air Balance Council
AAMA	American Architectural Manufacturers Association
AASHTO	American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
AATCC	American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists (The)
ABMA	American Bearing Manufacturers Association
ACI	American Concrete Institute/ACI International
ACPA	American Concrete Pipe Association
ADC	Air Diffusion Council
AEIC	Association of Edison Illuminating Companies, Inc. (The)
AFPA	American Forest & Paper Association (See AF&PA)
AF&PA	American Forest & Paper Association
AGA	American Gas Association
AGC	Associated General Contractors of America (The)
AHA	American Hardboard Association
AIA	American Institute of Architects (The)

AISC	American Institute of Steel Construction
AISI	American Iron and Steel Institute
AITC	American Institute of Timber Construction
ALA	American Laminators Association (See LMA)
ALSC	American Lumber Standard Committee
AMCA	Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.
ANLA	American Nursery & Landscape Association (Formerly: AAN - American Association of Nurserymen)
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
APA	APA - The Engineered Wood Association
APA	Architectural Precast Association
API	American Petroleum Institute
ARI	Air-Conditioning & Refrigeration Institute
ASCA	Architectural Spray Coaters Association
ASCE	American Society of Civil Engineers
ASHRAE	American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers
ASME	ASME International (The American Society of Mechanical Engineers International)
ASSE	American Society of Sanitary Engineering
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
AWCI	AWCI International (Association of the Wall and Ceiling Industries International)
AWCMA	American Window Covering Manufacturers Association (See WCMA)
AWI	Architectural Woodwork Institute
AWPA	American Wood-Preservers' Association
AWS	American Welding Society
AWWA	American Water Works Association

BHMA	Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association
BIA	Brick Industry Association (The)
BIFMA	BIFMA International (Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturer's Association International)
CCC	Carpet Cushion Council
CCFSS	Center for Cold-Formed Steel Structures
CDA	Copper Development Association Inc.
CFFA	Chemical Fabrics & Film Association, Inc.
CGA	Compressed Gas Association
CIMA	Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association
CISCA	Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association
CISPI	Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute
CLFMI	Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute
CPA	Composite Panel Association (Formerly: National Particleboard Association)
CPPA	Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe Association
CRI	Carpet & Rug Institute (The)
CRSI	Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute
CSA	CSA International (Formerly: IAS - International Approval Services)
CSI	Construction Specifications Institute (The)
CTI	Cooling Technology Institute (Formerly: Cooling Tower Institute)
DHI	Door and Hardware Institute
EIA/TIA	Electronic Industries Alliance/Telecommunications Industry Association
EIMA	EIFS Industry Members Association
EJMA	Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc.
FAA	Federal Aviation Administration

FCI	Fluid Controls Institute
FGMA	Flat Glass Marketing Association (See GANA)
FM	Factory Mutual System (See FMG)
FMG	FM Global (Formerly: FM - Factory Mutual System)
GA	Gypsum Association
GANA	Glass Association of North America (Formerly: FGMA - Flat Glass Marketing Association)
GRI	Geosynthetic Research Institute
GTA	Glass Tempering Division of Glass Association of North America (See GANA)
HI	Hydraulic Institute
HI	Hydronics Institute
HMMA	Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association (See NAAMM)
HPVA	Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association
HPW	H. P. White Laboratory, Inc.
IAS	International Approval Services (See CSA International)
ICEA	Insulated Cable Engineers Association, Inc.
ICRI	International Concrete Repair Institute (The)
IEC	International Electrotechnical Commission
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The)
IESNA	Illuminating Engineering Society of North America
IGCC	Insulating Glass Certification Council
ILI	Indiana Limestone Institute of America, Inc.
IRI	Industrial Risk Insurers
ITS	Intertek Testing Services
KCMA	Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association

LGSI	Light Gage Structural Institute
LMA	Laminating Materials Association (Formerly: ALA - American Laminators Association)
LPI	Lightning Protection Institute
LSGA	Laminated Safety Glass Association (See GANA)
MBMA	Metal Building Manufacturers Association
MCA	Metal Construction Association
MFMA	Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association
MFMA	Metal Framing Manufacturers Association
MHIA	Material Handling Industry of America
MIA	Marble Institute of America
ML/SFA	Metal Lath/Steel Framing Association (See SSMA)
MSS	Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.
NAAMM	National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers
NAAMM	North American Association of Mirror Manufacturers (See GANA)
NACE	NACE International (National Association of Corrosion Engineers International)
NAIMA	North American Insulation Manufacturers Association (The)
NAMI	National Accreditation and Management Institute, Inc.
NAPM	National Association of Photographic Manufacturers (See PIMA)
NBGQA	National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc.
NCMA	National Concrete Masonry Association
NEBB	National Environmental Balancing Bureau
NECA	National Electrical Contractors Association
NeLMA	Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association
NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers Association
NETA	InterNational Electrical Testing Association

NFPA	National Fire Protection Association
NFRC	National Fenestration Rating Council
NGA	National Glass Association
NHLA	National Hardwood Lumber Association
NLGA	National Lumber Grades Authority
NPA	National Particleboard Association (See CPA)
NRCA	National Roofing Contractors Association
NRMCA	National Ready Mixed Concrete Association
NSA	National Stone Association
NSF	NSF International (National Sanitation Foundation International)
NWWDA	National Wood Window and Door Association (See WDMA)
PCI	Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute
PDCA	Painting and Decorating Contractors of America
PDI	Plumbing & Drainage Institute
PIMA	Photographic & Imaging Manufacturers Association (Formerly: NAPM - National Association of Photographic Manufacturers)
RCSC	Research Council on Structural Connections
RFCI	Resilient Floor Covering Institute
RIS	Redwood Inspection Service
RMA	Rubber Manufacturers Association
SAE	SAE International
SDI	Steel Deck Institute
SDI	Steel Door Institute
SEFA	Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association
SGCC	Safety Glazing Certification Council

SIGMA	Sealed Insulating Glass Manufacturers Association
SMA	Screen Manufacturers Association
SMACNA	Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association
SPFA	Spray Polyurethane Foam Alliance (Formerly: SPI/SPFD - The Society of the Plastics Industry, Inc.; Spray Polyurethane Foam Division)
SPI	The Society of the Plastics Industry
SPIB	Southern Pine Inspection Bureau (The)
SPI/SPFD	The Society of the Plastics Industry Spray Polyurethane Foam Division (See SPFA)
SPRI	SPRI (Single Ply Roofing Institute)
SSINA	Specialty Steel Industry of North America
SSMA	Steel Stud Manufacturers Association (Formerly: ML/SFA - Metal Lath/Steel Framing Association)
SSPC	SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings
SWI	Steel Window Institute
SWRI	Sealant, Waterproofing, and Restoration Institute
TCA	Tile Council of America, Inc.
TIA/EIA	Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance
TPI	Truss Plate Institute
UFAC	Upholstered Furniture Action Council
UL	Underwriters Laboratories Inc.
UNI	Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association
USITT	United States Institute for Theatre Technology, Inc.
USP	U.S. Pharmacopeia
WASTEC	Waste Equipment Technology Association
WCLIB	West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau
WCMA	Window Covering Manufacturers Association

(Formerly: AWCMA - American Window Covering Manufacturers Association)

WDMA Window & Door Manufacturers Association
(Formerly: NWWDA - National Wood Window and Door Association)

WMMPA Wood Moulding & Millwork Producers Association

WWPA Western Wood Products Association

C. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list:

BOCA BOCA International, Inc.

CABO Council of American Building Officials (See ICC)

IAPMO International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials (The)

ICBO International Conference of Building Officials

ICC International Code Council
(Formerly: CABO - Council of American Building Officials)

SBCCI Southern Building Code Congress International, Inc.

D. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list:

CPSC Consumer Product Safety Commission

DOC Department of Commerce

EPA Environmental Protection Agency

FAA Federal Aviation Administration

FCC Federal Communications Commission

FDA Food and Drug Administration

GSA General Services Administration

NCHRP National Cooperative Highway Research Program (See TRB)

NIST National Institute of Standards and Technology

OSHA	Occupational Safety & Health Administration
RUS	Rural Utilities Service (See USDA)
TRB	Transportation Research Board
USDA	Department of Agriculture

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 42 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 50 00 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 011000 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.
2. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for disposal of ground water at Project site.

1.3 USE CHARGES

A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities engaged in the Project to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to Owner's construction forces, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Sewer Service: Contractor will pay for temporary restroom facilities for all entities during construction operations.

C. Water Service: Owner will pay water-service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations. Contractor shall protect any exterior water connections from freezing.

D. Electric Power Service: Owner will pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.

E. Water and Sewer Service from Existing System: Water from Owner's existing water system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.

F. Electric Power Service from Existing System: Electric power from Owner's existing system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Site Utilization Plan: Show temporary facilities, temporary utility lines and connections, staging areas, construction site entrances, vehicle circulation, and parking areas for construction personnel.

B. Implementation and Termination Schedule: Within 15 days of date established for commencement of the Work, submit schedule indicating implementation and termination dates of each temporary utility.

C. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Show fabrication and installation details, including plans, elevations, details, layouts, typestyles, graphic elements, and message content.

D. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program. Contractor shall coordinate work with the Owner and the on-site Airport Fire Personnel regarding work that will impact the existing fire suppression system in the operational terminal.

E. Moisture- and Mold-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage and mold.

F. Dust- and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust- and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Include the following:

1. Locations of dust-control partitions at each phase of work.
2. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
3. Location of proposed air-filtration system discharge.
4. Waste-handling procedures.
5. Other dust-control measures.

G. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in the United States Access Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Dust-Control Adhesive-Surface Walk-Off Mats: Provide mats minimum 36 by 60 inches.

B. Retain "Insulation" Paragraph below for insulated temporary enclosures and partitions.

C. Insulation: Unfaced mineral-fiber blanket, manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively.

2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.

B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:

1. Furniture required for Project-site documents including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 12 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with no fewer than one receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot-square tack and marker boards.
3. Drinking water and private toilet.
4. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F.
5. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height.

C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.

1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.

B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.

1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return-air grille in system and remove at end of construction and clean HVAC system as required in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

C. Air-Filtration Units: Primary and secondary HEPA-filter-equipped portable units with four-stage filtration. Provide single switch for emergency shutoff. Configure to run continuously. All

return air into the existing terminal shall be protected with MERV 8 filters at each return air grill capable of transferring air to the terminal air-handling unit.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES, GENERAL

A. Conservation: Coordinate construction and use of temporary facilities with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.

1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.

1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Section 011000 "Summary."

B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

3.3 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.

1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.

B. Water Service: Connect to Owner's existing water service facilities. Clean and maintain water service facilities in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use. Protect from freezing.

C. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.

D. Temporary Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.

1. Provide temporary dehumidification systems when required to reduce ambient and substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes and their proper curing or drying.

E. Isolation of Work Areas in Occupied Facilities: Prevent dust, fumes, and odors from entering occupied areas.

1. Prior to commencing work, isolate the HVAC system in area where work is to be performed.

    a. Disconnect supply and return ductwork in work area from HVAC systems servicing occupied areas.
    b. Maintain negative air pressure within work area using HEPA-equipped air-filtration units, starting with commencement of temporary partition construction, and continuing until removal of temporary partitions is complete.

2. Maintain dust partitions during the Work. Use vacuum collection attachments on dust-producing equipment. Isolate limited work within occupied areas using portable dust-containment devices.
3. Perform daily construction cleanup and final cleanup using approved, HEPA-filter-equipped vacuum equipment.

F. Electric Power Service: Connect to Owner's existing electric power service. Maintain equipment in a condition acceptable to Owner.

G. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.

1. Install electric power service as directed.
2. Connect temporary service to Owner's existing power source, as directed by Owner.

H. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.

1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.

2. Coordinate layout and use of temporary lighting with the airport. Light plants shall not air towards the airspace approaches, or towards other locations as directed by the Owner.

I. Emergency Contact Information: In common-use facilities / or the contractor’s field office, accessible by all construction personnel, provide the following contact information:

    a. Police and fire departments.
    b. Ambulance service.
    c. Contractor's home office.
    d. Contractor's emergency after-hours telephone number.
    e. Owner’s Representative’s office
    f. Architect's office.
    g. Engineers' offices.
    h. Owner's office.

i. Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.

3.4 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with the following:

1. Provide construction for temporary offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines that is noncombustible according to ASTM E136. Comply with NFPA 241.
2. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.

B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations.

1. Provide dust-control and sweeping as necessary to prevent Foreign Object Debris (FOD) from accumulating on the airfield

C. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.

D. Parking: Provide temporary parking areas for construction personnel.

E. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.

1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
2. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.

F. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.

1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.

a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.

3. Maintain and touch up signs so they are legible at all times.

G. Waste Disposal Facilities: Comply with Owner requirements for adequately sized waste collection containers with covered lids to prevent wind blow debris. To be located per coordination with the direction of the Owner, Owner’s Representative, or Architect.

H. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.

1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.

3.5 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.

1. Where access to adjacent properties is required in order to affect protection of existing facilities, obtain written permission from adjacent property owner to access property for that purpose.

B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.

1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Section 011000 "Summary."

C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to undisturbed areas and to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings and Details, requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.

1. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant-protection zones.
2. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
3. Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during the course of Project.
4. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

D. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.

E. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using materials approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Site Enclosure Fence: Prior to commencing earthwork, furnish and install site enclosure snow fence in a manner that will prevent people from easily entering restricted airfield area.

1. Extent of Fence: As indicated on Drawings.

G. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each workday.
   1. The site is to be secured from the roadway during non-work periods or during periods it is not being monitored by construction personnel.

H. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.

   1. Adjust pedestrian walkway fencing as necessary to route airline passengers safely around the work site. Layout to be coordinated with the Owner.

I. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.

3.6 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Describe delivery, handling, storage, installation, and protection provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.

   1. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and replacing water-damaged Work.
   2. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water, such as sprayed fire-resistive materials, plastering, and terrazzo grinding, and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.
   3. Indicate methods to be used to avoid trapping water in finished work.

B. Exposed Construction Period: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:

   1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
   2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
   3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
   4. Remove standing water from decks.
   5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.

C. Partially Enclosed Construction Period: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:

   1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
   2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
   3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
   4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
   5. Do not install material that is wet.
   6. Discard and replace stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
   7. Perform work in a sequence that allows wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in gypsum board or other interior finishes.

D. Controlled Construction Period: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:

1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
2. Use temporary or permanent HVAC system to control humidity within ranges specified for installed and stored materials.
3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.

    a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective and require replacing.
    b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
    c. Remove and replace materials that cannot be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

3.7 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.

B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.

1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.

C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.

D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
2. Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.

3. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 01 50 00

SECTION 01 60 00 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
2. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
3. Section 014200 "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.

1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved by Architect through submittal process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.

B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a single manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation. In addition to the basis-of-design product description, product attributes and characteristics may be listed to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual

characteristics, and other special features and requirements for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.

C. Subject to Compliance with Requirements: Where the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements" introduces a product selection procedure in an individual Specification Section, provide products qualified under the specified product procedure. In the event that a named product or product by a named manufacturer does not meet the other requirements of the specifications, select another named product or product from another named manufacturer that does meet the requirements of the specifications. Submit a comparable product request, if applicable.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Comparable Product Request Submittal: Submit request for consideration of each comparable product. Identify basis-of-design product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.

1. Include data to indicate compliance with the requirements specified in "Comparable Products" Article.
2. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within 7 days of receipt of a comparable product request. Architect will notify Contractor of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product request within 15 days of receipt of request, or 7 days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.

    a. Form of Architect's Approval of Submittal: As specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
    b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.

B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.

1. Each contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
2. If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.

B. Identification of Products: Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturer or product names or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products or equipment that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on the exterior.

1. Labels: Locate required product labels and stamps on a concealed surface, or, where required for observation following installation, on a visually accessible surface that is not conspicuous.
2. Equipment Nameplates: Provide a permanent nameplate on each item of service-connected or power-operated equipment. Locate on a visually accessible but inconspicuous surface. Include information essential for operation, including the following:

    a. Name of product and manufacturer.
    b. Model and serial number.
    c. Capacity.
    d. Speed.
    e. Ratings.

3. See individual identification sections in Divisions 21, 22, 23, and 26 for additional identification requirements.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Delivery and Handling:

1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.

C. Storage:

1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
4. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
7. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.

1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.

B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.

1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using indicated form properly executed.
3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.

C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.

1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties meeting requirements of the Contract Documents.
4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," or "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.

    a. Submit additional documentation required by Architect in order to establish equivalency of proposed products. Evaluation of "or equal" product status is by the Architect whose determination is final.

B. Product Selection Procedures:

1. Sole Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.

    a. Sole product may be indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following: …"

2. Sole Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.

    a. Sole manufacturer/source may be indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following: …"

3. Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.

    a. Limited list of products may be indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following: …"

4. Non-Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed, or an unnamed product, which complies with requirements.

    a. Non-limited list of products is indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following: …"

5. Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.

    a. Limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: …"

6. Non-Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed, or a product by an unnamed manufacturer, which complies with requirements.

    a. Non-limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers whose products may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following: …"

7. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or

indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.

a. For approval of products by unnamed manufacturers, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for substitutions for convenience.

C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require "match Architect's sample," provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.

1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.

D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

A. Conditions for Consideration of Comparable Products: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

1. Evidence that proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, is consistent with the Contract Documents, will produce the indicated results, and is compatible with other portions of the Work. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant product qualities include attributes such as type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other specific features and requirements.
2. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
3. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
4. Samples, if requested.

B. Submittal Requirements: Approval by the Architect of Contractor's request for use of comparable product is not intended to satisfy other submittal requirements. Comply with specified submittal requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 60 00

SECTION 01 73 00 – EXECUTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Construction layout.
2. Field engineering and surveying.
3. Installation of the Work.
4. Cutting and patching.
5. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
6. Progress cleaning.
7. Starting and adjusting.
8. Protection of installed construction.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 011000 "Summary" for limits on use of Project site.
2. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
3. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, replacing defective work, and final cleaning.
4. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for patching penetrations in fire-rated construction.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.

B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Cutting and Patching Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Prior to commencing work requiring cutting and patching, review extent of cutting and patching anticipated and examine procedures for ensuring satisfactory result from cutting and patching work. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cutting and patching to attend, including the following:

    a. Contractor's superintendent.
    b. Trade supervisor responsible for cutting operations.
    c. Trade supervisor(s) responsible for patching of each type of substrate.
    d. Mechanical, electrical, and utilities subcontractors' supervisors, to the extent each trade is affecting by cutting and patching operations.

2. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor and professional engineer.

B. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor and professional engineer certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.

C. Cutting and Patching Plan: Submit plan describing procedures at least 10 days prior to the time cutting and patching will be performed. Include the following information:

1. Extent: Describe reason for and extent of each occurrence of cutting and patching.
2. Changes to In-Place Construction: Describe anticipated results. Include changes to structural elements and operating components as well as changes in building appearance and other significant visual elements.
3. Products: List products to be used for patching and firms or entities that will perform patching work.
4. Dates: Indicate when cutting and patching will be performed.
5. Utilities and Mechanical and Electrical Systems: List services and systems that cutting and patching procedures will disturb or affect. List services and systems that will be relocated and those that will be temporarily out of service. Indicate length of time permanent services and systems will be disrupted.

    a. Include description of provisions for temporary services and systems during interruption of permanent services and systems.

D. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.

1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operational elements include the following:

a. Primary operational systems and equipment.
b. Fire separation assemblies.
c. Air or smoke barriers and Fire-suppression systems.
d. Plumbing piping systems.
e. Mechanical systems piping and ducts.
f. Control systems.
g. Communication systems.
h. Fire-detection and -alarm systems.
i. Conveying systems.
j. Electrical wiring systems.
k. Operating systems of special construction.
l. Security fence and gate installation

3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Other construction elements include but are not limited to:

a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
b. Membranes and flashings.
c. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
d. Sprayed fire-resistive material.
e. Equipment supports.
f. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
g. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.

4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.

B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.

1. For projects requiring compliance with sustainable design and construction practices and procedures, use products for patching that comply with sustainable design requirements.

B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.

1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.

1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services; and other utilities.
2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.

B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.

1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.

C. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:

1. Description of the Work.
2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.

3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
4. Recommended corrections.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility and Owner's Representative that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.

D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."

3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Owner's Representative promptly.

B. General: lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices:

1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
6. Notify Owner's Representative when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.

C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.

D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.

E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Owner's Representative.

3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.

B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.

1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Owner's Representative. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Owner's Representative before proceeding.
2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.

C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.

1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.

3.5 INSTALLATION

A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.

1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in unoccupied spaces.

B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.

C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.

D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.

E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.

F. Tools and Equipment: Where possible, select tools or equipment that minimize production of excessive noise levels.

G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other portions of the Work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.

H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.

1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.

J. Repair or remove and replace damaged, defective, or nonconforming Work.

1. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for repairing or removing and replacing defective Work.

3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.

1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.

B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.

D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.

E. Adjacent Occupied Areas: Where interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas is unavoidable, coordinate cutting and patching according to requirements in Section 011000 "Summary."

F. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to minimize interruption to occupied areas or adjacent sites.

G. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.

1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
3. Concrete and/or Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.

H. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.

1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.

    a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or finishing materials.
    b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.

3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.

    a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.

4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.

I. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.7 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction personnel.

B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.

1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of Contractor's preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.
2. Preinstallation Conferences: Include Owner's construction personnel at preinstallation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive Owner's work. Attend preinstallation conferences conducted by Owner's construction personnel if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

3.8 PROGRESS CLEANING

A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.

1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F
3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.

    a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.

4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.

B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.

C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.

1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.

D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.

E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.

F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls”.

H. Three paragraphs below reduce or eliminate the need for similar provisions in other Sections. Insert other provisions needed because of unusual Project conditions. Specify unusual provisions for specific work in the individual Section.

I. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.

J. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.

K. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to ensure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

3.9 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

A. Coordinate startup and adjusting of equipment and operating components with requirements in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."

B. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.

C. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.

D. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

E. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."

3.10 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

B. Protection of Existing Items: Provide protection and ensure that existing items to remain undisturbed by construction are maintained in condition that existed at commencement of the Work.

C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION 01 73 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 77 00 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Substantial Completion procedures.
2. Final completion procedures.
3. Warranties.
4. Final cleaning.
5. Repair of the Work.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation" for submitting final completion construction photographic documentation.
2. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for additional operation and maintenance manual requirements.
3. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
4. Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training" for requirements to train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain products, equipment, and systems.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of cleaning agent.

B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.

C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at final completion.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.

C. Field Report: For pest control inspection.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.

1.6 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.

B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.

1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Owner’s Representative. Label with manufacturer's name and model number.

    a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Owner’s Representative signature for receipt of submittals.

5. Submit testing, adjusting, and balancing records.
6. Submit sustainable design submittals not previously submitted.
7. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.

C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.

1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.

3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
6. Advise Owner of changeover in utility services.
7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
9. Complete final cleaning requirements.
10. Touch up paint and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.

D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Owner’s Representative will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:

1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
4. Submit pest-control final inspection report.
5. Submit final completion photographic documentation.

B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Owner’s Representative will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

1.8 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.

1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and proceeding from lowest to highest room number.
2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
3. Include the following information at the top of each page:

    a. Project name.
    b. Date.
    c. Name of Owner’s Representative
    d. Name of Contractor.
    e. Page number.

4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:

    a. MS Excel electronic file. Owner’s Representative will return annotated file.
    b. PDF electronic file. Owner’s Representative will return annotated file.
    c. Web-based project software upload. Utilize software feature for creating and updating list of incomplete items (punch list).
    d. Four paper copies. Owner’s Representative will return one copy.

1.9 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where warranties are indicated to commence on dates other than date of Substantial Completion, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.

B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.

C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.

D. Warranty Electronic File: Provide warranties and bonds in PDF format. Assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single electronic PDF file with bookmarks enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.

1. Submit on digital media acceptable to Owner’s Representative or by uploading to web-based project software site.

E. Warranties in Paper Form:

1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.

F. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.

B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:

a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
c. Rake grounds that are not planted, mulched, or paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.

d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
l. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
o. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.

    1) Clean HVAC system in compliance with all HVAC specification sections. Provide written report on completion of cleaning.

p. Clean luminaires, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.

C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.

D. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Insert an article on continuing inspections or consultations by Contractor if required. Possibly insert a schedule of approximate times for inspections.

3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.

B. Repair, or remove and replace, defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.

1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that that already show evidence of repair or restoration.

    a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.

3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

END OF SECTION 01 77 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 78 23 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:

1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory manuals.
2. Emergency manuals.
3. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
4. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
5. Product maintenance manuals.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.
2. Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for verification and compilation of data into operation and maintenance manuals.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.

B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Submit operation and maintenance manuals indicated. Provide content for each manual as specified in individual Specification Sections, and as reviewed and approved at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.

1. Owner’s Representative and Commissioning Authority will comment on whether content of operation and maintenance submittals is acceptable.

2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.

B. Format: Submit operation and maintenance manuals in the following format:

1. Submit on digital media acceptable to Owner’s Representative by uploading to web-based project software site or other acceptable method of transmission by Owner’s Representative. Enable reviewer comments on draft submittals.

C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least 30 days before commencing demonstration and training. Owner’s Representative and Commissioning Authority will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.

D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Owner’s Representative and Commissioning Authority will return copy with comments.

1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Owner’s Representative's and Commissioning Authority's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Owner’s Representative's and Commissioning Authority's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.

E. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

1.5 FORMAT OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.

1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
2. File Names and Bookmarks: Bookmark individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.

B. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard-copy, bound and labeled volumes.

1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.

a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-

reference other binders if necessary, to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.

b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, subject matter of contents, and indicate Specification Section number on bottom of spine. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.

2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves.
4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch white bond paper.
5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.

a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.

b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

1.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Organization of Manuals: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:

1. Title page.
2. Table of contents.
3. Manual contents.

B. Title Page: Include the following information:

1. Subject matter included in manual.
2. Name and address of Project.
3. Name and address of Owner.
4. Date of submittal.
5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
7. Name and contact information for Owner’s Representative.
8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.
9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Owner’s Representative that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.

C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.

1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.

D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.

E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

1.7 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY MANUAL

A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. List items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include the following:

1. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
2. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
3. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.

1.8 EMERGENCY MANUALS

A. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.

B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:

1. Type of emergency.
2. Emergency instructions.
3. Emergency procedures.

C. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:

1. Fire.
2. Flood.
3. Gas leak.

4. Water leak.
5. Power failure.
6. Water outage.
7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
8. Chemical release or spill.

D. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.

E. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Instructions on stopping.
2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

1.9 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT OPERATION MANUALS

A. Systems and Equipment Operation Manual: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.

1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.

B. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:

1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
3. Operating standards.
4. Operating procedures.
5. Operating logs.
6. Wiring diagrams.
7. Control diagrams.
8. Piped system diagrams.
9. Precautions against improper use.
10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.

C. Descriptions: Include the following:

1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
2. Manufacturer's name.

3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
4. Equipment function.
5. Operating characteristics.
6. Limiting conditions.
7. Performance curves.
8. Engineering data and tests.
9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

D. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Startup procedures.
2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
4. Regulation and control procedures.
5. Instructions on stopping.
6. Normal shutdown instructions.
7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

E. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

F. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color coding where required for identification.

1.10 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Systems and Equipment Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventive maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, lists of spare parts, and warranty information.

1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.

B. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranties and bonds as described below.

C. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

D. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Include the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:

1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins; include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.

    a. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.

2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.

E. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:

1. Test and inspection instructions.
2. Troubleshooting guide.
3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.

F. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.

1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.

G. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.

H. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.

I. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

J. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and

flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.

1. Do not use original project record documents as part of maintenance manuals.

1.11 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.

B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.

C. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

D. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Product name and model number.
2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Color, pattern, and texture.
4. Material and chemical composition.
5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.

E. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:

1. Inspection procedures.
2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
5. Repair instructions.

F. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.

G. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 78 23

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 78 39 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:

1. Record Drawings.
2. Record Specifications.
3. Record Product Data.
4. Miscellaneous record submittals.

B. Related Requirements: Retain subparagraphs below to cross-reference requirements Contractor might expect to find in this Section but are specified in other Sections.

1. Section 017300 "Execution" for final property survey.
2. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
3. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:

1. Number of Copies: Submit two set(s) of marked-up record prints.
2. Number of Copies: Submit copies of record Drawings as follows:

a. Initial Submittal:

1) Submit one paper-copy set(s) of marked-up record prints.
2) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one of file prints.
3) Submit record digital data files and one set of plots.
4) Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.

b. Final Submittal:

1) Submit two paper-copy set(s) of marked-up record prints.
2) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and two set(s) of prints.
3) Print each drawing, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.

B. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.

C. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of each submittal.

1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.

D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit annotated PDF electronic files of each submittal.

E. Reports: Submit written report weekly indicating items incorporated into project record documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including revisions, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.

1.4 RECORD DRAWINGS

A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.

1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.

a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding photographic documentation.

2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
c. Depths of foundations.
d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
g. Actual equipment locations.
h. Duct size and routing.
i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
j. Changes made by Change Order or work Change Directive.

k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.

3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.

B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Owner's Representative. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:

1. Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as the original Contract Drawings.
2. Format: DWG Latest Version, Microsoft Windows operating system.
3. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
4. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
5. Refer instances of uncertainty to Owner's Representative for resolution.
6. Architect will furnish Contractor with one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.

a. See Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements related to use of Architect's digital data files.
b. Architect will provide data file layer information. Record markups in separate layers.

C. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.

1. Record Prints: Organize record prints into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
3. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
4. Identification: As follows:

a. Project name.
b. Date.
c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
d. Name of Owner's Representative
e. Name of Contractor.

1.5 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.

1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
4. For each principal product, indicate whether record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as record Product Data.
5. Note related Change Orders, record Product Data and record Drawings where applicable.

B. Format: Submit record Specifications as annotated PDF electronic files.

1.6 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.

B. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.

1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
3. Note related Change Orders, record Specifications and record Drawings where applicable.

C. Format: Submit record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic files.

1. Include record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of record Product Data.

1.7 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.

B. Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as annotated PDF electronic files.

1. Include miscellaneous record submittals directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of miscellaneous record submittals.

1.8 MAINTENANCE OF RECORD DOCUMENTS

A. Maintenance of Record Documents: Store record documents in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Owner's Representative reference during normal working hours.

END OF SECTION 01 78 39

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 79 00 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:

1. Instruction in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
2. Demonstration and training video recordings.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.

1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.

B. Qualification Data: For facilitator and/or instructor.

C. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.

D. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Demonstration and Training Video Recordings: Submit two copies within seven days of end of each training module.

1. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:

a. Name of Project.
b. Name and address of videographer.
c. Name of Architect.
d. Name of Construction Manager.
e. Name of Contractor.
f. Date of video recording.

2. Transcript: Prepared and bound in format matching operation and maintenance manuals. Mark appropriate identification on front and spine of each binder. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding video recording. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.
3. Transcript: Prepared in PDF electronic format. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding video recording and a table of contents with links to corresponding training components. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.
4. At completion of training, submit complete training manual(s) for Owner's use prepared in same paper and PDF file format required for operation and maintenance manuals specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Facilitator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in training or educating maintenance personnel in a training program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in training or education with a record of successful learning performance.

B. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.

C. Videographer Qualifications: A professional videographer who is experienced photographing demonstration and training events similar to those required.

D. Preinstruction Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to demonstration and training including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
2. Review and finalize instruction schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors' personnel, audiovisual equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
3. Review required content of instruction.
4. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.

B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.

C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data have been reviewed and approved by Architect.

1.7 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.

B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:

1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:

    a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
    b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
    c. Operating standards.
    d. Regulatory requirements.
    e. Equipment function.
    f. Operating characteristics.
    g. Limiting conditions.
    h. Performance curves.

2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:

    a. Emergency manuals.
    b. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
    c. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
    d. Product maintenance manuals.
    e. Project Record Documents.
    f. Identification systems.
    g. Warranties and bonds.
    h. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.

3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:

    a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
    b. Instructions on stopping.
    c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
    d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
    e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
    f. Special operating instructions and procedures.

4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:

a. Startup procedures.
b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
d. Regulation and control procedures.
e. Control sequences.
f. Safety procedures.
g. Instructions on stopping.
h. Normal shutdown instructions.
i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
m. Special operating instructions and procedures.

5. Adjustments: Include the following:

a. Alignments.
b. Checking adjustments.
c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.

6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:

a. Diagnostic instructions.
b. Test and inspection procedures.

7. Maintenance: Include the following:

a. Inspection procedures.
b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
d. Procedures for routine cleaning.
e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
g. Instruction on use of special tools.

8. Repairs: Include the following:

a. Diagnosis instructions.
b. Repair instructions.
c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

1.8 PREPARATION

A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."

B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

1.9 INSTRUCTION

A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.

B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.

1. Architect will furnish an instructor to describe basis of system design, operational requirements, criteria, and regulatory requirements.
2. Owner will furnish an instructor to describe Owner's operational philosophy.
3. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.

C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed-on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.

1. Schedule training with Owner, through Owner’s Representative with at least seven days' advance notice.

D. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.

E. Evaluation: At conclusion of each training module, assess and document each participant's mastery of module by use of a demonstration and oral performance-based test.

F. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and remove from Project site. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

1.10 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING VIDEO RECORDINGS

A. General: Engage a qualified commercial videographer to record demonstration and training video recordings. Record each training module separately. Include classroom instructions and demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids, but not student practice.

1. At beginning of each training module, record each chart containing learning objective and lesson outline.

B. Digital Video Recordings: Provide high-resolution, digital video in MPEG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor resolution of 12 megapixels and capable of recording in full HD mode with vibration reduction technology.

1. Submit video recordings on thumb drive and by uploading to web-based Project software site.
2. File Hierarchy: Organize folder structure and file locations according to Project Manual table of contents. Provide complete screen-based menu.

3. File Names: Utilize file names based on name of equipment generally described in video segment, as identified in Project specifications.
4. Contractor and Installer Contact File: Using appropriate software, create a file for inclusion on the equipment demonstration and training recording that describes the following for each Contractor involved on the Project, arranged according to Project Manual table of contents:

    a. Name of Contractor/Installer.
    b. Business address.
    c. Business phone number.
    d. Point of contact.
    e. Email address.

C. Recording: Mount camera on tripod before starting recording, unless otherwise necessary to adequately cover area of demonstration and training. Display continuous running time.

1. Film training session(s) in segments not to exceed 15 minutes.

    a. Produce segments to present a single significant piece of equipment per segment.
    b. Organize segments with multiple pieces of equipment to follow order of Project Manual table of contents.
    c. Where a training session on a particular piece of equipment exceeds 15 minutes, stop filming and pause training session. Begin training session again upon commencement of new filming segment.

D. Light Levels: Verify light levels are adequate to properly light equipment. Verify equipment markings are clearly visible prior to recording.

1. Furnish additional portable lighting as required.

E. Narration: Describe scenes on video recording by audio narration by microphone while or dubbing audio narration off-site after video recording is recorded. Include description of items being viewed.

F. Transcript: Provide a transcript of the narration. Display images and running time captured from videotape opposite the corresponding narration segment.

G. Preproduced Video Recordings: Provide video recordings used as a component of training modules in same format as recordings of live training.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

END OF SECTION 01 79 00

SECTION 01 91 13 - GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. General requirements for coordinating and scheduling commissioning activities.
2. Commissioning meetings.
3. Commissioning reports.
4. Use of commissioning process test equipment, instrumentation, and tools.
5. Construction checklists, including, but not limited to, installation checks, startup, performance tests, and performance test demonstration.
6. Commissioning tests and commissioning test demonstration.
7. Adjusting, verifying, and documenting identified systems and assemblies.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 011000 "Summary" for Commissioning Authority responsibilities.
2. Section 011200 "Multiple Contract Summary" for Commissioning Authority responsibilities.
3. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submittal procedure requirements for commissioning process.
4. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion submittal requirements.
5. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for preliminary operation and maintenance data submittal requirements.
6. Section 019119.43 "Exterior Enclosure Commissioning" for technical commissioning requirements for exterior closure.
7. Section 210800 "Commissioning of Fire Suppression" for technical commissioning requirements for fire suppression.
8. Section 220800 "Commissioning of Plumbing" for technical commissioning requirements for plumbing.
9. Section 230800 "Commissioning of HVAC" for technical commissioning requirements for HVAC.
10. Section 260800 "Commissioning of Electrical Systems" for technical commissioning requirements for electrical systems.
11. Section 270800 "Commissioning of Communications" for technical commissioning requirements for communications systems.
12. Section 280800 "Commissioning of Electronic Safety and Security" for technical commissioning requirements for electronic safety and security systems.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Acceptance Criteria: Threshold of acceptable work quality or performance specified for a commissioning activity, including, but not limited to, construction checklists, performance tests, performance test demonstrations, commissioning tests, and commissioning test demonstrations.

B. Basis-of-Design Document: A document prepared by Architect that records concepts, calculations, decisions, and product selections used to comply with Owner's Project Requirements and to suit applicable regulatory requirements, standards, and guidelines.

C. Commissioning Authority: An entity engaged by Owner, and identified in Section 011000 "Summary," to evaluate Commissioning-Process Work.

D. Commissioning Plan: A document, prepared by Commissioning Authority, that outlines the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation of commissioning requirements.

E. Commissioning: A quality-focused process for verifying and documenting that the facility and all of its systems and assemblies are planned, designed, installed, and tested to comply with Owner's Project Requirements. The requirements specified here are limited to the construction phase commissioning activities. The scope of the commissioning process is defined in [**Section 011000 "Summary."**] [**Section 011200 "Multiple Contract Summary."**]

F. Construction-Phase Commissioning-Process Completion: The stage of completion and acceptance of commissioning process when resolution of deficient conditions and issues discovered during commissioning process and retesting until acceptable results are obtained has been accomplished. Owner will establish in writing the date construction-phase commissioning-process completion is achieved. See Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion submittal requirements.

1. Commissioning process is complete when the Work specified of this Section and related Sections has been completed and accepted, including, but not limited to, the following:

    a. Completion of tests and acceptance of test results.
    b. Resolution of issues, as verified by retests performed and documented with acceptance of retest results.
    c. Comply with requirements in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
    d. Completion and acceptance of submittals and reports.

G. Owner's Project Requirements: A document that details the functional requirements of a project and the expectations of how it will be used and operated, including Project goals, measurable performance criteria, cost considerations, benchmarks, success criteria, and supporting information. This document is prepared either by the Owner or for the Owner by the Architect or Commissioning Authority.

H. Owner's Witness: Commissioning Authority, Owner's Project Manager, or Architect-designated witness authorized to authenticate test demonstration data and to sign completed test data forms.

I. "Systems," "Assemblies," "Subsystems," "Equipment," and "Components": Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components.

J. Test: Performance tests, performance test demonstrations, commissioning tests, and commissioning test demonstrations.

K. Sampling Procedures and Tables for Inspection by Attributes: As defined in ASQ Z1.4.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submittal procedure general requirements for commissioning process.

B. Commissioning Plan Information:

1. List of Contractor-appointed commissioning team members to include specific personnel and subcontractors performing the various commissioning requirements.
2. Schedule of commissioning activities, integrated with the Construction Schedule. Comply with requirements in Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for the Construction Schedule general requirements for commissioning process.
3. Contractor personnel and subcontractors participating in each test.
4. List of instrumentation required for each test to include identification of parties that will provide instrumentation for each test.

C. Commissioning schedule.

D. Two-week look-ahead schedules.

E. List test instrumentation, equipment, and monitoring devices. Include the following information:

1. Make, model, serial number, and application for each instrument, equipment, and monitoring device.
2. Brief description of intended use.
3. Calibration record showing the following:

    a. Calibration agency, including name and contact information.
    b. Last date of calibration.
    c. Range of values for which calibration is valid.
    d. Certification of accuracy.
    e. Certification for calibration equipment traceable to NIST.
    f. Due date of the next calibration.

F. Test Reports:

1. Pre-Startup Report: Prior to startup of equipment or a system, submit signed, completed construction checklists.
2. Test Data Reports: At the end of each day in which tests are conducted, submit test data for tests performed.
3. Commissioning Issue Reports: Daily, at the end of each day in which tests are conducted, submit commissioning issue reports for tests for which acceptable results were not achieved.

4. Weekly Progress Report: Weekly, at the end of each week in which tests are conducted, submit a progress report.
5. Data Trend Logs: Submit data trend logs at the end of the trend log period.
6. System Alarm Logs: Daily, at the start of days following a day in which tests were performed, submit printout of log of alarms that occurred since the last log was printed.

G. Construction Checklists:

1. Material checks.
2. Installation checks.
3. Startup procedures, where required.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Commissioning Report:

1. At Construction-Phase Commissioning Completion, include the following:

a. Pre-startup reports.
b. Approved test procedures
c. Test data forms, completed and signed.
d. Progress reports.
e. Commissioning issue report log.
f. Commissioning issue reports showing resolution of issues.
g. Correspondence or other documents related to resolution of issues.
h. Other reports required by commissioning process.
i. List unresolved issues and reasons they remain unresolved and should be exempted from the requirements for Construction-Phase Commissioning Completion.
j. Report shall include commissioning work of Contractor.

B. Request for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion.

C. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT, INSTRUMENTATION, AND TOOLS

A. Test equipment and instrumentation required to perform the commissioning process shall remain the property of Contractor unless otherwise indicated.

B. Test equipment and instrumentation required to perform commissioning process shall comply with the following criteria:

1. Be manufactured for the purpose of testing and measuring tests for which they are being used and have an accuracy to test and measure system performance within the tolerances required to determine acceptable performance.
2. Calibrated and certified.

a. Calibration performed and documented by a qualified calibration agency according to national standards applicable to the tools and instrumentation being calibrated. Calibration shall be current according to national standards or within test equipment and instrumentation manufacturer's recommended intervals, whichever is more frequent, but not less than within six months of initial use on Project. Calibration tags shall be permanently affixed.
b. Repair and recalibrate test equipment and instrumentation if dismantled, dropped, or damaged since last calibrated.

3. Maintain test equipment and instrumentation.
4. Use test equipment and instrumentation only for testing or monitoring Work for which they are designed.

2.2 PROPRIETARY TEST EQUIPMENT, INSTRUMENTATION, AND TOOLS

A. Proprietary test equipment, instrumentation, and tools are those manufactured or prescribed by tested equipment manufacturer and required for work on its equipment as a condition of equipment warranty, or as otherwise required to service, repair, adjust, calibrate, or perform work on its equipment.

1. Identify proprietary test equipment, instrumentation, and tools required in the test equipment identification list submittal.
2. Proprietary test equipment, instrumentation, and tools shall become the property of Owner at Substantial Completion.

2.3 REPORT FORMAT AND ORGANIZATION

A. General Format and Organization:

1. Bind report in three-ring binders.
2. Label the front cover and spine of each binder with the report title, volume number, project name, Contractor's name, and date of report.
3. Record report on compact disk.
4. Electronic Data: Portable document format (PDF); a single file with outline-organized bookmarks for major and minor tabs and tab contents itemized for specific reports.

B. Commissioning Report:

1. Include a table of contents and an index to each test.
2. Include major tabs for each Specification Section.
3. Include minor tabs for each test.
4. Within each minor tab, include the following:

a. Test specification.
b. Pre-startup reports.
c. Approved test procedures.
d. Test data forms, completed and signed.
e. Commissioning issue reports, showing resolution of issues, and documentation related to resolution of issues pertaining to a single test. Group data forms,

commissioning issue reports showing resolution of issues, and documentation related to resolution of issues for each test repetition together within the minor tab, in reverse chronological order (most recent on top).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Review preliminary construction checklists and preliminary test procedures and data forms.

3.2 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLISTS

A. Construction checklists cannot modify or conflict with the Contract Documents.

B. Create construction checklists based on actual systems and equipment to be included in Project.

C. Material Checks: Compare specified characteristics and approved submittals with materials as received. Include factory tests and other evaluations, adjustments, and tests performed prior to shipment if applicable.

1. Service connection requirements, including configuration, size, location, and other pertinent characteristics.
2. Included optional features.
3. Delivery Receipt Check: Inspect and record physical condition of materials and equipment on delivery to Project site, including agreement with approved submittals, cleanliness, and lack of damage.
4. Installation Checks:

    a. Location according to Drawings and approved Shop Drawings.
    b. Configuration.
    c. Compliance with manufacturers' written installation instructions.
    d. Attachment to structure.
    e. Access clearance to allow for maintenance, service, repair, removal, and replacement without the need to disassemble or remove other equipment or building elements. Access coordinated with other building elements and equipment, including, but not limited to, ceiling and wall access panels, in a manner consistent with OSHA fall-protection regulations and safe work practices.
    f. Utility connections are of the correct characteristics, as applicable.
    g. Correct labeling and identification.
    h. Startup Checks: Verify readiness of equipment to be energized. Include manufacturer's standard startup procedures and forms.

D. Startup: Perform and document initial operation of equipment to prove that it is installed properly and operates as intended according to manufacturer's standard startup procedures, at minimum.

E. Performance Tests:

1. Static Tests: As specified elsewhere, including, but not limited to, duct and pipe leakage tests, insulation-resistance tests, and water-penetration tests.
2. Component Performance Tests: Tests evaluate the performance of an input or output of components under a full range of operating conditions.
3. Equipment and Assembly Performance Tests: Test and evaluate performance of equipment and assemblies under a full range of operating conditions and loads.
4. System Performance Tests: Test and evaluate performance of systems under a full range of operating conditions and loads.
5. Intersystem Performance Tests: Test and evaluate the interface of different systems under a full range of operating conditions and loads.

F. Deferred Construction Checklists: Obtain Owner approval of proposed deferral of construction checklists, including proposed schedule of completion of each deferred construction checklist, before submitting request for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion. When approved, deferred construction checklists may be completed after date of Construction-Phase Commissioning Completion. Include the following in a request for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion:

1. Identify deferred construction checklists by number and title.
2. Provide a target schedule for completion of deferred construction checklists.
3. Written approval of proposed deferred construction checklists, including approved schedule of completion of each deferred construction checklist.

G. Delayed Construction Checklists: Obtain Owner approval of proposed delayed construction checklists, including proposed schedule of completion of each delayed construction checklist, before submitting request for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion. When approved, delayed construction checklists may be completed after date of Construction-Phase Commissioning Completion. Include the following in a request for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion:

1. Identify delayed construction checklist by construction checklist number and title.
2. Provide a target schedule for completion of delayed construction checklists.
3. Written approval of proposed delayed construction checklists, including approved schedule of completion of each delayed construction checklist.

3.3 GENERAL EXECUTION REQUIREMENTS

A. Schedule and coordinate commissioning process with the Construction Schedule.

B. Perform activities identified in construction checklists, including tests, and document results of actions as construction proceeds.

C. Perform test demonstrations for Owner's witness. Unless otherwise indicated, demonstrate tests for 100 percent of work to which the test applies. In some instances, demonstration of a random sample of other than 100 percent of the results of a test is specified.

1. Where sampling is specified, the sampling plan and procedure for the test demonstration shall be determined using ASQ Z1.4.

a. General Inspection: [**Level I**] [**Level II**] [**Level III**] <**Insert level**>.

b. Special Inspection: [**Level S-1**] [**Level S-2**] [**Level S-3**] [**Level S-4**] <**Insert level**>.
c. Acceptance Quality Limit (AQL) of [**1.5**] <**Insert AQL**>.

2. The "lot size" in ASQ Z1.4 is the sum of the number of items to which the test demonstration applies, as described in the scope subparagraph of each test.
3. On determination of the sample size, the samples shall be selected randomly by Owner's witness at the time of the test demonstration.
4. Include in the Commissioning Plan a detailed list of the test demonstrations with lot and sample quantities for each test.

D. Report test data and commissioning issue resolutions.

E. Schedule personnel to participate in and perform Commissioning-Process Work.

F. Installing contractors' commissioning responsibilities include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Operating the equipment and systems they install during tests.
2. In addition, installing contractors may be required to assist in tests of equipment and systems with which their work interfaces.

3.4 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Management and Coordination: Manage, schedule, and coordinate commissioning process, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Coordinate with subcontractors on their commissioning responsibilities and activities.
2. Obtain, assemble, and submit commissioning documentation.
3. [**Attend**] [**Conduct**] periodic on-site commissioning meetings. Comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."
4. Develop and maintain the commissioning schedule. Integrate commissioning schedule into the Construction Schedule. Update Construction Schedule at specified intervals.
5. Review and comment on preliminary test procedures and data forms.
6. Report inconsistencies and issues in system operations.
7. Verify that tests have been completed and results comply with acceptance criteria, and that equipment and systems are ready before scheduling test demonstrations.
8. Direct and coordinate test demonstrations.
9. Coordinate witnessing of test demonstrations by Owner's witness.
10. Coordinate and manage training. Be present during training sessions to direct video recording, present training, and direct the training presentations of others. Comply with requirements in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
11. Prepare and submit specified commissioning reports.
12. Track commissioning issues until resolution and retesting is successfully completed.
13. Retain original records of Commissioning-Process Work, organized as required for the commissioning report. Provide Owner's representative access to these records on request.
14. Assemble and submit commissioning report.

3.5 COMMISSIONING TESTING

A. Quality Control: Construction checklists, including tests, are quality-control tools designed to improve the functional quality of Project. Test demonstrations evaluate the effectiveness of Contractor's quality-control process.

B. Owner's witness will be present to witness commissioning work requiring the signature of an owner's witness, including, but not limited to, test demonstrations. Owner's project manager will coordinate attendance by Owner's witness with Contractor's published Commissioning Schedule. Owner's witness will provide no labor or materials in the commissioning work. The only function of Owner's witness will be to observe and comment on the progress and results of commissioning process.

C. Construction Checklists:

1. Complete construction checklists as Work is completed.
2. Distribute construction checklists to installing contractors before they start work.
3. Installers:

    a. Verify installation using approved construction checklists as Work proceeds.
    b. Complete and sign construction checklists [**daily**] [**weekly**] <**Insert frequency**> for work performed during the preceding [**day**] [**week**] <**Insert time period**>.

4. Provide Commissioning Authority access to construction checklists.

D. Installation Compliance Issues: Record as an installation compliance issue Work found to be incomplete, inaccessible, at variance with the Contract Documents, nonfunctional, or that does not comply with construction checklists. Record installation compliance issues on the construction checklist at the time they are identified. Record corrective action and how future Work should be modified before signing off the construction checklist.

E. Pre-Startup Audit: Prior to executing startup procedures, review completed installation checks to determine readiness for startup and operation. Report conditions, which, if left uncorrected, adversely impact the ability of systems or equipment to operate satisfactorily or to comply with acceptance criteria. Prepare pre-startup report for each system.

F. Test Procedures and Test Data Forms:

1. Test procedures shall define the step-by-step procedures to be used to execute tests and test demonstrations.
2. Test procedures shall be specific to the make, model, and application of the equipment and systems being tested.
3. Completed test data forms are the official records of the test results.
4. Commissioning Authority will provide to Contractor preliminary test procedures and test data forms for performance tests and commissioning tests after approval of Product Data, Shop Drawings, and preliminary operation and maintenance manual.
5. Review preliminary test procedures and test data forms, and provide comments within 14 days of receipt from Commissioning Authority. Review shall address the following:

a. Equipment protection and warranty issues, including, but not limited to, manufacturers' installation and startup recommendations, and operation and maintenance instructions.
b. Applicability of the procedure to the specific software, equipment, and systems approved for installation.

6. After Contractor has reviewed and commented on the preliminary test procedures and test data forms, Commissioning Authority will revise and reissue the approved revised test procedures and test data forms marked "Approved for Testing."
7. Use only approved test procedures and test data forms marked "Approved for Testing" to perform and document tests and test demonstrations.

G. Performance of Tests:

1. The sampling rate for tests is 100 percent. The sampling rate for test demonstrations is 100 percent unless otherwise indicated.
2. Perform and complete each step of the approved test procedures in the order listed.
3. Record data observed during performance of tests on approved data forms at the time of test performance and when the results are observed.
4. Record test results that are not within the range of acceptable results on commissioning issue report forms in addition to recording the results on approved test procedures and data forms according to the "Commissioning Compliance Issues" Paragraph in this Article.
5. On completion of a test, sign the completed test procedure and data form. Tests for which test procedures and data forms are incomplete, not signed, or which indicate performance that does not comply with acceptance criteria will be rejected. Tests for which test procedures and data forms are rejected shall be repeated and results resubmitted.

H. Performance of Test Demonstration:

1. Perform test demonstrations on a sample of tests after test data submittals are approved. The sampling rate for test demonstrations shall be [**100**] <**Insert number**> percent unless otherwise indicated in the individual test specification.
2. Notify Owner's witness at least [**three days**] <**Insert alternative time**> in advance of each test demonstration.
3. Perform and complete each step of the approved test procedures in the order listed.
4. Record data observed during performance of test demonstrations on approved data forms at the time of demonstration and when the results are observed.
5. Provide full access to Owner's witness to directly observe the performance of all aspects of system response during the test demonstration. On completion of a test demonstration, sign the completed data form and obtain signature of Owner's witness at the time of the test to authenticate the reported results.
6. Test demonstration data forms not signed by Contractor and Owner's witness at the time of the completion of the procedure will be rejected. Test demonstrations for which data forms are rejected shall be repeated and results shall be resubmitted.

a. Exception for Failure of Owner's Witness to Attend: Failure of Owner's witness to be present for agreed-on schedule of test demonstration shall not delay Contractor. If Owner's witness fails to attend a scheduled test, Contractor shall proceed with the scheduled test. On completion, Contractor shall sign the data form for

Contractor and for Owner's witness, and shall note the absence of Owner's witness at the scheduled time and place.

7. False load test requirements are specified in related sections.

   a. Where false load testing is specified, provide temporary equipment, power, controls, wiring, piping, valves, and other necessary equipment and connections required to apply the specified load to the system. False load system shall be capable of steady-state operation and modulation at the level of load specified. Equipment and systems permanently installed in this work shall not be used to create the false load without Architect's written approval.

I. Deferred Tests:

1. Deferred Test List: Identify, in the request for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion, proposed deferred tests or other tests approved for deferral until specified seasonal or other conditions are available. When approved, deferred tests may be completed after the date of Construction-Phase Commissioning Completion. Identify proposed deferred tests in the request for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion as follows:

   a. Identify deferred tests by number and title.
   b. Provide a target schedule for completion of deferred tests.

2. Schedule and coordinate deferred tests. Schedule deferred tests when specified conditions are available. Notify Architect and Commissioning Authority at least [**three working days**] <**Insert alternative time**> (minimum) in advance of tests.
3. Where deferred tests are specified, coordinate participation of necessary personnel and of Architect, Commissioning Authority, and Owner's witness. Schedule deferred tests to minimize occupant and facility impact. Obtain Architect's approval of the proposed schedule.

J. Delayed Tests:

1. Delayed Test List: Identify, in the request for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion, proposed delayed tests. Obtain Owner approval of proposed delayed tests, including proposed schedule of completion of each delayed test, before submitting request for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion. Include the following in the request for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion:

   a. Identify delayed tests by test number and title.
   b. Written approval of proposed delayed tests, including approved schedule of completion of delayed tests.

2. Schedule and coordinate delayed tests. Schedule delayed tests when conditions that caused the delay have been rectified. Notify Architect and Commissioning Authority at least [**three working days**] <**Insert alternative time**> (minimum) in advance of tests.
3. Where delayed tests are approved, coordinate participation of necessary personnel and of Architect, Commissioning Authority, and Owner's witness. Schedule delayed tests to

minimize occupant and facility impact. Obtain Architect's approval of the proposed schedule.

K. Commissioning Compliance Issues:

1. Test results that are not within the range of acceptable results are commissioning compliance issues.
2. Track and report commissioning compliance issues until resolution and retesting are successfully completed.
3. If a test demonstration fails, determine the cause of failure. Direct timely resolution of issue and then repeat the demonstration. If a test demonstration must be repeated due to failure caused by Contractor work or materials, reimburse Owner for billed costs for the participation in the repeated demonstration.
4. Test Results: If a test demonstration fails to meet the acceptance criteria, perform the following:

    a. Complete a commissioning compliance issue report form promptly on discovery of test results that do not comply with acceptance criteria.
    b. Submit commissioning compliance issue report form within [**24 hours**] <**Insert alternative time**> of the test.
    c. Determine the cause of the failure.
    d. Establish responsibility for corrective action if the failure is due to conditions found to be Contractor's responsibility.

5. Commissioning Compliance Issue Report: Provide a commissioning compliance issue report for each issue. Do not report multiple issues on the same commissioning compliance issue report.

    a. Exception: If an entire class of devices is determined to exhibit the identical issue, they may be reported on a single commissioning compliance issue report. (For example, if all return-air damper actuators that are specified to fail to the open position are found to fail to the closed position, they may be reported on a single commissioning issue report. If a single commissioning issue report is used for multiple commissioning compliance issues, each device shall be identified in the report, and the total number of devices at issue shall be identified.
    b. Complete and submit Part 1 of the commissioning compliance issue report immediately when the condition is observed.
    c. Record the commissioning compliance issue report number and describe the deficient condition on the data form.
    d. Resolve commissioning compliance issues promptly. Complete and submit Part 2 of the commissioning compliance issue report when issues are resolved.

6. Diagnose and correct failed test demonstrations as follows:

    a. Perform diagnostic tests and activities required to determine the fundamental cause of issues observed.
    b. Record each step of the diagnostic procedure prior to performing the procedure. Update written procedure as changes become necessary.
    c. Record the results of each step of the diagnostic procedure.
    d. Record the conclusion of the diagnostic procedure on the fundamental cause of the issue.

e. Determine and record corrective measures.
f. Include diagnosis of fundamental cause of issues in commissioning compliance issue report.

7. Retest:

a. Schedule and repeat the complete test procedure for each test demonstration for which acceptable results are not achieved. Obtain signature of Owner's witness on retest data forms. Repeat test demonstration until acceptable results are achieved. Except for issues that are determined to result from design errors or omissions, or other conditions beyond Contractor's responsibility, compensate Owner for direct costs incurred as the result of repeated test demonstrations to achieve acceptable results.
b. For each repeated test demonstration, submit a new test data form, marked "Retest."

8. Do not correct commissioning compliance issues during test demonstrations.

a. Exceptions will be allowed if the cause of the issue is obvious and resolution can be completed in less than [**five**] <**Insert number**> minutes. If corrections are made under this exception, note the deficient conditions on the test data form and issue a commissioning compliance issue report. A new test data form, marked "Retest," shall be initiated after the resolution has been completed.

3.6 SEQUENCING

A. Sequencing of Commissioning Verification Activities: For a particular material, item of equipment, assembly, or system, perform the following in the order listed unless otherwise indicated:

1. Construction Checklists:

a. Material checks.
b. Installation checks.
c. Startup, as appropriate. Some startup may depend on component performance. Such startup may follow component performance tests on which the startup depends.
d. Performance Tests:

1) Static tests, as appropriate.
2) Component performance tests. Some component performance tests may depend on completion of startup. Such component performance tests may follow startup.
3) Equipment and assembly performance tests.
4) System performance tests.
5) Intersystem performance tests.

2. Commissioning tests.

B. Before performing commissioning tests, verify that materials, equipment, assemblies, and systems are delivered, installed, started, and adjusted to perform according to construction checklists.

C. Verify readiness of materials, equipment, assemblies, and systems by performing tests prior to performing test demonstrations. Notify Architect if acceptable results cannot be achieved due to conditions beyond Contractor's control or responsibility.

D. Commence tests as soon as installation checks for materials, equipment, assemblies, or systems are satisfactorily completed. Tests of a particular system may proceed prior to completion of other systems, provided the incomplete work does not interfere with successful execution of test.

3.7 SCHEDULING

A. Commence commissioning process as early in the construction period as possible.

B. Commissioning Schedule: Integrate commissioning activities into Construction Schedule. See Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation."

1. Include detailed commissioning activities in monthly updated Construction Schedule and short-interval schedule submittals.
2. Schedule the start date and duration for the following commissioning activities:

    a. Submittals.
    b. Preliminary operation and maintenance manual submittals.
    c. Installation checks.
    d. Startup, where required.
    e. Performance tests.
    f. Performance test demonstrations.
    g. Commissioning tests.
    h. Commissioning test demonstrations.

3. Schedule shall include a line item for each installation check, startup, and test activity specific to the equipment or systems involved.
4. Determine milestones and prerequisites for commissioning process. Show commissioning milestones, prerequisites, and dependencies in monthly updated critical-path-method construction schedule and short-interval schedule submittals.

C. Two-Week Look-Ahead Commissioning Schedule:

1. Two weeks prior to the beginning of tests, submit a detailed two-week look-ahead schedule. Thereafter, submit updated two-week look-ahead schedules weekly for the duration of commissioning process.
2. Two-week look-ahead schedules shall identify the date, time, beginning location, Contractor personnel required, and anticipated duration for each startup or test activity.
3. Use two-week look-ahead schedules to notify and coordinate participation of Owner's witnesses.

D. Owner's Witness Coordination:

1. Coordinate Owner's witness participation via Architect.
2. Notify Architect of commissioning schedule changes at least [**two**] <**Insert number**> work days in advance for activities requiring the participation of Owner's witness.

3.8 COMMISSIONING REPORTS

A. Test Reports:

1. Pre-startup reports include observations of the conditions of installation, organized into the following sections:

    a. Equipment Model Verification: Compare contract requirements, approved submittals, and provided equipment. Note inconsistencies.
    b. Preinstallation Physical Condition Checks: Observe physical condition of equipment prior to installation. Note conditions including, but not limited to, physical damage, corrosion, water damage, or other contamination or dirt.
    c. Preinstallation Component Verification Checks: Verify components supplied with the equipment, preinstalled or field installed, are correctly installed and functional. Verify external components required for proper operation of equipment correctly installed and functional. Note missing, improperly configured, improperly installed, or nonfunctional components.
    d. Summary of Installation Compliance Issues and Corrective Actions: Identify installation compliance issues and the corrective actions for each. Verify that issues noted have been corrected.
    e. Evaluation of System Readiness for Startup: For each item of equipment for each system for which startup is anticipated, document in summary form acceptable to Owner completion of equipment model verification, preinstallation physical condition checks, preinstallation component verification checks, and completion of corrective actions for installation compliance issues.

2. Test data reports include the following:

    a. "As-tested" system configuration. Complete record of conditions under which the test was performed, including, but not limited to, the status of equipment, systems, and assemblies; temporary adjustments and settings; and ambient conditions.
    b. Data and observations, including, but not limited to, data trend logs, recorded during the tests.
    c. Signatures of individuals performing and witnessing tests.
    d. Data trend logs accumulated overnight from the previous day of testing.

3. Commissioning Compliance Issue Reports: Report as commissioning compliance issues results of tests and test demonstrations that do not comply with acceptance criteria. Report only one issue per commissioning compliance issue report. Use sequentially numbered facsimiles of commissioning compliance issue report form included in this Section, or other form approved by Owner. Distribute commissioning compliance issue reports to parties responsible for taking corrective action. Identify the following:

    a. Commissioning compliance issue report number. Assign unique, sequential numbers to individual commissioning compliance issue reports when they are created, to be used for tracking.

b. Action distribution list.
c. Report date.
d. Test number and description.
e. Equipment identification and location.
f. Briefly describe observations about the performance associated with failure to achieve acceptable results. Identify the cause of failure if apparent.
g. Diagnostic procedure or plan to determine the cause (include in initial submittal)
h. Diagnosis of fundamental cause of issues as specified below (include in resubmittal).
i. Fundamental cause of unacceptable performance as determined by diagnostic tests and activities.
j. When issues have been resolved, update and resubmit the commissioning issue report forms by completing Part 2. Identify resolution taken and the dates and initials of the persons making the entries.
k. Schedule for retesting.

4. Weekly progress reports include information for tests conducted since the preceding report and the following:

   a. Completed data forms.
   b. Equipment or system tested, including test number, system or equipment tag number and location, and notation about the apparent acceptability of results.
   c. Activities scheduled but not conducted per schedule.
   d. Commissioning compliance issue report log.
   e. Schedule changes for remaining Commissioning-Process Work, if any.

5. Data trend logs shall be initiated and running prior to the time scheduled for the test demonstration.

   a. Trend log data format shall be multiple data series graphs. Where multiple data series are trend logged concurrently, present the data on a common horizontal time axis. Individual data series may be presented on a segmented vertical axis to avoid interference of one data series with another, and to accommodate different axis scale values. Graphs shall be sufficiently clear to interpret data within the accuracy required by the acceptance criteria.
   b. Attach to the data form printed trend log data collected during the test or test demonstration.
   c. Record, print out, and attach to the data form operator activity during the time the trend log is running. During the time the trend log is running, operator intervention not directed by the test procedure invalidates the test results.

6. System Alarm Logs: Record and print out a log of alarms that occurred since the last log was printed. Evaluate alarms to determine if the previous day's work resulted in any conditions that are not considered "normal operation."

   a. Conditions that are not considered "normal operation" shall be reported on a commissioning issue report attached to the alarm log. Resolve as necessary. The intent of this requirement is to discover control system points or sequences left in manual or disabled conditions, equipment left disconnected, set points left with abnormal values, or similar conditions that may have resulted from failure to fully restore systems to normal, automatic control after test completion.

3.9 CERTIFICATE OF CONSTRUCTION-PHASE COMMISSIONING PROCESS COMPLETION

A. When Contractor considers that construction-phase commissioning process, or a portion thereof which Owner agrees to accept separately, is complete, Contractor shall prepare and submit to Owner and Commissioning Authority through Architect a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter Contractor's responsibility to compete commissioning process.

B. On receipt of Contractor's list, Commissioning Authority will make an inspection to determine whether the construction-phase commissioning process or designated portion thereof is complete. If Commissioning Authority's inspection discloses items, whether included on Contractor's list, which is not sufficiently complete as defined in "Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion" Paragraph in the "Definitions" Article, Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion, complete or correct such items on notification by Commissioning Authority. In such case, Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by Commissioning Authority to determine construction-phase commissioning process completion.

C. Contractor shall promptly correct deficient conditions and issues discovered during commissioning process. Costs of correcting such deficient conditions and issues, including additional testing and inspections, the cost of uncovering and replacement, and compensation for Architect's and Commissioning Authority's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at Contractor's expense.

D. When construction-phase commissioning process or designated portion is complete, Commissioning Authority will prepare a Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion that shall establish the date of completion of construction-phase commissioning process. Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion shall be submitted prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 01 91 13

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 02 01 00 - MAINTENANCE OF EXISTING CONDITIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Protection of existing buildings, facilities, utilities and site improvements to remain.
2. Verification of existing utilities, site improvements and site conditions.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 02 Section “Selective Site Demolition”.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop drawings: submit drawings showing details of any proposed construction which is necessary to protect existing construction and utilities.

B. Engineering design:

1. If required by job conditions, Contractor shall retain the services of a licensed Professional Engineer registered in the state in which the project is located to design temporary and permanent installations as required to protect existing improvements and conditions.
2. All information required for the design shall be the Contractor’s responsibility to obtain.
3. Submit design drawings and calculations to the Architect/Engineer for review. Review by the Architect/Engineer shall not relieve Contractor of full responsibility for design or work. The purpose of the Architect/Engineer review shall be only to protect the Owner from inadequate or insufficient protection for existing improvements and conditions. By reviewing the design, the Architect/Engineer assumes no responsibility for the design or adequacy thereof.
4. Underpinning calculations, if required, shall be reviewed by the Geotechnical Engineer.
5. All design drawings and calculations submitted shall be signed and sealed by the Contractor’s Engineer.

1.3 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Existing site conditions:

1. The Drawings do not propose to show all existing improvements on the site.

2. Information shown on the Drawings was obtained from drawings of previous construction projects and/or a site survey provided by the Owner.
3. Recorded information concerning existing construction may be available for examination in the Architect/Engineer office.
4. Information concerning the approximate locations of known existing underground utilities is shown on the Drawings. Depths and locations of existing utilities are unconfirmed.
5. Utilities include all underground and above ground piping, conduits, cables and related structures and appurtenances. Utilities also include sewers.

B. Contractor is responsible for field verifying all existing site conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. General:

1. Contractor may use materials and systems recognized as suitable for protection of existing improvements and conditions.
2. Untreated wood may only be used for temporary protection, bracing, supports, shores, etc.
3. The Owner or Architect/Engineer may prohibit certain materials and systems if they interfere with the Owner's operations.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Pre-bid site inspection:

1. Bidders shall examine the site, inspect existing buildings, review existing plans and become familiar with all conditions under which the contract work will be performed.
2. This shall be completed during the bidding phase in order that bids include all costs for protection of existing improvements and conditions.
3. Contractor shall notify Architect/Engineer during the bidding phase of any discrepancies in bidding documents, existing conditions documents and field conditions.
4. No later claim for extra compensation will be allowed, unless it is determined by the Owner and Architect/Engineer to be unforeseen conditions.

B. Pre-construction verification of existing conditions:

1. Contractor shall verify all existing site conditions and improvements prior to construction, which includes field verifying locations of existing utilities and all other existing above grade and below grade improvements which may affect proposed construction activities.

2. Contractor shall notify Architect/Engineer immediately with conflicts or discrepancies from existing field conditions, existing conditions documentation and proposed new construction.
3. These verifications are to be done well in advance of construction activities in order to allow time for revising design if required.

3.2 GENERAL

A. Contractor shall have underground utilities marked prior to beginning any excavation or other underground work in area of proposed activity.

B. Provide all permanent and temporary construction necessary to protect existing improvements and conditions as required by construction activities.

C. Install all protection in a manner which will not interfere with the Owner's operations or adjacent work.

D. If at any time movement or other failure is observed in existing improvements or conditions, cease operations, provide all additional protection necessary to stabilize and retain said existing installations and notify Owner immediately.

3.3 JOB COMPLETION

A. Upon completion of construction activities, leave the site in a neat and orderly condition.

B. Restore all areas disrupted by construction activities, which were to remain and not be altered, to their original condition at no additional cost to Owner.

END OF SECTION 02 01 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 02 41 19 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
2. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
3. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

1.2 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.

B. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of Owner.

1. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Owner.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Engineering Survey: Submit engineering survey of condition of building.

B. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including Drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property for environmental protection, for dust control and, for noise control. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.

C. Schedule of selective demolition activities with starting and ending dates for each activity.

D. Predemolition photographs or video.

E. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Inventory of items that have been removed and salvaged.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.

B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.

1. Before selective demolition, Contractor will remove and relocate the following items for storage by owner:

a. Existing TSA equipment and hold room seating, existing audio/visual equipment including TV’s, and any other existing item requested by owner to be stored at a location selected by owner.

C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.

D. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials may be encountered in the Work.
1. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.

E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.

F. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.

1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

G. Arrange selective demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's operations.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials and using approved contractors so as not to void existing warranties.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSP A10.6 and NFPA 241.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.

B. Perform an engineering survey of condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during selective building demolition operations.

C. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Refrigerant: Before starting demolition, remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.3 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.

B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished. Coordinate with Owner’s requirements and schedule.
   1. Arrange to shut off utilities with utility companies.
   2. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
   3. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated on Drawings to be removed.

      a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
      b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material and leave in place.

c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
f. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
g. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material and leave in place.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Protection: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.

B. Temporary Shoring: Design, provide, and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.

C. Remove temporary barricades and protections where hazards no longer exist.

3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:

1. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
2. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
3. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
4. Maintain fire watch during and for at least 1 hour after flame-cutting operations.
5. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
6. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.

B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.

C. Removed and Salvaged Items:

1. Clean salvaged items.
2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner
5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

D. Removed and Reinstalled Items:

1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.
2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.

E. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and dispose of them in an EPA-approved construction and demolition waste landfill acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.

B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

C. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 02 41 19

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 10 00 - CONCRETE FORMING AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Form-facing material for cast-in-place concrete.
2. Shoring, bracing, and anchoring.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each of the following:

1. Exposed surface form-facing material.
2. Concealed surface form-facing material.
3. Form ties.
4. Waterstops.
5. Form-release agent.

B. Shop Drawings: Prepared by, and signed and sealed by, a qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation, detailing fabrication, assembly, and support of forms.

1. For exposed vertical concrete walls, indicate dimensions and form tie locations.
2. Indicate dimension and locations of construction and movement joints required to construct the structure in accordance with ACI 301 (ACI 301M).

    a. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.

3. Indicate location of waterstops.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Concrete Formwork: Design, engineer, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, shores, and reshores in accordance with ACI 301 (ACI 301M), to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads, so that resulting concrete conforms to the required shapes, lines, and dimensions.

1. Design wood panel forms in accordance with APA's "Concrete Forming Design/Construction Guide."
2. Design formwork to limit deflection of form-facing material to 1/240 of center-to-center spacing of supports.
3. Board form concrete to match existing board form walls in lumber size and finish/color appearance.

2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

A. As-Cast Surface Form-Facing Material:

1. Provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces.
2. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
3. Board form concrete to match existing board form walls in lumber size and finish/color appearance.
4. Acceptable Materials: As required to comply with Surface Finish designations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete, and as follows:

    a. Plywood, lumber, metal, or other approved panel materials.
    b. Exterior-grade plywood panels/lumber, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
        1) APA Structural 1 Plyform, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.

B. Concealed Surface Form-Facing Material: Lumber, plywood, metal, plastic, or another approved material.

1. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.

2.3 WATERSTOPS

A. Flexible Rubber Waterstops: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers CRD-C 513, with factory-installed metal eyelets, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints, with factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.
1. Profile:. Flat dumbbell with center bulb.
2. Dimensions: 6 inches by 3/8 inch thick (150 mm by 10 mm thick) nontapered.
    a. Approved manufacturer’s: Henry Company. Sika. Cetco.

B. Flexible PVC Waterstops: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers CRD-C 572, with factory-installed metal eyelets, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints, with factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.
   1. Profile: Flat dumbbell with center bulb.
   2. Dimensions: 6 inches by 3/8 inch thick (150 mm by 10 mm thick) nontapered.
      a. Approved manufacturer's: Henry Company. Sika. Cetco.

C. Self-Expanding Butyl Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, butyl rubber with sodium bentonite or other hydrophilic polymers, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/4 by 1 inch (19 by 25 mm).

D. Self-Expanding Rubber Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, bentonite-free hydrophilic polymer-modified chloroprene rubber, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/8 by 3/4 inch (10 by 19 mm).

2.4 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than 0.022-inch- (0.55-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

B. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet, not less than 0.034 inch (0.85 mm) thick, with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

C. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch (19 by 19 mm), minimum.

D. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.

E. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

   1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
   2. Form release agent for form liners shall be acceptable to form liner manufacturer.

F. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or metal form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.

   1. Furnish units that leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch (25 mm) to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
   2. Furnish ties that, when removed, leave holes no larger than 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter in concrete surface.
   3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF FORMWORK

A. Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M).

B. Construct formwork, so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117 (ACI 117M) and to comply with the Surface Finish designations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete" for as-cast finishes.

C. Limit concrete surface irregularities as follows:

1. Surface Finish-1.0: ACI 117 Class D, 1 inch (25 mm).
2. Surface Finish-2.0: ACI 117 Class B, 1/4 inch (6 mm).
3. Surface Finish-3.0: ACI 117 Class A, 1/8 inch (3.0 mm).

D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.

1. Minimize joints.
2. Exposed Concrete: Symmetrically align joints in forms.

E. Construct removable forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces.

1. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast-concrete surfaces.
2. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
3. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and other accessories, for easy removal.

F. Do not use rust-stained, steel, form-facing material.

G. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces.

1. Provide and secure units to support screed strips.
2. Use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.

H. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible.

1. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
2. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.

I. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.

J. At construction joints, overlap forms onto previously placed concrete not less than 12 inches (305 mm).

K. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work.

1. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
2. Obtain written approval of Architect prior to forming openings not indicated on Drawings.

L. Construction and Movement Joints:

1. Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
2. Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
3. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
4. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans.

    a. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.

5. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
6. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated on Drawings.

    a. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.

M. Provide temporary ports or openings in formwork where required to facilitate cleaning and inspection.

1. Locate ports and openings in bottom of vertical forms, in inconspicuous location, to allow flushing water to drain.
2. Close temporary ports and openings with tight-fitting panels, flush with inside face of form, and neatly fitted, so joints will not be apparent in exposed concrete surfaces.

N. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.

O. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.

P. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS

A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete.

1. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
2. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC 303.

3. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
4. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures, as indicated on Drawings.
5. Clean embedded items immediately prior to concrete placement.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF WATERSTOPS

A. Flexible Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other joints indicated to form a continuous diaphragm.

1. Install in longest lengths practicable.
2. Locate waterstops in center of joint unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
3. Allow clearance between waterstop and reinforcing steel of not less than 2 times the largest concrete aggregate size specified in Section 033000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete."
4. Secure waterstops in correct position at 12 inches (305 mm) on center.
5. Field fabricate joints in accordance with manufacturer's instructions using heat welding.

    a. Miter corners, intersections, and directional changes in waterstops.
    b. Align center bulbs.

6. Clean waterstops immediately prior to placement of concrete.
7. Support and protect exposed waterstops during progress of the Work.

B. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated on Drawings, according to manufacturer's written instructions, by adhesive bonding, mechanically fastening, and firmly pressing into place.

1. Install in longest lengths practicable.
2. Locate waterstops in center of joint unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
3. Protect exposed waterstops during progress of the Work.

3.4 SHORING AND RESHORING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) and ACI 301 (ACI 301M) for design, installation, and removal of shoring and reshoring.

1. Do not remove shoring or reshoring until measurement of slab tolerances is complete.

B. In multistory construction, extend shoring or reshoring over a sufficient number of stories to distribute loads in such a manner that no floor or member will be excessively loaded or will induce tensile stress in concrete members without sufficient steel reinforcement.

C. Plan sequence of removal of shores and reshore to avoid damage to concrete. Locate and provide adequate reshoring to support construction without excessive stress or deflection.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector and qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.

C. Inspections:

1. Inspect formwork for shape, location, and dimensions of the concrete member being formed.
2. Inspect insulating concrete forms for shape, location, and dimensions of the concrete member being formed.

END OF SECTION 03 10 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 20 00 - CONCRETE REINFORCING

PART 1 -

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel reinforcement bars.
2. Welded-wire reinforcement.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Each type of steel reinforcement.
2. Bar supports.
3. Mechanical splice couplers.

B. Shop Drawings: Comply with ACI SP-066:

1. Include placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement.
2. Include bar sizes, lengths, materials, grades, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, location of splices, lengths of lap splices, details of mechanical splice couplers, details of welding splices, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.

C. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to build the structure.

1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1. Reinforcement to Be Welded: Welding procedure specification in accordance with AWS D1.4/D1.4M

B. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:

1. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: CRSI's "Epoxy Coating Plant Certification."

C. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:

1. Steel Reinforcement:

a. For reinforcement to be welded, mill test analysis for chemical composition and carbon equivalent of the steel in accordance with ASTM A706/A706M.

2. Mechanical splice couplers.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.4/D 1.4M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.

B. Low-Alloy Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A706/A706M, deformed.

C. Headed-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A970/A970M.

D. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars:

1. Steel Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed bars.
2. Zinc Coating: ASTM A767/A767M, Class I zinc coated after fabrication and bending.

E. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars:

1. Steel Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed bars.
2. Epoxy Coating: ASTM A775/A775M or ASTM A934/A934M with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each 12-inch (305-mm) bar length.

F. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064/A1064M, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

G. Deformed-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064/A1064M, flat sheet.

H. Galvanized-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064/A1064M, plain, fabricated from galvanized-steel wire into flat sheets.

I. Epoxy-Coated Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A884/A884M, Class A coated, Type 1, plain steel.

2.2 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

A. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place.

1. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete in accordance with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:

a. For concrete surfaces exposed to view, where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire, all-plastic bar supports, or CRSI Class 2 stainless steel bar supports.

B. Mechanical Splice Couplers: ACI 318 (ACI 318M) Type 1, same material of reinforcing bar being spliced; mechanical-lap type.

C. Steel Tie Wire: ASTM A1064/A1064M, annealed steel, not less than 0.0508 inch (1.2908 mm) in diameter.

1. Finish: Plain.

D. Stainless Steel Tie Wire: ASTM A1022/A1022M, not less than 0.0508 inch (1.2908 mm) in diameter.

2.3 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protection of In-Place Conditions:

1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder.
2. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.

B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that reduce bond to concrete.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing and supporting reinforcement.

B. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement.

1. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover.
2. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.

C. Preserve clearance between bars of not less than 1 inch (25 mm), not less than one bar diameter, or not less than 1-1/3 times size of large aggregate, whichever is greater.

D. Provide concrete coverage in accordance with ACI 318 (ACI 318M).

E. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

F. Splices: Lap splices as indicated on Drawings.

1. Bars indicated to be continuous, and all vertical bars shall be lapped not less than 36 bar diameters at splices, or 24 inches (610 mm), whichever is greater.
2. Stagger splices in accordance with ACI 318 (ACI 318M).
3. Mechanical Splice Couplers: Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

G. Install welded-wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths.

1. Support welded-wire reinforcement in accordance with CRSI "Manual of Standard Practice."

a. For reinforcement less than W4.0 or D4.0, continuous support spacing shall not exceed 12 inches (305 mm).

2. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one wire spacing plus 2 inches (50 mm) for plain wire and 8 inches (200 mm) for deformed wire.
3. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
4. Lace overlaps with wire.

3.3 JOINTS

A. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.

1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
2. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.
3. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.

3.4 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. Comply with ACI 117 (ACI 117M).

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector and qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Inspections:

1. Steel-reinforcement placement.
2. Steel-reinforcement mechanical splice couplers.
3. Steel-reinforcement welding.

END OF SECTION 03 20 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 30 00 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cast-in-place concrete, including concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 031000 "Concrete Forming and Accessories" for form-facing materials, form liners, insulating concrete forms, and waterstops.
2. Section 032000 "Concrete Reinforcing" for steel reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement.
3. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for drainage fill under slabs-on-ground.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, and other pozzolans materials subject to compliance with requirements.

B. Water/Cement Ratio (w/cm): The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each of the following.

1. Portland cement.
2. Fly ash.
3. Slag cement.
4. Blended hydraulic cement.
5. Aggregates.
6. Admixtures:

a. Include limitations of use, including restrictions on cementitious materials, supplementary cementitious materials, air entrainment, aggregates, temperature at time of concrete placement, relative humidity at time of concrete placement, curing conditions, and use of other admixtures.

7. Vapor retarders.
8. Liquid floor treatments.
9. Curing materials.
10. Joint fillers.

B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture, include the following:

1. Mixture identification.
2. Minimum 28-day compressive strength.
3. Durability exposure class.
4. Maximum w/cm.
5. Calculated equilibrium unit weight, for lightweight concrete.
6. Slump limit.
7. Air content.
8. Nominal maximum aggregate size.
9. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site if permitted.
10. Intended placement method.
11. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.

a. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.

D. Concrete Schedule: For each location of each Class of concrete indicated in "Concrete Mixtures" Article, including the following:

1. Concrete Class designation.
2. Location within Project.
3. Exposure Class designation.
4. Formed Surface Finish designation and final finish.
5. Final finish for floors.
6. Curing process.
7. Floor treatment if any.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:

1. Cementitious materials.
2. Admixtures.

3. Curing compounds.
4. Vapor retarders.
5. Joint-filler strips.

B. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:

1. Portland cement.
2. Fly ash.
3. Slag cement.
4. Blended hydraulic cement.
5. Aggregates.
6. Admixtures:

C. Research Reports: For concrete admixtures in accordance with ICC's Acceptance Criteria AC198.

D. Preconstruction Test Reports: For each mix design.

E. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C94/C94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.

1. Manufacturer certified in accordance with NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."

1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on each concrete mixture.

1. Include the following information in each test report:

a. Admixture dosage rates.
b. Slump.
c. Air content.
d. Seven-day compressive strength.
e. 28-day compressive strength.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with ASTM C94/C94M and ACI 301 (ACI 301M).

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) and ACI 306.1.

B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) and ACI 305.1 (ACI 305.1M).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

A. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Cementitious Materials:

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I/II.
2. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F.
3. Slag Cement: ASTM C989/C989M, Grade 100 or 120.

B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C33/C33M, Class 3S or Class 3M coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.

1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1 inch (25 mm) nominal.

C. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.

D. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride in steel-reinforced concrete.

1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type A.
2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type B.
3. Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type D.
4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type F.
5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type G.
6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C1017/C1017M, Type II.

E. Water and Water Used to Make Ice: ASTM C94/C94M, potable

2.3 VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Sheet Vapor Retarder, Class A: ASTM E1745, Class A; not less than 15 mils thick. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.

2.4 LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or siliconate materials and proprietary components; odorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces.

1. Per Manufacturer's recommendations.

2.5 CURING MATERIALS

A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) when dry.

B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C171, polyethylene film burlap-polyethylene sheet.

1. Color:

a. Ambient Temperature Below 50 deg F (10 deg C): Black.
b. Ambient Temperature between 50 deg F (10 deg C) and 85 deg F (29 deg C): Any color.
c. Ambient Temperature Above 85 deg F (29 deg C): White.

C. Curing Paper: Eight-feet- (2438-mm-) wide paper, consisting of two layers of fibered kraft paper laminated with double coating of asphalt.

1. Per Manufacturer's recommendations.

D. Water: Potable or complying with ASTM C1602/C1602M.

E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming, Dissipating Curing Compound: ASTM C309, Type 1, Class B.

F. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming, Nondissipating Curing Compound: ASTM C309, Type 1, Class B, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.

G. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming, Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C1315, Type 1, Class A.

2.6 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D1752, cork or self-expanding cork.

B. Floor Slab Protective Covering: Eight-feet- (2438-mm-) wide cellulose fabric.

2.7 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, in accordance with ACI 301 (ACI 301M).

1. Use a qualified testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs, based on laboratory trial mixtures.

B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:

1. Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans: 25 percent by mass.
2. Slag Cement: 50 percent by mass.
3. Total of Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans, Slag Cement: 50 percent by mass, with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent by mass.
4. Total of Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans: 35 percent by mass with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent by mass.

C. Admixtures: Use admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Use water-reducing high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
2. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs concrete for parking structure slabs, and concrete with a w/cm below 0.50.

2.8 CONCRETE MIXTURES

A. Class A : Normal-weight concrete used for footings, grade beams, and tie beams.

1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 (ACI 318M) F1.
2. Minimum Compressive Strength: As indicated at 28 days.
3. Maximum w/cm: 0.50.
4. Air Content:

    a. Exposure Class F1: 4.5 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete containing 1-inch (25-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size

5. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.30 percent by weight of cement.

B. Class B: Normal-weight concrete used for foundation walls.

1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 (ACI 318M) F1.
2. Minimum Compressive Strength: As indicated at 28 days.
3. Maximum w/cm: 0.50.
4. Air Content:

a. Exposure Class F1: 4.5 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete containing 1-inch (25-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size

5. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.30 percent by weight of cement.

C. Class C: Normal-weight concrete used for interior slabs-on-ground.

1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 (ACI 318M) F0.
2. Minimum Compressive Strength: As indicated at 28 days.
3. Maximum w/cm: 0.50.
4. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 520 lb/cu. yd. (309 kg/cu. m).
5. Air Content:

a. Do not use an air-entraining admixture or allow total air content to exceed 3 percent for concrete used in trowel-finished floors.

6. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.30 percent by weight of cement.

D. Class C : Normal-weight concrete used for building walls.

1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 (ACI 318M) F0.
2. Minimum Compressive Strength: As indicated at 28 days.
3. Maximum w/cm: 0.50.
4. Air Content:

a. Exposure Class F0: 4.5 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete containing 1-inch (25-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size

5. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.30 percent by weight of cement.

2.9 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94 and ASTM C1116/C1116M, and furnish batch ticket information.

B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.

1. For mixer capacity of 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than five minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
2. For mixer capacity larger than 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m), increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m).

3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixture time, quantity, and amount of water added. Record approximate location of final deposit in structure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS

A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining Work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete.

1. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
2. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of ANSI/AISC 303.
3. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDER

A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder in accordance with ASTM E1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Install vapor retarder with longest dimension parallel with direction of concrete pour.
2. Face laps away from exposed direction of concrete pour.
3. Lap vapor retarder over footings and grade beams not less than 6 inches (150 mm), sealing vapor retarder to concrete.
4. Lap joints 6 inches (150 mm) and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.
5. Terminate vapor retarder at the top of floor slabs, grade beams, and pile caps, sealing entire perimeter to floor slabs, grade beams, foundation walls, or pile caps.
6. Seal penetrations in accordance with vapor retarder manufacturer's instructions.
7. Protect vapor retarder during placement of reinforcement and concrete.

    a. Repair damaged areas by patching with vapor retarder material, overlapping damages area by 6 inches (150 mm) on all sides, and sealing to vapor retarder.

3.3 JOINTS

A. Construct joints true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.

B. Construction Joints: Coordinate with floor slab pattern and concrete placement sequence.

1. Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated on Drawings or as approved by Architect.
2. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.

    a. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.

b. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.

3. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into concrete.
4. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders at third points of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
5. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
6. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated on Drawings. Unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, locate vertical joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.

C. Control Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Form weakened-plane control joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct control joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:

1. Grooved Joints: Form control joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm). Repeat grooving of control joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
2. Sawed Joints: Form control joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random cracks.

D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.

1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) or more than 1 inch (25 mm) below finished concrete surface, where joint sealants, specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.

E. Doweled Joints:

1. Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated on Drawings.
2. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel bar length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

F. Dowel Plates: Install dowel plates at joints where indicated on Drawings.

3.4 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, embedded items, and vapor retarder is complete and that required inspections are completed.

1. Immediately prior to concrete placement, inspect vapor retarder for damage and deficient installation, and repair defective areas.
2. Provide continuous inspection of vapor retarder during concrete placement and make necessary repairs to damaged areas as Work progresses.

B. Notify Architect and testing and inspection agencies 24 hours prior to commencement of concrete placement.

C. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect in writing, but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.

1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.

D. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301 (ACI 301M), but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.

1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.

E. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness.

1. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated.
2. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
3. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
4. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment in accordance with ACI 301 (ACI 301M).

    a. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms.
    b. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches (150 mm) into preceding layer.
    c. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity.
    d. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete, and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.

F. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.

1. Do not place concrete floors and slabs in a checkerboard sequence.
2. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
3. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
4. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
5. Level concrete, cut high areas, and fill low areas.
6. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.

7. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface.
8. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

3.5 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

A. As-Cast Surface Finishes:

1. ACI 301 (ACI 301M) Surface Finish SF-1.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material.

    a. Patch voids larger than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide or 1/2 inch (13 mm) deep.
    b. Remove projections larger than 1 inch (25 mm).
    c. Tie holes do not require patching.
    d. Surface Tolerance: ACI 117 (ACI 117M) Class D.
    e. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.

2. ACI 301 (ACI 301M)Surface Finish SF-2.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams.

    a. Patch voids larger than 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide or 1/2 inch (13 mm) deep.
    b. Remove projections larger than 1/4 inch (6 mm).
    c. Patch tie holes.
    d. Surface Tolerance: ACI 117 (ACI 117M) Class B.
    e. Locations: Apply to concrete surfaces to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete

3. ACI 301 (ACI 301M) Surface Finish SF-3.0:

    a. Patch voids larger than 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide or 1/2 inch (13 mm) deep.
    b. Remove projections larger than 1/8 inch (3 mm).
    c. Patch tie holes.
    d. Surface Tolerance: ACI 117 (ACI 117M) Class A.
    e. Locations: Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view.

B. Related Unformed Surfaces:

1. At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a color and texture matching adjacent formed surfaces.
2. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

3.6 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

A. Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.

B. Float Finish:

1. When bleedwater sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operation of specific float apparatus, consolidate concrete surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power-driven floats.
2. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture and complies with ACI 117 (ACI A117M) tolerances for conventional concrete.
3. Apply float finish to surfaces exposed to view.

C. Trowel Finish:

1. After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel.
2. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance.
3. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
4. Do not add water to concrete surface.
5. Do not apply hard-troweled finish to concrete, which has a total air content greater than 3 percent.
6. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.
7. Finish and measure surface, so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unleveled, freestanding, 10-ft.- (3.05-m-) long straightedge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 1/8 inch (3 mm)

D. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and locations indicated on Drawings.

1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route.
2. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

3.7 CONCRETE CURING

A. Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.

1. Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) and ACI 306.1 for cold weather protection during curing.
2. Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) and ACI 305.1 (ACI 305.1M) for hot-weather protection during curing.
3. Maintain moisture loss no more than 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h), calculated in accordance with ACI 305.1, before and during finishing operations.

B. Curing Formed Surfaces: Comply with ACI 308.1 (ACI 308.1M) as follows:

1. Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces.

2. Cure concrete containing color pigments in accordance with color pigment manufacturer's instructions.
3. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms.
4. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period, as follows:

    a. Continuous Fogging: Maintain standing water on concrete surface until final setting of concrete.
    b. Continuous Sprinkling: Maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
    c. Absorptive Cover: Pre-dampen absorptive material before application; apply additional water to absorptive material to maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
    d. Water-Retention Sheeting Materials: Cover exposed concrete surfaces with sheeting material, taping, or lapping seams.
    e. Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

        1) Recoat areas subject to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
        2) Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

C. Curing Unformed Surfaces: Comply with ACI 308.1 (ACI 308.1M) as follows:

1. Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete.
2. Interior Concrete Floors:

    a. Floors to Receive Floor Coverings Specified in Other Sections: Contractor has option of the following:

        1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.

            a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than 12-inches (300-mm).
            b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.

        2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm), and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.

            a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
            b) Cure for not less than seven days.

        3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:

a) Water.
b) Continuous water-fog spray.

b. Floors to Receive Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatments: Contractor has option of the following:

1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.

a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than 12 inches (300 mm).
b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.

2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm), and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.

a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
b) Cure for not less than seven days.

3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:

a) Water.
b) Continuous water-fog spray.

c. Floors to Receive Polished Finish: Contractor has option of the following:

1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.

a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than 12 inches (300 mm).
b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.

2) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:

a) Water.
b) Continuous water-fog spray.

d. Floors to Receive Chemical Stain:

1) As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install curing paper over entire area of floor.
2) Install curing paper square to building lines, without wrinkles, and in a single length without end joints.
3) Butt sides of curing paper tight; do not overlap sides of curing paper.
4) Leave curing paper in place for duration of curing period, but not less than 28 days.

e. Floors to Receive Urethane Flooring:

1) As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
2) Rewet absorptive cover, and cover immediately with polyethylene moisture-retaining cover with edges lapped 6 inches (150 mm) and sealed in place.
3) Secure polyethylene moisture-retaining cover in place to prohibit air from circulating under polyethylene moisture-retaining cover.
4) Leave absorptive cover and polyethylene moisture-retaining cover in place for duration of curing period, but not less than 28 days.

3.8 TOLERANCES

A. Conform to ACI 117 (ACI 117M).

3.9 APPLICATION OF LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs.
2. Do not apply to concrete that is less than 28 days' old.
3. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing.
4. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry.
5. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform field tests and inspections and prepare testing and inspection reports.

B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.

1. Testing agency shall be responsible for providing curing container for composite samples on Site and verifying that field-cured composite samples are cured in accordance with ASTM C31/C31M.

2. Testing agency shall immediately report to Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer any failure of Work to comply with Contract Documents.
3. Testing agency shall report results of tests and inspections, in writing, to Owner, Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer within 48 hours of inspections and tests.

    a. Test reports shall include reporting requirements of ASTM C31/C31M, ASTM C39/C39M, and ACI 301, including the following as applicable to each test and inspection:

        1) Project name.
        2) Name of testing agency.
        3) Names and certification numbers of field and laboratory technicians performing inspections and testing.
        4) Name of concrete manufacturer.
        5) Date and time of inspection, sampling, and field testing.
        6) Date and time of concrete placement.
        7) Location in Work of concrete represented by samples.
        8) Date and time sample was obtained.
        9) Truck and batch ticket numbers.
        10) Design compressive strength at 28 days.
        11) Concrete mixture designation, proportions, and materials.
        12) Field test results.
        13) Information on storage and curing of samples before testing, including curing method and maximum and minimum temperatures during initial curing period.
        14) Type of fracture and compressive break strengths at seven days and 28 days.

C. Batch Tickets: For each load delivered, submit three copies of batch delivery ticket to testing agency, indicating quantity, mix identification, admixtures, design strength, aggregate size, design air content, design slump at time of batching, and amount of water that can be added at Project site.

D. Inspections:

1. Headed bolts and studs.
2. Verification of use of required design mixture.
3. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
4. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
5. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
6. Batch Plant Inspections: On a random basis, as determined by Architect.

E. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained in accordance with ASTM C 172/C 172M shall be performed in accordance with the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd. (4 cu. m), but less than 25 cu. yd. (19 cu. m), plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. (38 cu. m) or fraction thereof.

a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.

2. Slump: ASTM C143/C143M:

a. One test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.

b. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.

3. Slump Flow: ASTM C1611/C1611M:

a. One test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.

b. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.

4. Air Content: ASTM C231/C231M pressure method, for normal-weight concrete.

a. One test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.

5. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C1064/C1064M:

a. One test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below or 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each composite sample.

6. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C31/C31M:

a. Cylinders used to test in-site concrete strength for post-tensioning or formwork removal operations shall be field cured under similar conditions as the concrete under evaluation.

7. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M.

a. Test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at seven days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.

b. Test one set of two field-cured specimens at seven days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.

c. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.

8. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.

9. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength, and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa) if specified compressive strength is 5000 psi (34.5 MPa), or no compressive strength test value is less than 10 percent of specified compressive strength if specified compressive strength is greater than 5000 psi (34.5 MPa).

10. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.

11. Additional Tests:

    a. Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.

    b. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C42/C42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.

        1) Acceptance criteria for concrete strength shall be in accordance with ACI 301 (ACI 301M), section 1.6.6.3.

12. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

13. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.

F. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness in accordance with ASTM E1155 (ASTM E1155M) within 72 hours of completion of floor finishing and promptly report test results to Architect.

3.11 PROTECTION

A. Protect concrete surfaces as follows:

1. Protect from petroleum stains.
2. Diaper hydraulic equipment used over concrete surfaces.
3. Prohibit vehicles from interior concrete slabs.
4. Prohibit use of pipe-cutting machinery over concrete surfaces.
5. Prohibit placement of steel items on concrete surfaces.
6. Prohibit use of acids or acidic detergents over concrete surfaces.

7. Protect liquid floor treatment from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by liquid floor treatments installer.
8. Protect concrete surfaces scheduled to receive surface hardener or polished concrete finish using Floor Slab Protective Covering.

END OF SECTION 03 30 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 35 01 - CONCRETE FINISHING (INTERIOR)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Application of clear reactive, penetrating liquid hardener to interior concrete at airport terminal addition.
   2. Refining the interior concrete slab at airport terminal addition with a high grit diamond impregnated burnishing system.
   3. Concrete for polished concrete, including concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, initial finishing, and curing is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete not designated as polished concrete.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Design Reference Sample: Sample designated by Architect in the Contract Documents that reflects acceptable surface quality and appearance of polished concrete.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
   1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials and matching properties of finish and color to existing where infill is occuring. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with polished concrete to attend, including the following:
      a. Contractor's superintendent.
      b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
      c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
      d. Cast-in-place concrete subcontractor.
      e. Concrete finishing Subcontractor.
      f. Representative for manufacturer of concrete hardener and burnishing products
   2. Review the following:
      a. Physical requirements of completed concrete slab and slab finish.
      b. Locations and time of test areas.
      c. Protection of surfaces not scheduled for finish application.
      d. Surface preparation.
      e. Application procedure.

f. Quality control.
g. Cleaning.
h. Protection of finish system.
i. Coordination with other work.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data sheets and tested physical and performance properties on products to be used for the work.

B. VOC Certification: Submit certification that products furnished comply with regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOC).

C. Certificates:
1. Certificates by manufacturer stating that installer is listed applicator of special concrete finishes, and has completed the necessary training programs.

D. Floor Protection Plan

E. Closeout Submittals
1. Laminated Maintenance Instructions: Operation and maintenance instructions for installed concrete flooring products in accordance with Division 1 Closeout Submittals Section. Include methods for maintaining final finish gloss and cleanliness of concrete slab surface.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mockups: On site, prior to the first application of the densifier.
1. Require attendance of parties directly affecting work of this Section, including the Contractor, Architect, applicator, and Owner's Representative.
2. Notify the above parties one week in advance of date and time when mock-up will be completed.
3. Demonstrate the materials, equipment and application methods to be used for work specified herein in pre-approved location approximately 50 sq. ft. in area or as directed by Architect.
4. Retain approved mock-up during construction as a standard for judging the completed Work. Areas may remain as part of the completed work.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in original containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer labels indicating brand name and directions for storage.

B. Store concrete hardener/densifier in environment recommended on published manufacturer's product data sheets.
1. Store containers upright in a cool, dry, well-ventilated place, out of the sun with temperature between 40 and 100 degrees F (4 and 38 degrees C).
2. Protect from freezing.
3. Store away from other chemicals and potential sources of contamination.
4. Keep lights, fire, sparks and heat away from containers.
5. Do not drop containers or slide across sharp objects.

6. Do not stack pallets more than three high.
7. Keep containers tightly closed when not in use.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental limitations:
   1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature and moisture content, ambient temperature and humidity, ventilation, and other conditions affecting performance and finishing requirements.

B. Close areas to traffic during floor application and after application for time period recommended in writing by manufacturer.

C. Protect the completed slab to prevent damage by the other trades during floor completion.

D. Temperature Limitations:
   1. Apply when surface and air temperature are between 40 degrees F (4 degrees C) and above 100 degrees F (38 degrees C) unless otherwise indicated by manufacturer's written instructions.
   2. Apply when surface and air temperatures are expected to remain above 40 degrees F (4 degrees C) for a minimum of 8 hours after application, unless otherwise indicated by manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Apply when air conditions are calm to minimize surface treatment contacting surface not intended to be finished.

F. Do not apply to frozen substrate. Allow adequate time for substrate to thaw, if freezing conditions exist before application.

G. Apply a minimum of 24 hours after rain event. Suspend application when rain is anticipated for a period of 8 hours after application, unless otherwise indicated by manufacturer's written instructions.

H. Temporary Lighting: Minimum 200 W light source, placed 8 feet (2.5 meters) above horizontal concrete surface for each 425 square feet (40 square meters) of concrete being finished.

I. Temporary Heat: Ambient temperature of 50 degrees F (10 degrees C) minimum.

J. Ventilation: Provide ventilation during coating evaporation stage in confined or enclosed areas in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PENETRATING CONCRETE HARDENER/DENSIFIER

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Consolideck Blended Densifier, manufactured by PROSOCO, Inc., Lawrence, KS, (800) 255-4255, www.prosoco.com. Or approved equal.
   1. Polished concrete floor infill sections to exactly match existing concrete floor conditions in color, finish, and type.

B. Provide the basis of design product or comparable product subject to compliance with the following minimum performance requirements:
   1. Comply with national, state and district AIM VOC regulations and contain 50 g/L or less.
   2. Micro-abrasion Resistance: Greater than 30 percent improvement over the untreated samples when tested in accordance with ASTM C418.
   3. Abrasion Resistance: Greater than 40 percent improvement over untreated samples when tested in accordance with ASTM C1353.
   4. Achieve 'High Traction Range' readings when tested in accordance with ANSI B101.1 and ANSI B101.3.
      a. Coefficient of Friction: Greater than 0.60 dry, Greater than 0.60 wet when tested in accordance with ASTM C1028.
   5. Adhesion: Greater than 10 percent increase in pull-off strength when compared to an untreated sample when tested in accordance with ASTM D4541.
   6. Water Vapor Transmission: 99 percent retained when compared to untreated samples when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/96M Method B (Water Method).

2.2 INTERIOR CONCRETE PROTECTIVE TREATMENTS

A. Solvent-based, penetrating clear sealer with a VOC content of 100g/L or less shall resist oil and food stains, and repel water and water-related stains. Basis-of-Design Product: Consolideck Concrete Protector SB, manufactured by PROSOCO, Inc., Lawrence, KS, (800) 255-4255, www.prosoco.com. Or approved equal.

B. Provide the basis of design product or comparable product subject to compliance with the following minimum performance requirements:
   1. Comply with national, state and district AIM VOC regulations.
   2. Achieve 'High Traction Range' readings when tested in accordance with ANSI B101.1 and ANSI B101.3.
   3. Stain Resistance: Achieve limited or no adverse effects when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1308.
   4. UV Stability: No degradation or yellowing of material when tested in accordance with ASTM G154.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

A. Auto Scrubber Machine: For cleaning operations.

B. Burnishing Machine and Diamond Impregnated Burnishing Pads to produce specified results.
   1. Burnishing Machine: High speed burnisher, generating pad speeds of 1,500 RPM or higher, as recommended by diamond impregnated burnishing system manufacturer. Dust skirt must be installed at time of work.
   2. Diamond Impregnated Burnishing Pads:
      a. Resin Diamond Pad Grit Sizes: 400, 800, and 1500 grit.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrate with installer present for conditions affecting performance of finish. Correct conditions detrimental to timely and proper work. Notify the Architect in writing of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work.

B. Do not begin installation until unsatisfactory conditions are resolved. Beginning work constitutes acceptance of site conditions and responsibility for defective installation caused by prior observable conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean dirt, dust, oil, grease and other contaminants that interfere with penetration or performance of specified product from surfaces.

B. Remove remnants of curing compound, bond breaker, and construction laitance prior to application of densifier. Remove by cleaning and scrubbing in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

C. Repair, patch and fill cracks, voids, defects and damaged areas in surface as approved by the Architect. Allow repair materials to cure completely before application of product.

D. Scrub floor with pre-densifier floor cleaner to remove latent salts.

E. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 APPLICATION OF CONCRETE HARDENER/DENSIFIER

A. Cured Steel Troweled Concrete: Apply concrete hardener/densifier to cured steel troweled concrete. Apply according to manufacturer’s written instructions and as follows:
1. Remove remnants of bond breakers, curing agents, surface grease and oil and construction debris. Contact manufacturer for recommended cleaner and cleaning method.
2. Apply hardener/densifier per manufacturer’s recommended application rate to designated finished floor area, with a low pressure sprayer fitted with a 0.5 gpm spray tip.
3. Apply sufficient material to wet the surface without producing puddles. Use a clean microfiber pad to spread the hardener/densifier evenly to achieve uniform wetting. Avoid spreading once drying begins. Surface should remain wet for 10 to 15 minutes. Avoid over-application. (Scrubbing is not necessary) Allow treated surface to dry.
4. Apply second coat of concrete hardener/densifier, as necessary to product desired finishing results.
5. Once thoroughly dry, concrete may be auto-scrubbed or burnished with slab surface refinement system.

3.4 INTERIOR CONCRETE SLAB SURFACE REFINEMENT

A. Sequential progression of surface refinement shall be required and limited to no more than double the grit value of the previous diamond grit used after application of the concrete hardener/densifier.

B. Overlap adjacent burnishing passes by 25 percent

C. Perform each pass perpendicular to the other pass north/south then east/west; multiple passes may be needed.

D. Progressively refine surface utilizing approved diamond impregnated burnishing system, to produce Finishing Requirements.

3.5 APPLICATION OF INTERIOR CONCRETE PROTECTIVE TREATMENTS

A. Application of solvent-based, penetrating oil, water and food stain protective treatment with a VOC content of 100 g/L or less after application of the general purpose, high gloss protective treatment:
   1. Apply per manufacturer's published recommendations to clean, dry slab at the completion of general purpose, high gloss protective treatment and burnishing.
   2. Lightly wet a clean microfiber pad with protective treatment, leaving the pad damp.
   3. Using a clean, pump-up sprayer, and working from one control joint to another, apply a light, fine spray to a small section of the floor. Apply per manufacturer's published recommended application rate applied on mock-up.
   4. Using the damp microfiber pad and firm downward pressure, immediately spread protective treatment to produce a thin, even application. Spread the product as far as possible while maintaining a wet edge.
   5. Allow to dry tack free, typically 60–90 minutes.
   6. Two coats are recommended for maximum protection. Repeat steps 1 through 4.
   7. To remove any subsequent haze or for a high-gloss finish, wait until the final coat is dry, a minimum of 4 hours, then use a high- speed burnisher fitted with a PROSOCO heat polishing pad or 1500–3000 grit diamond polishing pad.

3.6 FINISHING REQUIREMENTS

A. Appearance:
   1. Interior exposed finished slab areas must consist of the following:
      a. Slab surface must meet the desired sheen, as discussed in Pre-Installation meeting and be consistent with approved Mock-up.
      b. Slab surface must have a consistent look and exhibit a finish that has no evidence of streaking or burnish marks.
      c. White residue or hazy appearance is not acceptable.
      d. Exposure of aggregate beyond CPAA Class A-Cream is not acceptable.
   2. Interior exposed finished slab areas must consist of the following CPAA Gloss Level:
      a. Finished Gloss Level 2 – Satin Gloss Appearance.
      b. Finished Gloss Level 3 – High Sheen Appearance.
      c. Match existing.

3.7 SLAB PROTECTION

A. Protect finished floors to prevent damage including staining, gouges and scratching by construction traffic and activities until possession.

B. Do not drag or drop equipment or material across the slab which will scratch or chip it.

C. Inspect tires for debris prior to use on slab. Remove embedded items which may cause damage to floor slab.

D. Clean up spills on slab immediately. Provide cleaning chemicals and absorptive materials.

E. Develop a concrete protection procedure which addresses the following procedures:
   1. Communication of protection plan to subcontractors and vendors.
   2. Procedures for cleaning up slab spills, including use of and availability of cleaning chemicals and absorptive materials at Site.

F. Provide a clean slab surface using concrete maintenance cleaner within an auto scrubber, equipped with soft nylon brushes, in accordance with manufacturer's published recommendations.

3.8 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

A. Provide and post the laminated methods for maintaining final finish gloss and cleanliness of concrete slab surface. Coordinate location with Owner.

B. Post 16” x 30” Concrete Floor Maintenance Guidelines provided by concrete flooring chemical manufacturer.
   1. Contact PROSOCO, Inc. at 800.255.4255 to obtain colored poster.

END OF SECTION 03 35 01

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 41 00 - PRECAST STRUCTURAL CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Precast structural concrete.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

C. Design Mixtures: For each precast concrete mixture.

D. Shop Drawings:

1. Include member locations, plans, elevations, dimensions, shapes and sections, openings, support conditions, and types of reinforcement, including special reinforcement.
2. Detail fabrication and installation of precast structural concrete units, including connections at member ends and to adjoining construction.

E. Delegated Design Submittal: For precast structural concrete indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer, fabricator, and testing agency.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Material certificates.

D. Material Test Reports: For aggregates.

E. Source quality-control reports.

F. Field quality-control and special inspection reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm that assumes responsibility for engineering precast structural concrete units to comply with performance requirements. Responsibility includes preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.

1. Designated as a PCI-certified plant as follows:

a. Group C, Category C1 - Precast Concrete Products (no prestressed reinforcement)

B. Quality-Control Standard: For manufacturing procedures, testing requirements, and quality-control recommendations for types of units required, comply with PCI MNL 116, "Manual for Quality Control for Plants and Production of Structural Precast Concrete Products."

C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. AWS D1.4/D1.4M, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel."

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Furnish loose connection hardware and anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction before starting that Work. Provide locations, setting diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions, as required, for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design precast structural concrete units.

B. Design Standards: Comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) and with design recommendations in PCI MNL 120, "PCI Design Handbook - Precast and Prestressed Concrete," applicable to types of precast structural concrete units indicated.

C. Structural Performance: Precast structural concrete units and connections to withstand design loads indicated within limits and under conditions indicated.

1. Fire-Resistance Rating: Select material and minimum thicknesses to provide indicated fire rating.

2.2 REINFORCING MATERIALS

A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.

B. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A185/A185M, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

C. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A497/A497M or ASTM A1064/A1064M, flat sheet.

D. Supports: Suspend reinforcement from back of mold or use bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place according to PCI MNL 116.

2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or Type III, gray, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Supplementary Cementitious Materials:

1. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F, with maximum loss on ignition of 3 percent.
2. Metakaolin: ASTM C618, Class N.
3. Silica Fume: ASTM C1240, with optional chemical and physical requirement.
4. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C989, Grade 100 or 120.

C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: Except as modified by PCI MNL 116, ASTM C33/C33M, with coarse aggregates complying with Class 4S. Stockpile fine and coarse aggregates for each type of exposed finish from a single source (pit or quarry) for Project.

D. Water: Potable; free from deleterious material that may affect color stability, setting, or strength of concrete and complying with chemical limits of PCI MNL 116.

E. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260, certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other required admixtures.

F. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to not contain calcium chloride, or more than 0.15 percent chloride ions or other salts by weight of admixture.

2.4 STEEL CONNECTION MATERIALS

A. Carbon-Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M.

B. Carbon-Steel-Headed Studs: ASTM A108, Grade 1010 through 1020, cold finished, AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type A or B, with arc shields and with minimum mechanical properties of PCI MNL 116.

C. Carbon-Steel Plate: ASTM A283/A283M, Grade C.

D. Malleable-Iron Castings: ASTM A47/A47M, Grade 32510 or Grade 35028.

E. Carbon-Steel Castings: ASTM A27/A27M, Grade 60-30 (Grade 415-205).

F. High-Strength, Low-Alloy Structural Steel: ASTM A572/A572M.

G. Carbon-Steel Structural Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M, Grade B or Grade C.

H. Wrought Carbon-Steel Bars: ASTM A675/A675M, Grade 65 (Grade 450).

I. Deformed-Steel Wire or Bar Anchors: ASTM A496/A496M or ASTM A706/A706M.

J. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Studs: ASTM A307, Grade A (ASTM F568M, Property Class 4.6); carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and studs; carbon-steel nuts, ASTM A563 (ASTM A563M); and flat, unhardened steel washers, ASTM F844.

K. Zinc-Coated Finish: For exterior steel items, steel in exterior walls, and items indicated for galvanizing, apply zinc coating by hot-dip process according to ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M.

1. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint with dry film containing not less than 94 percent zinc dust by weight, and complying with DOD-P-21035B or SSPC-Paint 20.

2.5 BEARING PADS

A. Provide bearing pads for precast structural concrete units as recommended by precast fabricator for application.
1. Elastomeric Pads: AASHTO M 251, plain, vulcanized, 100 percent polychloroprene (neoprene) elastomer, molded to size or cut from a molded sheet, 50 to 70 shore A durometer, minimum tensile strength 2250 psi per ASTM D 412
2. Random, Fiber-Reinforced Elastomeric Pads: Preformed, randomly oriented synthetic fibers set in elastomer. Surface hardness of 70 to 90 shore A durometer.
3. Cotton-Duck-Fabric-Reinforced Elastomeric Pads: Preformed, horizontally layered cotton-duck fabric, bonded in elastomer. Surface hardness of 80 to 100 shore A durometer.
4. Frictionless Pads: Tetrafluoroethylene (TFE), glass-fiber-reinforced, bonded to mild-steel plate, of type required in-service stress.
5. Hardboard: AHA A135.4, Class 1, tempered hardboard strips, smooth on both sides.
6. High-Density Plastic: Multimonomer, nonleaching, plastic strip.

2.6 GROUT MATERIALS

A. Sand-Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C150/C150M, Type I, and clean, natural sand, ASTM C144 or ASTM C404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 to 3 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration. Water-soluble chloride ion content less than 0.06 percent by weight of cement when tested according to ASTM C1218/C1218M.

B. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Packaged, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade A for drypack and Grades B and C for flowable grout and of consistency suitable for application within a 30-minute working time. Water-soluble chloride ion content less than 0.06 percent by weight of cement when tested according to ASTM C1218/C1218M.

C. Epoxy-Resin Grout: Two-component, mineral-filled epoxy resin; ASTM C881/C881M, of type, grade, and class to suit requirements.

2.7 CONCRETE MIXTURES

A. Prepare design mixtures for each type of precast concrete required.

1. Use fly ash, pozzolan, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent.
2. Limit use of fly ash to 20 percent replacement of portland cement by weight and ground granulated blast-furnace slag to 20 percent of portland cement by weight; metakaolin and silica fume to 10 percent of portland cement by weight.

B. Design mixtures may be prepared by a qualified independent testing agency or by qualified precast plant personnel at precast structural concrete fabricator's option.

C. Limit water-soluble chloride ions to maximum percentage by weight of cement permitted by ACI 318 (ACI 318M) or PCI MNL 116 when tested according to ASTM C1218/C1218M.

D. Normal-Weight Concrete Mixtures: Proportion full-depth mixture by either laboratory trial batch or field test data methods according to ACI 211.1, with materials to be used on Project, to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:

1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 5000 psi (34.5 MPa).
2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.

E. Water Absorption: Limit water absorption to 6 percent by weight or 14 percent by volume, tested according to ASTM C642, except for boiling requirement.

F. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having an air content complying with PCI MNL 116.

G. When included in design mixtures, add other admixtures to concrete mixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.

H. Concrete Mix Adjustments: Concrete mix design adjustments may be proposed if characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant.

2.8 FABRICATION

A. Cast-in Anchors, Inserts, Plates, Angles, and Other Anchorage Hardware: Fabricate anchorage hardware with sufficient anchorage and embedment to comply with design requirements. Accurately position for attachment of loose hardware, and secure in place during precasting operations. Locate anchorage hardware where it does not affect position of main reinforcement or concrete placement.

1. Weld-headed studs and deformed bar anchors used for anchorage according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS C5.4, "Recommended Practices for Stud Welding."

B. Furnish loose hardware items including steel plates, clip angles, seat angles, anchors, dowels, cramps, hangers, and other hardware shapes for securing precast structural concrete units to supporting and adjacent construction.

C. Cast-in reglets, slots, holes, and other accessories in precast structural concrete units as indicated on the Contract Drawings.

D. Cast-in openings larger than 10 inches (250 mm) in any dimension. Do not drill or cut openings or prestressing strand without Architect's approval.

E. Reinforcement: Comply with recommendations in PCI MNL 116 for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.

F. Reinforce precast structural concrete units to resist handling, transportation, and erection stresses and specified in-place loads.

G. Comply with requirements in PCI MNL 116 and in this Section for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete. After concrete batching, no additional water may be added.

H. Place concrete in a continuous operation to prevent cold joints or planes of weakness from forming in precast concrete units.

I. Thoroughly consolidate placed concrete by vibration without dislocating or damaging reinforcement and built-in items, and minimize pour lines, honeycombing, or entrapped air voids on surfaces. Use equipment and procedures complying with PCI MNL 116.

J. Comply with PCI MNL 116 procedures for hot- and cold-weather concrete placement.

K. Identify pickup points of precast structural concrete units and orientation in structure with permanent markings, complying with markings indicated on Shop Drawings. Imprint or permanently mark casting date on each precast structural concrete unit on a surface that does not show in finished structure.

L. Cure concrete, according to requirements in PCI MNL 116, by moisture retention without heat or by accelerated heat curing using live steam or radiant heat and moisture. Cure units until compressive strength is high enough to ensure that stripping does not have an effect on performance or appearance of final product.

M. Discard and replace precast structural concrete units that do not comply with requirements, including structural, manufacturing tolerance, and appearance, unless repairs meet requirements in PCI MNL 116 and meet Architect's approval.

2.9 FABRICATION TOLERANCES

A. Fabricate precast structural concrete units to shapes, lines, and dimensions indicated so each finished unit complies with PCI MNL 116 product dimension tolerances as well as position tolerances for cast-in items.

2.10 COMMERCIAL FINISHES

A. Standard Grade: Normal plant-run finish produced in molds that impart a smooth finish to concrete. Surface holes smaller than 1/2 inch (13 mm) caused by air bubbles, normal color variations, form joint marks, and minor chips and spalls are permitted. Fill air holes greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in width that occur more than once per 2 sq. in. (1300 sq. mm). Major or

unsightly imperfections, honeycombs, or structural defects are not permitted. Limit joint offsets to 1/8 inch (3 mm).

B. CONCRETE TREAD FINISHES

1. Surfacing: Light to medium broom finish with a 2 inch (51mm) edging.

2. Tool stair tread exposed edges to form a 3/8 inch (10mm) radius.

2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Test and inspect precast structural concrete according to PCI MNL 116 requirements and ASTM C1610/C1610M, ASTM C1611/C1611M, ASTM C1621/C1621M, and ASTM C1712/C1712M.

B. Defective Units: Discard and replace precast structural concrete units that do not comply with requirements, including strength, manufacturing tolerances, and color and texture range. Chipped, spalled, or cracked units may be repaired, subject to Architect's approval.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install clips, hangers, bearing pads, and other accessories required for connecting precast structural concrete units to supporting members and backup materials.

B. Erect precast structural concrete level, plumb, and square within specified allowable tolerances. Provide temporary structural framing, shoring, and bracing as required to maintain position, stability, and alignment of units until permanent connections are complete.

1. Maintain horizontal and vertical joint alignment and uniform joint width as erection progresses.
2. Remove projecting lifting devices and use plastic patch caps or sand-cement grout to fill voids within recessed lifting devices flush with surface of adjacent precast surfaces when recess is exposed.

C. Connect precast structural concrete units in position by bolting, welding, grouting, or as otherwise indicated on Shop Drawings. Remove temporary shims, wedges, and spacers as soon as practical after connecting and grouting are completed.

D. Field cutting of precast units is not permitted without approval of Architect.

E. Fasteners: Do not use drilled or powder-actuated fasteners for attaching accessory items to precast, prestressed concrete units.

F. Welding: Comply with applicable requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.4/D1.4M for welding, welding electrodes, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

G. At bolted connections, use lock washers, tack welding, or other approved means to prevent loosening of nuts after final adjustment.

H. Grouting or Dry-Packing Connections and Joints: Grout connections and joints and open spaces at keyways, connections, and joints where required or indicated on Shop Drawings. Retain flowable grout in place until hard enough to support itself. Alternatively, pack spaces with stiff dry-pack grout material, tamping until voids are completely filled.

3.2 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Erect precast structural concrete units level, plumb, square, and in alignment without exceeding the noncumulative erection tolerances of PCI MNL 135.

B. Minimize variations between adjacent slab members by jacking, loading, or other method recommended by fabricator and approved by Architect.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:

1. Erection of precast structural concrete members.
2. Field quality control reports

B. Testing Agency: **Engage** a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Visually inspect field welds and test according to ASTM E165 or to ASTM E709 and ASTM E1444. High-strength bolted connections are subject to inspections.

D. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.

E. Repair or remove and replace work where tests and inspections indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

F. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, to be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 REPAIRS

A. Repair precast structural concrete units if permitted by Architect.

1. Repairs may be permitted if structural adequacy, serviceability, durability, and appearance of units have not been impaired.

B. Mix patching materials and repair units so cured patches blend with color, texture, and uniformity of adjacent exposed surfaces and show no apparent line of demarcation between

original and repaired work, when viewed in typical daylight illumination from a distance of 20 feet (6 m).

C. Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings with galvanizing repair paint according to ASTM A780/A780M.

D. Wire brush, clean, and paint damaged prime-painted components with same type of shop primer.

E. Remove and replace damaged precast structural concrete units that cannot be repaired or when repairs do not comply with requirements as determined by Architect.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean mortar, plaster, fireproofing, weld slag, and other deleterious material from concrete surfaces and adjacent materials immediately.

B. Clean exposed surfaces of precast concrete units after erection and completion of joint treatment to remove weld marks, other markings, dirt, and stains.

1. Perform cleaning procedures, if necessary, according to precast concrete fabricator's written recommendations. Protect other work from staining or damage due to cleaning operations.
2. Do not use cleaning materials or processes that could change the appearance of exposed concrete finishes or damage adjacent materials.

END OF SECTION 034100

SECTION 03 45 00 - PRECAST ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Precast architectural concrete units.
2. Mold materials.
3. Reinforcing materials.
4. Prestressing tendons.
5. Concrete materials.
6. Steel connection materials.
7. Grout materials.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail fabrication and installation of architectural precast concrete units.
2. Indicate locations, plans, elevations, dimensions, shapes, and cross sections of each unit.
3. Indicate joints, reveals, drips, chamfers, and extent and location of each surface finish.
4. Indicate details at building corners.

C. Sample Panels: After sample approval and before fabricating architectural precast concrete units, produce a minimum of two sample panels approximately 16 sq. ft. (1.5 sq. m) in area for review by Architect. Incorporate full-scale details of architectural features, finishes, textures, and transitions in sample panels.

1. Locate panels where indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
2. Damage part of an exposed-face surface for each finish, color, and texture, and demonstrate adequacy of repair techniques proposed for repair of surface blemishes.
3. After acceptance of repair technique, maintain one sample panel at manufacturer's plant and one at Project site in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
4. Demolish and remove sample panels when directed.

D. Delegated Design Submittals: For architectural precast concrete indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Show governing panel types, connections, types of reinforcement, including special reinforcement, and concrete cover on reinforcement. Indicate location, type, magnitude, and direction of loads imposed on the building structural frame from architectural precast concrete.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Provide locations, setting diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions, as required, for furnishing and installation of loose connection hardware and anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Material test reports.

D. Source Quality-Control Reports: For aggregate and cementitious materials.

E. Qualification Statements: For fabricator and installer.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm that assumes responsibility for engineering architectural precast concrete units to comply with performance requirements. This responsibility includes preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.

1. Designated at time of bidding as a PCI-certified plant for Category AA, Category AB, Category AC, Category AD or designated as an APA-certified plant for production of architectural precast concrete products.

B. Certified Installer Qualifications: A precast concrete erector qualified and designated by PCI's Certificate of Compliance to erect Category A (Architectural Systems) for nonload-bearing members.

C. Installer Qualifications: A precast concrete erector who has retained a "PCI-Certified Field Auditor" to conduct a field audit of a project in same category as this Project and who can produce an Erectors' Post-Audit Declaration.

D. Delegated Design Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in Missouri where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the type indicated.

E. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following welding codes:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
2. AWS D1.4/D1.4M.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver architectural precast concrete units in such quantities and at such times to limit unloading units temporarily on the ground or other rehandling.

B. Store units with adequate dunnage and bracing, and protect units to prevent contact with soil, prevent staining, and prevent cracking, distortion, warping, or other physical damage.

C. Place stored units so identification marks are clearly visible, and units can be inspected.

D. Handle and transport units in a manner that avoids excessive stresses that cause cracking or damage.

E. Lift and support units only at designated points indicated on Shop Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design Standards: Comply with ACI 318 and design recommendations of PCI MNL 120 applicable to types of architectural precast concrete units indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Provide architectural precast concrete units and connections capable of withstanding the indicated design loads within limits and under conditions indicated:

1. Fire-Resistance Rating: Select material and minimum thicknesses to provide **2**-hour fire rating.

2.2 PRECAST ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE UNITS

A. Provide unit types as indicated on Drawings, including wall panels and window panels.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain precast architectural concrete units from single fabricator.

2.3 MOLD MATERIALS

A. Molds: Rigid, dimensionally stable, nonabsorptive material, warp and buckle free, that provides continuous and true precast concrete surfaces within fabrication tolerances indicated; nonreactive with concrete and suitable for producing required finishes.

B. Form Liners: Units of face design, texture, arrangement, and configuration to match those used for precast concrete design reference sample. Provide solid backing and supports to keep form liners in place during concrete placement.

1. Face Pattern: Smooth

C. Form-Release Agent: Commercially produced form-release agent that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect precast concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of precast concrete.

2.4 REINFORCING MATERIALS

A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60, deformed.

B. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064/A1064M, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

C. Deformed-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064/A1064M, flat sheet.

D. Supports: Suspend reinforcement from back of mold. Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcement in place may only be used if they are not visible in the finished face.

2.5 PRESTRESSING TENDONS

A. Prestressing Strand: ASTM A416/A416M, Grade 270, uncoated, seven-wire, low-relaxation strand.

1. Coat unbonded post-tensioning strand with post-tensioning coating and sheath with polypropylene tendon sheathing in compliance with ACI 423.7. Include anchorage devices and coupler assemblies.

B. Post-Tensioning Bars: ASTM A722/A722M, uncoated high-strength steel bars.

2.6 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or Type III.

1. For surfaces exposed to view in finished structure, use gray and white cement, of same type, brand, and mill source.

a. Standard gray cement is acceptable for use where not exposed to view.

B. Supplementary Cementitious Materials:

1. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F, with maximum loss on ignition of 3 percent.
2. Metakaolin: ASTM C618, Class N.
3. Silica Fume: ASTM C1240, with optional chemical and physical requirement, white.

4. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C989/C989M, Grade 100 or 120.

C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: Except as modified by PCI MNL 117, ASTM C33/C33M, with coarse aggregates complying with Class 5S. Stockpile fine and coarse aggregates for each type of exposed finish from a single source (pit or quarry) for Project.

1. Face-Mixture-Coarse Aggregates: Selected, hard, and durable; free of material that reacts with cement or causes staining; to match approved finish sample.

a. Gradation: To match design reference sample.

2. Face-Mixture-Fine Aggregates: Selected, natural or manufactured sand compatible with coarse aggregate; to match approved finish sample.

D. Water: Potable; free from deleterious material that may affect color stability, setting, or strength of concrete and complying with chemical limits of PCI MNL 117 and ASTM C1602/C1602M.

E. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M, certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other required admixtures.

F. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to not contain calcium chloride, or more than 0.15 percent chloride ions or other salts by weight of admixture.

2.7 STEEL CONNECTION MATERIALS

A. Carbon Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M.

B. Carbon Steel-Headed Studs: ASTM A108, Grades 1010 through 1020, cold finished, AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type A or Type B, with arc shields and with minimum mechanical properties of PCI MNL 117, Table 3.2.3.

C. Carbon Steel Plate: ASTM A283/A283M, Grade C.

D. Malleable Iron Castings: ASTM A47/A47M, Grade 32510 or Grade 35028.

E. Carbon Steel Castings: ASTM A27/A27M, Grade 60-30.

F. High-Strength, Low-Alloy Structural Steel: ASTM A572/A572M.

G. Carbon Steel Structural Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M, Grade B or Grade C.

H. Wrought Carbon Steel Bars: ASTM A675/A675M, Grade 65.

I. Deformed-Steel Wire or Bar Anchors: ASTM A1064/A1064M or ASTM A706/A706M.

J. Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs: ASTM A307, Grade A, or ASTM F1554, Grade 36; carbon steel, hex-head bolts and studs; carbon steel nuts, ASTM A563; and flat, unhardened steel washers, ASTM F844.

High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563, Grade DH, heavy-hex carbon steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon steel washers.

K. Zinc-Coated Finish: For exterior steel items, steel in exterior walls, and items indicated for galvanizing, apply zinc coating by hot-dip process in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M.

1. For steel shapes, plates, and tubing to be galvanized, limit silicon content of steel to less than 0.03 percent or to between 0.15 and 0.25 percent, or limit sum of silicon and 2.5 times phosphorous content to 0.09 percent.
2. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint with dry film containing not less than 94 percent zinc dust by weight and complying with MIL-P-21035B or SSPC-Paint 20.

2.8 GROUT MATERIALS

A. Sand-Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C150/C150M, Type I, and clean, natural sand, ASTM C144 or ASTM C404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 to 3 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration. Water-soluble chloride ion content is to be less than 0.06 percent by weight of cement when tested in accordance with ASTM C1218/C1218M.

B. Nonmetallic, Non-shrink Grout: Packaged, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, non-staining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade A for dry pack and Grades B and C for flowable grout, and of consistency suitable for application within a 30-minute working time. Water-soluble chloride ion content is to be less than 0.06 percent by weight of cement when tested in accordance with ASTM C1218/C1218M.

C. Epoxy-Resin Grout: Two-component, mineral-filled epoxy resin; ASTM C881/C881M, of type, grade, and class to suit requirements.

2.9 CONCRETE MIXTURES

A. Prepare design mixtures for each type of precast concrete required.

1. Use a single design mixture for units with more than one major face or edge exposed.
2. Where only one face of unit is exposed, use either a single design mixture or separate mixtures for face and backup.

B. Limit use of fly ash and ground granulated blast-furnace slag to 20 percent of portland cement by weight; limit metakaolin and silica fume to 10 percent of portland cement by weight.

C. Design mixtures may be prepared by a qualified independent testing agency or by qualified precast plant personnel at architectural precast concrete fabricator's option.

D. Limit water-soluble chloride ions to maximum percentage by weight of cement permitted by ACI 318 or PCI MNL 117 when tested in accordance with ASTM C1218/C1218M.

1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) minimum.

2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.

E. Water Absorption: Six percent by weight or 14 percent by volume, tested in accordance with ASTM C642, except for boiling requirement.

F. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having an air content complying with PCI MNL 117.

G. When included in design mixtures, add other admixtures to concrete mixtures in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

2.10 FABRICATION OF MOLDS

A. Molds: Accurately construct molds, mortar tight, of sufficient strength to withstand pressures due to concrete-placement operations and temperature changes and for prestressing and de-tensioning operations. Coat contact surfaces of molds with release agent before reinforcement is placed. Avoid contamination of reinforcement and prestressing tendons by release agent.

B. Maintain molds to provide completed architectural precast concrete units of shapes, lines, and dimensions indicated, within fabrication tolerances specified.

1. Form joints are not permitted on faces exposed to view in the finished Project.

2. Edge and Corner Treatment: Uniformly chamfered.

2.11 FABRICATION OF PRECAST ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE

A. Cast-in Anchors, Inserts, Plates, Angles, and Other Anchorage Hardware: Fabricate anchorage hardware with sufficient anchorage and embedment to comply with design requirements. Accurately position for attachment of loose hardware, and secure in place during precast operations. Locate anchorage hardware where it does not affect position of main reinforcement or concrete placement.

1. Weld-headed studs and deformed bar anchors used for anchorage in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS C5.4.

B. Cast-in reglets, slots, holes, and other accessories in architectural precast concrete units, as indicated on the Drawings.

C. Reinforcement: Comply with recommendations in PCI MNL 117 for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.

D. Reinforce precast architectural concrete units to resist handling, transportation, and erection stresses and specified in-place loads.

E. Prestress tendons for architectural precast concrete units by either pre-tensioning or post-tensioning methods. Comply with PCI MNL 117.

F. Comply with requirements in PCI MNL 117 and requirements in this Section for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete. After concrete batching, no additional water may be added.

G. Place concrete in a continuous operation to prevent cold joints or planes of weakness from forming in precast concrete units.

1. Place backup concrete mixture to ensure bond with face-mixture concrete.

H. Thoroughly consolidate placed concrete by internal and external vibration without dislocating or damaging reinforcement and built-in items, and minimize pour lines, honeycombing, or entrapped air voids on surfaces. Use equipment and procedures complying with PCI MNL 117.

1. Place self-consolidating concrete without vibration in accordance with PCI TR-6. Ensure adequate bond between face and backup concrete, if used.

I. Comply with PCI MNL 117 for hot- and cold-weather concrete placement.

J. Identify pickup points of architectural precast concrete units and orientation in structure with permanent markings, complying with markings indicated on Shop Drawings. Imprint or permanently mark casting date on each architectural precast concrete unit on a surface that does not show in finished structure.

K. Cure concrete, in accordance with PCI MNL 117, by moisture retention without heat or by accelerated heat curing using low-pressure live steam or radiant heat and moisture. Cure units until compressive strength is high enough to ensure that stripping does not have an effect on performance or appearance of final product.

L. Discard and replace architectural precast concrete units that do not comply with requirements, including structural, manufacturing tolerance, and appearance, unless repairs comply with requirements in PCI MNL 117 and Architect's approval.

2.12 FABRICATION TOLERANCES

A. Fabricate architectural precast concrete units to shapes, lines, and dimensions indicated so each finished unit complies with PCI MNL 117 and PCI Category AA, Category AB and Category AC product tolerances as well as position tolerances for cast-in items.

2.13 FINISHES

A. Exposed faces to be free of joint marks, grain, and other obvious defects. Corners, including false joints to be uniform, straight, and sharp. Finish exposed-face surfaces of architectural precast concrete units to match approved design reference sample, sample panels or mockups and as follows:

1. As-Cast Surface Finish: Provide surfaces to match approved sample for acceptable surface, air voids, sand streaks, and honeycomb.

B. Finish exposed with smooth, steel-trowel finish.

C. Finish unexposed surfaces of architectural precast concrete units with as-cast finish.

2.14 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Quality-Control Testing: Test and inspect precast concrete in accordance with PCI MNL 117 requirements. If using self-consolidating concrete, also test and inspect in accordance with PCI TR-6, ASTM C1610/C1610M, ASTM C1611/C1611M, ASTM C1621/C1621M, and ASTM C1712.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF PRECAST ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE UNITS

A. Install clips, hangers, bearing pads, and other accessories required for connecting architectural precast concrete units to supporting members and backup materials.

B. Erect architectural precast concrete level, plumb, and square within specified allowable tolerances. Provide temporary supports and bracing as required to maintain position, stability, and alignment of units until permanent connections are completed.

1. Maintain horizontal and vertical joint alignment and uniform joint width as erection progresses.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, maintain uniform joint widths of 3/4 inch.

C. Connect architectural precast concrete units in position by bolting, welding, grouting, or as otherwise indicated on Shop Drawings. Remove temporary shims, wedges, and spacers as soon as practical after connecting and grouting are completed.

D. Welding: Comply with applicable requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.4/D1.4M for welding, welding electrodes, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

E. At bolted connections, use lock washers, tack welding, or other approved means to prevent loosening of nuts after final adjustment.

F. Grouting or Dry Packing Connections and Joints: Grout connections where required or indicated. Retain flowable grout in place until hard enough to support itself. Alternatively, pack spaces with stiff dry pack grout material, tamping until voids are completely filled. Place grout and finish smooth, level, and plumb with adjacent concrete surfaces. Promptly remove grout material from exposed surfaces before it affects finishes or hardens. Keep grouted joints damp for not less than 24 hours after initial set.

3.2 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Erect architectural precast concrete units level, plumb, square, and in alignment without exceeding the noncumulative erection tolerances of PCI MNL 135 and in accordance with PCI Category AA.

3.3 REPAIR

A. Repair architectural precast concrete units if permitted by Architect. Architect reserves the right to reject repaired units that do not comply with requirements.

B. Mix patching materials and repair units so cured patches blend with color, texture, and uniformity of adjacent exposed surfaces and show no apparent line of demarcation between original and repaired work, when viewed in typical daylight illumination from a distance of 20 ft.

C. Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings with galvanizing repair paint in accordance with ASTM A780/A780M.

D. Remove and replace damaged architectural precast concrete units when repairs do not comply with requirements.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Erection of loadbearing precast concrete members.
2. Visually inspect field welds and test in accordance with ASTM E165/E165M or to ASTM E709 and ASTM E1444/E1444M.
3. High strength bolted connections are subject to inspections.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

C. Repair or remove and replace work where tests and inspections indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, to be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean surfaces of precast concrete units exposed to view.

B. Clean mortar, plaster, fireproofing, weld slag, and other deleterious material from concrete surfaces and adjacent materials immediately.

C. Clean exposed surfaces of precast concrete units after erection and completion of joint treatment to remove weld marks, other markings, dirt, and stains.

1. Perform cleaning procedures, if necessary, in accordance with precast concrete fabricator's recommendations. Protect other work from staining or damage due to cleaning operations.
2. Do not use cleaning materials or processes that could change the appearance of exposed concrete finishes or damage adjacent materials.

END OF SECTION

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 12 00 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Structural steel.
2. Grout.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for independent testing agency procedures and administrative requirements.
2. Division 05 Section "Steel Decking" for field installation of shear connectors through deck.
3. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel lintels and shelf angles not attached to structural-steel frame, miscellaneous steel fabrications and other metal items not defined as structural steel.
4. Division 09 Painting Sections.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Connections: Where connections are not fully detailed in drawings:

1. Include all steel-to-steel connections and steel-to-steel portion of all connections to other materials.
2. Design connections for specific forces where shown on the drawings. Where specific forces are not shown, design shall be for maximum conditions based on capacities of connecting members.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Provide erection plans and fabrication details of structural-steel components.

1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
2. Include embedment drawings.
3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
4. For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include structural design data.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Mill test reports for structural steel, including chemical and physical properties.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator and Installer Qualifications: Firms which have (5) five years successful experience in fabrication and erection of structural steel systems of similar scope and complexity as required for this project will be acceptable. Fabricator must have sufficient production capacity to produce required units without causing delay in work.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

C. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:

1. AISC 303, “Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges.”
2. AISC 360, “Specification for Structural Steel Buildings.”
3. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.

1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.

1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

A. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M.

B. Channels, Angles, S-Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

D. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade B.

E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade B.

1. Weight Class: As indicated.
2. Finish: Plain.

F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; all with plain finish.

B. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type B.

C. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36 or ASTM A 36/A 36M.

1. Configuration: Hooked.
2. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex carbon steel.
3. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
4. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
5. Finish: Plain.

D. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, ASTM A307, Grade A, straight.

1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex carbon steel.
2. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.

3. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
4. Finish: Plain.

E. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex carbon steel.
2. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
3. Finish: Plain.

F. Clevises and Turnbuckles: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1035.

G. Eye Bolts and Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1030.

H. Sleeve Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1018.

2.3 PRIMER

A. Primer: Comply with Division 09 Painting Sections.

B. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.

2.4 GROUT

A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC 303 "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and AISC 360 “Specification for Structural Steel Buildings.”

1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
3. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.

B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.

1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.

D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.

E. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted.

F. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Steel Wall-Opening Framing: Select true and straight members for fabricating steel wall-opening framing to be attached to structural steel. Straighten as required to provide uniform, square, and true members in completed wall framing.

H. Welded Door Frames: Build up welded door frames attached to structural steel. Weld exposed joints continuously and grind smooth. Plug-weld fixed steel bar stops to frames. Secure removable stops to frames with countersunk machine screws, uniformly spaced not more than 10 inches (250 mm) o.c. unless otherwise indicated.

I. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel framing members.

1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.

2.7 SHOP PRIMING

A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:

1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches (50 mm).
2. Surfaces to be field welded.
3. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
5. Galvanized surfaces.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:

1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.038 mm). Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
1. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Fabricator Approval: In accordance with Section 1704.2.2 of the IBC, special inspections are not required where the work is done on the premises of a fabricator registered and approved to perform such work without special inspection. Approval shall be based upon review of the fabricator’s written procedural and quality control manuals and periodic auditing of fabrication practices by an approved special inspection agency. At completion of fabrication, the approved fabricator shall submit a certificate of compliance to the building official stating that the work was performed in accordance with the approved construction documents.

B. Testing Agency: For fabricators not registered and approved to perform work without special inspection, Contractor will engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform shop tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.

C. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

D. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be tested and inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

E. Welded Connections: In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded connections will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:

1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
3. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
4. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

F. In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded shear connectors will be tested and inspected according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:

1. Bend tests will be performed if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
2. Tests will be conducted on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Contractor shall verify, with steel Erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 ERECTION

A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.

B. Base Bearing and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.

1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
2. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
3. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.

C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

D. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.

1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.

E. Splice members only where indicated.

F. Do not use thermal cutting during erection, unless approved by Architect.

G. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.

H. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs where indicated, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections. In accordance with Section 1704.3 of the IBC and as follows.

B. Bolted Connections: Bolted connections will be inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

C. Welded Connections: Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

1. In addition to visual inspection, full penetration field welds will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:

a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

D. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:

1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
2. Conduct tests on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

E. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.

END OF SECTION 05 12 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 31 00 STEEL DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Roof deck.
2. Noncomposite form deck.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete fill.
2. Division 05 Section "Structural Steel Framing" for shop- and field-welded shear connectors.
3. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel shapes.
4. Division 09 painting Sections for repair painting of primed deck.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck.

D. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.

E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:

1. Power-actuated mechanical fasteners.

F. Research/Evaluation Reports: For steel deck and mechanical fasteners.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide steel deck units identical to those tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
2. Steel deck units shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

D. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."

E. FMG Listing: Provide steel roof deck evaluated by FMG and listed in its "Approval Guide, Building Materials" for Class 1 fire rating and Class 1-90 windstorm ratings.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Steel Deck:

a. ASC Profiles, Inc.
b. Canam Steel Corp.;The Canam Manac Group.
c. Consolidated Systems, Inc.
d. DACS, Inc.
e. D-Mac Industries Inc.
f. Epic Metals Corporation.
g. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.
h. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.

i. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Division.
j. Roof Deck, Inc.
k. United Steel Deck, Inc.
l. Valley Joist; Division of EBSCO Industries, Inc.
m. Verco Manufacturing Co.
n. Wheeling Corrugating Company; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corporation.

2.2 ROOF DECK

A. Steel Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, and with the following as indicated.

1. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) minimum, shop primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.

    a. Color: Manufacturer's standard Black.

2. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230), G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
3. Deck Profile: As indicated.
4. Profile Depth: As indicated.
5. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.
6. Span Condition: As indicated.
7. Side Laps: Overlapped.

2.3 NONCOMPOSITE FORM DECK

A. Noncomposite Steel Form Deck: Fabricate ribbed-steel sheet noncomposite form-deck panels to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Noncomposite Steel Form Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:

1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) G60 (Z180) zinc coating.

2. Profile Depth: As indicated.
3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.
4. Span Condition: As indicated.
5. Side Laps: Overlapped.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.

B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, powder-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.

C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 (4.8-mm) minimum diameter.

D. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi (230 MPa), not less than steel deck design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.

E. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi (230 MPa), of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile recommended by SDI Publication No. 30 for overhang and slab depth.

F. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Piercing Hanger Tabs: Piercing steel sheet hanger attachment devices for use with floor deck.

H. Weld Washers: Uncoated steel sheet, shaped to fit deck rib, 0.0598 inch (1.52 mm) thick, with factory-punched hole of 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) minimum diameter.

I. Recessed Sump Pans: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch (1.90 mm) thick, of same material and finish as deck, with 3-inch- (76-mm-) wide flanges and level or sloped recessed pans of 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) minimum depth. For drains, cut holes in the field.

J. Flat Sump Plate: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch (1.90 mm) thick, of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.

K. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.

L. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 30, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.

B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels, if required to meet deflection limitations.

C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.

D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened.

E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.

F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.

G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.

H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.

I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 ROOF-DECK INSTALLATION

A. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter that is not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) long, and as follows:

1. Weld Diameter: 5/8 inch (16 mm), nominal.
2. Weld Spacing: As indicated.
3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers where indicated.

B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding 12 inches (305 mm), and as follows:

1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 (4.8-mm-) diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.

C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), with end joints as follows:

1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches (51 mm) minimum.

D. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and weld or mechanically fasten flanges to top of deck. Space welds or mechanical fasteners not more than 12 inches (305 mm) apart with at least one weld or fastener at each corner.

1. Where not reinforced with steel frame below deck, install reinforcing channels or zees in ribs to span between supports and weld or mechanically fasten.

E. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld or mechanically fasten to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.

1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels, unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 FLOOR-DECK INSTALLATION

A. Fasten floor-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated and as follows:

1. Weld Diameter: 5/8 inch (16 mm), nominal.
2. Weld Spacing: Where not otherwise indicated, weld edge valleys of panels at each support. Space additional welds an average of 12 inches (305 mm) apart.
3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers where indicated.

B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding 12 inches (305 mm), and as follows:

1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 (4.8-mm-) diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.

C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 2 inches (50 mm), with end joints as follows:

1. End Joints: Lapped or butted at Contractor's option. If butted end joints are used, contractor shall tape joint, if required, to prevent concrete spillage.

D. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure according to SDI recommendations, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Floor-Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, according to SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of deck.

F. Install piercing hanger tabs as indicated.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Field welds will be subject to inspection.

C. Testing agency will report inspection results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.

D. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.

E. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Repair Painting: Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas on both surfaces of prime-painted deck immediately after installation, and apply repair paint.

1. Apply repair paint, of same color as adjacent shop-primed deck, to bottom surfaces of deck exposed to view.

C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 31 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 40 00 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
   2. Interior non-load-bearing wall framing.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

   1. Cold-formed steel framing materials.
   2. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
   3. Interior non-load-bearing wall framing.
   4. Vertical deflection clips.
   5. Single deflection track.
   6. Double deflection track.
   7. Drift clips.
   8. Post-installed anchors.
   9. Power-actuated anchors.

B. Shop Drawings:

   1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
   2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Product certificates.

C. Product test reports.

D. Research Reports:

1. For post-installed anchors and power-actuated fasteners, from ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E329 for testing indicated.

B. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency.

C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Cold-Formed Steel Framing Standards: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, framing shall comply with AISI S100, AISI S200, and the following:

1. Wall Studs: AISI S211.
2. Headers: AISI S212.

B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design cold-formed steel framing.

C. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed steel framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.

1. Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand without deflections greater than the following:
   a. Interior Non-Load-Bearing Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/360 of the wall height under a horizontal load of 5 lbf/sq. ft. (239 Pa).
   b. Ceiling Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/360 of the span for live loads and 1/240 for total loads of the span.

   c. Seismic deflection movement up to 2 inches.

3. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members located outside the insulated building envelope without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F (67 deg C).

4. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:

    a. Upward and downward movement of 1/2 inch.

5. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.

D. Cold-Formed Steel Framing Standards: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, framing shall comply with AISI S100, AISI S200, and the following:

1. Wall Studs: AISI S211.
2. Headers: AISI S212.
3. Lateral Design: AISI S213.

E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.2 COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING MATERIALS

A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A1003/A1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating designation as follows:

1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
2. Coating: G60 (Z180), A60 (ZF180), AZ50 (AZM150), or GF30 (ZGF90).

B. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection Clips: ASTM A653/A653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:

1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
2. Coating: G60 (Z180).

2.3 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch (1.37 mm).
2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm).
3. Section Properties: As indicated

B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and matching minimum base-metal thickness of steel studs.

C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard head clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.

D. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal loads and transfer them to the primary structure.

2.4 INTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch (1.09 mm)
2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm).
3. Section Properties: As indicated

B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and matching minimum base-metal thickness of steel studs.

C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard head clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.

D. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal loads and transfer them to the primary structure.

2.5 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from ASTM A1003/A1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated steel sheet, of same grade and coating designation used for framing members.

B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A36/A36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A123/A123M.

B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F1554, Grade 55, threaded carbon-steel hex-headed bolts carbon-steel nuts, and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A153/A153M, Class C

C. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with bolts of same basic metal as fastened metal, if visible, unless otherwise indicated; with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on

ICC-ES AC01 ICC-ES AC193 ICC-ES AC58 or ICC-ES AC308 as appropriate for the substrate.

1. Uses: Securing cold-formed steel framing to structure.
2. Type: Torque-controlled expansion anchor, Torque-controlled adhesive anchor or adhesive anchor.
3. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941 (ASTM F1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Material for Exterior or Interior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F593 (ASTM F738M), and nuts, ASTM F594 (ASTM F836M).

D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener systems with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping, steel drill screws.

1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing; manufacturer's standard elsewhere.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A780/A780M.

B. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C150/C150M, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.

C. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Factory-packaged, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout, complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M, and with a fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.

D. Shims: Load-bearing, high-density, multimonomer, nonleaching plastic; or cold-formed steel of same grade and metallic coating as framing members supported by shims.

E. Sill Sealer Gasket: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members as required.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.

B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that required to obtain fire-resistance ratings indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Cold-formed steel framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.

B. Install cold-formed steel framing according to AISI S200, AISI S202, and manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

C. Install cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.

D. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.

E. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads equal to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.

F. Do not bridge building expansion joints with cold-formed steel framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.

G. Install insulation, specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation," in framing-assembly members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.

H. Fasten hole-reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's approved or standard punched openings.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure.

B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:

1. Stud Spacing: 16 inches (406 mm).

C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.

D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.

1. Install single deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
2. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
3. Connect vertical deflection clips to infill studs and anchor to building structure.
4. Connect drift clips to cold-formed steel framing and anchor to building structure.

E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced vertically in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches (1220 mm) apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.

1. Channel Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
2. Strap Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
3. Bar Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within 12 inches (305 mm) of single deflection track. Install a combination of bridging and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs, secured to stud webs or flanges.

a. Install solid blocking at centers indicated on Shop Drawings.

G. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure.

B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:

1. Stud Spacing: 16 inches (406 mm).

C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.

D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.

1. Install single deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
2. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
3. Connect vertical deflection clips to studs and anchor to building structure.
4. Connect drift clips to cold-formed steel metal framing and anchor to building structure.

E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced vertically in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches (1220 mm) apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.

1. Channel Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
2. Strap Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
3. Bar Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within[12 inches (305 mm) of single deflection track. Install a combination of bridging and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs, secured to stud webs or flanges.

1. Install solid blocking at centers indicated on Shop Drawings.

G. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.5 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:

1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.6 REPAIRS

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed steel framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A780/A780M and manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 05 40 00

SECTION 05 50 00 - METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Steel framing and supports for overhead coiling grille doors.
2. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
3. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
4. Downspout guards
5. Miscellaneous steel trim including steel edgings.
6. Metal bollards.
7. Loose bearing and leveling plates for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:
1. Loose steel lintels.
2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
3. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

C. Related Requirements:
1. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" for steel framing, supports, elevator machine beams, hoist beams, divider beams, door frames, and other steel items attached to the structural-steel framing.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written instructions to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

B. Coordinate installation of metal fabrications that are anchored to or that receive other work. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide Shop Drawings for the following:
   1. Steel framing and supports for overhead coiling grille doors.
   2. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
   3. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
   4. Downspout guards.
   5. Miscellaneous steel trim including steel edgings.
   6. Metal bollards.
   7. Loose steel lintels.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For alternating tread devices and vehicular barrier cable systems, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:
   1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls, floor slabs, decks, and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design ladders.

2.2 METALS

A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.

C. Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, and Plate: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.

D. Stainless Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A276/A276M, Type 304.

E. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A786/A786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A36/A36M or ASTM A283/A283M, Grade C or D.

F. Rolled-Stainless Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A793.

G. Steel Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M, cold-formed steel tubing.

H. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 FASTENERS

A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
   1. Provide stainless steel fasteners for fastening aluminum, stainless steel or nickel silver.

B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A563; and, where indicated, flat washers.

C. Stainless Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593; with hex nuts, ASTM F594; and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 1.

D. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
   1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.

E. Anchors, General: Capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

F. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A47/A47M malleable iron or ASTM A27/A27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F2329/F2329M.

G. Post-Installed Anchors: [Torque-controlled expansion anchors] [or] [chemical anchors].
   1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593, and nuts, ASTM F594.

H. Slotted-Channel Inserts: Cold-formed, hot-dip galvanized-steel box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4, 1-5/8 by 7/8 inches by length indicated with anchor straps or studs not less than 3 inches long at not more than 8 inches o.c. Provide with temporary filler and tee-head bolts, complete with washers and nuts, all zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B633, Class Fe/Zn 5, as needed for fastening to inserts.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
   1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.

B. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.

C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.

D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

E. Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: Factory-packaged, nonmetallic, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

F. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.

C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.

D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.

E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
   1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
   2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
   3. Remove welding flux immediately.
   4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.

G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.

H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.

I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.

J. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches, with a minimum 6-inch embedment and 2-inch hook, not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.

B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
   1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
   2. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.

C. Galvanize miscellaneous exterior framing and supports.

D. Prime miscellaneous interior framing and supports.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.

B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
   1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.

C. Galvanize exterior miscellaneous steel trim.

D. Prime interior miscellaneous steel trim with

2.8 DOWNSPOUT GUARDS

A. Fabricate downspout] guards from 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) thick by 12-inch- (300-mm-) wide, steel plate, bent to fit flat against the wall or column at both ends and to fit around pipe with 2-inch

(50-mm) clearance between pipe and pipe guard. Drill each end for two 3/4-inch (19-mm) anchor bolts.

B. Galvanize and prime steel downspout guards.

C. Prime steel downspout guards with zinc-rich primer.

2.9 METAL BOLLARDS

A. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe or steel shapes, as indicated.

B. Fabricate interior bollards with 3/8-inch-thick, steel baseplates for bolting to concrete slab. Drill baseplates at all four corners for 3/4-inch anchor bolts.
   1. Where bollards are to be anchored to sloping concrete slabs, angle baseplates for plumb alignment of bollards.

C. Galvanize exterior bollards.

2.10 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.

B. Galvanize exterior bearing and leveling plates.

2.11 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.

B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span, but not less than 8 inches unless otherwise indicated.

C. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

2.12 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

2.13 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.

B. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

2.14 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A153/A153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A123/A123M for other steel and iron products.
   1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.

B. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Shop prime with universal shop primer unless indicated.

C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

D. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
   1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.

B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.

C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
   1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
   2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
   3. Remove welding flux immediately.
   4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.

E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:
   1. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.
   2. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.

B. Anchor supports for overhead doors and overhead grilles securely to, and rigidly brace from, building structure.

C. Install pipe columns on concrete footings with grouted baseplates. Position and grout column baseplates as specified in "Installation of Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.
   1. Grout baseplates of columns supporting steel girders after girders are installed and leveled.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF METAL BOLLARDS

A. Anchor bollards to existing construction with expansion anchors. Provide four 3/4-inch bolts at each bollard unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Embed anchor bolts at least 4 inches in concrete.

B. Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align bollards in holes 3 inches above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace bollards in position until concrete has cured.

C. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.
   1. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.

B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with shrinkage-resistant grout. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

3.5 REPAIRS

A. Touchup Painting:

1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
   a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

END OF SECTION 05 50 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 51 13 - METAL PAN STAIRS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Preassembled steel stairs with [concrete-filled] [precast concrete] treads.
2. [Steel tube]railings and guards attached to metal stairs.
3. [Steel tube]handrails attached to walls adjacent to metal stairs.

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written instructions to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For metal pan stairs and the following:

1. Woven-wire mesh.
2. Welded-wire mesh.
3. Prefilled metal-pan-stair treads.
4. Abrasive nosings.
5. Shop primer products.
6. Nonslip-aggregate concrete finish.
7. Precast concrete treads.
8. Handrail wall brackets.
9. Grout.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
2. Indicate sizes of metal sections, thickness of metals, profiles, holes, and field joints.
3. Include plan at each level.
4. Indicate locations of anchors, weld plates, and blocking for attachment of wall-mounted handrails.

D. Delegated Design Submittal: For stairs [railings, and guards], including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer's experience with providing delegated design engineering services of the kind indicated, including documentation that engineer is licensed in the [jurisdiction] [State] in which Project is located.

B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design stairs, [railings, and guards] including attachment to building construction.

B. Structural Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:

1. Uniform Load: 100 lbf/sq. ft. (4.79 kN/sq. m).
2. Concentrated Load: 300 lbf (1.33 kN) applied on an area of 4 sq. in. (2580 sq. mm).
3. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
4. Stair Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from railing and guard loads in addition to loads specified above.
5. Limit deflection of treads, platforms, and framing members to [L/360] <Insert deflection ratio> or 1/4 inch (6.4 mm), whichever is less.

C. Structural Performance of Railings and Guards: Railings and guards, including attachment to building construction, withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:

1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:

a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction.
b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

2. Infill of Guards:

a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf (0.22 kN) applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m).
b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

3. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.

   a. Temperature Change: [120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces] <Insert temperature change>.

D. Seismic Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to [ASCE/SEI 7] <Insert requirement>.

1. Component Importance Factor: <Insert requirement>.

2.2 METALS

A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.

B. Steel Tubing for Railings and Guards: [ASTM A500/A500M (cold formed)] [or] [ASTM A513/A513M].
1. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.

C. Steel Pipe for Railings and Guards: ASTM A53/A53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
1. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.

D. Uncoated, Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M,[either commercial steel, Type B, or] structural steel, Grade 25 (Grade 170), unless another grade is required by design loads; exposed.

E. Uncoated, Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1011/A1011M,[either commercial steel, Type B, or] structural steel, Grade 30 (Grade 205), unless another grade is required by design loads.

F. Expanded-Metal, Carbon Steel: ASTM F1267, [Type I (expanded)] [Type II (expanded and flattened)], Class 1 (uncoated).
1. Style Designation: [3/4 number 13] [1-1/2 number 10] <Insert designation>.

G. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, [diamond] [square] pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) woven-wire mesh, made from 0.135-inch (3.5-mm) nominal-diameter steel wire complying with ASTM A510/A510M.

H. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, [diamond] [square] pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) woven-wire mesh, made from 0.162-inch- (4.1-mm-) diameter, aluminum wire complying with ASTM B211 (ASTM B211M), Alloy 6061-T94.

I. Welded-Wire Mesh: [Diamond] [Square] pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) welded-wire mesh, made from 0.236-inch (6.0-mm) nominal-diameter steel wire complying with ASTM A510/A510M.

J. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M), Alloy 6063-T6.

K. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B26/B26M, Alloy 443.0-F.

L. Bronze Extrusions: ASTM B455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (extruded architectural bronze).

M. Bronze Castings: ASTM B584, Alloy UNS No. C83600 (leaded red brass) or No. C84400 (leaded semired brass).

N. Nickel Silver Castings: ASTM B584, Alloy UNS No. C97600 (20 percent leaded nickel bronze).

O. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A48/A48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A47/A47M, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 ABRASIVE NOSINGS

A. Cast-Metal Units: Cast [iron] [aluminum] [bronze] [nickel silver], with an integral abrasive, as-cast finish consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
   1. Configuration: Cross-hatched units, [3 inches (75 mm)] [4 inches (100 mm)] wide without lip.

B. Extruded Units: [Aluminum] [Bronze] units with abrasive filler consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both, in an epoxy-resin binder. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
   1. Provide ribbed units, with abrasive filler strips projecting 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) above aluminum extrusion.
   2. Provide solid-abrasive units without ribs.
   3. Nosings: Square-back units, [1-7/8 inches (48 mm)] [3 inches (75 mm)] [4 inches (100 mm)] wide, without lip.
   4. Nosings: Two-piece units, 3 inches (75 mm) wide, with subchannel for casting into concrete.

C. Provide anchors for embedding units in concrete, either integral or applied to units, as standard with manufacturer.

D. Apply bituminous paint to concealed surfaces of cast-metal units set into concrete.

E. Apply clear lacquer to concealed surfaces of extruded units set into concrete.

2.4 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide [zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 12 for exterior use, and Class Fe/Zn 5] [Type 304 stainless steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5] where built into exterior walls.

   1. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings and Guards to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings and guards to other types of construction indicated[and capable of withstanding design loads].

C. Post-Installed Anchors: [Torque-controlled expansion anchors] [or] [chemical anchors] capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E488/E488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy [Group 1 (A1)] [Group 2 (A4)] stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593, and nuts, ASTM F594 (ASTM F836M).

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Handrail Wall Brackets: [Cast nickel-silver,] [Cast aluminum,] [Cast bronze,] [Cast stainless steel,] center of rail [2-1/2 inches (63.5 mm)] [3-1/8 inches (79.4 mm)] <Insert dimension> from face of wall.

B. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with [Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."] [Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."] [Section 099113 "Exterior Painting," Section 099123 "Interior Painting," and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."]

C. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.

1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.

D. Zinc-Rich Primer: Comply with SSPC-Paint 20, [Type I-A] [Type I-B] [Type I-C] [Type II], Level [1] [2] [3], and compatible with topcoat.

E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

F. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout; recommended by manufacturer for [interior] [exterior] use; noncorrosive and nonstaining; mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

G. Prefilled Concrete Treads:

1. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete with minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa) and maximum aggregate size of 1/2 inch (13 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
2. Nonslip-Aggregate Concrete Finish: Factory-packaged abrasive aggregate made from fused, aluminum-oxide grits or crushed emery; rustproof and nonglazing; unaffected by freezing, moisture, or cleaning materials.
3. Plain Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064/A10645M, [steel,] [galvanized steel,] 6 by 6 inches (152 by 152 mm), W1.4 by W1.4, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

4. Reinforcement Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening welded-wire reinforcement in place.

    a. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete.

5. For galvanized reinforcement, use galvanized wire or dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.

2.6 PRECAST CONCRETE TREADS

A. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, ready-mixed concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 5000 psi (35 MPa) and a total air content of not less than 4 percent or more than 6 percent.

B. Reinforcement: Galvanized, welded-wire reinforcement, 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) by 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) diameter steel wire; comply with ASTM A1064/A1064M, except for minimum wire size.

2.7 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Provide complete stair assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, struts,[railings, and guards,] clips, brackets, bearing plates, and other components necessary to support and anchor stairs and platforms on supporting structure.

1. Join components by welding unless otherwise indicated.
2. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.

B. Assemble stairs[, railings, and guards] in shop to greatest extent possible.

1. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations.
2. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately.

1. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
2. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.

D. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.

E. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.

F. Weld connections to comply with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.

2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Weld exposed corners and seams continuously unless otherwise indicated.
5. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for [Finish #1 - No evidence of welded joint] [Finish #2 - Completely sanded joint with some undercutting and pinholes okay] [Finish # 3 - Partially dressed weld with spatter removed] [Finish # 4 - Good quality, uniform undressed weld with minimal splatter].

G. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible.

1. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts unless otherwise indicated.
2. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
3. Fabricate joints that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water.
4. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate internally.

2.8 FABRICATION OF STEEL-FRAMED STAIRS

A. NAAMM Stair Standard: Comply with NAAMM AMP 510, "Metal Stairs Manual," for [Architectural] [Commercial] [Service] Class, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

B. Stair Framing:

1. Stringers: Fabricate stringers of [steel plates] [or] [steel channels] [or] [steel rectangular tubes] [as indicated on Drawings].

    a. Stringer Size: [As required to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article] [As indicated on Drawings].
    b. Provide closures for exposed ends of channel and rectangular tube stringers.
    c. Finish: [Shop primed] [Painted].

2. Platforms: Construct of [steel plate] [or] [steel channel] [or] [steel rectangular tube] headers and miscellaneous framing members as [required to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article] [indicated on Drawings].

    a. Provide closures for exposed ends of channel and rectangular tube framing.
    b. Finish: [Shop primed] [Painted].

3. Weld[or bolt] stringers to headers; weld[or bolt] framing members to stringers and headers.[If using bolts, fabricate and join so bolts are not exposed on finished surfaces.]
4. Where stairs are enclosed by gypsum board[shaft-wall] assemblies, provide hanger rods or struts to support landings from floor construction above or below.

    a. Locate hanger rods and struts where they do not encroach on required stair width and are within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.

5. Where masonry walls support metal stairs, provide temporary supporting struts designed for erecting steel stair components before installing masonry.

C. Metal Pan Stairs: Form risers, subtread pans, and subplatforms to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than 0.067 inch (1.7 mm).

1. Fabricate treads and landing subplatforms of exterior stairs so finished walking surfaces slope to drain.
2. Steel Sheet: Uncoated, [cold] [hot]-rolled steel sheet[unless otherwise indicated].
3. Directly weld metal pans to stringers; locate welds on top of subtreads where they will be concealed by concrete fill. Do not weld risers to stringers.
4. Attach risers and subtreads to stringers with brackets made of steel angles or bars. Weld brackets to stringers and attach metal pans to brackets by welding, riveting, or bolting.
5. Shape metal pans to include nosing integral with riser.
6. Attach abrasive nosings to risers.
7. At Contractor's option, provide stair assemblies with metal pan subtreads filled with reinforced concrete during fabrication.
8. Provide subplatforms of configuration indicated or, if not indicated, the same as subtreads. Weld subplatforms to platform framing.

    a. Smooth Soffit Construction: Construct subplatforms with flat metal under surfaces to produce smooth soffits.

2.9 FABRICATION OF STAIR RAILINGS AND GUARDS

A. Comply with applicable requirements in [Section 055213 "Pipe and Tube Railings."] [Section 057300 "Decorative Metal Railings."]

B. Fabricate railings and guards to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, details, finish, and member sizes, including wall thickness of member, post spacings, wall bracket spacing, and anchorage, but not less than that needed to withstand indicated loads.

1. Rails and Posts: [1-5/8-inch- (41-mm-) diameter] [1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square] top and bottom rails and 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square posts.
2. Picket Infill: [1/2-inch- (13-mm-)] [3/4-inch- (19-mm-)] [round] [square] pickets spaced to prohibit the passage of a 4-inch (100-mm) diameter sphere.
3. Expanded-Metal Infill: Expanded-metal panels edged with U-shaped channels made from steel sheet and not less than 0.043 inch (1.1 mm) thick. Orient expanded metal with long dimension of diamonds [parallel to top rail] [perpendicular to top rail] [vertical].
4. Mesh Infill: [Woven] [Welded]-wire mesh crimped into 1-by-1/2-by-1/8-inch (25-by-13-by-3-mm) steel channel frames. Orient wire mesh with [diamonds vertical] [wires perpendicular and parallel to top rail] [wires horizontal and vertical].
5. Intermediate Rails Infill: [1-5/8-inch- (41-mm-) diameter] [1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square] intermediate rails spaced less than [12 inches (305 mm)] [21 inches (533 mm)] clear.

C. Welded Connections: Fabricate railings and guards with welded connections.

1. Fabricate connections that are exposed to weather in a manner that excludes water.

    a. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate internally.

2. Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose.
3. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
4. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
5. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
6. Remove flux immediately.
7. Finish welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for [Finish #1 - No evidence of a welded joint] [Finish #2 - Completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes are okay] [Finish #3 - Partially dressed weld with spatter removed] [Finish #4 - Good quality, uniform undressed weld with minimal splatter] as shown in NAAMM AMP 521.

D. Form changes in direction of railings and guards as follows:

1. As detailed.
2. By bending[or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings].
3. By flush bends[or by inserting prefabricated flush-elbow fittings].
4. By radius bends of radius indicated[or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings of radius indicated].
5. By inserting prefabricated [elbow fittings] [flush-elbow fittings] [elbow fittings of radius indicated].

E. For changes in direction made by bending, use jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.

F. Close exposed ends of railing and guard members with prefabricated end fittings.

G. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated.

1. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch (6 mm) or less.

H. Connect posts to stair framing by direct welding unless otherwise indicated.

I. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, end closures, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors for interconnecting components and for attaching to other work.

1. Furnish inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting to concrete or masonry work.
2. Provide ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, except galvanize anchors embedded in exterior masonry and concrete construction.
3. Provide type of bracket [with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt] [with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage] and that provides 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) clearance from inside face of handrail to finished wall surface.

J. Fillers: Provide fillers made from steel plate, or other suitably crush-resistant material, where needed to transfer wall bracket loads through wall finishes to structural supports.

1. Size fillers to suit wall finish thicknesses and to produce adequate bearing area to prevent bracket rotation and overstressing of substrate.

2.10 FINISHES

A. Finish metal stairs after assembly.

B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated, ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

C. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal stair components, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete or masonry unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF METAL PAN STAIRS

A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing metal stairs to in-place construction.

1. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors.

B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.

C. Install metal stairs by welding stair framing to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete unless otherwise indicated.

1. Grouted Baseplates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates.

a. Clean bottom surface of plates.
b. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts.
c. Tighten anchor bolts after supported members have been positioned and plumbed.
d. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
e. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain.

1) Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure.
2) Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.

D. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

E. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints.

1. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
2. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
3. Comply with requirements for welding in "Fabrication, General" Article.

F. Place and finish concrete fill for treads and platforms to comply with Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1. Install abrasive nosings with anchors fully embedded in concrete.
2. Center nosings on tread width.

G. Install precast concrete treads with adhesive supplied by manufacturer.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF RAILINGS AND GUARDS

A. Adjust railing and guard systems before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints with tight, hairline joints.

1. Space posts at spacing indicated or, if not indicated, as required by design loads.
2. Plumb posts in each direction, within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1 m).
3. Align rails and guards so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of stairs for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet (6 mm in 3.5 m).
4. Secure posts, rail ends, and guard ends to building construction as follows:

    a. Anchor posts to steel by [welding] [or] [bolting] to steel supporting members.
    b. Anchor handrail and guards ends to concrete and masonry with steel round flanges welded to rail and guard ends and anchored with post-installed anchors and bolts.

B. Attach handrails to wall with wall brackets.

1. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
2. Secure wall brackets to building construction as required to comply with performance requirements.

3.3 REPAIR

A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.

B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in [Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."] [Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."]

[Section 099113 "Exterior Painting," Section 099123 "Interior Painting," and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."]

END OF SECTION 05 51 13

SECTION 05 51 16 - METAL FLOOR PLATE STAIRS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Industrial Class stairs with steel floor plate treads.
2. Steel railings and guards attached to metal stairs.
3. Steel handrails attached to walls adjacent to metal stairs.

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written instructions to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For metal floor plate stairs and the following:

1. Metal floor plate treads.
2. Woven-wire mesh.
3. Welded-wire mesh.
4. Shop primer products.
5. Grout.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
2. Indicate sizes of metal sections, thickness of metals, profiles, holes, and field joints.
3. Include plan at each level.
4. Indicate locations of anchors, weld plates, and blocking for attachment of wall-mounted handrails.

D. Delegated Design Submittal: For stairs[, railings, and guards], including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer's experience with providing delegated design engineering services of the kind indicated, including documentation that engineer is licensed in the [jurisdiction] [State] in which Project is located.

B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design stairs[, railings, and guards], including attachment to building construction.

B. Structural Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:

1. Uniform Load: 100 lbf/sq. ft. (4.79 kN/sq. m).
2. Concentrated Load: 300 lbf (1.33 kN) applied on an area of 4 sq. in. (2580 sq. mm).
3. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
4. Stair Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from railing and guard loads in addition to loads specified above.
5. Limit deflection of treads, platforms, and framing members to [L/360] <Insert deflection ratio>.

C. Structural Performance of Railings and Guards: Railings and guards, including attachment to building construction, withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:

1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:

a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction.
b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

2. Infill of Guards:

a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf (0.22 kN) applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m).
b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.

c. Temperature Change: [120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces] <Insert temperature change>.

D. Seismic Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to [ASCE/SEI 7] <Insert requirement>.

1. Component Importance Factor: <Insert requirement>.

2.2 METALS

A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.

B. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A786/A786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A36/A36M or ASTM A283/A283M, Grade C or D.

C. Steel Tubing for Railings and Guards: [ASTM A500/A500M (cold formed)] [or] [ASTM A513/A513M].
1. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.

D. Steel Pipe for Railings and Guards: ASTM A53/A53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
1. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.

E. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, [diamond] [square] pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) woven-wire mesh, made from 0.135-inch (3.5-mm) nominal-diameter steel wire complying with ASTM A510/A510M.

F. Welded-Wire Mesh: [Diamond] [Square] pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) welded-wire mesh, made from 0.236-inch (6.0-mm) nominal-diameter steel wire complying with ASTM A510/A510M.

G. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A48/A48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A47/A47M, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide [zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 12 for exterior use, and Class Fe/Zn 5] [Type 304 stainless steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5] where built into exterior walls.

1. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings and Guards to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings and guards to other types of construction indicated[and capable of withstanding design loads].

C. Post-Installed Anchors: [Torque-controlled expansion anchors] [or] [chemical anchors] capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E488/E488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy [Group 1 (A1)] [Group 2 (A4)] stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593, and nuts, ASTM F594 (ASTM F836M).

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with [Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."] [Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."] [Section 099113 "Exterior Painting," Section 099123 "Interior Painting," and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."]

B. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.

1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.

C. Zinc-Rich Primer: Comply with SSPC-Paint 20, [Type I-A] [Type I-B] [Type I-C] [Type II], Level [1] [2] [3], and compatible with topcoat.

D. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.

E. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with [SSPC-Paint 20] [ASTM A780/A780M] and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.

F. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout; recommended by manufacturer for [interior] [exterior] use; noncorrosive and nonstaining; mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Provide complete stair assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, railings, guards, clips, brackets, bearing plates, and other components necessary to support and anchor stairs and platforms on supporting structure.

1. Join components by welding unless otherwise indicated.
2. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.

B. Assemble stairs[, railings, and guards] in shop to greatest extent possible.

1. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations.
2. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately.

1. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
2. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.

D. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.

E. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.

F. Weld connections to comply with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Weld exposed corners and seams continuously unless otherwise indicated.
5. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for [Finish # 3 - Partially dressed weld with spatter removed] [Finish #4 - Good quality, uniform undressed weld with minimal splatter].

G. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible.

1. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts unless otherwise indicated.
2. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
3. Fabricate joints that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water.
4. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate internally.

2.6 FABRICATION OF STEEL-FRAMED STAIRS

A. NAAMM Stair Standard: Comply with NAAMM AMP 510, "Metal Stairs Manual," for Industrial Class, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

B. Stair Framing:

1. Fabricate stringers of steel [plates] [or] [channels].

a. Stringer Size: [As required to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article] [As indicated on Drawings].
b. Provide closures for exposed ends of channel stringers.
c. Finish: [Shop primed] [Painted] [Galvanized].

2. Construct platforms and tread supports of steel [plate] [or] [channel] headers and miscellaneous framing members as [required to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article] [indicated on Drawings].

a. Provide closures for exposed ends of channel framing.

b. Finish: [Shop primed] [Painted] [Galvanized].

3. Weld[or bolt] stringers to headers; weld[or bolt] framing members to stringers and headers.
4. Where stairs are enclosed by gypsum board[shaft-wall] assemblies, provide hanger rods or struts to support landings from floor construction above or below.

   a. Locate hanger rods and struts where they do not encroach on required stair width and are within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.

5. Where masonry walls support metal stairs, provide temporary supporting struts designed for erecting steel stair components before installing masonry.

C. Metal Floor Plate Stairs: Form treads and platforms to configurations shown from rolled-steel floor plate of thickness [needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm)] [needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than 3/16 inch (4.8 mm)] [needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm)] [indicated on Drawings].

1. Form treads with integral nosing and back edge stiffener. Form risers of same material as treads.
2. Form treads with integral nosing and back edge stiffener. Form risers from steel sheet not less than 0.097 inch (2.5 mm) thick, welded to tread nosings and stiffeners and to platforms.
3. Form treads with integral nosing and back edge stiffener and with open risers.
4. Weld steel supporting brackets to stringers and weld treads to brackets.
5. Fabricate platforms with integral nosings matching treads and weld to platform framing.
6. Fabricate treads and platforms of exterior stairs so finished walking surfaces slope to drain.

D. Risers: [Open] [Solid].

E. Toe Plates: Provide toe plates around openings and at edge of open-sided floors and platforms, and at open ends and open back edges of treads.

1. Material and Finish: Match treads and platforms.
2. Fabricate to dimensions and details indicated.

2.7 FABRICATION OF STAIR RAILINGS AND GUARDS

A. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 055213 "Pipe and Tube Railings."

B. Fabricate railings and guards to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, details, finish, and member sizes, including wall thickness of member, post spacings, wall bracket spacing, and anchorage, but not less than that needed to withstand indicated loads.

1. Rails and Posts: [1-5/8-inch- (41-mm-) diameter] [1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square] top and bottom rails and 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square posts.
2. Picket Infill: [1/2-inch- (13-mm-)] [3/4-inch- (19-mm-)] [round] [square] pickets spaced to prohibit the passage of a 4-inch (100-mm) diameter sphere.

3. Mesh Infill: [Woven] [Welded]-wire mesh [crimped] [welded] into 1-by-1/2-by-1/8-inch (25-by-13-by-3-mm) steel channel frames. Orient wire mesh with [diamonds vertical] [wires perpendicular and parallel to top rail] [wires horizontal and vertical].
4. Intermediate Rails Infill: [1-5/8-inch- (41-mm-) diameter] [1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square] intermediate rails spaced less than [12 inches (305 mm)] [21 inches (533 mm)] clear.

C. Welded Connections: Fabricate railings and guards with welded connections.

1. Fabricate connections that are exposed to weather in a manner that excludes water.

   a. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate internally.

2. Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose.
3. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
4. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
5. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
6. Remove flux immediately.
7. Finish welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for [Finish #3 - Partially dressed weld with spatter removed] [Finish #4 - Good quality, uniform undressed weld with minimal splatter] as shown in NAAMM AMP 521.

D. Form changes in direction of railings and guards as follows:

1. As detailed.
2. By bending[or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings].
3. By flush bends[or by inserting prefabricated flush-elbow fittings].
4. By radius bends of radius indicated[or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings of radius indicated].
5. By inserting prefabricated [elbow fittings] [flush-elbow fittings] [elbow fittings of radius indicated].

E. For changes in direction made by bending, use jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required.

1. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.

F. Close exposed ends of railing and guard members with prefabricated end fittings.

G. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated.

1. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch (6 mm) or less.

H. Connect posts to stair framing by direct welding unless otherwise indicated.

I. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, end closures, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors for interconnecting components and for attaching to other work.

1. Furnish inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting to concrete or masonry work.
2. For galvanized railings and guards, provide galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous-metal components.
3. For nongalvanized railings and guards, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, except galvanize anchors embedded in exterior masonry and concrete construction.
4. Provide type of bracket [with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt] [with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage] and that provides 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) clearance from inside face of handrail to finished wall surface.

J. Fillers: Provide fillers made from steel plate, or other suitably crush-resistant material, where needed to transfer wall bracket loads through wall finishes to structural supports.

1. Size fillers to suit wall finish thicknesses and to produce adequate bearing area to prevent bracket rotation and overstressing of substrate.

2.8 FINISHES

A. Finish metal stairs after assembly.

B. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A153/A153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A123/A123M for other steel and iron products.

1. Do not quench or apply post-galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
2. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.

C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with [SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."] [SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."] [minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC surface preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed products:]

1. Exterior Stairs: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
2. Interior Stairs: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
3. Interior Stairs: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

D. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal stair components, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete or masonry unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF METAL STAIRS

A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing metal stairs to in-place construction.

1. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors.

B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.

C. Install metal stairs by welding stair framing to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete unless otherwise indicated.

1. Grouted Baseplates: Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces.

a. Clean bottom surface of baseplates.
b. Set steel stair baseplates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts.
c. After stairs have been positioned and aligned, tighten anchor bolts.
d. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with grout.
e. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

1) Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure.
2) Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.

D. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

E. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints.

1. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
2. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
3. Comply with requirements for welding in "Fabrication, General" Article.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF RAILINGS AND GUARDS

A. Adjust railing and guard systems before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints with tight, hairline joints.

1. Space posts at spacing indicated or, if not indicated, as required by design loads.
2. Plumb posts in each direction, within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1 m).

3. Align rails and guards so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of stairs for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet (6 mm in 3.5 m).
4. Secure posts, rail ends, and guard ends to building construction as follows:

    a. Anchor posts to steel by [welding] [or] [bolting] to steel supporting members.
    b. Anchor handrail and guard ends to concrete and masonry with steel round flanges welded to rail and guard ends and anchored with post-installed anchors and bolts.

B. Attach handrails to wall with wall brackets.

1. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
2. Secure wall brackets to building construction as required to comply with performance requirements.

3.3 REPAIR

A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.

B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in [Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."] [Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."] [Section 099113 "Exterior Painting," Section 099123 "Interior Painting," and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."]

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

END OF SECTION 05 51 16

SECTION 05 52 13 - PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Steel railings with stainless steel cable wires.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:
   1. Handrail brackets.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For railings, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:
   1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of railings from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with railings by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Basis of Design – Atlantis Cable Rail Systems – product: Nova Nautilus – Or approved equal or approved equal fabrication from contractor.
   1. Approved manufacturer's: - AGS Stainless. Excell Railing Systems. Carl Stahl DecorCable Innovations Inc.

B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design railings, including attachment to building construction.

C. Structural Performance: Railings, including attachment to building construction, shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
   1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
      a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. applied in any direction.
      b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
      c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
   2. Infill of Guards:
      a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft..
      b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

2.2 METALS, GENERAL

A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.

B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Provide type of bracket with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage and that provides 1-1/2-inch clearance from inside face of handrail to finished wall surface.

2.3 STEEL RAILINGS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M (cold formed) or ASTM A513/A513M, Type 5.

C. Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
   1. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.

D. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.

E. Stainless Steel Cable Wire: ASTM A 492, Type 316 stainless steel wire, 3/16" diameter, 1 x 19 configuration, conforming to dimensional properties specified in MIL-W-87161.

2.4 FASTENERS

A. Fastener Materials:

1. Ungalvanized-Steel Railing Components: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM F1941, Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.
2. Hot-Dip Galvanized Railing Components: Type 304 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329/F2329M for zinc coating.
3. Finish exposed fasteners to match appearance, including color and texture, of railings.

B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction and capable of withstanding design loads.

C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:
1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Provide square or hex socket flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC193.
1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Handrail Brackets: Cast iron center of handrail 2-1/2 inches from wall.

B. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select in accordance with AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
1. For railings, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.

C. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion, complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

E. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout, complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

2.6 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.

B. Shop assemble railings to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations.
1. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
2. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.

C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately.
   1. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.

D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.

E. Fabricate connections that are exposed to weather in a manner that excludes water.
   1. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
   2. Locate weep holes in inconspicuous locations.

F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.

G. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections unless otherwise indicated or unavoidable.

H. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
   1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
   2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
   3. Remove flux immediately.
   4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Finish #2 welds; good appearance, completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes okay

I. Nonwelded Connections: Connect members with concealed mechanical fasteners and fittings. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, rigid, hairline joints.
   1. Fabricate splice joints for field connection, using an epoxy structural adhesive, if this is manufacturer's standard splicing method.

J. Form changes in direction as follows:
   1. As detailed.
   2. By bending or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings.
   3. By bending to smallest radius that will not result in distortion of railing member.

K. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.

L. Close exposed ends of hollow railing members with prefabricated cap and end fittings of same metal and finish as railings.

M. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch or less.

N. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.

O. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work.

1. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings.
2. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.

P. For railing posts set in concrete, provide stainless steel sleeves not less than 6 inches long with inside dimensions not less than 1/2 inch greater than outside dimensions of post, with metal plate forming bottom closure.

Q. Toe Boards: Where indicated, provide toe boards at railings around openings and at edge of open-sided floors and platforms. Fabricate to dimensions and details indicated.

2.7 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

A. For nongalvanized-steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves; however, hot-dip galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.

B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 3.

C. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1 for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
1. Shop prime uncoated railings with universal shop primer unless indicated.
2. Do not apply primer to galvanized surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install railing system in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions.

B. Install railing system plumb, level, square, true to line, and rigid.

C. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings.
1. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
2. Install railings level, plumb, square, true to line; without distortion, warp, or rack.
3. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels.
4. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that are coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
5. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet.
6. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet.

D. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.
1. Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will be in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

E. Ensure that wire ropes are parallel to each other, free of kinks, sags or other defects, and clean.

F. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.

G. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS

A. Nonwelded Connections: Use mechanical or adhesive joints for permanently connecting railing components. Use wood blocks and padding to prevent damage to railing members and fittings. Seal recessed holes of exposed locking screws, using plastic cement filler colored to match finish of railings.

B. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article, whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.

3.4 ANCHORING POSTS

A. Use stainless steel pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts are inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Form or core-drill holes not less than 5 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Cover anchorage joint with flange of same metal as post, attached to post with setscrews.

D. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with flanges, angle type, or floor type, as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:
   1. For steel railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to metal supporting surfaces.

3.5 ATTACHING RAILINGS

A. Anchor railing ends to concrete and masonry with flanges connected to railing ends or brackets on underside of rails connected to railing ends and anchored to wall construction with anchors and bolts.

B. Anchor railing ends to metal surfaces with flanges bolted to metal surfaces and welded to railing ends or connected to railing ends, using nonwelded connections.

C. Attach handrails to walls with wall brackets. Provide brackets with 1-1/2-inch Insert dimension clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface.
   1. Use type of bracket with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage.
   2. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.

D. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:
   1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
   2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.

3.6 REPAIR

A. Touchup Painting:
   1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
      a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.

END OF SECTION 05 52 13

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 06 16 00 - SHEATHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wall sheathing.
2. Roof sheathing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.
2. Division 07 Section "Weather Barriers" for water-resistive barrier applied over wall sheathing.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Evaluation Reports: For following products, from ICC-ES:

1. Foam-plastic sheathing.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS

A. Plywood: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2 unless otherwise indicated.

B. Oriented Strand Board: DOC PS 2.

C. Thickness: As indicated.

D. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

2.2 WALL SHEATHING

A. Plywood Wall Sheathing: Exposure 1 sheathing.

1. Span Rating: Not less than 24/0.
2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 15/32 inch (11.9 mm).

B. Oriented-Strand-Board Wall Sheathing: Exposure 1 sheathing.

1. Span Rating: Not less than 24/0.
2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 15/32 inch (11.9 mm).

C. Paper-Surfaced Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, gypsum sheathing; with water-resistant-treated core and with water-repellent paper bonded to core's face, back, and long edges.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. American Gypsum.
b. G-P Gypsum Corporation.
c. LaFarge North America Inc.
d. National Gypsum Company.
e. Temple-Inland Inc.
f. United States Gypsum Co.

2. Type and Thickness: As indicated.
3. Edge and End Configuration: Square.
4. Size: 48 by 96 inches (1219 by 2438 mm) for vertical installation.

2.3 ROOF SHEATHING

A. Plywood Roof Sheathing: Exposure 1 sheathing.

1. Span Rating: Not less than 32/16.
2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 19/32 inch (15.1 mm).

B. Oriented-Strand-Board Roof Sheathing: Exposure 1 sheathing.

1. Span Rating: Not less than 32/16.
2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 19/32 inch (15.1 mm).

2.4 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.

B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.

D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.

E. Screws for Fastening Wood Structural Panels to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.

F. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached.

1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch (0.835 mm) thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 1002.
2. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 954.

G. Screws for Fastening Oriented-Strand-Board-Surfaced, Polyisocyanurate-Foam Sheathing to Metal Roof Deck: Steel drill screws, in type and length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Adhesives for Field Gluing Panels to Framing: Formulation complying with APA AFG-01 or ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use with type of construction panel indicated by manufacturers of both adhesives and panels.

1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50> g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. To the greatest extent possible, arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.

B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.

C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:

1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's "International Building Code."

D. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.

E. Coordinate wall and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.

F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match width of expansion joint.

G. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated. All end joints shall be staggered.

B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:

1. Wall and Roof Sheathing:

a. Nail (staples not allowed) to wood framing.
b. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
c. Space panels 1/8 inch (3 mm) apart at edges and ends.

3.3 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to wood framing with nails or screws.
2. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
3. Install boards with a 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
4. Install boards with a 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.

B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing, but do not cut into facing.

C. Horizontal Installation: Install sheathing with V-grooved edge down and tongue edge up. Interlock tongue with groove to bring long edges in contact with edges of adjacent boards without forcing. Abut ends of boards over centers of studs, and stagger end joints of adjacent boards not less than one stud spacing. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each steel stud.

1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) from edges and ends of boards.
2. For sheathing under stucco cladding, boards may be initially tacked in place with screws if overlying self-furring metal lath is screw-attached through sheathing to studs immediately after sheathing is installed.

D. Vertical Installation: Install board vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges of each board with those of adjacent boards and stagger end joints of adjacent boards not less than one stud spacing. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each stud.

1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches (200 mm) o.c., unless a closer spacing is indicated and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) from edges and ends of boards.
2. For sheathing under stucco cladding, boards may be initially tacked in place with screws if overlying self-furring metal lath is screw-attached through sheathing to studs immediately after sheathing is installed.

E. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Apply elastomeric sealant to joints and fasteners and trowel flat. Apply sufficient amount of sealant to completely cover joints and fasteners after troweling. Seal other penetrations and openings.
2. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing joints and apply and trowel silicone emulsion sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.

3.4 CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNIT INSTALLATION

A. Install panels and treat joints according to ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated.

3.8 PROTECTION

A. Paper-Surfaced Gypsum Sheathing: Protect sheathing by covering exposed exterior surface of sheathing with weather-resistant sheathing paper securely fastened to framing. Apply covering immediately after sheathing is installed.

END OF SECTION 061600

SECTION 07 14 16 - COLD FLUID-APPLIED WATERPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Foundation waterproofing.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review waterproofing requirements including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Surface preparation specified in other Sections.
b. Minimum curing period.
c. Forecasted weather conditions.
d. Special details and sheet flashings.
e. Repairs.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, and tested physical and performance properties of waterproofing.
2. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show locations and extent of waterproofing.
2. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins with adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
3. Include setting drawings showing layout, sizes, sections, profiles, and joint details of pedestal-supported concrete pavers.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, including the following products:

1. Flashing sheet, 8 by 8 inches (200 by 200 mm).
2. Membrane-reinforcing fabric, 8 by 8 inches (200 by 200 mm).
3. Drainage panel, 4 by 4 inches (100 by 100 mm).

INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

D. Qualification Data: For Installer.

E. Field quality-control reports.

F. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by waterproofing manufacturer.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.

1. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate, when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, or when temperatures are less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above dew point.
2. Do not apply waterproofing in snow, rain, fog or mist, or when such weather conditions are imminent during application and curing period.

B. Maintain adequate ventilation during application and curing of waterproofing materials.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SINGLE-COMPONENT POLYURETHANE WATERPROOFING

A. Single-Component, Modified Polyurethane Waterproofing: ASTM C836/C836M. Basis of design: Colphene LM Barr or approved substitute.

B. Alternate manufacturers: Armor, TK Products.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that concrete has cured and aged for minimum time period recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.
2. Verify that substrate is visibly dry and within the moisture limits recommended in writing by manufacturer. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D4263.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for waterproofing application.

B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.

C. Close off deck drains and other deck penetrations to prevent spillage and migration of waterproofing fluids.

D. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, acid residues, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.

1. Abrasive blast clean concrete surfaces uniformly to expose top surface of fine aggregate according to ASTM D4259 with a self-contained, recirculating, blast-cleaning apparatus. Remove material to provide a sound surface free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, concrete hardeners, or form-release agents. Remove remaining loose material and clean surfaces according to ASTM D4258.

E. Remove fins, ridges, and other projections, and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids.

3.3 PREPARATION AT TERMINATIONS, PENETRATIONS, AND CORNERS

A. Apply waterproofing in two separate applications and embed a joint reinforcing strip in the first preparation coat when recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.

3.4 JOINT AND CRACK TREATMENT

A. Prepare, treat, rout, and fill joints and cracks in substrate according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in ASTM C898/C898 and

ASTM C1471/C1471M. Before coating surfaces, remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks according to ASTM D4258.

3.5 WATERPROOFING APPLICATION

A. Apply waterproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendation.

B. Start installing waterproofing in presence of manufacturer's technical representative.

C. Apply primer over prepared substrate unless otherwise instructed in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.

D. Unreinforced Waterproofing Applications: Mix materials and apply waterproofing by spray, roller, notched squeegee, trowel, or other application method suitable to slope of substrate.

1. Apply one or more coats of waterproofing to obtain a seamless membrane free of entrapped gases and pinholes, with a dry-film thickness of 90 mils (2.25 mm).
2. Apply waterproofing to prepared wall terminations and vertical surfaces.
3. Verify manufacturer's recommended wet film thickness of waterproofing every 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m).

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.

B. Correct deficiencies in or remove waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.

END OF SECTION 07 14 16

SECTION 07 21 00 - THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Foam-plastic board insulation.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 07 Section "Foamed-in-Place Insulation" for spray-foam applied insulation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Document the following for Spray Insulation and Air Barrier.
   1. Provide evidence from primary materials manufacturer indicating approval of products not manufactured by primary manufacturer.
   2. Provide evidence that materials are compatible with adjacent materials proposed for use.
   3. Provide evidence indicating that field peel-adhesion test on all materials to which sealants are adhered have been performed and the changes made, if required, to other approved materials, in order to achieve successful adhesion.
   4. Provide evidence from manufacturer stating that materials proposed for use are permanently chemically compatible and adhesively compatible with adjacent materials proposed for use. Submit letter from manufacturer stating that cleaning materials used during installation are chemically compatible with adjacent materials proposed for use.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each product.

B. Research/Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:
1. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation
2. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
3. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site before installation time.
4. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. A.Temperature: Install air barrier within range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by air barrier manufacturer. Do not apply air barrier to a damp or wet substrate.

B. B.Field Conditions: Do not install air barrier in snow, rain, fog, or mist. Do not install air barrier when the temperature of substrate surfaces and surrounding air temperatures are below those recommended by the manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION

A. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, of type and minimum compressive strength indicated below, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
1. Type V, VI, or VII.
2. Minimum R-10.

B. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates without damaging insulation and substrates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Verify that substrates are clean, dry, and free of substances that are harmful to insulation.

B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended by insulation manufacturer. Apply primer to comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas to be insulated; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.

B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.

C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.

D. Provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SLAB INSULATION

A. On vertical slab edge and foundation surfaces, set insulation units using manufacturer's recommended adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.

3.4 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.
   1. Coordinate with installation of materials which cover air barrier, to ensure exposure period does not exceed that recommended by the air barrier manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 07 21 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 21 19 - FOAMED-IN-PLACE INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Closed-cell spray polyurethane foam.
2. Open-cell spray polyurethane foam.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 075700 "Coated Foamed Roofing" for spray polyurethane foam insulation used for roofing applications.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product test reports.

B. Research reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLOSED-CELL SPRAY POLYURETHANE FOAM

A. Closed-Cell Spray Polyurethane Foam: ASTM C1029, Type II, minimum density of [**1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m)**] <**Insert density**> and minimum aged R-value at 1-inch (25.4-mm) thickness of 6.2 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (25 mm of 43 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

a. Flame-Spread Index: [**25**] [**75**] <**Insert value**> or less.
b. Smoke-Developed Index: [**450**] <**Insert value**> or less.

2. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes [**NFPA 285**] [**and**] [**NFPA 276**] testing as part of an approved assembly.

2.2 OPEN-CELL SPRAY POLYURETHANE FOAM

A. Open-Cell Spray Polyurethane Foam: Spray-applied polyurethane foam using water as a blowing agent. Minimum density of [**0.4 lb/cu. ft. (6.4 kg/cu. m)**] <**Insert density**> and minimum aged R-value at 1-inch (25.4-mm) thickness of 3.4 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (24 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

   a. Flame-Spread Index: [**25**] [**75**] <**Insert value**> or less.
   b. Smoke-Developed Index: [**450**] <**Insert value**> or less.

3. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes [**NFPA 285**] [**and**] [**NFPA 276**] testing as part of an approved assembly.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.

B. Spray insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated and fill voids.

C. Apply in multiple passes to not exceed maximum thicknesses recommended by manufacturer. Do not spray into rising foam.

END OF SECTION 07 21 19

SECTION 07 25 00 - WEATHER BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Building wrap.
   2. Flexible flashing.
   3. Drainage material.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

   1. For building wrap, include data on air and water-vapor permeance based on testing according to referenced standards.

B. Shop Drawings: Show details of building wrap at terminations, openings, and penetrations. Show details of flexible flashing applications.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Evaluation Reports: For water-resistive barrier and flexible flashing, from ICC-ES.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER

A. Building Wrap: ASTM E1677, Type I air barrier; with flame- and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, when tested according to ASTM E84; UV stabilized; and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Not less than 20 perms (1150 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) per ASTM E96/E96M, Desiccant Method (Procedure A).
   2. Air Permeance: Not more than 0.004 cfm/sq. ft. at 0.3-inch wg (0.02 L/s x sq. m at 75 Pa) when tested according to ASTM E2178.
   3. Allowable UV Exposure Time: Not less than three months.

4. Flame Propagation Test: Materials and construction shall be as tested according to NFPA 285.

B. Basis of Design: Dupont Tyvek Commercial Wrap D.
1. Alternate Manufacturer: Barricade

C. Building-Wrap Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by building-wrap manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in building wrap.

2.2 FLEXIBLE FLASHING

A. Butyl Rubber Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.030 inch (0.8 mm).
1. Flame Propagation Test: Materials and construction shall be as tested according to NFPA 285.

B. Primer for Flexible Flashing: Product recommended in writing by flexible flashing manufacturer for substrate.

C. Nails and Staples: Product recommended in writing by flexible flashing manufacturer and complying with ASTM F1667.

2.3 DRAINAGE MATERIAL

A. Drainage Material: Product shall maintain a continuous open space between water-resistive barrier and exterior cladding to create a drainage plane and shall be used under metal trim, metal siding and adhered masonry veneer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER INSTALLATION

A. Cover exposed exterior surface of sheathing with water-resistive barrier securely fastened to framing immediately after sheathing is installed.

B. Cover sheathing with water-resistive barrier as follows:

1. Cut back barrier 1/2 inch (13 mm) on each side of the break in supporting members at expansion- or control-joint locations.
2. Apply barrier to cover vertical flashing with a minimum 4-inch (100-mm) overlap unless otherwise indicated.

C. Building Wrap: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1. Seal seams, edges, fasteners, and penetrations with tape.
2. Extend into jambs of openings and seal corners with tape.

3.2 FLEXIBLE FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Prime substrates as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
2. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches (100 mm) except that at flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
3. Lap flashing over water-resistive barrier at bottom and sides of openings.
4. Lap water-resistive barrier over flashing at heads of openings.
5. After flashing has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.

3.3 DRAINAGE MATERIAL INSTALLATION

A. Install drainage material over building wrap and flashing to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 07 25 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 42 13.23 - METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL (MCM) SYSTEM SPECIFICATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Aluminum or Metal Composite Material (ACM / MCM) fabricated and used as an exterior cladding system.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

1. Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Division 05 Metal Framing Sections
2. Weather Barrier in Wall Cavity Behind fabricated MCM panels: Division 07 Air and Vapor Barrier
3. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Division 07 Flashing and Trim
4. Joint Sealants: Division 07 Joint Treatment
5. Aluminum Framed Entrances and Storefronts: Division 08
6. Glazing: Division 08 Glass and Glazing
7. Metal Framed All Glass Entrance Systems: Division 08

1.3 REFERENCES

A. General: Standards are listed by reference.

B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) International:

1. ASTM D635 Standard Test Method for Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burningof Plastics in a Horizontal Position
2. ASTM D1781 Standard Test Method for Climbing Drum Peel for Adhesives
3. ASTM D1929 Standard Test Method for Determining Ignition Temperature of Plastics
4. ASTM E84 Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
5. ASTM E283 Standard Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage ThroughExterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen
6. ASTM E330 Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference
7. ASTM E331 Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Curtain Wall, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference
8. ASTM E1233 Standard test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Doors, Skylights, and Curtain Walls by Cyclic Air Pressure Differential

C. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):

1. AAMA 2605 Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels
2. AAMA 501 Methods of Test for Exterior Walls
3. AAMA 508 Voluntary Test Method and Specification for Pressure Equalized Rain Screen Wall Cladding Systems

D. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

1. NFPA 285 Standard Fire Test Method for Evaluation of Fire Propagation Characteristics of Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Assemblies Containing CombustibleComponents

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Performance Requirements:

1. General Performance: Provide installed MCM system designed to withstand specified loadings while maintaining allowable deflection, thermal movementperformance.

B. Deflection and Thermal Movement:

1. Perimeter Framing Deflection: Deflection of panel perimeter framing member shall not exceed L/175 normal to plane of the wall
2. Panel Deflection: Deflection of the panel face shall not exceed L/60 at design load
3. Thermal Movements: Allow for free and noiseless horizontal and vertical thermal movement due to expansion and contraction of component parts over a temperature range of -20°F (- 29°C) to +180°F (82.2°C) at the material surface.

Buckling, opening of joints, undue stress on fasteners, failure of sealants, or any other detrimental effects of thermal movement will not bepermitted.

a. Fabrication, assembly and erection procedures shall take into account the ambient temperature range at the time of the respectiveoperation.

C. System Requirements:

1. Pressure Equalized Rainscreen System (PER) - (Tested to AAMA 508 Standard)

a. AAMA 508 (modified ASTM E1233) - Pressure Cycle Testing

b. ASTM E331 - Static Water Penetration - When tested to AAMA 508 standards under static pressure at 12.0 psf (575 Pa) minimum.

c. ASTM 283 – panel system shall not have an air infiltration rate more than 0.12 cfm per sq. ft. of fixed wall area at a static air pressure differential of 1.57 psf

d. AAMA 501.1 - Dynamic Water Infiltration - tested to AAMA 508 standards with a wall pressure equivalent to 12.0 psf (575 Pa) for a time period of 15 minutes

a) ASTM E330 (Modified AAMA 508) - Structural Performance - MCM system must be engineered to meet the project design loads, however the MCM system must meet or exceed the following criteria when tested to a minimum pressure of 30.0 psf (1436 Pa).

D. Fire Performance: Where required by governing code, provide fire retardant MCM that has been evaluated and is in compliance with code requirements specifiedherein.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Provide submittals in accordance with Conditions of the Contract

B. Product Data: Provide construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and finishes for each type of specified MCM System.

C. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing elevations and layouts, profiles, andproduct components, including anchorage, accessories, finish colors, andtextures.

1. Include details showing thickness and dimensions of the system parts, details of edge conditions, attachment system, corners, fastening and anchoring methods, locations of joints

2. If required, provide signed and sealed drawings by a qualified Design Professional in the project jurisdiction

D. System Calculations: As required:

3. Analysis/Calculations shall be signed and sealed by a qualified Design Professional in the project jurisdiction that the MCM system shows conformance with the performance requirements and design criteria identified for this project.

E. Samples: Submit selection and verification samples for finishes, colors and textures

4. Selected Samples: Manufacturer's color charts or chips illustrating full range of colors, finishes and patterns available for MCM with factory appliedfinishes.

5. Verification Samples:

a. MCM System assembly: 12 inch × 12 inch (305 mm × 305 mm) MCM system samples in thickness specified, including clips, anchors, supports, fasteners, closures and other panel accessories. Panel sample need not be provided in the specifiedcolor.

b. Two samples of each color or finish selected, approximately 3 inch x 4 inch (76.2mm x 101.6mm) minimum.

c. Custom color samples may contain drawn down lines. Sizes for custom color samples may be limited.

D. Quality Assurance Submittals: Submit the following:

1. MCM Manufacturer's material test reports: Provide certified test reports showing compliance with specified performance requirements.

E. Closeout Submittals: Submit the following:

1. Warranty: MCM Manufacturer, Fabricator, and Installer warranty documents as specified within the warranty section of this specification.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:

1. MCM Manufacturer Qualifications: Company with aminimum of 10 years of continuous experience manufacturing MCM of the type specified in North America:

   a. Able to provide specified warranty on finish.

   b. Provide a list of projects of similar size, if requested.

2. MCM System Fabricator Qualifications: The MCM System Fabricator of this project'sMCM System must be:

   a. A Certified MCM Fabricator by the Metal Construction Association (MCA), or

   b. Fabricator Requirements:

a) The MCM System Fabricator shall demonstrate that he has fabricated; a minimumof 150,000 square feet of architectural walls per year, that are used as the building weathering envelope, utilizing MCM of at least 4mm (0.157 inch) thickness

b) Panels and system components shall be shop fabricated.

c) Fabrication of other types of panels or fabricator's goods is not consideredas meeting the above requirement.

d) MCM System Fabricator shall have been in business under its present name for at least five (5) years prior to the start of this project.

e) MCM System Fabricator shall not have filed for protection from creditors under state or federal insolvency or debtor relief statues orcodes.

3. MCM System Installer Qualifications:

   a. The MCM System Installer shall have been in business under the present name forat least five (5) years prior to the start of this project and have experience with similar sized MCM system projects. The MCM System Installer must be an accepted installer by Fabricator and have undergone proper training for the specified system thereof.

B. Regulatory Code Agencies Requirements: Provide MCM system which have been evaluatedand in compliance with building codes having jurisdiction over theproject

C. Mock-Ups: As required, install at project site a job mock-up using acceptable products and Fabricator approved details. Obtain Owner's and Architect's acceptance of finish color (draw down samples to be used for color approval of nonstandard coil coated colors), texture and patternand workmanship standard.

1. Mock-Up Size: 12" x 12" Section of both Black anodized metal panel and also Core-ten metal panel after final color selection by architect.

D. Pre-installation Meetings: Conduct pre-installation meeting to verify project requirements, substrate conditions, and system Fabricator's installationdetails.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Substrate Tolerances: The General Contractor is responsible for providing a substrate with a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20.0 feet (6mm in 6m), on level, plumb, and location control lines as indicated and within 1/8 inch (3mm) offset of adjoining faces of alignment of matching profiles tolerances are noncumulative.

B. Field Measurements: Verify locations of wall framing members and wall opening dimensions by field measurements prior to the fabrication of the MCM System. Indicate measurements on the "As Built Shop Drawings". Field measurements to be taken once all substrate materials and adjacent materials are installed.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Project Warranty: Refer to Conditions of the Contract for project warranty provisions.

B. MCM Manufacturer's Material Warranty: Submit, to the Owner, the manufacturer's standard warranty.

1. Warranty Period:
   a. MCM Material Integrity: Five (5) years
   b. MCM Painted Finish: Twenty (20) years
   c. MCM Natural Metal Surface: No finish warranty
   d. Anodized Finish: Five (5) years

C. MCM System and System Installation Warranty:

1. One (1) year warranty period commencing on Date of Substantial Completion.
   b. Special Warranty: The MCM System Fabricator will repair or replace components of the MCM System that fails in materials or workmanship within the specified warranty period
      i. Failures include: deterioration of metals and other materials beyondnormal weathering; structural failures including rupturing, cracking, puncturing, or loss of bond/adhesion characteristics.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL (MCM) Manufacturers and Premium MCM System Fabricators

1. MCM Manufacturers/Fabricator: Basis of Design: Alucobond material provided by 3A Composites USA, Inc. - www.alucobondusa.com

B. Approved equal Manufacturers/Fabricators:

1. Alpolic material provided by Mitsubishi Chemicals - www.alpolic-americas.com
2. Larson material provided by Alucoil North America - www.alucoilnorthamerica.com
3. Reynobond material provided by Arconic - www.reynobond.com
4. Vitrabond material provided by Fairview Architectural – www.fairview-na.com

2.2 METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL (MCM)

A. Material Description

1. MCM Composition:
   a. Two sheets of aluminum sandwiching a solid core of extruded thermoplastic material formed in a continuous process with no glues or liquid adhesives between dissimilar materials. The core material shall be free of voids and/or air spaces and not contain foamed insulation material. Products that are laminated sheet by sheet in a batch process using glues or adhesives between materials shall not beacceptable.
2. MCM Thickness: 6mm (0.236 inch)
3. MCM Face Sheets:
   a. Thickness: 0.5mm (0.020 inch)
4. MCM Product:

a. Standard PE core material product acceptable for use:

i. Less than 40 feet (12.2m) above grade in general accordance with the provisionsof IBC Section 1407, or

ii. Up to 50 feet (15.2m) above grade when used in general accordance with the specific provisions of IBC Section 1407.11.2 and complying with the performance requirements of ASTM D1929, or

iii. Up to 75 feet (22.9m) above grade when used in general accordance withthe specific provisions of IBC Section 1407.11.3 and complying with the performance requirements of ASTM D1929, ASTM D635, or iv. Up to 75 feet (22.9) above grade when used in general accordance with the specific provisions of IBC Section 1407.11.4 and complying with the performance requirements of ASTM D1929, ASTM D635, or type V construction.

b. Fire Retardant (FR) core material product acceptable for use (as available by manufacturer)

i. On any construction where standard core material is allowed for useor

ii. On Types I, II, III, and IV Construction to any height above grade in general accordance with the specific provisions of IBC Section 1407.10.

5. Fire Performance: (Class A Material)

a. ASTM E84: MCM shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 when tested in the maximum thickness intended for use.

b. ASTM E84: MCM shall have a smoke developed index of not more than 450 when tested in the maximum thickness intended for use.

6. Bond Integrity: Tested for resistance to delamination as follows:

a. Peel Strength (ASTM D1781): 22.5 in-lb/in (100 N-m/m) minimum asmanufactured.

b. No degradation in bond performance after 8 hours of submersion in water at 212°F (100°C) or 21 days of immersion in water at 70°F (21°C).

c. Thermally bonded to the core material in a continuous process under heat, pressure, and tension.

2.3 FINISH

A. Exterior Finish: Finish shall meet the performance criteria of AAMA 2605.: Basis of Design Exterior metal panels and soffits Interior black panel soffit/bulkhead: Black anodized metal panels and soffits – all joints to align.

Interior Cor-Ten Wall Panel Sheeting: Panels to be sheeting installed to match interior metal sheeting at airport. Finish to match cor-ten river art work at entrance. Samples to be provided by Manufacturer/Contractor and final color/finish to be selected by architect. – all joints to align.

Interior Black Wall Panel Sheeting: Panels to be sheeting installed to match interior black metal sheeting at airport. Finish to match existing interior black metal sheeting panels at airport. Samples to be provided by Manufacturer/Contractor and final color/finish to be selected by architect. – all horizontal interior metal panel sheeting joints to align.

1. Standard 2-coat finish:
    a. Selected from a Manufacturer's standard color chart
2. Standard 2-coat Mica finish:
    a. Selected from a Manufacturer's standard color chart
3. Standard 3-coat finish:
    a. Selected from a Manufacturer's standard color chart
4. Custom 2-coat finish:
    a. Selected by the Owner or Architect
5. Custom 2-coat Mica finish:
    a. Selected by the Owner or Architect
6. Custom 3-coat finish:
    a. Selected by the Owner or Architect
7. Standard 1-coat FEVE Clear finish:
    a. Selected from a Manufacturer's standard color chart
8. Standard Specialty finish:
    a. Selected from a Manufacturer's standard color chart
9. Natural Metal finish:
    b. Selected by the Owner or Architect
10. Anodized:
    a. Clear Coating: AA-M12C22A41 Architectural Class
    b. Color Coating: AA-M12C22A44, black, Architectural Class

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. General: Provide Fabricator's standard MCM system accessories, including fasteners, clips, anchorage devices, and attachments as indicated on contractdocuments.

2.5 RELATED MATERIALS

A. General: as may be referred to in 1.02.B RelatedSections

2.6 FABRICATION

A. General: Shop-fabricate panels to sizes and joint configurations indicated on drawings.
    1. Formed MCM panel lines, breaks and angles to be sharp and true, with surfaces that are free from warp or buckle.
    2. Fabricate panels with sharply cut edges and no displacement of face sheet or protrusion of core.
B. Fabrication Tolerances: Shop-fabricate panels to sizes and joint configurations indicated on drawings.
    1. Width: +/- 1/8 inch @ 70°F (21°C)

2. Length: +/- 1/8 inch @ 70°F (21°C)
3. Squareness: +/- 1/8 inch @ 70°F (21°C)

C. System Type:

1. Pressure Equalized Rainscreen System

a. System must provide an open panel joint design with precise venting to allow air to quickly pass through the panel joinery while preventing water infiltration from contacting the air/water barrier as tested per AAMA 508-07. System must be properly compartmentalized to prevent internal cavity air moving between different pressure zones of the building's surfaces.

D. Attachment System Components

1. Formed from extruded aluminum as indicated on Contract Drawings to meet the specified design loads and system test performance.
2. Panel stiffeners, as required, shall be positively engaged in the perimeter extrusion or mechanically fastened to the perimeter extrusion and shall be secured to the rear face of the composite panel with silicone or high-strength double-sided bonding tape of sufficient size and strength to maintain panel's specified deflection under load. Structural calculations shall be provided to show the adequacy of this connection to resist the applied loads. Onlypanel
stiffeners composed of extruded aluminum or 300 Series stainless steel shapes shall be adequate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MCM FABRICATOR / INSTALLER INSTRUCTIONS

A. Compliance: Comply with Manufacturer's product data, including product technical bulletins and product packaging instructions.

3.2 EXAMINATION

A. Site Verification of Conditions: Verify that conditions of substrates previously installed under other sections are acceptable for the MCM system installation. Documentation should be provided indicating any conditions detrimental to the performance of the MCMSystem.

3.3 PREPARATION

A. Miscellaneous Framing: Install miscellaneous MCM system support members and anchorage according to MCM System written instructions and drawings supplied by the MCM System Fabricator.

B. If required per project conditions, field measurements of the site condition are to be taken prior to beginning fabrication work and notification of any material modifications and resulting schedule adjustment shall be formally documented.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. General:

1. Install the MCM system plumb, level and true in compliance with MCM System fabricator's recommendations.
2. Anchor the MCM system securely in place in accordance with Fabricator's approved shop drawings.
3. Comply with the MCM System Fabricator's instructions for installation of concealed fasteners and with provisions of Section 079000 for installation of jointsealants.
4. Installation Tolerances: Maximum deviation from horizontal and vertical alignment of installed panels: 0.25 inch in 20 feet (6.4mm in 6.1m), noncumulative.
5. Do not cut, trim, weld, or braze component parts during erection in a manner which would damage the finish, decrease strength, or result in visual imperfection or a failure in performance. Return component parts which require alteration to shop for modification, if possible, or for replacement with new parts.
6. Separate contact of dissimilar metals with bituminous paint, approved plastic shims, or other approved methods as defined within the Aluminum Design Manual (ASD). Use gasketed or approved coated fasteners where needed to eliminate the possibility of corrosive or electrolytic action between metals.

B. Related Products Installation Requirements: Refer to other sections in Related Sections paragraph herein for installation of related products.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

A. Field Quality Control: When required by contract, mockup shall be constructed and tested at the expense of the Architect/Owner/General Contractor, conduct water-spray test on the mock-up of the MCM System, testing for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2.

B. Testing Agency: If required, the Owner shall engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Adjusting:

1. Remove and replace panels damaged beyond repair as a direct result of the panel installation.
3. Repair components of the MCM system with minor damage such that repairs are not discernible at a distance of 10 feet (3m) from the surface at a 90° angle per AAMA 2605.
4. Remove and replace components of the MCM system damaged beyondrepair.
5. Remove protective film immediately after installation of MCM and immediately prior to completion of the MCM system work. Masking intentionally left in place after panel installation on an elevation at the direction of the General

Contractor, shall become the responsibility of the General Contractor.

6. Any additional protection, after installation, shall be the responsibility of the General Contractor.
7. Make sure weep holes and drainage channels are unobstructed and free of dirt and sealants.
8. Remove from project site damaged MCM panels, protective film and other debris attributable to work of this section.

B. Cleaning:

1. Final cleaning shall be the responsibility of the General Contractor.

END OF SECTION 07 42 13.23

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 54 23 - THERMOPLASTIC-POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Adhered thermoplastic polyolefin (TPO) roofing system.
2. Roof insulation.
3. Accessories

B. Section includes installation of sound-absorbing insulation strips in ribs of roof deck. Sound-absorbing insulation strips are furnished under Section 053100 "Steel Decking."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems" apply to Work of this Section.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preliminary Roofing Conference: Before starting roof deck construction, conduct conference at Project site.

1. Meet with Construction Manager if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, air barrier Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Review deck substrate requirements for conditions and finishes, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.

7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

B. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site

1. Meet with Construction Manager, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, air barrier Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. For insulation and roof system component fasteners, include copy of FM Approvals' RoofNav listing.

B. Shop Drawings: Include roof plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including the following:

1. Layout and thickness of insulation.
2. Base flashings and membrane termination details.
3. Flashing details at penetrations.
4. Tapered insulation layout, thickness, and slopes.
5. Roof plan showing orientation of steel roof deck and orientation of roof membrane, fastening spacings, and patterns for mechanically fastened roofing system.
6. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
7. Tie-in with adjoining air barrier.

C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Roof membrane and flashings, of color required.
2. Walkway pads or rolls, of color required.

D. Wind Uplift Resistance Submittal: For roofing system, indicating compliance with wind uplift performance requirements.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.

B. Manufacturer Certificates:

1. Performance Requirement Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.

a. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.

2. Special Warranty Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that all materials supplied under this Section are acceptable for special warranty.

C. Product Test Reports: For roof membrane and insulation, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with specified requirements.

D. Evaluation Reports: For components of roofing system, from ICC-ES.

E. Field quality-control reports.

F. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.

B. Certified statement from existing roof membrane manufacturer stating that existing roof warranty has not been affected by Work performed under this Section.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed for roofing system identical to that used for this Project.

B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.

B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.

1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.

C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Special warranty includes roof membrane, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, vapor retarder, substrate board, roof pavers, and other components of roofing system.
2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section,

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Installed roofing system and flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roof system and flashings shall remain watertight.

1. Accelerated Weathering: Roof membrane shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G152, ASTM G154, or ASTM G155.
2. Impact Resistance: Roof membrane shall resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D3746, ASTM D4272, or the "Resistance to Foot Traffic Test" in FM Approvals 4470.

B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials shall be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roof membrane manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

C. Energy Performance: Roofing system shall have an initial solar reflectance of not less than 0.70 and an emissivity of not less than 0.75when tested according to CRRC-1.

D. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E108 or UL 790, Class A; for application and roof slopes indicated; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

2.2 THERMOPLASTIC POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

A. TPO Sheet: ASTM D6878/D6878M, internally fabric- or scrim-reinforced, TPO sheet.

1. Source Limitations: Obtain components for roofing system from roof membrane manufacturer or manufacturers approved by roof membrane manufacturer.
2. Thickness: 60 mils (1.5 mm), nominal.
3. Exposed Face Color: White.

2.3 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS

A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with other roofing components.

1. Adhesive and Sealants: Comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's standard unreinforced TPO sheet flashing, of same color as TPO sheet.

C. Prefabricated Pipe Flashings: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.

D. Roof Vents: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.

1. Size: Not less than 4-inch (100-mm) diameter.

E. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard

F. Vented Base Sheet: ASTM D4897/D4897M, Type II; nonperforated, asphalt-impregnated fiberglass reinforced, with mineral granular patterned surfacing on bottom surface.

G. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm) thick; with anchors.

1. Fasteners: 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) stainless steel fasteners with neoprene washers.

H. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roofing components to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

I. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

2.4 ROOF INSULATION

A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by TPO roof membrane manufacturer.

B. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C578, of thickness shown on drawings

2.5 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with other roofing system components.

B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners with metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

C. Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer as follows:

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Section 053100 "Steel Decking."

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing system installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.

B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.

C. Perform fastener-pullout tests according to roof system manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Submit test result within 24 hours after performing tests.

a. Include manufacturer's requirements for any revision to previously submitted fastener patterns required to achieve specified wind uplift requirements.

D. Install sound-absorbing insulation strips according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF ROOFING, GENERAL

A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at end of workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning Work on adjoining roofing.

C. Install roof membrane and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing roofing system.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF ADHERED ROOFING

A. Adhere roof membrane over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Unroll roof membrane and allow to relax before installing.

C. Accurately align roof membrane and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.

D. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of roof membrane at rate required by manufacturer, and allow to partially dry before installing roof membrane. Do not apply to splice area of roof membrane.

E. Fabric-Backed Roof Membrane Adhesive: Apply to substrate at rate required by manufacturer, and install fabric-backed roof membrane.

F. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten roof membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.

G. Apply roof membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.

H. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap roof membrane, and hot-air weld side and end laps of roof membrane and sheet flashings, to ensure a watertight seam installation.

1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of roof membrane and sheet flashings.
2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily, and repair seam sample areas.
3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roof membrane that do not comply with requirements.

I. Spread sealant bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roof membrane in place with clamping ring.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and to inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, roof membrane application, sheet flashings, protection, and drainage components, and to furnish reports to Architect.

3.6 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing system, inspect roofing system for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.

B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.

C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

3.7 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

A. WHEREAS _____of _____, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("work") on the following project:

1. Owner: <Insert name of Owner>.
2. Address: <Insert address>.
3. Building Name/Type: <Insert information>.
4. Address: <Insert address>.
5. Area of Work: <Insert information>.
6. Acceptance Date: _____.
7. Warranty Period: <Insert time>.
8. Expiration Date: _____.

B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant said work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,

C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period Roofing Installer will, at Roofing Installer's own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of said work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain said work in a watertight condition.

D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:

a. faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
b. vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
c. activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.

2. When work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of work.
4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said alterations, but only to the extent said alterations affect work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform said alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting said work, shall have notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.
5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray-cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said change, but only to the extent said change affects work covered by this Warranty.
6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on said work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of original work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this _____ day of _____, _____.

1. Authorized Signature: _____.
2. Name: _____.
3. Title: _____.

END OF SECTION 07 54 23

SECTION 07 62 00 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Manufactured reglets with counterflashing.
2. Formed roof-drainage sheet metal fabrications.
3. Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
4. Formed wall sheet metal fabrications.
5. Formed equipment support flashing.
6. Formed overhead-piping safety pans.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.

B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
2. Review special roof details, roof drainage, roof-penetration flashing, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect sheet metal flashing and trim.
3. Review requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
4. Review sheet metal flashing observation and repair procedures after flashing installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each of the following

1. Underlayment materials.
2. Elastomeric sealant.
3. Butyl sealant.
4. Epoxy seam sealer.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

C. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Detail fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled Work.
3. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
4. Include details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
5. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
6. Include details of termination points and assemblies.
7. Include details of expansion joints and expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction from fixed points.
8. Include details of roof-penetration flashing.
9. Include details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, flashings, and counterflashings.
10. Include details of special conditions.
11. Include details of connections to adjoining work.
12. Detail formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches (1:10).

D. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 12 inches (300 mm) long by actual width.

E. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sheet metal and accessory indicated with factory-applied finishes.

F. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish.

1. Sheet Metal Flashing: 12 inches (300 mm) long by actual width of unit, including finished seam and in required profile. Include fasteners, cleats, clips, closures, and other attachments.
2. Trim, Metal Closures, Expansion Joints, Joint Intersections, and Miscellaneous Fabrications: 12 inches (300 mm) long and in required profile. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
3. Unit-Type Accessories and Miscellaneous Materials: Full-size Sample.
4. Anodized Aluminum Samples: Samples to show full range to be expected for each color required.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of coping and roof edge flashing that is ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 tested.

C. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

D. Evaluation Reports: For copings and roof edge flashing, from an agency acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.

E. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.

B. Special warranty.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

1. For copings and roof edge flashings that are ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 tested, shop shall be listed as able to fabricate required details as tested and approved.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

1. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
2. Protect stored sheet metal flashing and trim from contact with water.

B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

a. Color fading more than 5 Delta units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.

b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies, including cleats, anchors, and fasteners, shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.

B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

C. Sheet Metal Standard for Copper: Comply with CDA's "Copper in Architecture Handbook." Conform to dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

D. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings, roof edge flashings tested in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressure:

1. Design Pressure: 20 psf.

E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C),.

2.2 SHEET METALS

A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.

B. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Provide zinc-coated galvanized steel sheet in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 (Z275) pre-painted by coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M to match the color/finish of the exterior metal wall panel – black anodized.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners[, solder], protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal[or manufactured item] unless otherwise indicated.

B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal.

1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.

    a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
    b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
    c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.

2. Fasteners for Stainless Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.

C. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape ½ inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.

D. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.

E. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.

1. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
2. Stucco Type: Provide with upturned fastening flange and extension leg of length to match thickness of applied finish materials.
3. Concrete Type: Provide temporary closure tape to keep reglet free of concrete materials, special fasteners for attaching reglet to concrete forms, and guides to ensure alignment of reglet section ends.
4. Masonry Type: Provide with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.

2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required.

1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
3. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered and obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
4. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
6. Fabricate from similar materials and colors to black metal panels and soffits. To be black anodized to match black metal panels and soffits.

B. Fabrication Tolerances:

1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of ¼ inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to tolerances specified.

C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.

1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.

D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal in accordance with cited sheet metal standard to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant.

E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.

F. Seams:

1. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
2. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use.

G. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

2.5 ROOF-DRAINAGE SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Downspouts: Fabricate rectangular downspouts to dimensions indicated on Drawings, complete with mitered elbows. Furnish with metal hangers from same material as downspouts and anchors.

1. Fabricate from similar materials and colors as sheet metal flashing. To be black anodized to match black metal panels and soffits.

B. Parapet Scuppers: Fabricate scuppers to dimensions required, with closure flange trim to exterior, 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide wall flanges to interior, and base extending 4 inches (100 mm) beyond cant or tapered strip into field of roof. Fabricate from same material as flashing material. To be black anodized to match black metal panels and soffits.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF UNDERLAYMENT

A. Felt Underlayment: Install felt underlayment, wrinkle free, using adhesive to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Install in shingle fashion to shed water.
2. Lap joints not less than 2 inches (50 mm).

B. Synthetic Underlayment: Install synthetic underlayment, wrinkle free, in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions, and using adhesive where possible to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal.

1. Lap horizontal joints not less than 4 inches (100 mm).
2. Lap end joints not less than 12 inches (300 mm).

C. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet Underlayment:

1. Install self-adhering, high-temperature sheet underlayment; wrinkle free.
2. Prime substrate if recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
3. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer for installing underlayment at low temperatures.
4. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches (150 mm) staggered 24 inches (600 mm) between courses.
5. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches (90 mm). Roll laps and edges with roller.
6. Roll laps and edges with roller.

7. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations of cited sheet metal standard that apply to installation characteristics required unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

1. Install fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of sealant.
3. Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
4. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.
5. Install continuous cleats with fasteners spaced not more than 12 inches (300 mm) o.c.
6. Space individual cleats not more than 12 inches (300 mm) apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
7. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil-canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
8. Do not field cut sheet metal flashing and trim by torch.
9. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

B. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.

1. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints within 24 inches (600 mm) of corner or intersection.
2. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
3. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.

C. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate wood blocking or sheathing not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.

D. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.

E. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.

1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated.

a. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch (25 mm) into sealant.
b. Form joints to completely conceal sealant.
c. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F (4 and 21 deg C), set joint members for 50 percent movement each way.
d. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.

1) Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F (4 deg C).

2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 “Joint Sealants.”

F. Rivets: Rivet joints in zinc where necessary for strength.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF ROOF-DRAINAGE SYSTEM

A. Install sheet metal roof-drainage items to produce complete roof-drainage system in accordance with cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-drainage system.

B. Downspouts:

1. Join sections with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) telescoping joints.
2. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls.
3. Locate hangers at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches (1500 mm) o.c.
4. Provide elbows at base of downspout to direct water away from building.
5. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system.

C. Parapet Scuppers:

1. Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.
2. Anchor scupper closure trim flange to exterior wall and seal with elastomeric sealant to scupper.
3. Loosely lock front edge of scupper with conductor head.
4. Seal with elastomeric sealant exterior wall scupper flanges into back of conductor head.

D. Expansion-Joint Covers: Install expansion-joint covers at locations and of configuration indicated on Drawings. Lap joints minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) in direction of water flow.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF ROOF FLASHINGS

A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements and cited sheet metal standard.

1. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes.
2. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.

B. Roof Edge Flashing:

1. Install roof edge flashings in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.
2. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at staggered 3-inch (75-mm) centers.

3. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.

C. Copings:

1. Install roof edge flashings in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.

2. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for specified FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.

3. Fabricate from similar materials and colors to black anodized metal panels and soffits.

D. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) over base flashing. Install stainless steel draw band and tighten.

E. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing.

1. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing.
2. Extend counterflashing 4 inches (100 mm) over base flashing.
3. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of 4 inches (100 mm).
4. Secure in waterproof manner.

F. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF WALL FLASHINGS

A. Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture in accordance with cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS FLASHING

A. Equipment Support Flashing:

1. Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment.
2. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.

B. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans:

1. Suspend pans from structure above, independent of other overhead items such as equipment, piping, and conduit, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
2. Pipe and install drain line to plumbing waste or drainage system.

3.8 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of ¼ inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.9 CLEANING

A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.

B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.

C. Clean off excess sealants.

3.10 PROTECTION

A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.

B. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended in writing by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer.

C. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.

D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures, as determined by Architect.

END OF SECTION 07 62 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 71 00 - ROOF SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Copings.
2. Roof-edge drainage systems.
3. Reglets and counterflashings.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for downspout guards and downspout boots.
2. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
3. Section 077129 "Manufactured Roof Expansion Joints" for manufactured roof expansion-joint cover assemblies.
4. Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for set-on-type curbs, equipment supports, and other manufactured roof accessory units.
5. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for field-applied sealants between roof specialties and adjacent materials.

C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, roofing-system testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing-system manufacturer's representative, Installer, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roof specialties, including installers of roofing materials and accessories.
2. Examine substrate conditions for compliance with requirements, including flatness and attachment to structural members.
3. Review special roof details, roof drainage, and condition of other construction that will affect roof specialties.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For roof specialties.
1. Include plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.
2. Include details for expansion and contraction; locations of expansion joints, including direction of expansion and contraction.

3. Indicate profile and pattern of seams and layout of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments.
4. Detail termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.
5. Include details of special conditions.

C. Samples: For each type of roof specialty and for each color and texture specified.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of roof specialty indicated with factory-applied color finishes.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For roofing specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer offering products meeting requirements that are SPRI ES-1 tested to specified design pressure.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain roof specialties approved by manufacturer providing roofing-system warranty specified in Section “075423 - Thermoplastic-Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing.”

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store roof specialties in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store roof specialties away from uncured concrete and masonry.

B. Protect strippable protective covering on roof specialties from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for the period of roof-specialty installation.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify profiles and tolerances of roof-specialty substrates by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

B. Coordination: Coordinate roof specialties with flashing, trim, and construction of parapets, roof deck, roof and wall panels, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Roofing-System Warranty: Roof specialties are included in warranty provisions in Section “075423 FL - Thermoplastic-Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing”.

B. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace roof specialties that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
   a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
   b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
   c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Roof specialties shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

B. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings tested according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressures:
   1. Design Pressure: As indicated on Drawings.

C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of thermal movements. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
   1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 COPINGS

A. Metal Copings: Manufactured coping system consisting of metal coping cap in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet, concealed anchorage; with corner units, end cap units, and concealed splice plates with finish matching coping caps.
   1. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet Coping Caps: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel, nominal thickness as required to meet performance requirements. Or same material as wall metal panel system anodized black prefinished.
      a. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
      b. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
      c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range. To match metal wall panels anodized black.
   2. Corners: Factory mitered and continuously welded.
   3. Special Fabrications: Radiussed sections.
   4. Coping-Cap Attachment Method: Snap-on or face leg hooked to continuous cleat with back leg fastener exposed, fabricated from coping-cap material.
      a. Snap-on Coping Anchor Plates: Concealed, galvanized-steel sheet, 12 inches wide, with integral cleats.
      b. Face-Leg Cleats: Concealed, continuous galvanized-steel sheet.

2.3 ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

A. Parapet Scuppers: Manufactured with closure flange trim to exterior, 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide wall flanges to interior, and base extending 4 inches (100 mm) beyond cant or tapered strip into field of roof.

   1. Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) thickness.

B. Zinc-Coated Steel Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.

   1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range. To match wall metal panel system black anodized.

2.4 REGLETS AND COUNTERFLASHINGS

A. Reglets: Manufactured units formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, from the following exposed metal:
   1. Stainless Steel: 0.0250 inch thick.
   2. Corners: Factory mitered and continuously welded or mechanically clinched and sealed watertight.
   3. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide reglets with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.

B. Counterflashings: Manufactured units of heights to overlap top edges of base flashings by 4 inches and in lengths not exceeding 12 feet designed to snap into reglets and compress against base flashings with joints lapped, from the following exposed metal:
   1. Stainless Steel: 0.0250 inch thick.

C. Accessories:
   1. Flexible-Flashing Retainer: Provide resilient plastic or rubber accessory to secure flexible flashing in reglet where clearance does not permit use of standard metal counterflashing or where reglet is provided separate from metal counterflashing.
   2. Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing lower edge.

D. Stainless Steel Finish: ASTM A480/A480M No. 2B (bright, cold rolled, unpolished).

2.5 MATERIALS

A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation.

B. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.

2.6 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
   1. Thermal Stability: ASTM D1970/D1970M; stable after testing at 240 deg F.
   2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D1970/D1970M; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F.

B. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized building paper, 3-lb/100 sq. ft. minimum.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to meet performance requirements. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Exposed Penetrating Fasteners: Gasketed screws with hex washer heads matching color of sheet metal.
   2. Fasteners for Stainless Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.

3. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.

B. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric polyurethane or silicone polymer sealant of type, grade, class, and use classifications required by roofing-specialty manufacturer for each application.

C. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type joints with limited movement.

D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

E. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.8 FINISHES

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

D. Coil-Coated Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finishes:
1. High-Performance Organic Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with ASTM A755/A755M and coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
   a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
   b. Concealed Surface Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine walls, roof edges, and parapets for suitable conditions for roof specialties.

C. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage where applicable, and securely anchored.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF UNDERLAYMENT

A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
   1. Apply continuously under copings and reglets and counterflashings.
   2. Coordinate application of self-adhering sheet underlayment under roof specialties with requirements for continuity with adjacent air barrier materials.

B. Slip Sheet: Install with tape or adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under roof specialties. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install roof specialties according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof specialties securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, underlayments, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete roof-specialty systems.
   1. Install roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation; with limited oil-canning and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
   2. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and sealant.
   3. Install roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in weathertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.
   4. Torch cutting of roof specialties is not permitted.
   5. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
   1. Coat concealed side of stainless steel roof specialties with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
   2. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof specialties for waterproof performance.

C. Expansion Provisions: Allow for thermal expansion of exposed roof specialties.
   1. Space movement joints at a maximum of 12 feet with no joints within 18 inches of corners or intersections unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
   2. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.

D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.

E. Seal concealed joints with butyl sealant as required by roofing-specialty manufacturer.

F. Seal joints as required for weathertight construction. Place sealant to be completely concealed in joint. Do not install sealants at temperatures below 40 deg F.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF COPINGS

A. Install cleats, anchor plates, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.

B. Anchor copings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.
   1. Interlock face and back leg drip edges of snap-on coping cap into cleated anchor plates anchored to substrate at 30-inch centers or manufacturer's required spacing that meets performance requirements.
   2. Interlock face-leg drip edge into continuous cleat anchored to substrate at 24-inch centers or manufacturer's required spacing that meets performance requirements. Anchor back leg of coping with screw fasteners and elastomeric washers at 24-inch centers or manufacturer's required spacing that meets performance requirements.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE-SYSTEM

A. Install components to produce a complete roof-edge drainage system according to manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-edge drainage system.

B. Parapet Scuppers: Install scuppers through parapet where indicated. Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.

   1. Anchor scupper closure trim flange to exterior wall and seal or solder to scupper.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF REGLETS AND COUNTERFLASHINGS

A. Coordinate installation of reglets and counterflashings with installation of base flashings.

B. Surface-Mounted Reglets: Install reglets to receive flashings where flashing without embedded reglets is indicated on Drawings. Install at height so that inserted counterflashings overlap 4 inches over top edge of base flashings.

C. Counterflashings: Insert counterflashings into reglets or other indicated receivers; ensure that counterflashings overlap 4 inches over top edge of base flashings. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of 4 inches and bed with butyl sealant. Fit counterflashings tightly to base flashings.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.

B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as roof specialties are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces, including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain roof specialties in a clean condition during construction.

C. Replace roof specialties that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 71 00

SECTION 07 72 00 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Roof curbs.
2. Roof walkways.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories.

1. Include plans, elevations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Indicate dimensions, loadings, and special conditions. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, prepared on Samples of size to adequately show color.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For walkways indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail mounting, securing, and flashing of roof-mounted items to roof structure. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.
2. Wind-Restraint Details: Detail fabrication and attachment of wind restraints. Show anchorage details and indicate quantity, diameter, and depth of penetration of anchors.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:

1. Size and location of roof accessories specified in this Section.
2. Method of attaching roof accessories to roof or building structure.
3. Other roof-mounted items including mechanical and electrical equipment, ductwork, piping, and conduit.
4. Required clearances.

B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roof accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace roof accessories that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

a. Color fading more than 5 Delta units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

B. Wind-Restraint Performance: 20 psf.

2.2 ROOF CURBS

A. Roof Curbs: Internally reinforced roof-curb units capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction indicated on Drawings, bearing continuously on roof structure, and capable of meeting performance requirements; with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, straight sides, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.

B. Size: Coordinate dimensions with roughing-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

C. Supported Load Capacity: Coordinate load capacity with information on Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

D. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized)steel sheet, 0.064 inch (1.63 mm)] .

1. Finish: Mill phosphatized.
2. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.

E. Construction:

1. Curb Profile: Manufacturer's standard compatible with roofing system.
2. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
3. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches (305 mm) above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.
4. Top Surface: Level top of curb, with roof slope accommodated by sloping deck-mounting flange.
5. Sloping Roofs: Where roof slope exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb with perimeter curb height tapered to accommodate roof slope so that top surface of perimeter curb is level. Equip unit with water diverter or cricket on side that obstructs water flow.
6. Insulation: Factory insulated with 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) thick glass-fiber board insulation.
7. Liner: Same material as curb, of manufacturer's standard thickness and finish.
8. Metal Counterflashing: Manufacturer's standard, removable, fabricated of same metal and finish as curb.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.

C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Install roof accessories level; plumb; true to line and elevation; and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.

B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.

1. Coat concealed side of roof accessories with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
2. Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of underlayment and cover with manufacturer's recommended slip sheet.
3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof accessories for waterproof performance.

C. Roof Curb Installation: Install each roof curb so top surface is level.

D. Equipment Support Installation: Install equipment supports so top surfaces are level with each other.

E. Pipe Support Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-89. Install supports and attachments as required to properly support piping. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Space supports for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.

F. Roof Walkway Installation:

1. Verify that locations of access and servicing points for roof-mounted equipment are served by locations of roof walkways.
2. Install roof walkway support pads prior to placement of roof walkway support stands onto low-slope roofing.

G. Seal joints with butyl sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.

3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A780/A780M.

B. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting.

C. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Clean off excess sealants.

E. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 72 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 81 23 - INTUMESCENT FIREPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coatings.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
   1. Review products, design ratings, restrained and unrestrained conditions, thicknesses, and other performance requirements.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of fireproofing.

C. Evaluation Reports: For fireproofing, from ICC-ES.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual certified, licensed, or otherwise qualified by fireproofing manufacturer as experienced and with sufficient trained staff to install manufacturer's products according to specified requirements.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply fireproofing when ambient or substrate temperature is 50 deg F or lower unless temporary protection and heat are provided to maintain temperature at or above this level for 24 hours before, during, and for 24 hours after product application.

B. Ventilation: Ventilate building spaces during and after application of fireproofing, providing complete air exchanges according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use natural means or, if they are inadequate, forced-air circulation until fireproofing dries thoroughly.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Assemblies: Provide fireproofing, including auxiliary materials, according to requirements of each fire-resistance design and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain fireproofing for each fire-resistance design from single source.

C. Fire-Resistance Design: Indicated on Drawings, tested according to ASTM E 119 or UL 263; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   1. Steel members are to be considered unrestrained unless specifically noted otherwise.

D. Asbestos: Provide products containing no detectable asbestos.

2.2 MASTIC AND INTUMESCENT FIRE-RESISTIVE COATINGS

A. Mastic and Intumescent Fire-Resistive Coating: Manufacturer's standard, factory-mixed formulation or factory-mixed, multicomponent system consisting of intumescent base coat and topcoat, and complying with indicated fire-resistance design.
   1. Application: Designated for "interior general purpose" use by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   2. Thickness: As required for fire-resistance design indicated, measured according to requirements of fire-resistance design.
   3. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
      a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
      b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
   4. Hardness: Not less than 80, Type D durometer, according to ASTM D 2240.
   5. Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard finishes.
      a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that are compatible with fireproofing and substrates and are approved by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use in fire-resistance designs indicated.

B. Substrate Primers: Primers approved by fireproofing manufacturer and complying with required fire-resistance design by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Reinforcing Fabric: Glass- or carbon-fiber fabric of type, weight, and form required to comply with fire-resistance designs indicated; approved and provided by fireproofing manufacturer.

D. Reinforcing Mesh: Metallic mesh reinforcement of type, weight, and form required to comply with fire-resistance design indicated; approved and provided by fireproofing manufacturer. Include pins and attachment.

E. Topcoat: Suitable for application over applied fireproofing; of type recommended in writing by fireproofing manufacturer for each fire-resistance design.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrates and other conditions affecting performance of the Work and according to each fire-resistance design.
   1. Verify that substrates are free of dirt, oil, grease, release agents, rolling compounds, mill scale, loose scale, incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, or other foreign substances capable of impairing bond of fireproofing with substrates under conditions of normal use or fire exposure.
   2. Verify that objects penetrating fireproofing, including clips, hangers, support sleeves, and similar items, are securely attached to substrates.
   3. Verify that substrates receiving fireproofing are not obstructed by ducts, piping, equipment, or other suspended construction that will interfere with fireproofing application.

B. Conduct tests according to fireproofing manufacturer's written instructions to verify that substrates are free of substances capable of interfering with bond.

C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Cover other work subject to damage from fallout or overspray of fireproofing materials during application.

B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of fireproofing.

C. Prime substrates where included in fire-resistance design and where recommended in writing by fireproofing manufacturer unless compatible shop primer has been applied and is in satisfactory condition to receive fireproofing.

D. For applications visible on completion of Project, repair substrates to remove surface imperfections that could affect uniformity of texture and thickness in finished surface of

fireproofing. Remove minor projections and fill voids that would telegraph through fire-resistive products after application.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Construct fireproofing assemblies that are identical to fire-resistance design indicated and products as specified, tested, and substantiated by test reports; for thickness, primers, topcoats, finishing, and other materials and procedures affecting fireproofing work.

B. Comply with fireproofing manufacturer's written instructions for mixing materials, application procedures, and types of equipment used to mix, convey, and apply fireproofing; as applicable to particular conditions of installation and as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.

C. Coordinate application of fireproofing with other construction to minimize need to cut or remove fireproofing.
   1. Do not begin applying fireproofing until clips, hangers, supports, sleeves, and other items penetrating fireproofing are in place.
   2. Defer installing ducts, piping, and other items that would interfere with applying fireproofing until application of fireproofing is completed.

D. Install auxiliary materials as required, as detailed, and according to fire-resistance design and fireproofing manufacturer's written instructions for conditions of exposure and intended use. For auxiliary materials, use attachment and anchorage devices of type recommended in writing by fireproofing manufacturer.

E. Spray apply fireproofing to maximum extent possible. After the spraying operation in each area, complete the coverage by trowel application or other placement method recommended in writing by fireproofing manufacturer.

F. Extend fireproofing in full thickness over entire area of each substrate to be protected.

G. Install body of fireproofing in a single course unless otherwise recommended in writing by fireproofing manufacturer.

H. Provide a uniform finish complying with description indicated for each type of fireproofing material and matching finish approved for required mockups.

I. Cure fireproofing according to fireproofing manufacturer's written instructions.

J. Do not install enclosing or concealing construction until after fireproofing has been applied, inspected, and tested and corrections have been made to deficient applications.

K. Finishes: Where indicated, apply fireproofing to produce the following finishes:
   1. Manufacturer's Standard Finishes: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions for each finish selected.
   2. Spray-Textured Finish: Finish left as spray applied with no further treatment.
   3. Rolled, Spray-Textured Finish: Even finish produced by rolling spray-applied finish with a damp paint roller to remove drippings and excessive roughness.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
   1. Test and inspect as required by the IBC, Subsection 1705.14, "Mastic and Intumescent Fire-Resistant Coatings" and as indicated on Schedule of Special Inspections.

B. Perform the tests and inspections of completed Work in successive stages. Do not proceed with application of fireproofing for the next area until test results for previously completed applications of fireproofing show compliance with requirements. Tested values must equal or exceed values as specified and as indicated and required for approved fire-resistance design.

C. Fireproofing will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
   1. Remove and replace fireproofing that does not pass tests and inspections, and retest.
   2. Apply additional fireproofing, per manufacturer's written instructions, where test results indicate insufficient thickness, and retest.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 CLEANING, PROTECTING, AND REPAIRING

A. Cleaning: Immediately after completing spraying operations in each containable area of Project, remove material overspray and fallout from surfaces of other construction and clean exposed surfaces to remove evidence of soiling.

B. Protect fireproofing, according to advice of manufacturer and Installer, from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes, so fireproofing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

C. As installation of other construction proceeds, inspect fireproofing and repair damaged areas and fireproofing removed due to work of other trades.

D. Repair fireproofing damaged by other work before concealing it with other construction.

E. Repair fireproofing by reapplying it using same method as original installation or using manufacturer's recommended trowel-applied product.

END OF SECTION 07 81 23

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 84 13 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Penetrations in existing fire-resistance-rated walls/roofs or new roof assemblies.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 078443 "Joint Firestopping" for joints in or between fire-resistance-rated construction, at exterior wall/floor/roof intersections, and in smoke barriers.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location, illustration of firestopping system, and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
   1. Engineering Judgments: Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping system, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly. Obtain approval of authorities having jurisdiction prior to submittal.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Product Test Reports: For each penetration firestopping system, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating that penetration firestopping systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written instructions.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with its "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping system when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetration firestopping system manufacturers or when substrates are wet because of rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

B. Install and cure penetration firestopping materials per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetration firestopping systems can be installed according to specified firestopping system design.

B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate penetration firestopping systems.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
   1. Perform penetration firestopping system tests by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   2. Test per testing standards referenced in "Penetration Firestopping Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
      a. Penetration firestopping systems shall bear classification marking of a qualified testing agency.
         1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
         2) Intertek Group in its "Directory of Listed Building Products."
         3) FM Global in its "Building Materials Approval Guide."

2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS

A. Penetration Firestopping Systems: Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.

B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
   1. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.

C. Exposed Penetration Firestopping Systems: Flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.

D. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping system manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for conditions indicated.
1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials.
2. Substrate primers.
3. Collars.
4. Steel sleeves.

2.3 FILL MATERIALS

A. Cast-in-Place Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled devices for use in cast-in-place concrete floors and consisting of an outer sleeve lined with an intumescent strip, a flange attached to one end of the sleeve for fastening to concrete formwork, and a neoprene gasket.

B. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that do not re-emulsify after cure during exposure to moisture.

C. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.

D. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced intumescent elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized-steel sheet.

E. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening, water-resistant, intumescent putties containing no solvents or inorganic fibers.

F. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric sheets with aluminum foil on one side.

G. Mortars: Prepackaged dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogeneous mortar.

H. Pillows/Bags: Reusable heat-expanding pillows/bags consisting of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents, and fire-retardant additives. Where exposed, cover openings with steel-reinforcing wire mesh to protect pillows/bags from being easily removed.

I. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

J. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants.

2.4 MIXING

A. Penetration Firestopping Materials: For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetration firestopping system manufacturer's written instructions for accurate

proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Cleaning: Before installing penetration firestopping systems, clean out openings immediately to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:
   1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of penetration firestopping materials.
   2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetration firestopping materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
   3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

B. Prime substrates where recommended in writing by manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install penetration firestopping systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications.

B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings.
   1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not forming permanent components of firestopping.

C. Install fill materials by proven techniques to produce the following results:
   1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories and penetrating items to achieve required fire-resistance ratings.
   2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
   3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Wall/Roof Identification: Permanently label walls containing penetration firestopping systems with the words "FIRE AND/OR SMOKE BARRIER - PROTECT ALL OPENINGS," using lettering not less than 3 inches high and with minimum 0.375-inch strokes.
   1. Locate in accessible concealed floor, floor-ceiling, or attic space at 15 feet from end of wall and at intervals not exceeding 30 feet.

B. Penetration Identification: Identify each penetration firestopping system with legible metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of penetration firestopping system edge so labels are visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestopping systems. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
   1. The words "Warning - Penetration Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
   2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
   3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
   4. Date of installation.
   5. Manufacturer's name.
   6. Installer's name.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections according to ASTM E 2174.

B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping system is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping system to comply with requirements.

C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by penetration firestopping system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that penetration firestopping systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, immediately cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated penetration firestopping material and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

3.7 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEM SCHEDULE

A. Provide products meeting required assembles as tested by one of the following testing agencies acceptable to the authorities having jurisdiction.

1. UL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to system numbers in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHEZ.
2. Where Intertek Group-listed systems are indicated, they refer to design numbers in Intertek Group's "Directory of Listed Building Products" under "Firestop Systems."
3. Where FM Global-approved systems are indicated, they refer to design numbers listed in FM Global's "Building Materials Approval Guide" under "Wall and Floor Penetration Fire Stops."

B. Penetration Firestopping of the following: Systems with No Penetrating Items; Systems for Metallic Pipes, Conduit, or Tubing; Systems for Nonmetallic Pipe, Conduit, or Tubing; Systems for Electrical Cables; Systems for Cable Trays with Electric Cables; Systems for Insulated Pipes; Systems for Miscellaneous Electrical Penetrants; Systems for Miscellaneous Mechanical Penetrants; and Systems for Groupings of Penetrants.
   1. F-Rating: 1 hour or 2 hours as required.
   2. T-Rating: 1 hour or 2 hours as required.
   3. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.

END OF SECTION 07 84 13

SECTION 07 84 43 - JOINT FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Joints in or between fire-resistance-rated constructions.
   2. Joints at exterior wall/floor/roof intersections.
   3. Non-rated fire safing with batt mineral wool.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls/roofs, horizontal assemblies and for wall identification.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Product Test Reports: For each joint firestopping system, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating that joint firestopping systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written instructions.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with UL's "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install joint firestopping systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by joint firestopping system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

B. Install and cure joint firestopping systems per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilation or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate construction of joints to ensure that joint firestopping systems can be installed according to specified firestopping system design.

B. Coordinate sizing of joints to accommodate joint firestopping systems.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
1. Perform joint firestopping system tests by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Test per testing standards referenced in "Joint Firestopping Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
a. Joint firestopping systems shall bear classification marking of a qualified testing agency.
1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
2) Intertek Group in its "Directory of Listed Building Products."

2.2 FIRE SAFING

A. Fire Safing Batts: Mineral-Wool Blanket, Unfaced: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

2.3 JOINT FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS

A. Joint Firestopping Systems: Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assemblies in or between which joint firestopping systems are installed. Joint firestopping systems shall accommodate building movements without impairing their ability to resist the passage of fire and hot gases.

B. Joints in or between Fire-Resistance-Rated Construction: Provide joint firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 1966 or UL 2079.
1. Fire-Resistance Rating: Equal to or exceeding the fire-resistance rating of the wall, floor, or roof in or between which it is installed.

C. Accessories: Provide components of fire-resistive joint systems, including primers and forming materials, that are needed to install elastomeric fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only components specified by joint firestopping system manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing agency for conditions indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configurations, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Cleaning: Before installing fire-resistive joint systems, clean joints immediately to comply with fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
   1. Remove from surfaces of joint substrates foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of elastomeric fill materials or compromise fire-resistive rating.
   2. Clean joint substrates to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with elastomeric fill materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
   3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

B. Prime substrates where recommended in writing by joint firestopping system manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install fire-resistive joint systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.

B. Install fire safing batts snugly into miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps at locations and conditions noted on the drawings.

C. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support elastomeric fill materials during their application and in position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
   1. After installing elastomeric fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of fire-resistive joint system.

D. Install elastomeric fill materials for fire-resistive joint systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
   1. Elastomeric fill voids and cavities formed by joints and forming materials as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
   2. Apply elastomeric fill materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by joints.
   3. For elastomeric fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Joint Identification: Identify joint firestopping systems with legible metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of joint edge so labels are visible to anyone seeking to remove or joint firestopping system. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
   1. The words "Warning - Joint Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
   2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
   3. Designation of applicable testing agency.
   4. Date of installation.
   5. Manufacturer's name.
   6. Installer's name.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspecting Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections according to ASTM E 2393.

B. Where deficiencies are found or joint firestopping systems are damaged or removed due to testing, repair or replace joint firestopping systems so they comply with requirements.

C. Proceed with enclosing joint firestopping systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean off excess elastomeric fill materials adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by joint firestopping system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which joints occur.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure joint firestopping systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If damage or deterioration occurs despite such protection, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated fire-resistive joint systems immediately and install new materials to produce fire-resistive joint systems complying with specified requirements.

3.7 JOINT FIRESTOPPING SYSTEM SCHEDULE

A. Wall-to-Wall, Joint Firestopping Systems:
   1. Assembly Rating: 1 hour or 2 hours as required.
   2. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.

B. Head-of-Wall, Fire-Resistive Joint Firestopping Systems:
   1. Assembly Rating: 1 hour or 2 hours as required.
   2. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.

C. Bottom-of-Wall, Joint Firestopping Systems:
   1. Assembly Rating: 1 hour or 2 hours as required.
   2. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.

D. Perimeter Joint Firestopping Systems:
   1. Integrity Rating: 1 hour or 2 hours as required.
   2. Linear Opening Width: As indicated.
   3. F-Rating: 1 hour or 2 hours as required.

END OF SECTION 07 84 43

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 92 00 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Silicone joint sealants.
2. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
3. Urethane joint sealants.
4. Silyl-terminated polyether joint sealants.
5. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
6. Polysulfide joint sealants.
7. Butyl joint sealants.
8. Latex joint sealants.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on testing specified in "Preconstruction Testing" Article.

B. Submit documentation for sealants to be utilized in horizontal traffic joints, both interior and exterior, at the airport and taxiways demonstrating resistance to jet fuel and hydraulic fuel exposure without loss of adhesion, no impact on waterproofing performance, and no decline in movement capability.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Mockups: Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.

1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:
   1. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
   2. Conduct field tests for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
   3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
   4. Arrange for tests to take place with joint-sealant manufacturer's technical representative present.
      a. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1.1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
         1) For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
   5. Report whether sealant failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.
   6. Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
   1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
   2. When joint substrates are wet.
   3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
   4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
   1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
   1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
   1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.

2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

A. Silicone, S, NS, 100/50, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.

B. Silicone, S, NS, 50, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.

C. Silicone, S, NS, 35, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 35 percent and minus 35 percent movement capability. nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 35, Use NT.

D. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

E. Silicone, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

F. Silicone, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.

G. Silicone, S, NS, 50, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Uses T and NT.

H. Silicone, S, NS, 25, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses T and NT.

I. Silicone, S, P, 100/50, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.

J. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.

K. Silicone, M, P, 100/50, T, NT: Multicomponent, pourable, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.

2.3 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested according to ASTM C 1248.

B. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 100/50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.

C. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.

D. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.

E. Silicone, Nonstaining, M, NS, 50, NT: Nonstaining, multicomponent, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.

2.4 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

A. Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, nontraffic-use, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

B. Urethane, S, NS, 25, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses T and NT.

C. Urethane, S, P, 35, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 35 percent and minus 35 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 35, Uses T and NT.

D. Urethane, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.

E. Urethane, M, NS, 25, NT: Multicomponent, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

F. Urethane, M, NS, 25, T, NT: Multicomponent, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses T and NT.

G. Urethane, M, P, 25, T, NT: Multicomponent, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.

2.5 SILYL-TERMINATED POLYETHER (STPE) JOINT SEALANTS

A. STPE, S, NS, 35, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 35 percent and minus 35 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, silyl-terminated polyether joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 35, Use NT.

B. STPE, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, silyl-terminated polyether joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

C. STPE, S, NS, 35, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 35 percent and minus 35 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, silyl-terminated polyether joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 35, Uses T and NT.

D. STPE, S, NS, 25, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, silyl-terminated polyether joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses T and NT.

E. STPE, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, silyl-terminated polyether joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.

2.6 MILDEW-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS

A. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealants: Formulated for prolonged exposure to humidity with fungicide to prevent mold and mildew growth.

B. Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

C. STPE, Mildew Resistant, S, NS, 50, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, silyl-terminated polyether joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.

2.7 POLYSULFIDE JOINT SEALANTS

A. Polysulfide, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, polysulfide joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

B. Polysulfide, M, NS, 25, T, NT: Multicomponent, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, polysulfide joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

C. Polysulfide, M, P, 25, T, NT: Multicomponent, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, polysulfide joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.

2.8 BUTYL JOINT SEALANTS

A. Butyl-Rubber-Based Joint Sealants: ASTM C 1311.

2.9 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.

2.10 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.

B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) Type O (open-cell material) Type B (bicellular material with a surface skin) or any of the preceding types, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.

C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.11 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.

C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
   1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
   2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
      a. Concrete.
      b. Masonry.
      c. Unsealed surfaces of stone tile.
   3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
   4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
      a. Metal.
      b. Glass.
      c. Sealed surfaces of stone tile.

B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.

B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
   1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
   2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
   3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.

D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.

E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
   1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
   2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
   3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
   1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
   2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
   3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193 unless otherwise indicated.
   4. Provide flush joint profile at horizontal traffic joints according to Figure 8B in ASTM C 1193.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
   1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
      a. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
      b. Perform one test for each 1000 feet of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.
   2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
      a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
   3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
      a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
      b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
      c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.

4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.

B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

B. Protect preformed joint seals from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so seals are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated seals immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
1. Joint Locations:
   a. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
   b. Joints between different materials.
   c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
2. Joint Sealant: Single or multiple component or pourable; traffic grade; nonsag; neutral curing; allowing minimum 25 percent movement.
   a. Silicone
   b. Urethane
   c. STPE
   d. Polysulfide
3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer’s full range of colors.

B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
1. Joint Locations:

a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
b. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
c. Joints between metal panels.
d. Joints between different materials listed above.
e. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows, and louvers.
f. Joints between stone tile, and stone tile and other surfaces.
g. Joints between stone and other surfaces.
h. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.

2. Joint Sealant: Single or multiple component; traffic or non-traffic grade; nonstaining; nonsag; neutral curing; allowing minimum 25 percent movement.
a. Silicone
b. Urethane
c. STPE
d. Polysulfide

3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

C. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in plant-precast architectural concrete units.
1. Joint Locations:
a. Joints between plant-precast architectural concrete units (note required two lines of sealant at exterior wythe).

2. Joint Sealant: Single or multiple component; traffic or non-traffic grade; nonstaining; nonsag; neutral curing; allowing minimum 25 percent movement.
a. Silicone

3. Joint-Sealant Color: Provide three color-matched custom colors to coincide with three face mix colors at precast panels.

D. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
1. Joint Locations:
a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
b. Control and expansion joints in tile flooring.
c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.

2. Joint Sealant: Single or multiple component; traffic grade; nonsag; neutral curing; allowing minimum 25 percent movement.
a. Silicone
b. STPE
c. Polysulfide

3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

E. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
1. Joint Locations:
a. Tile control and expansion joints.
b. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.

2. Joint Sealant: Single or multiple component; traffic or non-traffic grade; nonstaining; nonsag; neutral curing; allowing minimum 25 percent movement.
a. Silicone
b. Urethane
c. Polysulfide

3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

F. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.

1. Joint Locations:
   a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
   b. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of unit masonry and interior joints between plant-precast architectural concrete units.
   c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
2. Joint Sealant: Single or multiple component; traffic or non-traffic grade; nonstaining; nonsag; neutral curing; allowing minimum 25 percent movement.
   a. Acrylic latex.
   b. Urethane
   c. STPE
3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors. Sealant shall be paintable.

G. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces not subject to significant movement.
1. Joint Locations:
   a. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows, and elevator entrances.
   b. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
2. Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex.
3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors. Sealant shall be paintable.

H. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
1. Joint Locations:
   a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
   b. Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
   c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
2. Joint Sealant:
   a. Silicone, mildew resistant, acid curing
   b. STPE, Mildew Resistant
3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

I. Joint-Sealant Application: Concealed mastics.
1. Joint Locations:
   a. Aluminum thresholds.
   b. Sill plates.
   c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
2. Joint Sealant:
   a. Butyl-rubber based.
   b. Silicone
   c. Urethane
   d. Polysulfide

END OF SECTION 07 92 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 11 13 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:
   1. Interior standard steel doors and frames.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow-metal doors.
   2. Division 09 Sections for field painting of hollow metal doors and frames.
   3. Division 26 and 28 Sections for electrical connections including conduit and wiring for electrified hardware, access control, and security systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings according to NAAMM-HMMA 803 or ANSI/SDI A250.8.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

B. Coordinate requirements for installation of door hardware, electrified door hardware, and access control and security systems.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
   1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
   1. Elevations of each door type.
   2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
   3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
   4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
   5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
   6. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
   7. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
   8. Details of accessories.

9. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For hollow-metal doors and frames with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Product Schedule: For hollow-metal doors and frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver hollow-metal doors and frames palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.

B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.

C. Store hollow-metal doors and frames vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum 4-inch-high wood blocking. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Ceco Door; ASSA ABLOY.
2. Curries Company; ASSA ABLOY.
3. Steelcraft; an Allegion brand.

2.2 INTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.

B. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 2; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level B. At interior doors and frames.
1. Doors:
a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
c. Face: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch.
d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.
e. Edge Bevel: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges.
f. Core: Manufacturer's standard.
2. Frames:
a. Materials: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch.

b. Sidelite and Transom Frames: Fabricated from same thickness material as adjacent door frame.
c. Construction: Full profile welded.

3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.3 BORROWED/DOOR LITES

A. Fabricate of uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch.

B. Construction: Full profile welded.

C. Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as metal as frames.

D. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 FRAME ANCHORS

A. Jamb Anchors:
1. Type: Anchors of minimum size and type required by applicable door and frame standard, and suitable for performance level indicated.
2. Quantity: Minimum of three anchors per jamb, with one additional anchor for frames with no floor anchor. Provide one additional anchor for each 24 inches of frame height above 7 feet.
3. Postinstalled Expansion Anchor: Minimum 3/8-inch-diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts, with manufacturer's standard pipe spacer.

B. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor.

C. Material: ASTM A879/A879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z coating designation; mill phosphatized.
1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M or ASTM A1011/A1011M; hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A153/A153M, Class B.

2.5 MATERIALS

A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.

B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1011/A1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.

C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.

D. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A153/A153M.

E. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.

F. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.

G. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

2.6 FABRICATION

A. Door Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted or as required to comply with published listing of qualified testing agency.

B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as frames.
   1. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
      a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
      b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.

C. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware, and electrical wiring; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to ANSI/SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.
   1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
   2. Comply with BHMA A156.115 for preparing hollow-metal doors and frames for hardware.

D. Glazed Lites: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with mitered hairline joints.
   1. Provide stops and moldings flush with face of door, and with square stops unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
   3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal doors and frames.
   4. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.
   5. Provide stops for installation with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches o.c. and not more than 2 inches o.c. from each corner.

2.7 STEEL FINISHES

A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
   1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

B. Factory Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, complying with ANSI/SDI A250.3.
   1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch up factory-applied finishes where spreaders are removed.

B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install hollow-metal doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with approved Shop Drawings and with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11 or NAAMM-HMMA 840.
   1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces without damage to completed Work.
      a. Where frames are fabricated in sections, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch-up finishes.
      b. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
   2. Floor Anchors: Secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.
      a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
   3. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
   4. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout or mortar.
   5. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
   6. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal frames to the following tolerances:
      a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
      b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
      c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.

d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.

C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit and adjust hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below.
1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8.

D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspection Agency: Engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.

B. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

C. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.

3.4 REPAIR

A. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.

B. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Factory-Finish Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with same material used for factory finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 08 11 13

SECTION 08 41 13 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior Aluminum-framed storefront systems.

2. Interior Aluminum-framed entrance door systems.

3. Interior Aluminum framing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for aluminum storefront doors.

2. Division 26 Sections for connections to power system and for low-voltage wiring.

3. Division 28 Sections for coordination with electronic access control system.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.

1. Include full-size isometric details of each type of vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, showing the following:
   a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
   b. Anchorage.
   c. Expansion provisions.
   d. Glazing.

2. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.

E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to include in maintenance manuals.

B. Maintenance Data for Structural Sealant: For structural-sealant-glazed storefront to include in maintenance manuals. Include ASTM C1401 recommendations for post-installation-phase quality-control program.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.

1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

C. Structural-Sealant Glazing: Comply with ASTM C1401 for design and installation of storefront systems that include structural glazing.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Structural failures, including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
   b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
   c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.

d. Failure of operating components.

2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Finish Warranty, Factory-Applied Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
   a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
   b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
   c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain all components of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront system, including framing and accessories, from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

1. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand movements of supporting structure, including, but not limited to, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.

2. Failure also includes the following:
   a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
   b. Glass breakage.
   c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
   d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
   e. Failure of operating units.

B. Structural Loads:

1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

C. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:

1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to 1/175 of clear span for spans of up to 13 feet 6 inches and to 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4 inch for spans greater than 13 feet 6 inches or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch, whichever is less.

2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to 1/360 of clear span or 1/8 inch, whichever is smaller.

D. Structural: Test according to ASTM E330/E330M as follows:

1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, storefront assemblies, including entrance doors, do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.

2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, storefront assemblies, including entrance doors and anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.

3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.

4. Air Leakage:
   a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: Air leakage for the system of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM E283.
   b. Entrance Doors: Air leakage of not more than 1.0 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..

5. Condensation Resistance Factor (CRF):
   a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: CRF for the system of not less than 55 as determined according to AAMA 1503.
   b. Entrance Doors: CRF of not less than 52 as determined according to AAMA 1503.

E. Noise Reduction: Test according to ASTM E90, with ratings determined by ASTM E1332, as follows.

1. Indoor Transmission Class: Minimum 26.

F. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.3 INTERIOR STOREFRONT SYSTEMS

A. Basis-of-Design Product for all interior storefronts/windows: Subject to compliance with requirements. Manufacturer Kawneer: Trifab VersaGlaze 450 Framing system 2” sightline mullion 4-1/2” depth Non-Thermal, glass centered in mullion with 1 pane of 3/8” tempered laminated clear glass provided by Mountain Valley Glass Inc. Mullion color/finish Anodized Black. Or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Mountain Valley Glass Inc.

2. YKK AP America Inc.

3. EFCO Corporation

B. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.

1. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on two or four sides as determined by structural considerations.

2. Glazing Plane: Centered

3. Finish: High-performance organic finish. Prefinished anodized black.

4. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.

5. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.

6. Steel Reinforcement: As required by manufacturer.

C. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.

D. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

2.4 INTERIOR ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

A. Basis-of-Design Product for all interior storefronts doors: Subject to compliance with requirements: Manufacturer Kawneer: Trifab VersaGlaze 450 Framing system 2” sightline mullion 4-1/2” depth Non-Thermal, glass centered in mullion with 1 pane of 3/8” tempered laminated clear glass provided by Mountain Valley Glass Inc. Mullion color/finish Anodized Black. Door side stile to be 6” wide, tope stile 8” wide, bottom stile 10” wide. Swing Entrance Doors at interior to be 1-3/4” Standard Aluminum Swing Entrance Doors or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Mountain Valley Glass Inc.

2. YKK AP America Inc.

3. EFCO Corporation

B. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing or automatic operation.

1. Door Construction: 1-3/4-inch overall thickness, with minimum 0.125-inch thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members at interior openings, 2-inch overall thickness, with minimum 0.188-inch- thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members at exterior openings. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.

2. Door Design: Medium stile; 6-inch nominal sides width for door hardware mounting. 8-inch top stile. 10-inch bottom style. Coordinate with Door Hardware Installer’s Architectural Hardware Consultant.

3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Square, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
   a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.

4. Finish: Prefinished anodized black.

2.5 INTERIOR ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

A. Entrance Door Hardware: Hardware not specified in this Section is specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

B. General: Provide entrance door hardware and entrance door hardware sets indicated in door and frame schedule for each entrance door, to comply with requirements in this Section.

1. Entrance Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color indicated, and products complying with BHMA standard referenced.

2. Sequence of Operation: Provide electrified door hardware function, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems indicated.

3. Opening-Force Requirements:
   a. Egress Doors: Not more than 15 lbf to release the latch and not more than 30 lbf to set the door in motion and not more than 15 lbf to open the door to its minimum required width.
   b. Accessible Interior Doors: Not more than 5 lbf to fully open door.

C. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, quantity, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of entrance door hardware are indicated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article. Products are identified by using entrance door hardware designations as follows:

1. Named Manufacturers' Products: Manufacturer and product designation are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing minimum requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article.

2. References to BHMA Standards: Provide products complying with these standards and requirements for description, quality, and function.

2.6 INTERIOR GLAZING

A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."

B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of black, resilient elastomeric glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers.

C. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer. Color: Black

D. Basis of Design: 1 pane of 3/8” tempered laminated clear glass provided by Mountain Valley Glass Inc. for all interior storefronts and doors. Or approved equal.

2.7 MATERIALS

A. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B209.

B. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B221.

C. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B429/B429M.

D. Structural Profiles: ASTM B308/B308M.

E. Steel Reinforcement:

1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.

2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A1008/A1008M.

3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A1011/A1011M.

F. Steel Reinforcement Primer: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.

2.8 ACCESSORIES

A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.

2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.

3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, finished to match framing system.

B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.

1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M requirements.

C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

D. Rigid PVC Filler.

2.9 FABRICATION

A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.

B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.

C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:

1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.

2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.

3. Physical isolation of glazing from framing members.

4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.

5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from exterior.

6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.

D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.

E. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using shear-block system.

F. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.

G. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.

H. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.

I. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.10 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.

1. Color: Black anodized

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Do not install damaged components.

C. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.

D. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.

E. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.

F. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.

G. Metal Protection:

1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.

2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

H. Set continuous sill members in full sealant bed, as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," to produce weathertight installation.

I. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.

J. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF GLAZING

A. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCE DOORS

A. Install entrance doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.

1. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

3.5 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Install aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to comply with the following maximum tolerances:

1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.

2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.

3. Alignment:
   a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
   b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
   c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.

4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Entrance Door Hardware Maintenance:

1. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of entrance door hardware.

2. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide six months' full maintenance by skilled employees of entrance door hardware Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper entrance door hardware operation at rated speed and capacity. Use parts and supplies that are the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.

END OF SECTION 08 41 13

SECTION 08 51 50 – CAB WINDOW FRAMING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS: The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only. The latest issue of the publications shall be used.

1.1.1 American Standards Institute (ANSI

B18.6.3	Machine Screws and Machine Screw Nuts
B18.6.4	1981: R 1991) Thread Forming and Threaded Cutting Tapping Screws and Metallic Drive Screws (Inch Series)

1.1.2 American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME)

A39.1	(1991) Safety Requirements for Window Cleaning

1.1.3 American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

A 123	(1989; Rev. A) Zinc (Hot-dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
A167	(1994; Rev. A) Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
A653/A653M	(1994) Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip Commercial Quality
A569/A569M	(1991; Rev. A, R 1993) Steel, Carbon (0.15 Maximum, Percent), Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip Commercial Quality

1.1.4 Steel Window Institute (SWI)

SWS	(1990) Steel Window Specifications

1.2 SUBMITTALS: Provide submittals in accordance with Division One requirements.

1.2.1 Drawings: Cab Windows

1.2.1.1 Drawing Requirements: Indicate elevations of windows, full-size section, thicknesses and gages of metal, fastenings, proposed method of anchoring, size and spacing of anchors, details of construction, method of glazing, mullion details, method and materials for weatherstripping, other related items, and installation details.

1.2.1.2 Samples: Submit full size 24” x 24” glazed sample of cab window complete with hardware, anchors, and other accessories.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 Steel Bars: SWI SWS

2.1.2 Sheet Steel: ASTM A 569/A 569M

2.1.3 Zinc-Coated Sheet Steel: ASTM A 653/A 653M

2.1.4 Zinc Coating: ASTM A 123

2.1.5 Corrosion Resisting Sheet Steel: ASTM A 167

2.1.6 Screws and Bolts: ANSI B18.6.3 or ANSI B18.6.4 as applicable.

2.2 FABRICATION

2.2.1 Form permanent joints by welding or mechanically fastening as specified. Use joints of strength to maintain structural value of members connected. Weld joints solid, remove excess metal, and dress smooth on exposed and contact surfaces. Closely fit joints formed with mechanical fastenings and make permanently watertight. Assemble frames at the plant and ship as a unit with hardware unattached. Provide the following construction:

a. Roll weathering surfaces integrally to provide two-point parallel-surface contact with overlap at both inside and outside points of closure.
b. Provide drips and weep holes as required to return water to outside.
c. Design glazed windows and rabbets suitable for glass thickness shown on drawings or specified.
d. Use flathead, cross recessed type, exposed head screws and bolts with standard threads on windows, trim and accessories unless otherwise indicated. Screw heads shall finish flush with adjoining surfaces unless otherwise indicated. Self tapping sheet-metal screws are not acceptable.
e. For hot-dipped galvanized windows, use stainless steel or hot-spun galvanized steel fasteners. For windows with painted finish use cadmium plated or electro-galvanized fasteners. Finish exposed heads to match finish of windows.

2.3 PROVISIONS FOR GLAZING

2.3.1 Glass and glazing is specified in Section 08800, “GLAZING”.

2.4 MULLIONS AND TRANSOM BARS

2.4.1 Provide mullions between multiple window units designed to withstand specified wind load requirements. Secure mullions and transom bars to adjoining construction and window units in such a manner as to permit expansion and contraction and to form weathertight joint.

2.5 METAL-TO-METAL JOINTS

2.5.1 Set in mastic, using type recommended by window manufacturer to provide weathertight joints. Remove excess mastic before it hardens.

2.6 WINDOW FINISH

2.6.1 Epoxy Coated Finish: After fabrication, clean all surfaces of windows, fins, mullions, cover plates, and screen frames and provide a hot-dip galvanized, phosphate-treatment (to assure maximum paint adhesion) and dip or spray all surfaces with a shop coat of rust inhibited primer), either air dried or baked on finish (compatible with epoxy type paint). American National Standard "Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Prime Painted Steel Surfaces", ANSI A224.1 shall apply to the product finish. The methods of cleaning, chemical treatment, galvanizing, and painting shall conform to SWI SWS. Window framing exterior surfaces shall be epoxy coated according to SSPC-PS 13.01, "Epoxy-Polyamide Painting System", which outlines a three-coat epoxy-polyamide painting system with each coating (primer, intermediate, and topcoat) with a two part product consisting of a base component and a curing agent component. Provide color paint finish equal to paint noted on drawings for insulated metal panels.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Install in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions and details. Build in windows as work progresses or install without forcing into prepared window openings. Set at proper elevation, location, and reveal; plumb, square, level, and in alignment. Brace and stay to prevent distortion and misalignment. Bed screws or bolts in sill members, joints at mullions, contacts of windows with sills, built-in fins, and subframes in mastic sealant recommended by window manufacturer. Install windows in a manner that will prevent entrance of water and wind.

3.2 ANCHORS AND FASTENINGS

3.2.1 Make provision for securing units to each other and to adjoining construction. Anchors and fastenings shall have sufficient strength to hold member firmly in position.

3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

a. Within any rectangular opening there shall be no more than 1/8-inch difference in the measured length of the diagonals.
b. Maximum variation of mullions from plumb or horizontals from level shall not exceed 1/8-inch in 12 feet or ¼-inch in any single run.
c. The framing system for glazing legs of adjoining members to be in the same plane shall have a maximum out-of-plane offset of 1/32-inch to avoid unequal stresses on the glass.

3.4 ADJACENT WORK BY OTHERS

a. Welding, sandblasting or acid washing shall not be done in the vicinity of the metal framing or glass. Use heavy tarpaulins or plywood to protect the framing and glass.
b. Paint, concrete, mortar, plaster, drywall spackle or other similar materials shall be removed immediately from the glass or metal.
c. The cab glass shall be replaced at the expense of the contractor for any weld splatter, scratch, stain or any other blemish no matter how small.
d. Clean interior and exterior surfaces of cab windows continuously and just prior to final inspection.

END OF SECTION 08515

SECTION 08 71 00 - DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Mechanical door hardware for the following:
      a. Swinging doors.
   2. Cylinders for door hardware specified in other Sections.
   3. Electrified door hardware.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 081113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames".
   2. Section 081416 “Flush Wood Doors”
   3. Section 083326 "Overhead Coiling Grilles" for door hardware provided as part of overhead coiling grille assemblies.
   4. Section 084113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts"
   5. Section 084413 “Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls”
   6. Division 26 Sections for connections to power system and for low-voltage wiring.
   7. Division 28 Sections for coordination with electronic access control system.
   8. Division 28 Sections for connections to building fire-alarm system.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.

B. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware, keying, and access control with Owner's security consultant.

C. Electrical System Roughing-In: Coordinate layout and installation of electrified door hardware with connections to power supplies and building safety and security systems.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
   1. Conference participants shall include Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant.

B. Keying Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
   1. Conference participants shall include Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant.
   2. Incorporate conference decisions into keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including, but not limited to, the following:
      a. Flow of traffic and degree of security required.

b. Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
c. Requirements for key control system.
d. Requirements for access control.
e. Address for delivery of keys.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For electrified door hardware.
1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
2. Include details of interface of electrified door hardware and building safety and security systems.

C. Samples: For each exposed product in each finish specified, in manufacturer's standard size.
1. Tag Samples with full product description to coordinate Samples with door hardware schedule.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish.

E. Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant. Coordinate door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.
1. Submittal Sequence: Submit door hardware schedule concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate the fabrication of other work that is critical in Project construction schedule.
2. Format: Use same scheduling sequence and format and use same door numbers as in door hardware schedule in the Contract Documents.
3. Content: Include the following information:
a. Identification number, location, hand, size, and material of each door and frame.
b. Locations of each door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings on floor plans and to door and frame schedule.
c. Complete designations, including name and manufacturer, type, style, function, size, quantity, function, and finish of each door hardware product.
d. Description of electrified door hardware sequences of operation and interfaces with other building control systems.
e. Fastenings and other installation information.
f. Explanation of abbreviations, symbols, and designations contained in door hardware schedule.
g. Mounting locations for door hardware.
h. List of related door devices specified in other Sections for each door and frame.

F. Keying Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key set to unique door designations that are coordinated with the Contract Documents.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer and Architectural Hardware Consultant.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of electrified door hardware.

C. Product Test Reports: For compliance with accessibility requirements, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for door hardware on doors located in accessible routes.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For each type of door hardware to include in maintenance manuals.

B. Schedules: Final door hardware and keying schedule.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Supplier of products and an employer of workers trained and approved by product manufacturers and of an Architectural Hardware Consultant who is available during the course of the Work to consult Contractor, Architect, and Owner about door hardware and keying.
   1. Warehousing Facilities: In Project's vicinity.
   2. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedule.
   3. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for electrified door hardware, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.

B. Architectural Hardware Consultant Qualifications: A person who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and who is currently certified by DHI as an Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) and an Electrified Hardware Consultant (EHC).

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project site.

B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with the final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package.

C. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
      b. Faulty operation of doors and door hardware.

c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.

2. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion unless otherwise indicated below:
   a. Manual Closers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of door hardware from single manufacturer.
   1. Provide electrified door hardware from same manufacturer as mechanical door hardware unless otherwise indicated. Manufacturers that perform electrical modifications and that are listed by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction are acceptable.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrified Door Hardware: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Means of Egress Doors: Latches do not require more than 15 lbf to release the latch. Locks do not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.

C. Accessibility Requirements: For door hardware on doors in an accessible route, comply with the DOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design", the DOT's "ADA Standards for Transportation Facilities" and ICC A117.1.
   1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf.
   2. Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements:
      a. Interior, Non-Fire-Rated Hinged Doors: 5 lbf applied perpendicular to door.
      b. Sliding or Folding Doors: 5 lbf applied parallel to door at latch.
   3. Bevel raised thresholds with a slope of not more than 1:2. Provide thresholds not more than 1/2 inch high.
   4. Adjust door closer sweep periods so that, from an open position of 90 degrees, the door will take at least 5 seconds to move to a position of 12 degrees from the latch.
   5. Adjust spring hinges so that, from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 1.5 seconds to move to the closed position.

2.3 HINGES

A. Hinges: BHMA A156.1. Provide template-produced hinges for hinges installed on hollow-metal doors and hollow-metal frames.

B. All doors shall be equipped with NRP security hinges. (Hagar BB1191 or equivalent)

C. Requirements:
   1. Provide three-knuckle, ball bearing hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.1.
   2. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors, up to and including 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
      a. Exterior: Standard weight, bronze or stainless steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
      b. Interior: Standard weight, steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high

3. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors over 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
   a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze/stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
   b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
4. 2 inches or thicker doors:
   a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze or stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
   b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
5. Provide three hinges per door leaf for doors 90 inches (2286 mm) or less in height, and one additional hinge for each 30 inches (762 mm) of additional door height.
6. Hinge Pins: Except as otherwise indicated, provide hinge pins as follows:
   a. Steel Hinges: Steel pins
   b. Non-Ferrous Hinges: Stainless steel pins
   c. Out-Swinging Exterior Doors: Non-removable pins
   d. Out-Swinging Interior Lockable Doors: Non-removable pins
   e. Interior Non-lockable Doors: Non-rising pins
7. Width of hinges: 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) at 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors, and 5 inches (127 mm) at 2 inches (51 mm) or thicker doors. Adjust hinge width as required for door, frame, and wall conditions to allow proper degree of opening.
   a. Doors 36 inches (914 mm) wide or less furnish hinges 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high; doors greater than 36 inches (914 mm) wide furnish hinges 5 inches (127 mm) high, heavy weight or standard weight as specified.

2.4 MECHANICAL LOCKS AND LATCHES

A. Lock Functions: As indicated in door hardware schedule.

B. Lock Throw: Comply with testing requirements for length of bolts required as follows:
   1. Mortise Locks: Minimum 3/4-inch latchbolt throw.
   2. Deadbolts: Minimum 1-inch bolt throw.

C. Lock Backset: 2-3/4 inches unless otherwise indicated.

D. Lock Trim:
   1. Levers:
      a. Cast.
      b. All levers shall be Best Series 93K or equivalent.
   2. Escutcheons (Roses): Cast.
   3. Dummy Trim: Match lever lock trim and escutcheons.

E. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard strike for each lock bolt or latchbolt complying with requirements indicated for applicable lock or latch and with strike box and curved lip extended to protect frame; finished to match lock or latch.
   1. Flat-Lip Strikes: For locks with three-piece antifriction latchbolts, as recommended by manufacturer.
   2. Rabbet Front and Strike: Provide on locksets for rabbeted meeting stiles.

F. Mortise Locks: BHMA A156.13; Operational Grade 1, Security Grade 1; stamped steel case with steel or brass parts; Series 1000.

G. Interconnected Locks: BHMA A156.12; Grade 1; Series 5000.

2.5 AUXILIARY LOCKS

A. Bored Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.36: Grade 1; with strike that suits frame.

2.6 ELECTRIC STRIKES

A. Electric Strikes: BHMA A156.31; Grade 1; with faceplate to suit lock and frame.

2.7 ELECTROMECHANICAL LOCKS

A. Electromechanical Locks: BHMA A156.25; Grade 1; motor or solenoid driven; with strike that suits frame.
   1. Type: Mortise latchbolt.

2.8 AUTOMATIC AND SELF-LATCHING FLUSH BOLTS

A. Automatic Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.3, Type 25; minimum 3/4-inch throw; with dust-proof strikes; designed for mortising into door edge. Include wear plates.

2.9 EXIT DEVICES AND AUXILIARY ITEMS

A. Exit Devices and Auxiliary Items: BHMA A156.3.

2.10 LOCK CYLINDERS

A. Lock Cylinders: Tumbler type, constructed from brass or bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver. All cylinders shall be Best Series 1E or equivalent.

B. Standard Lock Cylinders: BHMA A156.5; Grade 1 permanent cores; face finished to match lockset.
   1. Core Type: Interchangeable.

C. Construction Cores: Provide construction cores that are replaceable by permanent cores. Provide 10 construction master keys.

2.11 KEYING

A. Keying System: Factory registered, complying with guidelines in BHMA A156.28, appendix. Provide one extra key blank for each lock. Incorporate decisions made in keying conference.
   1. Master Key System: Change keys and a master key operate cylinders.
      a. Provide three cylinder change keys and five master keys.
   2. Existing System:
      a. Master key or grand master key locks to Owner's existing system.
   3. Keyed Alike: Key all cylinders to same change key.

B. Keys: Nickel silver.
   1. Stamping: Permanently inscribe each key with a visual key control number and include the following notation:
      a. Notation: Information to be furnished by Owner.

2.12 KEY CONTROL SYSTEM

A. Key Control Cabinet: BHMA A156.28; metal cabinet with baked-enamel finish; containing key-holding hooks, labels, two sets of key tags with self-locking key holders, key-gathering envelopes, and temporary and permanent markers; with key capacity of 150 percent of the number of locks.
   1. Wall-Mounted Cabinet: Grade 1 cabinet with hinged-panel door equipped with key-holding panels and pin-tumbler cylinder door lock.

B. Key Lock Boxes: Designed for storage of two keys.

   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

      a. Knox Company.

2.13 OPERATING TRIM

A. Operating Trim: BHMA A156.6; stainless steel unless otherwise indicated.

2.14 ACCESSORIES FOR PAIRS OF DOORS

A. Coordinators: BHMA A156.3; consisting of active-leaf, hold-open lever and inactive-leaf release trigger; fabricated from steel with nylon-coated strike plates; with built-in, adjustable safety release.

B. Astragals: BHMA A156.22.

2.15 SURFACE CLOSERS

A. Surface Closers: BHMA A156.4; rack-and-pinion hydraulic type with adjustable sweep and latch speeds controlled by key-operated valves and forged-steel main arm. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for size of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Provide factory-sized closers, adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.

2.16 DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS

A. Wall-Mounted Stops: BHMA A156.16.

B. Overhead Stops and Holders: BHMA A156.8.

C. Provide door stops at each door leaf:
   1. Provide wall stops wherever possible. Provide convex type where mortise type locks are used and concave type where cylindrical type locks are used.
   2. Where wall stop cannot be used, provide heavy duty concealed mounted overhead stop.

2.17 THRESHOLDS, SEALS, DOOR SWEEPS, AND GASKETING

A. Door Gasketing: BHMA A156.22; with resilient or flexible seal strips that are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.

B. Maximum Air Leakage: When tested according to ASTM E283 with tested pressure differential of 0.3-inch wg, as follows:
   1. Gasketing on Single Doors: 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. of door opening.
   2. Gasketing on Double Doors: 0.50 cfm per foot of door opening.

C. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21; fabricated to full width of opening indicated.

D. Requirements:
   1. Provide thresholds, weather-stripping (including door sweeps, seals, and astragals) and gasketing systems (including smoke, sound, and light) as scheduled. Match finish of other items.
   2. Size of thresholds:
      a. Saddle Thresholds: 1/2 inch (13 mm) high by jamb width by door width
      b. Bumper Seal Thresholds: 1/2 inch (13 mm) high by 5 inches (127 mm) wide by door width
   3. Provide door sweeps, seals, and astragals only of type where resilient or flexible seal strip is easily replaceable and readily available.

2.18 METAL PROTECTIVE TRIM UNITS

A. Metal Protective Trim Units: BHMA A156.6; fabricated from 0.050-inch-thick stainless steel; with manufacturer's standard machine or self-tapping screw fasteners.

B. Provide kick plates at the following locations:
   1. Interior and exterior sides of interior doors at storage rooms and janitor closets.
   2. Interior side of exterior doors at storage rooms.
   3. Size: 8 inches high by 2 inches less width of door on single doors, 1 inch less width of door on pairs.

2.19 SILENCERS

A. Provide "push-in" type silencers for hollow metal frames.
B. Provide one silencer per 30 inches (762 mm) of height on each single frame, and two for each pair frame.
C. Omit where gasketing is specified

2.20 FABRICATION

A. Manufacturer's Nameplate: Do not provide products that have manufacturer's name or trade name displayed in a visible location.
   1. Manufacturer's identification is permitted on rim of lock cylinders only.

B. Base Metals: Produce door hardware units of base metal indicated, fabricated by forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness. Furnish metals of a quality equal to or greater than that of specified door hardware units and BHMA A156.18.

C. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws that comply with commercially recognized industry standards for application intended, except aluminum fasteners are not

permitted. Provide Phillips flat-head screws with finished heads to match surface of door hardware unless otherwise indicated.

1. Concealed Fasteners: For door hardware units that are exposed when door is closed, except for units already specified with concealed fasteners. Do not use through bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed unless it is the only means of securely attaching the door hardware. Where through bolts are used on hollow door and frame construction, provide sleeves for each through bolt.
2. Spacers or Sex Bolts: For through bolting of hollow-metal doors.
3. Gasketing Fasteners: Provide noncorrosive fasteners for exterior applications and elsewhere as indicated.

2.21 FINISHES

A. Provide finishes complying with BHMA A156.18 as indicated below:
   1. Hinges at Exterior Doors: BHMA 630 (US32D)
   2. Push Plates, Pulls, and Push Bars: BHMA 630 (US32D)
   3. Protection Plates: BHMA 630 (US32D)
   4. Overhead Stops and Holders: BHMA 630 (US32D)
   5. Door Closers: Powder Coat to Match
   6. Wall Stops: BHMA 630 (US32D)
   7. Weatherstripping: Clear Anodized Aluminum
   8. Thresholds: Mill Finish Aluminum

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Steel Doors and Frames: For surface-applied door hardware, drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI/SDI A250.6.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
   1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
   2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.

B. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
   1. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
   2. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.

C. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule, but not fewer than the number recommended by manufacturer for application indicated or one hinge for every 30 inches of door height, whichever is more stringent, unless other equivalent means of support for door, such as spring hinges or pivots, are provided.

D. Lock Cylinders: Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.
   1. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as indicated in keying schedule.

E. Key Control System:
   1. Key Control Cabinet: Tag keys and place them on markers and hooks in key control system cabinet, as determined by final keying schedule.
   2. Key Lock Boxes: Install where indicated or approved by Owner/Architect to provide controlled access for fire and medical emergency personnel.
   3. Key Control System Software: Set up multiple-index system based on final keying schedule.

F. Boxed Power Supplies: Locate power supplies as indicated or, if not indicated, in equipment room. Verify location with Architect.
   1. Configuration: Provide least number of power supplies required to adequately serve doors with electrified door hardware.

G. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior doors and other doors indicated in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

H. Stops: Provide wall stops or overhead stops for doors unless otherwise indicated. Do not install floor stops.

I. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
   1. Do not notch perimeter gasketing to install other surface-applied hardware.

J. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.

K. Door Bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Independent Architectural Hardware Consultant: Engage a qualified independent Architectural Hardware Consultant to perform inspections and to prepare inspection reports.
   1. Independent Architectural Hardware Consultant will inspect door hardware and state in each report whether installed work complies with or deviates from requirements, including whether door hardware is properly installed and adjusted.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
   1. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
   2. Spring Hinges: Adjust to achieve positive latching when door is allowed to close freely from an open position of 70 degrees and so that closing time complies with accessibility requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
   3. Electric Strikes: Adjust horizontal and vertical alignment of keeper to properly engage lock bolt.

B. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately three months after date of Substantial Completion, Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant shall examine and readjust each item of door hardware, including adjusting operating forces, as necessary to ensure function of doors, door hardware, and electrified door hardware.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.

B. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.

C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure that door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.7 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.

B. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of door hardware Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper door and door hardware operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain door hardware.

END OF SECTION 08 71 00

SECTION 08 80 00 – GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:
   1. Glazing for clear tempered laminated single pane Interior storefronts/storefront doors, windows, glazed doors, and interior borrowed lites.
   2. Glazing for clear/coated double pane insulated tempered laminated Exterior butt-glazed storefronts/storefront doors.
   3. Glazing sealants and accessories.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.

B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.

C. IBC: International Building Code.

D. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Glass Samples: For each type of glass product other than clear monolithic vision glass; 12 inches square.
   1. Clear/Coated insulated tempered laminated glass.
   2. Clear tempered laminated glass.

C. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For glass.

B. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications for Insulating-Glass Units with Sputter-Coated, Low-E Coatings: A qualified insulating-glass manufacturer who is approved and certified by coated-glass manufacturer.

B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.

C. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.

D. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.

B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written instructions for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
   1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
   1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written

instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each glass type.
   1. Basis of Design Glazing for all Interior Storefront, Interior Storefront Doors, Glazed Doors & sidelights/windows – mfr: Mountain Valley Glass Inc. or approved equal.
      a. 1 pane of 3/8" tempered laminated clear glass.
   2. Basis of Design Insulated Double Pane Glazing for all Exterior Storefront/Storefront Doors: mfr: Mountain Valley Glass Inc. or approved equal - Exterior to Interior:
      a. Outboard Lite, 13/16" O.A. all Tempered Laminated – Surface 1 & 2 Uncoated – 3/8" – Guardian Low Iron, Ultra Clear - .090 SGP ultra clear inner
      b. ½" Argon filled airspace with structural spacer
      c. Inboard Lite - Tempered Laminated – Surface 3 & 4 – Guardian Low Iron, Ultra Clear 3/8" Guardian 62/27 on KRYSTAL GREY
      d. Confirm final assembly per glass manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.

B. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.

2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
   1. GANA Publications: "Glazing Manual."
   2. GANA Publications: "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual".
   3. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."

B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction or manufacturer. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.

C. Laminated Glass: ASTM C 1172. Use materials that have a proven record of no tendency to bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after fabrication and installation.

1. Construction: Laminate glass with polyvinyl butyral interlayer unless fire-protection or fire-resistance rating is based on another product.
2. Interlayer Thickness: Provide thickness as needed to comply with requirements.
3. Interlayer Color: Clear unless otherwise indicated.

D. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of IGCC.

E. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than the thickness indicated.
1. Per manufacturer’s recommendations. See basis of design.

F. Strength: Where fully tempered laminated is indicated, provide glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article.

2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS

A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.

B. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.

C. Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind HS (heat strengthened), Type I, Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 INSULATING GLASS

A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190.
1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard polyisobutylene and polysulfide, polyisobutylene and silicone, polyisobutylene and hot-melt butyl, or polyisobutylene and polyurethane primary and secondary sealants.
2. Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction Aluminum with mill or clear anodic finish.
3. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or a blend of both.

2.6 GLAZING SEALANTS

A. General:
1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

B. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.

C. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.

D. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

E. Glazing Sealant: Acid-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

2.7 GLAZING GASKETS

A. Dense Compression Gaskets: Molded or extruded gaskets of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal, made from one of the following:
1. Neoprene complying with ASTM C 864.
2. EPDM complying with ASTM C 864.
3. Silicone complying with ASTM C 1115.
4. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber complying with ASTM C 1115.

B. Soft Compression Gaskets: Extruded or molded, closed-cell, integral-skinned neoprene, EPDM, silicone, or thermoplastic polyolefin rubber gaskets complying with ASTM C 509, Type II, black; of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal.
1. Application: Use where soft compression gaskets will be compressed by inserting dense compression gaskets on opposite side of glazing or pressure applied by means of pressure-glazing stops on opposite side of glazing.

2.8 GLAZING TAPES

A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.

B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
1. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
2. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, with requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.

B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.

C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.

D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.

E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).

F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

2.10 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
   1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
      a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.

C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
   1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
   2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
   3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
   4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.

B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.

B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.

C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.

D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.

E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.

F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.
   1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
   2. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.

G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.

H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.

I. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.

J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.

K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

3.4 TAPE GLAZING

A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.

B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.

C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.

D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.

E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.

F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.

G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.

H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.

B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.

C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

3.6 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.

B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.

C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Immediately after installation remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.

B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
   1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.

C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.

D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

3.8 MONOLITHIC TEMPERED LAMINATED GLASS SCHEDULE

A. Glass Type for interior storefronts, storefront doors, sidelights and windows with the continuous perimeter stops: Clear heat-strengthened or fully tempered float glass as required by location.
   1. Minimum Thickness: 3/8” tempered laminated clear glass
   2. Safety glazing labeling where required.
   3. See basis of design under products section.

3.9 INSULATING LAMINATED TEMPERED GLASS SCHEDULE

A. Vision Exterior glass: Low-e-coated, clear insulating glass.
   1. Overall Unit Thickness: 1-1/8 inch.
   2. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 3/8”.
   3. Outdoor Lite: Fully tempered laminated float glass as required.
   4. Interspace Content: Air.
   5. Indoor Lite: Fully tempered laminated float glass as required.
   6. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second surface.
   7. Visible Light Transmittance: 70 percent minimum.
   8. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: .29 maximum.
   9. Summer Daytime U-Factor: .27 maximum.

10. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: .39 maximum.
11. Provide safety glazing labeling.
12. See basis of design under products section.

END OF SECTION 08 80 00

SECTION 09 29 00 - GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior gypsum board.
2. Tile backing panels.
3. Exterior gypsum board for ceilings and soffits.
4. Texture finishes.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.

B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.

C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E119 by an independent testing agency.

B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E90 and classified according to ASTM E413 by an independent testing agency.

2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    a. Continental Building Products, LLC.
    b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    c. National Gypsum Company.
    d. USG Corporation.

2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

A. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
1. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm).
2. Long Edges: Tapered.

B. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
2. Long Edges: Tapered.

2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS

A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C1288 or ASTM C1325, with manufacturer's standard edges.
1. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm).
2. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.

2.5 EXTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD FOR CEILINGS AND SOFFITS

A. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M, with manufacturer's standard edges.
1. Core: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm), regular type

B. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: ASTM C1177/C1177M, with fiberglass mat laminated to both sides and with manufacturer's standard edges.

1. Core: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm), regular type

2.6 TRIM ACCESSORIES

A. Interior Trim: ASTM C1047.

1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.
2. Shapes:

    a. Cornerbead.
    b. Bullnose bead.
    c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
    f. Expansion (control) joint.
    g. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.

B. Exterior Trim: ASTM C1047.

2.7 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with ASTM C475/C475M.

B. Joint Tape:

1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
2. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.

C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.

1. Prefilling: At open joints and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use all-purpose compound.

    a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.

3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use all-purpose compound.
4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use purpose compound.
5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use high-build interior coating product designed for application by airless sprayer and to be used instead of skim coat to produce Level 5 finish.

D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:

1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.
2. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.

3. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.

E. Joint Compound for Exterior Applications:

1. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.
2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: As recommended by sheathing board manufacturer.

2.8 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.

C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C1002 unless otherwise indicated.

1. Use screws complying with ASTM C954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) thick.
2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

A. Comply with ASTM C840.

B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.

C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) of open space between panels. Do not force into place.

D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.

E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.

F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.

1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. (0.7 sq. m) in area.
2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- (6.4- to 9.5-mm-) wide joints to install sealant.

G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- (6.4- to 12.7-mm-) wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.

H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.

I. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C919 and with manufacturer's written instructions for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.

J. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

A. Single-Layer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels perpendicular to framing unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.

    a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
    b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.

3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

B. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

3.4 APPLYING TILE BACKING PANELS

A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A108.11, at locations where tile will installed on walls.

B. Water-Resistant Backing Board: Install where indicated with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.

C. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

3.5 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C840.

C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:

1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
2. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: Use at curved openings.

3.6 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.

B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges and damaged surface areas.

C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.

D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C840:

1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile
3. Level 5: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.

E. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions for use as exposed soffit board.

F. Glass-Mat Faced Panels: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.

B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.

C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 09 29 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 09 51 13 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes acoustical panels, and exposed suspension systems for interior ceilings.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 6 inches in size.

C. Samples for Verification: For each component indicated and for each exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of sizes indicated below:
   1. Acoustical Tiles: Set of full-size Samples of each type, color, pattern, and texture.
   2. Concealed Suspension-System Members: 6-inch- (150-mm-) long Sample of each type.
   3. Exposed Moldings and Trim: Set of 6-inch- (150-mm-) long Samples of each type and color.
   4. Seismic Clips: Full size.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For seismic restraints for ceiling systems.
   1. Include design calculations for seismic restraints including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
   1. Ceiling suspension-system members.
   2. Structural members to which suspension systems will be attached.
   3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
      a. Furnish layouts for cast-in-place anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices whose installation is specified in other Sections.
   4. Carrying channels or other supplemental support for hanger-wire attachment where conditions do not permit installation of hanger wires at required spacing.
   5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
   6. Items penetrating finished ceiling and ceiling-mounted items including the following:
      a. Lighting fixtures.

b. Diffusers.
c. Grilles.
d. Speakers.
e. Sprinklers.
f. Access panels.
g. Perimeter moldings.

7. Show operation of hinged and sliding components adjacent to acoustical tiles.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

C. Product Test Reports: For each acoustical tile ceiling, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Full-size panels equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.
2. Suspension-System Components: Quantity of each concealed grid and exposed component equal to two percent of quantity installed.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.

B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical panel ceiling installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling panel and its supporting suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Suspended ceilings shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Flame-Spread Index: Class A according to ASTM E1264.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

2.3 ACOUSTICAL TILES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
1. Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions, Optima Square Lay-In.

B. Acoustical Tile Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard tiles of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E1264 classifications as designated by type, form, pattern, acoustical rating, and light reflectance unless otherwise indicated.

C. Classification: Provide tiles as follows:
1. Type and Form: Type XII, glass-fiber base with membrane-faced overlay; Form 2, cloth. Binder shall not contain urea formaldehyde.
2. Type and Form: Type XX, high-density, ceramic- and mineral-base panels with scrubbable finish, resistant to heat, moisture, and corrosive fumes.
3. Pattern: E (lightly textured).

D. Color: White.

E. Light Reflectance (LR): Not less than 0.90.

F. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): Not less than 0.90.

G. Articulation Class (AC): Not less than 180.

H. Edge/Joint Detail: Square.

I. Thickness: 3/4 inch.

J. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches.

K. Antimicrobial Treatment: Manufacturer's standard broad spectrum, antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D3273, ASTM D3274, or ASTM G21 and evaluated according to ASTM D3274 or ASTM G21.

2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
   1. Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions, Prelude XL 15/16".

B. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard, direct-hung, metal suspension system and accessories according to ASTM C635/C635M and designated by type, structural classification, and finish indicated.

C. Wide-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet; prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized, G30 coating designation; with prefinished 15/16-inch-wide metal caps on flanges.
   1. Structural Classification: Intermediate-duty system.
   2. End Condition of Cross Runners: butt-edge type.
   3. Face Design: Flat, flush.
   4. Cap Material: Cold-rolled steel.
   5. Cap Finish: Painted in color as selected from manufacturer's full range.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C635/C635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
   1. Anchors in Concrete: Anchors of type and material indicated below, with holes or loops for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to five times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E488/E488M or ASTM E1512 as applicable, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
      a. Type: Postinstalled expansion or Postinstalled bonded anchors.
      b. Corrosion Protection: Carbon-steel components zinc plated according to ASTM B633, Class SC 1 (mild) service condition.
   2. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E1190, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.

B. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires as follows:
   1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
   2. Size: Wire diameter sufficient for its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C635/C635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but not less than 0.106-inch- diameter wire.

C. Hanger Rods: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.

D. Flat Hangers: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.

E. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch wide; formed with 0.04-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch-diameter bolts.

F. Hold-Down Clips: Manufacturer's standard hold-down.

2.6 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

A. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.
   1. Edge moldings shall fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.
   2. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.

B. Extruded-Aluminum Edge Moldings and Trim: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's extruded-aluminum edge moldings and trim of profile indicated or referenced by manufacturer's designations, including splice plates, corner pieces, and attachment and other clips, complying with seismic design requirements.
   1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with ASTM C635/C635M and coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.

B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders unless otherwise indicated, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

B. Layout openings for penetrations centered on the penetrating items.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install acoustical panel ceilings according to ASTM C636/C636M, seismic design requirements, and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:

1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling-suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly to structure or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and the type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
7. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
8. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
9. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
10. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
11. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards.

C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.

D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
1. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
2. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.

E. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.

F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide precise fit.
1. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical panels as follows:
   a. As indicated on reflected ceiling plans.
2. For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension-system runners and moldings.

3. Install hold-down clips in areas indicated to receive non-metal ceiling panels; space according to panel manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Hold-Down Clips: Space o.c. on all cross runners.

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Suspended Ceilings: Install main and cross runners level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative unless manufacturer requirements are more restrictive.

B. Moldings and Trim: Install moldings and trim to substrate and level with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative unless manufacturer requirements are more restrictive.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage.

B. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 09 51 13

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 09 62 38 – STATIC-CONTROL FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCHEDULING

Schedule static-control flooring work after any other work which would damage the finished surface of the flooring.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Product Data:

- Static-Control Resilient Flooring
- Accessories
- Adhesives
- Warranty

Samples:

- Static-Control Resilient Flooring
- Static-Control Carpet

Test Reports Fire:

- Resistance
- Moisture, Alkalinity and Bond Testing

Certificates:

- Indoor Air Quality for Static-Dissipative Rubber Tile
- Indoor Air Quality for Static-Control Carpet
- Indoor Air Quality for Adhesives
- Qualifications of Applicator

Manufacturer's Instructions:

- Static-Control Resilient Flooring
- Accessories

Operation and Maintenance Data:

Static-Control Resilient Flooring

Accessories

1.2.1 Samples

1.2.1.1 Static-Control Resilient/Rubber Flooring

Submit three samples of each indicated color and type of flooring, base, moldings, and accessories sized a minimum 60 by 100 mm 2-1/2 by 4 inch.

1.2.1.2 Static-Control Carpet

Submit three "Production Quality" samples 450 by 450 mm 18 by 18 inches of each carpet proposed for use, showing quality, pattern, and color specified.

1.2.1.3 Moldings

Submit three of each type at least 300 mm 12 inches long.

1.2.1.4 Special Treatment Materials

Submit three samples showing system and installation method.

1.2.1.5 Operations and Maintenance Data

a. Submit Data Package 1 in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

b. Submit three copies of manufacturer's maintenance instructions for each type of flooring material describing recommended type of cleaning equipment and materials, spotting and cleaning methods, and cleaning cycles.

1.4 CERTIFICATIONS

1.4.1 Indoor Air Quality Certifications

1.4.1.1 Floor Covering Materials

Provide Static-Dissipative Vinyl Tile and wall base products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by FLOORSCORE, UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party programs that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide Static-Control Carpet certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold, CRI Green Label Plus or provide certification or validation by other third-party program that

products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

1.4.1.2 Adhesives

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party programs that
products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

1.5 EXTRA MATERIALS

Provide extra material from same dye lot for future maintenance. Provide a minimum of 12 - 15 percent of total square yards of each flooring and base type, pattern and color.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

The flooring manufacturer will approve the Qualifications of Applicator and certify that he/she has a minimum of 3 years of experience in the application of the materials to be used.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to the building site in original unopened containers bearing the manufacturer's name, style name, pattern color name and number, size, production run, project identification, handling instructions and related information. Observe ventilation and safety procedures specified in the Safety Data Sheets (SDS). Do not store flooring near materials that may off-gas or emit harmful fumes, such as kerosene heaters, fresh paint, or adhesives.

1.7.1 Static-Control Resilient Flooring

Store materials in a clean, dry, secure, and well-ventilated area free from strong contaminant sources and residues with ambient air temperature range as recommended by the manufacturer but not less than 20 degrees C 68 degrees F or more than 30 degrees C 85 degrees F. Stack materials according to manufacturer's recommendations. Protect materials from the direct flow of heat from hot-air registers, radiators and other heating fixtures and appliances.

1.7.2 Static-Control Carpet

Remove materials from packaging and store them in a clean, dry, well-ventilated area protected from damage, soiling, and moisture, and maintain at a temperature range as recommended by the manufacturer but not less than 16 degrees C 60 degrees F or more than 32 degrees C 90 degrees F for 2 days prior to installation.

1.8 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Provide temporary ventilation during work of this section.

1.8.1 Static-Control Resilient Flooring

Maintain areas in which resilient flooring is to be installed at a temperature range as recommended by the manufacturer but not less than 20 degrees C 68 degrees F or more than 30 degrees C 85 degrees F for 3 days before application, during application and 2 days after application, unless otherwise directed by the flooring manufacturer for the flooring being installed. Maintain a minimum temperature range as recommended by the manufacturer but not less than 13 degrees C 55 degrees F thereafter for the duration of the contract. Provide adequate ventilation to remove moisture from area and to comply with regulations limiting concentrations of hazardous vapors.

1.8.2 Static-Control Carpet

Maintain areas in which carpeting is to be installed at a temperature range as recommended by the manufacturer but not less than 16 degrees C 60 degrees F or more than 32 degrees C 90 degrees F for 2 days before installation, during installation, and for 2 days after installation. Maintain a minimum temperature range as recommended by the manufacturer but not less than 13 degrees C 55 degrees F thereafter for the duration of the contract. Do not permit traffic or movement of furniture or equipment in carpeted area for 24 hours after installation.

1.9 WARRANTY

1.9.1 Static-Control Resilient Flooring

Provide manufacturer's standard performance guarantees or warranties including a five-year wear warranty and ten-year conductivity warranty.

1.9.2 Static-Control Carpet

Provide manufacturer's standard performance guarantees or warranties including a minimum two years for material and workmanship and ten years for wear, static control, tuft bind and delamination.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STATIC-CONTROL RESILIENT FLOORING

2.1.1 Conductive Resilient Flooring

2.1.1.1 Conductive Vinyl Tile

Conductive vinyl tile must be a homogeneous vinyl product and conform to ASTM F1700. Provide electrical resistance from surface to surface and surface to ground between 25,000 ohms (2.5 x 10 to the 4th) and 1,000,000 ohms (1.0 x 10 to the 6th) when tested in accordance with ASTM F150. Tile

must be 300 mm 12 inches square and 3.2 mm1/8-inch thick. Tile must be pre-grooved for heat welding of seams. As required, provide welding rods as recommended by the manufacturer.

2.1.2 Static-Dissipative Resilient Flooring

2.1.2.1 Static-Dissipative Vinyl Tile

Static-dissipative vinyl tile must be a homogeneous vinyl product and conform to ASTM F1700.

Provide electrical resistance from surface to surface and surface to ground between 1,000,000 ohms

(1.0 x 10 to the 6th) and 1,000,000,000 ohms (1.0 x 10 to the 9th) when tested in accordance with ASTM F150.Tile must be 300 mm 12 inches square and 3.2 mm 1/8 inch thick. Tile must be pre-grooved for heat welding of seams. As required, provide welding rods as recommended by the manufacturer.

2.2 STATIC-CONTROL CARPET

Provide first quality carpet; free of visual blemishes, streaks, poorly dyed areas, fuzzing of pile yarn, spots or stains, and other physical and manufacturing defects. Provide carpet materials and treatments as reasonably non-allergenic and free of other recognized health hazards.
Provide a static control construction on all grade carpets which gives adequate durability and performance.

Provide certification of indoor air quality for Static-Control Carpet.

2.2.1 Physical Characteristics

2.2.1.1 Carpet Construction

Tufted

2.2.1.2 Type

Modular tile 600 by 600 mm square 24 by 24-inch square with 0.15 percent growth/shrink rate in accordance with ISO 2551.

2.2.1.3 Pile Type

Level-loop

2.2.1.4 Pile Fiber

Commercial 100 percent branded (federally registered trademark) nylon continuous filament.

2.2.1.5 Conductive Fiber

Provide a continuous conductive fiber as recommended by the manufacturer in every tuft.

2.2.1.6 Dye Method

Solution dyed

2.2.1.7 Backing System

Provide conductive backing system of synthetic material as recommended by the carpet manufacturer.

2.2.2 Static-Control Carpet Performance Requirements

2.2.2.1 Electrical Resistance

Provide electrical resistance from surface to surface and surface to ground between 25,000 ohms

(2.5 x 10 to the 4th) and 100,000,000 ohms (1.0 x 10 to the 8th) ohms when tested in accordance with NFPA 99.

2.2.2.2 Tuft Bind

Provide tuft bind force required to pull a tuft or loop free from carpet backing with a minimum 40 N 10-pound average force for loop pile.

2.2.2.3 Colorfastness to Crocking

Comply dry and wet crocking with AATCC 165 and with a Class 4 minimum rating on the AATCC Color Transference Chart for all colors.

2.2.2.4 Colorfastness to Light

Comply colorfastness to light with AATCC 16, Test Option E "Water-Cooled Xenon-Arc Lamp, Continuous Light" and with a minimum 4 grey scale rating after 40 hours.

2.2.2.5 Colorfastness to Water

Comply colorfastness to water with AATCC 107 and with a minimum 4.0 gray scale rating and a minimum 4.0 transfer scale rating.

2.2.2.6 Delamination Strength

Provide delamination strength for tufted carpet with a secondary back of minimum 440 N/m 2.5 lbs./inch.

2.3 WALL BASE

2.3.1 Resilient Base

2.3.2 Self-Coving

Self-coving must consist of static-control resilient flooring over a cove stick and must have cove cap and metal corner as recommended by the manufacturer of the flooring. Self-coving base material must be same as floor material.

2.4 ADHESIVES

Provide conductive adhesive as recommended by the manufacturer of the static-control flooring [and self-coving base]. Provide conductive adhesive for carpet tile that is also releasable as recommended by the manufacturer. Provide adhesive for wall base as recommended by the wall

base manufacturer.

Provide non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) that meet either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (use the office or classroom requirements, regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168. Provide aerosol adhesives used on the interior of the building that meet either

emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (use the office or classroom requirements,

regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of GS-36. Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for adhesives.

2.5 MOLDINGS

Provide heavy duty tapered moldings of vinyl or rubber-colored anodized aluminum and types as recommended by flooring manufacturer for both edges and transitions of flooring materials specified. Provide vertical lip on molding of maximum 6 mm 1/4 inch. Provide bevel change in level between 6 and 13 mm 1/4 and 1/2 inch with a slope no greater than 1:2.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

Use accessories recommended by the manufacturer of the flooring.

2.7 ELECTRICAL GROUND CONNECTION

Provide an electrical ground connection that meets the requirements of ESD S6.1. Connection between the static-control floor system and the external grounding system must be provided. Contact with the static-control floor system must be with conductive grounding strip and must have the greater of the following: a minimum contact area of 5800 square mm 9 square inch or the dimensions recommended by the manufacturer. Provide the grounding conductor recommended by the manufacturer of the flooring. Connect and install the grounding conductor as recommend by the flooring manufacturer.

2.8 MANUFACTURER'S COLOR, PATTERN AND TEXTURE

Provide color, pattern and texture [in accordance with Section 09 06 00 SCHEDULES FOR FINISHES as indicated. Provide flooring in any one continuous area or replacement of damaged flooring in continuous area from same production run with same shade and pattern.

2.9 FIRE RESISTANCE TESTING REQUIREMENTS

Provide a minimum average critical radiant flux of 0.22 watts per square centimeter for flooring in corridors and exits when tested in accordance with ASTM E648.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SURFACE PREPARATION

Before any work under this section is begun, defects such as rough or scaling concrete, low spots, high spots, and uneven surfaces must be corrected, and damaged portions of concrete slabs must be repaired in accordance with flooring manufacturer's recommended instructions. Floor must be in a level plane with a maximum variation of 3 mm 1/8 inch every 3 m 10 feet, except where indicated as

sloped. Repair cracks and irregularities and prepare the subfloor in accordance with flooring manufacturer's recommended instructions. Curing and sealing compounds should not be used on concrete surfaces to receive flooring unless they have been tested and approved by the flooring manufacturer. In addition, remove paint, varnish, oils, release agents, sealers, waxes, and adhesives, as required by the flooring product in accordance with manufacturer's printed installation instructions. If a curing compound is required, it must be coordinated for compatibility with the flooring adhesive.

3.2 MOISTURE, ALKALINITY AND BOND TESTS

Determine the suitability of the concrete subfloor for receiving the flooring with regard to moisture content and pH level by moisture and alkalinity tests. Conduct moisture testing in accordance with ASTM F1869 or ASTM F2170, unless otherwise recommended by the flooring manufacturer. Conduct alkalinity testing as recommended by the flooring manufacturer.
Determine the compatibility of the flooring adhesives to the concrete floors by a bond test in accordance with the flooring manufacturer's recommendations.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF STATIC-CONTROL RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

Install static-control resilient flooring, ground connections, heat welded joints and accessories in accordance with the approved manufacturer's installation instructions. Tile lines and joints must be kept square, symmetrical, tight, and even. Tile at the perimeter of the area to be finished may vary as necessary to maintain full-size tiles in the field, but no perimeter tile may be less than one-half the field tile size, except where irregular shaped rooms make it impossible. Tile must be cut, fitted, and scribed to walls, partitions, and projections after field flooring has been applied. Install grounding strips in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions. Protect edges of flooring material meeting hard surface flooring with molding and install in accordance with the molding manufacturer's printed instructions.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF STATIC-CONTROL CARPET

Install static-control carpet, ground connections and accessories in accordance with the approved manufacturer's installation instructions and CRI 104/CRI 105. Protect edges of carpet meeting hard surface flooring with molding and install in accordance with the molding manufacturer's printed instructions. Follow ventilation, personal protection, and other safety precautions recommended by the adhesive manufacturer. Continue ventilation during installation and for at least 72 hours following installation. Install modular tiles with release adhesive and join-together snugly. Lay tiles in [the same direction] [an alternating pattern] with accessibility to the subfloor where required. Install grounding strips in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF WALL BASE

3.6.1 Resilient Base

Install wall base in accordance with manufacturer's printed installation instructions. Prepare and apply adhesives in accordance with manufacturer's printed directions. Tighten base joints and make even with adjacent resilient flooring. Fill voids along the top edge of base at masonry walls

with caulk. Roll entire vertical surface of base with hand roller and press toe of base with a straight piece of wood to ensure proper alignment. Avoid excess adhesive in corners.

3.6.2 Self-Coving

The static-control resilient flooring must have a self-coving base and must be installed in accordance with the flooring manufacturer's printed installation instructions. Extend the self-cove up the walls, columns and pilasters 100 mm 4 inches. Terminate the coving with a cove cap. Place a cove stick at the floor-wall junction to support the coving at the bend. Provide self-cove at room perimeter and at

fixed vertical interruptions to the flooring.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

The flooring must be cleaned in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Flooring must be protected by a covering of heavy-duty building paper before foot traffic is permitted. Lap and secure edges of kraft paper protection to provide a continuous cover. Boardwalks must be placed over flooring in areas where subsequent building operations might damage the floor. Remove and replace flooring that becomes loose, broken, or curled prior to acceptance, or flooring that does not conform to resistance requirements of ASTM F150.

3.9 TESTING

Test the flooring in accordance with and conform to the requirements of ESD S6.1.

END OF SECTION

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 09 65 13 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Resilient base.
      a. Traditional Rubber Base
   2. Resilient molding accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, not less than 12 inches long.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following time periods:
   1. 48 hours before installation.
   2. During installation.
   3. 48 hours after installation.

B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.

C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TRADITIONAL RUBBER BASE

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Rubber base is based on the following product manufactured by Roppe Corporation, USA. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named product or a comparable product that meets or exceeds the materials and/or performance requirements listed in this specification.
   1. Pinnacle Rubber Wall Base.
   2. Adhesives:
      a. Type AW-510 for porous surfaces requiring a more aggressive bond.
      b. Type C-630 contact adhesive for porous or non-porous surfaces.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   1. Johnsonite Inc.
   2. Flexco.
   3. Mondo Rubber International, Inc.

C. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TP (rubber, thermoplastic).
   1. Group: I (solid, homogeneous).
   2. Style and Location:
      a. Style B, Cove:

D. Thickness: 0.125 inch.

E. Height: 4 inches.

F. Lengths: 120’ coils.

G. Outside Corners: Job formed.

H. Inside Corners: Job formed.

I. Colors: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.

2.2 RUBBER MOLDING ACCESSORY

A. Description: Carpet edge for glue-down applications, reducer strip for resilient flooring joiner for tile and carpet, and transition strips.

B. Profile and Dimensions: As indicated.

C. Locations: Provide rubber molding accessories in areas indicated.

D. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.

B. Adhesives: Epoxy-type water-resistant adhesive recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.
   1. Provide adhesives complying with FEMA Technical Bulletin 2 “Flood Damage-Resistant Materials Requirements.” Organic adhesives are not approved.

C. Metal Edge Strips: Extruded aluminum with mill finish of width shown, of height required to protect exposed edges of flooring, and in maximum available lengths to minimize running joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
   1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
   1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.

B. Concrete Substrates for Resilient Accessories: Prepare horizontal surfaces according to ASTM F 710.
   1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
   2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
   3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
   4. Moisture Testing: Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing according to manufacturer's written recommendations, but not less stringent than the following:
      a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test according to ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
      b. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes according to ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum 75 percent relative humidity level.

C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.

D. Do not install resilient products until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
   1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.

E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.

B. Apply resilient base to walls, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.

C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.

D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.

E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.

F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.

G. Preformed Corners: Install preformed corners before installing straight pieces.

H. Job-Formed Corners:
   1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 12 inches in length.
      a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
   2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible.
      a. Miter or cope corners to minimize open joints.

3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.

B. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.

B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
   1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.

2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.

C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.

D. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 09 65 13

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 09 68 10 – ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) CARPET

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

A. This section includes an ESD modular carpet system for use in electronic manufacturing environments including specifications for total system resistance to ground.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes carpet and installation.

B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Division 9 Section "Resilient Wall Base and Accessories" for materials and installation.
2. Division 16 Section "Interior Lighting" for floor reflectance factors required in designing and selecting lighting fixtures.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer’s specifications and installation instructions and independent ESD test data.

C. Samples: Submit manufacturer’s 18” x 18” samples for color match and electrical testing.

D. Schedule of carpet using same room designations indicated on Drawings.

E. Maintenance data for carpet and cushion to include in the operation and maintenance manual specified in Division 1. Include the following:

1. Methods for maintaining carpet including manufacturer's recommended frequency for maintaining carpet.

2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to finishes and performance. Include cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures.

F. Provide 5 customer references of similar size and scope with ESD recorded audited data for a period of at least 5 years.

G. Qualified Manufacturers:

1. Julie Industries, 355 Middlesex Avenue, Wilmington, MA 01887, phone: 978-988-8802; fax: 978-988-8803.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Storage of Materials: Materials shall be stored in a warm (>65° F) area.

B. Electrical Properties Testing: Electrical Resistance Tests shall be confirmed by the manufacturer or by an independent testing agency qualified to perform the required testing. Testing shall be tested based on the ESD S 7.1 Test methodology. Body charge generation shall be determined by means of an adaptation of the procedure specified by the American Association of Textile & Colorists (AATCC), Committee RA32, AATCC 134-1979, method for measuring maximum body voltage resulting from walking using conductive footwear.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. General: Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104, Section 5: "Storage and Handling."

B. Deliver materials to Project site in original factory wrappings and containers, labeled with identification of manufacturer, brand name, and lot number.

C. Store materials on-site in original undamaged packages, inside well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soilage, extreme temperatures, and humidity. Lay flat, with continuous blocking off ground.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 6: "Site Conditions."

B. Space Enclosure and Environmental Limitations: Do not install carpet until space is enclosed and weatherproof, wet-work in space is completed and nominally dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are and will be continuously maintained at values near those indicated for final occupancy.

C. Subfloor Moisture Conditions: Moisture emission rate of not more than 3 lb/1000 sq. ft./24 hours when tested by calcium chloride moisture test in compliance with CRI 104, 6.2.1, with subfloor temperatures not less than 55 deg F.

D. Subfloor Alkalinity Conditions: A pH range of 5 to 9 when subfloor is wetted with potable water and pHydrion paper is applied.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. General Warranty: The special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. Special Carpet Warranty: Submit a written warranty executed by carpet manufacturer and Installer agreeing to repair or replace carpet that does not meet requirements or that fails in materials or workmanship within the specified warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to, more than 10 percent loss of face fiber, edge raveling, snags, runs, and delamination.

C. Warranty Period: 10 year wear limited replacement warranty. Life of carpet static warranty.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CARPET

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified in each carpet Product Data sheet at end of this Section.

2.3 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

A. Concrete-Slab Primer: Nonstaining type as recommended by the following:

1. Carpet manufacturer.

B. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: As recommended by the following:

1. Carpet manufacturer.

C. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated and to comply with flammability requirements for installed carpet as recommended by the following:

1. Carpet manufacturer.

D. Seaming Cement: Hot-melt adhesive tape or similar product recommended by carpet manufacturer for taping seams and butting cut edges at backing to form secure seams and to prevent pile loss at seams.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine subfloors and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of carpet. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Verify that subfloors and conditions are satisfactory for carpet installation and comply with requirements specified in this Section and those of the following:

1. Carpet manufacturer.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. General: Comply with carpet manufacturer's installation recommendations to prepare substrates indicated to receive carpet installation.

B. Level subfloor within 1/4 inch in 10 feet, noncumulative, in all directions. Sand or grind protrusions, bumps, and ridges. Patch and repair cracks and rough areas. Fill depressions.

1. Use leveling and patching compounds to fill cracks, holes, and depressions in subfloor as recommended by the following:

a. Carpet manufacturer.

C. Remove subfloor coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone.

D. Broom or vacuum clean subfloors to be covered with carpet. Following cleaning, examine subfloors for moisture, alkaline salts, carbonation, or dust.

E. Concrete-Subfloor Preparation: Apply concrete-slab primer, according to manufacturer's directions, where recommended by the following:

1. Carpet manufacturer.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Direct Glue-Down Installation: Comply with CRI 104, Section 8: "Direct Glue-Down."

B. Comply with carpet manufacturer's recommendations for seam locations and direction of carpet; maintain uniformity of carpet direction and lay of pile. At doorways, center seams under door in closed position. Do not bridge building expansion joints with continuous carpet.

C. Where demountable partitions or other items are indicated for installation on top of finished carpet floor, install carpet before installation of these items.

D. Cut and fit carpet to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet manufacturer.

E. Extend carpet into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.

F. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Perform the following operations immediately after completing installation.

1. Remove visible adhesive, seam sealer, and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet manufacturer.
2. Remove protruding yarns from carpet surface.
3. Vacuum carpet using commercial machine with face-beater element.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 15: "Protection of Indoor Installation."

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer that ensure carpet is without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.

PRODUCT DATA SHEET 1 - CARPET

A. Carpet Designation: Julie Industries StaticSmart ESD Carpet, or approved equivalent.

B. Preparation and Installation: Proper preparation of substrate and handling material in accordance with manufacturer's installation guidelines.

C. Application of StaticSmart ESD Carpet: Install StaticSmart ESD Carpet utilizing Conductive Releasable ESD Adhesive $1.0x10_6$ ohms Rtt.

1. Grounding
    a. Building Ground: Connect copper foil grounding strap to the structural building steel every 1,000 square feet
    Or
    b. Connect copper foil grounding strap to the electrical ground every 1,000 square feet.

D. Approved Materials: Approved materials for application within this scope shall possess the following minimum characteristics:

1. Construction Factors:

    a. Yarn oz./sq.yd.: Classic/Contempo = 24 oz., Conquest = 20 oz.
    b. Conductive Fiber: StaticSmart FibreLink ESD conductive fiber in every tuft.
    c. Construction: Classic – textured loop, straight/PSP with ECC Roll, Contempo – textured graphic loop, Conquest – pattern loop.
    d. Stitches per inch: Classic = 11, Contempo = 10.0, Conquest = 9.
    e. Pile Height: high: 6/32:, low: 4/32.

f. Fiber: Classic – Solutia LXI nylon, Contempo – Performa SD type 6 nylon w/up to 17% of total face fiber as Recycled Content, Conquest – 91% ECO Solution Q BCF SD Nylon/9% Yarn Dyed BCF Nylon w/Recycled Content.
g. Backing: Static dissipative PVC with conductive additive.
h. Total Weight: Classic/Contempo = 148 oz./sq.yd., Conquest = 147.5 oz./sq.yd.
i. Size: 18" x 18" tile, 24" x 24" tile, broadloom

2. Physical Properties:
   a. Sound Absorption Text, ASTM C423-90: Noise reduction coefficient, NRC > .25.
   b. Radiant Panel Test, ASTM E-648: Average critical radiant flux, Class 1, ≥ .45 w/cm2.
   c. NBS Smoke Test, ASTM E-662: Smoke density, < 450.

3. Electrical Properties:

   a. Electrical Resistance Test, ESD S7.1 Resistive. Characterization of Materials: Six or more readings from surface to groundable point. Tested with an applied voltage of 100V. Measured in Ohms, 1.0 x 10_5 minimum, 1.0 x 10_8 maximum.

   b. Electrical Resistance Test, ESD S7.1 Resistance. Characterization of Materials: Six or more readings between electrodes placed 1 foot apart. Tested with an applied voltage of 100V. Measured in Ohms, 2.5 x 10_4 minimum, 5.0 x 10_7 maximum.

   c. Electrical Resistance/Voltage Test ANSI/EDS S-20.20, compliant when using approved conductive footwear system. Results within recommended range < 35 x 10_6 Ohm or < 100 volts.

   d. D.O.D. HDBK263A, Section 40.1.2: Meets recommended guidelines for sensitive ESD devices, Class 1.

4. Conductive Releasable ESD Adhesive:

   a. Construction Factors: Base – acrylic polymer/aqueous emulsion; Solvent – water-based.

   b. Electrical Properties: Electrical Resistance Test, ESD S7.1 Resistive. Characterization of Materials: Six or more readings between electrodes placed 3 feet apart. Tested with an applied voltage of 100V., Measured in Ohms, 1.0 x 10_4 minimum, 1.0 x 10_6 maximum.

   c. Groundable Path: Copper foil strips, 2" x 24", < 10 Ohms.

L. Color and Pattern: As selected by Engineer from the manufacturer's full range of colors and patterns produced for carpet specified. Design basis equal to "Julie Industries", 7402 Crystal Brook.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 68 13 - TILE CARPETING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes modular, carpet tile.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 09653 "Resilient Base and Accessories" for resilient wall base and accessories installed with carpet tile.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to carpet tile installation including, but not limited to, the following:

    a. Review delivery, storage, and handling procedures.
    b. Review ambient conditions and ventilation procedures.
    c. Review subfloor preparation procedures.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include manufacturer's written data on physical characteristics, durability, and fade resistance.
2. Include installation recommendations for each type of substrate.

B. B. Shop Drawings: Show the following:

1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet tiles.
2. Carpet tile type, color, and dye lot.
3. Type of subfloor.
4. Type of installation.
5. Pattern of installation.
6. Pattern type, location, and direction.
7. Pile direction.
8. Type, color, and location of edge, transition, and other accessory strips.
9. Transition details to other flooring materials.

C. Samples: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.

1. Carpet Tile: Full-size Sample.
2. Exposed Edge, Transition, and Other Accessory Stripping: 12-inch- (300-mm-) long Samples.

D. Product Schedule: For carpet tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Product Test Reports: For carpet tile, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For carpet tiles to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:

1. Methods for maintaining carpet tile, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet tile.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Carpet Tile: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of amount installed for each type indicated, but not less than 10 sq. yd. (8.3 sq. m).

2. Verify number of extra carpet tiles needed for replacement after temporary TSA guard knee walls are removed and purchase/store this amount on top of general extra inventory. See plans

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified by the International Certified Floorcovering Installers Association at the Commercial II certification level.

B. Fire-Test-Response Ratings: Where indicated, provide carpet tile identical to those of assemblies tested for fire response according to NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with CRI 104.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Comply with CRI 104 for temperature, humidity, and ventilation limitations.

B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install carpet tiles until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

C. Do not install carpet tiles over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty for Carpet Tiles: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet tile installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet tile due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.
2. Failures include, but are not limited to, more than 10 percent edge raveling, snags, runs, dimensional stability, excess static discharge, loss of tuft bind strength, loss of face fiber, and delamination.
3. Warranty Period: Lifetime from date of Final Acceptance.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CARPET TILE

A. Basis-of-Design Product in TSA space: Mfr: Mannington, 18” x 36” Collection: Against the Grain – Type: Carved (Grey and Charcoal) in a “Cross Band” design – Group A (CPT-2 “With the Grain”) stacked alignment long ways East/West grain flows East/West – Strips of Group B (CPT-2A “Cross Grain”) stacked alignment long ways East/West but grain flows North/South.

1. https://a.mannington.io/docs/technicalspecification/a452454dd1284589b06388e53c9ee54b/pdf/14mcm058_against_the_grain_install_sheets_for_web_v3_cross_band-20160819201610.pdf
    a. In Hold Room space same product but without cross band design. To be Group A (CPT-2B “With the Grain”) stacked alignment long ways North/South grain flows North/South.

B. or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Interface.
2. Milliken.
3. Shaw Carpet.

C. Basis-of-Design Walk-off Mats in Hold Room (CPT-3): Mfr: Tarkett. Product: Resilient Terra-Turf Entrance Matting Rubber Floor/Carpet Tile. Color: Black Brown – Install: Quarter Turn – 986 Terra Turn Adhesive

D. Color: As scheduled.

E. Pattern: As scheduled.

F. Size: as scheduled.

2.2 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.

B. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining, pressure-sensitive type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that complies with flammability requirements for installed carpet tile and is recommended by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.

C. Metal Edge/Transition Strips: Extruded aluminum with mill finish of profile and width shown, of height required to protect exposed edge of carpet, and of maximum lengths to minimize running joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet tile performance. Examine carpet tile for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.

B. Concrete Subfloors: Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F 710 and the following:

1. Slab substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, hardeners, and other materials that may interfere with adhesive bond. Determine adhesion and dryness characteristics by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
2. Subfloor finishes comply with requirements specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for slabs receiving carpet tile.
3. Subfloors are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 6.2, "Site Conditions; Floor Preparation," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet tile installation.

B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions 1/8 inch (3 mm) wide or wider and protrusions more than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

D. Clean metal substrates of grease, oil, soil and rust, and prime if directed by adhesive manufacturer. Rough sand painted metal surfaces and remove loose paint. Sand aluminum surfaces, to remove metal oxides, immediately before applying adhesive.

E. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet tile.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 14, "Carpet Modules," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions.

B. Installation Method: Glue down; install every tile with full-spread, releasable, pressure sensitive adhesive.

C. Maintain dye lot integrity. Do not mix dye lots in same area.

D. Cut and fit carpet tile to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.

E. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.

F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on finish flooring as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.

G. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders.

H. Stagger joints of carpet tiles so carpet tile grid is offset from access flooring panel grid. Do not fill seams of access flooring panels with carpet adhesive; keep seams free of adhesive.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet tile:

1. Remove excess adhesive, seam sealer, and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet tile surface.
3. Vacuum carpet tile using commercial machine with face-beater element.

B. Protect installed carpet tile to comply with CRI 104, Section 16, "Protecting Indoor Installations."

C. Protect carpet tile against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 09 68 13

SECTION 09 91 23 INTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following interior substrates:
   1. Concrete.
   2. Concrete masonry units (CMUs).
   3. Steel and iron.
   4. Gypsum board.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 051200 “Structural Steel Framing” for shop priming structural steel framing.
   2. Section 053100 "Steel Decking" for shop priming steel decking.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. MPI Gloss Level 1(Matte): Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

B. MPI Gloss Level 2(Flat): Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

C. MPI Gloss Level 3(Eggshell): 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

D. MPI Gloss Level 4(Satin): 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

E. MPI Gloss Level 5(Semi-gloss): 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

F. MPI Gloss Level 6(Gloss): 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

G. MPI Gloss Level 7(high Gloss): More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
   1. Include Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
   2. Indicate VOC content.

B. Coating Maintenance Manual: Provide coating maintenance manual including area summary with finish schedule, area detail designating location where each product/color/finish was used, product data pages, material safety data sheets, care and cleaning instructions, touch-up procedures, and color samples of each color and finish used

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution. This section can be executed in the field and then be subject to approval by architect for final color and finish type.
   1. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
      a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.
   2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
   1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
   2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.

B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Paint is based on the products manufactured by The Sherwin Williams Company. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named product or a comparable product that meets or exceeds the materials and/or performance requirements listed in this specification.

B. Products: Manufacturers, subject to compliance with requirements, include but are not limited to those listed below. Provide comparable products identified per paint categories in the Interior Painting Schedule.
   1. Benjamin Moore & Co.

2. Glidden Professional.
3. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

A. Material Compatibility:
1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

B. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
1. Concrete: 12 percent.
2. Masonry (Clay and CMUs): 12 percent.
3. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
4. Plaster: 12 percent.

C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.

D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.

E. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.

B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
   1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.

C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
   1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.

D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
   1. SSPC-SP 2.
   2. SSPC-SP 3.
   3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4.
   4. SSPC-SP 11.

G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.

H. Wood Substrates:
   1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
   2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
   3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
   4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

I. Cotton or Canvas Insulation Covering Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."
   1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.

2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.

B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.

D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
1. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
   a. Equipment, including panelboards.
   b. Uninsulated metal piping.
   c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
   d. Pipe hangers and supports.
   e. Metal conduit.
   f. Plastic conduit.
   g. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
   h. Other items as directed by Architect.
2. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.

D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

A. Concrete Substrates, Nontraffic Surfaces:
   1. Latex System:
      a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkali resistant, water based.
         1) Loxon® Concrete & Masonry Primer Sealer, A24W8300.
      b. Prime Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
      c. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
      d. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 4).
         1) ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Eg-Shel, B20-2600 Series.

B. Concrete Substrates, Traffic Surfaces for interior concrete surfaces not scheduled to receive a finish (excluding Hangar floor):
   1. Water-Based Concrete Floor Sealer System:
      a. First Coat: Sealer, water based, for concrete floors, matching topcoat.
      b. Topcoat: Sealer, water based, for concrete floors.

C. CMU Substrates:
   1. Latex System:
      a. Block Filler: Block filler, latex, interior/exterior.
         1) PrepRite Block Filler, B25W25.
      b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
      c. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 4).
         1) ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Eg-Shel, B20-2600 Series.

D. Steel Substrates:
   1. Latex over Shop-Applied Quick-Drying Shop Primer System:
      a. Prime Coat: Primer, quick dry, for shop application.
         1) Pro Industrial™ Pro-Cryl® Universal Primer, B66-310 Series.
         2) Prime coat may be eliminated if steel substrate is shop primed.
      b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
      c. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 5).
         1) Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss, B66-650 Series.

E. Gypsum Board Substrates for ceilings and soffits:
   1. Latex over Latex Sealer System:
      a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior.
         1) ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W2600.
      b. Prime Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
      c. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
      d. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 2).

1) ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Flat, B30-2600 Series.

F. Cotton or Canvas and ASJ Insulation-Covering Substrates: Including pipe and duct coverings.
1. Latex System:
a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior.
1) Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall, Flat, B42-181 Series.
b. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 2).
1) Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall, Flat, B42-181 Series.

END OF SECTION 09 91 23

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 09 93 00 - STAINING AND TRANSPARENT FINISHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Surface preparation.

B. Field application of stains and transparent finishes.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 061800 Glue Lam Construction, 095426 - Suspended Wood Ceilings

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Comply with ASTM D16 for interpretation of terms used in this section.

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. 40 CFR 59, Subpart D - National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency; current edition.

B. ASTM D16 - Standard Terminology for Paint, Related Coatings, Materials, and Applications; 2016.

C. ASTM D4442 - Standard Test Methods for Direct Moisture Content Measurement of Wood and Wood-Based Materials; 2020.

D. MPI (APL) - Master Painters Institute Approved Products List; Master Painters and Decorators Association; Current Edition.

E. MPI (APSM) - Master Painters Institute Architectural Painting Specification Manual; Current Edition.

F. SCAQMD 1113 - Architectural Coatings; 1977 (Amended 2016).

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide complete list of products to be used, with the following information for each:

1. Manufacturer's name, product name and/or catalog number, and general product category.

C. Samples: Submit two samples, illustrating selected colors and sheens for each system with specified coats cascaded. Submit on actual wood substrate to be finished, 12x24 inch in size. Provide several stain/finish samples per wood manufacturer’s recommendations to match existing Glu-Lam construction and wood plank ceiling finishes at the airport. Architect to select from samples provided.

E. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate special surface preparation procedures.

F. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.

G. Applicator's Qualification Statement.

H. Maintenance Data: Submit data including finish schedule showing where each product/color/finish was used, product technical data sheets, safety data sheets (SDS), care and cleaning instructions, touch-up procedures, and color samples of each color and finish used.

I. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
   1. See Section 016000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
   2. Extra Stain and Transparent Finish Materials: 2 gallons of each color and type; from the same product run, store where directed.
   3. Label each container with color and type in addition to the manufacturer's label.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified, with minimum five years documented experience.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver products to site in sealed and labeled containers; inspect to verify acceptability.

B. Container Label: Include manufacturer's name, type of stain or transparent finish, brand name, lot number, brand code, coverage, surface preparation, drying time, cleanup requirements, color designation, and instructions for mixing and reducing.

C. Stain and Transparent Finish Materials: Store at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F and a maximum of 90 degrees F, in ventilated area, and as required by manufacturer's instructions.

1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Do not apply materials when surface and ambient temperatures are outside the temperature ranges required by manufacturer of stains and transparent finishes.

B. Follow manufacturer's recommended procedures for producing best results, including testing of substrates, moisture in substrates, and humidity and temperature limitations.

C. Do not apply materials when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 degrees F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

D. Minimum Application Temperature: 50 degrees F unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.

E. Provide lighting level of 80 ft candles measured mid-height at substrate surface.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Provide finishes used in any individual system from the same manufacturer; no exceptions. Provide several stain/finish samples per wood manufacturer's recommendations to match existing Glu-Lam construction and wood plank ceiling finishes at the airport. Architect to select from samples provided.

2.02 Stains and Transparent FINISHES - GENERAL

A. Finishes:
   1. Provide finishes capable of being readily and uniformly dispersed to a homogeneous coating, with good flow and brushing properties, and capable of drying or curing free of streaks or sags.
   2. Provide materials that are compatible with one another and the substrates indicated under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
   3. Supply each finish material in quantity required to complete entire project's work from a single production run.
   4. Do not reduce, thin, or dilute finishes or add materials unless such procedure is specifically described in manufacturer's product instructions.

B. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content: Comply with 40 CFR 59, Subpart D - National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency; current edition.

C. Sheens: Provide the sheens to match existing Glu-Lam construction finish and Wood Plank ceiling finish at the airport. Sheen will be selected by Architect from the manufacturer's full line with wood manufacturer's recommendations and samples.

D. Colors: Provide colors/stains to match existing Glu-Lam construction finish and Wood Plank ceiling finish at the airport. Colors/stains will be selected by Architect from the manufacturer's full line with wood manufacturer's recommendations and samples.

2.03 Interior STAIN AND TRANSPARENT FINISH SYSTEMS

A. Finish on Wood - Vertical Surfaces:
   1. Stain: Semi-Transparent Stain for Wood, Water Based; Color to match existing airport Glu-Lams and Wood Plank ceiling.
      a. Products:
         1) Sherwin Williams Interior Water-Based Wood Stain or equal. – Match existing airport Glu-Lams and Wood Plank ceiling.
   2. Sealer: Water Based, Sanding Sealer, Clear.
      a. Products:
         1) Sherwin Williams Interior Water Based Sanding Sealer or equal. – Match existing airport Glu-Lams and Wood Plank ceiling.
   3. Top Coat(s): Polyurethane Varnish, High Build.
      a. Products:

1) Sherwin-Williams MinWax High Build Polyurethane, Satin or equal. – Match existing airport Glu-Lams and Wood Plank ceiling.

4. Top Coat Sheen:
   a. Satin: Gloss level 4 – Match existing airport Glu-Lams and Wood Plank ceiling..

2.04 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

A. Accessory Materials: Cleaning agents, cleaning cloths, sanding materials, and clean-up materials as required for final completion of finished surfaces.

B. Patching Material: Latex filler.

C. Fastener Head Cover Material: Latex filler.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Do not begin application of stains and finishes until substrates have been properly prepared.

B. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work as instructed by the product manufacturer.

C. Examine surfaces scheduled to be finished prior to commencement of work. Report any condition that may potentially effect proper application.

D. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

E. Measure moisture content of surfaces using an electronic moisture meter. Do not apply finishes unless moisture content of surfaces are below the following maximums:
   1. Wood: 15 percent, measured in accordance with ASTM D4442.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Clean surfaces thoroughly and correct defects prior to application.

B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

C. Remove or repair existing finishes that exhibit surface defects.

D. Remove or mask surface appurtenances, including electrical plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings, prior to preparing surfaces or finishing.

E. Seal surfaces that might cause bleed through or staining of topcoat.

F. Wood Surfaces to Receive Transparent Finish: Wipe off dust and grit prior to sealing, seal knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections with sealer. Fill nail holes and cracks after sealer has dried; sand lightly between coats. Prime concealed surfaces with gloss varnish reduced 25 percent with thinner.

3.03 APPLICATION

A. Apply products in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations.

B. Do not apply finishes to surfaces that are not dry. Allow applied coats to dry before next coat is applied.

C. Apply each coat to uniform appearance in thicknesses specified by manufacturer.

D. Sand wood surfaces lightly between coats to achieve required finish.

E. Vacuum clean surfaces of loose particles. Use tack cloth to remove dust and particles just prior to applying next coat.

F. Wood to Receive Transparent Finishes: Tint fillers to match wood. Work fillers into the grain before set. Wipe excess from surface.

G. Reinstall items removed prior to finishing.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. See Section 014000 - Quality Requirements, for general requirements for field inspection.

3.05 CLEANING

A. Collect waste material that could constitute a fire hazard, place in closed metal containers, and remove daily from site.

3.06 PROTECTION

A. Protect finishes until completion of project.

B. Touch-up damaged finishes after Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 09 93 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 09 96 46 – INTUMESCENT PAINT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes surface preparation and application of fire-retardant intumescent paint to interior items and surfaces.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 10 53 “Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry” for plywood backing panels painted with intumescent paint.
2. Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" for primers and finish coats that may be used with intumescent paint finishes.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
2. Indicate low VOC content.

B. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

C. Samples: For each type of topcoat product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Material Test Reports: For each intumescent paint.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Apply waterborne intumescent paints only when temperatures of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 90 deg F.

B. Do not apply intumescent paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

C. Allow wet surfaces to dry thoroughly and to attain temperature and conditions specified before starting or continuing coating operation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Benjamin Moore & Co.: Super Spec HP Latex Flat Fire Retardant P59-01
2. PPG Paints.: Speedhide Interior Fire retardant Flat Latex
3. Quantum Chemical.: SafeCoat Latex Intumescent

2.2 INTUMESCENT PAINT MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics of Fire-Retardant Systems: As tested according to ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

C. Material Compatibility:

1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each material or coat, products and spreading rates shall be as recommended in writing by intumescent paint manufacturer for use on substrate indicated. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant coating classification and surface-burning characteristics indicated.

D. VOC Content: For field applications that are inside the weatherproofing system, paints and coatings shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction and the following VOC content limits:

1. Flat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
2. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
3. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 100 g/L.
4. Clear Wood Finishes, Varnishes: 275 g/L.

E. Low-Emitting Materials: For field applications that are inside the weatherproofing system, paints and coatings shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's

"Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

F. Colors and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with manufacturer's requirements for surface treatments, shop-primed surfaces, maximum moisture content, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Begin coating only when moisture content of wood substrate is 15 percent or less when measured with an electronic moisture meter.

C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions, and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.

D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions applicable to substrates and coating systems indicated.

B. Coat all sides of plywood backing panels before installation.

1. Do not paint over fire classification labeling.

C. Coat surfaces prior to installing items over surfaces. Remove hardware and hardware accessories, plates, machined surfaces, light fixtures, and similar items already installed that are not to be coated.

1. After completing coating operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.

D. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of coatings, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants. Do not coat surfaces if surface moisture content or alkalinity exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Remove incompatible primers, and reprime substrate with compatible primers as required to produce coating systems indicated.

2. Perform cleaning and coating application so dust and other contaminants from cleaning process do not fall on wet, newly coated surfaces.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. General: Apply intumescent paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with requirements for listing and labeling for surface-burning characteristics specified.

1. Use equipment and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material being applied.

2. Coat surfaces behind movable items the same as similar exposed surfaces.

3. Apply each coat separately according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Apply coatings to prepared surfaces as soon as practical after preparation and before subsequent surface soiling or deterioration.

C. Apply coatings to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Produce sharp lines and color breaks.

1. Pigmented Finishes: If undercoats or other conditions show through pigmented topcoat/overcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

B. After completing coating application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

C. Protect work of other trades against damage from coating application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.

D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated surfaces.

3.5 INTERIOR INTUMESCENT PAINTING SCHEDULE

A. Wood Substrates: Wood-based panel products (Plywood Backing Panels).

1. Pigmented, Fire-Retardant, Water-Based System.

a. Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.

b. Topcoat: Fire-retardant topcoat, latex, interior.

END OF SECTION 09 96 46

SECTION 10 44 13 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:
      a. Portable fire extinguishers.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 104416 "Fire Extinguishers."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed-, semirecessed-, or surface-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.

B. Shop Drawings: For fire-protection cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

C. Product Schedule: For fire-protection cabinets. Indicate whether recessed, semirecessed, or surface mounted. Coordinate final fire-protection cabinet schedule with fire-extinguisher schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain fire-protection cabinets, accessories, and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET

A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.

B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated.

C. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.
1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.

D. Recessed Cabinet:
1. Exposed Flat Trim: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).

E. Semirecessed Cabinet: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface, with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).
1. Square-Edge Trim: 1-1/4- to 1-1/2-inch backbend depth.
2. Rolled-Edge Trim: 2-1/2-inch backbend depth.

F. Surface-Mounted Cabinet: Cabinet box fully exposed and mounted directly on wall with no trim.

G. Cabinet Trim Material: Stainless-steel sheet.

H. Door Material: Stainless-steel sheet.

I. Door Style: Solid opaque panel with frame.

J. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
1. Provide recessed door pull and friction latch.
2. Provide continuous hinge, of same material and finish as trim, permitting door to open 180 degrees.

K. Accessories:
1. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated.
a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER."
1) Location: Applied to cabinet door.
2) Application Process: Silk-screened or Etched .
3) Lettering Color: Red.
4) Orientation: Vertical.

L. Materials:
1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
a. Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat.
b. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
a. Finish: No. 4 directional satin finish.

2.3 FABRICATION

A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
   1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
   2. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.

B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.
   1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.
   2. Fabricate door frames of one-piece construction with edges flanged.
   3. Miter and weld perimeter door frames.

C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

2.4 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.

D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed cabinets will be installed.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare recesses for recessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
   1. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.

B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.

C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.

D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.

E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

Defibrillator Cabinet Specification

Frame/Drywall Installation

- Basis of Design: Zoll Medical – Semi-Recessed Cabinet – Part#8000-0814
- Outside Dimensions 17.5”W x 17.5”H x 1”D
- Inside Dimensions 14.125”W x 14.125”H x 6.875”D
- Rough Wall Opening 15”W x 15”H x 4”D

Concrete/Cinder Block Installaton (Surface Mount)

- Zoll Medical – 9” Standard Wall Cabinet – Part #8000-0855
- Outside Dimensions 17.5”W x 17.5”H x 7”D
- Inside Dimensions 17.375”W x 17.375”H x 6.875”D

Additional Requirements

- Cabinet should include MMP Model 200900 Alarm System
- Optional strobe light is not required
- The words - Emergency Defibrillator - shall appear in red letters horizontally along the top front face of the cabinet, minimum of 3/4” tall letters.
- A plastic or aluminum 3-way “V” shaped sign, comparable to Uline Model S-21990 pictured, shall be installed directly above the cabinet. The sign shall read “AED” and be installed to project at 45 degrees from the wall. The bottom of the sign shall be no lower than 84” from the floor and the top of the sign shall be no higher than 96” from the floor.

- Installation shall be adjacent to the bleeding control cabinet, at the same height, with a minumum seperation of 4” and a maximum seperation of 16” between the face of the cabinets

END OF SECTION 10 44 13

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 10 44 16 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 104413 "Fire Protection Cabinets."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher and mounting brackets.

B. Product Schedule: For fire extinguishers. Coordinate final fire-extinguisher schedule with fire-protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10.
      b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
   2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."

B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FM Global.

2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.

   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

      a. Amerex Corporation.
      b. Ansul by Johnson Controls Company.
      c. Badger Fire Protection.
      d. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
      e. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
   2. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
   3. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
   4. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B, and bar coding for documenting fire-extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.

B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container in Hangar: UL-rated 4-A:40-B:C 10-lb nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container.
   1. Bracket mounted in Hangar space.

C. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container in all other locations: UL-rated 2-A:10-B:C, 5-lb nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container.
   1. Cabinet mounted in office, lobby, corridor, parking garage.
   2. Bracket mounted in storage, mechanical, electrical, lease spaces.

2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS

A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or black baked-enamel finish.

B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.

1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.
   a. Orientation: Vertical.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
   1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb inside fire protection cabinets.

END OF SECTION 10 44 16

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 12 24 13 - ROLLER WINDOW SHADES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Motor-operated roller shades with single rollers.
   2. Division 26 Sections for connections to power system and for low-voltage wiring.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking and grounds for mounting roller shades and accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
   1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, features, finishes, and operating instructions for roller shades.

A. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for roller shades, including shadeband materials, their orientation to rollers, and their seam and batten locations.

   1. Motor-Operated Shades: Include details of installation and diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type and color of shadeband material.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roller shades to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
   1. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
   2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver roller shades in factory packages, marked with manufacturer, product name, and location of installation using same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install roller shades until construction and finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and dry and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

B. Field Measurements: Where roller shades are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Allow clearances for operating hardware of operable glazed units through entire operating range. Notify Architect of installation conditions that vary from Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain roller shades from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 MOTOR-OPERATED, SINGLE-ROLLER SHADES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Draper Inc: Product – 120V AC RTS Motorized FlexShade. Style 2390 (5% opacity) color V21 Charcoal with Black fascia/headbox to match existing installations. Hand-Held Remote control. 6Nm Sonesse 50 RTS 120VAC motorline with M12 Connectors for 3-Wire motors. Match existing or approved equal.
   1. Hunter Douglas Contract.
   2. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
   3. MechoShade Systems, Inc.

B. Motorized Operating System: Provide factory-assembled, shade-operator system of size and capacity and with features, characteristics, and accessories suitable for conditions indicated, complete with electric motor and factory-prewired motor controls, power disconnect switch, enclosures protecting controls and operating parts, and accessories required for reliable operation without malfunction. Include wiring from motor controls to motors. Coordinate operator wiring requirements and electrical characteristics with building electrical system.

   1. Electrical Components: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
   2. Electric Motor: Manufacturer's standard tubular, enclosed in roller.

      a. Electrical Characteristics: 120V, one phase 60 hertz. Amp .7 to 1.8 depending on size of shade.
      b. Maximum Total Shade Width: As required to operate roller shades indicated.
      c. Maximum Shade Drop: As required to operate roller shades indicated.
      d. Maximum Weight Capacity: As required to operate roller shades indicated.

3. Controls: “Simple System” utilizing quick connects allowing the user to control a maximum of five groups via an unlimited number of motors. Provide the following for remote-control activation of shades:

    a. Group Control Station: Maintained or Momentary-contact, three-position, rocker-style, wall-switch-operated control station with open, close, and center off functions for single-switch group control.
    b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

4. Limit Switches: Adjustable switches interlocked with motor controls and set to stop shades automatically at fully raised and fully lowered positions.

C. Rollers: Corrosion-resistant steel or extruded-aluminum tubes of diameters and wall thicknesses required to accommodate operating mechanisms and weights and widths of shadebands indicated without deflection. Provide with permanently lubricated drive-end assemblies and idle-end assemblies designed to facilitate removal of shadebands for service.

1. Roller Drive-End Location: As coordinated with field conditions.
2. Direction of Shadeband Roll: Regular, from back (exterior face) of roller.
3. Shadeband-to-Roller Attachment: Manufacturer's standard method.

D. Mounting Hardware: Brackets or endcaps, corrosion resistant and compatible with roller assembly, operating mechanism, installation accessories, and mounting location and conditions indicated.

E. Roller-Coupling Assemblies: Coordinated with operating mechanism and designed to join up to three inline rollers that are operated by one roller drive-end assembly.

F. Shadebands:

1. Shadeband Material: Light-filtering fabric.
2. Shadeband Bottom (Hem) Bar: Steel or extruded aluminum.

    a. Type: Enclosed in sealed pocket of shadeband material.

G. Installation Accessories:

1. Front Fascia: Aluminum extrusion that conceals front and underside of roller and operating mechanism and attaches to roller endcaps without exposed fasteners.

    a. Shape: L-shaped.
    b. Height: Manufacturer's standard height required to conceal roller and shadeband assembly when shade is fully open, but not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

2. Endcap Covers: To cover exposed endcaps.
3. Installation Accessories Color and Finish: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 SHADEBAND MATERIALS

A. Shadeband Material Flame-Resistance Rating: Comply with NFPA 701. Testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

B. Light-Filtering Fabric: Woven fabric, stain and fade resistant.
   1. Type: Woven PVC-coated fiberglass.
   2. Weave: Mesh or twill.
   3. Yarn Count Warp/56 Weft/51
   4. Thickness: .020 inch.
   5. Weight: 12.1 oz/sqyd.
   6. Roll Width: 120 inches.
   7. Orientation on Shadeband: Up the bolt.
   8. Openness Factor: 5 percent.
   9. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 ROLLER SHADE FABRICATION

A. Product Safety Standard: Fabricate roller shades to comply with WCMA A 100.1, including requirements for flexible, chain-loop devices; lead content of components; and warning labels.

B. Unit Sizes: Fabricate units in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at 74 deg F:
   1. Between (Inside) Jamb Installation: Width equal to jamb-to-jamb dimension of opening in which shade is installed less 1/4 inch per side or 1/2-inch total, plus or minus 1/8 inch. Length equal to head-to-sill or -floor dimension of opening in which shade is installed less 1/4 inch, plus or minus 1/8 inch.

C. Shadeband Fabrication: Fabricate shadebands without battens or seams to the greatest extent possible.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 ROLLER SHADE INSTALLATION

A. Install roller shades level, plumb, and aligned with adjacent units according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Solar Shadebands: Located so shadeband is not closer than 2 inches to interior face of exterior facing glass. Allow clearances for window operation hardware.
   2. Install interior corridor shades to completely eliminate view including the perimeter into the classroom / program spaces.
   3. Install roller-shades to cover entire window.

A. Electrical Connections: Connect motor-operated roller shades to building electrical system.

B. Roller Shade Locations: Provide light-filtering shades at all exterior windows and opaque shades at all interior corridor windows.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust and balance roller shades to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free from binding or malfunction throughout entire operational range.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean roller shade surfaces, after installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer that ensure that roller shades are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

C. Replace damaged roller shades that cannot be repaired, in a manner approved by Architect, before time of Substantial Completion.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain motor-operated roller shades.

END OF SECTION 12 24 13

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 12 32 13 - MANUFACTURED WOOD-VENEER-FACED CASEWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes manufactured wood-veneer-faced cabinets of stock design.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry: Blocking and Framing.

2. Section 07 92 00 - Joint Protection: Perimeter sealant to adjacent construction.

3. Section 12 36 61 – Solid Surface Fabrications

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Definitions in the AWI's, AWMAC's, and WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" apply to the work of this Section.

B. MDF: Medium-density fiberboard.

C. Hardwood Plywood: A panel product composed of layers or plies of veneer, or of veneers in combination with lumber core, hardboard core, MDF core, or particleboard core, joined with adhesive and faced both front and back with hardwood veneers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of casework that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Delamination of components or other failures of glue bond.

b. Warping of components.
c. Failure of operating hardware.
d. Deterioration of finishes.

2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain wood-veneer-faced casework from single manufacturer.

2.2 CASEWORK, GENERAL

A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the AWI's, AWMAC's, and WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for grades of casework indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.

1. Grade: Custom.
2. Provide labels and certificates from AWI certification program indicating that casework, including installation, complies with requirements of grades specified.

B. Product Designations: Drawings indicate sizes, configurations, and finish materials of manufactured wood-veneer-faced casework by referencing designated manufacturer's catalog numbers. Other manufacturers' casework of similar sizes and door and drawer configurations, of same finish materials, and complying with the Specifications may be considered. See Section 016000 "Product Requirements."

C. Product Designations: Drawings indicate configurations of manufactured wood-veneer-faced casework by referencing designations of Casework Design Series numbering system in Appendix A of the AWI's, AWMAC's, and WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."

2.3 WOOD-VENEER-FACED CABINETS

A. Design:

1. Lipped overlay with radiused wood edges.
2. Reveal overlay.
3. Flush overlay.

B. Wood Species: White maple.

C. Face Veneer Cut: Plain sliced. To match existing park store casework/shelving

D. Exposed Materials:

1. Plywood: Hardwood plywood with face veneer of species indicated, selected for compatible color and grain. Provide backs of same species as faces.

2. Solid Wood: Clear hardwood lumber of species indicated and selected for grain and color compatible with exposed plywood.

E. Semiexposed Materials:

1. Solid Wood: Sound hardwood lumber, selected to eliminate appearance defects, of same species as exposed wood.
2. Plywood: Hardwood plywood of same species as exposed wood. Provide backs of same species as faces.
3. Provide solid wood or hardwood plywood for semiexposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
4. Thermoset Decorative Panels: Provide thermoset decorative panels for semiexposed surfaces, except provide solid wood or hardwood plywood for interior faces of doors and drawer fronts and other locations where opposite side of component is exposed.

2.4 MATERIALS

A. Low-Emitting Materials: Fabricate manufactured wood casework, including countertops, with adhesives and composite wood products containing no urea formaldehyde.

B. Low-Emitting Materials: Adhesives and composite wood products shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Hardwood Plywood: HPVA HP-1, particleboard core except where veneer core is indicated made without urea formaldehyde.

D. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1.

E. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2 made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.

1. Recycled Content: Preconsumer recycled content not less than 50 percent.

F. MDF: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130 and made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.

1. Recycled Content: Preconsumer recycled content not less than 50 percent.

G. Hardboard: ANSI A135.4, Class 1 Tempered.

1. Recycled Content: Preconsumer recycled content not less than 50 percent.

H. Edgebanding: Minimum 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) thick, solid wood of same species as face veneer

1. Select wood edgebanding for grain and color compatible with face veneers.
2. Colors: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.

I. Thermoset Decorative Panels: Particleboard or MDF finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper and complying with requirements of NEMA LD 3, Grade VGL, for Test Methods 3.3, 3.4, 3.6, 3.8, and 3.10.

2.5 COLORS AND FINISHES

A. Wood Colors and Finishes: As selected by Architect from casework manufacturer's full range. To match existing park store casework/shelving.

2.6 CASEWORK HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

A. Hardware, General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide manufacturer's standard satin-finish, commercial-quality, heavy-duty hardware.

1. Use threaded metal or plastic inserts with machine screws for fastening to particleboard, except where hardware is through bolted from back side.

B. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): BHMA A156.9, Type B01602, 170 degrees of opening. Provide two hinges for doors less than 48 inches (1220 mm) high, and provide three hinges for doors more than 48 inches (1220 mm) high.

C. Pulls: Solid satin-finish aluminum wire pulls, fastened from back with two screws. Provide two pulls for drawers more than 24 inches (600 mm) wide.

D. Door Catches: dual, self-aligning, permanent magnet catch. Provide two catches on doors more than 48 inches (1220 mm) high.

E. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9, Type B05091.

F. Drawer and Hinged Door Locks: Cylindrical (cam) type, five-pin tumbler, brass with chrome-plated finish, and complying with BHMA A156.11, Grade 1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CASEWORK INSTALLATION

A. Grade: Install cabinets to comply with same grade as item to be installed.

B. Install casework level, plumb, and true; shim as required, using concealed shims. Where casework abuts other finished work, apply filler strips and scribe for accurate fit, with fasteners concealed where practical.

C. Base Cabinets: Set cabinets straight, level, and plumb. Adjust subtops within 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) of a single plane. Align similar adjoining doors and drawers to a tolerance of 1/16 inch (1.5 mm). Bolt adjacent cabinets together with joints flush, tight, and uniform.

D. Wall Cabinets: Hang cabinets straight, level, and plumb. Adjust fronts and bottoms within 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) of a single plane. Fasten cabinets to hanging strips, masonry, framing, wood blocking, or reinforcements in walls and partitions. Align similar adjoining doors to a tolerance of 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).

E. Fasten cabinets to adjacent cabinets and to masonry, framing, wood blocking, or reinforcements in walls and partitions to comply with the AWI's, AWMAC's, and WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."

F. Adjust casework and hardware so doors and drawers operate smoothly without warp or bind. Lubricate operating hardware as recommended by manufacturer.

3.2 CLEANING

A. Clean finished surfaces, touch up as required, and remove or refinish damaged or soiled areas to match original factory finish, as approved by Architect.

END OF SECTION 12 32 13

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 12 36 61 - SOLID SURFACING FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Cast plastic fabrications countertops as indicated on Drawings.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry: Framing of counter openings.
2. Section 07 92 00 - Joint Protection: Perimeter sealant to adjacent construction.
3. Section 12 32 13 – Manufactured Wood-Veneer-Faced Casework

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM International:

1. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

B. National Electrical Manufacturers Association:

1. NEMA MG 1 - Motors and Generators.

C. Underwriters Laboratories Inc.:

1. UL - Fire Resistance Directory.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Section 01 60 00 - Submittal Procedures: Requirements for submittals.

B. Product Data: Submit data on specified component products, electrical characteristics, and connection requirements.

C. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions, thicknesses, required clearances, tolerances, materials, colors, finishes, fabrication details, field jointing, adjacent construction, methods of support, integration of plumbing and electrical components, and anchorages.

D. Samples: Submit two samples representative of vanity top and countertop, 2 by 2 inch in size, illustrating color, texture, and finish.

E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

F. Manufacturer's Instructions: Submit preparation of opening required, rough-in sizes, tolerances for item placement, temporary bracing of components, and furnish templates for cast-in or placed frames or anchors.

G. Qualifications Statements:

1. Submit qualifications for manufacturer, fabricator, and licensed professional.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: Submit list of approved cleaning materials and procedures required; list substances harmful to component materials. Include instructions for stain removal, surface and gloss restoration.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Extra Stock Materials:

1. Furnish two containers of 16 oz. of polishing cream.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum 25/450 flame-spread/smoke-developed index when tested according to ASTM E84.

1.7 EXISTING CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify field measurements prior to fabrication. Indicate field measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Furnish minimum five year manufacturer's warranty for each type of unit.

1.9 MAINTENANCE

A. Furnish two containers of 16 oz. of polishing cream.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE AND DESIGN CRITERIA

A. Design Load: 200 psf with deflection limited to 1/360 of span.

B. Design countertops with sufficient strength for handling and placement stresses.

C. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by UL as suitable for purpose specified and indicated.

2.2 SOLID SURFACE FABRICATIONS

A. Basis of Design: Dupont Corian – 5/4” Corian Color: Carbon Concrete. Extend front lip down 4” over casework. Or approved equal.

B. Approved Manufacturer List:

1. Dupont
2. Formica Corporation
3. Wilsonart LLC
4. Avonite Surfaces
5. Substitutions: Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.3 MATERIALS

A. Resin: Homogeneous surfacing material type, with integral coloring, stain resistant to domestic chemicals and cleaners.

B. Polishing Cream: Compatible polishing cream to achieve specified sheen to gel coat.

C. Adhesive: Joint type, cartridge dispensed.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate components by mold to achieve shape and configuration.

B. Gel coat exposed finish surfaces smooth and polish to flat sheen.

C. Radius corners and edges.

D. Cure components prior to shipment.

2.5 FINISHES

A. Color: As indicated in drawings and to be selected from manufactures standard palette.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify existing conditions of point of sale and match other electrical requirements.

B. Verify that joint preparation and affected dimensions are acceptable.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Provide anchoring devices for installation and embedding.

B. Provide templates and rough-in measurements.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Align Work plumb and level.

B. Install according to manufacturer's printed instructions.

C. Rigidly anchor to substrate to prevent misalignment.

D. Seal to adjacent construction as specified in Section 07 90 00 - Joint Protection.

3.4 TOLERANCES

A. Maximum Variation from Indicated Dimension: 1/8 inch (3 mm).

B. Maximum Offset from Indicated Position: 1/8 inch (3 mm).

3.5 CLEANING

A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for cleaning.

B. Clean and polish fabrication surfaces.

3.6 ATTACHMENTS

A. Countertop: 1- 1/4 inch thick, 24 inches (600 mm) deep, one-piece length to suit cabinet work below cored for electrical/ point of sale accessories; color as selected.

END OF SECTION 12 36 61

SECTION 21 13 13 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel pipe and fittings.
2. Copper tube and fittings.
3. CPVC pipe and fittings.
4. Cover system for sprinkler piping.
5. Air vent.
6. Sprinkler piping specialties.
7. Specialty valves.
8. Sprinklers.
9. Manual control stations.
10. Pressure gauges.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 211119 "Fire Department Connections" for exposed-, flush-, and yard-type fire department connections.
2. Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping" for fire water-service backflow prevention devices.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

C. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

D. Delegated Design Submittals: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data, [**signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.**] [**prepared by NICET Level II-certified technician, "Water-Based Systems Layout."**] [**prepared by NICET Level III-certified technician, "Water-Based Systems Layout."**][**NICET certified-technician submittals are to include the following information on each drawing title block:**

technician's name, NICET certification number, and, NICET certification specialty area and level.]

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler system plans and sections, or Building Information Model (BIM), drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section and coordinated with all building trades.

B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer[**and professional engineer**] [**and NICET certified technician**].

C. Design Data: Approved sprinkler piping working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, including documented approval by authorities having jurisdiction, and including hydraulic calculations if applicable.

D. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."

E. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.

a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by [**qualified professional engineer.**] [**NICET Level II-certified technician, "Water-Based Systems Layout."**] [**NICET Level III-certified technician, "Water-Based Systems Layout."**]

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing to comply with [**NFPA 13**] [**NFPA 13R**].

C. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum working pressure.

D. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design wet-pipe sprinkler systems.

1. Available fire-hydrant flow test records indicate the following conditions:

    a. Date: <**Insert test date**>.
    b. Time: <**Insert time**> [**a.m.**] [**p.m.**]
    c. Performed by: <**Insert operator's name**> of <**Insert firm**>.
    d. Location of Residual Fire Hydrant R: <**Insert location**>.
    e. Location of Flow Fire Hydrant F: <**Insert location**>.
    f. Static Pressure at Residual Fire Hydrant R: <**Insert psig (kPa)**>.
    g. Measured Flow at Flow Fire Hydrant F: <**Insert gpm (L/s)**>.
    h. Residual Pressure at Residual Fire Hydrant R: <**Insert psig (kPa)**>.

2. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: [**10**] [**20**] <**Insert number**> percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
3. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:

    a. Automobile Parking and Showrooms: [**Ordinary Hazard, Group 1**] <**Insert classification**>.
    b. Churches: [**Light Hazard**] <**Insert classification**>.
    c. Dry Cleaners: [**Ordinary Hazard, Group 2**] <**Insert classification**>.
    d. Educational: [**Light Hazard**] <**Insert classification**>.
    e. Electrical Equipment Rooms: [**Ordinary Hazard, Group 1**] <**Insert classification**>.
    f. Elevator Machine Room and Hoistway: [**Ordinary Hazard, Group 1**] <**Insert classification**>.
    g. Exterior and Interior Loading Docks, Handling Flammable/Combustible Liquids, Hazardous Materials, or Utilized for Storage: <**Insert classification**>.
    h. Exterior Loading Docks, Only Handling Ordinary Combustibles: [**Ordinary Hazard, Group 2**] <**Insert classification**>.
    i. General Storage Areas: [**Ordinary Hazard, Group 1**] <**Insert classification**>.
    j. Hospitals, including Animal Hospitals and Veterinary Facilities: [**Light hazard**] <**Insert classification**>.
    k. Institutional: [**Light Hazard**] <**Insert classification**>.
    l. Laundries: [**Ordinary Hazard, Group 1**] <**Insert classification**>.
    m. Libraries, except Large Stack Rooms: [**Light Hazard**] <**Insert classification**>.
    n. Libraries, Large Stack Rooms: [**Ordinary Hazard, Group 2**] <**Insert classification**>.
    o. Machine Shops: [**Ordinary Hazard, Group 2**] <**Insert classification**>.
    p. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: [**Ordinary Hazard, Group 1**] <**Insert classification**>.
    q. Mercantile: [**Ordinary Hazard, Group 2**] <**Insert classification**>.
    r. Museums: [**Light Hazard**] <**Insert classification**>.
    s. Nursing or Convalescent Homes: [**Light Hazard**] <**Insert classification**>.

t. Offices, including Data Processing: [**Light Hazard**] <**Insert classification**>.
u. Plastics Processing Areas: [**Extra Hazard, Group 2**] <**Insert classification**>.
v. Post Offices: [**Ordinary Hazard, Group 2**] <**Insert classification**>.
w. Printing Plants: [**Extra Hazard, Group 1**] <**Insert classification**>.
x. Printing and Publishing: [**Ordinary Hazard, Group 2**] <**Insert classification**>.
y. Repair Garages: [**Ordinary Hazard, Group 2**] <**Insert classification**>.
z. Residential [**Light Hazard**] <**Insert classification**>.
aa. Restaurant Seating Areas: [**Light Hazard**] <**Insert classification**>.
bb. Restaurant Service Areas: [**Ordinary Hazard, Group 1**] <**Insert classification**>.
cc. Solvent Cleaning Areas: [**Extra Hazard, Group 2**] <**Insert classification**>.
dd. Stages: [**Ordinary Hazard, Group 2**] <**Insert classification**>.
ee. Theaters and Auditoriums, excluding Stages and Prosceniums: [**Light Hazard**] <**Insert classification**>.
ff. Upholstering Plants: [**Extra Hazard, Group 1**] <**Insert classification**>.
gg. <**Insert occupancy and hazard classification**>.

4. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:

a. Residential (Dwelling) Occupancy: [**0.05 gpm/sq. ft. over 400 sq. ft. (2.04 mm/min. over 37.2 sq. m)**] <**Insert value**> area.
b. Light-Hazard Occupancy: [**0.10 gpm/sq. ft. over 1500 sq. ft. (4.1 mm/min. over 140 sq. m)**] <**Insert value**> area.
c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: [**0.15 gpm/sq. ft. over 1500 sq. ft. (6.1 mm/min. over 140 sq. m)**] <**Insert value**> area.
d. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: [**0.20 gpm/sq. ft. over 1500 sq. ft. (8.2 mm/min. over 140 sq. m)**] <**Insert value**> area.

5. Maximum protection area per sprinkler according to UL listing.
6. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:

a. Residential Areas: [**400 sq. ft. (37 sq. m)**] <**Insert dimension**>.
b. Office Spaces: [**120 sq. ft. (11.1 sq. m)**] [**225 sq. ft. (20.9 sq. m)**] <**Insert dimension**>.
c. Storage Areas: [**130 sq. ft. (12.1 sq. m)**] <**Insert dimension**>.
d. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: [**130 sq. ft. (12.1 sq. m)**] <**Insert dimension**>.
e. Electrical Equipment Rooms: [**130 sq. ft. (12.1 sq. m)**] <**Insert dimension**>.
f. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.

E. Obtain documented approval of sprinkler system design from authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Seismic Performance: Sprinkler piping to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to NFPA 13 and [**ASCE/SEI 7**] <**Insert requirement**>. See Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Standard-Weight Steel Pipe: [**Galvanized-**] [**and**] [**black-**]steel pipe, ASTM A53/A53M, [**Type E**] <**Insert type**>, [**Grade B**] <**Insert grade**>. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

B. Schedule 30 Steel Pipe: [**Galvanized-**] [**and**] [**black-**]steel pipe, ASTM A135/A135M; ASTM A795/A795M, [**Type E**] <**Insert type**>; or ASME B36.10M wrought steel, with wall thickness not less than Schedule 30 and not more than Schedule 40. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

C. Thinwall Steel Pipe: [**Galvanized-**] [**and**] [**black-**]steel pipe, ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A795/A795M, threadable, with wall thickness less than Schedule 30 and equal to or greater than Schedule 10. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

D. Schedule 10, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A795/A795M, Schedule 10 in NPS 5 (DN 125) and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in NPS 6 to NPS 10 (DN 150 to DN 250), plain end.

E. Nonstandard OD, Thinwall Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A795/A795M thinwall with plain ends and wall thickness less than Schedule 10.

F. Hybrid Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A795/A795M lightwall, with wall thickness less than Schedule 10 and greater than Schedule 5.

G. Schedule 5 Steel Pipe: ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A795/A795M lightwall with plain ends.

H. Steel Pipe Nipples: [**Galvanized-**] [**and**] [**black-**]steel pipe, ASTM A733, made of ASTM A53/A53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.

I. Steel Couplings: [**Galvanized**] [**and**] [**uncoated**] steel, ASTM A865/A865M, threaded.

J. Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: [**Galvanized**] [**and**] [**uncoated**] gray-iron threaded fittings, ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.

K. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.

L. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.

M. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.

1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: [**AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick**] [**ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free**] [**or**] [**EPDM rubber gasket**].

    a. Class 125 and Class 250, Cast-Iron, Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
    b. Class 150 and Class 300, Ductile-Iron or -Steel, Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.

N. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
1. Pressure Rating: [**175-psig (1200-kPa)**] [**250-psig (1725-kPa)**] [**300-psig (2070-kPa)**] minimum.
2. Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: [**Galvanized**] [**Painted**] [**Uncoated**] grooved-end fittings, ASTM A47/A47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
3. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

O. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings: UL 213, FM Global-approved, 175-psig (1200-kPa) pressure rating with steel housing, rubber O-rings, and pipe stop; for use with fitting manufacturers' pressure-seal tools.

2.3 CPVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. CPVC Pipe: ASTM F442/F442M and UL 1821, SDR 13.5, for 175-psig (1200-kPa) rated pressure at 150 deg F (62 deg C), with plain ends. Include "LISTED" and "CPVC SPRINKLER PIPE" markings.

B. CPVC Fittings: [**UL listed**] [**or**] [**FM Global approved**], for 175-psig (1200-kPa) rated pressure at 150 deg F (62 deg C), socket type. Include "LISTED" and "CPVC SPRINKLER FITTING" markings.

1. NPS 3/4 to NPS 1-1/2 (DN 20 to DN 40): ASTM F438 and UL 1821, Schedule 40, socket type.
2. NPS 2 to NPS 3 (DN 50 to DN 80): ASTM F439 and UL 1821, Schedule 80, socket type.
3. CPVC-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC, one piece, with dimensions equivalent to pipe; one end with threaded brass insert, and one socket end.
4. CPVC-to-Metal Transition Unions: CPVC, with dimensions equivalent to pipe; one end with threaded brass insert, and one socket end.
5. Flanges: CPVC, one or two pieces.

C. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Piping and Tubing: ASTM F493 solvent cement recommended by pipe and fitting manufacturer, and made for joining CPVC sprinkler pipe and fittings. Include cleaner or primer recommended by pipe and fitting manufacturer.

D. Plastic Pipe-Flange Gasket and Bolts and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 COVER SYSTEM FOR SPRINKLER PIPING

A. Description: System of support brackets and covers made to protect sprinkler piping.

B. Brackets: Glass-reinforced nylon.

C. Covers: Extruded-PVC sections of length, shape, and size required for size and routing of CPVC piping.

2.5 SPECIALTY VALVES

A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."

B. Specialty Valves Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.

C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.

D. Size: Same as connected piping.

E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

F. Alarm Valves:
1. Standard: UL 193.
2. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
3. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gauges,[**retarding chamber,**] and fill-line attachment with strainer.
4. Drip cup assembly pipe drain [**without valves and separate from main drain piping**] [**with check valve to main drain piping**].

G. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:
1. Standard: UL 1726.
2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.
3. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
4. Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
5. End Connections: Threaded.

2.6 AIR VENT

A. Manual Air Vent/Valve:
1. Description: Ball valve that requires human intervention to vent air.
2. Body: Forged brass.
3. Ends: Threaded.
4. Minimize Size: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
5. Minimum Water Working Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).

B. Automatic Air Vent:
1. Description: Automatic air vent that automatically vents trapped air without human intervention.
2. Standard: UL listed or FM Global approved for wet-pipe fire sprinkler systems.
3. Vents oxygen continuously from system.
4. Float valve to prevent water discharge.
5. Minimum Water Working Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).

C. Automatic Air Vent Assembly:
1. Description: Automatic [**dual**]air vent assembly that automatically vents trapped air without human intervention, including Y-strainer and ball valve in a prepiped assembly.
2. Standard: UL listed or FM Global approved for use in wet-pipe fire sprinkler system.
3. Vents oxygen continuously from system.
4. Float valve to prevent water discharge.
5. Minimum Water Working Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
6. <**Insert additional requirements specific to manufacturers**>.

2.7 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Branch Outlet Fittings:
1. Standard: UL 213.
2. Pressure Rating: [**175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum**] [**300 psig (2070 kPa)**].
3. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.

4. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
5. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
6. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
7. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.

B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:
1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
2. Pressure Rating: [**175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum**] [**300 psig (2070 kPa)**].
3. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded or grooved.

C. Branch Line Testers:
1. Standard: UL 199.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Body Material: Brass.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Inlet: Threaded.
6. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
7. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.

D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:
1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
2. Pressure Rating: [**175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum**] [**300 psig (2070 kPa)**].
3. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

E. Adjustable Drop Nipples:
1. Standard: UL 1474.
2. Pressure Rating: [**250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum**] [**300 psig (2070 kPa)**].
3. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM-rubber O-ring seals.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Length: Adjustable.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

F. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:
1. Standard: UL 1474.
2. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
3. Pressure Rating: [**175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum**] [**300 psig (2070 kPa)**].
4. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

2.8 SPRINKLERS

A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."

B. Pressure Rating for Residential Sprinklers: 175-psig (1200-kPa) maximum.

C. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.

D. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:

1. Early-Suppression, Fast-Response Applications: [**UL 1767**] <**Insert standard**>.
2. Nonresidential Applications: [**UL 199**] <**Insert standard**>.
3. Residential Applications: [**UL 1626**] <**Insert standard**>.
4. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch (12.7-mm) orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.

E. Sprinkler Finishes: [**Chrome plated**] [**bronze**] [**and**] [**painted**].

F. Special Coatings: [**Wax**] [**lead**] [**and**] [**corrosion-resistant paint**].

G. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.

1. Ceiling Mounting: [**Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat**] [**Chrome-plated steel, two piece, with 1-inch (25-mm) vertical adjustment**] [**Plastic, white finish, one piece, flat**].
2. Sidewall Mounting: [**Chrome-plated steel**] [**Plastic, white finish**], one piece, flat.

H. Sprinkler Guards:
1. Standard: UL 199.
2. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

2.9 MANUAL CONTROL STATIONS

A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide" for hydraulic operation, with union, NPS 1/2 (DN 15) pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve.

B. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

2.10 PRESSURE GAUGES

A. Standard: UL 393.

B. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch (90- to 115-mm) diameter.

C. Pressure Gauge Range: [**0- to 250-psig (0- to 1725-kPa) minimum**] [**0 to 300 psig (0 to 2070 kPa)**].

D. Label: Include "WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building. Comply with requirements for exterior piping in Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping" for exterior piping.

B. Install shutoff valve,[**backflow preventer,**] pressure gauge, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping.[**Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping."**]

C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gauge, and drain at connection to water service.

3.2 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS

A. Connect sprinkler piping to building's interior water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for interior piping in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

B. Install shutoff valve,[**backflow preventer,**] pressure gauge, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-distribution piping.[**Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Section 331415 "Site Water Distribution Piping."**]

C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gauge, and drain at connection to water supply.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.

1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.

B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.

C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for seismic-restraint device materials and installation.

D. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.

E. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.

F. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger end connections.

G. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.

H. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.

I. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.

J. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.

K. Install alarm devices in piping systems.

L. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13. In seismic-rated areas, refer to Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."

M. Install pressure gauges on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gauges with connection not less than NPS 1/4 (DN 8) and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gauge and valve. Install gauges to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.

N. Pressurize and check preaction sprinkler system piping and [**air-pressure maintenance devices**] [**air compressors**].

O. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.

P. Install electric heating cables and pipe insulation on sprinkler piping in areas subject to freezing. Comply with requirements for heating cables in Section 210533 "Heat Tracing for Fire-Suppression Piping" and for piping insulation in Section 210700 "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation."

Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.

B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.

C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger end connections.

D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.

F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

H. Twist-Locked Joints: Insert plain end of steel pipe into plain-end-pipe fitting. Rotate retainer lugs one-quarter turn or tighten retainer pin.

I. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join [**lightwall**] [**and**] [**Schedule 5**] steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.

J. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.

K. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.

L. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.

M. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

N. Plastic-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:

1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D2846/D2846M Appendix.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF COVER SYSTEM FOR SPRINKLER PIPING

A. Install cover system, brackets, and cover components for sprinkler piping according to manufacturer's "Installation Manual" and NFPA 13 or NFPA 13R for supports.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.

C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.

D. Specialty Valves:

1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
2. Install alarm valves with bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.
3. Install deluge valves in vertical position, in proper direction of flow, and in main supply to deluge system. Install trim sets for drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gauges, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.

E. Air Vent:

1. Provide at least one air vent in each wet pipe sprinkler system in accordance with NFPA 13 requirements. Connect vent into top of fire sprinkler piping.
2. Provide dielectric union for dissimilar metals, ball or globe valve, and strainer upstream of automatic air vent.
3. Pipe from outlet of air vent to drain.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF SPRINKLERS

A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of[**narrow dimension of**] acoustical ceiling panels.

B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.

C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.

B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections[**with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**]:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
6. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
7. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.

B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 CLEANING

A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.

B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with [**threaded ends, cast-iron threaded fittings, and threaded**] [**grooved ends, grooved-end fittings, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and grooved**] joints.

B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.

C. CPVC pipe, [**Schedule 40**] [**Schedule 80**] CPVC fittings, and solvent-cemented joints may be used for light-hazard and residential occupancies.

D. Standard-Pressure, Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller, to Be One of the Following:

1. [**Standard-weight**] [**or**] [**Schedule 30**], black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. [**Standard-weight**] [**or**] [**Schedule 30**], galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
3. [**Standard-weight**] [**or**] [**Schedule 30**], black-steel pipe with plain ends; uncoated, plain-end-pipe fittings; and twist-locked joints.
4. [**Standard-weight**] [**or**] [**Schedule 30**], galvanized-steel pipe with plain ends; galvanized, plain-end-pipe fittings; and twist-locked joints.
5. [**Standard-weight**] [**or**] [**Schedule 30**], black-steel pipe with [**cut-**] [**or**] [**roll-**]grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
6. [**Standard-weight**] [**or**] [**Schedule 30**], galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
7. [**Thinwall**] [**Schedule 10**] [**nonstandard OD, thinwall**] [**or**] [**hybrid**] black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
8. [**Thinwall**] [**Schedule 10**] [**or**] [**hybrid**] black-steel pipe with plain ends; uncoated, plain-end-pipe fittings; and twist-locked joints.
9. Schedule 5 steel pipe; steel pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.

E. Standard-Pressure, Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100), to Be One of the Following:

1. [**Standard-weight**] [**or**] [**Schedule 30**], black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. [**Standard-weight**] [**or**] [**Schedule 30**], galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
3. [**Standard-weight**] [**or**] [**Schedule 30**], black-steel pipe with [**cut-**] [**or**] [**roll-**]grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
4. [**Standard-weight**] [**or**] [**Schedule 30**], galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
5. [**Thinwall**] [**Schedule 10**] [**nonstandard OD, thinwall**] [**or**] [**hybrid**] black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

F. Standard-Pressure, Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger, to Be One of the Following:

1. [**Standard-weight**] [**or**] [**Schedule 30**], black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. [**Standard-weight**] [**or**] [**Schedule 30**], galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
3. [**Standard-weight**] [**or**] [**Schedule 30**], black-steel pipe with [**cut-**] [**or**] [**roll-**]grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

4. [**Standard-weight**] [**or**] [**Schedule 30**], galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
5. [**Thinwall**] [**Schedule 10**] [**or**] [**hybrid**] black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

3.12 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:

1. Rooms without Ceilings: [**Upright sprinklers**] <**Insert type**>.
2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: [**Pendent sprinklers**] [**Recessed sprinklers**] [**Flush sprinklers**] [**Concealed sprinklers**] [**Pendent, recessed, flush, and concealed sprinklers as indicated**].
3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: [**Upright sprinklers**] [**Pendent, dry sprinklers**] [**Sidewall, dry sprinklers**] [**Upright, pendent, dry sprinklers; and sidewall, dry sprinklers as indicated**] <**Insert type**>.
5. Special Applications: [**Extended-coverage, flow-control, and quick-response sprinklers where indicated**] [**Attic sprinklers**] [**Combustible concealed space sprinklers**] [**Institutional space sprinklers**] <**Insert type**>.

B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.

1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
2. Flush Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with painted white escutcheon.
3. Recessed Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with bright chrome escutcheon.
4. Residential Sprinklers: Dull chrome.
5. Upright, Pendent, and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 00 - BASIC PLUMBING REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Requirements applicable to all Division 22 Sections. Also refer to Division 1 - General Requirements.

B. All materials and installation methods shall conform to the applicable standards, guidelines and codes referenced herein and within each specification section.

1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

A. This Specification and the associated drawings govern the furnishing, installing, testing and placing into satisfactory operation the Mechanical Systems.

B. Each Contractor shall provide all new materials indicated on the drawings and/or in these specifications, and all items required to make the portion of the Mechanical Work a finished and working system.

C. Separate contracts will be awarded for the following work:

D. All work will be awarded under a single General Contract. The division of work listed below is for the Contractor's convenience and lists normal breakdown of the work.

E. Separate contracts will be awarded for the following work. The division of work listed below is for the contractors' convenience and lists a normal breakdown of the work. Please refer to the Construction Manager's scope statements for complete scope of work description.

F. Scope of Work:

1. Plumbing Work shall include, but is not necessarily limited to:

a. Furnish and install all items listed in the Plumbing Material List.
b. Extend existing domestic water piping system including cold, hot, and hot water circulating piping within the building. Insulate all piping as specified.
c. Furnish and install gas piping system including all meter requirements.
d. Furnish and install a complete storm water drainage system.
e. Furnish and install a complete sanitary sewer and vent system.
f. Furnish and install seismic restraint and equipment designed for use in seismic conditions described in Section 220550. Furnish and install firestopping systems for penetrations of fire-rated construction associated with this Contractor's work.

2. Heating Work shall include, but is not necessarily limited to:

a. Furnish and install gas piping system including all meter requirements.
b. Furnish and install refrigerant piping, accessories, and final charge of refrigerant.

Furnish and install seismic restraint and equipment designed for use in seismic conditions described in Section 230550.

c. Furnish and install firestopping systems for penetrations of fire-rated construction associated with this Contractor's work.

3. Air Conditioning and Ventilating Work shall include, but is not necessarily limited to:
a. Furnish and install complete supply air ductwork systems including all fittings, insulation, and outlets.
b. Furnish and install complete return air ductwork systems including all fittings, insulation, and inlets.
c. Furnish and install all terminal air boxes and reheat coils.
d. Furnish and install complete exhaust ductwork systems including all fittings, insulation, inlets, and fans.
e. Furnish and install mechanical room ventilation systems including louvers, ductwork, insulation, and fans.
f. Furnish and install all temperature control systems.
g. Furnish and install all fire dampers.
h. Furnish and install seismic restraint and equipment designed for use in seismic conditions described in Section 230550.
i. Furnish and install firestopping systems for penetrations of fire-rated construction associated with this Contractor's work.

4. Temperature Control Work shall include, but is not necessarily limited to:

a. Furnish and install a complete temperature control system as specified in Section 230900.
b. Temperature control system shall consist of a full Direct Digital Control (DDC) system including all accessories, sensors, and programming.
c. Furnish automatic control valves and dampers for installation by others.
d. Furnish and install seismic restraint and equipment designed for use in seismic conditions described in Section 230550.
e. Furnish and install firestopping systems for penetrations of fire-rated construction associated with this Contractor's work.

5. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Work shall include, but is not necessarily limited to:

a. Furnish complete testing, adjusting, and balancing as specified in Section 230593, including, but not limited to, air systems, hydronic systems, plumbing systems, and verification of control systems.

1.3 WORK SEQUENCE

A. All work that will produce excessive noise or interference with normal building operations, as determined by the Owner, shall be scheduled with the Owner. It may be necessary to schedule such work during unoccupied hours. The Owner reserves the right to determine when

restricted construction hours will be required.

B. Schedule overtime for the following work:

C. Itemize all work and list associated hours and pay scale for each item.

1.4 DIVISION OF WORK BETWEEN MECHANICAL, ELECTRICAL & CONTROL CONTRACTORS

A. Definitions:

1. "Mechanical Contractors" refers to the following:

   a. Plumbing Contractor.
   b. Heating Contractor.
   c. Air Conditioning and Ventilating Contractor.
   d. Temperature Control Contractor.
   e. Fire Protection Contractor.
   f. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Contractor.

2. Motor Control Wiring: The wiring associated with the remote operation of the magnetic coils of magnetic motor starters or relays, or the wiring that permits direct cycling of motors by means of devices in series with the motor power wiring. In the latter case the devices are usually single phase and are usually connected to the motor power wiring through a manual motor starter having "Manual-Off-Auto" provisions.
3. Control devices such as start-stop push buttons, thermostats, pressure switches, flow switches, relays, etc., generally represent the types of equipment associated with motor control wiring.
4. Motor control wiring is single phase and usually 120 volts. In some instances, the voltage will be the same as the motor power wiring. Generally, where the motor power wiring exceeds 120 volts, a control transformer is used to give a control voltage of 120 volts.
5. Temperature Control Wiring: The wiring associated with the operation of a motorized damper, solenoid valve or motorized valve, etc., either modulating or two-position, as opposed to wiring which directly powers or controls a motor used to drive equipment such as fans, pumps, etc.

   a. This wiring will be from a 120 volt source and may continue as 120 volt, or be reduced in voltage (24 volt) in which case a control transformer shall be furnished as part of the temperature control wiring.

6. Control Motor: An electric device used to operate dampers, valves, etc. It may be two-position or modulating. Conventional characteristics of such a motor are 24 volts, 60 cycles, 1 phase, although other voltages may be encountered.
7. Voltage is generally specified and scheduled as distribution voltage. Motor submittals may be based on utilization voltage if it corresponds to the correct distribution voltage.

Distribution/Nominal Voltage	Utilization Voltage
120	115

208	200
240	230
277	265
480	460

A. General:

1. The purpose of these Specifications is to outline the Electrical and Mechanical Contractor's responsibilities related to electrical work required for items such as temperature controls, mechanical equipment, fans, chillers, compressors and the like. The exact wiring requirements for much of the equipment cannot be determined until the systems have been selected and submittals reviewed. Therefore, the electrical drawings show only known wiring related to such items. All wiring not shown on the electrical drawings, but required for mechanical systems, is the responsibility of the Mechanical Contractor.
2. Where the drawings require the Electrical Contractor to wire between equipment furnished by the Mechanical Contractor, such wiring shall terminate at terminals provided in the equipment. The Mechanical Contractor shall provide complete electrical power/controls wiring diagrams and supervision to the Electrical Contractor and designate the terminal numbers for correct wiring.
3. All electrical work shall conform to the National Electrical Code. All provisions of the Electrical Specifications concerning wiring, protection, etc., apply to wiring provided by the Mechanical Contractor unless noted otherwise.
4. Control low (24V) and control line (120V) voltage wiring, conduit, and related switches and relays required for the automatic control and/or interlock of motors and equipment, including final connection, are to be furnished and installed under Divisions 21, 22 and
   23. Materials and installation to conform to Class 1 or 2 requirements.
5. All Contractors shall establish utility elevations prior to fabrication and shall coordinate their material and equipment with other trades. When a conflict arises, priority is as follows:

   a. Light fixtures.
   b. Gravity flow piping
   c. Electrical busduct.
   d. Sheet metal.
   e. Electrical cable trays, including access space.
   f. Sprinkler piping and other piping.
   g. Electrical conduits and wireway.

B. Mechanical Contractor's Responsibility:

1. Assumes responsibility for internal wiring of all equipment provided by the Mechanical Contractor, for example:
   a. Computer Room Air Conditioning Units.

2. Assumes all responsibility for the Temperature Control wiring, when the Temperature Control Contractor is a Subcontractor to the Mechanical Contractor.
3. Shall verify all existing equipment sizes and capacities where units are to be modified,

moved or replaced. Contractor shall notify Architect/Engineer of any discrepancies prior to ordering new units or replacement parts, including replacements of equipment motors.

4. Temperature Control Subcontractor's Responsibility:

    a. Wiring of all devices needed to make the Temperature Control System functional.
    b. Verifying any control wiring on the electrical drawings as being by the Electrical Contractor. All wiring required for the Control System, but not shown on the electrical drawings, is the responsibility of the Temperature Control Subcontractor .
    c. Coordinating equipment locations (such as relays, transformers, etc.) with the Electrical Contractor, where wiring of the equipment is by the Electrical Contractor.

5. This Contractor is responsible for coordination of utilities with all other Contractors. If any field coordination conflicts are found, the Contractor shall coordinate with other Contractors to determine a viable layout.

C. Electrical Contractor's Responsibility:

1. Provides all combination starters, manual starters and disconnect devices shown on the Electrical Drawings or indicated to be by the Electrical Contractor on the Mechanical Drawings or Specifications.
2. Installs and wires all remote control devices furnished by the Mechanical Contractor Temperature Control Subcontractor when so noted on the Electrical Drawings.
3. Provides motor control and temperature control wiring, where so noted on the drawings.
4. Coordinate with the Mechanical Contractor for size of motors and/or other electrical devices involved with repair or replacement of existing equipment.
5. Furnishes, installs and connects all relays, etc., for automatic shutdown of certain fans upon actuation of the Fire Alarm System as indicated and specified in Division 28.
6. This Contractor is responsible for coordination of utilities with all other Contractors. If any field coordination conflicts are found, the Contractor shall coordinate with other Contractors to determine a viable layout.

1.2 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

A. Definitions:

1. Coordination Drawings: A compilation of the pertinent layout and system drawings that show the sizes and locations, including elevations, of system components and required access areas to ensure that no two objects will occupy the same space.

    a. Mechanical trades shall include, but are not limited to, mechanical equipment, ductwork, fire protection systems, plumbing piping, medical gas systems, hydronic piping, steam and steam condensate piping, and any item that may impact coordination with other disciplines.
    b. Electrical trades shall include, but are not limited to, electrical equipment,

conduit 1.5" and larger, conduit racks, cable trays, pull boxes, transformers, raceway, busway, lighting, ceiling-mounted devices, and any item that may impact coordination with other disciplines.

c. Technology trades shall include, but are not limited to, technology equipment, racks, conduit 1.5" and larger, conduit racks, cable trays, ladder rack, pull boxes, raceway, ceiling-mounted devices, and any item that may impact coordination with other disciplines.

d. Maintenance clearances and code-required dedicated space shall be included.

e. The coordination drawings shall include all underground, underfloor, in-floor, in chase, and vertical trade items.

2. Spaces with open/cloud ceiling architecture shall indicate the overhead utilities and locate equipment as required to maintain clearance above lights. The intent for the installation is to maintain a maximum allowable vertical clearance and an organized/clean manner in the horizontal. Notify Architect/Engineer of the maximum clearance which can be maintained. Failure to comply will result in modifications with no cost to Owner.

   a. In cloud ceiling architecture, when open cabling/wire and/or cable tray crosses gaps between ceiling clouds and/or walls, cabling is to transition to conduits to span the gaps in order to conceal cabling from below.

3. The contractors shall use the coordination process to identify the proper sequence of installation of all utilities above ceilings and in other congested areas, to ensure an orderly and coordinated end result, and to provide adequate access for service and maintenance.

B. Participation:

1. The contractors and subcontractors responsible for work defined above shall participate in the coordination drawing process.
2. One contractor shall be designated as the Coordinating Contractor for purposes of preparing a complete set of composite electronic CAD coordination drawings that include all applicable trades, and for coordinating the activities related to this process. The Coordinating Contractor for this project shall be the Mechanical Contractor .

   a. The Coordinating Contractor shall utilize personnel familiar with requirements of this project and skilled as draftspersons/CAD operators, competent to prepare the required coordination drawings.

3. Electronic CAD drawings shall be submitted to the Coordinating Contractor for addition of work by other trades. IMEG will provide electronic file copies of ventilation drawings for contractor's use if the contractor signs and returns an "Electronic File Transfer" waiver provided by IMEG. IMEG will not consider blatant reproductions of original file copies an acceptable alternative for coordination drawings.

C. Drawing Requirements:

1. The file format and file naming convention shall be coordinated with and agreed to by all contractors participating in the coordination process and the Owner.

    a. Scale of drawings:

        1) General plans: 1/4 Inch = 1 '-0" (minimum).
        2) Mechanical, electrical, communication rooms, and including the surrounding areas within 10 feet: 1/2 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
        3) Sections of shafts and mechanical and electrical equipment rooms: 1/4 Inch = 1 '-0" (minimum).
        4) Sections of congested areas: 1/2 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).

2. Ductwork layout drawings shall be the baseline system for other components. Ductwork layout drawings shall be modified to accommodate other components as the coordination process progresses.
3. There may be more drawings required for risers, top and bottom levels of mechanical rooms, and shafts.
4. The minimum quantity of drawings will be established at the first coordination meeting and sent to the A/E for review. Additional drawings may be required if other areas of congestion are discovered during the coordination process.

D. General:

1. Coordination drawing files shall be made available to the A/E and Owner's Representative. The A/E will only review identified conflicts and give an opinion, but will not perform as a coordinator.
2. A plotted set of coordination drawings shall be available at the project site.
3. Coordination drawings are not shop drawings and shall not be submitted as such.
4. The contract drawings are schematic in nature and do not show every fitting and appurtenance for each utility. Each contractor is expected to have included in the bid sufficient fittings, material, and labor to allow for adjustments in routing of utilities made necessary by the coordination process and to provide a complete and functional system.
5. The contractors will not be allowed additional costs or time extensions due to participation in the coordination process.
6. The contractors will not be allowed additional costs or time extensions for additional fittings, reroutings or changes of duct size, that are essentially equivalent sizes to those shown on the drawings and determined necessary through the coordination process.
7. The A/E reserves the right to determine space priority of equipment in the event of spatial conflicts or interference between equipment, piping, conduit, ducts, and equipment provided by the trades.
8. Changes to the contract documents that are necessary for systems installation and coordination shall be brought to the attention of the A/E.
9. Access panels shall preferably occur only in gypsum board walls or plaster ceilings where indicated on the drawings.

a. Access to mechanical, electrical, technology, and other items located above the ceiling shall be through accessible lay-in ceiling tile areas.
b. Potential layout changes shall be made to avoid additional access panels.
c. Additional access panels shall not be allowed without written approval from the A/E at the coordination drawing stage.
d. Providing additional access panels shall be considered after other alternatives are reviewed and discarded by the A/E and the Owner's Representative.
e. When additional access panels are required, they shall be provided without additional cost to the Owner.

10. Complete the coordination drawing process and obtain sign off of the drawings by all contractors prior to installing any of the components. Conflicts that result after the coordination drawings are signed off shall be the responsibility of the contractor or subcontractor who did not properly identify their work requirements, or installed their work without proper coordination.
11. Updated coordination drawings that reflect as-built conditions may be used as record documents.
12.

Referenced Specification Section	Submittal Item
22 05 00	Owner Training Agenda
22 05 03	Fire Seal Systems
22 05 16	Expansion Compensation
22 05 29	Hangers and Supports
22 05 48	Vibration Isolation Equipment
22 05 50	Seismic Restraint Systems
22 05 53	Plumbing Identification
22 07 19	Plumbing Pipe Insulation
22 10 30	Plumbing Specialties

1.3 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

A. The requirements herein are in addition to the provisions of Division 1.

B. Format:

1. Use AIA Document Continuation Sheets G703 or another similar form approved by the Owner and Architect/Engineer.
2. Submit in Excel format.
3. Support values given with substantiating data.

C. Preparation:

1. Itemize work required by each specification section and list all providers. All work provided by subcontractors and major suppliers shall be listed on the Schedule of Values. List each subcontractor and supplier by company name.
2. Break down all costs into:

a. Material: Delivered cost of product with taxes paid.
b. Labor: Labor cost, excluding overhead and profit.

3. Itemize the cost for each of the following:

a. Overhead and profit.
b. Bonds.
c. Insurance.
d. General Requirements: Itemize all requirements.

4. For each line item having an installed cost of more than $5,000, break down costs to list major products or operations under each item. At a minimum, provide material and labor cost line items for the following:

a. Excavation and backfill for underground piping systems inside the building.
b. Underground piping systems inside the building (sanitary, storm, etc.) listed separately. Break down the material and labor for each piping system based on geography (building, floor, wing and/or phase).
c. Each aboveground piping system (sanitary, storm, domestic water, etc.). Break down the material and labor for each piping system based on geography (building, floor, wing and/or phase).
d. Pipe insulation with separate material and labor line items for each piping system listed above.
e. Each piece of equipment requiring shop drawings (e.g., backflow preventer, water heater, water softener, etc.) using the project nomenclature (BFP-1, WH-1, WS-1, etc.).
f. Each plumbing fixture (e.g., WC, lavatory, sink, etc.). Multiple units of the same type can be listed together, provided quantities are also listed so unit costs can be determined.
g. Site utilities (5' beyond building)
h. Seismic design
i. Water balancing
j. Commissioning
k. Record drawings
l. Punchlist and closeout

D. Update Schedule of Values when:

1. Indicated by Architect/Engineer.
2. Change of subcontractor or supplier occurs.
3. Change of product or equipment occurs.

1.4 CHANGE ORDERS

A. A detailed material and labor takeoff shall be prepared for each change order, along with labor rates and markup percentages. Change orders with inadequate breakdown will be rejected.

B. Change order work shall not proceed until authorized.

1.5 EQUIPMENT SUPPLIERS' INSPECTION

A. The following equipment shall not be placed in operation until a competent installation and service representative of the manufacturer has inspected the installation and certified that the equipment is properly installed, adjusted and lubricated; that preliminary operating instructions have been given; and that the equipment is ready for operation:

1. Fire Seal Systems
2. Seismic Restraints and Equipment Bracing

B. Contractor shall arrange for and obtain supplier's on-site inspection(s) at proper time(s) to assure each phase of equipment installation and/or connection is in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

C. Submit copies of start-up reports to the Architect/Engineer and include copies of Owner's Operation and Maintenance Manuals.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, HANDLING & MAINTENANCE

A. Exercise care in transporting and handling to avoid damage to materials. Store materials on the site to prevent damage. Keep materials clean, dry and free from harmful conditions. Immediately remove any materials that become wet or that are suspected of becoming contaminated with mold or other organisms.

B. Keep all bearings properly lubricated and all belts properly tensioned and aligned.

C. Coordinate the installation of heavy and large equipment with the General Contractor and/or Owner. If the Mechanical Contractor does not have prior documented experience in rigging and lifting similar equipment, he/she shall contract with a qualified lifting and rigging service that has similar documented experience. Follow all equipment lifting and support guidelines for handling and moving.

D. Contractor is responsible for moving equipment into the building and/or site. Contractor shall review site prior to bid for path locations and any required building modifications to allow movement of equipment. Contractor shall coordinate the work with other trades.

1.7 NETWORK / INTERNET CONNECTED EQUIPMENT

A. These specifications may require certain equipment or systems to have network, Internet and/or remote access capability ("Network Capability"). Any requirement for Network Capability shall be interpreted only as a functional capability and is not to be construed as authority to connect or enable any Network Capability. Network Capability may only be connected or enabled with the express written consent of the Owner.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Provide one-year warranty, unless otherwise noted, to the Owner for all fixtures, equipment, materials, and workmanship.

B. The warranty period for all work in this Division of the specifications shall commence on the date of final acceptance, unless a whole or partial system or any separate piece of equipment or component is put into use for the benefit of any party other than the installing contractor with prior written authorization. In this instance, the warranty period shall commence on the date when such whole system, partial system or separate piece of equipment or component is placed in operation and accepted in writing by the Owner.

C. Warranty requirements shall extend to correction, without cost to the Owner, of all Work found to be defective or nonconforming to the contract documents. The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting all damage resulting from defects or nonconformance with contract documents.

1.9 INSURANCE

A. Contractor shall maintain insurance coverage as set forth in Division 0 of these specifications.

1.10 CONTINGENCY

A. The Plumbing Contractor shall include in the Base Bid a contingency of one percent (1%) to be used only by change orders issued by the Architect/Engineer. The unused portion of the contingency shall be deducted from the Contract price before final payment is made.

1.11 MATERIAL SUBSTITUTION

A. Where several manufacturers' names are given, the manufacturer for which a catalog number is given is the basis for job design and establishes the quality required.

B. Equivalent equipment manufactured by the other named manufacturers may be used. Contractor shall ensure that all items submitted by these other manufacturers meet all requirements of the drawings and specifications, and fits in the allocated space.

C. Any material, article or equipment of other unnamed manufacturers which will adequately perform the services and duties imposed by the design and is of a quality equal to or better than the material, article or equipment identified by the drawings and specifications may be used if approval is secured in writing from the Architect/Engineer not later than ten days prior to the bid opening.

D. This Contractor assumes all costs incurred as a result of using the offered material, article or equipment, on the Contractors part or on the part of other Contractors whose work is affected.

E. This Contractor may list voluntary add or deduct prices for alternate materials on the bid form. These items will not be used in determining the low bidder.

F. All material substitutions requested later than ten (10) days prior to bid opening must be listed as voluntary changes on the bid form.

1.12 PROJECT COMMISSIONING

A. The Contractor shall work with the Commissioning Agent (CxA) as described in Section 01 91 00 and 22 08 00 and provide all services as described in the Commissioning Plan.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 JOBSITE SAFETY

A. Neither the professional activities of the Architect/Engineer, nor the presence of the Architect/Engineer or the employees and subconsultants at a construction site, shall relieve the Contractor and other entity of their obligations, duties and responsibilities including, but not limited to, construction means, methods, sequence, techniques or procedures necessary for performing, superintending or coordinating all portions of the work of construction in accordance with the contract documents and any health or safety precautions required by any regulatory agencies. The Architect/Engineer and personnel have no authority to exercise any control over any construction contractor or other entity or their employees in connection with their work or any health or safety precautions. The Contractor is solely responsible for jobsite safety. The Architect/Engineer and the Architect/Engineer's consultants shall be indemnified and shall be made additional insureds under the Contractor's general liability insurance policy.

3.2 EXCAVATION, FILL, BACKFILL, COMPACTION

A. General:

1. Prior to the commencement of any excavation or digging, the Contractor shall verify all underground utilities with the regional utility locator. Provide prior notice to the locator before excavations. Contact information for most regional utility locaters can be found at the following website (https://call811.com/) or by calling 811.
2. The Contractor shall do all excavating, filling, backfilling and compacting associated with the work.

B. Excavation:

1. Make all excavations to accurate, solid, undisturbed earth, and to proper dimensions.
2. Where excavations are made in error below foundations, concrete of same strength as specified for the foundations or thoroughly compacted sand-gravel fill, as determined by the Architect/Engineer, shall be placed in such excess excavations. Place thoroughly compacted, clean, stable fill in excess excavations under slabs on grade, at the Contractor's expense.
3. Trim bottom and sides of excavations to grades required for foundations.
4. Protect excavations against frost and freezing.
5. Take care in excavating not to damage surrounding structures, equipment, or buried pipe. Do not undermine footing or foundation.
6. Perform all trenching in a manner to prevent cave-ins and risk to workers.
7. Where original surface is pavement or concrete, the surface shall be saw cut to

provide clean edges and assist in the surface restoration.

8. Where satisfactory bearing soil for foundations is not found at the indicated levels, the Architect/Engineer or their representative shall be notified immediately, and no further work shall be done until further instructions are given by the Architect/Engineer or their representative.

C. Dewatering:

1. Contractor shall furnish, install, operate, and remove all dewatering pumps and pipes needed to keep trenches and pits free of water.

D. Underground Obstructions:

1. Known underground piping, foundations, and other obstructions in the vicinity of construction are shown on the drawings. Use great care in making installations near underground obstruction.
2. If objects not shown on the drawings are encountered, remove, relocate, or perform extra work as directed by the Architect/Engineer.

E. Fill and Backfilling:

1. No rubbish or waste material is permitted for fill or backfill.
2. Provide all necessary sand and/or CA6 for backfilling.
3. Native soil materials may be used as backfill if approved by the Geotechnical Engineer.
4. Dispose of the excess excavated earth as directed.
5. Backfill materials (native soil material, sand, and/or CA6) shall be suitable for required compaction, clean and free of perishable materials and stones greater than 4 inches in diameter. Water shall not be permitted to rise in unbackfilled trenches. No material shall be used for backfilling that contains frozen earth, debris, or earth with a high void content.
6. Backfill all trenches and excavations immediately after installing pipes or removal of forms, unless other protection is provided.
7. Around piers and isolated foundations and structures, backfill and fill shall be placed and consolidated simultaneously on all sides to prevent wedge action and displacement. Fill and backfill materials shall be spread in 6 inch uniform horizontal layers with each layer compacted separately to required density.
8. Lay all piping on a compacted bed of CA6 at least 3 inches deep. Backfill around pipes with CA6, 6 inch layers, and compact each layer.
9. Use native soil material (if approved), sand, or CA6 for backfill up to grade for all piping under slabs or paved areas. All other piping shall have sand or CA6 backfill to 6 inches above the top of the pipe.
10. Place all backfill above the sand/CA6 in uniform layers not exceeding 6 inches deep. Each layer shall be placed, then carefully and uniformly tamped, to eliminate lateral or vertical displacement.
11. Where the fill and backfill will ultimately be under a building, floor or paving, each layer of fill shall be compacted to 95% of the maximum density determined by AASHTO Designation T-99 or ASTM Designation D-698. Moisture content of soil at time of compaction shall not exceed plus or minus 2% of optimum moisture content

determined by AASHTO T-99 or ASTM D-698 test.

F. Surface Restoration:

1. Where trenches are cut through graded, planted, or landscaped areas, the areas shall be restored to the original condition. Replace all planting removed or damaged to its original condition. A minimum of 6 inches of topsoil shall be applied where disturbed areas are to be seeded or sodded.
2. Concrete or asphalt type pavement, seal coat, rock, gravel or earth surfaces removed or damaged shall be replaced with comparable materials and restored to original condition.

3.3 ARCHITECT/ENGINEER OBSERVATION OF WORK

A. The Contractor shall provide seven (7) calendar days' notice to the Architect/Engineer prior to:

1. Placing fill over underground and underslab utilities.
2. Covering exterior walls, interior partitions and chases.
3. Installing hard or suspended ceilings and soffits.

B. The Architect/Engineer will have the opportunity to review the installation and provide a written report noting deficiencies requiring correction. The Contractor's schedule shall account for these reviews and show them as line items in the approved schedule.

C. Above-Ceiling Final Observation

1. All work above the ceilings must be complete prior to the Architect/Engineer's review. This includes, but is not limited to:

a. Pipe insulation is installed and fully sealed.
b. Pipe wall penetrations are sealed.
c. Pipe identification and valve tags are installed.

2. In order to prevent the Above-Ceiling Final Observation from occurring too early, the Contractor shall review the status of the work and certify, in writing, that the work is ready for the Above-Ceiling Final Observation.
3. It is understood that if the Architect/Engineer finds the ceilings have been installed prior to this review and prior to 7 days elapsing, the Architect/Engineer may not recommend further payments to the contractor until such time as full access has been provided.

3.4 INSTRUCTING THE OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVES

A. Adequately instruct the Owner's designated representatives in the maintenance, care, and operation of all systems installed under this contract.
B. Provide verbal and written instructions to the Owner's representatives by FACTORY PERSONNEL in the care, maintenance, and operation of the equipment and systems.

C. Contractor shall make a DVD video recording of instructions to the Owner while explaining the system so additional personnel may view the instructions at a later date. The video recording shall be the property of the Owner.

D. The Owner has the option to make a video recording of all instructions. Coordinate schedule of instructions to facilitate this recording.

E. The instructions shall include:

1. Explanation of all system flow diagrams.
2. Maintenance of equipment.
3. Start-up procedures for all major equipment.
4. Explanation of seasonal system changes.
5. Explanation of Owner's Responsibilities to operate, maintain, and flush domestic water system (i.e., ASHRAE Standard 188).

F. Notify the Architect/Engineer of the time and place for the verbal instructions to be given to the Owner's representative so a representative can attend if desired.

G. Minimum hours of instruction for each item shall be:

1. Domestic Hot Water System - Insert hours
2. All Domestic Water Systems operation, maintenance and flushing of all fixtures and dead legs - Insert hours

H. The Contractor shall prepare a detailed, written training agenda and submit it to the Architect/Engineer a minimum of two weeks prior to the formal training for approval. The written agenda shall include specific training points within the items described above. For example: how to adjust setpoints, troubleshooting, proper start-up, proper shut-down, seasonal changes, draining, venting, changing filters, changing belts, etc. Failure to provide and follow an approved training agenda may result in additional training required at the expense of the Contractor.

I. Operating Instructions:

1. Contractor is responsible for all instructions to the Owner's representatives for the mechanical and control systems.
2. If the Contractor does not have staff that can adequately provide the required instructions the Contractor shall include in the bid an adequate amount to reimburse the Owner for the Architect/Engineer to perform these services.

3.5 SYSTEM STARTING AND ADJUSTING

A. The plumbing systems shall be complete and operating. System startup, testing, adjusting, and balancing to obtain satisfactory system performance is the responsibility of the Contractor. This includes calibration and adjustments of all controls, noise level adjustments and final adjustments as required.

B. Complete all manufacturer-recommended startup procedures and checklists to verify proper motor rotation, electrical power voltage is within equipment limitations, The Owner has the option to make a video recording of all instructions. Coordinate schedule of instructions to facilitate this recording.

C. The instructions shall include:

1. Explanation of all system flow diagrams.
2. Maintenance of equipment.
3. Start-up procedures for all major equipment.
4. Explanation of seasonal system changes.
5. Explanation of Owner's Responsibilities to operate, maintain, and flush domestic water system (i.e., ASHRAE Standard 188).

D. Notify the Architect/Engineer of the time and place for the verbal instructions to be given to the Owner's representative so a representative can attend if desired.

E. Minimum hours of instruction for each item shall be:

1. Domestic Hot Water System - Insert hours
2. All Domestic Water Systems operation, maintenance and flushing of all fixtures and dead legs - Insert hours

F. The Contractor shall prepare a detailed, written training agenda and submit it to the Architect/Engineer a minimum of two weeks prior to the formal training for approval. The written agenda shall include specific training points within the items described above. For example: how to adjust setpoints, troubleshooting, proper start-up, proper shut-down, seasonal changes, draining, venting, changing filters, changing belts, etc. Failure to provide and follow an approved training agenda may result in additional training required at the expense of the Contractor.

G. Operating Instructions:

1. Contractor is responsible for all instructions to the Owner's representatives for the mechanical and control systems.
2. If the Contractor does not have staff that can adequately provide the required instructions the Contractor shall include in the bid an adequate amount to reimburse the Owner for the Architect/Engineer to perform these services.

3.6 SYSTEM STARTING AND ADJUSTING

A. The plumbing systems shall be complete and operating. System startup, testing, adjusting, and balancing to obtain satisfactory system performance is the responsibility of the Contractor. This includes calibration and adjustments of all controls, noise level adjustments and final adjustments as required.

B. Complete all manufacturer-recommended startup procedures and checklists to verify proper motor rotation, electrical power voltage is within equipment limitations, Contractor shall

adjust the plumbing systems and controls at season changes during the one year warranty period, as required, to provide satisfactory operation and to prove performance of all systems in all seasons.

C. All operating conditions and control sequences shall be tested during the start-up period. Test all interlocks, safety shutdowns, controls, and alarms.

D. The Contractor, subcontractors, and equipment suppliers shall have skilled technicians to ensure that all systems perform properly. If the Architect/Engineer is requested to visit the job site for trouble shooting, assisting in start-up, obtaining satisfactory equipment operation, resolving installation and/or workmanship problems, equipment substitution issues or unsatisfactory system performance, including call backs during the warranty period, through no fault of the design; the Contractor shall reimburse the Owner on a time and materials basis for services rendered at the Architect/Engineer's standard hourly rates in effect when the services are requested. The Contractor shall pay the Owner for services required that are product, installation or workmanship related. Payment is due within 30 days after services are rendered.

3.7 RECORD DOCUMENTS

A. The following paragraphs supplement Division 1 requirements.

B. Maintain at the job site a separate and complete set of plumbing drawings and specifications with all changes made to the systems clearly and permanently marked in complete detail.

C. Mark drawings to indicate revisions to piping size and location, both exterior and interior; including locations devices, requiring periodic maintenance or repair; actual equipment locations, dimensioned from column lines; actual inverts and locations of underground piping; concealed equipment, dimensioned from column lines; mains and branches of piping systems, with valves and control devices located and numbered, concealed unions located, and with items requiring maintenance located; Change Orders; concealed control system devices.

D. Before completion of the project, a set of reproducible plumbing drawings will be given to the Contractor for transfer of all as-built conditions from the paper set maintained at the job site. All marks on reproducibles shall be clear and permanent.

E. Mark specifications to show approved substitutions; Change Orders, and actual equipment and materials used.

F. Record changes daily and keep the marked drawings available for the Architect/Engineer's examination at any normal work time.

G. Upon completing the job, and before final payment is made, give the marked-up drawings to the Architect/Engineer.

3.8 PAINTING

A. This Contractor shall paint the following items:

1. All piping in mechanical room

B. Paint all equipment that is marred or damaged prior to the Owner's acceptance. Paint and color shall match original equipment paint and shall be obtained from the equipment supplier if available.

C. Equipment in finished areas that will be painted to match the room decor will be painted by others. Should this Contractor install equipment in a finished area after the area has been painted, the Contractor shall have the equipment and all its supports, hangers, etc., painted to match the room decor.

D. Equipment cabinets, casings, covers, metal jackets, etc., in equipment rooms or concealed spaces, shall be furnished in standard or prime finish, free from scratches, abrasions, chips, etc.

E. Equipment in occupied spaces, or if standard to the unit, shall have a baked primer with baked enamel finish coat free from scratches, abrasions, chips, etc. If color option is specified or is standard to the unit, this Contractor shall, before ordering, verify with the Architect/Engineer the color preference and furnish this color.

F. Paint all equipment in unfinished areas such as boiler room, mechanical spaces, storage room, etc., furnished by this Contractor. Equipment furnished with a factory coat of paint and enamel need not be painted, provided the factory applied finish is not marred or spattered. If so, equipment shall be refinished with the same paint as was factory applied.

G. Paint all outdoor uninsulated steel piping the color selected by Owner or Architect/Engineer.

H. After surfaces have been thoroughly cleaned and are free of oil, dirt, and other foreign matter; paint all pipes and equipment with the following:

1. Bare Metal Surfaces - Apply one coat of primer suitable for the metal being painted. Finish with two coats of Alkyd base enamel paint.
2. Insulated Surfaces - Paint insulation jackets with two coats of semi-gloss acrylic latex paint.
3. Color of paint shall be as follows:

a. All piping in mechanical room:

1) Domestic Cold Water: Blue pipe/white letters
2) Domestic Hot Water: Red pipe/white letters
3) Sanitary Waste: Green pipe/black letters

3.9 ADJUST AND CLEAN

A. Thoroughly clean all equipment and systems prior to the Owner's final acceptance of the project. Clean all foreign paint, grease, oil, dirt, labels, stickers, and other foreign material

from all equipment.

B. Clean all areas where moisture is present. Immediately report any mold, biological growth, or water damage.

C. Remove all rust, scale, dirt, oils, stickers and thoroughly clean exterior of all exposed piping, hangers, and accessories.

D. Remove all rubbish, debris, etc., accumulated during construction from the premises.

3.10 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Contractor shall coordinate the installation of all equipment, valves, dampers, operators, etc., with other trades to maintain clear access area for servicing.

B. All equipment shall be installed in such a way to maximize access to parts needing service or maintenance. Review the final field location, placement, and orientation of equipment with the Owner's designated representative prior to setting equipment.

C. Installation of equipment or devices without regard to coordination of access requirements and confirmation with the Owner's designated representative will result in removal and reinstallation of the equipment at the Contractor's expense.

3.11 IAQ MAINTENANCE FOR OCCUPIED FACILITIES UNDER CONSTRUCTION

A. Contractors shall make all reasonable efforts to prevent construction activities from affecting the air quality of the occupied areas of the building or outdoor areas near the building. These measures shall include, but not be limited to:

1. All contractors shall endeavor to minimize the amount of contaminants generated during construction. Methods to be employed shall include, but not be limited to:

    a. Minimizing the amount of dust generated.
    b. Reducing solvent fumes and VOC emissions.
    c. Maintain good housekeeping practices, including sweeping and periodic dust and debris removal. There should be no visible haze in the air.
    d. Protect stored on-site and installed absorptive materials from moisture damage.

2. Request that the Owner designate an IAQ representative.
3. Review and receive approval from the Owner's IAQ representative for all IAQ-related construction activities and negative pressure containment plans.
4. Inform the IAQ representative of all conditions that could adversely impact IAQ, including operations that will produce higher than normal dust production or odors.
5. Schedule activities that may cause IAQ conditions that are not acceptable to the Owner's IAQ representative during unoccupied periods.
6. Request copies of and follow all of the Owner's IAQ and infection control policies.
7. Unless no other access is possible, the entrance to construction site shall not be through the existing facility.
8. To minimize growth of infectious organisms, do not permit damp areas in or near

the construction area to remain for over 24 hours.

9. In addition to the criteria above, provide measures as recommended in the SMACNA "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction".

3.12 UTILITY REBATE

A. Submit utility rebate forms, where offered at project location, with rebate items completed. Rebate may include lighting, lighting controls, variable speed drives, heat pumps, package terminal A/C, air conditioners, chillers, water heaters, programmable thermostats, and motors.

Contractor must submit notification of any value engineering or product substitution that will affect the utility rebate amount prior to approval.

B. Submit utility rebate forms, where offered at project location, with rebate items completed. Rebate may include lighting, lighting controls, variable speed drives, heat pumps, package terminal A/C, air conditioners, chillers, water heaters, programmable thermostats, and motors.

Contractor must submit notification of any value engineering or product substitution that will affect the utility rebate amount prior to final payment at the completion of the job.

END OF SECTION 22 05 00

SECTION 22 05 23- PLUMBING VALVES AND PIPING SPECIALITES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. This Section includes valves and specialties common to most plumbing piping systems.

1. General Duty Valves
2. Special Purpose Valves
3. Thermometers and Gauges
4. Plumbing Specialties

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to this section.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product data, including body material, valve design, pressure and temperature classification, end connection details, seating materials, trim material and arrangement, dimensions and required clearances, and installation instructions.

C. Product data for each type of thermometer, and gauge. Include scale range and ratings.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9 for building services piping and ASME B31.1 for power piping and portions of ASME and Instrument Society of America (ISA) standards pertaining to construction and installation of meters and gages.

B. Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry (MSS) Compliance: Comply with the various MSS Standard Practices referenced.

C. UL Compliance: Comply with applicable UL standards pertaining to meters and gages.

D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law III-380 (S.3874) “Reduction in Lead in Drinking Water Act.”

E. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with provisions of the following:

1. Uniform Plumbing Code (2018 ed.)
2. International Fuel Gas Code (2018 ed.)
3. National Electrical Code (NFPA 70) (2017 ed.)
4. Public Law 102-486, “Energy Policy Act” (water flow and consumption rates)
5. NSF 61, “Drinking Water System Components—Health Effects”
6. NSF 372, “Drinking Water System Components—Lead Content”
7. Reduction in Lead in Drinking Water Act (Public Law III-380)
8. Local codes and the local authority having jurisdiction.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Preparation For Transport: Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Ensure valves are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect valve ends against damage to threads, flange faces, and weld-end preps.
3. Set valves in best position for handling. Set globe and gate valves closed to prevent rattling; set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces; set butterfly valves closed or slightly open; and block swing check valves in either closed or open position.

B. Storage: Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Do not remove valve end protectors unless necessary for inspection; then reinstall for storage.
2. Protect valves from weather. Store valves indoors. Maintain valve temperature higher than the ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, support valves off the ground or pavement in watertight enclosures.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products which may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Valves:

a. Apollo

b. Grinnell

c. Hammond

d. Jenkins

e. Milwaukee

f. Nibco

g. Powell

h. Stockham

2. Thermometers:

a. Ashcroft Dresser Industries Instrument Div.

b. Marshall Instruments, Inc.

c. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Co., Inc.

d. Trerice (H.O.) Co.

e. Weiss Instruments, Inc

f. Weksler Instruments Corp.

3. Pressure Gages:

a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge Div.

b. Dresser Industries, Inc.: Instrument Div.; Ashcroft Commercial Sales Operation

c. Weksler Instruments Operating Unit.

d. Ernst Gage Co.

e. Marsh Bellofram

f. Trerice: H.O. Trerice Co.

g. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

h. Peterson Products Co.

2.2 PRODUCTS - GENERAL INFORMATION

A. The application of the following products and materials, as required for the installation of the Plumbing systems, can be found in the Part 3 Articles, and in the Drawing Schedules and

notations.

2.3 VALVE FEATURES, GENERAL

A. Valve Design: Rising stem or rising outside screw and yoke stems.

B. Pressure and Temperature Ratings: As scheduled and required to suit system pressures and temperatures.

C. Sizes: Same size as upstream pipe, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Operators: Provide the following special operator features:

1. Handwheels, fastened to valve stem, for valves other than quarter turn.

2. Lever handles, on quarter-turn valves 6-inch and smaller.

E. Extended Stems: Where insulation is indicated or specified, provide extended stems arranged to receive insulation.

F. Bypass and Drain Connections: Comply with MSS SP-45 bypass and drain connections.

G. End Connections: As indicated in the valve specifications.

1. Threads: Comply with ANSI B1.20.1.

2. Flanges: Comply with ANSI B16.1 for cast iron, ANSI B16.5 for steel, and ANSI B16.24 for bronze valves.

3. Solder-Joint: Comply with ANSI B16.18.

a. Caution: Where soldered end connections are used, use solder having a melting point below 840□F for gate, globe, and check valves; below 421□F for ball valves.

2.4 GATE VALVES

A. Gate Valves, 2-Inch and Smaller: MSS SP-80; Class 125, body and bonnet of ASTM B 62 cast bronze; with threaded or solder ends, solid disc, copper-silicon alloy stem, brass packing gland, "Teflon" impregnated packing, and malleable iron handwheel.

B. Gate Valves, 2-1/2 Inch and Larger: MSS SP-70; Class 125, body and bonnet of ASTM A 126, Class B; cast bronze; with threaded or flanged ends, solid disc, copper-silicon alloy stem, brass packing gland, "Teflon" impregnated packing, and malleable iron handwheel.

C. NOTE:*Gate valves shall be allowed only when provided by manufacturer as an integral part of manufacturer's equipment, where butterfly or ball valves are not an available option.*

2.5 BALL VALVES

A. Ball Valves, 4 Inches and Smaller: MSS SP-110, Class 150, 600-psi (4140-kPa) CWP, ASTM

B 584 bronze body and bonnet, 2-piece construction; chrome-plated brass ball, full port;

blowout proof; bronze or brass stem; teflon seats and seals; threaded end connections: (Soldered ends for domestic hot and cold water).

1. Operator: Steel handwheel. (4" only).

2. Operator: Vinyl-covered steel lever handle.

3. Stem Extension: For valves installed on systems with insulated piping.

2.6 CHECK VALVES

A. Swing Check Valves, 2-1/2 Inches and Smaller: MSS SP-80; Class 125, 200 psi (1380-kPa) CWP, or Class 150, 300 psi (2070-kPa) CWP; horizontal swing, Y-pattern ASTM B 62 cast-bronze body and cap, rotating bronze disc with rubber seat or composition seat, threaded or soldered end connection.

B. Swing Check Valves, 3 Inches and Larger: MSS SP-71, Class 125, 200-psi (1380-kPa) CWP, ASTM A 126 cast-iron body and bolted cap, horizontal-swing bronze disc, flanged or grooved end connections.

2.7 THERMOMETERS, GENERAL

A. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of range span or plus or minus one scale division to maximum of 1.5 percent of range span.

B. Scale range: Temperature ranges for services are as indicated on Drawings.

C. Adjustability: Thermometer shall allow viewing angle to be adjusted and locked for best viewing by operator.

D. See drawings for additional information.

2.8 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Description: ASME B40.1, phosphor-bronze bourdon-tube type with bottom connection; dry type, unless liquid-filled-case type is indicated

B. Case: Drawn steel, brass, or aluminum with 4-1/2-inch diameter, glass lens.

C. Connector: Brass, NPS ¼.

D. Scale: White-coated aluminum with permanently etched markings.

E. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle 50 percent of scale.

F. Range: Comply with the following

1. Vacuum: 30 inches Hg of vacuum to 15 psig of pressure.

2. Fluids under Pressure: Two times the operating pressure.

2.9 SEPARABLE SOCKET

A. Description: Fitting with protective socket for installation in threaded pipe fitting to hold fixed thermometer stem.

1. Material: Brass, for use in copper piping.

2. Extension-Neck Length: Nominal thickness of 2 inches, but not less than thickness of insulation. Omit extension neck for sockets for piping not insulated.

3. Insertion Length: To extend to one-third of diameter of pipe.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior through the end ports for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Actuate valve through an open-close and close-open cycle. Examine functionally significant features, such as guides and seats made accessible by such actuation. Following examination, return the valve closure member to the shipping position.

C. Examine threads or sweat end of both the valve and the mating pipe for form (i.e., out-of-round or local indentation) and cleanliness.

D. Prior to valve installation, examine the piping for cleanliness, freedom from foreign materials, and proper alignment.

E. Replace defective valves with new valves.

3.2 VALVE ENDS SELECTION

A. Select valves with the following ends or types of pipe/tube connections:

1. Copper Tube Size, 2-1/2 Inch and Smaller: Solder ends.

2. Steel Pipe Sizes, 2-1/2 Inch and Larger: Threaded or grooved end.

3. Copper Tube Size, 3 Inch and Smaller: Press-fit or Flanged ends.

4. Steel Pipe Sizes, 3 Inch and Larger: Flanged end.

3.3 VALVE INSTALLATIONS

A. General Application: Use ball valves for shut-off duty and globe for throttling duty. Refer to piping system specification sections for specific valve applications and arrangements.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves and unions for each fixture and item of equipment arranged to allow equipment removal without system shutdown. Unions are not required on flanged devices.

D. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above the center of the pipe.

E. Install valves in a position to allow full stem movement.

F. Installation of Check Valves: Install for proper direction of flow as follows:

1. Swing Check Valves: Horizontal position with hinge pin level.

3.4 THERMOMETER AND GAGE INSTALLATION

A. Install thermometer stem into waterflow to provide accurate temperature reading.

B. Install thermometers in vertical and tilted positions to allow reading by observer standing on floor.

C. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance.

D. Install in locations as indicated on drawings or as specified in other Division 22 sections.

3.5 SOLDER CONNECTIONS

A. Cut tube square and to exact lengths.

B. Clean end of tube to depth of valve socket with steel wool, sand cloth, or a steel wire brush to a bright finish. Clean valve socket in same manner.

C. Apply proper soldering flux in an even coat to inside of valve socket and outside of tube.

D. Open valves to full open position.

E. Remove the cap and disc holder of swing check valves having composition discs.

F. Insert tube into valve socket, making sure the end rests against the shoulder inside valve. Rotate tube or valve slightly to ensure even distribution of the flux.

G. Apply heat evenly to outside of valve around joint until solder will melt upon contact. Feed solder until it completely fills the joint around tube. Avoid hot spots or overheating valve. Once the solder starts cooling, remove excess amounts around the joint with a cloth or brush.

3.6 THREADED CONNECTIONS

A. Note the internal length of threads in valve ends, and proximity of valve internal seat or wall, to determine how far pipe should be threaded into valve.

B. Align threads at point of assembly.

C. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to the external pipe threads (except where dry seal threading is specified).

D. Assemble joint, wrench tight. Wrench on valve shall be on the valve end into which the pipe is being threaded.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests: After piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before final adjusting and balancing, inspect valves for leaks. Adjust or replace packing to stop leaks; replace valves if leak persists.

3.8 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Calibrate gages according to manufacturer’s written instructions, after installation.

B. Adjust faces of thermometers and gages to proper angle for best visibility

C. Clean windows of thermometers and gauges, and factory-finished surfaces. Replace cracked and broken windows, and repair scratched and marred surfaces with manufacturer’s touch-up paint.

D. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if leak persists.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 29 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
4. Fastener systems.
5. Pipe positioning systems.
6. Equipment supports.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. Design supports for multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported
equipment and connected systems and components.
3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Equipment supports.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
   1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
   2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
   3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
   4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
   5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Copper Pipe Hangers:
   1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
   2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel or stainless steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.

B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.

C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull- out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.5 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.

B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported.
3. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

D. Fastener System Installation:
1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured.
3. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.

F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

M. Insulated Piping:
1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
   a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
   b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
   c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
   a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
   a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
   b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
   c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
   d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
   e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.

B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.

C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
   1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
   2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
   3. Remove welding flux immediately.
   4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.

F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.

G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
   1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
   2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
   3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
   4. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
   5. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
   6. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
   7. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
   8. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
   9. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.

J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
   1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
   2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
   1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
   2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
   1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
   2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
   3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
   4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
   5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.

6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
   a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
   b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
   c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
8. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
9. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.

M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

N. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

O. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

P. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 226113 "Compressed-Air Piping for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities" for labeling requirements, complying with NFPA 99, for medical, compressed-air system piping and associated components in healthcare facilities.
2. Section 226213 "Vacuum Piping for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities" for labeling requirements, complying with NFPA 99, for medical surgical, healthcare laboratory, and dental vacuum system piping, waste anesthetic gas and oral evacuation system piping, and associated components in healthcare facilities.
3. Section 226313 "Gas Piping for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities" for labeling requirements, complying with NFPA 99, for medical carbon dioxide, laboratory carbon dioxide, medical helium, laboratory helium, medical nitrogen, laboratory nitrogen, medical nitrous oxide, laboratory nitrous oxide, medical oxygen, and laboratory oxygen.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.

C. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
2. Material and Thickness: [Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm)] [stainless steel, 0.025-inch (0.64-mm)] [aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm)] [anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm)] minimum thickness, with predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
3. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances of up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
6. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, [1/16 inch (1.6 mm)] [1/8 inch (3.2 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
3. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures of up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances of up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>

B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, [1/16 inch (1.6 mm)] [1/8 inch (3.2 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

C. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.

D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures of up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).

E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).

F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances of up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

G. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

I. Arc-Flash Warning Signs: Provide arc-flash warning signs in locations and with content in accordance with requirements of OSHA and NFPA 70E[, and other applicable codes and standards].

J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

A. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>

B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction in accordance with ASME A13.1.

C. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.

D. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to [partially cover] [cover full] circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

E. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

F. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings. Also include:

1. Pipe size.
2. Flow-Direction Arrows: Include flow-direction arrows on[main] distribution piping. Arrows may be either integral with label or applied separately.
3. Lettering Size: [Size letters in accordance with ASME A13.1 for piping] [At least 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances of up to 72 inches (1830 mm) and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances].

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

D. Locate identifying devices so that they are readily visible from the point of normal approach.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT LABELS, WARNING SIGNS, AND LABELS

A. Permanently fasten labels on each item of plumbing equipment.

B. Sign and Label Colors.

1. [White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-green background] <Insert colors>.

C. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

D. Arc-Flash Warning Signs: Provide arc-flash warning signs on electrical disconnects and other equipment where are-flash hazard exists, as indicated on Drawings, and in accordance with requirements of OSHA and NFPA 70E[, and other applicable codes and standards].

3.4 INSTALLATION OF PIPE LABELS

A. Piping Color Coding: Painting of piping is specified in [Section 099123 "Interior Painting."] [Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."]

B. Install pipe labels showing service and flow direction with permanent adhesive on pipes.

C. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Within 3 ft. (1 m) of each valve and control device.
2. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
3. Within 3 ft. (1 m) of equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
4. Spaced at maximum intervals of [25 ft. (8 m)] <Insert dimension> along each run. Reduce intervals to [10 ft. (3 m)] <Insert dimension> in areas of congested piping and equipment.

D. Do not apply plastic pipe labels or plastic tapes directly to bare pipes conveying fluids at temperatures of 125 deg F (52 deg C) or higher. Where these pipes are to remain uninsulated, use a short section of insulation or use stenciled labels.

E. Flow-Direction Flow Arrows: Use arrows, in compliance with ASME A13.1, to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.

F. Pipe-Label Color Schedule:

1. Low-Pressure Compressed-Air Piping: [White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-blue background] <Insert colors>.
2. High-Pressure Compressed-Air Piping: [White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-blue background] <Insert colors>.
3. Vacuum Piping: [White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 Safety blue background.] <Insert colors.>
4. Domestic Cold-Water Piping: [White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-green background] <Insert colors>.
5. Domestic Hot-Water Piping: [White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-green background] <Insert colors.>
6. Domestic Hot-Water Return Piping [White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-green background] <Insert colors>.
7. [Sanitary Waste] [and] [Storm Drainage] Piping: [White letters on a black background] <Insert colors>.
8. Nonpotable Cold Water: [Black letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-yellow background] <Insert colors>.
9. Nonpotable Hot Water: [Black letters on an ANSI Z535.1-yellow background] <Insert colors>.
10. Nonpotable Hot-Water Recirculation: [Black letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-yellow background] <Insert colors>.
11. Reagent Water Piping: [White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-blue background] <Insert colors>.
12. Deionized Water Piping: [White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-blue background] <Insert colors>.
13. Distilled Water Piping: [White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-blue background] <Insert colors>.
14. Reverse Osmosis Water Piping: [White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-blue background] <Insert colors>.
15. <Insert additional systems and colors as required>.

END OF SECTION 22 05 53

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 07 00- PLUMBING INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Preformed, flexible pipe insulation; insulating cements; field-applied jacket fittings; accessories and attachments; and sealing compounds

1. Pipe Insulation
2. Blanket Insulation
3. Fire Wrap Insulation
4. Premolded Valve and Fitting Insulation
5. Elbow / Fitting Jacketss
6. Adheasives and Compounds
7. Insulation ccessories

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Identify thermal conductivity, thickness, fire rating, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any), for each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for the following:

1. Application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at pipe hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Attachment and covering of heat trace inside insulation.
3. Insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
5. Removable insulation at piping specialties and equipment connections.
6. Application of field-applied jackets.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing materials identical to those specified in this Section according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and sealer and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread rating of 25 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 50 or less.

2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread rating of 75 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 150 or less.

3. PVC Fitting Covers Installed Indoors: Flame-spread rating of 25 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 50 or less.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Ship insulation materials in containers marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM specification designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 and indicated on drawing details.

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for insulation application.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of temperature maintenance heating cable (heat trace).

1.7 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after testing piping systems and, where required, after installing and testing temperature maintenance heating cable tape. Insulation application may begin on segments of piping that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Preformed Fiberglass (Mineral-Fiber) Thermal Pipe Insulation:

   a. CertainTeed Manson.

   b. Knauf FiberGlass GmbH.

   c. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.

   d. Schuller International, Inc.

2. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation:

   a. Rubatex Corp.

   b. GER International, Inc.

   c. Armacell Enterprise

3. Fire Rated Wrap Insulation:

   a. 3M Company, Inc.

   b. Unifrax I LLC

   c. Morgan Advanced Materials, Inc.

2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Mineral-Fiber Thermal Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin complying with the following:

1. Preformed Thermal Pipe Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 547, Type 1, with factory-applied, all-purpose, vapor-retarder jacket.

2. Blanket Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II, without facing.

3. Fire-Resistant Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C in the following classes and grades:

4. Class 1, Grade A for bonding glass cloth and tape to unfaced glass-fiber insulation, for sealing edges of glass-fiber insulation, and for bonding lagging cloth to unfaced glass-fiber insulation.

5. Class 2, Grade A for bonding glass-fiber insulation to metal surfaces.

6. Vapor-Retarder Mastics: Fire- and water-resistant, vapor-retarder mastic for indoor applications. Comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Pipe Insulation: Nitrile expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.

1. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

2. Ultraviolet-Protective Coating: As recommended by insulation manufacturer.

3. NOTE: Polyolefin and Polyethylene Products shall not be used.

C. Preformed Thermal Insulation Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.

D. PVC vinyl insulating covers (for handicapped applications)

1. PVC vinyl with antimicrobial and antifungal inhibited properties. one piece injeceted molder design for tubular applications, with smooth, non absorbent exterior surfaces and high gloss finish. Cover shall have thermal properties to protect from hot & cold contact. P-trap, valve, and supply covers shall be removable and resuable, and secured with non-abrasive shelf-locking snap fasteners.

2.3 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. General: ASTM C 921, Type 1, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Plenum Rated PVC Fitting Jackets: Factory-fabricated fitting jackets manufactured from 20-mil thick, high-impact, ultraviolet-resistant PVC, and not exceeding 25 flame spread and 50 smoke development.

1. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, and mechanical joints.

2. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

2.4 ACCESSORIES AND ATTACHMENTS

A. Glass Cloth and Tape: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I for cloth and Type II for tape. Woven glass-fiber fabrics, plain weave, presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd.

1. Tape Width: 4 inches.

B. Bands: 3/4 inch wide, in one of the following materials compatible with jacket:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304; 0.020 inch thick.

2.5 VAPOR RETARDERS AND SEALANTS

A. Mastics: Materials recommended by insulation material manufacturer that are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

2.6 FIRE RATED WRAP INSULATION

A. Fire Barrier Plenum Wrap: ASTM E 84 & ASTM E 136 Lightweight, non-asbestos, high temperature, bio-soluble, calcium-magnesium-silicate (CMS) non-woven blanket, encapsulated in a scrim-reinforced foil, blanket thickness of 0.5 inches (13 mm) for protection of items within a plenum area.

1. Color: White blanket, aluminum foil encapsulated.

2. Weight: 0.25 psf (1.22 kg/m2).

3. Density: 6 pcf nominal.

4. Thermal Conductivity (k-value) at 500 Degrees F (260 Degrees C) (ASTM C411, ASTM C518): 0.48 Btu/(ft2 x h x F) (0.07 W/(m x K)).

5. Service range up to 2000°F (1093°C).

6. Plenum Rating (non-metallic pipe): Product complies with UL 1887.

7. Flame and smoke spread index of <25/<50.

8. Non-combustible per ASTM E 136.

2.7 RELATED FIRE RATED WRAP INSULATION ACCESSORIES

A. Tape:

1. High performance filament tape, 3M No. 898 1 inch (25 mm) wide.

2. 3M FSK Facing Tape 3320 with aluminum foil, fiberglass scrim, kraft paper backing: nominal 3 inches (76 mm) or 4 inches (102 mm) wide (for sealing cut blanket edges and seams), 3M No. 3320.

B. Banding Material: Stainless or carbon steel banding: ½ inch (13 mm) wide X 0.015 inch (0.4 mm) thick.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry pipe and fitting surfaces. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Verify that all piping systems and temperature maintenance heating cable systems] have been tested prior to insulating.

3.3 GENERAL APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Apply insulation materials, accessories, and finishes according to the manufacturer's written instructions; with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Refer to 3.10 Insulation Application Schedule, General, below and drawing schedules for scheduled applications, including insulation thicknesses and conditions as required for various piping systems.

C. Use accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Use accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Apply insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal pipe runs.

E. Apply multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Seal all joints and insulation terminations with vapor-retarder mastic on all domestic water piping.

H. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing. Exterior piping must be protected from the elements until a weather proof jacket has been installed. Insulation that becomes saturated from the elements, improper vapor barrier installation, or absorbing condensation from operating piping prior to completion of insulation shall be replaced with new by responsible contractor.

I. Apply insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by the insulation material manufacturer.

J. Apply insulation with the least number of joints practical.

K. Apply insulation over fittings, valves, and specialties, with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated. Refer to special instructions for applying insulation over fittings, valves, and specialties.

L. Hangers and Anchors: Where vapor retarder is indicated, seal penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-retarder mastic.

1. Apply insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.

2. For insulation application where vapor retarders are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs at least 12 inches from point of attachment to pipe and taper insulation ends. Seal tapered ends with a compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor retarder.

3. Install insert materials and apply insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer.

4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect the jacket from tear or puncture by the hanger, support, and shield.

M. Insulation Terminations: Taper insulation ends. Seal tapered ends with a compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor retarder.

N. Apply adhesives and mastics at the manufacturer's recommended coverage rate.

O. Apply insulation with integral jackets as follows:

1. Pull jacket tight and smooth.

2. Circumferential Joints: Cover with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip and spaced 4 inches o.c.

3. Longitudinal Seams: Overlap jacket seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Apply insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.

4. Exception: Do not staple longitudinal laps on insulation having a vapor retarder.

5. Vapor-Retarder Mastics: Provide vapor retarder mastics on all domestic cold water pipe insulation. Apply mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to flanges, unions, valves, and fittings.

6. At penetrations in jackets for thermometers and pressure gages, fill and seal voids with vapor-retarder mastic.

P. Install protective vinyl insulating covers on all P-traps, valves and supplies of handicapped accessible fixtures.

1. Exception: Where protective panels or shrouds are provided, the installation of protective vinyl covers will not be required.

Q. Exterior Wall Penetrations: For penetrations of below-grade exterior walls, terminate insulation flush with mechanical sleeve seal. Seal terminations with vapor-retarder mastic.

R. Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations: Apply insulation continuously through walls and floors.

S. Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Apply insulation up to penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.

1. Firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers are specified in Division 07 Section "Firestopping."

2. Seal insulation with vapor-retarder mastic where floor supports penetrate vapor retarder.

3. Refer to architectural drawings for locations of fire rated walls and floors.

T. Floor Penetrations: Apply insulation continuously through floor assembly. Except where floor is fire rated. In cases where floor is fire rated, apply insulation up to penetration of fire-rated floor.

1. Firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers are specified in Division 07 Section "Firestopping."

2. Seal insulation with vapor-retarder mastic where floor supports penetrate vapor retarder.

3. Refer to architectural drawings for locations of fire rated walls and floors.

3.4 MINERAL-FIBER THERMAL INSULATION APPLICATION

A. Apply insulation to straight pipes and tubes as follows:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire, tape, or bands without deforming insulation materials.

2. Where vapor retarders are indicated, seal longitudinal seams and end joints with vapor-retarder mastic. Apply vapor retarder to ends of insulation at intervals of 15 to 20 feet to form a vapor retarder between pipe insulation segments.

3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.

4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by the insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-retarder mastic.

B. Apply insulation to flanges as follows:

1. Apply preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.

2. Make width of insulation segment the same as overall width of the flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of the pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.

4. Apply canvas jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlapping seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with vapor-retarder mastic.

C. Apply insulation to fittings and elbows as follows:

1. Apply premolded insulation sections of the same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2. When premolded insulation elbows and fittings are not available, apply mitered sections of pipe insulation, or glass-fiber blanket insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with tape or bands.

3. Cover fittings with plenum rated PVC fitting covers.

4. Cover fittings with plenum rated PVC fitting covers. Overlap PVC covers on pipe insulation jackets at least 1 inch at each end. Secure fitting covers with manufacturer's attachments and accessories. Seal seams with tape and vapor-retarder mastic.

D. Apply insulation to valves and specialties as follows:

1. Apply premolded insulation sections of the same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2. When premolded insulation sections are not available, apply glass-fiber blanket insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation. For check valves, arrange insulation for access to strainer basket without disturbing insulation.

3. Apply insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

4. Use preformed PVC fitting covers for valve sizes where available. Secure fitting covers with manufacturer's attachments and accessories. Seal seams with tape and vapor-retarder mastic.

5. Use preformed heavy PVC fitting covers for valve sizes where available. Secure fitting covers with manufacturer's attachments and accessories. Seal seams with tape and vapor-retarder mastic.

6. For larger sizes where PVC fitting covers are not available, seal insulation with canvas jacket and sealing compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer.

3.5 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC THERMAL INSULATION APPLICATION

A. Apply insulation to straight pipes and tubes as follows:

1. Follow manufacturer's written instructions for applying insulation.

2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Cement to avoid openings in insulation that will allow passage of air to the pipe surface.

B. Apply insulation to flanges as follows:

1. Apply pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.

2. Make width of insulation segment the same as overall width of the flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of the pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of the same thickness as pipe insulation.

4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Cement to avoid openings in insulation that will allow passage of air to the pipe surface.

C. Apply insulation to fittings and elbows as follows:

1. Apply mitered sections of pipe insulation.

2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Cement to avoid openings in insulation that will allow passage of air to the pipe surface.

D. Apply insulation to valves and specialties as follows:

1. Apply preformed valve covers manufactured of the same material as pipe insulation and attached according to the manufacturer's written instructions.

2. Apply cut segments of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation. For check valves, fabricate removable sections of insulation arranged to allow access to strainer basket.

3. Apply insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Cement to avoid openings in insulation that will allow passage of air to the pipe surface.

3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET APPLICATION

A. Apply PVC jacket and fitting jackets where indicated, with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. All Mineral Fiber installations shall include the use of fitting jackets at all turns and elbows.

3.7 FINISHES

A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of the insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating (exterior applications only).

3.8 FIRE RATED WRAP INSULATION APPLICATION

A. Apply fire rated wrap insulation to combustible pipes and tubes located in a return air plenum space and/or adjacencies open to a return air plenum.

B. Install per manufacturer’s printed instructions for application.

3.9 PIPING SYSTEM APPLICATIONS

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are specified in drawing schedules.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not apply insulation to the following systems, materials, and equipment:

1. Flexible connectors.
2. Vibration-control devices.
3. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Below-grade piping, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings, unless potential for personal injury.
6. Unions, strainers, and flow regulators.

3.10 INSULATION APPLICATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Refer to insulation application schedules on the Drawings for required insulation materials, and field-applied jackets.

B. General Application: See below for general plumbing applications and plumbing piping schedule on drawings for supplemental insulation requirements including thickness and material.

1. Interior, Exposed Plumbing Piping Systems: Unless otherwise indicated, thermally insulate the following piping systems:
2. Domestic cold water.
3. Domestic hot water.

4. Sanitary drains for fixtures accessible to the disabled (manufacturer premolded vinyl assembly or fixture apron).

5. Hot and cold water supplies for fixtures accessible to the disabled (manufacturer premolded vinyl assembly or fixture apron).

6. Upper level floor drain piping and appurtenances (first 20’-0”) receiving condensate water or discharge hot water exceeding 120°F..

7. Insulate exposed supply piping at commercial kitchen equipment and fixture applications with ½” flexible elastomeric thermal insulation.

8. See plumbing drawing schedule for additional information.

9. Interior, Concealed Piping Systems: Unless otherwise indicated, thermally insulate the following piping systems:

    a. Domestic cold water.

    b. Storm water. Insulate roof drain body assembly, elbows, and entire length of intial horizontal rainwater leader or storm water piping.

    c. Domestic hot water.

    d. Sanitary piping located at exterior walls.

    e. Upper level floor drain piping and appurtenances (first 20’-0”) receiving condensate water or discharge hot water exceeding 120°F..

    f. Interior, Non-Metallic Plumbing Piping Systems: Unless otherwise indicated, insulate all non-metallic plumbing piping, including PVC flue piping and intake air piping, located with a return air plenum space, with fire rated wrap insulation.See plumbing drawing schedule for additional information.

    g. See plumbing drawing schedule for additional information..

3.11 FINISHES

A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of the insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating (exterior applications only).

3.12 FIRE RATED WRAP INSULATION APPLICATION

A. Apply fire rated wrap insulation to combustible pipes and tubes located in a return air plenum space and/or adjacencies open to a return air plenum.

B. Install per manufacturer’s printed instructions for application.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 07 19 PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
   1. Domestic hot-water piping.
   2. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
   3. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
   2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
   3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
   4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
   5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
   6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
   7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
   2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

B. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
   1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
      b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
      c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
      d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
      e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
   2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
      b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
      c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
      d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
      b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
      c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
      d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

D. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
      b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
      c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
      d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.

2.4 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:
   1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
   2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
   3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
   4. Color: White or gray.

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
   2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.

2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
   1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with
      ASTM C 1136, Type I.
   2. ASJ-SSL:ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
   3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying withASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
      b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
      c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
      d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
   2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
   3. Color: White.
   4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
      a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

2.7 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
      b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
      c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
      d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
b. Compac Corporation; 130.
c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 6 mils.
4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 500 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

C. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
c. Compac Corporation; 120.
d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.8 SECUREMENTS

A. Aluminum Bands: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping and Seals.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

C. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
a. C & F Wire.

2.9 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Engineered Brass Company.
      b. Insul-Tect Products Co.; a subsidiary of MVG Molded Products. c. McGuire Manufacturing.
      d. Plumberex.
      e. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
      f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
   2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless- steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs. E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
   1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
   2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
   3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation
      inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
   4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
   1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
   2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
   3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
      a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
   4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
   5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Cleanouts.

3.3 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

C. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
   1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire- resistive joint sealers.

D. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
   1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
   2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.4 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
   1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
   3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
   4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
   5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe

insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.

6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER PREFORMED PIPE INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor- barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and Inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field- applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.7 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.8 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water: Insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

B. Stormwater and Overflow: Insulation shall be the following
   1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

C. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies: Insulation shall be the following:
   1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

D. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities: Insulation shall be one of the following:
   1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2 inch thick.
   2. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
   3. Polyolefin: 1/2 inch thick.

END OF SECTION

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 10 19- PLUMBING SPECIALITIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Plumbing specialties for water distribution systems; soil, waste, and vent systems and drainage systems

1. Backflow preventers
2. Hydrants and Hose Bibbs
3. Water hammer arresters.
4. Cleanouts, cover plates, and access panels.
5. Floor drains
6. Trap seal protection device
7. Sleeve penetration systems
8. Pressure Regulators
9. Thermal Expansion Absorber. (Expansion Tank).
10. Strainers.
11. Thermostatic mixing valves.
12. Utility Service Boxes

a. Plumbing specialties for water distribution systems as specified within and on drawings.

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.3 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide components and installation capable of producing piping systems with the following minimum working pressure ratings, except where otherwise indicated:

1. Water Distribution Systems, Below Ground: 150 psig.
2. Water Distribution Systems, Above Ground: 125 psig.

3. Soil, Waste, and Vent Systems: 10 foot head of water.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 01 Specification Sections.

B. Submit product data including rated capacities of selected models and weights (shipping, installation, and operation). Indicate materials, finishes, dimensions, required clearances, and methods of assembly of components; and piping and wiring connections for the following plumbing specialty products:

1. Backflow preventers.

2. Wall hydrants/Hose Bibbs.

3. Water hammer arresters.

4. Cleanouts, cover plates, and access panels.

5. Floor drains and roof drains and floor sinks.

6. Trap seal protection device.

7. Sleeve penetration systems.

8. Pressure Regulators.

9. Thermal Expansion Absorber. (Expansion Tank).

10. Strainers.

11. Thermostatic mixing valves.

12. Service boxes (washer/ice/utility).

C. Maintenance data for inclusion in Operating and Maintenance manuals as specified in Division 01 Section "Project Closeout" for the following:

1. Backflow preventers.

2. Wall hydrants/hose bibbs.

3. Trap seal protection device.

4. Pressure Regulators.

5. Thermal Expansion Absorber. (Expansion Tank).

6. Strainers.

7. Thermostatic mixing valves.

D. Submit certification/test data from installed systems for the following plumbing specialty products:

1. Backflow preventer assemblies.

2. Pressure Regulators.

3. Thermostatic mixing valves.

4. Thermal Expansion Absorber (Expansion Tank).

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.

B. Electrical Component Standard: NFPA 70, "National Electrical Code."

C. Listing and Labeling: Provide equipment that is listed and labeled.

1. The Terms "Listed" and "Labeled": As defined in the "National Electrical Code," Article 100.

D. ASME Code Compliance: Provide safety relief valves that comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code and that bear the appropriate code symbols.

E. ASHRAE Standards: Provide water heaters with performance efficiencies not less than prescribed in ASHRAE 90A, “Energy Conservation in New Building Design.”

F. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law III-380 (S.3874) “Reduction in Lead in Drinking Water Act.”

G. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with provisions of the following:

1. Uniform Plumbing Code (2018 ed.)

2. Public Law 102-486, “Energy Policy Act” (water flow and consumption rates)

3. NSF 61, “Drinking Water System Components – Health Effects”

4. NSF 372, “Drinking Water System Components – Lead Content”

5. Reduction in lead in Drinking Water Act (Public Law III-380)

6. Local codes and the local authority having jurisdiction.

H. Design Concept: The Drawings indicate capacities, sizes, and dimensional requirements of system components. Components having equal performance characteristics that deviate from the indicated size and dimensions may be considered, provided deviations do not change the

design concept or intended performance. The burden of proof for equality of products is on the Contractor. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Substitutions."

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following unless specified below:

1. Backflow Preventers:
    a. Apollo Valve Co..
    b. Febco Division of CMB Industries
    c. Watts Regulator Co.
    d. Wilkins Division, Zurn Industries, Inc.
2. Wall Hydrants/Hose Bibbs:
    a. Smith by Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co. Div., Smith Industries, Inc.
    b. Wade Div., Tyler Pipe.
    c. Woodford Manufacturing Co. Div., WCM Industries, Inc.
    d. Zurn by Hydromechanics Div., Zurn Industries, Inc.
3. Water Hammer Arresters:
    a. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    b. Smith by Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co. Div., Smith Industries, Inc.
    c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    d. Wade Div., Tyler Pipe.
    e. Watts Regulator Co.
    f. Zurn by Hydromechanics Div., Zurn Industries, Inc.
4. Cleanouts:
    a. Smith By Jay R. Smith Mfg Co., Inc.
    b. Wade Div., Tyler Pipe

c. Zurn by Hydromechanics Div., Zurn Industries Inc.

d. Watts Drainage Products, Inc.

e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing, Co.

5. Firestopping Sleeve Penetration Systems:

a. The Rectorseal Corp.

b. Proset Systems, Inc.

c. CSD Sealing Systems, Inc.

d. Royal Quickstop, Fire Protection Systems Co.

6. Floor Drains/Floor Sinks

a. Smith by Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co., Inc.

b. Wade Div., Tyler Pipe

c. Zurn by Hydromechanices Div., Zurn Industries Inc.

d. Watts Drainage Products, Inc.

7. Trap Seal Protection Device:

a. Proset System Inc.

b. RectorSeal Corp.

c. Smith by Jay R. Smith Manufacturing Co., Inc.

8. Water Heater Restraints:

a. HoldRite Co., Div. of RWC.

b. Calstraps Co.

c. Watts Industrial, Inc.

9. Thermal Expansion Absorber (Expansion Tank)

a. A. O. Smith Corp.

b. Amtrol Inc.

c. Watts Regulator Co.

10. Washer/Utility Service Boxes:

a. Acorn Engineering Co.

b. Guy Gray Manufacturing Co., Inc.

c. IPS Corp.

11. Water Pressure Regulators:

a. Cla-Val Co.

b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.

c. Watts Regulator Co.

d. Wilkins Regulator Div., Zurn Industries, Inc.

12. Thermostatic Mixing Valves:

a. Leonard Water Temperatures Controls Co.

b. Symmons Industries, Inc.

c. Powers, A Unit of Crane Co.

d. Bradley Corp.

2.2 PLUMBING SPECIALTIES, GENERAL

A. The application of the following products and materials, as required for the installation of the Plumbing systems, can be found in the Part 3 Articles, and in the Drawing Schedules and notations.

B. Provide Plumbing Specialties; equipment and other components, as identified in Plumbing basis of design Drawings Schedules and within. Scheduled fixtures and components are to be used as guides when selecting final submitted items for approval.

2.3 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. General: ASSE Standard, backflow preventers in compliance with all state and local regulatory agency approvals, of size indicated for maximum flow rate indicated and maximum pressure loss indicated.

1. Working Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum except where indicated otherwise.

2. 2 Inches and Smaller: Bronze body with threaded ends.

3. 2-1/2 Inches and Larger: Bronze, cast-iron, steel, or stainless-steel body with flanged ends.

a. Interior Lining: FDA-approved epoxy coating, for backflow preventers having cast-iron or steel body.

4. Interior Components: Corrosion-resistant materials.

5. Exterior Finish: Polished chrome plate when used in chrome-plated piping system.

6. Strainer on Inlet (domestic water service only).

7. Air Gap Fitting.

B. Hose Connection Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1011, nickel plated, with nonremovable and manual drain features, and ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads on outlet. Units attached to rough-bronze-finish hose connections may be rough bronze.

C. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventer (BFP): ASSE 1013, consisting of (OS&Y) gate valves on inlet and outlet and strainer on inlet (domestic water service only). Include test cocks and pressure-differential relief valve having ASME A112.1.2 air-gap fitting located between 2 positive-seating check valves for continuous pressure application.

1. Pressure Loss: 12 psig (83 kPa) maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.

2. Air gap fitting and drainage piping.

2.4 WATER PRESSURE REGULATORS

A. General: ASSE 1003, water pressure regulators, rated for initial working pressure of 150 psig minimum, of size, flow rate, and inlet and outlet pressures indicated. For pipe sizes 2 ½" and larger, provide low flow bypass.

1. 2 inches and Smaller: Bronze body with threaded ends.

2. 2-1/2 inches and Larger: Bronze or cast-iron body with flanged ends.

a. Interior Lining: FDA-approved epoxy coating, for regulators with a cast-iron body.

3. Interior Components: Corrosion-resistant materials.

4. Exterior Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

5. See Drawing Detail for additional infromation.

B. Control Type:

1. 2 Inches & Smaller: Single-seated, direct-operated type.

2. 2 ½" & Larger: Pilot operated automatic control.

C. Description:

1. The main valve shall be a hydraulically operated, single diaphragm actuated, globe pattern valve. The valve shall contain a disc and diaphragm assembly that forms a sealed chamber below the valve cover, separating operating pressure from line pressure. The diaphragm shall be constructed of nylon reinforce Buna-N, and shall not seal directly against the valve seat and shall be fully supported by the valve body and cover.

2. The disc and diaphragm assembly shall contain a Buna-N synthetic rubber “Quad Seal” that is securely retained on 3-1/2 sides by a disc retainer and disc guide.

3. The exposed portion of the Quad Seal shall contact the valve seat and seal drip-tight. The disc and diaphragm assembly must be guided by two separate bearings, and assure positive disc-to-seat contact.

4. Pilot control systems shall contain and external Y-Strainer, Fixed Orifice Closing Speed, Low Flow By-Pass and Pressure Reducing Pilot. All pilot control systems shall utilize copper tubing and brass fittings and must be equipped with isolation ball valves on all body connections. The adjustment range of the Low Flow By-Pass shall be 20-200 psi and the pressure-reducing pilot shall be 30-300 psi. See Drawing Detail for additional infromation.

5. Provide the following components or options:

   a. Valve position indicator

   b. Isolation cocks

   c. Adjustable closing speed control

   d. Inlet and outlet pressure gauges.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Piping specialties such as escutcheons, dielectric fittings, sleeves, and sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Sections "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" and “Plumbing Piping”.

B. Wall Hydrants (WHB): ASME A112.21.3M or ASSE 1052, nonfreeze, automatic draining, field testable antibackflow type, key operation, with 3/4 or 1 inch threaded or solder-joint inlet, wall plate, and ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads and ASSE 1011 non-removable hose connection vacuum breaker on outlet. Provide 1 operating key.

   1. See Drawing Schedule.

C. Hose Bibbs (HB): Brass or bronze angled body, with renewable composition disc, 1/2 or 3/4 inch threaded or solder-joint inlet. Provide ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads on outlet and integral or field-installed, nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker and secured handle.

   1. See Drawing Schedule.

D. Water Hammer Arresters: ASME A112.26.1M, ASSE 1010, or PDI WH-201, bellows or piston type with pressurized cushioning chamber. Sizes are based on water-supply fixture

units, ASME A112.26.1M sizes as noted below.

1. Sizes:

    a. Size A: 1-11 fixture units

    b. Size B: 12-32 fixture units

    c. Size C: 33-60 fixture units

    d. Size D: 61-113 fixture units

    e. Size E: 114-154 fixture units

    f. Size F: 155-330 fixture units

E. Thermal Expansion Absorber: Pressurized; diaphragm type expansion tank, ASME rated.

1. Performance:

    a. See Drawing Schedule

F. Strainers: Y pattern, except where otherwise indicated, full size of connecting piping. Include Type 304 stainless-steel screens with 3/64-inch (1.2-mm) perforation except where other screens are indicated.

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum steam working pressure except where otherwise indicated.

2. Sizes 2 inches and Smaller: Bronze body, with female threaded ends.

3. Sizes 2-1/2 inches and Larger: Cast-iron body, with interior FDA-approved epoxy coating and flanged ends.

4. Y-type Strainers: Screwed screen retainer with centered blowdown.

    a. Drain: Pipe plug.

2.6 CLEANOUTS

A. General: Size cleanouts as indicated on drawings, or where not indicated, same size as connected drainage piping (up to 6 inches in size). Note: Cleanouts larger than 6 inches are not required except where indicated.

B. Cleanouts: ASME A112.36.2M, PVC or cast-iron body with straight threads and gasket seal or taper threads for plug, flashing flange and clamping ring, and a full size brass closure plug. Cleanouts for installation in floors not having membrane waterproofing may be furnished without clamping ring.

C. Cleanout Plugs: [Manufacturer’s standard, with] cast-bronze or brass, threads complying with ANSI B2.1, full size countersunk head.

D. Floor Cleanouts: PVC or cast-iron body and frame, with cleanout plug and adjustable round top as follows:

1. Nickel-Bronze Top:

a. Non-Finished Areas: Manufacturer's standard unit with nickel-bronze non-slip scored or abrasive finish. Provide vandal resistant screws and one access tool.

b. Tiled / Poured Floors: Manufacturer's standard nickel-bronze finish with tile recess.

c. Carpeted Areas: Manufacturer's standard nickel-bronze finish with recess of appropriate depth to accommodate carpet.

E. Wall Cleanouts: PVC or cast iron body adaptable to pipe with cast-bronze or brass cleanout plug; stainless steel cover including tamper resistant screws and removal tool . Note: Where PCV installation in wall is approved, PCV body and plug will be acceptable.

F. Yard Cleanouts: Cast-iron body and extra heavy frame and top, with cleanout plug and adjustable round top as follows:

1. Cast Iron Top: Manufacturer's standard unit with heavy duty cast iron traffic style cover. Provide vandal resistant screws and one access tool.

a. See Drawing Detail for additional information.

2.7 FLOOR DRAINS/FLOOR SINKS:

A. General: Floor Drains/Floor Sinks: ASME A112.6.3M, Cast-iron body, with seepage flange and clamping device. Drains for installation in floors not having membrane waterproofing may have seepage flange without clamping device. Floor drains for use as area drains in exterior slab on grade may be furnished with anchor flange instead of seepage flange and clamping device. Outlet size as indicated on drawings.

B. Finished and Non-Finished Area Floor Drain: Cast-iron body, flashing collar, nickel-bronze adjustable strainer head with secured slotted or square hole grate, with all of the following features:

1. Strainer head: Round.

2. Deep-seal trap.

3. Vandal-proof grate.

4. Heel-proof grate.

5. Deep seal trap.

6. Trap seal protection device.

C. Floor Sink: 12” x 12” x 8” cast-iron body with Acid Resistant coating, seepage flange, clamp, flashing collar, nickel-bronze square hole grate, with all of the following features.

1. Interior aluminum domed strainer.

2. Aluminum or stainless steel sediment basket.

3. Vandal-proof grate.

4. Hinged, heel-proof grate.

5. Grate access tool (one each).

6. Deep seal trap.

7. Trap seal protection device.

D. Deep Seal Traps: Cast iron or bronze, with inlet/outlet matching connected piping, provide cleanout where indicated, and trap seal primer valve connection where indicated.

1. 2 Inches Size: 4 inches minimum water seal.

2. 2-1/2 Inches and Larger: 5 inches minimum water seal.

a. Exception: Where PVC sanitary waste piping is installed as specified, the deep seal trap may be of same material. Floor drain assembly shall remain as cast iron.

2.8 TRAP SEAL PROTECTION DEVICE

A. Sewer gas and sewage backup protection floor drain insert in compliance with ASSE 1072 and NSF/ANSI 14 and ICC IPC Section 105.2, Section 1002.4 trap seals.

B. Description:

1. Material: Smooth, soft, flexible, elastomeric PVC material. Elastomeric material shall be neoprene diaphragm type with sealing gaskets and pressure relief piston or shall be elastomer bellows type or shall be molded into shape of duck's bill, open on top with curl closure at bottom.

2. Device shall allow wastewater to open and adequately discharge floor drainage through its interior and then close, returning to original molded shape after wastewater discharge is complete, creating an air tight seal.

3. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14 - Plastics Piping System Components and Related Materials; ASSE 1072 Performance Requirements for Barrier Type Floor Drain Trap Seal Protection Devices; and ICC IPC Sec. 105.2 Sec. 1002.4 Trap Seals.

2.9 ROOF DRAINS

A. General: Size outlet as indicated on drawings.

B. Roof Drains: ASME A112.21.2M, cast-iron body, with combination flashing ring and gravel stop, aluminum dome, extension collars, underdeck clamp, and sump receiver (bearing pan). Roof drains for installation in cast-in-place concrete decks may be furnished without underdeck clamp and sump receiver.

C. Roof Drain: Cast-iron body and combined flashing collar and gravel stop, aluminum dome, with the following features:

1. Manufacturer's Top Deck Mounting System or Underdeck Clamp.

2. Extension (as required).

3. Sump receiver / bearing pan.

4. 2" high dam (overflow units only).

5. Vandal-proof Dome.

6. Dome Access Tool (One per four domes). Exception: Where manufacturer standard vandal-proof fastener is a hex head fastener, only one tool (wrench) is required.

2.10 FIRESTOPPING SLEEVE PENETRATION SYSTEMS

A. Description: UL 263 and 1479, through-penetration firestop assembly.

B. See manufacturer's specific requirements for each rated assembly type.

2.11 POURED IN PLACE CONCRETE BASES

A. Concrete: Portland cement, mix to a 3000 psi, 28-day compressive strength. See Section 220500 Part 2 for additional information.

B. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, welded wire fabric, plain.

2.12 UTILITY SERVICE BOXES

A. General: Recessed-mounting outlet boxes with fittings complying with ASME A112.18.1M Include ABS or enameled or epoxy coated, steel box with faceplate, services indicated for equipment connections, and wood-blocking reinforcement.

B. Refrigerator Wall Outlet Boxes: With quarter turn outlet valve and shock arrestor and the following:

1. See Drawing Schedule.

2.13 THERMOSTATIC MIXING VALVES

A. Each valve shall be constructed to control the mixing of hot and cold water and to deliver water at a desired temperature regardless of pressure or input temperature changes. The control element shall be of an approved type. The body shall be of heavy cast bronze, and interior parts shall be brass, bronze, corrosion-resisting steel or copper. The valve shall be equipped with necessary stops, check valves, unions, and sediment strainers on the inlets. Sink, hand sink, and lavatory mixing valves shall maintain water temperature within +7 degrees F of any setting, down to 0.5 gpm. Shower mixing valves shall maintain water temperature with +3 degrees F of any setting.

B. Sink/Lavatory Thermostatic Mixing Valves:

1. Provide ASSE 1070, thermostatic mixing valve for sink, hand sink and lavatory faucets.

2. See Drawing Schedule for additional information.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL PLUMBING SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install backflow preventers of type, size, and capacity as indicated, and as required by food service contractor at each water supply connection to plumbing equipment and systems, and to other equipment and systems as indicated. Comply with plumbing code and authority having jurisdiction. Locate in same room as equipment being connected. Install air-gap fitting on units having atmospheric vent connection and pipe relief outlet drain to nearest floor drain. Do not install bypass around backflow preventer. Install backflow preventers on water service connections to beverage dispensing units, combi-ovens, water cooled ice makers and each food service piece of equipment requiring backflow protection as indicated on food service drawings.

B. Install wall hydrants and hose bibbs with integral, non-removable vacuum breaker.

C. Provide thermostatic mixing valves on all lavatories, sinks and in locations indicated on plans and schedules.

D. Install thermal expansion absorber (expansion tank) per 223350, Part 3.

E. Install specialties according to manufacturer’s written instructions.

F. Install utility service outlet wall boxes as scheduled and per manufacturer’s installation requirements.

3.2 COMMERCIAL-TYPE WATER HAMMER ARRESTER INSTALLATION

A. Commercial-type water hammer arresters shall be provided on hot- and cold-water supplies and shall be located as generally noted on drawings and below, with precise location and sizing to be in accordance with PDI WH 201. Water hammer arresters, requiring servicing and where

concealed, shall be accessible by means of access doors or removable panels. Commercial-type water hammer arresters shall conform to ASSE 1010. Vertical capped pipe columns will not be permitted.

B. Furnish and install as follows:

1. In the cold water piping servicing restrooms.

2. In the cold and hot water piping serving solenoid operated faucets, valves and other quick closing valves.

3. In cold water supply serving electric water coolers, and refrigerators.

3.3 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

A. Install cleanouts in above-ground piping and building drain piping and storm drain piping, according to the Local Plumbing Code and the following:

1. Size same as drainage piping up to 4 inches size. Use 4 inches size for larger drainage piping except where larger size cleanout is indicated.

2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.

3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet (developed length) for piping 4 inches and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping (developed length).

4. Locate at base of each vertical soil or waste stack.

5. Locate within 5'-0" (either side) of exterior wall.

6. Note: For clarity sake not all cleanouts are indicated on plan. Install per requirements of the local plumbing code and also where indicated on plans and as noted.

B. Install cleanout deck plates (covers), of types indicated, with top flush with finished floor, or with carpet tags for carpeted areas, for floor cleanouts of piping below floors.

C. Install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall, for cleanouts located in concealed piping.

D. Yard cleanouts at grade shall be installed with extension from sewer pipe to cleanout at grade as indicated. Set cleanout frame and cover in concrete block 24 by 24 by 6 inches deep, except where location is in concrete paving. Set top of cleanout 1 inch above surrounding earth grade or flush with grade when installed in paving.

E. Cleanout covers damaged during the course of construction shall be replaced with new.

F. See Drawing Details for additional information.

3.4 FLOOR DRAIN/FLOOR SINK INSTALLATION

A. Install floor drains/floor sink according to manufacturer's written instructions, in locations indicated.

B. Install floor drains at 1/4-inch below noted floor elevation (except where noted, otherwise on architectural drawings). Tops of drains to be set flush with feathered finished floor.

C. Trap drains connected to sanitary building drain.

D. Install drain flashing collar or flange so that no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes, where penetrated.

E. Position drains for easy accessibility and maintenance.

F. Install trap seal protection device per manufacturer recommendations.

G. Contractor shall cover at all times, floor drains and floor sinks during the course of construction in order to prevent debris from entering the sanitary system.

H. Floor drains, floor sinks, strainers, and grates damaged during the course of construction shall be replaced with new.

I. See Drawing Details and Schedules for additional information.

3.5 ROOF DRAIN INSTALLATION

A. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas, according to the roof membrane manufacturer’s installation instructions.

B. Install drain flashing collar in flange so no leakage occurs bet6ween roof drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes, where penetrated.

C. Position overflow units immediately adjacent to roof drains (where not provided as a combined unit).

3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Supply Runouts to Fixtures: Install hot- and cold-water supply piping runouts to fixtures of sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.

B. Drainage Runouts to Fixtures: Provide drainage and vent piping runouts to plumbing fixtures and drains, with approved trap, of sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.

C. Locate drainage piping runouts as close as possible to bottom of floor slab supporting fixtures or drains.

3.7 FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Install on vent piping passing through roofs, neoprene boot and clamping devices as indicated on drawings. Coordinate installation with roofing manufacturer's installation requirements.

3.8 COMMISSIONING

A. Preparation: Perform the following checks before start-up:

1. All isolation and branch valves are open to full open position.
2. Damaged and defective specialties and accessories have been replaced or repaired.
3. There is clear space for servicing of specialties.
4. System tests are complete.
5. All isolation and branch valves are opened to full open position.
6. Check for piping connection leaks.
7. Check for clear vent.
8. Confirm all packaging has been removed from spacialty equipment
9. Test operation of safety controls and devices.

B. Before operating systems, perform these steps:

1. Close drain valves and wall hydrants
2. Verify drainage and vent piping are clear of obstructions. Flush with water until clear.
3. Energize circuits.
4. Adjust operating controls.
5. Set hot water outlet temperatures at water heater as noted on the drawings and separate Div. 22 specification section.
6. Remove and clean strainers
7. Verify proper operating pressure to thermal expansion absorber and adjust accordingly.
8. Provide final adjustment of pressure regulators

3.9 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust operation and correct deficiencies discovered during commissioning.

B. Provide final testing and adjusting of backflow preventer and pressure regulator and attach certification/test sheet to device.

C. Provide final adjustment of hot water outlet temperatures at water heater and adjust mixing valve temperatures as noted on the drawings and separate Div. 22 specification section.

D. Provide final testing and adjusting of pressure regulators.

3.10 PROTECTION

A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

END OF SECTION

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 16 23 - FUEL GAS PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Fuel gas piping, specialties, and accessories within the building.

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.3 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Gas System Pressure: One pressure range. 0.5 psig or less.

B. Design values of fuel gas supplied for these systems are as follows:

1. Nominal Heating Value: 1000 Btu/cu. ft.
2. Nominal Specific Gravity: 0.6.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Specialty valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
2. Pressure regulators. Include pressure rating, capacity, and settings of selected models.
3. Piping: Includes interior piping and fittings.
4. Identification: Includes underground trace wire; warning tape and pipe labels.

B. Shop Drawings: For fuel gas piping. Include plans and attachments to other Work.

1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.

C. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements.

D. Maintenance Data: For natural gas specialties and accessories to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 01.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components and Devices: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. NFPA and ANSI Standards: Comply with ANSI Z223.1, and NFPA 54, "National Fuel Gas Code."

C. FM Standard: Provide components listed in FM's "Fire Protection Approval Guide" if specified to be FM approved.

D. IAS Standard: Provide components listed in IAS's "Directory of A. G. A. and C. G. A Certified Appliances and Accessories" if specified to be IAS listed.

E. UL Standard: Provide components listed in UL's "Gas and Oil Equipment Directory" if specified to be UL listed.

F. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

G. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

H. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and applications.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and legally dispose of liquids from drips in existing gas piping. Handle cautiously to avoid spillage and ignition. Notify fuel gas supplier. Handle flammable liquids used by Installer with proper precautions and do not leave on premises from end of one day to beginning of next day.

B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS AND COORDINATION

A. Interruption of Existing Natural-Gas Service: Do not interrupt natural-gas service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide purging and startup of natural-gas supply according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner's Agent no fewer than 5 (five) days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Appliance Connector Valves (3/4" and Smaller):

a. American Valve.
b. B&K Industries, Inc.
c. Brass Craft Manufacturing Co.
d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
e. Frey: John M. Frey Co.
f. Key Gas Components, Inc.
g. Legend Valve and Fitting, Inc.
h. McDonald: A. Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
i. Mueller Co.; Mueller Gas Products Div.
j. Robert Manufacturing Co.
k. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.

2. Gas Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller:

a. Crane Valves.
b. Flow Control Equipment, Inc.
c. Grinnell Corp.
d. Honeywell, Inc.
e. Kitz Corp. of America.
f. McDonald: A. Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
g. Milwaukee Valve Co., Inc.
h. Mueller Co.; Mueller Gas Products Div.
i. Nibco, Inc.
j. Red-White Valve Corp.
k. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.

3. Plug Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

a. Flow Control Equipment, Inc.
b. Milliken Valve Co., Inc.
c. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.
d. Olson Technologies, Inc.; Homestead Valve Div.
e. Walworth Co.

4. Service and/or Line Pressure Regulators:

a. American Meter Co.
b. Eclipse Combustion, Inc.
c. Equimeter, Inc.
d. Fisher Controls International, Inc.

e. Maxitrol Co.
f. National Meter.
g. Richards Industries, Inc.; Jordan Valve Div.
h. Schlumberger Industries; Gas Div.

5. Appliance/Equipment Pressure Regulators:

a. Canadian Meter Co., Inc.
b. Eaton Corp.; Controls Div.
c. Harper Wyman Co.
d. Maxitrol Co.
e. SCP, Inc.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

A. **Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials**.

2.3 PIPES, TUBES, FITTINGS, AND JOINING MATERIALS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53; Type E or S; Grade B; Schedule 40; black.

1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern, with threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
2. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
3. Cast-Iron Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
4. Steel Welding Fittings: ASME B16.9, wrought steel or ASME B16.11, forged steel.
5. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
6. Steel Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.11, forged steel with threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
7. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
8. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5.
9. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for natural gas.
10. All piping shall be in accordance with NFPA 54.1.2.6.1. Note: Copper pipe shall not be used.

B. Corrugated, Stainless-Steel Tubing: Comply with the following:

1. Tubing: ASTM A 240/A 240M, corrugated, Series 300 stainless steel, Rated Pressure - 5psig.
2. Coating: PE with flame retardant.

a. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2) Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less

3. Fittings: Copper-alloy mechanical fittings with ends made to fit and listed for use with corrugated stainless-steel tubing and capable of metal-to-metal seal without gaskets. Include brazing socket or threaded ends complying with ASME B1.20.1.

C. Transition Fittings: Type, material, and end connections to match piping being joined.

D. Service-Line Risers: Manufactured PE pipe fitting with PE pipe inlet for heat-fusion connection to underground PE pipe; PE pipe riser section with protective-coated, anodeless, steel casing and threaded outlet for threaded connection to aboveground steel piping.

E. Components, Tapes, Gaskets, and Bolts and Nuts: Suitable for natural gas and as recommended by piping manufacturer.

F. Common Joining Materials: Refer to Division 22 Sections “Basic Plumbing Procedures and Requirements” and “Plumbing Piping” for joining materials not in this Section.

G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

H. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M. Brazing alloys containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are prohibited.

2.4 PROTECTIVE COATING

A. Furnish metallic pipe and fittings with factory-applied, corrosion-resistant polyethylene coating for use in corrosive atmosphere.

2.5 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.

B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

C. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M. Brazing allows containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are prohibited.

2.6 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Flexible Connectors: ANSI Z21.24, copper alloy.

B. Quick-Disconnect Devices: ANSI Z21.41, convenience outlets and matching plug connector.

C. Striker Plate: 16 Ga.; 10"x 4" sheet metal.

D. Escutcheons: Manufactured wall, ceiling, and floor plates; deep-pattern type if required to conceal protruding fittings and sleeves. Note: Escutcheons may not be doubled in depth (piggybacked). See Part 3 for Application requirements.

1. ID: Closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping.
2. OD: Completely cover opening.
3. Cast Brass: One piece, with set screw, and polished chrome-plate finish.
4. Cast Brass: Split casting, with concealed hinge and set screw, and polished chrome-plate finish.
5. Stainless-steel: One piece with spring clip and chrome plated finish.
6. Stamped Steel: One piece, with set screw and chrome-plated finish.
7. Stamped Steel: Split plate, with concealed hinge, set screw, and chrome-plated finish.
8. Cast-Iron Floor Plate: One-piece casting.

2.7 SPECIALTY VALVES

A. Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1 for pipe threads.

B. Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel flanges and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.

C. Appliance/Equipment Connector Valves: ANSI Z21.15 and IAS listed.

D. Gas Stops: Bronze body with AGA stamp, plug type with bronze plug and flat or square head, ball type with chrome-plated brass ball and lever handle, or butterfly valve with stainless-steel disc and fluorocarbon elastomer seal and lockable lever handle; 2-psig minimum pressure rating.

E. Gas Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: ASME B16.33 and IAS-listed bronze body and 125-psig pressure rating.

F. General-Duty Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: ASME B16.38, cast-iron body, suitable for fuel gas service, with "WOG" indicated on valve body, and 125-psig pressure rating.

1. Gate Valves: MSS SP-70, OS&Y type with solid wedge.
2. Butterfly Valves: MSS SP-67, lug type with lever handle.

2.8 PRESSURE REGULATORS

A. Description: Single stage and suitable for fuel gas service. Include steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components, elevation compensator, and atmospheric vent.

1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1 for pipe threads.
2. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel flanges and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
3. Service-Line Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.80 with 2 psig (13.8-kPa-) minimum inlet pressure rating.
4. Appliance/Equipment Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.18. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Pressure Regulator Vents: Factory- or field-installed, corrosion-resistant screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.

2.9 GAS SERVICE METERS AND GAS SERVICE PIPING

A. Provided by Local Utility.

B. Coordinate terms with Local Utility.

C. Earthquake valve as provided by local utility.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off fuel gas to premises or section of piping. Perform leakage test as specified in "Field Quality Control" Article to determine that all equipment is turned off in affected piping section.

B. Inspect natural-gas piping according to ANSI Z223.1/NFPA 54, the International Fuel Gas Code and the Uniform Plumbing Code to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.

C. Comply with ANSI Z223.1/NFPA 54, the International Fuel Gas Code and the Uniform Plumbing Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. See Pipe Schedule on Drawings.

3.3 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Appliance/Equipment Shutoff Valves for Pressure 0.5 psig or Less: Appliance/equipment connector valve or gas stop.

B. Appliance Shutoff Valves for Pressure 0.5 to 2 psig: Gas stop or gas valve.

C. Appliance Shutoff Valves for Pressure 2 to 5 psig: Gas valve.

D. Piping Line Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Gas valve.

E. Piping Line Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Plug valve or general-duty valve.

F. Valves at Service Meter, NPS 2 and Smaller: Gas valve.

G. Valves at Service Meter, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Plug valve.

3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated, unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

B. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code and the Uniform Plumbing Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.

C. During installation of gas piping, all outlets shall be capped or plugged with a threaded iron plug immediately after installation and kept closed until the appliance or fixture is connected.

D. Install components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

E. Install piping free of sags and bends.

F. Install exposed interior and exterior piping at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Install piping tight to slabs, beams, joists, columns, walls, and other building elements whenever possible. Allow sufficient space above removable ceiling panels to allow for ceiling panel removal.

H. Locate groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit valve servicing.

I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

J. Install pipe escutcheons for pipe penetrations of concrete and masonry walls, wall board partitions, and suspended ceilings according to the following:

1. Chrome-Plated Piping: Cast brass, one piece, with set screw, and polished chrome-plated finish.
2. Uninsulated Piping: Cast brass or stamped steel, with set screw where exposed to view and spring clip in all other areas.
3. Piping Floor Plates in Utility Areas: Cast-iron floor plates.
4. Piping in Utility Areas: Cast brass or stamped steel, with set-screw or spring clips.

K. Sleeves are not required for core drilled holes.

L. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by PE removable sleeves.

M. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, and concrete floor and roof slabs.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

    a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.

2. Build sleeves into new walls and slabs as work progresses.
3. Install sleeves large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:

    a. PVC Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than 6-inch NPS. (Exception: Shall not be used in return air plenum spaces)
    b. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than 6-inch NPS.
    c. Steel, Sheet-Metal Sleeves: For pipes 6-inch NPS and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
    d. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.

        1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout.

4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using elastomeric joint sealants. Use Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use O, neutral-curing silicone sealant, unless otherwise indicated.

N. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall, Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeve for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches in diameter and larger.
3. Assemble and install mechanical sleeve seals according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tighten bolts that cause rubber sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

O. Underground, Exterior-Wall, Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeve for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

1. Assemble and install mechanical sleeve seals according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tighten bolts that cause rubber sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

P. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestopping materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Firestopping" for materials and Architectural Drawings for fire barrier locations.

Q. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.

R. Concealed (Accessible) Locations: As noted below.

1. Above-Ceiling Locations: Gas piping may be installed in accessible spaces, subject to approval of authorities having jurisdiction, whether or not such spaces are used as plenums. Do not locate valves above ceilings.

2. In Floors: Gas piping with welded joints and protective wrapping specified in "Protective Coating" Article in Part 2 may be installed in floors, subject to approval of authorities having jurisdiction. Surround piping cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 2 inches of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
3. In Floor Channels: Gas piping may be installed in floor channels, subject to approval of authorities having jurisdiction. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
4. In Partitions:

    a. Do not install concealed piping in solid partitions.

    b. Tubing passing through partitions or stud walls: Where tubing is allowed, protect tubing from physical damage when installed inside partitions or hollow walls. Install 16 gauge; steel striker plate between tubing and finished wall, extend a minimum of 4" beyond (each side of) stud, plate, fire stop, etc.

5. In Masonry Walls: Gas piping with welded joints and protective wrapping specified in "Protective Coating" Article in Part 2 may be installed in masonry walls, subject to approval of authorities having jurisdiction.
6. Prohibited Locations: Do not install gas piping in slab or in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.

    a. Exception: Accessible above-ceiling space specified above.

S. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect. Include outlets of service meters. Locate where readily accessible for cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate would be subject to freezing.

    1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use minimum-length nipple of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long, and same size as connected pipe. Install with space between bottom of drip and floor for removal of plug or cap.

T. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels, unless indicated to be exposed to view.

U. Install fuel gas piping at uniform grade of 0.1 percent slope upward toward risers.

V. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.

W. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.

X. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 inches and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated. Unions are not required on flanged devices.

Y. Install corrugated, stainless-steel tubing system according to manufacturer's written instructions. Include striker plates to protect tubing from puncture where tubing is restrained and cannot move.

Z. Install strainer on inlet of each line pressure regulator and automatic and electrically operated valve.

AA. Install flanges on valves, specialties, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 inches and larger connections.

BB. Install vent piping for vented gas pressure regulators and gas trains, extend outside building, and vent to atmosphere. Terminate vents with turned-down, reducing-elbow fittings with corrosion-resistant insect screens in large end.

CC. Install containment conduits for gas piping below slabs, within building, in gastight conduits extending minimum of 4 inches outside building and vented to atmosphere. Terminate vents with turned-down, reducing-elbow fittings with corrosion-resistant insect screens in large end. Install gas piping in airtight conduit constructed of Schedule 40, PVC split casing containment system, Rated up to 5 psi max. Vent conduit to outside and terminate with screened vent cap.

3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Piping Joint Construction: Join pipe and fittings as follows and as specifically required in individual piping specification sections:

1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
3. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
4. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

    a. Note internal length of threads in fittings or valve ends, and proximity of internal seat or wall, to determine how far pipe should be threaded into joint.
    b. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads, unless dry seal threading is specified.
    c. Align threads at point of assembly.
    d. Tighten joint with wrench. Apply wrench to valve end into which pipe is being threaded.
    e. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

5. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, "Recommended Practices and Procedures for Welding Low Carbon Steel Pipe," using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
6. Flanged Joints: Align flange surfaces parallel. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned.

Assemble joints by sequencing bolt tightening to make initial contact of flanges and gaskets as flat and parallel as possible. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Tighten bolts gradually and uniformly using torque wrench.

B. Use materials suitable for fuel gas.

1. Brazed Joints: Make with brazing alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F. Brazing alloys containing phosphorus are prohibited.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.7 GAS SERVICE-METER ASSEMBLY INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate meter set location with Local Utility.

B. Install service-meter concrete pad.

C. Meter installed by Local Utility.

3.8 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.

B. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.

3.9 CONNECTIONS AND INSTALLATIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of fuel gas piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to appliances using gas with shutoff valves and unions. Install valve upstream from and within 72 inches of each appliance. Install union downstream from valve.

D. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance using gas.

E. Pressure Regulators: Install on gas service and down stream distribution piping, "Pounds to Inch" and "Inch to Inch" regulators as indicated on drawings and as necessitated by appliance/equipment connections.

F. Ground equipment.

1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
2. Do not use gas pipe as grounding electrode.

G. Piping Connections: Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Install unions, in piping 2-inch NPS and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment with 2-inch NPS or smaller threaded pipe connection.
2. Install flanges, in piping 2-1/2 inch NPS and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment with flanged pipe connection.
3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

H. Connect to utility's gas meter according to utility's procedures and requirements.

3.10 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each service meter, pressure regulator, and specialty valve.

1. Text: In addition to name of identified unit, distinguish between multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations.
2. Refer to Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for nameplates and signs.

B. See drawings and Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for pipe label requirements.

3.11 PAINTING

A. Use materials and procedures below and in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing," and in Division 09 Section "Exterior Painting," and "Interior Painting" for treatment and finishing of ferrous metals.

B. Paint pressure regulators, pipe, supports, valves, etc.

1. Color:

a. Within Building Envelope – Yellow.
b. On Roof – Black or Grey.
c. On Exterior Vertical Walls – Match wall color.

C. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect, test, and purge piping according to ANSI Z223.1/NFPA 54, the International Fuel Gas Code, the Uniform Plumbing Code, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest system until satisfactory results are obtained.

C. Report test results promptly and in writing to Architect and authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Verify capacities and pressure ratings of service meters, pressure regulators, valves, and specialties.

E. Verify pressure settings for pressure regulators match equipment/appliance requirements.

F. Verify that specified piping tests are complete.

3.13 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and safety devices.

END OF SECTION 22 16 23

SECTION 23 05 13 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Motor controllers.
2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet (1000 m) above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

C. Service Factor: 1.15.

D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.

1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

F. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

H. Insulation: [Class F] <Insert class>.

I. Code Letter Designation:

1. Motors [15] <Insert number> HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
2. Motors Smaller Than [15] <Insert number> HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

J. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes [324T] <Insert number> and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than [324T] <Insert number>.

2.4 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

B. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers:[Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.]

1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.
2. Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

1. Permanent-split capacitor.
2. Split phase.
3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 05 14- VARIABLE- FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes separately enclosed, preassembled, combination VFCs, rated 600 V and less, for speed control of three-phase, squirrel-cage induction motors where ECM motors are not available.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. CE: Conformite Europeene (European Compliance).

B. CPT: Control power transformer.

C. DDC: Direct digital control.

D. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

E. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.

F. PID: Control action, proportional plus integral plus derivative.

G. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

H. VFC: Variable-frequency motor controller.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and rating of VFC indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For each VFC indicated.

1. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For each VFC, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Certificate of compliance.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based, and their installation requirements.

C. Product certificates.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace VFCs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Provide products by one of the following:
1. Yaskawa
2. ABB
3. Square D
4. Eaton

2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. General Requirements for VFCs:

1. VFCs and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NEMA ICS 7, NEMA ICS 61800-2, and UL 508A.

B. VFC Description: Variable-frequency motor controller, consisting of power converter that employs pulse-width-modulated inverter, factory built and tested in an enclosure, with integral disconnecting means and overcurrent and overload protection; listed and labeled by an NRTL as a complete unit; arranged to provide self-protection, protection, and variable-speed control of one or more three-phase induction motors by adjusting output voltage and frequency.

1. Units suitable for operation of NEMA MG 1 motors.
2. Listed and labeled for integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Design and Rating: Match load type, such as fans, blowers, and pumps; and type of connection used between motor and load such as direct or through a power-transmission connection.

D. Output Rating: Three phase; 10 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range; maximum voltage equals input voltage.

E. Unit Operating Requirements:

1. Input AC Voltage Tolerance: Plus 10 and minus 15 percent of VFC input voltage rating.
2. Input AC Voltage Unbalance: Not exceeding 5 percent.
3. Input Frequency Tolerance: Plus or minus 3 percent of VFC frequency rating.
4. Minimum Efficiency: 98 percent at 60 Hz, full load.
5. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 96 percent under any load or speed condition.
6. Minimum Short-Circuit Current (Withstand) Rating: 65 kA.
7. Ambient Temperature Rating: Not less than 32 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
8. Humidity Rating: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
9. Altitude Rating: Not exceeding 3300 feet.
10. Vibration Withstand: Comply with NEMA ICS 61800-2.
11. Overload Capability: 1.1 times the base load current for 60 seconds; minimum of 1.8 times the base load current for three seconds.
12. Starting Torque: Minimum 100 percent of rated torque from 3 to 60 Hz.
13. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus 5 percent.
14. Output Carrier Frequency: Selectable; 0.5 to 15 kHz.
15. Stop Modes: Programmable; includes fast, free-wheel, and dc injection braking.

F. Inverter Logic: Microprocessor based, 32 bit, isolated from all power circuits.

G. Isolated Control Interface: Allows VFCs to follow remote-control signal over a minimum 40:1 speed range.

1. Signal: Electrical.

H. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:

1. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
2. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
3. Acceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
4. Deceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
5. Current Limit: 30 to minimum of 150 percent of maximum rating.

I. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:

1. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of the VFC, complying with UL 1449 SPD, Type 1 or Type 2.
2. Surge Suppression: Field-mounted surge suppressors complying with Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits," UL 1449 SPD, Type 2.
3. Loss of Input Signal Protection: Selectable response strategy, including speed default to a percent of the most recent speed, a preset speed, or stop; with alarm.
4. Under- and overvoltage trips.
5. Inverter overcurrent trips.
6. VFC and Motor-Overload/Overtemperature Protection: Microprocessor-based thermal protection system for monitoring VFCs and motor thermal characteristics, and for providing VFC overtemperature and motor-overload alarm and trip; settings selectable via the keypad.
7. Critical frequency rejection, with three selectable, adjustable deadbands.
8. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
9. Loss-of-phase protection.
10. Reverse-phase protection.
11. Short-circuit protection.
12. Motor-overtemperature fault.

J. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempt three restarts after drive fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction; adjustable delay time between restart attempts.

K. Power-Interruption Protection: To prevent motor from re-energizing after a power interruption until motor has stopped, unless "Bidirectional Autospeed Search" feature is available and engaged.

L. Bidirectional Autospeed Search: Capable of starting VFC into rotating loads spinning in either direction and returning motor to set speed in proper direction, without causing damage to drive, motor, or load.

M. Torque Boost: Automatically varies starting and continuous torque to at least 1.5 times the minimum torque to ensure high-starting torque and increased torque at slow speeds.

N. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back based on output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled, fan-ventilated motors at slow speeds.

O. Integral Input Disconnecting Means: NEMA KS 1, nonfusible switch, with power fuse block and current-limiting fuses with pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.

1. Disconnect Rating: Not less than 115 percent of VFC input current rating.
2. Disconnect Rating: Not less than 115 percent of NFPA 70 motor full-load current rating or VFC input current rating, whichever is larger.
3. Auxiliary Contacts: NO or NC, arranged to activate before switch blades open.
4. Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with circuit-breaker handle.
5. **NC** alarm contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.

2.3 CONTROLS AND INDICATION

A. Status Lights: Door-mounted LED indicators displaying the following conditions:

1. Power on.
2. Run.
3. Overvoltage.
4. Line fault.
5. Overcurrent.
6. External fault.

B. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Manufacturer's standard front-accessible, sealed keypad and plain-English-language digital display; allows complete programming, program copying, operating, monitoring, and diagnostic capability.

1. Keypad: In addition to required programming and control keys, include keys for HAND, OFF, and AUTO modes.
2. Security Access: Provide electronic security access to controls through identification and password with at least one level of access: View only; view and operate; and view, operate, and service.

a. Control Authority: Supports at least four conditions: Off, local manual control at VFC, local automatic control at VFC, and automatic control through a remote source.

C. Historical Logging Information and Displays:

1. Real-time clock with current time and date.
2. Running log of total power versus time.

3. Total run time.
4. Fault log, maintaining last three faults with time and date stamp for each.

D. Indicating Devices: Digital display mounted flush in VFC door and connected to display VFC parameters including, but not limited to:

1. Output frequency (Hz).
2. Motor speed (rpm).
3. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
4. Motor current (amperes).
5. Motor torque (percent).
6. Fault or alarming status (code).
7. PID feedback signal (percent).
8. DC-link voltage (V dc).
9. Set point frequency (Hz).
10. Motor output voltage (V ac).

E. Control Signal Interfaces:

1. Electric Input Signal Interface:

   a. A minimum of two programmable analog inputs: 4- to 20-mA dc.
   b. A minimum of six multifunction programmable digital inputs.

2. Remote Signal Inputs: Capability to accept any of the following speed-setting input signals from the DDC system for HVAC or other control systems:

   a. 0- to 10-V dc.
   b. 4- to 20-mA dc.
   c. Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
   d. Fixed frequencies using digital inputs.

3. Output Signal Interface: A minimum of two programmable analog output signal(s), 4- to 20-mA dc, which can be configured for any of the following:

   a. Output frequency (Hz).
   b. Output current (load).
   c. DC-link voltage (V dc).
   d. Motor torque (percent).
   e. Motor speed (rpm).
   f. Set point frequency (Hz).

F. PID Control Interface: Provides closed-loop set point, differential feedback control in response to dual feedback signals. Allows for closed-loop control of fans and pumps for pressure, flow, or temperature regulation.

1. Number of Loops: One.

2.4 BYPASS SYSTEMS

A. Bypass Operation: Manually transfers motor between power converter output and bypass circuit. Unit is capable of stable operation (starting, stopping, and running) with motor completely disconnected from power converter.

B. Bypass Mode: Manual operation only; requires local operator selection at VFC. Transfer between power converter and bypass contactor, and retransfer shall only be allowed with the motor at zero speed.

C. Bypass Controller: Two-contactor-style bypass allows motor operation via the power converter or the bypass controller

1. Bypass Contactor: Load-break, NEMA-rated contactor.
2. Output Isolating Contactor: Non-load-break, NEMA-rated contactor.
3. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode; pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.

D. Bypass Contactor Configuration: Reduced-voltage (autotransformer) type.

1. NORMAL/BYPASS selector switch.
2. HAND/OFF/AUTO selector switch.
3. NORMAL/TEST Selector Switch: Allows testing and adjusting of VFC while the motor is running in the bypass mode.
4. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type.

    a. Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
    b. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double break, and silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.

5. Overload Relays: NEMA ICS 2.

2.5 OPTIONAL FEATURES

A. Damper control circuit with end-of-travel feedback capability.

B. Firefighter's Override (Smoke Purge) Input: On a remote contact closure from the firefighter's control station, this password-protected input:

1. Overrides all other local and external inputs (analog/digital, serial communication, and all keypad commands).

2. Forces VFC to operate motor, without any other run or speed command, at a field-adjustable, preset speed.
3. Forces VFC to transfer to bypass mode and operate motor at full speed.
4. Causes display of override mode on the VFC display.
5. Reset VFC to normal operation on removal of override signal automatically.

C. Communication Port: RS-232 port, USB 2.0 port, or equivalent connection capable of connecting a printer and a laptop.

2.6 ENCLOSURES

A. VFC Enclosures: NEMA 250, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

1. Dry and Clean Indoor Locations: Type 1.
2. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R.
3. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: Type 12.

B. Plenum Rating: UL 1995; NRTL certification label on enclosure, clearly identifying VFC as "Plenum Rated."

2.7 ACCESSORIES

A. General Requirements for Control-Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in VFC enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.

1. Push Buttons:
2. Pilot Lights: Push to test.
3. Selector Switches: Rotary type.

B. Reversible NC/NO bypass contactor auxiliary contact(s).

C. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable solid-state time-delay relays.

D. Phase-Failure, Phase-Reversal, and Undervoltage and Overvoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing circuit with isolated output contacts for hard-wired connections. Provide adjustable undervoltage, overvoltage, and time-delay settings.

1. Current Transformers: Continuous current rating, basic impulse insulating level (BIL) rating, burden, and accuracy class suitable for connected circuitry. Comply with IEEE C57.13.

E. Supplemental Digital Meters:

1. Elapsed-time meter.

2. Kilowatt meter.
3. Kilowatt-hour meter.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Wall-Mounting Controllers: Install with tops at uniform height and with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall.

B. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

C. Install fuses in each fusible-switch VFC.

D. Install heaters in thermal-overload relays. Select heaters based on actual nameplate full-load amperes after motors are installed.

E. Install, connect, and fuse thermal-protector monitoring relays furnished with motor-driven equipment.

F. Comply with NECA 1.

3.2 CONTROL WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Install wiring between VFCs and remote devices and building automation system.

B. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.

B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect VFC, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation.
2. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
3. Test continuity of each circuit.
4. Verify that voltages at VFC locations are within 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify Construction Manager before starting the motor(s).
5. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
6. Perform tests according to the Inspection and Test Procedures for Adjustable Speed Drives stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
7. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
8. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies the VFC and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations made after remedial action.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Program microprocessors for required operational sequences, status indications, alarms, event recording, and display features. Clear events memory after final acceptance testing and prior to Substantial Completion.

B. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.

C. Adjust the trip settings of instantaneous-only circuit breakers and thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable, instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to 6 times the motor nameplate full-load amperes and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cool-down between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until motors start without tripping. Do not exceed 8 times the motor full-load amperes (or 11 times for NEMA Premium Efficient motors if required). Where these maximum settings do not allow starting of a motor, notify Construction Manager before increasing settings.

D. Set the taps on reduced-voltage autotransformer controllers.

E. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges.

F. Set field-adjustable pressure switches.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Using Agency's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, reprogram, and maintain VFCs.

END OF SECTION 23 05 14

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 05 19- METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
2. Light-activated thermometers.
3. Duct-thermometer mounting brackets.
4. Thermowells.
5. Dial-type pressure gages.
6. Gage attachments.
7. Test plugs.
8. Test-plug kits.
9. Flowmeters.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Cast aluminum 9-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
3. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
6. Window: Glass.
7. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.

    a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
    b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.2 LIGHT-ACTIVATED THERMOMETERS

A. Direct-Mounted, Light-Activated Thermometers:

1. Case: Metal 9-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
2. Scale(s): Deg F.
3. Case Form: Adjustable angle.
4. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
5. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.

    a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
    b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

6. Display: Digital.
7. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 deg F.

2.3 DUCT-THERMOMETER MOUNTING BRACKETS

A. Description: Flanged bracket with screw holes, for attachment to air duct and made to hold thermometer stem.

2.4 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion in piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR.
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: Stainless Steel or Brass.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.5 DIAL-TYPE PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
2. Case: Liquid-filled type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel ; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass.
9. Ring: Brass or Stainless steel.
10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.6 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston or porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.

B. Siphons: Loop-shaped section of brass or stainless-steel pipe with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 pipe threads.

C. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.7 TEST PLUGS

A. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion in piping tee fitting.

B. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.

C. Thread Size: NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.

D. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.

E. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

2.8 TEST-PLUG KITS

1. Available Manufacturers: Manufacturer shall be a company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum five (5) years experience. Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering Meter and Gage products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Armstrong
    b. Nexus
    c. Winters

B. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing two thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.

C. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.

D. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.

E. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.

F. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

2.9 FLOWMETERS

A. Vortex-Shedding Flowmeters:

1. Description: Flowmeter with sensor and indicator.
2. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
3. Sensor: Inline type; for installing between pipe flanges and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute.

    a. Design: Flow obstruction device, vortex-measurement type for gas, steam and liquids.
    b. Construction: Stainless-steel body, with integral transmitter and direct-reading scale.
    c. Minimum Pressure Rating: 1000 psig.
    d. Minimum Temperature Rating: 500 deg.
    e. Integral Transformer: For low-voltage power operation.

4. Indicator: Hand-held meter; either an integral part of sensor or a separate meter.
5. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.25 percent for liquids and 0.75 percent for gases.
6. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons.
7. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install thermowells with socket extending to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.

B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.

C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.

D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.

E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.

F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.

G. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.

H. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.

I. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).

J. Install valve and syphon fitting in piping for each pressure gage for steam.

K. Install test plugs in piping tees.

L. Install flow indicators in piping systems in accessible positions for easy viewing.

M. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters according to manufacturer's written instructions.

N. Install flowmeter elements in accessible positions in piping systems.

O. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.

P. Install connection fittings in accessible locations for attachment to portable indicators.

Q. Install thermometers in the following locations:

1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
2. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler.
3. Two inlets and two outlets of each chiller.
4. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
5. Two inlets and two outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger.
6. Inlet and outlet of each thermal-storage tank.
7. Outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts.
8. Where indicated on the drawings.

R. Install pressure gages in the following locations:

1. Discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
2. Inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection.
3. Suction and discharge of each pump.
4. Where indicated on the drawings.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow space for service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

B. Connect flowmeter-system elements to meters.

C. Connect flowmeter transmitters to meters.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCALES

A. Refer to drawings for scale ranges

3.5 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Refer to drawings for scale ranges

3.6 FLOWMETER SCHEDULE

A. Flowmeters for Chilled-Water Piping: Vortex-shedding type.

B. Flowmeters for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: Vortex-shedding type.

END OF SECTION 23 05 19

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 05 23.12- BALL VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Brass ball valves.
2. Bronze ball valves.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

B. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, and weld ends.
3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

C. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.

D. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

E. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

F. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves smaller than NPS 2.

G. Valves in Insulated Piping:

1. Include 2-inch stem extensions.
2. Extended operating handle of nonthermal-conductive material, and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking the vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.

H. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRASS BALL VALVES

A. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim, Threaded Ends:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig at 365 deg. F.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig at 100 deg. F.
d. Temperature Range: -50 deg. F to 400 deg. F.
e. Body Design: Two piece.
f. Body Material: Forged brass.

g. Ends: Threaded.
h. Seats: PTFE.
i. Stem: Stainless steel.
j. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
k. Port: Full.

2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig at 365 deg. F.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig at 100 deg. F.
d. Temperature Range: -20 deg. F to 450 deg. F.
e. Body Design: Two piece.
f. Body Material: Bronze.
g. Ends: Threaded.
h. Seats: PTFE.
i. Stem: Stainless steel.
j. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
k. Port: Full.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

E. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.

B. Select valves with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.

3.4 CHILLED-WATER AND HOT WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Brass or bronze ball valves, two piece, with brass bronze or stainless-steel trim, full port, threaded-joint ends.

END OF SECTION 230523.12

SECTION 23 05 23.13- BUTTERFLY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
2. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
3. Chainwheels.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.

C. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
3. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
2. ASME B16.5 for pipe flanges and flanged fittings, NPS 1/2 through NPS 24.
3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
4. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
5. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.

D. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

E. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

F. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Gear Actuator: For valves NPS 6 and larger.
2. Handlever: For valves NPS 5 and smaller.
3. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to gear, stem, or other actuator of size and with chain for mounting height, according to "Valve Installation" Article.

G. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions with extended necks.

2.2 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. Iron, Single-Flange or Lug Type Butterfly Valves with Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: ASTM A126, cast iron or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
e. Seat: EPDM.
f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

2.3 DUCTILE-IRON, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, 175 CWP:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 175 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM A536, ductile iron.
d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
e. Disc: Aluminum bronze.
f. Seal: EPDM.

2.4 CHAINWHEELS

A. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, chain guides, chain, and attachment brackets for mounting chainwheels directly to hand wheels.

1. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile or cast iron, of type and size required for valve. Include zinc or epoxy coating.
2. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine mating flange faces for damage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

D. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

E. Install chainwheels on operators for butterfly valves NPS 6 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.

F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

END OF SECTION 23 05 23.13

SECTION 23 05 29 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Firms regularly engaged in manufacture of supports and anchors, of types and sizes required, whose products have been in satisfactory use in similar service for not less than 5 years.

B. Codes and Standards:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable plumbing codes pertaining to product materials and installation of supports and anchors.

2. Duct Hangers: SMACNA Duct Manuals

3. MSS Standard Compliance:

C. Provide pipe hangers and supports of which materials, design, and manufacture comply with MSS SP-69.

1.2 SUBMITTALS:

A. See section 031000 – Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedure.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical product data, including installation instructions for each type of support and anchor. Submit pipe hanger and support schedule showing Manufacturer's figure number, size, location, and features for each required pipe hanger and support.

C. Shop Drawings: Submit manufacturer's assembly-type shop drawings for each type of support and anchor, indicating dimensions, weights, required clearances, and methods of assembly of components.

D. Product certificates signed by the manufacturer of hangers and supports certifying that their products meet the specified requirements.

E. Maintenance Data: Submit maintenance data and parts list for each type of support and anchor. Include this data, product data, and shop drawings in maintenance manual; in accordance with requirements of Division 23.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS:

A. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Pipe Hangers and Supports:

a. B-Line Systems Inc.

b. ANVIL International

c. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.

d. Unistrut Metal Framing Systems

e. Hubbard Enterprises (Supports for domestic water piping)

f. Specialty Products Co. (Supports for domestic water piping.

g. Erico

h. Grinnell

2. Saddles, Shield and Thermal Shield Inserts:

a. ANVIL International

b. Pipe Shields, Inc.

c. B-Line

d. Snapp Itz

e. Erico

f. Value Engineered Products, Inc.

g. Grinnell

3. Concrete Inserts and Anchors:

a. Unistrut Metal Framing Systems

b. Power-Strut

c. ITW Ramset/Red Head

d. Hilti

e. B-Line

f. Erico

g. Grinnell

2.2 PIPE HANGERS & SUPPORTS:

A. Hangers and support components shall be factory fabricated of materials, design, and manufacturer complying with MSS SP-69.

1. Components shall have galvanized coatings where installed for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

2. Pipe attachments shall have nonmetallic coating for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

B. Adjustable Clevis Hanger: MSS Type.

1. Steel Pipe, size 3/8" thru 30", Type 1.

2. Non-insulated Copper Pipe, size 1/2" thru 4", Type 1. (PVC Coated)

3. Cast Iron Pipe, size 4" thru 24", Type 1.

C. Adjustable Swivel Ring for Non-insulated Pipe: MSS Type.

1. Steel Pipe, size 1/2" thru 8", Type 7.

2. Copper Pipe, size 1/2" thru 4", Type 7 (PVC Coated)

D. Pipe Clamps: MSS Type.

1. Steel Pipe, size 3/4" thru 24", Type 8.
2. Copper Pipe, size 1/2" thru 4", Type 8 (PVC Coated).

E. U Bolts: MSS Type.
1. Steel Pipe, size 1/2" thru 30" Type 24
2. Copper Pipe, size 1/2" thru 8", Type 24 (PVC Coated).

F. Straps: MSS Type 26.

G. Pipe Stanchion Saddle: MSS Type 37.

H. Yoke & Roller Hanger: MSS Type 43

I. Hanger Rods: Continuous threaded steel, sizes as specified.

J. Hangers:
1. Hot Pipes:
   a. 1/2" through 1-1/2": Adjustable wrought steel ring.
   b. 2" through 5": Adjustable wrought steel clevis.
   c. 6" and Over: Adjustable steel yoke and cast iron roll.
2. Cold Pipes:
   a. 1/2" through 1-1/2": Adjustable wrought steel ring.
   b. 2" and Over: Adjustable wrought steel clevis.
3. Multiple or Trapeze: Structural steel channel (with web vertical and engineered for the specific applications), with welded spacers and hanger rods. Provide cast iron roll and base plate for hot pipe sizes six inches and over. Provide hanger rods one size larger than for largest pipe in trapeze. If the deflection at center of trapeze exceeds 1/360 of the distance between the end hangers, install an additional hanger at mid-span or use a larger channel.

K. Wall Supports for Horizontal Steel Pipe:
1. ½ inch through 4inches: Offset or straight j-hook.
2. 4 inches and Over: Welded steel bracket Type 31, 32 or 33 and wrought steel clamp. Provide adjustable steel yoke and cast iron roll Type 44 for hot pipe 200^{o} F and over and for sizes six inches and over.

L. Supports for Vertical Pipe: Steel riser clamp. Type 8.

M. Upper Attachments:
1. For attaching hanger rods to structural steel I-beams:
   a. Provide adjustable beam clamp, MSS-Type 21. Attach to bottom flange of beam.
2. For attaching hanger rods to bar joists:
   b. When bottom chord is constructed of structural steel angles, provide square washer. Place hanger rod between backs of the two angles and support with the washer and dual locking nuts on top of the angles. Spot weld washer to angles.
   c. When bottom chord is constructed of round bars, provide Elcen No. 137 bar joint washer or equal.

2.3 CONCRETE INSERTS AND ANCHORS:

A. Inserts: Case shall be of galvanized carbon steel with square threaded concrete insert nut for hanger rod connection; top lugs for reinforcing rods, nail holes for attaching to forms. This type of upper attachment is to be used for all areas having poured in place concrete construction.

1. Size inserts to suit threaded hanger rods.

B. Provide fasteners attached to concrete ceilings that are vibration and shock resistant. Provide hangers for piping attached to concrete construction with one of the following types.

1. Concrete insert per MSS SP 69, Type 18.

2. Powder driven fasteners subject to approval of Architect and Structural Engineer. Each fastener shall be capable of holding a test load of 1000 pounds whereas the actual load shall not exceed 50 pounds.

3. Self-drilling expansion shields. The load applied shall not exceed one-fourth the proof test load required.

4. Machine bolt expansion anchor. The load applied shall not exceed one-fourth the proof test load required.

C. Anchors: Carbon steel, zinc plated and coated with a clear chromate finish. Installation shall be in holes drilled with carbide-tipped drill bits or by use of self-drilling anchors.

1. Provide anchors suitable for the location of installation and designed to withstand all forces and movements acting in the anchor. Manufacture pipe anchors in accordance with MSS SP 69. Provide a safety factor of four for the anchor installation.

2.4 SADDLES AND THERMAL SHIELD INSERTS:

A. Protection Saddles: MSS Type 39; fill interior voids with segments of insulation matching adjoining insulation.

B. Protection Shields: MSS Type 40; 180 degrees arc, galvanized steel, minimum 12 inches long, to prevent crushing of insulation.

C. Thermal Shield Inserts: Provide 100-psi minimum compressive strength, waterproof, asbestos free calcium silicate, encased with a sheet metal enclosure. Insert and shield shall cover the entire circumference or the bottom half circumference of the pipe as required by Part 3 of this Specification, and shall be of length recommended by the manufacturer for pipe size and thickness of insulation. For cold piping, calcium silicate shall extend beyond the sheet metal shield to allow overlap of the vapor barrier. Where piping 4 inches and larger is supported on trapeze or pipe rollers, provide double thickness shields. For piping 12 inches and over, provide 600 psi calcium silicate structural insert.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS:

A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36.

B. Cement Grout: Portland cement (ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III) and clean uniformly graded, natural sand (ASTM C 404, Size No. 2). Mix ratio shall be 1.0 part cement to 3.0 parts sand, by volume, with minimum amount of water required for placement and hydration.

C. Heavy-Duty Steel Trapezes: Fabricate from steel shapes selected for loads required; weld steel in accordance with AWS standards.

D. Pipe Alignment Guides: Provide factory-fabricated guides, of cast semi-steel or heavy fabricated steel, consisting of bolted two-section outer cylinder and base with two-section guiding spider bolted tight to pipe. Size guide and spiders to clear pipe and insulation (if any), and cylinder. Provide guides of length recommended by manufacturer to allow indicated travel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION:

A. Examine areas and conditions under which supports and anchors are to be installed. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in manner acceptable to Installer.

3.2 PREPARATION:

A. Proceed with installation of hangers, supports and anchors only after required building structural work has been completed in areas where the work is to be installed. Correct inadequacies including (but not limited to) proper placement of inserts, anchors and other building structural attachments. Review Structural Drawings to obtain structural support limitations.

B. Prior to installation of hangers, supports, anchors and associated work, Installer shall meet at project site with Contractor, installer of each component of associated work, inspection and testing agency representatives (if any), installers of other work requiring coordination with work of this section and Architect/Engineer for purpose of reviewing material selections and procedures to be followed in performing the work in compliance with requirements specified. Provide Shop Drawing showing method and support locations from structure.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF BUILDING ATTACHMENTS:

A. Install building attachments within concrete or on structural steel. Space attachments within maximum piping span length indicated in MSS SP-69. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, guides, strainers, expansion joints, and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten insert to forms. Where concrete with compressive strength less than 2500 psi is indicated, install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

B. New Construction:

1. Use inserts for suspending hangers from reinforced concrete slabs and sides of reinforced concrete beams wherever practicable.

2. Set inserts in position in advance of concrete work. Provide reinforcement rod in concrete for inserts carrying pipe over 4 inches or ducts over 60 inches wide.

3. Where concrete slabs form finished ceiling, finish inserts flush with slab surface.

4. Where inserts are omitted drill through concrete slab from below and provide rod with recessed square steel plate and nut above slab if construction above permits.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS:

A. Install hangers, supports, clamps and attachments to support piping properly from building structure; comply with MSS SP-69. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping to be supported together on field fabricated, heavy-duty trapeze hangers where possible. Install supports with maximum spacings complying with MSS SP-69. Where piping of various sizes is supported together by trapeze hangers, space hangers for smallest pipe size or install intermediate

supports for smaller diameter pipe. Do not use wire or perforated metal to support piping, and do not support piping from other piping.

B. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers and other accessories.

C. Prevent electrolysis and abrasion in support of copper tubing by use of hangers and supports which are plastic coated, or with EPDM isolation strips. Duct tape or copper coated hangers are not acceptable.

D. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends and similar units and within 1'-0" of each horizontal elbow.

E. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loading and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

F. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes, and so that maximum pipe deflections allowed by ANSI B31.9 Building Services Piping Code is not exceeded.

G. Insulated Piping: Comply with the following installation requirements.

1. Clamps: Attach clamps, including spacers (if any), to piping with clamps projecting through insulation; do not exceed pipe stresses allowed by ANSI B31.

2. Saddles: Install Protection saddles where supported by pipe rollers. Fill interior voids with segments of insulation that match adjoining pipe insulation.

3. Shields: Install galvanized steel protection shields, on all insulated piping 2 inches and less, except where required to be clamped. Where necessary to prevent dislocation, strap shield to pipe with wire ties or "Zip Strips".

4. Thermal Inserts: Provide thermal shield inserts at all supports for all insulated piping over 2 inches and for all piping required to be clamped. Provide 180 percent inserts at clevis and roller hangers. Provide 360 percent inserts for all trapeze and clamped supports.

H. Install steel natural gas piping with the following minimum rod size and maximum spacing:

SIZE (NPS)	MAX. SPAN IN FEET	MIN. ROD SIZE - INCHES
1/2	6	3/8
3/4 TO 1	8	3/8
1-1/4 1-1/2	10	3/8
2	10	3/8
3	10	½
5	19	5/8
6	21	¾
8	24	7/8
10	26	7/8
12	30	7/8

Vertical, all sizes every floor level

I. Support horizontal cast iron pipe as follows:
   1. Hub & Spigot: All sizes.
      a. 10 ft. max spacing: min of one (1) hanger per pipe section close to joint on the barrel. Also at change of direction and branch connections.
      b. Support vertical cast iron pipe at each story height and at its base. Secure vertical hub and spigot pipe immediately below the hub.
      c. Use hanger rods same size as for steel pipe.
   2. No-Hub: All sizes
      a. With Clamp-All and Anaheim Series 4000 stainless steel couplings and MG cast iron couplings: one hanger to each joint.
      b. With all other stainless steel band type couplings: one hanger to each side of joint.
      c. Support all horizontal cast iron pipe within 18 inches of each joint and with 5 feet maximum spacing between hangers, except that pipe exceeding 5 feet in length shall be supported at intervals no greater than 10 feet.
      d. Use hanger rods same size as for steel pipe.
      e. Support vertical cast iron pipe at each story height and at its base. Support vertical no-hub pipe so that the weight is carried from the pipe to the support and not from the joint to the support.

J. Place a hanger within one foot of each horizontal elbow.

K. Use hangers which are vertically adjustable 1-1/2 inch minimum after piping is erected.

L. Support vertical steel and copper piping at every story height but at not more than 15 foot intervals for steel and 10 feet for copper.

M. Where several pipes can be installed in parallel and at same elevation, provide trapeze hangers.

N. Where practical, support riser piping independently of connected horizontal piping.

O. Support steam supply and condensate return pipe runs on adjustable roller hangers.

P. Each pipe drop to equipment shall be adequately supported. All supporting lugs or guides shall be securely anchored to the building structure.

Q. Securely anchor and support plumbing domestic water piping in chases or walls. Use factory manufactured clamps and brackets connected to fixture s, waste/vent piping or brackets connected to studs. Wires or straps will not be permitted.
   1. When copper supplies are connected to flush valves, support the tubing by the studs or by a fixture, not by clamping to waste/vent piping.
   2. Prevent copper tubes from making contact with steel brackets using fire retardant polyethylene inserts or other dielectric insulating material. Duct tape shall not be used.

R. Install anchors and fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and the following:

1. In the event a self-drilling expansion shield or machine bolt expansion shield is considered to have been installed improperly, the Contractor shall make an acceptable replacement or demonstrate the stability of the anchor by performing an on-site test under which the anchor will be subjected to a load equal to twice the actual load.
2. Powder-driven fasteners may be used only where they will be concealed after the construction is complete. Where an occasional fastener appears to be improperly installed, additional fastener(s) shall be driven nearby (not closer than 6 inches) in undisturbed concrete. Where it is considered that many fasteners are improperly installed, the Contractor shall test load any 50 successively driven fasteners. If 10 percent or more of these fasteners fail, the Contractor shall utilize other fastening means as approved and at no additional cost to the Owner.
3. Hangers for piping and ducts shall be attached to cellular steel floor decks with steel plates and bolted rod conforming to the steel deck manufacturer's requirements. Where the individual hanger load exceeds the capacity of a single floor deck attachment, steel angles, beams or channels shall be provided to span the number of floor deck attachments required.
4. Welding may be used for securing hangers to steel structural members. Welded attachments shall be designed so that the fiber stress at any point of the weld or attachment will not exceed the fiber stress in the hanger rod.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF ANCHORS:

A. Install anchors at proper locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ANSI B31.9, and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.

B. Fabricate and install anchor by welding steel shapes, plates and bars to piping and to structure. Comply with ANSI B31.9 and with AWS Standards D1.1.

C. Where expansion compensators are indicated, install anchors in accordance with expansion unit manufacturer's written instructions, to control movement to compensators.

D. Anchor Spacings: Where not otherwise indicated, install anchors at ends of principal pipe-runs, at intermediate points in pipe-runs between expansion loops and bends. Make provisions for preset of anchors as required to accommodate both expansion and contraction of piping. Provide shop drawing for review by Engineer.

3.6 SHEET METAL DUCT HANGERS AND SUPPORTS:

A. Provide in accordance with SMACNA HVAC duct construction standards.

B. Additional Hanger Requirements:

1. 2" to 24" from flexible connections of fans.
2. 2" to 24" from the outlets or flexible connections of VAV control units or mixing boxes.
3. 12" to 36" from the main duct to the first hanger of long branch ducts.
4. 2" to 12" from the ends of all branch ducts and linear diffuser plenums.
5. 2" to 24" from fire damper break-away joints.
6. Hangers at throat and heal of round or square elbows 48" or greater in width.

3.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS:

A. Fabricate structural steel stands to suspend equipment from structure above or support equipment above floor.

B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for piping and equipment.

C. Concrete bases for the mechanical equipment indoors or outdoors will be provided by the General Contractor only if shown on the architectural or structural drawings. Otherwise, all bases shall be provided by this Contractor.

D. For inertia bases, see Section 23 05 48.

E. Housekeeping bases shall be 4 inches thick minimum, extended 4 inches beyond machinery bedplates.

F. This Contractor shall be responsible for the proper size and location of all bases and shall furnish all required anchor bolts and sleeves. If bases are provided by the General Contractor, furnish him with templates showing the bolt locations.

G. Equipment shall be secured to the bases with anchor bolts of ample size. Bolts shall have bottom plates and pipe sleeves and shall be securely imbedded in the concrete. All machinery shall be grouted under the entire bearing surface. After grout has set, all wedges, shims and jack bolts shall be removed and the space filled with non-shrinking grout. This Contractor shall provide lead washers at all equipment anchor bolts.

H. Construct equipment supports above floor of structural steel members or steel pipe and fittings. Brace and fasten with flanges bolted to structure.

I. Provide rigid anchors for ducts and pipes immediately after vibration connections to equipment. See also Section 23 05 48.

3.8 METAL FABRICATION:

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for pipe anchors and equipment supports. Install and align fabricated anchors in indicated locations.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 for procedures of manual shielded metal-arc welding, appearance and quality of welds made, methods used in correcting welding work, and the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and contours at welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.9 ADJUSTING:

A. Hanger Adjustment: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe. Cut off the bottom of threaded rods so they are no more than one rod diameter below the bottom nut.

B. Touch-Up Painting: Immediately after erection of anchors and supports, clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA-1 requirements for touch-up of field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

C. For galvanized surfaces clean welds bolted connections and abraded areas and apply galvanizing repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 48 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
4. Open-spring isolators.
5. Housed-spring isolators.
6. Restrained-spring isolators.
7. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
8. Pipe-riser resilient support.
9. Resilient pipe guides.
10. Elastomeric hangers.
11. Spring hangers.
12. Snubbers.
13. Restraints - rigid type.
14. Restraints - cable type.
15. Restraint accessories.
16. Post-installed concrete anchors.
17. Concrete inserts.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for devices for fire-suppression equipment and systems.
2. Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for devices for plumbing equipment and systems.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases.

2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

C. Delegated Design Submittals:

1. For each seismic-restraint [and] [wind-load protection] device, including [seismic-restrained mounting,] [pipe-riser resilient support,] [snubber,] [seismic restraint,] [seismic-restraint accessory,] [concrete anchor and insert,] [and] [restrained isolation roof-curb rail] that is required by this Section or is indicated on Drawings, submit the following:

    a. Seismic [and Wind-Load]Restraint, and Vibration Isolation Base Selection: Select vibration isolators, seismic [and wind-load]restraints, and vibration isolation bases complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data.
    b. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification by professional engineer that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.
    c. Concrete Anchors and Inserts: Include calculations showing anticipated seismic and wind loads. Include certification that device is approved by an NRTL for seismic reinforcement use.
    d. Seismic Design Calculations: Submit all input data and loading calculations prepared under "Seismic Design Calculations" Paragraph in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    e. Wind-Load Design Calculations: Submit all static and dynamic loading calculations prepared under "Wind-Load Design Calculations" Paragraph in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    f. Qualified Professional Engineer: All designated-design submittals for seismic- and wind-restraint calculations are to be signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
2. Seismic-[and Wind-]Restraint Detail Drawing:

    a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic[and wind] restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
    b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
    c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply also with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.

3. All delegated design submittals for seismic- and wind-restraint detail Drawings are to be signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

4. Product Listing, Preapproval, and Evaluation Documentation: By [an evaluation service member of ICC-ES] [UL] [FM Approvals] [OSHPD] [an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction], showing maximum ratings of restraint items and basis for approval (tests or calculations).
5. Design Calculations for Vibration Isolation Devices: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operating forces required to select proper vibration isolators, and to design vibration isolation bases.
6. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, and spring deflection changes. Include certification that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation and seismic bracing for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Seismic Qualification Data: Provide special certification for designated seismic systems as indicated in [ASCE/SEI 7-05,] [ASCE/SEI 7-10,] [ASCE/SEI 7-16,] Paragraph 13.2.2, "Special Certification Requirements for Designated Seismic Systems" for all Designated Seismic Systems identified as such on Drawings or in the Specifications.

1. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification for each designated active mechanical seismic device and system, stating that it will remain operable following the design earthquake. Certification must be based on requirements of ASCE/SEI 7 and AHRI 1270 (AHRI 1271), including shake table testing per ICC-ES AC156 or a similar nationally recognized testing standard procedure acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction [or] [experience data as permitted by] [ASCE/SEI 7-05] [ASCE/SEI 7-10] [ASCE/SEI 7-16].
2. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification that components with hazardous contents maintain containment following the design earthquake by methods required in [ASCE/SEI 7-05] [ASCE/SEI 7-10] [ASCE/SEI 7-16].
3. Submit evidence demonstrating compliance with these requirements for approval to authorities having jurisdiction after review and acceptance by a licensed professional engineer.
4. The following HVAC systems and components are Designated Seismic Systems and require written special certification of seismic qualification by manufacturer:

E. Wind-Force Performance Certification: Provide special certification for HVAC components subject to high wind exposure and impact damage and designated on Drawings or in the Specifications to require wind-force performance certification.

1. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification for each designated HVAC device, stating that it will remain in place and operable following the design wind event and comply with all requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Provide manufacturer's written certification for each designated louver, damper, or similar device, stating that it will remain in place and protect opening from penetration of windborne debris and comply with all requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Certification must be based on ICC-ES or similar nationally recognized testing standard procedures acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
4. The following HVAC systems and components require special certification for high wind performance. Written special certification of resistance to the effects of high wind force and impact damage must be provided by manufacturer:

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct testing indicated, be an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and be acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

C. Seismic-[and Wind-Load-]Restraint Device Load Ratings: Devices to be tested and rated in accordance with applicable code requirements and authorities having jurisdiction. Devices to be listed by a nationally recognized third party that requires periodic follow-up inspections and has a listing directory available to the public. Provide third-party listing by one or more of the following: [ICC-ES product listing] [UL product listing] [FM Approvals] [an evaluation service member of ICC-ES] [an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction].

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design seismic [and] [wind-] load control system.
1. Seismic[and Wind-Load] Performance: Equipment to withstand the effects of earthquake motions[and high wind events] determined in accordance with [ASCE/SEI 7-05] [ASCE/SEI 7-10] [ASCE/SEI 7-16] <Insert requirement>.

B. Seismic Design Calculations:
1. Perform calculations to obtain force information necessary to properly select seismic-restraint devices, fasteners, and anchorage. Perform calculations using methods acceptable to applicable code authorities and as presented in [ASCE/SEI 7-05] [ASCE/SEI 7-10 including supplement No. 1] [ASCE/SEI 7-16] <Insert ASCE/SEI 7 edition or other seismic calculation method required by authorities having jurisdiction>. Where "ASCE/SEI 7" is used throughout this Section, it is to be understood that the

edition referred to in this subparagraph is the edition intended as reference throughout the Section Text.

a. Data indicated below to be determined by Delegated Design Contractor must be obtained by Contractor and must be included in individual component submittal packages.
b. Coordinate seismic design calculations with wind-load calculations for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections in addition to those in this Section for equipment mounted outdoors.
c. Building Occupancy Category: [I] [II] [III] [IV].
d. Building Risk Category: [I] [II] [III] [IV].
e. Building Site Classification: [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F].

2. Calculation Factors, ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 13 - Seismic Design Requirements for Nonstructural Components: All section, paragraph, equation, and table numbers refer to ASCE/SEI 7-16 unless otherwise noted.

a. Horizontal Seismic Design Force F_p: Value is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using Equation 13.3-1. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
   1) S_{DS} = Spectral Acceleration: <Insert value>. Value applies to all components on Project.
   2) a_p = Component Amplification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
   3) I_p = Component Importance Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
   4) W_p = Component Operating Weight: For each component. Obtain by Delegated Design Contractor from each component submittal.
   5) R_p = Component Response Modification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
   6) z = Height in Structure of Point of Attachment of Component for Base: Determine from Project Drawings for each component by Delegated Design Contractor. For items at or below the base, "z" to be taken as zero.
   7) h = Average Roof Height of Structure for Base: Determine from Project Drawings by Delegated Design Contractor.

b. Vertical Seismic Design Force: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using method explained in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.1.2.
c. Seismic Relative Displacement D_{pl}: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.2. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:

   1) D_p = Relative Seismic Displacement that Each Component Must Be Designed to Accommodate: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.2.2.
   2) I_e = Structure Importance Factor: <Insert value>. Value applies to all components on Project.

3) δ_{xA} = Deflection at Building Level x of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
4) δ_{yA} = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
5) δ_{yB} = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
6) h_x = Height of Level x to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
7) h_y = Height of Level y to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
8) Δ_{aA} = Allowable Story Drift for Structure A: See Drawing Schedules for each component.
9) Δ_{aB} = Allowable Story Drift for Structure B: See Drawing Schedules for each component.
10) h_{sx} = Story Height Used in the Definition of Allowable Drift Δ_a: See Drawings Schedules for each component.

d. Component Fundamental Period T_p: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.3. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:

1) W_p = Component Operating Weight: Determined by Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
2) g = Gravitational Acceleration: [32.17 fps^2 (9.81 m/s^2)] <Insert option>.
3) K_p = Combined Stiffness of Component, Supports, and Attachments: Determined by delegated design seismic engineer. <Insert value>.

3. Calculation Factors, ASCE/SEI 7-10, Ch. 13 - Seismic Design Requirements for Nonstructural Components: All section, paragraph, equation, and table numbers refer to ASCE/SEI 7-10 unless otherwise noted.

a. Horizontal Seismic Design Force F_p: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor by ASCE/SEI 7-10, Equation 13.3-1. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
1) S_{DS} = Spectral Acceleration: <Insert value>. Value applies to all components on Project.
2) a_p = Component Amplification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
3) I_p = Component Importance Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
4) W_p = Component Operating Weight: For each component. Obtain by Delegated Design Contractor from equipment submittal.
5) R_p = Component Response Modification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.

6) z = Height in Structure of Point of Attachment of Component for Base: Determined from Project Drawings for each component by Contractor. For items at or below the base, "z" to be taken as zero.
7) h = Average Roof Height of Structure for Base: Determine from Project Drawings by Delegated Design Contractor.

b. Vertical Seismic Design Force: Calculate by Delegated Design Contractor using method explained in ASCE/SEI 7-10, Paragraph 13.3.1.
c. Seismic Relative Displacement D_{pl}: Calculate by Delegated Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-10, Paragraph 13.3.2. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:

1) D_p = Relative Seismic Displacement that Each Component Must Be Designed to Accommodate: Calculate by Delegated Design Contractor in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7-10, Paragraph 13.3.2.
2) I_e = Structure Importance Factor: <Insert value>. Value applies to all components on Project.
3) δ_{xA} = Deflection at Building Level x of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
4) δ_{yA} = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
5) δ_{yB} = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
6) h_x = Height of Level x to which Upper Connection point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data;
7) h_y = Height of Level y to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
8) Δ_{aA} = Allowable Story Drift for Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
9) Δ_{aB} = Allowable Story Drift for Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
10) h_{sx} = Story Height Used in the Definition of Allowable Drift Δ_a: See Drawing Schedule for each component.

4. Calculation Factors, ASCE/SEI 7-05, Ch. 3 - Seismic Design Requirements for Nonstructural Components: All section, paragraph, equation, and table numbers refer to ASCE/SEI 7-05 unless otherwise noted.

a. Horizontal Seismic Design Force F_p: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor by ASCE/SEI 7-05, Equation 13.3-1. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
1) S_{DS} = Spectral Acceleration: <Insert value>. Value applies to all components on Project.
2) a_p = Component Amplification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.

3) I_p = Component Importance Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
4) W_p = Component Operating Weight: Obtain by Delegated Design Contractor for each component from component submittal.
5) R_p = Component Response Modification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
6) z = Height in Structure of Point of Attachment of Component for Base: Determine by Delegated Design Contractor for each component from Project Drawings. For items at or below the base, "z" to be taken as zero.
7) h = Average Roof Height of Structure for Base: Determine by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings.

b. Vertical Seismic Design Force: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using method explained in ASCE/SEI 7-05, Paragraph 13.3.1.
c. Seismic Relative Displacement D_p: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-05, Paragraph 13.3.2. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:
1) δ_{xA} = Deflection at Building Level x of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
2) δ_{yA} = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
3) δ_{yB} = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
4) h_x = Height of Level x to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
5) h_y = Height of Level y to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
6) Δ_{aA} = Allowable Story Drift for Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
7) Δ_{aB} = Allowable Story Drift for Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
8) h_{sx} = Story Height Used in the Definition of Allowable Drift Δ_a: See Drawing Schedule for each component.

C. Wind-Load Design Calculations:

1. Perform calculations to obtain force information necessary to properly select wind-load-restraint devices, fasteners, and anchorage. Perform calculations using methods acceptable to applicable code authorities and as presented in [ASCE/SEI 7-05] [ASCE/SEI 7-10] [ASCE/SEI 7-16] <Insert ASCE/SEI 7 edition or other wind-force calculation method required by authorities having jurisdiction>. Where "ASCE/SEI 7" is used throughout this Section, it is to be understood that the edition referred to in this subparagraph is intended as referenced throughout the Section Text unless otherwise noted.

a. Data indicated below that are specific to individual pieces of equipment must be obtained by Contractor and must be included in individual component submittal packages.
b. Coordinate design wind-load calculations with seismic load calculations for equipment requiring both seismic and wind-load reinforcement. Comply with requirements in other Sections in addition to those in this Section for equipment mounted outdoors.

2. Design wind pressure "p" for external sidewall-mounted equipment such as louvers is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 30. Perform calculations in accordance with one of the following, as applicable:

a. PART 1: Low-Rise Buildings.
b. PART 2: Low-Rise Buildings (Simplified).
c. PART 3: Buildings with "h" less than 60 feet (18.3 m).
d. PART 4: Buildings with "h" greater than 60 feet (18.3 m) and less than 160 feet (48.8 m).
e. PART 5: Open Buildings.

3. Design wind pressure "p" for rooftop equipment is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 30, PART 6: Building Appurtenances and Rooftop Structures and Equipment.
a. Risk Category: [I] [II] [III] [IV] [V].
b. h = Mean Roof Height: <Insert value>.
c. V = Basic Wind Speed: <Insert value>.
d. K_d = Wind Directionality Factor: <Insert factor>.
e. Exposure Category: [B] [C] [D].
f. K_{zt} = Topographic Factor: <Insert factor>.
g. K_e = Ground Elevation Factor: <Insert factor>.
h. K_z = Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient (Evaluated at Height z): <Insert coefficient>.
i. K_h = Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient (Evaluated at Height h): <Insert coefficient>.
j. q_z = Velocity Pressure: Value calculated by delegated wind-load design Contractor using methods detailed in ASCE/SEI 7-16 Section 26.10.1 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
k. q_h = Velocity Pressure: Value calculated by delegated wind-load design Contractor using methods detailed in ASCE/SEI 7-16 Section 26.10.1 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
l. G = Gust-Effect Factor: [0.85] <Insert factor>.
m. Enclosure Classification: <Insert classification>.
n. GC_{pi} = Internal Pressure Coefficient: <Insert coefficient>.

4. Design wind pressure "p" for external sidewall-mounted equipment such as louvers are to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-10, Ch. 30. Perform calculations in accordance with one of the following, as appropriate:

a. PART 1: Low-Rise Buildings.
b. PART 2: Low-Rise Buildings (Simplified).
c. PART 3: Buildings with "h" greater than 60 feet (18.3 m).

d. PART 4: Buildings with "h" less than 160 feet (48.8 m).
e. PART 5: Open Buildings.

5. Design wind pressure "p" for rooftop equipment is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-10, Ch. 30, PART 6: Building Appurtenances and Rooftop Structures and Equipment.
   a. Risk Category: [I] [II] [III] [IV] [V].
   b. h = Mean Roof Height: <Insert value>.
   c. V = Basic Wind Speed: <Insert value>.
   d. K_d = Wind Directionality Factor: <Insert factor>.
   e. Exposure Category: [B] [C] [D].
   f. K_{zt} = Topographic Factor: <Insert factor>.
   g. K_z = Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient: <Insert coefficient>.
   h. K_h = Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient: <Insert coefficient>.
   i. q_z = Velocity Pressure: Value calculated by delegated wind-load design Contractor using methods detailed in ASCE/SEI 7-16 or ASCE/SEI 7-10 Section 26.10.1 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
   j. q_h = Velocity Pressure: Value calculated by delegated wind-load design Contractor using methods detailed in ASCE/SEI 7-16 or ASCE/SEI 7-10 Section 26.10.1 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
   k. G = Gust-Effect Factor: [0.85] <Insert factor>.
   l. Enclosure Classification: <Insert classification>.
   m. GC_{pi} = Internal Pressure Coefficient: <Insert coefficient>.

6. Design wind force "F" for rooftop equipment and external sidewall-mounted equipment such as louvers is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-05, Ch. 6.

   a. I = Importance Factor: <Insert factor>.
   b. h = Mean Roof Height: <Insert value>.
   c. V = Basic Wind Speed: <Insert value>.
   d. K_d = Wind Directionality Factor: <Insert factor>.
   e. Exposure Category: [B] [C] [D].
   f. K_{zt} = Topographic Factor: <Insert Factor>.
   g. K_z = Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient (Evaluated at Height z): <Insert coefficient>.
   h. K_h = Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient (Evaluated at Height h): <Insert coefficient>.
   i. q_z = Velocity Pressure at Height z: Value calculated by delegated wind-load design Contractor using methods detailed in ASCE/SEI 7-05 Section 6.5.10 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
   j. q_h = Velocity Pressure at Roof Height h: Value calculated by delegated wind-load design Contractor using methods detailed in ASCE/SEI 7-05 Section 6.5.10 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
   k. G = Gust-Effect Factor: [0.85] <Insert factor>.
   l. GC_{pi} = Internal Pressure Coefficient: <Insert coefficient>.
   m. GC_p = External Pressure Coefficient: <Insert coefficient>.

n. C_f = Force Coefficient: Value determined by delegated wind-load design Contractor from ASCE/SEI 7-05, Figures 6-21 through 6-23 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
o. A_f = Projected Area Normal to the Wind: Except where C_f is specified for the actual surface area, value determined by delegated wind-load design Contractor from equipment submittal or manufacturer.

D. Consequential Damage: Provide additional seismic restraints for suspended HVAC components or anchorage of floor-, roof-, or wall-mounted HVAC components as indicated in [ASCE/SEI 7-05] [ASCE/SEI 7-10] [ASCE/SEI 7-16] so that failure of a non-essential or essential HVAC component will not cause failure of any other essential architectural, mechanical, or electrical building component.

E. Fire/Smoke Resistance: Seismic-[and wind-load-]restraint devices that are not constructed of ferrous metals must have a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested by an NRTL in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, and be so labeled.

F. Component Supports:

1. Load ratings, features, and applications of all reinforcement components must be based on testing standards of a nationally recognized testing agency.
2. All component support attachments must comply with force and displacement resistance requirements of [ASCE 7-05 Section 13.6] [ASCE/SEI 7-10 Section 13.6] [ASCE/SEI 7-16 Section 13.6].

2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads: <Insert drawing designation>.

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>

2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties. Neoprene rubber, silicone rubber, or other elastomeric material.
5. Surface Pattern: Smooth, ribbed, or waffle pattern.
6. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
7. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
8. Sandwich-Core Material: [Resilient] [and] [elastomeric] <Insert compound>.

a. Surface Pattern: Smooth, ribbed, or waffle pattern.
b. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.

2.3 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts: <Insert drawing designation>.

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>

2. Mounting Plates:

   a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded[with threaded studs or bolts].
   b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.

3. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene rubber, silicone rubber, or other elastomeric material.

2.4 RESTRAINED ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Restrained Elastomeric Isolation Mounts: <Insert drawing designation>.

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>

2. Description: All-directional isolator with seismic restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.

   a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
   b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

2.5 OPEN-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators: <Insert drawing designation>.

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>

2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Baseplates: Factory-drilled steel plate for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Baseplates limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).
7. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

2.6 HOUSED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators in Two-Part Telescoping Housing: <Insert drawing designation>.

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>

2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators.

    a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).
    b. Top housing with [attachment and leveling bolt] [threaded mounting holes and internal leveling device] [elastomeric pad].

2.7 RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint:

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>

2. Housing: Steel housing with vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed.

    a. Base with holes for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).
    b. Top plate with [threaded mounting holes] [elastomeric pad].
    c. Internal leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.

3. Restraint: Limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
5. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
6. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
7. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.8 HOUSED-RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Steel, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint in Two-Part Telescoping Housing: <Insert drawing designation>.

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>

2. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Housings are equipped with [adjustable] [non-adjustable] snubbers to limit vertical movement.

   a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).
   b. Threaded top housing with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.9 PIPE-RISER RESILIENT SUPPORT

A. All-Directional, Acoustical Pipe Anchor Consisting of Two Steel Tubes Separated by a Minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) Thick Neoprene:

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>

2. Vertical-Limit Stops: Steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions.
3. Maximum Load Per Support: 500 psig (3447 KPa) on isolation material providing equal isolation in all directions.

2.10 RESILIENT PIPE GUIDES

1. Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin to be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides to be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

2.11 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods: <Insert drawing designation>.

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>

2. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.

3. Damping Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

2.12 SPRING HANGERS

A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
8. Self-centering hanger-rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

2.13 SNUBBERS

A. Description: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.

1. Post-Installed Concrete Anchor Bolts: Secure to concrete surface with post-installed concrete anchors. Anchors to be seismically prequalified in accordance with ACI 355.2 testing and designated in accordance with [ACI 318-08 Appendix D for 2009 IBC] [ACI 318-11 Appendix D for 2012 IBC] [ACI 318-14 Ch. 17 for 2015 or 2018 IBC].
2. Preset Concrete Inserts: Seismically prequalified in accordance with ICC-ES AC446 testing.
3. Anchors in Masonry: Design in accordance with TMS 402.
4. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
5. Resilient Cushion: Maximum 1/4-inch (6-mm) air gap, and minimum 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.

2.14 RESTRAINTS - RIGID TYPE

A. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of AISI S110-07-S1 slotted steel channels, ANSI/ASTM A53/A53M steel pipe as per NFPA 13, or other rigid steel brace member. Includes accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building

structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

2.15 RESTRAINTS - CABLE TYPE

A. Seismic-Restraint Cables: [ASTM A1023/A1023M galvanized or ASTM A603 galvanized-steel] [ASTM A492 stainless steel] cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for seismic-restraining cable service; with fittings attached by means of poured socket, swaged socket or mechanical (Flemish eye) loop.

B. Restraint cable assembly with cable fittings must comply with ASCE/SEI 19. All cable fittings and complete cable assembly must maintain the minimum cable breaking force. U-shaped cable clips and wedge-type end fittings do not comply and are unacceptable.

2.16 RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

A. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: [Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections] [Reinforcing steel angle clamped] to hanger rod. Non-metallic stiffeners are unacceptable.

B. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to [rigid channel bracings] [and] [restraint cables].

C. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.

D. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.

E. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

2.17 POST-INSTALLED CONCRETE ANCHORS

A. Mechanical Anchor Bolts:

1. Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E488/E488M.

B. Provide post-installed concrete anchors that have been prequalified for use in wind-load applications. Post-installed concrete anchors must comply with all requirements of [ASCE/SEI 7-05, Ch. 13] [ASCE/SEI 7-10, Ch. 13] [ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 13].

1. Prequalify post-installed anchors in concrete in accordance with ACI 355.2 or other approved qualification testing procedures.
2. Prequalify post-installed anchors in masonry in accordance with approved qualification procedures.

C. Expansion-type anchor bolts are not permitted for equipment in excess of 10 hp (7.46 kW) that is not vibration isolated.

1. Undercut expansion anchors are permitted.

2.18 CONCRETE INSERTS

A. Provide preset concrete inserts that are seismically prequalified in accordance with ICC-ES AC466 testing.

B. Comply with ANSI/MSS SP-58.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by [an evaluation service member of ICC-ES] [OSHPD] [an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction].

B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.

C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry present and future static[, wind load,] and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF VIBRATION-CONTROL[, WIND-LOAD CONTROL,] AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

A. Provide vibration-control devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Vibration-Control Devices Schedules, where indicated on Drawings, or where Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems.

B. Provide seismic-restraint [and wind-load control]devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Seismic-Restraint Devices Schedules, where indicated on Drawings, where Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems, and where required by applicable codes.

C. Coordinate location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

D. Installation of vibration isolators[, wind-load restraints,] must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

E. Comply with requirements in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

F. Equipment Restraints:

1. Install seismic snubbers on HVAC equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
3. Install seismic-restraint[, and wind-load-restraint] devices using methods approved by [an evaluation service member of ICC-ES] [OSHPD] [an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction] that provides required submittals for component.

G. Piping Restraints:

1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
2. Space lateral supports a maximum of [40 feet (12 m)] <Insert dimension> o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of [80 feet (24 m)] <Insert dimension> o.c.
3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet (3.7 m).

H. Ductwork Restraints:

1. Install ducts with hangers and braces designed to support the duct and to restrain against seismic forces required by applicable building codes. Comply with [SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."] [SMACNA's "Seismic Restrain Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems - OSHPD Edition."] [ASCE/SEI 7.][See Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for Seismic Hazard Level (SHL).][See Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for "Connection Level" performance requirement for OSHPD jurisdictions.] <Insert requirement.>
2. Space lateral supports a maximum of [40 feet (12 m)] <Insert dimension> o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of [80 feet (24 m)] <Insert dimension> o.c.
3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet (3.7 m).
4. Select seismic-restraint devices with capacities adequate to carry static and seismic loads.
5. Install cable restraints on ducts that are suspended with vibration isolators.

I. Install seismic-[and wind-load-]restraint cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.

J. Install seismic-[and wind-load-]restraint devices using methods approved by [an evaluation service member of ICC-ES] [OSHPD] [an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction] that provides required submittals for component.

K. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.

L. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.

M. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

N. Mechanical Anchor Bolts:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge-Type Anchor Bolts: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors to be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.3 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

A. Provide flexible connections in piping systems where they cross structural seismic joints and other point where differential movement may occur. Provide adequate flexibility to accommodate differential movement as determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7. Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties" for piping flexible connections.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust isolators after system is at operating weight.

B. Adjust limit stops on restrained-spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: [Owner will engage] [Engage] a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform tests and inspections[with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative].
2. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
4. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
5. Test no fewer than [four] <Insert number> of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
6. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
7. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
8. Measure isolator deflection.
9. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
10. Test and adjust restrained-air-spring isolator controls and safeties.

C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

D. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 53 IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Firms regularly engaged in manufacturer of identification devices of types and sizes required, whose products have been in satisfactory use in similar service for not less than 5 years.

B. Codes and Standards:

1. ANSI Standards: Comply with ANSI A13.1 for lettering size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. See section 031000 – Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedure.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical product data and installation instructions for each identification material and device required.

C. Schedules: Submit valve schedule for each piping system, typewritten and reproduced on 8-1/2" x 11" bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on tag), location of valve (room or space), size of valve, and variations for identification (if any). Only tag valves which are intended for emergency shut-off and similar special uses, such as valve to isolate individual system risers, individual floor branches or building system shut off valves. In addition to mounted copies, furnish extra copies for Maintenance Manuals as specified in Division 23.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Mechanical Identification:

1. Allen Systems, Inc.
2. Brady (W.H.) Co.; Signmark Div.
3. Brimar Industries, Inc.
4. Industrial Safety Supply Co., Inc.
5. Seton Name Plate Corp.
6. PVC Specialties
7. Marking Systems, Inc. (MSI)

2.2 MECHANICAL IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard products of categories and types required for each application as referenced in other Division-23 sections. Where more than single type is specified

for application, selection is Installer's option, but provide single selection for each product category.

2.3 PAINTED IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Stencils: Standard fiberboard stencils, prepared for required applications with letter sizes generally complying with recommendations of ANSI A13.1 for piping or to match existing size in existing building, but not less than 1-1/4" high letters for ductwork and not less than 3/4" high letters for access door signs and similar operational instructions.

B. Stencil Paint: Standard exterior type stenciling enamel; black, except as otherwise indicated; either brushing grade or pressurized spray-can form and grade.

C. Identification Paint: Standard identification enamel of colors indicated or, if not otherwise indicated comply with ANSI A13.1 for colors or to match existing building standard identification.

2.4 PLASTIC PIPE MARKERS

A. Snap-On Type: Provide manufacturer's standard pre-printed, semi-rigid snap-on, color-coded pipe markers, complying with ANSI A13.1.

B. Insulation: Furnish 1 inch thick molded fiberglass insulation with jacket for each plastic pipe marker to be installed on uninsulated pipes subjected to fluid temperatures of 125 degrees F. (52 degrees C.) or greater. Cut length to extend 2inches beyond each end of plastic pipe marker.

C. Small Pipes: For external diameters less than 6 inches (including insulation if any), provide full-band pipe markers, extending 360 degrees around pipe at each location, fastened by one of the following methods:

1. Snap-on application of pre-tensioned semi-rigid plastic pipe marker.
2. Taped to pipe (or insulation) with color-coded plastic adhesive tape, not less than 3/4inch wide; full circle at both ends of pipe marker, tape lapped 1-1/2inch.

D. Large Pipes: For external diameters of 6inches and larger (including insulation if any), provide either full-band or strip-type pipe markers, but not narrower than 3 times letter height (and of required length), fastened by one of the following methods:

1. Steel spring or non-metallic fasteners.
2. Taped to pipe (or insulation) with color-coded plastic adhesive tape, not less than 1-1/2inches wide; full circle at both ends of pipe marker, tape lapped 3inches.
3. Strapped-to-pipe (or insulation) application of semi- rigid type, with manufacturer's standard stainless steel bands.

E. Lettering: Comply with piping system nomenclature as specified, scheduled, shown, or to match existing building lettering nomenclature system and abbreviate only as necessary for each application length.

F. Arrows: Print each pipe marker with arrows indicating direction of flow, either integrally with piping system service lettering (to accommodate both directions), or as separate unit of plastic.

2.5 PLASTIC DUCT MARKERS

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard laminated plastic, duct markers.

B. For hazardous exhausts, use colors and designs recommended by ANSI A13.1.

C. Nomenclature: Include the following:

1. Direction of air flow.

2. Duct service (supply, return, exhaust, etc.)

2.6 PLASTIC TAPE

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard color-coded pressure-sensitive (self-adhesive) vinyl tape, not less than 3 mils thick.

B. Width: Provide 1-1/2inches wide tape markers on pipes with outside diameters (including insulation, if any) of less than 6inches, 2-1/2inches wide tape for larger pipes.

C. Color: Comply with ANSI A13.1, except where another color selection is indicated.

2.7 UNDERGROUND-TYPE PLASTIC LINE MARKERS

A. General: Manufacturer's standard permanent, bright- colored, continuous-printed plastic tape, intended for direct-burial service; not less than 6 inches wide x 4 mils thick. Provide tape with printing which most accurately indicates type of service of buried pipe.

B. Provide multi-ply tape consisting of solid aluminum foil core between 2-layers of plastic tape.

2.8 VALVE TAGS

A. Brass Valve Tags: Provide 19-gage polished brass valve tags with stamp-engraved piping system abbreviation in 1/4inch high letters and sequenced valve numbers 1/2inch high, and with 5/32inch hole for fastener.

1. Provide 1-1/2inch diameter tags, except as otherwise indicated.

2. Fill tag engraving with black enamel.

B. Valve Tag Fasteners: Provide manufacturer's standard solid brass chain (wire link or beaded type), and solid brass S- hooks of the sizes required for proper attachment of tags to valves, and manufactured specifically for that purpose.

C. Access Panel Markers: Provide manufacturer's standard 1/16 inch thick engraved plastic laminate access panel markers, with abbreviations and numbers corresponding to concealed valve. Include 1/8 inch center hole to allow attachment.

2.9 VALVE SCHEDULE FRAMES

A. General: For each page of valve schedule, provide glazed display frame, with screws for removable mounting on masonry walls. Provide frames of finished hardwood or extruded aluminum, with non-glare type sheet glass.

2.10 ENGRAVED PLASTIC-LAMINATE SIGNS

A. General: Provide engraving stock melamine plastic laminate, complying with FS L-P-387, in the sizes and thicknesses indicated, engraved with engraver's standard letter style of the sizes and wording indicated, black with white core (letter color) except as otherwise indicated, punched for mechanical fastening except where adhesive mounting is necessary because of substrate.

B. Thickness: 1/16 inch, except as otherwise indicated.

C. Fasteners: Self-tapping stainless steel screws, except contact-type permanent adhesive where screws cannot or should not penetrate the substrate.

2.11 PLASTICIZED TAGS

A. General: Manufacturer's standard pre-printed or partially pre-printed accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matt finish suitable for writing, approximately 3-1/4inch x 5-5/8 inch, with brass grommets and wire fasteners, and with appropriate pre-printed wording including large- size primary wording (as examples; DANGER, CAUTION, DO NOT OPERATE).

2.12 LETTERING AND GRAPHICS

A. General: Coordinate names, abbreviations and other designations used in mechanical identification work, with corresponding designations shown, specified, scheduled and approved by the Owner/Engineer. Provide numbers, lettering and wording as indicated and approved by the Owner/Engineer for proper identification and operation/ maintenance of mechanical systems and equipment.

B. Multiple Systems: Where multiple systems of same generic name are shown and specified, provide identification which indicates individual system number as designated on the drawings or schedule as well as service.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordination: Where identification is to be applied to surfaces which require insulation, painting or other covering or finish including valve tags in finished mechanical spaces, install identification after completion of covering and painting. Install identification prior to installation of acoustical ceilings and similar removable concealment.

3.2 DUCTWORK IDENTIFICATION

A. General: Identify air supply, return, exhaust, intake and relief ductwork and duct access doors with duct markers; or provide stenciled signs and arrows, showing ductwork service and direction of flow, in black or white (whichever provides most contrast with ductwork color). Existing building identification shall match the existing method which exists in the building.

B. Location: In each space where ductwork is exposed, or concealed only by removable ceiling system, locate signs near points where ductwork originates or continues into concealed enclosures (shaft, underground or similar concealment), and at 50 foot spacing along exposed runs.

C. Access Doors: Provide duct markers or stenciled signs on each access door in ductwork and housings, indicating purpose of access (to what equipment), other maintenance and operating instructions, and appropriate safety and procedural information.

D. Concealed Doors: Where access doors are concealed above acoustical ceilings or similar concealment, plasticized tags may be installed for identification in lieu of specified signs, at Installer's option.

3.3 PIPING SYSTEM IDENTIFICATION

A. General: Install pipe markers of the following type on each system indicated to receive identification, and include arrows to show normal direction of flow. Existing building identification shall match the existing method which exists in the building.

B. Plastic pipe markers, with application system as indicated under "Materials" in this section.

Install on pipe insulation segment where required for hot non- insulated pipes.

C. Locate pipe markers and color bands as follows wherever piping is exposed to view in occupied spaces, machine rooms, accessible maintenance spaces (shafts, tunnels, plenums) and exterior non-concealed locations.

D. Near each valve and control device.

E. Near each branch, excluding short take-offs for fixtures and terminal units; mark each pipe at branch, where there could be question of flow pattern.

F. Near locations where pipes pass through walls or floors/ceilings, or enter non-accessible enclosures.

G. At access doors, manholes and similar access points which permit view of concealed piping.

H. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.

I. Spaced intermediately at maximum spacing of 25 feet along each piping run, except reduce spacing to 15' in congested areas of piping and equipment.

J. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings.

3.4 UNDERGROUND PIPING IDENTIFICATION

A. General: During back-filling/top-soiling of each exterior underground piping systems, install continuous underground- type plastic line marker, located directly over buried line at 6 inches to 8 inches below finished grade. Where multiple small lines are buried in common trench and do not exceed overall width of 16 inches, install single line marker. For tile fields and similar installations, mark only edge pipe lines of field.

3.5 VALVE IDENTIFICATION

A. General: Provide valve tag on valves in each piping system. List each tagged valve in valve schedule for each piping system.

1. Building services main shut-off valves.
2. Each individual system main shut-off valves.
3. Each individual system riser shut-off valves.
4. Each individual system floor shut-off valves.
5. Each individual system major branch shut-off valves.

B. Mount valve schedule frames and schedules in mechanical equipment rooms where directed by Architect/Owner/Engineer.

C. Where more than one major mechanical equipment room is shown for project, install mounted valve schedule in each major mechanical equipment room, and repeat only main valves which are to be operated in conjunction with operations of more than single mechanical equipment room.

3.6 MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

A. General: Install minimum 2 inch x 4 inch engraved plastic laminate equipment marker on each individual items of mechanical equipment. Provide marker for the following general categories of equipment.

1. Main building systems control and operating valves, including safety devices and hazardous units such as gas outlets.
2. Room thermostats, except gun tag labels are acceptable for room thermostats.
3. Fuel-burning units including boilers, furnaces, heaters, stills and absorption chillers.
4. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers and similar motor-driven units.
5. Heat exchangers, cooling towers, heat recovery units and similar equipment.
6. Fans and blowers.
7. Air terminal units.
8. Tanks and pressure vessels.
9. Water treatment systems and similar equipment.

B. Lettering Size: Minimum 1/4 inch high lettering for name of unit.

C. Text of Signs: In addition to the identified unit, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations.

3.7 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Adjusting: Relocate any mechanical identification device which has become visually blocked by work of this division or other divisions.

B. Cleaning: Clean face of identification devices, and glass frames of valve charts.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 93 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Air Systems:

    a. Constant-volume air systems.
    b. Variable-air-volume systems.

2. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Hydronic Piping Systems:

    a. Constant-flow hydronic systems.
    b. Variable-flow hydronic systems.

3. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of fuel oil systems for HVAC.
4. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of equipment.
5. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of existing HVAC systems and equipment.
6. Procedures for exhaust hoods.
7. Duct leakage tests verification.
8. Pipe leakage tests verification.
9. UFAD plenum leakage tests verification.
10. HVAC-control system verification.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.

B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.

C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.

E. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.

F. TDH: Total dynamic head.

G. UFAD: Underfloor air distribution.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. <Double click to insert sustainable design text for air balancing or HVAC flushing.>

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: Within [30] [60] [90] <Insert number> days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within [30] [60] [90] <Insert number> days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report, as specified in Part 3.

C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within [30] [60] [90] <Insert number> days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures, as specified in "Preparation" Article.

D. System Readiness Checklists: Within [30] [60] [90] <Insert number> days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists, as specified in "Preparation" Article.

E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.

F. Certified TAB reports.

G. Sample report forms.

H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:

1. Instrument type and make.
2. Serial number.
3. Application.
4. Dates of use.
5. Dates of calibration.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by AABC:

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.

B. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by [NEBB] [or] [TABB]:

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by [NEBB] [or] [TABB].

2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by [NEBB] [or] [TABB].

C. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."

D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

E. Code and AHJ Compliance: TAB is required to comply with governing codes and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gauge cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.

C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.

D. Examine design data, including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.

E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for HVAC to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas and sealed.

F. Examine equipment performance data, including fan and pump curves.

1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.

G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.

H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.

I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.

J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.

K. Examine temporary and permanent strainers. Verify that temporary strainer screens used during system cleaning and flushing have been removed and permanent strainer baskets are installed and clean.

L. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of isolating, throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.

M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.

N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.

O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.

P. Examine control dampers for proper installation for their intended function of isolating, throttling, diverting, or mixing air flows.

Q. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:

1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
3. Instrumentation to be used.
4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.

B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:

1. Airside:

a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
d. Clean filters are installed.
e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
h. Ceilings are installed.
i. Windows and doors are installed.
j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

2. Hydronics:

a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
b. Piping is complete with terminals installed.
c. Water treatment is complete.
d. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
e. Strainers are pulled and cleaned.
f. Control valves are functioning in accordance with the sequence of operation.
g. Shutoff and balance valves have been verified to be 100 percent open.
h. Pumps are started and proper rotation is verified.
i. Pump gauge connections are installed directly at pump inlet and outlet flanges or in discharge and suction pipe prior to valves or strainers.
j. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
k. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system in accordance with the procedures contained in [AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance"] [ASHRAE 111] [NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems"] and in this Section.

B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment casings for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.

1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
3. Where holes for probes are required in piping or hydronic equipment, install pressure and temperature test plugs to seal systems.

4. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish in accordance with Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.

D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in [inch-pound (IP)] [and] [metric (SI)] units.

3.4 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC EQUIPMENT

A. Test, adjust, and balance HVAC equipment indicated on Drawings, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Motors.
2. Pumps.
3. Fans and ventilators.
4. Air curtains.
5. Terminal units.
6. Commercial kitchen hoods.
7. Hot-water boilers.
8. Furnaces.
9. Radiant heaters.
10. Unit heaters.
11. Solar collectors.
12. Water-to-water heat exchangers.
13. Condensing units.
14. Condensers.
15. Water chillers.
16. Cooling towers.
17. Energy-recovery units.
18. Air-handling units.
19. Heating and ventilating units.
20. Rooftop air-conditioning units.
21. Heating-only makeup air units.
22. Dedicated outdoor-air units.
23. Packaged air conditioners.
24. Self-contained air conditioners.
25. Computer-room air conditioners.
26. Split-system air conditioners.
27. Variable-refrigerant-flow systems.
28. Heat pumps.
29. Valance heating and cooling units.
30. Chilled beams.
31. Coils.
32. Fan coil units.

33. Unit ventilators.
34. Radiators.
35. Convectors.
36. Finned-tube radiation heaters.
37. Radiant-heating [cables] [piping] [and] [panels].
38. Humidifiers.
39. Dehumidification units.
40. <Insert equipment>.

3.5 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' Record drawings duct layouts.

C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.

D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.

E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.

F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.

G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.

H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.

I. Check for airflow blockages.

J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.

K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

1. Measure total airflow.

a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by main Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses close to the fan and prior to any outlets, to obtain total airflow.

c. Where duct conditions are unsuitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.

2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:

a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.

3. Review Contractor-prepared shop drawings and Record drawings to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
4. Obtain approval from [Architect] [Owner] [Construction Manager] [Commissioning Authority] for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.

1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.

C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.

1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.

D. Verify final system conditions.

1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, speed, volts, amps, and static profile.
4. Mark all final settings.
5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
6. Measure and record all operating data.
7. Record final fan-performance data.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:

1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge.
2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:

    a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
    b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.
    c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
    d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.
    e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
    f. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.

5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

    a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity, adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow, so that connected total matches fan selection and simulates actual load in the building.
    c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by main Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses close to the fan and prior to any outlets, to obtain total airflow.
    d. Where duct conditions are unsuitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.

6. Measure fan static pressures as follows:

    a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.

c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.

7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.

a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets.
b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.

8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit, and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls Contractor.
9. Verify final system conditions as follows:

a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
c. Re-measure final fan operating data, speed, volts, amps, and static profile.
d. Mark final settings.
e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

3.8 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports for pumps, coils, and other equipment. Obtain approved submittals and manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required coil and equipment flow rates with pump design flow rate.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' Record drawings piping layouts.

C. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing as follows:

1. Check expansion tank for proper setting.
2. Check highest vent for adequate pressure.
3. Check flow-control valves for proper position.
4. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor controllers.
5. Verify that motor controllers are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
6. Check that air has been purged from the system.

D. Measure and record upstream and downstream pressure of each piece of equipment.

E. Measure and record upstream and downstream pressure of pressure-reducing valves.

F. Check settings and operation of automatic temperature-control valves, self-contained control valves, and pressure-reducing valves. Record final settings.

1. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Adjust pumps to deliver total design flow.

1. Measure total water flow.

a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or known equipment pressure drop.

2. Measure pump TDH as follows:

a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gauge heights.
d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved. If excessive throttling is required to achieve desired flow, recommend pump impellers be trimmed to reduce excess throttling.

3. Monitor motor performance during procedures, and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.

B. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.

1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.

C. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.

1. Measure flow at terminals.
2. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
3. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
4. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
5. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.

D. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:

1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.

E. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:

1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.

F. Verify final system conditions as follows:

1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
3. Mark final settings.

G. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals, and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

B. Adjust the variable-flow hydronic system as follows:

1. Verify that the pressure-differential sensor(s) is located as indicated.
2. Determine whether there is diversity in the system.

C. For systems with no flow diversity:

1. Adjust pumps to deliver total design flow.

a. Measure total water flow.

1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or known equipment pressure drop.

b. Measure pump TDH as follows:

1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gauge heights.
4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve or speed until design water flow is achieved. If excessive throttling is required to achieve desired flow, recommend pump impellers be trimmed to reduce excess throttling.

c. Monitor motor performance during procedures, and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.

2. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.

a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.

3. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.

a. Measure flow at terminals.
b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
d. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.

4. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:

a. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.

5. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:

a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.

6. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine the system pressure-differential set point(s).
7. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion, open discharge valve 100 percent, and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
8. Mark final settings and verify that all memory stops have been set.
9. Verify final system conditions as follows:

a. Re-measure and confirm that total flow is within design.
b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, speed, and static profile.
c. Mark final settings.

D. For systems with flow diversity:

1. Determine diversity factor.
2. Simulate system diversity by closing required number of control valves, as approved by Architect.

3. Adjust pumps to deliver total design flow.

    a. Measure total water flow.

        1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
        2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
        3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or known equipment pressure drop.

    b. Measure pump TDH as follows:

        1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
        2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
        3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gauge heights.
        4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
        5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve or speed until design water flow is achieved. If excessive throttling is required to achieve desired flow, recommend pump impellers be trimmed to reduce excess throttling.

    c. Monitor motor performance during procedures, and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.

4. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.

    a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
    b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
    c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.

5. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.

    a. Measure flow at terminals.
    b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
    c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
    d. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
    e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.

6. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:

    a. Measure differential pressure, and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
    b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.

7. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:

a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.

8. Open control valves that were shut. Close a sufficient number of control valves that were previously open to maintain diversity, and balance terminals that were just opened.
9. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine system pressure-differential set point(s).
10. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion, open discharge valve 100 percent, and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
11. Mark final settings and verify that memory stops have been set.
12. Verify final system conditions as follows:

a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, speed, and static profile.
c. Mark final settings.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR WATER-TO-WATER HEAT EXCHANGERS

A. Adjust and record water flow to within specified tolerances.

B. Measure and record inlet and outlet water temperatures.

C. Measure and record pressure drop.

D. Check and record settings and operation of safety and relief valves.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

A. Motors [1/2] <Insert value> HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
2. Motor horsepower rating.
3. Motor rpm.
4. Phase and hertz.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
8. Service factor and frame size.

B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

3.13 PROCEDURES FOR WATER CHILLERS

A. Air-Cooled Chillers: Balance water flow through each evaporator to within specified tolerances of indicated flow, with all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple-chiller installation, do not exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:

1. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
2. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments furnished by chiller manufacturer.
3. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
4. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
5. Capacity: Calculate in [tons] [kilowatts] <Insert units> of cooling.
6. Efficiency: Calculate operating efficiency for comparison to submitted equipment.
7. Verify condenser-fan rotation and record fan and motor data, including number of fans and entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

B. Water-Cooled Chillers: Balance water flow through each evaporator and condenser to within specified tolerances of indicated flow, with all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple-chiller installation, do not exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:

1. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
2. Condenser-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
3. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments furnished by chiller manufacturer.
4. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
5. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
6. Capacity: Calculate in [tons] [kilowatts] <Insert units> of cooling.
7. Efficiency: Calculate operating efficiency for comparison to submitted equipment.

3.14 PROCEDURES FOR COOLING TOWERS

A. Performance Testing: Comply with [CTI ATC-105] [Cooling tower "AABC Performance Test" in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance"] <Insert test procedure>.

B. Closed-Circuit Cooling Towers: Balance total condenser-water flows to towers and cells. Measure and record the following data:

1. Condenser-water flow to each cell of the cooling tower.
2. Pressure drop through each cell.
3. Entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
4. Wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of entering air.
5. Wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of leaving air.
6. Barometric pressure, wind speed, and wind direction.
7. Condenser-water flow rate recirculating through the cooling tower.
8. Cooling-tower spray pump discharge pressure.

9. Condenser-water flow through bypass.
10. Makeup-water flow rate.
11. Makeup water temperature.
12. Fan, motor, and motor controller operating data.
13. Cooling-tower spray pump and motor operating data.
14. Heater operating data.

C. Open-Circuit Cooling Towers: Balance total condenser-water flows to towers and cells. Measure and record the following data:

1. Condenser-water flow to each cell of the cooling tower.
2. Pressure at each inlet connection.
3. Entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
4. Range.
5. Makeup-water flow rate.
6. Makeup water temperature.
7. Wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of entering air.
8. Wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of leaving air.
9. Approach.
10. Barometric pressure, wind speed, and wind direction.
11. Fan, motor, and motor controller operating data.
12. Heater operating data.

3.15 PROCEDURES FOR AIR-COOLED CONDENSING UNITS

A. Verify proper rotation of fan(s).

B. Measure and record entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

C. Measure and record entering and leaving refrigerant pressures.

D. Measure and record operating data of compressor(s), fan(s), and motors.

3.16 PROCEDURES FOR AIR-COOLED CONDENSERS

A. Verify proper rotation of fan(s).

B. Measure and record entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

C. Measure and record entering and leaving refrigerant pressures.

D. Measure and record operating data of fan(s) and motor(s).

3.17 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

A. Hydronic Boilers:

1. Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures.

2. Measure and record water flow.
3. Measure and record pressure drop.
4. [Measure and]Record relief valve(s) pressure setting.
5. Capacity: Calculate in Btu/h (kW) of heating output.
6. Fuel Consumption: If boiler fuel supply is equipped with flow meter, measure and record consumption.
7. Efficiency: Calculate operating efficiency for comparison to submitted equipment.
8. Fan, motor, and motor controller operating data.

3.18 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each hydronic coil:

1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
2. Water flow rate.
3. Water pressure drop.
4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
6. Airflow.
7. Air pressure drop.

B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:

1. Nameplate data.
2. Airflow.
3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
4. Air pressure drop.
5. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
6. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
7. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Airflow.
3. Inlet steam pressure.

D. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Airflow.
4. Air pressure drop.
5. Entering and leaving refrigerant pressure and temperatures.

3.19 PROCEDURES FOR EXHAUST HOODS

A. Room Pressure: Measure and record room pressure with respect to atmosphere and adjacent space with hoods in room initially not operating and then with hoods operating.

B. Makeup Air: Systems supplying source of makeup air to hoods shall be in operation during testing and balancing of exhaust hoods.

1. Measure and record temperature of makeup air entering hood. If hood makeup air is from multiple sources having different temperatures, measure and record the airflow and temperatures of each source and calculate the weighted average temperature.
2. Use simulated smoke to observe supply air-distribution air patterns in vicinity of hoods. Consult with hood manufacturer and report conditions that have a detrimental effect on intended capture, containment, and other attributes effecting proper operation.

C. Rooms with Multiple Hoods: Test each hood separately, one at a time, and repeat tests with all hoods intended to operate simultaneously by design.

D. Canopy Hoods: Measure and record the following:

1. Pressure drop across hood.
2. Airflow by duct traverse where duct distribution will allow accurate measurement, and calculate hood average face velocity.
3. Measure velocity across hood face and calculate hood airflow.

    a. Clearly indicate the direction of flow at each point of measurement.
    b. Measure velocity across opening on not less than [12-inch (300-mm)] <Insert dimension> centers. Record velocity at each measurement, and calculate average velocity.

4. Capture and Containment: Check each hood for proper capture and containment using a smoke-emitting device. Observe and report performance. Make adjustments to achieve optimum results.

E. Laboratory Fume Hoods: Measure and record the following:

1. Pressure drop across hood.
2. Airflow by duct traverse where duct distribution will allow accurate measurement, and calculate hood average face velocity. If hood is connected to exhaust duct distribution through an exhaust device with integral airflow measurement, that reading may be used in lieu of a duct traverse.
3. Face velocity across open hood face and calculate hood airflow.

    a. Clearly indicate the direction of flow at each point of measurement.
    b. Measure velocity across opening on not less than [6-inch (150-mm)] <Insert dimension> centers. Record velocity at each measurement, and calculate average velocity.

4. Capture and Containment: Check each hood for proper capture and containment using a smoke-emitting device. Observe and report performance. Make adjustments to achieve optimum results.
5. ASHRAE 110 Testing: With room and laboratory fume hood operating at design conditions, perform an "as-installed" performance test of the laboratory fume hood in accordance with ASHRAE 110. Test [each] [indicate extent] laboratory fume hood and document the test results.

F. Kitchen Hoods:

1. Type 1: Measure and record pressure drop and face velocity of hood filters and slots in accordance with hood manufacturer's instructions. Consult hood manufacturer to determine hood airflow using recorded information.
2. Type 2: Measure and record airflow by duct traverse.
3. Capture and Containment: Check each hood for proper capture and containment using a smoke-emitting device. Observe and report performance. Make adjustments to achieve optimum results.

G. AHJ Tests: Conduct additional tests required by authorities having jurisdiction.

3.20 DUCT LEAKAGE TESTS

A. Witness the duct leakage testing performed by Installer.

B. Verify that proper test methods are used and that leakage rates are within specified limits.

C. Report deficiencies observed.

3.21 PIPE LEAKAGE TESTS

A. Witness the pipe pressure testing performed by Installer.

B. Verify that proper test methods are used and that leakage rates are within specified limits.

C. Report deficiencies observed.

3.22 UFAD PLENUM LEAKAGE TESTS

A. Witness the UFAD plenum pressure testing performed by Installer.

B. Verify that proper test methods are used and that leakage rates are within specified limits.

C. Report deficiencies observed.

3.23 HVAC CONTROLS VERIFICATION

A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:

1. Verify HVAC control system is operating within the design limitations.
2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.

B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

3.24 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.

1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan and equipment with fan(s).
2. Measure and record flows, temperatures, and pressures of each piece of equipment in each hydronic system. Compare the values to design or nameplate information, where information is available.
3. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
4. Check the refrigerant charge.
5. Check the condition of filters.
6. Check the condition of coils.
7. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
8. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
9. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.

B. TAB After Construction: Before performing testing and balancing of renovated existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished in accordance with renovation scope indicated by Contract Documents. Verify the following:

1. New filters are installed.
2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
3. Drain pans are clean.
4. Fans are clean.
5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.

C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.

1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
3. If calculations increase or decrease the airflow rates and water flow rates by more than [5] <Insert number> percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is [5] <Insert number> percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
4. Balance each air outlet.

3.25 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: [Plus or minus 10 percent] [Plus 10 percent or minus 5 percent] <Insert value>. If design value is less than 100 cfm (47 L/s), within 10 cfm (4.7 L/s).
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: [Plus or minus 10 percent] [Plus 10 percent or minus 5 percent] <Insert value>. If design value is less than 100 cfm (47 L/s), within 10 cfm (4.7 L/s).
3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: [Plus or minus 5 percent] [Plus or minus 10 percent] [Plus 10 percent or minus 5 percent] <Insert value>. If design value is less than 10 gpm (0.63 L/s), within 10 percent.
4. Chilled-Water Flow Rate: [Plus or minus 5 percent] [Plus or minus 10 percent] [Plus 10 percent or minus 5 percent] <Insert value>. If design value is less than 10 gpm (0.63 L/s), within 10 percent.
5. Condenser-Water Flow Rate: [Plus or minus 5 percent] [Plus or minus 10 percent] [Plus 10 percent or minus 5 percent] <Insert value>.

B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.26 PROGRESS REPORTING

A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for system-balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to system-balancing devices, to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance-measuring and -balancing devices.

B. Status Reports: Prepare [weekly] [biweekly] [monthly] <Insert time interval> progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.27 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.

B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

1. Pump curves.
2. Fan curves.
3. Manufacturers' test data.
4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.

C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
11. Summary of contents, including the following:

    a. Indicated versus final performance.
    b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.

12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
15. Test conditions for fans performance forms, including the following:

    a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    b. Conditions of filters.
    c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    d. Heating coil, dry-bulb conditions.
    e. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    f. Fan drive settings, including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.

g. [Variable-frequency controller] [Inlet vane] settings for variable-air-volume systems.
h. Settings for pressure controller(s).
i. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

16. Test conditions for pump performance forms, including the following:

a. Variable-frequency controller settings for variable-flow hydronic systems.
b. Settings for pressure controller(s).
c. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:

1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Water and steam flow rates.
3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
5. Terminal units.
6. Balancing stations.
7. Position of balancing devices.

E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. Unit identification.
b. Location.
c. Make and type.
d. Model number and unit size.
e. Manufacturer's serial number.
f. Unit arrangement and class.
g. Discharge arrangement.
h. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
j. Number, make, and size of belts.
k. Number, type, and size of filters.

2. Motor Data:

a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
b. Horsepower and speed.
c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).

b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
c. Fan speed.
d. Inlet and discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
e. For each filter bank, filter static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
i. List for each internal component with pressure-drop, static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
j. Outdoor airflow in cfm (L/s).
k. Return airflow in cfm (L/s).
l. Outdoor-air damper position.
m. Return-air damper position.
n. [Vortex damper position].

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Coil type.
d. Number of rows.
e. Fin spacing in fins per inch (mm) o.c.
f. Make and model number.
g. Face area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
h. Tube size in NPS (DN).
i. Tube and fin materials.
j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
b. Average face velocity in fpm (m/s).
c. Air pressure drop in inches wg (Pa).
d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
h. Water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).
j. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig (kPa).
n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F (deg C).
o. Inlet steam pressure in psig (kPa).

G. Gas- and Oil-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

    a. System identification.
    b. Location.
    c. Make and type.
    d. Model number and unit size.
    e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    f. Fuel type in input data.
    g. Output capacity in Btu/h (kW).
    h. Ignition type.
    i. Burner-control types.
    j. Motor horsepower and speed.
    k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
    l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
    m. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
    n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
    b. Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
    c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
    d. Air temperature differential in deg F (deg C).
    e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
    f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
    g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
    h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h (kW).
    i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h (kW).
    j. Manifold pressure in psig (kPa).
    k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F (deg C).
    l. Operating set point in Btu/h (kW).
    m. Motor voltage at each connection.
    n. Motor amperage for each phase.
    o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h (kW).

H. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

    a. System identification.
    b. Location.
    c. Coil identification.
    d. Capacity in Btu/h (kW).
    e. Number of stages.
    f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
    g. Rated amperage.
    h. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
    i. Face area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
    j. Minimum face velocity in fpm (m/s).

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Heat output in Btu/h (kW).
    b. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
    c. Air velocity in fpm (m/s).
    d. Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
    e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
    f. Voltage at each connection.
    g. Amperage for each phase.

I. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:

    a. System identification.
    b. Location.
    c. Make and type.
    d. Model number and size.
    e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    f. Arrangement and class.
    g. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
    h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).

2. Motor Data:

    a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    b. Horsepower and speed.
    c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
    f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
    g. Number, make, and size of belts.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
    b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
    c. Fan speed.
    d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
    e. Suction static pressure in inches wg (Pa).

J. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:

1. Report Data:

    a. System fan and air-handling-unit number.
    b. Location and zone.
    c. Traverse air temperature in deg F (deg C).
    d. Duct static pressure in inches wg (Pa).

e. Duct size in inches (mm).
f. Duct area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
h. Indicated velocity in fpm (m/s).
i. Actual airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
j. Actual average velocity in fpm (m/s).
k. Barometric pressure in psig (Pa).

K. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:

a. System and air-handling unit identification.
b. Location and zone.
c. Apparatus used for test.
d. Area served.
e. Make.
f. Number from system diagram.
g. Type and model number.
h. Size.
i. Effective area in sq. ft. (sq. m).

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
b. Air velocity in fpm (m/s).
c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm (L/s).
d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm (m/s).
e. Final airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
f. Final velocity in fpm (m/s).
g. Space temperature in deg F (deg C).

L. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
b. Location and zone.
c. Room or riser served.
d. Coil make and size.
e. Flowmeter type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
b. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig (kPa).
e. Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).

M. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves, and include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. Unit identification.
b. Location.
c. Service.
d. Make and size.
e. Model number and serial number.
f. Water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).
h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig (kPa).
i. Pump speed.
j. Impeller diameter in inches (mm).
k. Motor make and frame size.
l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
m. Voltage at each connection.
n. Amperage for each phase.
o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
p. Seal type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Static head in feet of head or psig (kPa).
b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
c. Actual impeller size in inches (mm).
d. Full-open flow rate in gpm (L/s).
e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
i. Final water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
j. Voltage at each connection.
k. Amperage for each phase.

N. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

a. Instrument type and make.
b. Serial number.
c. Application.
d. Dates of use.
e. Dates of calibration.

3.28 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of [Architect] [Owner] [Construction Manager] [Commissioning Authority].

B. [Architect] [Owner] [Construction Manager] [Commissioning Authority] shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to the lesser of either [10] <Insert number> percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in [a normal 8-hour business day] <Insert value>.

C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."

D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than [10] [20] <Insert number> percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the TAB shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.

E. If recheck measurements find the number of failed measurements noncompliant with requirements indicated, proceed as follows:

1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection. All changes shall be tracked to show changes made to previous report.
2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may pursue others Contract options to complete TAB work.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.29 ADDITIONAL TESTS

A. Within [90] <Insert number> days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 07 13 - DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
5. Indoor, concealed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
6. Indoor, exposed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
7. Indoor, concealed oven and warewash exhaust.
8. Indoor, exposed oven and warewash exhaust.
9. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
10. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
11. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
12. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
2. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
3. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. <Double click to insert sustainable design text for recycled content.>
2. <Double click to insert sustainable design text for adhesives.>
3. <Double click to insert sustainable design text for coatings.>
4. <Double click to insert sustainable design text for sealants.>

C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.

3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation, jacket materials, adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. [All Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.]
2. [All Insulation Installed Indoors; Outdoors-Installed Insulation in Contact with Airstream: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.]
3. [All Insulation Installed Indoors and Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.]

2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials are applied.

B. Products do not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel are qualified as acceptable in accordance with ASTM C795.

E. Foam insulation materials do not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Glass-Fiber Blanket: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 450 deg F (232 deg C) in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C553, Type II, and ASTM C1290, [Type I, unfaced] [Type II with factory-applied vinyl jacket] [Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket] [Type III with factory-applied FSP jacket]. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

G. High-Temperature, Glass-Fiber Blanket: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin, unfaced; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 1000 deg F (650 deg C). Comply with ASTM C553, Type V.

H. Mineral Wool Blanket: Basalt volcanic rock-derived fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin, unfaced; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 1200 deg F (650 deg C) in accordance with ASTM C447. Comply with ASTM C553.

I. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature between 35 deg F (1.7 deg C) and 250 deg F (121 deg C) for jacketed and between 35 deg F (1.7 deg C) and 450 deg F (232 deg C) for unfaced in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation [unfaced] [with factory-applied ASJ] [with factory-applied FSK jacket]. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

J. High-Temperature, Glass-Fiber Board: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 1000 deg F (650 deg C) in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C612, Type III, unfaced.

K. Mineral Wool Board: Basalt volcanic rock-derived fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 1100 deg F (600 deg C) in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C612, Type III, unfaced.

2.3 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

A. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a [1] [2]-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 ADHESIVES

A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Glass-Fiber and Mineral Wool Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

D. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

2.5 MASTICS AND COATINGS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Water Based, Interior Use: Suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
3. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements[, with supplier listing on DOD QPD - Qualified Products Database].
4. Color: [White] <Insert color>.

C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96/E96M, greater than 1.0 perm (0.66 metric perm) at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
3. Color: [White] <Insert color>.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
4. Color: Aluminum.

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
4. Color: White.

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms (0.86 metric perm) when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
6. ASJ+: All-service jacket composed of aluminum foil reinforced with glass scrim bonded to a kraft paper interleaving with an outer film leaving no paper exposed; complying with ASTM C1136, Types I, II, III, IV, and VII
7. PSK Jacket: Aluminum foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
   1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
   2. Color: [White] [Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect].

D. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
   1. [Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing] [Factory cut and rolled to size].
   2. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
   3. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: [1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper] [3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper] [3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick polysurlyn].
   4. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: [3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper] [3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick polysurlyn].

E. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket (Asphaltic): 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with [white] [stucco-embossed] aluminum-foil facing.

F. Self-Adhesive Indoor/Outdoor Jacket (Non-Asphaltic): Vapor barrier and waterproofing jacket for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors or indoors. Specialized jacket has five layers of laminated aluminum and polyester film with low-temperature acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive. Outer aluminum surface is coated with UV-resistant coating for protection from environmental contaminants.
   1. Permeance: 0.00 perm as tested in accordance with ASTM F1249.
   2. Flamespread/Smoke Developed: 25/50 as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
   3. Aluminum Finish: [Embossed] [Smooth].

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Polyester Mesh: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. (34 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm), in a Leno weave, for ducts.

2.10 TAPES

Product performance is based on products manufactured by Venture Tape; there are slight variations among manufacturers.

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.

1. Width: [3 inches (75 mm)] <Insert value>.
2. Thickness: [11.5 mils (0.29 mm)] <Insert value>.
3. Adhesion: [90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm)] <Insert value> in width.
4. Elongation: [2] <Insert value> percent.
5. Tensile Strength: [40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm)] <Insert value> in width.
6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
1. Width: [3 inches (75 mm)] <Insert value>.
2. Thickness: [6.5 mils (0.16 mm)] <Insert value>.
3. Adhesion: [90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm)] <Insert value> in width.
4. Elongation: [2] <Insert number> percent.
5. Tensile Strength: [40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm)] <Insert value> in width.
6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Width: [2 inches (50 mm)] <Insert value>.
2. Thickness: [6 mils (0.15 mm)] <Insert value>.
3. Adhesion: [64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm)] <Insert value> in width.
4. Elongation: [500] <Insert number> percent.
5. Tensile Strength: [18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm)] <Insert value> in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Width: [2 inches (50 mm)] <Insert value>.
2. Thickness: [3.7 mils (0.093 mm)] <Insert value>.
3. Adhesion: [100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm)] <Insert value> in width.
4. Elongation: [5] <Insert number> percent.
5. Tensile Strength: [34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm)] <Insert value> in width.

2.11 SECUREMENTS

A. Aluminum Bands: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, [1/2 inch (13 mm)] [3/4 inch (19 mm)] wide with [wing seal] [or] [closed seal].

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
   a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
   b. Spindle: [Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel] [Aluminum] [Stainless steel], fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

2. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
   a. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
   b. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches (63 mm).
   c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

3. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
   a. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
   b. Spindle: [Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel] [Aluminum] [Stainless steel], fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
   c. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.

4. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick, [galvanized-steel] [aluminum] [stainless steel] sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
   a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

5. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.

In paragraph below, stainless steel is the most common wire used and is best suited for all applications.

D. Wire: [0.080-inch (2.0-mm) nickel-copper alloy] [0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel] [0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, galvanized steel].

2.12 CORNER ANGLES

A. PVC Corner Angles: [30 mils (0.8 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), PVC in accordance with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.

B. Aluminum Corner Angles: [0.040 inch (1.0 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), aluminum in accordance with ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.

B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, compress, or otherwise damage insulation or jacket.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet during storage or in the installation process before being properly covered and sealed in accordance with the Contract Documents[, unless otherwise approved by the engineer of record].

G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.

2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth, but not to the extent of creating wrinkles or areas of compression in the insulation.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at [2 inches (50 mm)] [4 inches (100 mm)] o.c.

    a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.

L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation.

M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.3 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.

4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).

1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF GLASS-FIBER AND MINERAL-WOOL INSULATION

A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

B. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for [100] [50] <Insert number> percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.

b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), place pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

   a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
   b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).

5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches (450 mm) o.c.
6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

C. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for [100] [50] <Insert number> percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

   a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.

b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), space pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

   a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
   b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).

5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

3.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

3.6 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions.

B. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.

C. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.

D. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.7 FINISHES

A. Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: [Two] <Insert number> finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

C. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless steel jackets.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection is limited to [one] <Insert number> location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.9 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
5. Indoor, concealed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
6. Indoor, exposed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
7. Indoor, concealed oven and warewash exhaust.
8. Indoor, exposed oven and warewash exhaust.
9. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
10. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
11. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
12. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
5. Flexible connectors.
6. Vibration-control devices.
7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.10 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Concealed, Supply-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: [Glass-fiber] [Mineral wool] [blanket] [board], [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)] [3 inches (75 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick and [0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m)] [1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m)] [3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m)] [4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m)] [6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m)] <Insert density> nominal density.

B. Concealed, Return-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: [Glass-fiber] [Mineral wool] [blanket] [board], [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)] [3 inches (75 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick and [0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m)] [1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m)] [3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m)] [4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m)] [6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m)] <Insert density> nominal density.

C. Concealed, Outdoor-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: [Glass-fiber] [Mineral wool] [blanket] [board], [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)] [3 inches (75 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick and [0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m)] [1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m)] [3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m)] [4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m)] [6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m)] <Insert density> nominal density.

D. Concealed, Exhaust-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: [Glass-fiber] [Mineral wool] [blanket] [board], [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)] [3 inches (75 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick and [0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m)] [1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m)] [3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m)] [4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m)] [6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m)] <Insert density> nominal density.

E. Concealed, Type I, Commercial, Kitchen Hood Exhaust Duct and Plenum Insulation: Fire-rated [blanket] [or] [board]; thickness as required to achieve 2-hour fire rating.

F. Exposed, Supply-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: [Glass-fiber] [Mineral wool] [blanket] [board], [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)] [3 inches (75 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick and [0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m)] [1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m)] [3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m)] [4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m)] [6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m)] <Insert density> nominal density.

G. Exposed, Return-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: [Glass-fiber] [Mineral wool] [blanket] [board], [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)] [3 inches (75 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick and [0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m)] [1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m)] [3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m)] [4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m)] [6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m)] <Insert density> nominal density.

H. Exposed, Outdoor-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: [Glass-fiber] [Mineral wool] [blanket] [board], [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)] [3 inches (75 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick and [0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m)] [1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m)] [3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m)] [4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m)] [6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m)] <Insert density> nominal density.

I. Exposed, Exhaust-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: [Glass-fiber] [Mineral wool] [blanket] [board], [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)] [3 inches (75 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick and [0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m)] [1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m)] [3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m)] [4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m)] [6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m)] <Insert density> nominal density.

J. Exposed, Type I, Commercial, Kitchen Hood Exhaust Duct and Plenum Insulation: Fire-rated [blanket] [or] [board]; thickness as required to achieve 2-hour fire rating.

3.11 ABOVEGROUND, OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a duct system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Concealed, Supply-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: [Glass-fiber] [Mineral wool] [blanket] [board], [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)] [3 inches (75 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick and [0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m)] [1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m)] [3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m)] [4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m)] [6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m)] <Insert density> nominal density.

C. Concealed, Return-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: [Glass-fiber] [Mineral wool] [blanket] [board], [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)] [3 inches (75 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick and [0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m)] [1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m)] [3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m)] [4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m)] [6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m)] <Insert density> nominal density.

D. Concealed, Outdoor-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: [Glass-fiber] [Mineral wool] [blanket] [board], [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)] [3 inches (75 mm)] <Insert dimension>

thick and [0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m)] [1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m)] [3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m)] [4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m)] [6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m)] <Insert density> nominal density.

E. Exposed, Supply-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: [Glass-fiber] [Mineral wool] [blanket] [board], [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)] [3 inches (75 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick and [0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m)] [1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m)] [3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m)] [4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m)] [6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m)] <Insert density> nominal density.

F. Exposed, Return-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: [Glass-fiber] [Mineral wool] [blanket] [board], [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] [2 inches (50 mm)] [3 inches (75 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick and [0.75 lb/cu. ft. (12 kg/cu. m)] [1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m)] [3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m)] [4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m)] [6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m)] <Insert density> nominal density.

3.12 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:

1. None.
2. [PVC] [PVC, Color-Coded by System]: [20 mils (0.5 mm)] [30 mils (0.8 mm)] thick.
3. Aluminum, [Smooth] [Corrugated] [Stucco Embossed]: [0.016 inch (0.41 mm)] [0.020 inch (0.51 mm)] [0.024 inch (0.61 mm)] [0.032 inch (0.81 mm)] [0.040 inch (1.0 mm)] thick.
4. <Insert jacket type>.

D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed:

1. None.
2. [PVC] [PVC, Color-Coded by System]: [20 mils (0.5 mm)] [30 mils (0.8 mm)] thick.
3. Aluminum, [Smooth] [Corrugated] [Stucco Embossed]: [0.016 inch (0.41 mm)] [0.020 inch (0.51 mm)] [0.024 inch (0.61 mm)] [0.032 inch (0.81 mm)] [0.040 inch (1.0 mm)] thick.
4. <Insert jacket type>.

3.13 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:

1. None.
2. [PVC] [PVC, Color-Coded by System]: [20 mils (0.5 mm)] [30 mils (0.8 mm)] thick.

3. Aluminum, [Smooth] [Corrugated] [Stucco Embossed]: [0.016 inch (0.41 mm)] [0.020 inch (0.51 mm)] [0.024 inch (0.61 mm)] [0.032 inch (0.81 mm)] [0.040 inch (1.0 mm)] thick.
4. <Insert jacket type>.

D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, up to 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches (1800 mm):

1. Aluminum, [Smooth] [Corrugated] [Stucco Embossed]: [0.016 inch (0.41 mm)] [0.020 inch (0.51 mm)] [0.024 inch (0.61 mm)] [0.032 inch (0.81 mm)] [0.040 inch (1.0 mm)] thick.

E. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches (1800 mm):

[Painted]Aluminum, [Smooth] [Stucco Embossed] with [1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations] [2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations] [4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs]: [0.032 inch (0.81 mm)] [0.040 inch (1.0 mm)] thick.
1. <Insert jacket type>.

END OF SECTION

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 07 16- HVAC EQUIPMENT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating HVAC equipment that is not factory insulated.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
2. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail removable insulation at equipment connections.
2. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
3. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
4. Detail field application for each equipment type.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

C. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with equipment Installer for equipment insulation application.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.7 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable

to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Breeching Insulation Schedule," "Indoor Equipment Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Aboveground Equipment Insulation Schedule? articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable in accordance with ASTM C795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Comply with ASTM C552.
   1. Block Insulation: Type I.
   2. Special-Shaped Insulation: Type III.
   3. Board Insulation: Type IV.
   4. Factory fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
   5. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

G. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M, Type II for sheet materials.

H. Polyisocyanurate: Preformed, rigid cellular polyisocyanurate material intended for use as thermal insulation. Comply with ASTM C591.
   1. Type I or Type IV, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.19 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.027 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) after 180 days of aging.
   2. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less for thicknesses of up to 1 inch (25 mm) as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

3. Fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
4. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
   a. Equipment Applications: PVDC,PVDC-SSL.
5. Fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.

2.3 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C195.

2.4 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Polyisocyanurate Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F (minus 59 to plus 149 deg C).

C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Solvent-based adhesive.
   1. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
   2. Wet Flash Point: Below 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C)
   3. Service Temperature Range: 40 to 200 deg F (4 to plus 93 deg C).
   4. Color: Black.

D. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

2.5 MASTICS AND COATINGS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Water Based: Suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below-ambient services.
   1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
   2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
   3. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements.
   4. Color: White.

C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Indoor Use: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
   1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
   2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
   3. Color: White.

D. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Outdoor Use: Suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
   1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
   2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
   3. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. Materials shall be as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

B. Joint Sealants:
   1. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
   2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 58 to plus 176 deg F.
   3. Color: White or gray.

C. FSK Jacket Flashing Sealants:
   1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
   2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
   3. Color: Aluminum.

2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C1136, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
   1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
   2. Color: Color-code jackets based on system.
   3. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.

D. Metal Jacket:

E. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perm (0.013 metric perm) when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M and with a flame-spread index of 10 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

F. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

2.8 TAPES

A. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
   1. Width: 2 inches.
   2. Thickness: 6 mils.
   3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
   4. Elongation: 500 percent.
   5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

B. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.

   1.
   2. Width: 3 inches.
   3. Film Thickness: 6 mils.
   4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
   5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
   6. Tensile Strength: 55 psi in width.

2.9 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:
   1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
   2. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size is determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

   1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding; 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

   2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding; 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) galvanized carbon-steel washer.

   3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.

a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Use product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

4. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
   a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D. Wire: 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:

1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick if operating in a temperature range of between 140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C). Consult

coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature of between 32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C) with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

C. Coordinate insulation installation with the tradesman installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, and jackets, of thicknesses required for each item of equipment, as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet.

G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends attached to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward-clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward-clinching staples along edge at 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.

    a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, in accordance with insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints.

L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 25 percent of its nominal thickness.

M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.

O. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION

A. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive, anchor pins, and speed washers.

1. Apply adhesives in accordance with manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:

    a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
    b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
    c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches (75 mm) from insulation end joints and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. in both directions.
    d. Do not over-compress insulation during installation.
    e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
    f. Impale insulation over anchor pins, and attach speed washers.
    g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
6. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches (150 mm) from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
7. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches (75 mm).
8. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
9. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
10. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.

1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.

C. Insulation Installation on Pumps:

1. Fabricate metal boxes lined with insulation. Fit boxes around pumps and coincide box joints with splits in pump casings. Fabricate joints with outward bolted flanges. Bolt flanges on 6-inch (150-mm) centers, starting at corners. Install 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) diameter fasteners with wing nuts. Alternatively, secure the box sections together using a field-adjustable latching mechanism.
2. Fabricate boxes from stainless steel, at least 0.050 inch thick.
3. Install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches (850 mm) or less. 33-1/2-inch- (850-mm-) circumference limit allows for 2-inch- (50-mm-) overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
2. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

3.7 FINISHES

A. Equipment Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Semi-Gloss Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

D. Perform tests and inspections.

E. Tests and Inspections: Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in "Indoor Equipment Insulation Schedule" and "Outdoor, Aboveground Equipment Insulation Schedule? articles. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.

F. All insulation applications will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Insulation conductivity and thickness per pipe size shall comply with schedules in this Section or with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.

B. Acceptable insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials is Contractor's option.

3.10 INDOOR EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment that is not factory insulated.

B. Chilled-water pump insulation shall be the following:
   1. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.

C. Heating-hot-water pump insulation shall be the following:
   1. None

D. Chilled-water expansion/compression tank insulation shall be the following:
   1. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.

E. Heating-hot-water expansion/compression tank insulation shall be the following:
   1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

F. Chilled-water air-separator insulation shall be the following:
   1. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.

G. Heating-hot-water air-separator insulation shall be the following:
   1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

H. Chilled Water Buffer Tank tank insulation shall bethe following:
   1. Polyisocyanurate (Outdoor Application Only): 1 inches thick.

3.11 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Equipment:
   1. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 20 mils thick.

END OF SECTION 230716

SECTION 23 0 19- HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulation for HVAC piping systems.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation" for duct insulation.
2. Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation" for equipment insulation.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.7 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products that come into contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.

C. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable in accordance with ASTM C795.

D. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

E. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M, Type I for tubular materials, Type II for sheet materials.

F. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C547.

1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL.
2. 850 deg F.
3. Factory fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
4. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

G. Polyisocyanurate: Preformed, rigid cellular polyisocyanurate material intended for use as thermal insulation. Comply with ASTM C591.

1. Preformed insulation, with field-applied with field-applied PVDC-SSL.
2. Type IV, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.19 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F after 180 days of aging.
3. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less, and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less for thicknesses of up to 1 inch as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
4. Fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
5. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C195.

B. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C449.

2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Polyisocyanurate Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F

C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Solvent-based adhesive.

1. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
2. Wet Flash Point: Below 0 deg F.
3. Service Temperature Range: 40 to 200 deg F.
4. Color: Black.

D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

E. ASJ Adhesive and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A, for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

F. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

2.4 MASTICS AND COATINGS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Indoor Use: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
3. Color: White.

C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Outdoor Use: Suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F
3. Color: White

D. Materials shall be as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

E. Joint Sealants:

1. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
    a. Service Temperature Range: Minus 150 to plus 250 deg F.
    b. Color: White or gray.

F. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVDC and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F
3. Color: White.

2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.

2.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C1136, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
2. Color: Color-code jackets based on system.
3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.

    a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

C. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a cross-laminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

D. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M and with a flame-spread index of 10 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

E. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

2.7 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.

1. Width: 3 inches.
2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 2 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Width: 2 inches.
2. Thickness: 6 mils.
3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 500 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

C. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Width: 3 inches.
2. Film Thickness: 2 mils.
3. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
4. Elongation at Break: 120 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 20 psi in width.

D. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Width: 3 inches.
2. Film Thickness: 6 mils.
3. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
4. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 55 psi in width.

2.8 SECUREMENTS

A. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4 inch wide, stainless steel or Monel.

B. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

2.9 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Coordinate insulation installation with the tradesman installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and of thicknesses required for each item of pipe system, as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends attached to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward-clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward-clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.

    a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, in accordance with insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 25 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.

P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.

3.3 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.4 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials, except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, Mechanical Couplings, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, mechanical couplings, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as that of adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers, so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges, mechanical couplings, and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation to fit. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.

Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union" matching size and color of pipe labels.

7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket, except for flexible elastomeric, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing, using PVC tape.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as that of pipe insulation when available.

2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.

2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF POLYISOCYANURATE INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with tape or bands and tighten without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3- and 9-o'clock positions on the pipe.
2. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, and same thickness as that of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch thickness.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyisocyanurate block insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of polyisocyanurate insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where PVC jackets are indicated and for horizontal applications, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

C. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
2. Wrap factory-presized jackets around individual pipe insulation sections, with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
3. Continuous jacket can be spiral-wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
4. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches or less. The 33-1/2-inch-circumference limit allows for 2-inch- overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
5. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

3.9 FINISHES

A. Insulation with ASJ or other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Semi-Gloss Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

    a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, semi-gloss, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation in outdoor applications: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect or indicated on drawings. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections: Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

C. All insulation applications will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.11 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Insulation conductivity and thickness per pipe size shall comply with schedules in this Section or with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.

B. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
    1. Underground piping.
    2. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.12 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. See Pipe and Insulation Schedule on drawings.

END OF SECTION 230719

SECTION 23 09 23- DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) SYSTEM FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED WORK

A. Native BACnet-based system, with Microsoft Windows 10 compatible operator's workstation. Workstation, building controllers, application controllers, and input/output devices communicate using protocols and network standards per ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135, BACnet. Workstations, controllers, and unitary controllers, to be native BACnet. Do not use gateways for controller communication. Gateways may be used to communicate with existing systems or systems installed under other sections.

1. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
2. BACnet-compliant hardware and software meeting system's functional specifications. Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) for Windows-based control software and every controller in system
3. Individual hardware layouts, interconnection drawings, and software configuration from project design data.
4. Implement detailed design for analog and binary objects, system databases, graphic displays, logs, and management reports based on control descriptions, logic drawings, configuration data, and bid documents.
5. Design, provide, and install equipment cabinets, panels, data communication network cables needed, and associated hardware.
6. Interconnecting cables between supplied cabinets, application controllers, input/output devices, operator's terminals and peripheral devices (including but not limited to printers) supplied under this section.
7. Manufacturer's specifications for items supplied.
8. Specialists and technicians; assist installation, startup, and commissioning.
9. Operator and technician training program as described herein.
10. As-built documentation, operator's terminal software, diagrams, and associated project operational documentation (such as technical manuals) on approved media accurately representing the final system.
11. New sensors, dampers, valves, and new electronic actuators. No used components.
12. Using Agency will have full licensing and access rights for network management and operating workstation features for ongoing maintenance and operation of BMS.
13. BMS workstation will host graphic files for control system. Graphics and navigation schemes for project are to match any that are on existing site/campus.

1.2 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Products Supplied but Not Installed Under This Section:

1. Flow switches.
2. Wells, sockets and inline hardware for water sensors (temperature, pressure, flow).
3. Automatic control dampers, where not supplied with equipment.

4. Terminal unit controllers and actuators, when installed by terminal unit manufacturer.
5. Variable frequency drives. (Does not include VFDs integral to chillers or boilers).

B. Products Installed but Not Supplied Under This Section: None.

C. Products Not Furnished or Installed but Integrated with the Work of This Section:

1. Pump control packages.
2. In-line meters (gas, water, power).
3. Chemical water treatment.
4. Smoke detectors (through alarm relay contacts).

D. Work Required Under Other Divisions Related to This Section:

1. Power wiring to line side of motor starters, disconnects or variable frequency drives.
2. Provision and wiring of smoke detectors and devices relating to fire alarm system.
3. Campus LAN (Ethernet) connection adjacent to Operator Workstation.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE).

B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI): ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135, BACnet.

C. Underwriters Laboratories:

1. UL 916 Underwriters Laboratories Standard for Energy Management Equipment. Canada and the US.
2. UL 864 UUKL listing for Smoke Controls for any equipment used in smoke control sequences.

D. Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC): EMC Directive 89/336/EEC (European CE Mark).

E. The Federal Communications Commission (FCC): FCC Part 15, Subpart J, Class A.

F. National Electrical Code (NEC).

1.4 SPECIFICATION NOMENCLATURE AND DEFINITIONS

A. Acronyms Used in this Specification:

1. ACM: Ascent Control Module.
2. Actuator: Device that opens or closes valve or damper in response to control signal.
3. AI: Analog Input.
4. AO: Analog Output.
5. Analog: Continuously variable state over stated range of values.
6. BAS: Building Automation System.
7. Compass: Alerton Workstation Software.
8. DDC: Direct Digital Control.

9. FC: Fail closed position of control device or actuator. Device moves to closed position on loss of control signal or energy source.
10. FO: Fail open position of control device or actuator. Device moves to open position on loss of control signal or energy source.
11. GUI: Graphical User Interface.
12. HMI: Human Machine Interface.
13. HVAC: Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning.
14. LAN: Local Area Network.
15. MSDB - Microsoft SQL Database
16. Modulating: Movement of control device through an range of values, proportional to an infinitely variable input value.
17. Motorized: Control device with actuator.
18. NC: Normally closed position of switch after control signal is removed or normally closed position of manually operated valves or dampers.
19. NO: Normally open position of switch after control signal is removed; or the open position of a controlled valve or damper after the control signal is removed; or the usual position of a manually operated valve.
20. Operator Workstation: PC running Compass software and any required software tools applicable for day to day operation of the BMS.
21. P: Proportional control; control mode with continuous linear relationship between observed input signal and final controlled output element.
22. PI: Proportional-Integral control, control mode with continuous proportional output plus additional change in output based on both amount and duration of change in controller variable (reset control).
23. PICS: BACnet Product Interoperability Compliance Statement.
24. PID: Proportional-Integral-Derivative control, control mode with continuous correction of final controller output element versus input signal based on proportional error, its time history (reset) and rate at which it's changing (derivative).
25. Point: Analog or discrete instrument with addressable database value.
26. VLC: VisuaLogic Controller.
27. WAN: Wide Area Network.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit under provisions of Section 01300.

B. Product Data: Construction details, layout, and location of control panels within building, including instrument location in panels and labelling. Indicate mechanical equipment associated with each controller and area in building being served by that equipment. For terminal unit control, a room schedule listing mechanical equipment tag, room number of space served, address of DDC controller, and pertinent information required for service.

1. Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used.
2. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
3. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
4. Typical installation methods.

C. Shop Drawings: Material details, construction, finish and adjacent construction relationship.

1. Engineering drawings, control sequence, and bill of materials for approval.
2. Standard Sizes for Drawings: 11 inches x 17 inches (ANSI B).
3. Eight complete physical sets of submittal drawings, and approved electronic media.

D. System Documentation: Include the following in submittal package.

1. System Configuration Diagrams: Simplified block format. Note software addressing for device communications for devices. Indicate locations of ethernet switches.
2. Input/output object listings and an alarm point summary listing.
3. Electrical drawings showing system internal and external connection points, terminal block layouts, and terminal identification.
4. Bill of materials, valve schedule, and damper schedule.
5. Instructions and drawings, for installation, operation, maintenance, preventive maintenance, troubleshooting, and spare parts for list control devices.
6. BACnet Protocol Implementation Conformance Statements (PICS) per ASHRAE Standard 135: For system elements-Operator's Workstations, building controllers, application controllers, routers, and repeaters.
7. Description and documentation of proprietary (non-BACnet) services and/or objects.

E. Project Management: Detailed project design and installation schedule with time markings and details for hardware items and software development phases.

1. Target dates for transmission of project information and documents. Indicate timing and dates for system installation, debugging, and commissioning.
2. Supply products to affected trades in time to prevent interruption of construction.
3. Maintain integrity of shipping cartons for each piece of equipment and control device through shipping, storage and handling as required to prevent equipment damage.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified. Five years documented experience.

1. BAS System: Designed, installed, commissioned, and serviced by manufacturer authorized and trained personnel. Support facility within 2 hours response time of site with technical staff, spare parts, and test and diagnostic equipment.
2. Contractor: Full-time, on-site, experienced project manager responsible for supervision of design, installation, start-up and commissioning or BAS.
3. Materials and Equipment: Latest standard design complying with requirements.
4. UL Listed under Standard UL 916, category PAZX: BAS peer-to-peer network controllers, central system controllers and local user displays.
5. Electronic Equipment: Conform to requirements of FCC Regulation, Part 15, Governing Radio Frequency Electromagnetic Interference and be so labeled.
6. Control System: Engineered, programmed and supported by representative's local office/ No less than four hour response, 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

B. Installer Qualifications: Two years documented experience with projects of similar scope and complexity.

C. Source Limitations: Each product type to be from a single manufacturing source.

1.7 PRE-INSTALLATION CONFERENCE

A. Convene approximately two weeks before scheduled Work commencement. Attendees to include Architect, Contractor and trades involved. Agenda: Include schedule, responsibilities, critical path items and approvals.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store and handle in strict compliance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations.

B. Protect from damage due to weather, excessive temperature, and construction operations.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Maintain environmental conditions within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products in environmental conditions outside recommended limits.

1. If ambient conditions are not met at time of delivery, manufacturer reserves the right to void the warranty.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Limited warranty against defects in materials and workmanship. Covers costs for parts, labor, associated travel, and expenses for a period of two year from completion of system acceptance and applies equally to hardware and software.

1. Personnel supporting the hardware and software warranty agreement will provide on- or off-site service in a timely manner after failure notification. Acceptable Response Time: Within 24 hours, Monday through Friday; 48 hours on Saturday and Sunday.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Provide products by one of the following:

1. Alerton Controls by Taycon-TMI
2. Johnson Controls, Branch Office only; FX product not allowed
3. Honeywell
4. Trane

2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Except as indicated, system supplier to secure and pay for all permits, inspections, and certifications required for his work, and arrange for necessary approvals by the governing authorities.

B. BAS: Network of interoperable, stand-alone building controllers, field controllers on logical networks, graphics and programming for complete system.

1. Password access to features, functions and data contained in BAS.
2. Software for complete operating system, as specified, as integral part of supervisory controller. Not dependent upon higher level computer for execution.
3. System Backup: Electronic copies of software, project graphics, setpoints, and system parameters. Backups will allow Using Agency to restore system if necessary.

C. Distributed Logic Control System: Software and hardware per ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135.

1. System controls mechanical equipment, including unitary equipment such as heat pumps, fan-coils, AC units, air handlers, boilers, chillers, and listed equipment using native BACnet-compliant components.
2. Operator's Workstation Software: BAS application written utilizing BACnet protocols. Software functions to include password protection, scheduling, alarming, logging of historical data, full graphics including animation, after-hours billing, demand limiting, and full suite of field engineering tools including graphical programming applications.

    a. Programming to make future changes to e system, controllers, field level devices, system changes, scheduling, and trending.
    b. Field engineering tools, graphical programming and applications.

3. Building Controllers: Building management software, with scheduling building control strategies and optimum start and logging.

    a. Energy Management Software/Firmware: Resident in field hardware.
    b. Operator's Terminal Software: Used to access field-based building management functions. Zone-by-zone direct digital logic control of space temperature, scheduling, runtime accumulation, equipment alarm reporting, and override timers for after-hours usage.

4. Room Sensors: Viewable digital readout of room temperature, and outside air. Adjustable room setpoint within preset limits and set desired override time. Start and stop unit from digital sensor. Include wiring and firmware for field service mode. Field service mode must have ability to be locked out.
5. Application Controllers: Terminal units including HP and UV, air handler, central plant equipment, and other controlled equipment to be programmable. Mount next to controlled equipment. Communicate with building controller through BACnet LAN.

2.3 OPERATOR WORKSTATION (COMPASS)

A. Structure of Workstation Interaction: Client/server relationship. Embedded web server for

browser access. Server to archive data and store system. Operator Workstations to support operation. Virtualized server environment. Web clients may access archive server data.

1. Single Server License Shall be licensed as need to support the number of devices on in this project, plus an additional 25% for future use.

B. Operator Workstation: General purpose, commercially available, personal computer.

1. Processor: Minimum speed of 2.5 GHz.

a. Quad core processor.
b. Eight core processor.
c. Processor core as indicated on Drawings.
d. RAM: 4 GB.
e. Network Interface Card: 100 Mbs.

C. Sufficient storage to accommodate fully configured point databases, application databases, graphics files, user-defined reports, and historical data archived as specified.

D. Graphic Based Displays: For each system.

1. Operator Workstation: Point data for each system. Update every 30 seconds.
2. Dynamically update data any action by user.
3. Graphic Displays: Iconic graphic representations of mechanical equipment. Display graphic files, text, trendlog, and dynamic object data displays including animation.
4. Graphic Displays: "Drill Down" capability from main display to more specific system displays or navigation tree for building equipment and system diagnostic centric display organization.

a. Tree Navigation Contents: Customizable per-user and per-group basis.

5. Systems with Terminal Unit Controls: Building floor plan with dynamic temperatures, drillable for more specific terminal information.
6. Points on graphics allow user to change field-resident Operator Workstation functions associated with project, including setpoints, weekly and exception schedules, from any screen, whether screen shows text or graphic display. Do without reference to object addresses or other numeric/mnemonic indications.
7. Protect display views unless operator credentials have proper access level. Assign access levels to each display/system object. Menu labels not to appear on graphic if operator does not have appropriate security level.
8. Analog objects: Displayed with operator modifiable units. Input objects may be displayed as graphic items on display screen as an overlay to the system graphic.
9. Information: Labeled with descriptors and shown with appropriate engineering units.
10. DDCs system must provide graphic displays and files. Systems requiring graphics development or logic programming are prohibited. Graphic Files: JPG, GIF or PNG.
11. Submit graphic displays to Using Agency for review and approval. Approved graphics to be in place prior to commissioning.
12. Operator Workstation: Supply graphics library, to use unaltered or modified. Include library to assemble custom graphics. System to allow creation of new graphics.
13. Data Displays: Ability to link to content outside of BAS system. Content to include, but

not limited to launching external files in their native applications.

E. Omnigraphics: Graphics with custom geometry offering color gradient shading and variable opacity in scale to system variables; analog and digital, and color range settings.

1. Omnigraphics Must Support:

a. Displaying current values in the geometric shapes.
b. Geometric shapes to be clickable allowing another graphic display.
c. Color Scale: Support using AV's to define the color scale ranges.

F. The Operator Interface: Support the following functions.

1. Mouse-over tooltip information of graphic items or data points; can be turned off.
2. Right click capability to access system functionality such as Schedule, Trendlogs, and Alarms associated with display object selected.
3. Automatic zooming to screen size to maximize display to display area. Can be enabled or disabled. Background color, flood fills remaining screen background.
4. Support user configurable embedded Data Viewer for a persistent trend log data view to accompany system data and graphic information on a single display.

G. Password Protection: Preventing unauthorized use unless operator is logged on.

1. Limits operator to assigned functions when logged on. Includes displays as outlined.
2. Users: Individual User IDs, User Names, and Passwords. Case sensitive alphanumeric character entry except for User ID. User ID, User Name, and Password will enforce minimum of 8 characters and stored in encrypted format.
3. Each user to be allowed individual assignment of control functions, menu items, navigation tree, and user-specific system start display, and restricted access to discrete BACnet devices to which user requires access.
4. Passwords, user names, and access assignments: Adjustable via Compass. Password adjustable via web client.
5. Users to have set access levels, which define access to displays and individual objects user may control. System to have 10 distinct access levels for assignment.
6. Operator Workstation and Web Client: Auto logout feature when no keyboard or mouse activity is detected for time period, adjustable by system administrator. Enabled and disabled by system administrator. Screen message notifying log out.
7. Permit effective date range, and effective time of day, User are permitted access.
8. Operator Workstation: Support LDAP integration enforcing strong password policies.

H. Operator Activity Log: Tracks operator changes and activities.

1. Included in Operator Workstation. A log of what changed, who made the change, date and time of system activity, and value of change before and after. Operator may display activity, sort changes by user or operation and print Operator Activity Log.
2. Activity log to be gathered and archived to MSDB as needed. Log to be able to exportable for spreadsheet display and sorting.
3. User option to record commenting in Operator Activity Log upon system point change.
4. Accessible via Web Client for viewing, sorting, filtering, and printing.

I. Scheduling:

1. Information to be in easy-to-read daily format including calendar of this month and next. Schedules to show actual ON/OFF times for day based on scheduling priority. Priority for Scheduling: Events, holidays and daily, with events being the highest.
2. Holiday and Special Event Schedules: Display data in calendar format. Be able to schedule holidays and special events directly from these calendars.
3. Operator to be able to change information for a given weekly or exception schedule if logged on with appropriate access privileges.
4. Schedule Wizard for schedules set up. Walks user through schedule generation. Have its own pull-down selection for startup or may be started by right-clicking on value displayed on graphic and then selecting Schedule.
5. Scheduling: Include optimum start based on outside air temperature, current heating/cooling setpoints, indoor temperature and previous starts history. Individual zones to have optimum start time calculated based on parameters listed. Operators to input schedules to set time that occupied setpoint is to be attained. Optimum start feature must calculate the startup time needed to match zone temperature to setpoint. Operators to be able to set a limit for maximum startup time allowed.
6. List show currently defined schedules. Includes standard, holiday and event schedules. User to be able to select a list showing scheduled points and zones.
7. Display of schedules must show ON times for standard, holiday and event schedules in different colors on a given day. OFF times must also be shown in additional colors. Operators may select from a calendar what days are to be scheduled and show points and zones affected. Operators may set time for one day and then match it to days of the week to be affected as a recurrence of same schedule.
8. Any displayed data that is changeable by operator may be selected using the right mouse button and schedule selectable on screen. Selection of schedule using this method allows viewing of assigned schedule and allows the point to be scheduled.
9. Schedule Support Functions: Drag-n-drop events and holidays on schedule calendar.

    a. Drag-n-drop events default to two-hour period; can operator adjusted.
    b. Drag-n-drop holidays default for OFF all day; edit for multiple-day holidays.
    c. View affected zones when adding or editing timed events of a schedule.

10. Web Client: A search list of scheduled points and zones to access schedule calendar.
11. Schedule Time Blocks: Present schedule detail via mouse-over information.

J. Advanced Scheduling:

1. Each resource shall have its own unique schedule object.
2. Both analog and binary points shall be scheduled.
3. Holiday schedules shall support perpetual holidays
4. Calendar Events Set to be Reoccurring Events: Daily, weekly, monthly and annually as well as a non-pattern occurrence by selecting groups of days so they can be edited on one occurrence.

K. Alarm Indication and Handling: Visual, printed, and email means of alarm indication.

1. Printout of Alarms: Sent to assigned terminal and port. May be filtered based on User ID's authorization level.

2. Web Client: Display persistent alarm state for system regardless of data view including points in alarm but not acknowledged, and points that have gone into alarm and returned to normal without being acknowledged.
3. Recorded and archive at the Operator Workstation:

    a. Description of event and equipment initiating alarm. 256 characters in length.
    b. Time and date of alarm occurrence.
    c. Time and date of object state return to normal.
    d. Time and date of alarm acknowledgment
    e. Identification of operator acknowledging alarm.

4. Alarm messages: User-definable text, English or other specified language, and delivered to operator's terminal, client, or remote communication using email; authenticated SMTP supported.
5. Allow for set up of alarms. User interface will walk user through steps necessary.
6. Alarm annunciation includes navigation link to a user-selected display or URL.
7. Displayed data changeable by operator is right mouse button selectable. Alarm is then selectable on screen allowing view of alarm history or allow new alarm creation.

L. Trendlog Information: Display trendlog records in standard engineering units.

1. Periodically gather data stored in building controllers and store information in system database. Append stored records with new data. Overwriting records is not allowed unless file size is limited. System database capable of storing 30 million records before archiving data. Samples viewable at Web Client.

    a. Capable of trending on interval determined by polling rate, or change-of-value.

2. Add and edit trendlogs and setup information including the following:

    a. The interval at which it is to be logged.
    b. Operations shall be password protected.
    c. Accessed directly from graphics on which a trended object is displayed.

3. Trendlog Wizard: Setup of multiple trend logs simultaneously. Walk users through necessary steps. Have a pull-down selection for startup, or by right-clicking on value displayed on graphic, and then selecting Trendlogs from displayed menu.
4. Trendlog Data: Viewable on Datalogger accessible via Web Browser. Trend logs of any point on a graphic must be initiated by performing a right mouse click on the point.

M. DataViewer access via Web Browser: Capable of graphing trend-logged object data.

1. Access and ability to create, edit and view are restricted by user account credentials
2. Specific and repeatable URL defines trendlog views for browser bookmarking and email compatibility.
3. Call out of trendlog value at intersection of trend line and mouse-over vertical axis.
4. Trendlog or Energy log and companion logs configurable to display on one of two independent vertical scales embedded in display.
5. Click zoom for control of data set viewed along either graph axis.
6. User-specifiable start and end dates and fast scroll features supporting click zoom of

macro scale view of data for quickly finding data set based on visual signature.
7. User export of the viewed data set to MS Excel.
8. Optional min/max ranges (Upper Control Limits, Lower Control Limits) for each value.

N. Energy Log Information: Display information in standard engineering units.

1. Periodically gather energy log data in field controller and archive information. Append files with new data. Overwriting archived data is not allowed unless file size is limited.
2. Store data in database format for use by third-party programs. System operation to stay online during graphing operations.
3. Operators to be able to change energy log setup information. Includes meters, meter pulse value, and type of energy units. Meters monitored by system may be logged. Support using flow and temperature sensors for BTU monitoring.
4. Web Client: Display data in tabular and graphical formats. Display in hourly, daily, weekly, monthly and yearly formats. Be able to select specific data periods to view.

O. Demand Limiting: Sheds and restores equipment based on energy usage when compared to shed and restore settings.

1. Shedding: Implemented independently on each zone or piece of system equipment.
2. Binary Shedding: 5 priority levels. Loads in a given priority level to be shed before any loads in a higher priority level are shed. Load shedding within a given priority level includes two methods; a "first off-first on" mode, and a "first off-last on" linear mode.
3. Analog Shedding: Program generated ramp used by individual zones or control algorithm to raise and lower cooling and heating settings reducing energy usage.
4. Status of each program to be displayed with description of each load on Web Client.

P. Tenant Activity: A program monitoring after-hours overrides by tenants, logs data, and generates bill based on usage and rate charged for each tenant space.

1. Tenant after-hours override usage is logged in Operator Workstation database.
2. Include entry of following information for use in logging and billing.

    a. Tenant's contact name and address.
    b. One or multiple tenant zones making up a total tenant space, including separate billing rate for each separate zone.
    c. Minimum and maximum values an event duration and event limit.
    d. Property management information.
    e. Overall billing rate.
    f. Seasonal adjustments or surcharge to billing rate.
    g. Billing notification type including, but not limited to printer, file and email.
    h. Billing form template.

3. Logging: Include recording the following information for each and every tenant event.

    a. Zone description.
    b. Time the event begins.
    c. Total override time.
    d. Limits shall be applied to override time.

4. A Tenant Bill: Generated for a specific period using entered configuration data and logged data. User with appropriate security level will be able to view and override billing information. User to be able to select a billing period to view and be able to delete events from billing and edit a selected tenant activity event's override time.

Q. Reports: Capable of producing the following reports. Deliverable Format: CSV.

1. Trendlog configurations.
2. Alarm configurations.
3. Tenant activity configurations.
4. Device summary.
5. Energy log configurations.
6. Schedule configurations.
7. Deliverable Format: CSV files.

R. Field Engineering Tools: For programming controllers supplied.

1. Database Application Manager: Include controller logic files and associated graphics.
2. Device Manager: Detect devices connected on BACnet network by scanning. Display device instance, network ID, model, and description. Record and display software file loaded in each controller. Store file copies in project folder on computer's hard drive.
3. Audit when device not in database is added to network.
4. Backup/restore function for system to selected medium. System to be capable of restoring systems and creating a backup for instantiating a new client PC.
5. A means to scan, detect, interrogate, and edit third-party BACnet devices and BACnet objects within those devices.

S. Web Interface: System software based upon server/thin client architecture, designed around open standards of web technology.

1. Communicate using Ethernet and TCP. Access server using a web browser across Using Agency’s intranet and remotely via the Internet. Support 200 users with single license.
2. Web Browser: Microsoft Internet Explorer v11 or later, Firefox 70 or later, Chrome 78 or later, and Safari 13 or later. No special vendor-supplied software to be required. Display data in real-time. Update automatically without user interaction.
3. Web Pages: Automatically generated with HTML5 from data display files on Operator Workstation. Do not use systems requiring an HTML editor for web page generation.
4. Launching Web Browser on Operator Workstation presents a login page requiring a login name and password. Navigation and system adjustments dependent upon operators assigned privileges. User activity reports will show activity of operators, whether changes were made using a web client or Operator Workstation.
5. User Session Management including ability to view connected user sessions to the web client, see how long they have been active/inactive for each unique session, and force log-out for any or all sessions.

T. Context Menu Navigation: Web Browser: Support Context Menu Navigation via a right mouse click on a data point.

1. Operations to be dependent upon logged in user privileges and include:

a. View and setup Alarms.
b. View and setup Trend Logs.
c. Display the BACnet properties for the selected Object.
d. View and setup Schedules.
e. View System activity for the selected Object.

U. Summary Pages:

1. Present system data in tabular form. Data to be from multiple devices. Points presented horizontally and devices listed on left side of table.
2. Built using spreadsheet that can be imported into Operator Workstation.
3. Data in summary pages to be live. Configure each object to be read only or writeable.
4. Both analog and binary data shall be supported.
5. Summary page, when populated, captured for archiving and review for analysis.
6. The data shall be sortable by clicking on the column headings.

V. Advance Scheduling (EASE): Managed and arranged in multi-tier hierarchy.

1. Access through hierarchy to be controlled via login credentials.
2. Configured for MS SQL 2014/17/19 Enterprise.
3. The Advanced Schedule Application:

a. Apply conflict resolution logic for effective scheduling.
b. Assign Work, Week and Holiday schedules for multiple resources.
c. Create schedules with analog and binary resources.
d. Create events for parent resources or children using inheritance.
e. Customize event recurrence.
f. Use Resource Picker to search and select resources.
g. Create custom templates to hold the resource and event time.
h. Schedule Operations Status: Use notification banner. Verify changes in resource tree.
i. Verify event type applied to resource with indication given by resource hierarchy/tree.

2.4 BUILDING CONTROLLER (ACM)

A. General Requirements:

1. BACnet Conformance: Approved by BTL as meeting BACnet Building Controller requirements.

a. Refer to ANSI/ASHREA 135, for a complete list of the services that must be directly supported to provide each of the functional groups listed above.
b. Proprietary services, if used, document and provide as part of submittal data. Provide tools for working with proprietary information.

2. Scalable: Number of trunks and protocols selectable to fit project requirements
3. Capable of panel-mounting on DIN rail and/or mounting screws.
4. Global control strategies based on information from any objects in system, regardless if object is directly monitored by building controller module or by another controller.

5. Capable of running 6 independent control strategies simultaneously. Modification of one control strategy does not interrupt function or runtime others.
6. Software implementing DDC strategies to be completely flexible and user-definable.
7. Software Programming Tools: Provide as part of project software. Factory pre-programmed global strategies not modifiable by field personnel are not acceptable. Changing global strategies via firmware changes is also unacceptable.
8. Programming: Object-oriented control function blocks and support DDC functions. Flowcharts: Generated and automatically downloaded to controller. Programming tool to be resident on workstation. used same tool for controllers.
9. Graphically view inputs and outputs to each program block in real-time as program is executing. Function may be performed using operator's workstation or field computer.
10. Controller: 6,000 Analog Values and 6,000 Binary Values.
11. Controller IP configuration: Via direct USB connect or field computer.
12. Quad Core 996 Ghz processor to ensure fast processing speeds.
13. Execute control algorithms and automated control functions with 64-bit processor.
14. Minimum of 1 GB of DDR3 SDRAM on a 533 Mhz bus to ensure high speed data recording, large data storage capacity and reliability.
15. Support 2 on-board EIA-485 ports capable of supporting various EIA-485 protocols including, but not limited to BACnet MS/TP and Modbus. Ports capable of supporting EIA-485 protocols including, to BACnet MS/TP and Modbus.
16. Support 2 ports-each of gigabit speed-Ethernet (10/100/1000) ports. Ports are capable of supporting Ethernet protocols including, BACnet IP, FOX, and Modbus.
17. Ports capable of having protocols assigned to utilize port's physical connection.
18. Minimum 4 onboard inputs, 2 universal inputs and 2 binary inputs.
19. Schedules:

    a. Normal seven-day scheduling, holiday scheduling and event scheduling.
    b. Support 380 BACnet Schedule Objects and 380 BACnet Calendar Objects.

20. Logging Capabilities:

    a. Log 2,000 objects at 15-minute intervals. Any object in system may be logged. Sample time interval adjustable at operator's workstation.
    b. Viewed logs on-site or off-site using WAN or remote communication.
    c. Periodically upload trended data to operator's workstation for archiving. Archived data available for use in spreadsheet or database programs.

21. Alarm Generation: Within the system for any object change of value or state, includes analog and binary object state changes, and controller communication failures.

    a. Each alarm may be dialed out as noted elsewhere.
    b. Provide alarm log for alarm viewing. Log may be viewed on-site at operator's terminal or off-site using remote communications.
    c. Handle up to 2,000 alarm setups stored as BACnet event enrollment objects, with system destination and actions individually configurable.

22. Demand Limiting of Energy: Built-in, user-configurable function.

    a. Controller modules support shedding up to 1,200 loads.
    b. Load shedding programs to operate as defined herein.

23. Tenant Activity Logging: Supported by a building controller module. Each independent module to support a 380 zones.

    a. Tenant Activity logging to function as defined herein.

B. BACnet MS/TP:

1. BACnet MS/TP LAN must be software-configurable from 9.6 to 115.4 Kbps

    a. Each BACnet MS/TP LAN shall support 64 BACnet devices at a minimum.
    b. Proprietary object types, if used in the system, shall be thoroughly documented and provided as part of the submittal data. Necessary tools shall be supplied for working with proprietary information.

C. BACnet IP:

1. The building controller shall comply with Annex J of the BACnet specification for IP connections. This device shall use Ethernet to connect to the IP internetwork, while using the same Ethernet LAN for non-IP communications to other BACnet devices on the local area network (LAN).
2. Must support interoperability on WANs and campus area networks (CANs), and function as a BACnet Broadcast Management Device (BBMD).
3. Each controller shall support at a minimum 128 BBMD entries.
4. BBMD management architecture shall support 3,000 subnets at a minimum.
5. Shall support BACnet Network Address Translation.
6. Proprietary object types, if used in the system, shall be thoroughly documented and provided as part of the submittal data. Necessary tools shall be supplied for working with proprietary information.

D. Expansion Ports:

1. Controller shall support two (2) expansion ports.

    a. Combining the two on-board EIA-458 ports with fully loaded expansion ports, the controller shall support six (6) EIA-485 trunks simultaneously.

2. Expansion Cards: Mate to the expansion ports, shall include the following.

    a. Dual port EIA-485 card.
    b. 78 kbps FTT10A LON network card.

E. Modbus Protocol Support:

1. Controller shall support reading from and writing to TCP Slaves and Serial Connections (RTU or ASCI over either EIA-485 or EIA-232).

    a. Shall be capable of mapping Modbus register coil data to BACnet AV, BV, MV, AI, BI, and MI object types.
    b. Support a minimum of 6000 Mapped Modbus points.

2. Support up to 384 virtual groupings of Modbus points where each grouping is

represented as a single virtual BACnet device.

a. Virtual BACnet devices support BACnet Change Of Value (COV) notifications
b. Each Virtual device has diagnostic information for troubleshooting Modbus point mapping. Diagnostic point should include the following.

1) Number of points mapped.
2) Number of messages Transmitted and Received.
3) Modbus Exception Counts.
4) Display of last exception message.
5) Serial Setting (Baud rate, Parity, Stop Bits)

3. Integration Performance: Data age of integrated point shall be capable of 1 second for 5000 points.

F. Power Supply:

1. Input for power: Accept between 17 and 30 VAC, 47 and 63 Hz.
2. Rechargeable Battery: For controller shutdown including flash memory data storage.
3. On-board capacitor ensuring continuous operation of real-time clocks for 14 days.

G. Controller: Shall be in compliance with the following.

1. UL 916 for open energy management.
2. FCC Class B.
3. RoHS Compliant.
4. IEC 60703.
5. C-Tick Listed.
6. CE(EN 60730-1)

H. Controller: Operate in the following environmental conditions.

1. Without Battery: Minus 4 to 149 degrees F (Minus 20 to 65 degrees C).
2. With Battery: 32 to 122 degrees F (0 to 50 degrees C).
3. Relative Humidity: 0 to 95 percent, non-condensing.

2.5 CENTRAL PLANT AND AIR HANDLER APPLICATION CONTROLLERS (ACM/AXM)

A. General Requirements:

1. One or more native BACnet application controller for each air handler as needed for central plant control to adequately cover objects listed in object list.
2. Interface to building controller through MS/TP LAN using BACnet protocol, or Ethernet LAN using BACnet over Ethernet or BACnet TCP/IP. Do not use gateways.
3. Include input, output and self-contained logic program as needed for complete control of units. Fully programmable using graphical programming blocks. Resident programming tool on operator workstation. Same tool used for building controller. Do not use auxiliary or non-BACnet controllers

B. BACnet Conformance:

1. Approved by BTL meeting BACnet Advanced Application Controller requirements.
2. Refer to ANSI/ASHREA 135, for a complete list of services directly supported to provide each of the functional groups listed. Proprietary services, to be documented and provided in submittal data. Supply tools for working with proprietary information.
3. Object types supported include, Analog Input, Analog Output, Analog Value, Binary Input, Binary Output, Binary Value, Multi-state Values, Device, File, and Program object types. Proprietary types, to be documented and provided in submittal data. Supply tools for working with proprietary information.

C. Direct Digital Controls:

1. Include universal inputs with 12-bit resolution that accept 3K and 10K thermistors, 0 to 10 VDC, Platinum 1000 ohm RTD, 0 to 5 VDC, 4 to 20 mA and dry contact signals. Inputs on controllers may be analog or digital. A minimum of 3 inputs that accept pulses. Include binary and analog outputs on board. Analog outputs with 12-bit resolution to support either 0 to 10 VDC or 0 to 20 mA. Binary outputs: LED indication of status. Software must include scaling features for analog outputs. Include 20 VDC for use as power supply to external sensors.
2. Outputs must have onboard Hand-Off-Auto (HOA) switches and status indicator light. Monitor HOA switch position. Analog outputs will include potentiometer for manual adjustment of output when HOA switch is in Hand position.
3. Every HOA switch position to be available system wide as a BACnet object property.

D. Programmable Controller:

1. Program sequences shall be stored on board application controller in EEPROM. No batteries shall be needed to retain logic program. Program sequences shall be executed by controller up to 20 times per second (minimum of 10 times per second) and capable of multiple PID loops for control of multiple devices. Calculations shall be completed using floating-point math and system shall support display of information in floating-point nomenclature at operator's terminal.

2. The following control blocks shall be supported.

   a. Natural Log.
   b. Exponential.
   c. Log base 10.
   d. X to the power of Y.
   e. Nth square root of X.
   f. 5th Order Polynomial Equations.
   g. Astronomical Clock (sunrise/sunset calculation).
   h. Time based schedules.

3. Programming of application controller shall be completely modifiable in the field over installed BACnet LANs. Operator shall program logic sequences by graphically moving function blocks on screen and tying blocks together on screen. Application controller shall be programmed using programming tools as described in Operator's Workstation section.

E. Schedules: The controller shall support a minimum of 3 BACnet Schedule Objects and have

a real time clock on board with battery backup to maintain time through a power loss.

F. Logging Capabilities:

1. Controller shall support a minimum of 50 trendlogs. Any object in the controller (real or calculated) may be logged. Sample time interval shall be adjustable at the Operator's Workstation.
2. Controller shall periodically upload trended data to system server for long-term archiving if desired. Archived data stored in SQL database form and shall be available for use in third-party spreadsheet or database programs.

G. Alarm Generation:

1. Alarms may be generated within the controller for any object change of value or state (either real or calculated). This includes things such as analog object value changes, and binary object state changes.
2. Alarm log shall be provided for alarm viewing. Log may be viewed on-site at the operator's terminal or off-site using remote communications.
3. Controller must be able to handle up to 25 alarm setups stored as BACnet event enrollment objects, with system destination and actions individually configurable.

H. Power Supply:

1. Input for power shall accept between 17 and 30 VAC, 47 and 63 Hz.
2. Power Input/Output expansions separate and shall be 24 VAC 50/60 Hz, 20 VA minimum and half-wave rectified. Output loads are powered separately.
3. Optional rechargeable battery for shutdown of controller including storage of data in flash memory.
4. On-board capacitor will ensure continuous operation of real-time clocks for minimum of 14 days.

I. Controller: Shall be in compliance with the following.

1. UL 916 for open energy management
2. FCC Part 15 Class B
3. ICES-003 Issue 6
4. EN 60703-1

J. The controller processor shall be a 64-bit processor.

K. The packaging of the controller shall provide operable doors to cover the terminals once installation is complete. The housing of the controller shall provide for DIN rail mounting and also fully enclose circuit board.

2.6 EXPANDABLE ADVANCED APPLICATION CONTROLLERS (VIP-363-HOA)

A. General Requirements:

1. Provide control strategies for system based on information from connected inputs. Program implementing strategies to be fully programmable, completely flexible and user-

definable.

2. An onboard real-time clock must support schedule operations and trendlogs. Conform to B-AAC BACnet specification, with 24-hour power fail backup.
3. Control algorithms and automated control functions: Use 32-bit processor.
4. A built in 4-port Gigabyte switch supporting 10/100/1000 Base-T. Up to three Ethernet ports to be disabled via software configuration if required.

    a. Support the following ethernet network topologies:

        1) Star.
        2) Daisy Chain.
        3) Ring.

5. BACnet communication over Ethernet and protocols include:

    a. BACnet/Ethernet.
    b. BACnet/IPv4.
    c. BACnet/IPv6.

6. Base unit of controller to host 8 expansion modules with various I/O combinations. These inputs and outputs include universal 16-bit inputs, binary outputs, and analog outputs (0 to 10 V or 0 to 20 mA). Inputs support 3K and 10K thermistors, 0 to 5 VDC, 0 to 10 VDC, 4-20 mA, dry contacts and pulse inputs directly.
7. Support for intelligent room sensor. Room sensor display to be programmable at controller and include operating and field service modes. Button functions and display data to be programmable to show specific controller data in each mode based on which button is pressed on the sensor.
8. Provide 172 discreet inputs/outputs per base unit.

B. Direct Digital Controls:

1. Provide means to graphically view inputs and outputs on each program block in real-time as program is executing. This function may be performed using the Operator Workstation.
2. Expandable advanced application controllers shall include universal inputs with 16-bit resolution that accept 3K and 10K thermistors, 0 to 10 VDC, 4 to 20 mA and dry contact signals. Any input on a controller may be either analog or digital with a minimum of five inputs that accept pulses. Controller shall include binary and analog outputs on board. Analog outputs with 16-bit resolution shall support either 0 to 10 VDC or 0 to 20 mA. Binary outputs shall have LED indication of status. Software shall include scaling features for analog outputs.
3. Expandable advanced application controller shall include 20 VDC voltage supply for use as power supply to external sensors.
4. Outputs must have onboard Hand-Off-Auto (HOA) switches and a status indicator light. HOA switch position shall be monitored. Each analog output shall include a potentiometer for manually adjusting the output when the HOA switch is in the Hand position.
5. The position of each and every HOA switch shall be available system wide as a BACnet object property.

C. Programmable Controller:

1. Programming shall be object-oriented using control program blocks. Controller shall support a minimum of 120 Analog Values and 100 Binary Values. Up to 50 analog and binary values shall support standard BACnet priority arrays. Programming tool shall be provided with the Operators Workstation and shall be the same tool that is used to program the expandable advanced application controller.
2. Program sequences shall be stored on board expandable advanced application controller in EEPROM. No batteries shall be needed to retain logic program. Program sequences shall be executed by controller up to 1 time per second and capable of multiple PID loops for control of multiple devices.
3. The following control blocks shall be supported:

    a. Natural Log.
    b. Exponential.
    c. Log base 10.
    d. X to the power of Y.
    e. Nth square root of X.
    f. 5th Order Polynomial Equations.
    g. Astronomical Clock (sunrise/sunset calculation).
    h. Time based schedules.

4. Programming of expandable advanced application controller shall be completely modifiable in the field over installed BACnet LANs. Operator shall program logic sequences by graphically moving function blocks on screen and tying blocks together on screen. Expandable advanced application controller shall be programmed using programming tools as described in Operator's Workstation section.

D. Schedules: Expandable application controllers to support 50 BACnet Schedule Objects.

E. Logging Capabilities:

1. Each expandable advanced application controller shall support trendlogs. Any object in the system (real or calculated) may be logged. Sample time interval shall be adjustable at the operator's workstation.
2. Controller shall periodically upload trended data to system server for long-term archiving if desired.
3. Archived data stored in database format shall be available for use in third-party spreadsheet or database programs.

F. Alarm Generation:

1. For any object change of value or state (either real or calculated); analog object value changes, binary object state changes, and controller communication failures.
2. Alarm log: Provided for viewing operator's terminal or off-site with remote access.
3. Controller must handle alarm setups stored as BACnet event enrollment objects, with system destination and actions individually configurable.

G. BACnet Conformance:

1. The expandable advanced Application Controller shall, support Ethernet BACnet LAN types. It shall communicate directly through these BACnet LANs as a native BACnet device. Controllers shall be approved by the BTL as meeting the BACnet Advanced Application Controller requirements.
2. Refer to ANSI/ASHRAE 135, for a complete list of the services that must be directly supported to provide each of the functional groups listed above. Proprietary services, if used in the system, shall be thoroughly documented and provided as part of the submittal data. Necessary tools shall be supplied for working with proprietary information.
3. Standard BACnet object types supported shall include, as a minimum, Analog Input, Binary Input, Analog Output, Binary Output, Analog Value, Binary Value, Device, File, Group, Event Enrollment, Notification Class, Program, and Schedule object types. Necessary tools shall be supplied for working with proprietary information.
4. The Controller shall comply with Annex J of the BACnet specification for IP connections. This device shall use Ethernet to connect to the IP internetwork, while using the same Ethernet LAN for non-IP communications to other BACnet devices on the LAN.
5. The Expandable advanced application controller shall have the ability to:

    a. Be disabled from traffic to and from other subnets.
    b. Subscribe to COV subscriptions at a definable interval.

H. Security:

1. The advanced application controller shall be configured with passwords of eight or more characters for:

    a. Console configuration.
    b. Backup and restore.
    c. Disable traffic to and from other subnets.
    d. Protect backup/restore/restart.

I. Power Supply: Input for power shall accept between 20 and 30 VAC, 50/60 Hz. Half wave rectified. Output loads are powered separately.

J. Controller shall be in compliance with the following:

1. UL 916 for open energy management.
2. FCC Part 15 Subpart J, Class A.
3. EMC Directive 89/336/EEC.

K. Controller shall operate in the following environmental conditions:

1. Minus 4 to 131 degrees F (Minus 20 to 55 degrees C).
2. 0 to 95 percent relative humidity (RH), non-condensing.

2.7 TERMINAL UNIT APPLICATION CONTROLLERS

A. General Requirements:

1. One native BACnet application controller (B-ASC) for each piece of unitary mechanical

equipment that adequately covers objects listed in object list for unit.

2. Interface to building controller through MS/TP LAN using BACnet protocol. No gateways to be used. Controllers to include input, output and self-contained logic program as needed for complete control of unit.
3. Microprocessor-based, multi-tasking, real-time digital control processor. Each controller shall operate as a stand-alone controller capable of performing its specified control responsibilities independently of other controllers in the network.
4. Sufficient memory to support system setpoints, proportional bands, control algorithms, and other programmable parameters shall be stored such that a power failure of any duration does not necessitate any reprogramming. Each application controller shall return to normal operation upon restoration of power.
5. Setpoint and input/output point data shall be accessible through any operator workstation, web browser and building controllers.
6. Ability to download and upload configuration data via the operator workstation.
7. One copy of any programming tool required to configure or program the controllers shall be provided to the Using Agency along with appropriate documentation.
8. Include universal inputs accepting 3K and 10K thermistors, 0 to 5 VDC, 4 to 20 mA, dry contact signals and a minimum of 3 pulse inputs. Any input on controller may be either analog or digital. Controller shall also include support and modifiable programming for interface to intelligent room sensor. Controller shall include binary outputs on board with analog outputs as needed.

    a. Resolution: 16 bit.

9. Ambient Space Rating : 0 to 158 degrees F and 5 to 95 percent RH.
10. Include support for intelligent room sensor. Display on room sensor to be programmable at controller and include an operating and field service mode. Button functions and display data to be programmable to show specific controller data in each mode based on which button is pressed on the sensor. See sequence of operation for specific display requirements at intelligent room sensor.

B. BACnet Conformance:

1. As a minimum, support MS/TP BACnet LAN types. They shall communicate directly using this BACnet LAN at 9.6, 19.2, 38.4 and 76.8 Kbps, as a native BACnet device. Application controllers shall be approved by the BTL as meeting the BACnet Application Specific Controller requirements and support BACnet services necessary to provide the following BACnet BIBBs:

    a. Data Sharing - DS-RP-B, DS-RPM-B, DS-WP-B, DS-WPM-B.
    b. Device and Network Management - DM-DDB-B, DM-DOB-B, DM-DCC-B, DM-TS-B, DM-RD-B.

2. Refer to ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135, for a complete list of the services that must be directly supported to provide each of the functional groups listed above. Proprietary services, if used in the system, shall be thoroughly documented and provided as part of the submittal data.
3. Standard BACnet object types supported shall include, as a minimum, Analog Input, Analog Output, Analog Value, Binary Input, Binary Output, Binary Value, Device, File, and Program Object Types. Proprietary object types, if used in the system, shall be

thoroughly documented and provided as part of the submittal data. Necessary tools shall be supplied for working with proprietary information.

4. Application Controllers:

   a. BACnet Protocol Implementation Statements per ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135.
   b. Conform to FCC Part 15, Subpart J, Class A.

C. Custom Programs: Standalone application controllers for, but not limited to, the following application types: Custom Air Handling Units, Boiler Plant and Chiller Plant.

D. Application Specific Controllers:

1. Support, but not limited to, the following system types to address specific applications: Rooftop Air Handlers, and Fan Coil Units.
2. Application Specific Descriptions:

   a. Fan Coil Unit Controls:

      1) Support, but limited to operational sequences described in Division 23.
      2) Support the following input and output types:

         a) Modulated heating and cooling control outputs.
         b) Space temperature inputs.
         c) Analog space temperature setpoint adjustment inputs.
         d) Binary unoccupied override inputs.

      3) Modes of operation supported by Fan Coil Unit Controllers:

         a) Daily/weekly schedules.
         b) Occupancy mode.
         c) Unoccupied mode.
         d) Temporary override mode.

   b. Touch Screen Communicating Thermostat: BTL approved.

      1) Meet BACnet Application Specific Controller requirements.
      2) Support MS/TP BACnet LAN types. Communicate directly through this BACnet LAN at 9.6, 19.2, 38.4 and 76.8 Kbps, as native BACnet device.
      3) BACnet object types supported: Analog Input, Analog Output, Analog Value, Binary Input, Binary Output, Binary Value, Device, File, and Program Object Types.
      4) Proprietary Object Types: Thoroughly document and provide as part of submittal data. Supply tools for working with proprietary information.
      5) Wall mounted controllers operated in stand-alone mode and under supervisory mode from Building Controller.

   c. Touch screen Communicating Thermostat Hardware:

      1) 32 Bit processor.
      2) Backlit touch screen for user interface. Buttons are not allowed.
      3) Three universal inputs, 12-bit resolution, accepts 3K and 10K Type II

thermistors, 0-10 VDC, 0-5 VDC, 4-20 mA, and dry contact signals. Inputs may be either analog or digital.
4) Built-in temperature and humidity sensors.
5) Six relay outputs on board.
6) Two analog outputs, 12-bit resolution. Each auto-detecting for 0-10 V or 4-20 mA control signals.

d. Touch screen Communicating Thermostat hardware:

1) Meet requirements of Listed Underwriters Laboratory for Open Energy Management Equipment (PAZX) under UL Standard for Safety 916.
2) Meet requirements of EMC Directive (European CE Mark) EN 60950.
3) Meet requirements for FCC Part 15, Class B.
4) Powered by 24 VAC.

e. Touch screen communicating thermostat programming shall:

1) Program sequences stored on board in Flash Memory.
2) No batteries needed to retain any program.
3) Program sequences executed by controller 10 times per second and capable of multiple PID loops for control of multiple devices.
4) Support internal schedule with real time clock.
5) Support Peer-to-Peer programming.
6) Support lockout of touch screen with a pass code.
7) Programming Controller: Field modifiable over BACnet LANs or remotely with modem interface. Program using same tool as Building Controller and as described in operator's workstation section. Provide programming tools as part of system.

2.8 ELECTRONIC CONTROL DEVICES

A. Temperature Sensors (Microset 4): Solid-state electronic, interchangeable with housing appropriate for application. Wall sensors: Install as indicated on drawings. Mount 48 inches (1219 mm) above finished floor. Duct sensors: Install so sensing element is in the main air stream. Immersion sensors: Install in wells. Immersion wells to be filled with thermal compound before installation of immersion sensors. Outside air sensors: Install away from exhaust or relief vents, not in an outside air intake, and in a shaded location.
B. Intelligent Room Sensor with Touchscreen:

1. General Requirements:

a. Backlit touchscreen LCD digital display.
b. Temperature sensor.
c. Humidity sensor.
d. Programmable Status Light indicator.
e. CO2 sensor or BACnet MS/TP communication up to 115.2 kbps.
f. Interact with smart sensor using a touchscreen, with no buttons allowed.
g. Tamper proof installation requiring tools to be removed from the wall.
h. Touchscreen: Surface hardness of Mohs 7 or greater preventing scratching.

i. Controller: Function as room control unit, and allow occupant to raise and lower setpoint, and activate terminal unit for override use-all within limits as programmed by building operator.

2. Space Temperature Sensor: Uni-Curve Type II thermistor. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.36 degrees F (0.3 degrees C) at calibration point over range of 32 to 158 degrees F.
3. Humidity Sensor: Accuracy: Plus or minus 3 percent from 10 to 90 percent relative humidity (RH) or better, non-condensing.
4. Status Light indicator: A minimum of 4 colors, blue, red, amber, and green. Will cast a glow onto wall below sensor to be used as visual indicator to occupants of system condition. Color and on/off state of Status Light indicator to be fully programmable.
5. CO2 Sensor: Accuracy: Plus or minus 30 ppm over range of 0 to 5000 ppm.

    a. Automatic Baseline Correction maintains calibration. No manual calibration.

6. Display Content:

    a. Intelligent room sensor:

        1) Simultaneously display room setpoint, room temperature, and outside temperature at each controller.
        2) Ability to add or remove time-of-day, room humidity, and indoor air temperature to customize view for customer. Must have the capability to show temperatures in degrees Fahrenheit or degrees Celsius.
        3) Display status of a lighting zone and control on/off state of zone from touchscreen using a tenant-accessible display page.
        4) Display status of window zone (e.g., blinds) and control on/off state of zone from touchscreen using a tenant-accessible display page.

    b. A communication loss or improper communications wiring to be displayed on the LCD screen to aid in trouble shooting.
    c. Firmware version information to be displayable on the LCD screen.
    d. Cleaning mode: Allow cleaning of touchscreen.

7. After Hours Override:

    a. Be set and viewed in 30-minute increments.
    b. Override countdown: Automatic, but can be reset to zero by from the sensor.
    c. The remaining time shall be displayed.
    d. Display "OFF" in unoccupied mode unless a function button is pressed.

8. Configuration Modes:

    a. Intelligent Room Sensor: Service technician access to hidden functions for advanced system configuration. Functionality accessed-protected with a configurable PIN number.
    b. Field Service Mode shall allow access to common parameters as dictated by application's sequence of operations. Parameters shall be viewed and set from intelligent room sensor with no computer or other field service tool needed.

9. Conformance: Intelligent Room Sensor to be in compliance of the following:

    a. UL Standard for Safety 916.
    b. FCC Part 15.107 and 109, Class B, CFR47-15.
    c. EMC Directive 89/336/EEC (European CE Mark).

2.9 INTERCONNECTING WIRE AND CABLE

A. Where required, wiring, regardless of service or voltage, to be in conduit per Division 16 and routed parallel to or at right angles with the structure. Properly support every 6 ft (1829 mm).

B. Where permitted by local guides, NEC and AHJ; use plenum-rated control cabling where final application will be concealed but accessible. Where plenum-rated cable is allowed, route parallel to or at right angles with the structure. Support every 6 ft (1829 mm).

C. The BAS Wiring:

1. 24 VAC Power: Red/Black jacketed conductors; black jacketed sheath over the pair.
2. Input/Output – White/Black jacketed conductors; white jacketed sheath over the pair.
3. Communication: White/Black jacketed conductors; blue jacketed sheath over the pair.

2.10 ELECTRONIC ACTUATORS AND VALVES

A. Quality Assurance for Actuators and Valves:

1. UL Listed Standard 873 and C.S.A. Class 4813 02 certified.
2. NEMA 2 rated enclosures for inside mounting. Weather shield for outside mounting.
3. Five-year manufacturer's warranty. Two-year unconditional and three-year product defect from date of installation.

B. Execution Details for Actuators and Valves:

1. Freeze-stat and "Hard Wire" interlock to disconnect mechanical spring return actuator power circuit; fail-safe operation. Do not use control signals to drive actuators closed.
2. DDC analog output points to have an actuator feedback signal, independent of control signal, wired and terminated in control panel for true position information and troubleshooting. Or wire the actuator feedback signal to DDC as an analog input for true actuator position status.
3. Booster-heat valve actuation to be floating type or analog (2 to 10 VDC, 4 to 20 ma).
4. Primary valve control shall be analog (2 to 10 VDC, 4 to 20 mA).

C. Actuators for damper and control valves 0.5 to 6 inches (13 to 152 mm). Electric unless otherwise specified. Provide as follows:

1. UL Listed Standard 873 and Canadian Standards association Class 481302/

2. Enclosures: NEMA 2 rated for inside mounting. Weather shield for mounting outside.
3. Five-year manufacturer's warranty. Two-year unconditional and Three year product defect from date of installation.

4. Mechanical Spring: When specified. Do not use non-mechanical fail-safes.
5. Position indicator device installed visible to exposed side of actuator. For damper short shaft mounting, provide a separate indicator to exposed side of actuator.
6. Overload Protection: Protection against burnout by using an internal current limiting circuit or digital motor rotation sensing circuit. Circuit to insure actuators cannot burn out due to stalled damper or mechanical and electrical paralleling. End switches to deactivate actuator at end of rotation are acceptable for butterfly valve actuators.
7. A Pushbutton gearbox release shall be provided for non-spring actuators.
8. Modulating actuators shall be 24 VAC and consume 10 VA power or less.
9. Conduit connectors are required when specified and when code requires it.

D. Damper Actuators:

1. Outside air and exhaust air damper actuators: Mechanical spring return. Do not use non-mechanical forms of fail-safes. Mounting arrangement and spring return feature to permit normally open or normally closed positions of damper.
2. Economizer Actuators: Analog control 2-10 VDC. Floating control is not acceptable.
3. Electric damper actuators: Direct shaft-mount. Use V-bolt and toothed V-clamp for positive gripping.
4. One electronic actuator direct shaft-mounted per damper section. No connecting rods or jackshafts. Small outside and return economizer dampers may be mechanically linked if one actuator has sufficient torque to drive both horizontal drive shafts.
5. Multi-section dampers with electric actuators shall be arranged so that each damper section operates individually. One electronic actuator shall be direct shaft-mounted per damper section. (See below execution section for more installation details.)

E. Valve Actuators: 0.5 to 6 inches (13 to 152 mm).

1. Mechanical spring on actuators for pre-heat coil and actuators for AHU heating or cooling coil for outside mounted units. Fail-safe flow function: Normal Open or Normal Closed. Capacitors or non-mechanical forms of fail-safe are not acceptable.
2. Zone service actuators: Non-spring return unless otherwise specified.
3. Provide minimum torque required for proper valve close-off for required application.
4. Control valves actuators: Attached 3-foot cable for easy installation to a junction box.
5. Override handle and gearbox release for non-spring return valve actuators.

F. Control Dampers.

1. Equipment-integrated control dampers to be furnished with mechanical equipment; free standing dampers and louvers to be furnished by sheet metal contractor.

G. Control Valves: 0.5 - 6 inches (13 mm - 152 mm).

1. Furnish specified motorized control valves, actuators, and control wiring to actuators. Equal percentage control characteristic for water coil control valves. Linear characteristic is acceptable for 3-way valves 2.5 inches (64 mm) and above.

2. Characterized Control Valves: For hydronic heating or cooling and small to medium AHU water-coil applications to 100 gpm. Actuators: Non-spring return for terminal unit coil control unless otherwise noted. If coil is exposed to outside air stream, see plans for

spring return requirement.

a. Leakage: 0 percent. Close-off: 200 psi. Differential: 30 psi. Rangeability: 500:1.
b. Valves 0.5 to 2 inches (13 to 51 mm): Nickel-plated forged brass body. NPT screw type connections.
c. Valves 0.5 to 1.25 inches (13 to 32 mm): ANSI Class 600 working pressure. Valves 1.5 and 2 inches (38 and 51 mm): ANSI Class 400 working pressure.
d. Operating Temperature Range: 0 to 250 degrees F.
e. Stainless steel ball and stem furnished on modulating valves.
f. Seats to be fiberglass reinforced Teflon.
g. Two- and three-way valves: Equal percentage control port. Full stem rotation is required for maximum flow to insure stable BTU control of coil.
h. Three-way valve to be applicable for both mixing and diverting.
i. Characterizing Disc: TEFZEL; keyed and secured by retaining ring.
j. Stem: Blow-out proof. Stem Packing: 2 lubricated O-rings for on-off or modulating service and to require no maintenance.
k. The valves shall have an ISO type, 4-bolt flange for mounting actuator in any orientation parallel or perpendicular to the pipe.
l. Non-metallic thermal isolation adapter. Separate valve flange from actuator.
m. One fastening screw shall secure the direct coupling of the thermal isolation adapter between the actuator and the valve. This will prevent lateral or rotational forces from affecting the stem and its packing O-rings.

3. Globe valves: 0.5 - 2 inches (13 mm - 51 mm) shall be used for steam control or water flow applications.

a. Valves shall be bronze body, NPT screw type, and shall be rated for ANSI Class 250 working pressure.
b. Valves 0.5 inches (13 mm) (DN15) through 2 inches (51 mm) (DN50) with spring return actuators shall close off against 50 psi pressure differential with Class III leakage (0.1 percent).
c. The operating temperature range shall be 20-280 degrees F.
d. Spring loaded TFE packing shall protect against leakage at the stem.
e. Two-way valves shall have an equal percentage control port.
f. Three-way valves shall have a linear control and bypass port.
g. Mixing and diverting valves must be installed specific to the valve design.

4. Globe Valve: 2.5 to 6 inches (64 to 152 mm) (DN65 to DN50)

a. Body: Iron body, 125 lb. flanged with Class III (0.1 percent) close-off leakage at 50 psi differential.
b. Valves with spring return actuators shall close off against 50 psi pressure differential with Class III leakage (0.1 percent).
c. Flow Type, 2-Way: Equal percentage. Flow Type 3-Way: Linear.
d. Mixing and Diverting Valves: Installed specific to valve design.

5. Butterfly Valves: Sized for modulating service at 60 to 70 degree stem rotation.

a. Isolation valves to be line-size. Design velocity: Less than 12 ft (3658 mm) per second when used with standard EPDM seats.

b. Body is cast iron.
c. Disc is aluminum bronze standard.
d. Seat is EPDM standard.
e. Body Pressure is 200 psi, minus 30 to 275 degrees F.
f. Flange is ANSI 125/250.
g. Media Temperature Range is minus 22 to 240 degree F.
h. Maximum Differential Pressure: 200 psi for 2 to 6 inches (51 to 152 mm) size.

6. Butterfly Valve Industrial Actuators:

a. Approved under Canadian Standards Association or other Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory to UL standards. CSA Class 4813 02 or equal. Enclosure: NEMA 4 (weatherproof) and have industrial quality coating.
b. Continuous Duty Motor: Fractional horsepower; permanent split capacitor type designed to operate on a 120 VAC, 1 pH, 60 Hz supply. Provide two adjustable cam-actuated end travel limit switches controlling travel direction. Self-resetting thermal switch imbedded in motor for overload protection.
c. Reduction gearing to withstand actual motor stall torque. Gears: Hardened alloy steel, permanently lubricated. Self-locking gear assembly or a brake.
d. Wire Harness: 6 ft for ease in field wiring (above 1500 in-lbs). Two adjustable SPDT cam-actuated auxiliary switches, rated at 250 VAC for indication of open and closed position.
e. Heater and thermostat to minimize condensation within actuator housing.
f. Hand Wheel: For manual override to operate valve during power failure or system malfunction. Permanently attached to actuator. When in manual operation electrical power to actuator must be permanently interrupted. Hand wheel will not rotate while actuator is electrically driven.
g. The actuator shall be analog, floating, or two position as called out in the control sequence of operation. Analog valves shall be positive positioning, and respond to a 2 to 10 VDC, 4 to 20 mA, or adjustable signal as required. Analog actuators shall have a digital control card allowing any voltage input for control and any DC voltage feedback signal for position indication.

7. Performance Verification Test:

a. Control loops Cause productive actuation with each actuator movement. Actuators to modulate at rate that is stable and responsive. Actuator movement is not occurred before effects of previous movement have affected sensor.
b. Actuator to be capable of signaling a trouble alarm when actuator Stop-Go Ratio exceeds 30 percent.
c. Actuator mounting for damper and valve arrangements; comply to the following:
d. Damper actuators: Shall not be installed in the air stream
e. A weather shield shall be used if actuators are located outside. For damper actuators, use clear plastic enclosure.
f. Damper or valve actuator ambient temperature shall not exceed 122 degrees F through any combination of medium temperature or surrounding air. Appropriate air gaps, thermal isolation washers or spacers, standoff legs, or insulation shall be provided as necessary.

8. Actuator cords or conduit shall incorporate a drip leg if condensation is possible. Water

shall not be allowed to contact actuator or internal parts. Location of conduits in temperatures dropping below dew point shall be avoided to prevent water from condensing in conduit and running into actuator.

9. Damper mounting arrangements: Comply to the following:

    a. Ventilation Subcontractor: Furnish/install damper channel supports and sheet metal collars.
    b. No jack shafting of damper sections shall be allowed.
    c. Multi-section dampers shall be arranged so that each damper section operates individually. One electronic actuator shall be direct shaft mounted per section.

10. Size damper sections based on actuator manufacturer's specific recommendations for face velocity, differential pressure and damper type. In general:

    a. Damper section shall not exceed 24 ft-sq. with face velocity over 1500 FPM.
    b. Damper section shall not exceed 18 ft-sq. with face velocity over 2500 FPM.
    c. Damper section shall not exceed 13 ft-sq. with face velocity over 3000 FPM.

11. Multiple section dampers of two or more shall be arranged to allow actuators to be direct shaft mounted on the outside of the duct.
12. Multiple section dampers of three or more sections wide to be arranged with a 3-sided vertical channel (WxD) 8 x 6 inches (203 x 152 mm) within duct or fan housing and between adjacent damper sections. Vertical channel to be anchored at top and bottom of fan housing or building structure for support. Sides of each damper frame to be connected to the channels. Holes in channel allow damper drive blade shafts to pass through channel for direct shaft-mounting of actuators. Face open side of channel downstream of airflow, except for exhaust air dampers.
13. Multiple Section Dampers: Mount flush within a wall or housing opening and receive vertical channel supports as described above or sheet metal standout collars. Sheet metal collars, 12 inches (305 mm), must bring each damper section out of the wall to allow direct shaft-mounting of actuator on side of the collar.

14. Valve Sizing for Water Coil:

    a. On/Off control valves shall be line size.
    b. Modulating control valve body size may be reduced, at most, two pipe sizes from the line size or not less than half the pipe size. The BAS contractor shall size water coil control valves for the application as follows:

        1) Booster-heat valves shall be sized not to exceed 4-9 psi differential pressure. Size valve for 50 percent valve authority. Valve design pressure drop is equal to the sum of coil drop plus the balance valve drop.
        2) Primary valves: Sized not to exceed 5-15 psi differential pressure. Size valve for 50 percent valve authority. Valve design pressure drop is equal to the sum of coil drop plus the balance valve drop.

15. Butterfly valves: Size for modulating service; 60-70 degree rotation. Design velocity: 12 feet (3658 mm) per second or less when used with standard EPDM seats.

    a. Valve mounting arrangements shall comply to the following:

1) Unions shall be provided on ports of two-way and three-way valves.
2) Install three-way equal percentage characterized control valves in a mixing configuration with the "A" port piped to the coil.
3) Install 2.5 inches (64 mm) and above, three-way globe valves, as manufactured for mixing or diverting service to the coil.

2.11 ENCLOSURES

A. BAS Control equipment shall be provided and installed where shown on the associated HVAC Drawings and where needed for complete installation of BAS components. Coordinate mounting locations with other trades.

B. Controllers, power supplies and relays shall be mounted in enclosures. These items may also be mounted within the HVAC equipment control section if permitted by the HVAC equipment manufacturer, and if adequate space is provided.

C. Enclosures shall be designed for control and instrumentation applications, able to be mounted directly on the wall, and capable of adequately protecting the enclosed product in the environment in which it is mounted.

D. Enclosures shall not be mounted directly on HVAC equipment such as air handling unit housings. Enclosures shall be pedestal base or wall mounted.

E. Enclosures: NEMA 1 or as required by location and local code requirements when located in a clean, dry, indoor environment. Indoor enclosures: NEMA 12 or as required by location and local code requirements when installed in other than a clean environment. Outdoor Enclosures and Enclosures in Wet Ambient Conditions: Weatherproof.

F. Control Enclosures: Hinged doors, key lock latch; single key

G. Laminated plastic nameplates, 0.125 inches (3 mm) thick, for enclosures in any mechanical room or electrical room. Place location and unit served on easy to read nameplate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION AND PREPARATION

A. Carefully inspect installed work of other trades. Verify work is complete to where work of this Section may commence.

B. Do not proceed with installation until substrates have been prepared using methods recommended by manufacturer and deviations from manufacturer's recommended tolerances are corrected. Commencement of installation constitutes acceptance of conditions.

C. If preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect and Using Agency’s representative in writing of deviations from manufacturer's recommended installation tolerances and conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, approved submittals and in proper relationship with adjacent construction.

1. Install in conduit, wiring and cable, and install equipment in first-class manner, using proper tools, equipment, hangers, and supports, and in locations as required for a neat, attractive installations. No material shall be exposed if it is possible to conceal it. Exposed material shall be installed only with consent of the Engineer.
2. Install the system as recommended by the manufacturer, using only equipment recommended or acceptable to the manufacturer.
3. Support sensors as recommended by the manufacturer where inside equipment, such as ductwork. Sensors in the space shall be in small, attractive housings designed for that purpose and mounted on electrical junction box.
4. Control tubing shall be supported at frequent intervals to support sagging. Tubing run in exposed areas shall be run in an inconspicuous manner following natural building lines. In finished portions of the building, tubing shall be run concealed.
5. Use extreme care making connections to other equipment, such as boilers and chillers. Safeties of equipment are not to be by-passed or overridden by the BAS.
6. Install damper motors on outside of duct in warm areas, not in locations exposed to outdoor temperatures.
7. Install labels to identify control components.
8. Provide equipment having moving parts and controlled by BAS with warning labels 2 inches (51 mm) in height, and in bright warning colors, stating equipment is remotely started by automatic controls. Post labels clearly in area of moving parts, including but not limited to belts, fans and pumps.
9. Terminal Unit Controllers:

    a. Terminal unit controllers and actuators shall be factory mounted.

        1) Ship controller the terminal unit manufacturer for factory mounting.
        2) The Terminal Unit Manufacturer Shall:

            a) Mount the combination controller, actuator and differential pressure sensor package on the terminal units.
            b) Connect pressure sensing tubes to differential pressure sensor.

    b. At the HVAC contractors option, the terminal unit controllers maybe field mounted on the terminal units, in lieu of factory mounting. The HVAC contractor shall coordinate this work with the BAS Contractor and the Equipment Manufacturer.

3.3 LOCATION AND INSTALLATION OF COMPONENTS

A. Locate and install components for easy accessibility; in general, mount 48 inches (1219 mm) above floor with minimum 36 inches (914 mm) of clear access space in front of units. Obtain approval on locations from Using Agency's representative prior to installation.

B. Components including but not limited to instruments, switches, and transmitters; suitably wired and mounted to protect them from vibration, moisture, and high or low temperatures.

C. Identify equipment and panels. Provide permanently mounted tags for panels.

D. Provide stainless steel or brass thermowells suitable for respective application and for installation under other sections, and sized to suit pipe diameter without restricting flow.

3.4 INTERLOCKING AND CONTROL WIRING

A. All line-voltage interlock wiring (>30VAC) by electrical contractor.

B. Low voltage interlock and control wiring shall be neatly and professionally installed, per Division 16 and national, state and local electrical codes.

C. Wiring as required by functions as specified and as recommended by equipment manufacturers, to serve specified control functions. Shielded low capacitance wire for communications trunks.

D. Control wiring shall not be installed in power circuit raceways. Magnetic starters and disconnect switches shall not be used as junction boxes. Provide auxiliary junction boxes as required. Coordinate location and arrangement of control equipment with the Using Agency's representative prior to rough-in.

E. Provide auxiliary pilot duty relays on motor starters as required for control function.

F. Provide power for control components from nearest electrical control panel or as indicated on the electrical drawings; coordinate with electrical contractor.

G. Install control wiring in mechanical, electrical, telephone and boiler rooms in raceways. Install other wiring neatly and inconspicuously per local code. If code allows, control wiring above accessible ceiling spaces may be run with plenum-rated cable (without conduit).

3.5 SOFTWARE

A. Load and debug software for BAS. Operate to prove functionality of each system.

1. Provide database generation.
2. System displays: Show analog and binary object types within system; logically laid out for easy use by Using Agency. Provide outside air temperature indication on system displays associated with economizer cycles.
3. At a minimum, run time totalization shall be incorporated for each monitored supply fan, return fan, exhaust fan, hot water and chilled water pumps. Warning limits for each point shall be entered for alarm and or maintenance purposes.
4. Binary and analog object types (including zones) shall have the capability to be automatically trended.
5. Analog inputs (High/Low Limits) and selected binary input alarm points to be prioritized and routed (locally or remotely) with alarm message per Using Agency's requirements.

B. BAS Contractor: Review programs with Engineer in the programming stage,as requested by engineer. Confirm programmer understands Engineer's intent and that program will carry out that intent.

C. Bound copy of the complete information on the equipment and components.

D. Spare parts list. Identify equipment critical to maintaining integrity of operating system.

3.6 SYSTEM DEMONSTRATION, VALIDATION AND ACCEPTANCE

A. Contractor will satisfactorily demonstrate operating sequence, daily and seasonal mode changes, and associated energy management routines for equipment controlled including:

1. Hot water systems.
2. Chilled water systems.
3. Air handling units.
4. Exhaust air systems.
5. Miscellaneous Equipment: Including but not limited to the following.

    a. Ventilation systems.
    b. Cabinet heaters.
    c. Unit heaters.
    d. Fan Coil Units

B. Contractor to satisfactorily demonstrate proper operation of associated system points as defined in Division 15, including but not limited to:

1. Analog input sensing device readings; temperature, humidity, pressure, flow, volume and CO2 sensors.
2. Analog output controls; valves, dampers and speeds; including proper ranging.
3. Binary input status readings.
4. Binary output or two position controls; start/stops, open/closed, in/off.
5. Pulsed inputs; flow meters, electric meters; including proper ranging.

C. Upon Completion of Work:

1. Demonstrate complete operating system to Using Agency's representative.
2. Certificate stating control system has been tested and adjusted for proper operation.

3.7 TRAINING

A. By BAS manufacturer. Utilize manuals, as-built documentation and on-line help utility.

B. Operator Training: Sixteen (16) hours encompassing, but not limited to the following topics.

1. Sequence of operation review.
2. Log in, log out.
3. Password assignment and modification.
4. Operator privileges assignment and modification.
5. Selection of displays and reports.
6. Commanding of points, including disable/enable.
7. Use of dialog boxes and menus.
8. Modifying warning limits, alarm limits and start-stop times.

9. Modification of color graphic displays.
10. Modification of alarm and status descriptors.
11. System initialization.
12. Backup, download and initialization of DDC in controllers.
13. Request and viewing of trend logs.
14. Archive and purge of historical data.
15. System maintenance procedures.

C. Programmer Training: Eight (8) hours encompassing but not limited to the following topics.

1. Software review of sequence of operation.
2. Use of programming tool and any additional plug-ins.
3. Modification of control programs, including Building Controller, Advanced Application and Application Specific programs.
4. Add, modify and delete data points.
5. Use of diagnostics.
6. System maintenance procedures.
7. Review of initialization.
8. Upload/download and off-line archiving of system software.
9. Creating and modifying color graphics
10. Operator training performed on site/off site. Coordinate dates/times with Using Agency.
11. Tuition for at least one individual to attend a one-week factory training class. If applicable, costs for travel, lodging and meals will be responsibility of Using Agency.
12. Printed training material provided by Contractor to training event attendees.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field Inspection: Coordinate field inspection in accordance with appropriate sections in Division 01.

B. Clean and protect products in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

C. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 23 09 23

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes control valves and actuators for DDC systems.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" control equipment and software, relays, electrical power devices, uninterruptible power supply units, wire, and cable.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Cv: Design valve coefficient.

B. DDC: Direct-digital control.

C. NBR: Nitrile butadiene rubber.

D. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene

E. RMS: Root-mean-square value of alternating voltage, which is the square root of the mean value of the square of the voltage values during a complete cycle.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
4. Installation, operation, and maintenance instructions, including factors affecting performance.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Schedule and design calculations for control valves and actuators, including the following:

   a. Flow at project design and minimum flow conditions.
   b. Pressure differential drop across valve at project design flow condition.
   c. Maximum system pressure differential drop (pump close-off pressure) across valve at project minimum flow condition.
   d. Design and minimum control valve coefficient with corresponding valve position.
   e. Maximum close-off pressure.
   f. Leakage flow at maximum system pressure differential.
   g. Torque required at worst case condition for sizing actuator.
   h. Actuator selection indicating torque provided.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For control valves to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with the contract documents provide products by one of the following:

1. Johnson Controls
2. Siemens
3. Belimo
4. IMI TA Hydronics
5. Honeywell
6. Keystone

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label products to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code where required by authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to size products where indicated as delegated design.

D. Ground Fault: Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition when suitably grounded.

E. Backup Power Source: Systems and equipment served by a backup power source shall have associated control valve actuators served from a backup power source.

F. Environmental Conditions:

1. Provide electric control valve actuators, with protective enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Electric control valve actuators not available with integral enclosures, complying with requirements indicated, shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures.

    a. Hazardous Locations: Explosion-proof rating for condition.

G. Determine control valve sizes and flow coefficients by ISA 75.01.01.

H. Control valve characteristics and rangeability shall comply with ISA 75.11.01.

I. Selection Criteria:

1. Control valves shall be suitable for operation at following conditions:
    a. Chilled Water: 45 deg F , 50 psig
    b. Hot Water: 180 deg F, 50 psig

2. Control valve shutoff classifications shall be FCI 70-2, Class IV or better unless otherwise indicated.
3. Valve pattern, three-way or straight through, shall be as indicated on Drawings.
4. Modulating straight-through pattern control valves shall have equal percentage flow-throttling characteristics unless otherwise indicated.
5. Fail positions unless otherwise indicated:
    a. Chilled Water: Closed
    b. Heating Hot Water: Open; except VAV'Terminals: Last Position.

6. Globe-type control valves shall pass the design flow required with not more than 95 percent of stem lift unless otherwise indicated.
7. Selection shall consider viscosity, flashing, and cavitation corrections.
8. Valves shall have stable operation throughout full range of operation, from design to minimum Cv.
9. Minimum Cv shall be calculated at 10 percent of design flow, with a coincident pressure differential equal to the system design pump head.
10. Modulating valve sizes for steam service shall provide a pressure drop at design flow equal to lesser of the following:

    a. 50 percent of the valve inlet pressure.

11. Two-position control valves shall be line size unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 GLOBE-STYLE CONTROL VALVES

A. General Globe-Style Valve Requirements:

1. Globe-style control valve body dimensions shall comply with ISA 75.08.01.
2. Construct the valves to be serviceable from the top.
3. For cage guided valves, trim shall be field interchangeable for different valve flow characteristics, such as equal percentage, linear, and quick opening.
4. Reduced trim for one nominal size smaller shall be available for industrial valves NPS 1 and larger.
5. Replaceable seats and plugs.
6. Furnish each control valve with a corrosion-resistant nameplate indicating the following:

    a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
    b. Body and trim size.
    c. Arrow indicating direction of flow.

B. Industrial-Grade Straight-Through Globe Valves NPS 3/4 and Smaller:

1. Globe Style: Single port.
2. Body: Stainless Steel or carbon steel
3. End Connections: Threaded.
4. Bonnet: Screwed or bolted.
5. Packing: PTFE V-ring.
6. Plug: Top or cage guided; balanced or unbalanced.
7. Plug, Seat, and Stem: 316 stainless steel, 17-4 PH stainless-steel cage.
8. Process Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 400 deg F.
9. Ambient Operating Temperature: Minus 20 to plus 150 deg .
10. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class IV.
11. Equal percentage flow characteristic.

C. Industrial-Grade Straight-Through Globe Valves NPS 1 and Larger:

1. Globe Style: Single port.
2. Body: Cast iron or cast steel.
3. End Connections for NPS 2: Threaded.
4. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Raised face flanged.
5. Bonnet: Bolted.
6. Packing: PTFE V-ring.
7. Plug: Cage guided and unbalanced.
8. Plug, Seat, and Stem: 416 stainless-steel plug and seat, 17-4 PH stainless-steel cage and 316 stainless-steel stem.
9. Valve Stem: Thread and pin stem to plug.
10. Valve Stem Finish: Polished to 5 microinches rms or less.
11. Plug and Seat Surfaces: Hardened facing.
12. Process Temperature Range: Zero to 450 deg F.
13. Ambient Operating Temperature: Minus 20 to plus 150 deg F.
14. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class IV.
15. Flow Characteristic: Equal percentage.

2.4 BALL-STYLE CONTROL VALVES

A. Ball Valves with Single Port and Characterized Disk:
1. Pressure Rating for NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Nominal 600 WOG.
2. Pressure Rating for NPS 1-1/2 (DN 38) through NPS 2 (DN 50): Nominal 400 WOG.
3. Close-off Pressure: 200 psig (1379 kPa).
4. Process Temperature Range: Zero to 212 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 100 deg C).
5. Body and Tail Piece: Cast bronze ASTM B61, ASTM B62, ASTM B584, or forged brass with nickel plating.
6. End Connections: Threaded (NPT) ends.
7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass or bronze.
8. Stem and Stem Extension:

    a. Material to match ball.
    b. Blowout-proof design.
    c. Sleeve or other approved means to allow valve to be opened and closed without damaging the insulation or the vapor barrier seal.

9. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
10. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring with a threaded packing ring follower to retain the packing ring under design pressure with the linkage removed. Alternative means, such as EPDM O-rings, are acceptable if an equivalent cycle endurance can be demonstrated by testing.
11. Flow Characteristic: Equal percentage.

B. Ball Valves with Two Ports and Characterized Disk:

1. Pressure Rating for NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Nominal 600 WOG.
2. Pressure Rating for NPS 1-1/2 (DN 38) through NPS 2 (DN 50): Nominal 400 WOG.
3. Close-off Pressure: 200 psig (1379 kPa).
4. Process Temperature Range: Zero to 212 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 100 deg C).
5. Body and Tail Piece: Cast bronze ASTM B61, ASTM B62, ASTM B584, or forged brass with nickel plating.
6. End Connections: Threaded (NPT) ends.
7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass or bronze.
8. Stem and Stem Extension:

    a. Material to match ball.
    b. Blowout-proof design.
    c. Sleeve or other approved means to allow valve to be opened and closed without damaging the insulation or the vapor barrier seal.

9. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
10. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring with a threaded packing ring follower to retain the packing ring under design pressure with the linkage removed. Alternative means, such as EPDM O-rings, are acceptable if an equivalent cycle endurance can be demonstrated by testing.
11. Flow Characteristics for A-Port: Equal percentage.
12. Flow Characteristics for B-Port: Modified for constant common port flow.

2.5 ELECTRIC AND ELECTRONIC CONTROL VALVE ACTUATORS

A. Actuators for Hydronic Control Valves: Capable of closing valve against system pump shutoff.

B. Position indicator and graduated scale on each actuator.

C. Type: Motor operated, with or without gears, electric and electronic.

D. Voltage: Voltage selection delegated to professional designing control system.

E. Deliver torque required for continuous uniform movement of controlled device from limit to limit when operated at rated voltage.

F. Function properly within a range of 85 to 120 percent of nameplate voltage.

G. Construction:

1. For Actuators Less Than 100 W: Fiber or reinforced nylon gears with steel shaft, copper alloy or nylon bearings, and pressed steel enclosures.
2. For Actuators from 100 to 400 W: Gears ground steel, oil immersed, shaft hardened steel running in bronze, copper alloy or ball bearings. Operator and gear

trains shall be totally enclosed in dustproof cast-iron, cast-steel or cast-aluminum housing.

3. For Actuators Larger Than 400 W: Totally enclosed reversible induction motors with auxiliary hand crank and permanently lubricated bearings.

H. Field Adjustment:

1. Spring Return Actuators: Easily switchable from fail open to fail closed in the field without replacement.
2. Gear Type Actuators: External manual adjustment mechanism to allow manual positioning when the actuator is not powered.

I. Two-Position Actuators: Single direction, spring return or reversing type.

J. Modulating Actuators:

1. Operation: Capable of stopping at all points across full range, and starting in either direction from any point in range.
2. Control Input Signal:
    a. Programmable Multi-Function:
        1) Control Input, Position Feedback, and Running Time: Factory or field programmable.
        2) Diagnostic: Feedback of hunting or oscillation, mechanical overload, mechanical travel, and mechanical load limit.
        3) Service Data: Include, at a minimum, number of hours powered and number of hours in motion.

K. Position Feedback:

1. Equip two-position actuators with limits switches or other positive means of a position indication signal for remote monitoring of open and close position.
2. Equip modulating actuators with a position feedback through current or voltage signal for remote monitoring.
3. Provide a position indicator and graduated scale on each actuator indicating open and closed travel limits.

L. Fail-Safe:

1. Where indicated, provide actuator to fail to an end position.
2. Internal spring return mechanism to drive controlled device to an end position (open or close) on loss of power.
3. Batteries, capacitors, and other non-mechanical forms of fail-safe operation are acceptable only where uniquely indicated.

M. Integral Overload Protection:

1. Provide against overload throughout the entire operating range in both directions.
2. Electronic overload, digital rotation sensing circuitry, mechanical end switches, or magnetic clutches are acceptable methods of protection.

N. Valve Attachment:

1. Unless otherwise required for valve interface, provide an actuator designed to be directly coupled to valve shaft without the need for connecting linkages.
2. Attach actuator to valve drive shaft in a way that ensures maximum transfer of power and torque without slippage.
3. Bolt and set screw method of attachment is acceptable only if provided with at least two points of attachment.

O. Temperature and Humidity:

1. Temperature: Suitable for operating temperature range encountered by application with minimum operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 120 deg F.
2. Media temperature 40 to 200 deg F
3. Humidity: Suitable for humidity range encountered by application; minimum operating range shall be from 5 to 95 percent relative humidity, non-condensing.

P. Enclosure:

1. Suitable for ambient conditions encountered by application.
2. NEMA 250, Type 2 for indoor and protected applications.
3. NEMA 250, Type 4 or Type 4X for outdoor and unprotected applications.
4. Provide actuator enclosure with heater and control where required by application.

Q. Stroke Time:

1. Operate valve from fully closed to fully open within 90 seconds.
2. Operate valve from fully open to fully closed within 60 seconds.
3. Move valve to failed position within 15 seconds.
4. Select operating speed to be compatible with equipment and system operation.

R. Sound:

1. Spring Return: 62 dBA.
2. Non-Spring Return: 45 dBA.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for valves installed in piping to verify actual locations of piping connections before installation.

C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 CONTROL VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Control Valves:

1. Select from valves specified in "Control Valves" Article to achieve performance requirements and characteristics indicated while subjected to full range of system operation encountered.
2. Hot Water and Chilled Waters Systems;
   a. Two Way, Controlled by Flow, Temperature or Pressure: Ball valves with single port and characterized disk (NPS 2 inch or less); Globe valves (all sizes).
   b. Two-Way, Open or close only: Ball valves (NPS 2 inch or less); Butterfly Valves (NPS 2.5 inch or greater).

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy most stringent requirements indicated.

B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.

C. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping, wiring, and conduits to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment.

D. Provide ceiling, floor, roof, and wall openings and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.

E. Firestop penetrations made in fire-rated assemblies and seal penetrations made in acoustically rated assemblies.

F. Fastening Hardware:

1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that will cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for assembling and tightening nuts.
2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.

G. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Using Agency's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

3.4 ELECTRIC POWER

A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.

B. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

3.5 CONTROL VALVES

A. Install pipe reducers for valves smaller than line size. Position reducers as close to valve as possible but at distance to avoid interference and impact to performance. Install with manufacturer-recommended clearance.

B. Install flanges or unions to allow drop-in and -out valve installation.

C. Where indicated, install control valve with three-valve bypass manifold to allow for control valve isolation and removal without interrupting system flow by providing manual throttling valve in bypass pipe.

D. Install drain valves in piping upstream and downstream of each control valve installed in a three-valve manifold and for each control valve larger than NPS 2 .

E. Install pressure temperature taps in piping upstream and downstream of each control valve larger than NPS 1 inch .

F. Valve Orientation:

1. Where possible, install globe and ball valves installed in horizontal piping with stems upright and not more than 15 degrees off of vertical, not inverted.
2. Install valves in a position to allow full stem movement.
3. Where possible, install butterfly valves that are installed in horizontal piping with stems in horizontal position and with low point of disc opening with direction of flow.

G. Clearance:

1. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support of valves that cannot be handled by service personnel without hoisting mechanism.

2. Install valves with at least 12 inches (300 mm) of clear space around valve and between valves and adjacent surfaces.

H. Threaded Valves:

1. Note internal length of threads in valve ends, and proximity of valve internal seat or wall, to determine how far pipe should be threaded into valve.
2. Align threads at point of assembly.
3. Apply thread compound to external pipe threads, except where dry seal threading is specified.
4. Assemble joint, wrench tight. Apply wrench on valve end as pipe is being threaded.

I. Flanged Valves:

1. Align flange surfaces parallel.
2. Assemble joints by sequencing bolt tightening to make initial contact of flanges and gaskets as flat and parallel as possible. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Tighten bolts gradually and uniformly with a torque wrench.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect electrical devices and components to electrical grounding system. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection.

B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with valve identification on valve.

3.8 CLEANING

A. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels, and other foreign materials from exposed interior and exterior surfaces.

B. Wash and shine glazing.

C. Polish glossy surfaces to a clean shine.

3.9 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

A. Control Valve Checkout:

1. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
2. Check valves for proper location and accessibility.
3. Check valves for proper installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.
4. Verify that control valves are installed correctly for flow direction.
5. Verify that valve body attachment is properly secured and sealed.
6. Verify that valve actuator and linkage attachment are secure.
7. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed, and connected to correct power source.
8. Verify that valve ball, disc, and plug travel are unobstructed.
9. After piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before insulating and balancing, inspect each valve for leaks. Adjust or replace packing to stop leaks. Replace the valve if leaks persist.

3.10 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING

A. Stroke and adjust control valves following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed back to 100 percent open.

B. Stroke control valves with pilot positioners. Adjust valve and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so valve is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed, and 100 percent open at proper air pressures.

C. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time of less than 30 seconds.

D. For control valves equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

END OF SECTION 230923.11

SECTION 23 09 23.12- CONTROL DAMPERS

PART 1- GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes the following types of control dampers and actuators for DDC systems:

1. Rectangular control dampers.
2. General control-damper actuator requirements.
3. Electric and electronic actuators.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230923 "Direct-Digital Control System for HVAC" for control equipment and software, relays, electrical power devices, uninterruptible power supply units, wire, and cable.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. DDC: Direct-digital control.

B. RMS: Root-mean-square value of alternating voltage, which is the square root of the mean value of the square of the voltage values during a complete cycle.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
4. Installation instructions, including factors affecting performance.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Include diagrams for air and process signal tubing.
5. Include diagrams for pneumatic signal and main air tubing.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plan drawings and corresponding product installation details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Product installation location shown in relationship to room, duct, and equipment.
2. Size and location of wall access panels for control dampers and actuators installed behind walls.
3. Size and location of ceiling access panels for control dampers and actuators installed above inaccessible ceilings.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For control dampers to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Available Manufacturers: Manufacturer shall be a company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum five (5) years experience. Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include:

1. Ruskin
2. Greenheck
3. Nailor
4. NCA
5. Price Industries
6. Vent Products

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label products to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code where required by authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Ground Fault: Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition when suitably grounded.

D. Backup Power Source: Systems and equipment served by a backup power source shall have associated control damper actuators served from a backup power source.

E. Environmental Conditions:

1. Provide electric control-damper actuators, with protective enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Electric control-damper actuators not available with integral enclosures, complying with requirements indicated, shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures.

    a. Hazardous Locations: Explosion-proof rating for condition.

F. Selection Criteria:

1. Control dampers shall be suitable for operation at following conditions:

    a. Supply Air: -40 deg. F to 185 deg. F at 3” wg
    b. Return Air: -40 deg. F to 185 deg. F at 2” wg.
    c. Outdoor Air: -40 deg. F to 185 deg. F at 2” wg
    d. Mixed Air: -40 deg. F to 185 deg. F 2” wg.
    e. Exhaust Air: -40 deg. F to 185 deg. F at 2” wg.

2. Fail positions unless otherwise indicated:

    a. Supply Air: Last position.
    b. Return Air: Open.
    c. Outdoor Air: Close.
    d. Exhaust Air: Close.
    e. Face and Bypass: Close to Bypass

3. Dampers shall have stable operation throughout full range of operation, from design to minimum airflow over varying pressures and temperatures encountered.
4. Select modulating dampers for a pressure drop of 2 percent of fan total static pressure unless otherwise indicated.

5. Two-position dampers shall be full size of duct or equipment connection unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 RECTANGULAR CONTROL DAMPERS

A. General Requirements:

1. Unless otherwise indicated, use parallel blade configuration for two-position control, equipment isolation service, and when mixing two airstreams. For other applications, use opposed blade configuration.
2. Factory assemble multiple damper sections to provide a single damper assembly of size required by the application.

B. Rectangular Dampers with Aluminum Airfoil Blades:

1. Performance:

a. Leakage: AMCA 511, Class 1A. Leakage shall not exceed 3 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-in. wg differential static pressure.
b. Pressure Drop: 0.05-in. wg at 1500 fpm across a 24-by-24-inch damper when tested according to AMCA 500-D, figure 5.3.
c. Velocity: Up to 6000 fpm.
d. Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
e. Pressure Rating: Damper close-off pressure equal to fan shutoff pressure with a maximum blade deflection of 1/200 of blade length.
f. Damper shall have AMCA seal for both air leakage and air performance.

2. Construction:

a. Frame:

1) Material: ASTM B211, Alloy 6063 T5 extruded-aluminum profiles, 0.07 inch thick.
2) Hat-shaped channel with integral flange(s). Mating face shall be a minimum of 1 inch.
3) Width not less than 5 inches.

b. Blades:

1) Hollow, airfoil, extruded aluminum.
2) Parallel or opposed blade configuration as required by application.
3) Material: ASTM B211, Alloy 6063 T5 aluminum, 0.07 inch thick.
4) Width not to exceed 6 inches.
5) Length as required by close-off pressure, not to exceed 48 inches.

c. Seals:

1) Blades: Replaceable, mechanically attached extruded silicone, vinyl, or plastic composite.
2) Jambs: Stainless steel, compression type.

d. Axles: 0.5-inch-diameter plated or stainless steel, mechanically attached to blades.
e. Bearings:

1) Molded synthetic or stainless-steel sleeve mounted in frame.
2) Where blade axles are installed in vertical position, provide thrust bearings.

f. Linkage:

1) Concealed in frame.
2) Constructed of aluminum and plated or stainless steel.
3) Hardware: Stainless steel.

g. Transition:

1) For round and flat oval duct applications, provide damper assembly with integral transitions to mate to adjoining field connection.
2) Factory mount damper in a sleeve with a close transition to mate to field connection.
3) Damper size and sleeve shall be connection size plus 2 inches.
4) Sleeve length shall be not less than 12 inches for dampers without jackshafts and shall be not less than 16 inches for dampers with jackshafts.
5) Sleeve material shall match adjacent duct.

3. Airflow Measurement:

a. Where indicated, provide damper assembly with integral airflow monitoring.
b. Zero- to 10-V dc or 4- to 20-mA scaled output signal for remote monitoring of actual airflow.
c. Accuracy shall be within 5 percent of the actual flow rate between the range of minimum and design airflow. For applications with a large variation in range between the minimum and design airflow, configure the damper sections and flow measurement assembly as required to comply with the stated accuracy over the entire modulating range.
d. Provide a straightening device as part of the flow measurement assembly to achieve the specified accuracy with configuration indicated.
e. Suitable for operation in untreated and unfiltered air.
f. Provide temperature and altitude compensation and correction to maintain accuracy over temperature range encountered at site altitude.
g. Provide automatic zeroing feature.

4. Airflow Control:

   a. Where indicated, provide damper assembly with integral airflow measurement and control.
   b. A factory-furnished and -calibrated controller shall be programmed, in nonvolatile EPROM, with application-specific airflow set point and range.
   c. The controller and actuator shall communicate to control the desired airflow.
   d. The controller shall receive a zero- to 10-V dc input signal and report a zero- to 20-mA output signal that is proportional to the airflow.
   e. Airflow measurement and control range shall be suitable for operation between 150 to 2000 fpm.
   f. Ambient Operating Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 140 deg F.
   g. Ambient Operating Humidity Range: 5 to 95 percent relative humidity, non-condensing.
   h. Provide unit with control transformer rated for not less than 85 VA. Provide transformer with primary and secondary protection and primary disconnecting means. Coordinate requirements with field power connection.
   i. Provide screw terminals for interface to field wiring.
   j. Factory mount electronics within a NEMA 250, Type 1 painted steel enclosure.

2.4 GENERAL CONTROL-DAMPER ACTUATORS REQUIREMENTS

A. Actuators shall operate related damper(s) with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action and proper speed of response at velocity and pressure conditions to which the damper is subjected.

B. Actuators shall produce sufficient power and torque to close off against the maximum system pressures encountered. Actuators shall be sized to close off against the fan shutoff pressure as a minimum requirement.

C. The total damper area operated by an actuator shall not exceed 80 percent of manufacturer's maximum area rating.

D. Provide one actuator for each damper assembly where possible. Multiple actuators required to drive a single damper assembly shall operate in unison.

E. Avoid the use of excessively oversized actuators which could overdrive and cause linkage failure when the damper blade has reached either its full open or closed position.

F. Use jackshafts and shaft couplings in lieu of blade-to-blade linkages when driving axially aligned damper sections.

G. Provide mounting hardware and linkages for connecting actuator to damper.

H. Select actuators to fail in desired position in the event of a power failure.

2.5 ELECTRIC AND ELECTRONIC ACTUATORS

A. Type: Motor operated, with or without gears, electric and electronic.

B. Voltage:

1. Voltage selection is delegated to professional designing control system.
2. Actuator shall deliver torque required for continuous uniform movement of controlled device from limit to limit when operated at rated voltage.
3. Actuator shall function properly within a range of 85 to 120 percent of nameplate voltage.

C. Construction:

1. Less Than 100 W: Fiber or reinforced nylon gears with steel shaft, copper alloy or nylon bearings, and pressed steel enclosures.
2. 100 up to 400 W: Gears ground steel, oil immersed, shaft-hardened steel running in bronze, copper alloy, or ball bearings. Operator and gear trains shall be totally enclosed in dustproof cast-iron, cast-steel, or cast-aluminum housing.
3. Greater Than 400 W: Totally enclosed reversible induction motors with auxiliary hand crank and permanently lubricated bearings.

D. Field Adjustment:

1. Spring return actuators shall be easily switchable from fail open to fail closed in the field without replacement.
2. Provide gear-type actuators with an external manual adjustment mechanism to allow manual positioning of the damper when the actuator is not powered.

E. Two-Position Actuators: Single direction, spring return or reversing type.

F. Modulating Actuators:

1. Capable of stopping at all points across full range, and starting in either direction from any point in range.
2. Control Input Signal:

    a. Three Point, Tristate, or Floating Point: Clockwise and counter-clockwise inputs. One input drives actuator to open position, and other input drives actuator to close position. No signal of either input remains in last position.
    b. Proportional: Actuator drives proportional to input signal and modulates throughout its angle of rotation. Suitable for zero- to 10- or 4- to 20-mA signals.
    c. Pulse Width Modulation (PWM): Actuator drives to a specified position according to a pulse duration (length) of signal from a dry-contact closure, triac sink or source controller.
    d. Programmable Multi-Function:

1) Control input, position feedback, and running time shall be factory or field programmable.
2) Diagnostic feedback of hunting or oscillation, mechanical overload, mechanical travel, and mechanical load limit.
3) Service data, including at a minimum, number of hours powered and number of hours in motion.

G. Position Feedback:
1. Equip modulating actuators with a position feedback through current or voltage signal for remote monitoring.
2. Provide a position indicator and graduated scale on each actuator indicating open and closed travel limits.

H. Fail-Safe:

1. Where indicated, provide actuator to fail to an end position.
2. Internal spring return mechanism to drive controlled device to an end position (open or close) on loss of power.
3. Batteries, capacitors, and other non-mechanical forms of fail-safe operation are acceptable only where uniquely indicated.

I. Integral Overload Protection:

1. Provide against overload throughout the entire operating range in both directions.
2. Electronic overload, digital rotation sensing circuitry, mechanical end switches, or magnetic clutches are acceptable methods of protection.

J. Damper Attachment:

1. Unless otherwise required for damper interface, provide actuator designed to be directly coupled to damper shaft without need for connecting linkages.
2. Attach actuator to damper drive shaft in a way that ensures maximum transfer of power and torque without slippage.
3. Bolt and set screw method of attachment is acceptable only if provided with at least two points of attachment.

K. Temperature and Humidity:

1. Temperature: Suitable for operating temperature range encountered by application with minimum operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 120 deg F.
2. Humidity: Suitable for humidity range encountered by application; minimum operating range shall be from 5 to 95 percent relative humidity, non-condensing.

L. Enclosure:

1. Suitable for ambient conditions encountered by application.
2. NEMA 250, Type 2 for indoor and protected applications.

3. NEMA 250, Type 4 or Type 4X for outdoor and unprotected applications.
4. Provide actuator enclosure with a heater and controller where required by application.

M. Stroke Time:

1. Operate damper from fully closed to fully open within 60 seconds.
2. Operate damper from fully open to fully closed within 60 seconds.
3. Move damper to failed position within 30 seconds.
4. Select operating speed to be compatible with equipment and system operation.
5. Actuators operating in smoke control systems comply with governing code and NFPA requirements.

N. Sound:

1. Spring Return: 62 dBA.
2. Non-Spring Return: 45 dBA.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for dampers and instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.

C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 CONTROL-DAMPER APPLICATIONS

A. Control Dampers:

1. Rectangular Exhaust Air Duct Applications with SMACNA Construction Class up to 3” wg. and Velocities to 3000 fpm: Rectangular dampers with aluminum airfoil blades
2. Rectangular Outdoor Air Duct Applications with SMACNA Construction Class up to 3” wg. and Velocities to 3000 fpm: Rectangular dampers with aluminum airfoil blades

3. Rectangular Return Air Duct Applications with SMACNA Construction Class up to 3" wg. and Velocities to 3000 fpm: Rectangular dampers with aluminum airfoil blades.

4. Rectangular Supply Air Duct Applications with SMACNA Construction up to 3" wg. and Velocities to 3000 fpm: Rectangular dampers with aluminum airfoil blades.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy most stringent requirements indicated.

B. Properly support dampers and actuators, tubing, wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment per requirements for seismic zone.

C. Provide ceiling, floor, roof, and wall openings and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.

D. Seal penetrations made in fire-rated and acoustically rated assemblies.

E. Fastening Hardware:

1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, or other tools that will cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for assembling and tightening nuts.
2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.

F. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

G. Corrosive Environments:

1. Use products that are suitable for environment to which they will be subjected.
2. If possible, avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive environments, including, but not limited to, the following:

    a. Laboratory exhaust airstreams.
    b. Process exhaust airstreams.

3. Use Type 316 stainless-steel tubing and fittings when in contact with a corrosive environment.

4. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive environment, use Type 316 stainless-steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment.
5. Where actuators are located in a corrosive environment and are not corrosive resistant from manufacturer, field install products in a NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

3.4 ELECTRIC POWER

A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.

B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."

C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

3.5 CONTROL DAMPERS

A. Install smooth transitions, not exceeding 30 degrees, to dampers smaller than adjacent duct. Install transitions as close to damper as possible but at distance to avoid interference and impact to performance. Consult manufacturer for recommended clearance.

B. Clearance:

1. Locate dampers for easy access and provide separate support of dampers that cannot be handled by service personnel without hoisting mechanism.
2. Install dampers with at least 24 inches of clear space on sides of dampers requiring service access.

C. Service Access:

1. Dampers and actuators shall be accessible for visual inspection and service.
2. Install access door(s) in duct or equipment located upstream of damper to allow service personnel to hand clean any portion of damper, linkage, and actuator. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

D. Install dampers straight and true, level in all planes, and square in all dimensions. Install supplementary structural steel reinforcement for large multiple-section dampers if factory support alone cannot handle loading.

E. Attach actuator(s) to damper drive shaft.

F. For duct-mounted and equipment-mounted dampers installed outside of equipment, install a visible and accessible indication of damper position from outside.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect electrical devices and components to electrical grounding system. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with damper identification on damper near actuator(s).

3.8 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

A. Control-Damper Checkout:

1. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
2. Check dampers for proper location and accessibility.
3. Check instrument tubing for proper isolation, fittings, slope, dirt legs, drains, material, and support.
4. For pneumatic products, verify air supply for each product is properly installed.
5. For pneumatic dampers, verify that pressure gages are provided in each air line to damper actuator and positioner.
6. Verify that control dampers are installed correctly for flow direction.
7. Verify that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
8. Verify that damper frame attachment is properly secured and sealed.
9. Verify that damper actuator and linkage attachment are secure.
10. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed, and connected to correct power source.
11. Verify that damper blade travel is unobstructed.

3.9 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING:

A. Stroke and adjust control dampers following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed back to 100 percent open.

B. Stroke control dampers with pilot positioners. Adjust damper and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so damper is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed, and 100 percent open at proper air pressure.

C. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time of less than 30 seconds.

D. For control dampers equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

END OF SECTION 230923.12

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 09 23.27- TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Air temperature sensors.
2. Combination air temperature sensors and switches.
3. Air temperature switches.
4. Air temperature RTD transmitters.
5. Liquid temperature sensors.
6. Liquid temperature switches.
7. Liquid temperature transmitters.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230923 "Direct-Digital Control System for HVAC" for control equipment and software, relays, electrical power devices, uninterruptible power supply units, wire, and cable.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. HART (Highway Addressable Remote Transducer) Protocol: The global standard for sending and receiving digital information across analog wires between smart devices and control or monitoring systems through bidirectional communication that provides data access between intelligent field instruments and host systems. A host can be any software application from a technician's hand-held device or laptop to a plant's process control, asset management, safety, or other system using any control platform.

B. RTD: Resistance temperature detector.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.

3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
4. Installation operation and maintenance instructions, including factors affecting performance.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Include number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring, cable, and tubing ends.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each product requiring a certificate.

B. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Environmental Conditions:

1. Instruments shall operate without performance degradation under the ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified and encountered for installed location.

a. If instrument alone cannot meet requirement, install instrument in a protective enclosure that is isolated and protected from conditions impacting performance. Enclosure shall be internally insulated, electrically heated and cooled, filtered, and ventilated as required by instrument and application.

2. See Section 230923 – Direct Digital Control System for HVAC

2.2 AIR TEMPERATURE SENSORS

A. Platinum RTDs: Common Requirements:

1. 100 or 1000 ohms at zero deg C and a temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C.

2. Two-wire, PTFE-insulated, 22-gage stranded copper leads.
3. Performance Characteristics:

    a. Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F.
    b. Interchangeable Accuracy: At 32 deg F within 0.5 deg F
    c. Repeatability: Within 0.5 deg F
    d. Self-Heating: Negligible.

4. Transmitter Requirements:

    a. Transmitter optional for 1000-ohm RTD, contingent on compliance with end-to-end control accuracy.

B. Platinum RTD, Single-Point Air Temperature Duct Sensors:

1. 1000 ohms.
2. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F
3. Probe: Single-point sensor with a stainless-steel sheath.
4. Length: As required by application to achieve tip at midpoint of air tunnel, up to 18 inches. Enclosure: Junction box with removable cover; NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor applications and Type 4 for outdoor applications.
5. Gasket for attachment to duct or equipment to seal penetration airtight.
6. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch,

C. Platinum RTD, Air Temperature Averaging Sensors:

1. 1000 ohms.
2. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F.
3. Multiple sensors to provide average temperature across entire length of sensor.
4. Rigid probe of aluminum, brass, copper, or stainless-steel sheath.
5. Flexible probe of aluminum, brass, copper, or stainless-steel sheath and formable to a 4-inch radius.
6. Length: As required by application to cover entire cross section of air tunnel.
7. Enclosure: Junction box with removable cover; NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor applications and Type 4 for outdoor applications.
8. Gasket for attachment to duct or equipment to seal penetration airtight.
9. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch

D. Platinum RTD Outdoor Air Temperature Sensors:

1. 1000 ohms.
2. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F.
3. Probe: Single-point sensor with a stainless-steel sheath.
4. Solar Shield: Stainless steel.
5. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4 or 4X junction box or combination conduit and outlet box with removable cover and gasket.
6. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch trade size.

E. Platinum RTD Space Air Temperature Sensors:

1. 1000 ohms.
2. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 212 deg F
3. Sensor assembly shall include a temperature sensing element mounted under a bright white, non-yellowing, plastic cover.
4. Provide a mounting plate that is compatible with the surface shape that it is mounted to and electrical box used.
5. Concealed wiring connection.

F. Space Air Temperature Sensors for Use with DDC Controllers Controlling Terminal Units:

1. 1000-ohm platinum RTD.

2. Temperature Transmitter Requirements:

   a. Mating transmitters optional for 1000-ohm RTD and thermistor, contingent on compliance with end-to-end control accuracy.

3. Provide sensor with local control.

   a. Local override to turn HVAC on.
   b. Local adjustment of temperature set point.
   c. Both features shall be capable of manual override through control system operator.

2.3 COMBINATION AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR AND SWITCH

A. Source Limitations: Obtain temperature-measuring sensors and transmitters and airflow from single manufacturer.

B. Combination temperature sensor and switch in same instrument.

C. Air Temperature Switch:

1. Factory preset set point of 38 deg F. Field-adjustable set point from 30 to 44 deg F.
2. Responsive to coldest 12-inch section of sensor length.
3. DPST latching relay rated at 25 A and 120-V ac, with powered controller, coil, and manual rest at panel. Wire one leg to fan start circuit and other leg to signal a remote alarm.

D. Air Temperature Sensor:

1. Temperature-averaging type over sensor length. Length to be determined by installing trade to provide uniform coverage over air tunnel. Consult manufacturer for recommendations.
2. Platinum RTD with a value of 1000 ohms at zero deg C and a temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C.
3. Accuracy: Within 0.9 deg F.
4. Output Signal: 4 to 20 mA for connection to remote monitoring.
5. Encase RTDs in a flexible nominal 0.375-inch-diameter sheath constructed of brass.
6. Lead wires shall be 18-gage AWG copper.
7. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4.

2.4 AIR TEMPERATURE SWITCHES

A. Thermostat and Switch for Low Temperature Control in Duct Applications:

1. Description:

   a. Two-position control.
   b. Field-adjustable set point.
   c. Manual reset.
   d. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2. Performance:

   a. Operating Temperature Range: 15 to 55 deg F.
   b. Temperature Differential: 5 deg F, non-adjustable and additive.
   c. Enclosure Ambient Temperature: Minus 20 to 140 deg F.
   d. Sensing Element Maximum Temperature: 250 deg F.
   e. Voltage: 120-V ac.
   f. Current: 16 FLA.
   g. Switch Type: Two SPDT snap switches operate on coldest 12-inch section along element length.

3. Construction:

   a. Vapor-Filled Sensing Element: Nominal 20 feet long.
   b. Dual Temperature Scale: Fahrenheit and Celsius visible on face.
   c. Set-Point Adjustment: Screw.
   d. Enclosure: Painted metal, NEMA 250, Type 1.
   e. Electrical Connections: Screw terminals.
   f. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch trade size.

B. Thermostat and Switch for High Temperature Control in Duct Applications:

1. Source Limitations: Obtain temperature-measuring sensors and transmitters and airflow from single manufacturer.
2. Description:

    a. Two-position control.
    b. Field-adjustable set point.
    c. Manual reset.
    d. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

3. Performance:

    a. Temperature Range: 100 to 160 deg F.
    b. Temperature Differential: 5 deg F.
    c. Ambient Temperature: Zero to 260 deg F.
    d. Voltage: 120-V ac.
    e. Current: 16 FLA.
    f. Switch Type: SPDT snap switch.

4. Construction:

    a. Sensing Element: Helical bimetal.
    b. Enclosure: Metal, NEMA 250, Type 1.
    c. Electrical Connections: Screw terminals.
    d. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch trade size.

2.5 AIR TEMPERATURE RTD TRANSMITTERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain temperature-measuring sensors and transmitters and airflow from single manufacturer.

B. House electronics in NEMA 250 enclosure.

1. Duct: Type 2.
2. Outdoor: Type 4X.
3. Space: Type 1.

C. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch.

D. Functional Characteristics:

1. Input:

    a. 100-ohm platinum RTD temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C, two-wire sensors.
    b. 1000-ohm platinum RTD temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C, two-wire sensors.

2. Span (Adjustable):

    a. Space: 40 to 90 deg F.
    b. Supply Air Cooling and Heating: 40 to 120 deg F.
    c. Supply Air Cooling Only: 40 to 90 deg F.
    d. Supply Air Heating Only: 40 to 120 deg F.
    e. Exhaust Air: 50 to 100 deg F.
    f. Return Air: 50 to 100 deg F.
    g. Mixed Air: Minus 40 to 140 deg F.
    h. Outdoor: Minus 40 to 140 deg F.

3. Output: 4- to 20-mA dc, linear with temperature; RFI insensitive; minimum drive load of 600 ohms at 24-V dc.
4. Zero and span field adjustments, plus or minus 5 percent of span. Minimum span of 50 deg F.
5. Match sensor with temperature transmitter and factory calibrate together.

E. Performance Characteristics:

1. Calibration Accuracy: Within 0.1 percent of the span.
2. Stability: Within 0.2 percent of the span for at least 6 months.
3. Combined Accuracy: Within 0.5 percent.

2.6 LIQUID TEMPERATURE SENSORS

A. RTD:

1. Description:

    a. Platinum with a value of 1000 ohms at zero deg C and a temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C.
    b. Encase RTD in a stainless-steel sheath with a 0.25-inch OD.
    c. Sensor Length: 4, 6, or 8 inches as required by application.
    d. Process Connection: Threaded, NPS 1/2.
    e. Two-stranded copper lead wires.
    f. Powder-coated steel enclosure, NEMA 250, Type 4.
    g. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch.
    h. Performance Characteristics:

        1) Range: Minus 40 to 210 deg F.
        2) Interchangeable Accuracy: Within 0.54 deg F at 32 deg F.

B. Thermowells:

1. Stem: Straight or stepped shank formed from solid bar stock.
2. Material: Brass or stainless steel.

3. Process Connection: Threaded, NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
4. Sensor Connection: Threaded, NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
5. Bore: Sized to accommodate sensor with tight tolerance between sensor and well.
6. Furnish thermowells installed in insulated pipes and equipment with an extended neck.
7. Length: 4, 6, or 8 inches (100, 150, or 200 mm) as required by application.
8. Thermowells furnished with heat-transfer compound to eliminate air gap between wall of sensor and thermowell and to reduce time constant.

2.7 LIQUID TEMPERATURE SWITCHES

A. Thermostat and Switch for Temperature Control in Pipe Applications:

1. Description:

   a. Two-position control.
   b. Field-adjustable set point.
   c. Manual reset.
   d. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2. Performance:

   a. Operating Temperature Range: 65 to 200 deg F (18 to 3 deg C).
   b. Temperature Differential Deadband: 5 to 30 deg F (3 to 17 deg C), adjustable.
   c. Enclosure Ambient Temperature: 150 deg F (66 deg C).
   d. Sensing Element Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1379 kPa).
   e. Voltage: 120-V ac.
   f. Current: 8 FLA.
   g. Switch Type: SPDT snap switch.

3. Construction:

   a. Vapor-Filled Immersion Element: Copper, nominal 3 inches long.
   b. Temperature Scale: Fahrenheit, visible on face.
   c. Set-Point Adjustment: Screw.
   d. Enclosure: Painted metal, NEMA 250, Type 1.
   e. Electrical Connections: Screw terminals.
   f. Conduit Connection: 3/4-inch.

2.8 LIQUID TEMPERATURE TRANSMITTERS

A. House electronics in NEMA 250, Type 4 or Type 4X enclosure.

B. Enclosure Connection: 1/2-inch trade size.

C. Functional Characteristics:

1. Input: 100-ohm platinum RTD temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C, two- or three-wire sensors.
2. Default Span (Adjustable):

    a. Chilled Water: Zero to 100 deg F.
    b. Condenser Water: Zero to 120 deg F.
    c. Heating Hot Water: 32 to 212 deg F.
    d. Heat Recovery: Zero to 120 deg F.

3. Output: 4- to 20-mA dc, linear with temperature; RFI insensitive; minimum drive load of 600 ohms at 24-V dc.
4. Zero and span field adjustments, plus or minus 5 percent of span. Minimum span of 50 deg F.
5. Match sensor with temperature transmitter and factory calibrate together. Each matched sensor and transmitter set shall include factory calibration data traceable to NIST.

D. Performance Characteristics:

1. Calibration Accuracy: Within 0.1 percent of the span.
2. Stability: Within 0.2 percent of the span for at least 6 months.
3. Combined Accuracy: Within 0.5 percent.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections before installation.

C. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.

D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.

B. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping, wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment when subjected to a force.

C. Fastening Hardware:

1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening nuts.
2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.

D. Install products in locations that are accessible and that permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Using Agency's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

E. Corrosive Environments:

1. Use products that are suitable for environment to which they are subjected.
2. If possible, avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive environments.
3. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive environment, use Type 316 stainless-steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment.
4. Where instruments are located in a corrosive environment and are not corrosive resistant from manufacturer, field install products in a NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

3.3 ELECTRIC POWER

A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.

B. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

3.4 TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENT INSTALLATIONS

A. Mounting Location:

1. Roughing In:

    a. Outline instrument mounting locations before setting instruments and routing cable, wiring, tubing, and conduit to final location.
    b. Provide independent inspection to confirm that proposed mounting locations comply with requirements indicated and approved submittals.

        1) Indicate dimensioned locations with mounting height for all surface-mounted products on Shop Drawings.
        2) Do not begin installation without submittal approval of mounting location.

    c. Complete installation rough-in only after confirmation by independent inspection is complete and approval of location is documented for review by Using Agency and Architect on request.

2. Install switches and transmitters for air and liquid temperature associated with individual air-handling units and associated connected ductwork and piping near air-handling units co-located in air-handling unit system control panel to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for inspection and service.
3. Install liquid and steam temperature switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
4. Install air temperature switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
5. Mount switches and transmitters on walls, floor-supported freestanding pipe stands, or floor-supported structural support frames. Use manufacturer's mounting brackets to accommodate field mounting. Securely support and brace products to prevent vibration and movement.

B. Special Mounting Requirements:

1. Protect products installed outdoors from solar radiation, building and wind effect with stand-offs and shields constructed of Type 316 stainless.
2. Temperature instruments having performance impacted by temperature of mounting substrate shall be isolated with an insulating barrier located between instrument and substrate to eliminate effect. Where instruments requiring insulation are located in finished space, conceal insulating barrier in a cover matching the instrument cover.

C. Mounting Height:

1. Mount temperature instruments in user-occupied space to match mounting height of light switches unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Mounting height shall comply with codes and accessibility requirements.

2. Mount switches and transmitters located in mechanical equipment rooms and other similar space not subject to code or state and Federal accessibility requirements within a range of 42 to 72 inches above the adjacent floor, grade, or service catwalk or platform.

    a. Make every effort to mount at 60 inches.

D. Seal penetrations to ductwork, plenums, and air-moving equipment to comply with duct static-pressure class and leakage and seal classes indicated using neoprene gaskets or grommets.

E. Space Temperature Sensor Installation:

1. Conceal assembly in an electrical box of sufficient size to house sensor and transmitter, if provided.
2. Install electrical box with a faceplate to match sensor cover if sensor cover does not completely cover electrical box.
3. In finished areas, recess electrical box within wall.
4. In unfinished areas, electrical box may be surface mounted if electrical light switches are surface mounted. Use a cast-aluminum electric box for surface-mounted installations.
5. Align electrical box with other electrical devices such as visual alarms and light switches located in the vicinity to provide a neat and well-thought-out arrangement. Where possible, align in both horizontal and vertical axis.

F. Outdoor Air Temperature Sensor Installation:

1. Mount sensor in a discrete location facing north.
2. Protect installed sensor from solar radiation and other influences that could impact performance.
3. If required to have a transmitter, mount transmitter remote from sensor in an accessible and serviceable location indoors.

G. Single-Point Duct Temperature Sensor Installation:

1. Install single-point-type, duct-mounted, supply- and return-air temperature sensors. Install sensors in ducts with sensitive portion of the element installed in center of duct cross section and located to sense near average temperature. Do not exceed 24 inches in sensor length.
2. Install return-air sensor in location that senses return-air temperature without influence from outdoor or mixed air.
3. Rigidly support sensor to duct and seal penetration airtight.
4. If required to have transmitter, mount transmitter remote from sensor at accessible and serviceable location.

H. Averaging Duct Temperature Sensor Installation:

1. Install averaging-type air temperature sensor for temperature sensors located within air-handling units, similar equipment, and large ducts with air tunnel cross-sectional area of 20 sq. ft. and larger.
2. Install sensor length to maintain coverage over entire cross-sectional area. Install multiple sensors where required to maintain the minimum coverage.
3. Fasten and support sensor with manufacturer-furnished clips to keep sensor taut throughout entire length.
4. If required to have transmitter, mount transmitter in an accessible and serviceable location.

I. Low-Limit Air Temperature Switch Installation:

1. Install multiple low-limit switches to maintain coverage over entire cross-sectional area of air tunnel.
2. Fasten and support sensing element with manufacturer-furnished clips to keep element taut throughout entire length.
3. Mount switches outside of airstream at a location and mounting height to provide easy access for switch set-point adjustment and manual reset.
4. Install on entering side of cooling coil unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

J. Liquid Temperature Sensor Installation:

1. Assembly shall include sensor, thermowell and connection head.
2. For pipe NPS 4 and larger, install sensor and thermowell length to extend into pipe between 50 to 75 percent of pipe cross section.
3. For pipe smaller than NPS 4:

    a. Install reducers to increase pipe size to NPS 4 at point of thermowell installation.
    b. For pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3, thermowell and sensor may be installed at pipe elbow or tee to achieve manufacturer-recommended immersion depth in lieu of increasing pipe size.
    c. Minimum insertion depth shall be 2-1/2 inches.

4. Install matching thermowell.
5. Fill thermowell with heat-transfer fluid before inserting sensor.
6. Tip of spring-loaded sensors shall contact inside of thermowell.
7. For insulated piping, install thermowells with extension neck to extend beyond face of insulation.
8. Install thermowell in top dead center of horizontal pipe positioned in an accessible location to allow for inspection and replacement. If top dead center location is not possible due to field constraints, install thermowell at location along top half of pipe.
9. For applications with transmitters, mount transmitter remote from sensor in an accessible and serviceable location from floor, service platform or catwalk.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection.

B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with instrument identification and on face of ceiling directly below instruments concealed above ceilings.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels, and other foreign materials from exposed interior and exterior surfaces.

B. Wash and shine glazing.

C. Polish glossy surfaces to a clean shine.

3.7 CHECK-OUT PROCEDURES

A. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.

B. Check temperature instruments for proper location and accessibility.

C. Verify sensing element type and proper material.

D. Verify location and length.

E. Verify that wiring is correct and secure.

3.8 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING

A. Description:

1. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with calibration documentation.
2. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
3. For each analog instrument, make a three-point test of calibration for both linearity and accuracy.
4. Equipment and procedures used for calibration shall meet instrument manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.

6. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall have accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. For example, an installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an instrument with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
7. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by manufacturer.
8. If after calibration indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance instruments.
9. Comply with field-testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE Guideline 11, "Field Testing of HVAC Control Components," in the absence of specific requirements and to supplement requirements indicated.

B. Analog Signals:

1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of operating span using a precision-resistance source.

C. Digital Signals:

1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact.

D. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.

E. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.

F. Transmitters:

1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistance source.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and installations, including connections.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Perform according to manufacturer's written instruction.

2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Using Agency's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain temperature instruments in conjunction with the requirements in Section 23 09 23 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."

END OF SECTION 230923.27

SECTION 23 21 13- HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes pipe and fitting materials, joining methods, and specialties for the following:

1. Hot-water heating piping.
2. Chilled-water piping.
3. Air Control Devices
4. Expansion Tanks
5. Buffer Tanks
6. Makeup-water piping.
7. Condensate-drain piping.
8. Blowdown-drain piping.
9. Air-vent piping.
10. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.
11. Glycol Make-up Package

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 23 Section "Hydronic Pumps" for pumps, motors, and accessories for hydronic piping.

2. Division 23 Section "HVAC System Valves" for system valves.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature:

1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 175 at 200 deg F (93 deg C).
2. Chilled-Water Piping: 175 at 200 deg F (93 deg C).
3. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig (552 kPa) at 150 deg F (66 deg C).
4. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F (66 deg C).
5. Blowdown-Drain Piping: 200 deg F (93 deg C).
6. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F (93 deg C).
7. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
   1. Pressure-seal fittings.
   2. Valves. Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
   3. Air control devices.
   4. Chemical treatment.
   5. Hydronic specialties.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail, at 1/4 (1:50) scale, the piping layout, fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Qualification Data: For Installer.

E. Field quality-control test reports.

F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

   1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
   2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

C. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 01.

1.5 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B)]

B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A).

C. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Anvil International, Inc.
    b. S. P. Fittings; a division of Star Pipe Products.
    c. Victaulic Company of America.

D. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; type, grade, and wall thickness as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

F. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.

G. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:

1. Material Group: 1.1.
2. End Connections: Butt welding.
3. Facings: Raised face.

H. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Anvil International, Inc.
   b. Central Sprinkler Company; a division of Tyco Fire & Building Products.
   c. National Fittings, Inc.
   d. S. P. Fittings; a division of Star Pipe Products.
   e. Victaulic Company of America.

2. Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 47/A 47M, Grade 32510 malleable iron; ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A 106, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
3. Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and synthetic rubber gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.

I. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.

1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.

   a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
   b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.

B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

G. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

2.4 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. Description: Combination fitting of copper-alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.

B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.

C. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
b. Central Plastics Company.
c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; AquaSpec Commercial Products Division.

2. Factory-fabricated union assembly, for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C).

D. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
b. Central Plastics Company.
c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Factory-fabricated companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.

E. Dielectric-Flange Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
b. Calpico, Inc.
c. Central Plastics Company.
d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

2. Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
3. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.

F. Dielectric Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Calpico, Inc.
b. Lochinvar Corporation.

2. Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).

G. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
d. Victaulic Company of America.

2. Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).

2.5 AIR CONTROL DEVICES

A. Manual Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Amtrol, Inc.
b. Nexus
c. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
d. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
e. Taco.
f. Spirotherm

2. Body: Bronze.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8 (DN 6).
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F (107 deg C).

B. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Amtrol, Inc.
b. Nexus
c. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
d. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
e. Taco
f. Spirotherm

2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4 (DN 8).
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).

C. Coalescing Medium Type Air and Dirt Separators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
b. Armstrong
c. Spirotherm

2. Tank: Welded steel; ASME constructed and labeled for 150-psig minimum working pressure and 225 deg F maximum operating temperature.

3. Coalescing Medium: Copper or stainless steel
4. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged connections for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
5. Bottom Tap Blowdown: Threaded bottom tap with quarter turn ball valve for periodic flushing.
6. Side Tap Blowdown: Threaded side tap with quarter turn ball valve for periodic flushing.
7. Size: Match system flow capacity.
8. Venting: Provide a venting chamber to protect the mechanisms within the automatic air vent from being contaminated by dirt and debris.
9. Performance: Air eliminator shall be capable of removing 100% of the free and entrained air and 98% of the dissolved air.

2.6 DIAPHRAGM AND BLADDER-TYPE EXPANSION TANKS:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Amtrol, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
    d. Taco.

2. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature. Factory test with taps fabricated and supports installed and labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
3. Diaphragm or Bladder: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
4. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.

2.7 BUFFER TANKS:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Wessels, Inc
    b. Hanson Tank, Inc.
    c. NST, Niles Steel Tank

2. Tank: Welded carbon steel or stainless steel, with internal baffle rated for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 450 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating

temperature. Factory test with taps fabricated and supports installed and labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

3. Connections: Grooved or Flanged based on attached piping system.
4. Exterior Finish: Rust Inhibitive Primer
5. Vent Connection: ¾" NPT, top mounted.
6. Drain Connection: 1" NPT, bottom mounted.

2.8 GLYCOL MAKE-UP PACKAGE

A. The contractor shall supply and install, as indicated on the plans and in the specifications, a prefabricated, automatic and autonomous make-up package for the glycol system.

B. The package shall be designed to occupy a minimum amount of floor space (refer to the appropriate submittal data) to operate on a standard 110 V, 60 Hz electrical circuit, and to maintain a fill pressure in the glycol system of 40 psig (adjustable).

C. It shall feature a cut-off and alarm arrangement which will stop the pump in case of excessive pressure, or a low solution level, and activate an audible (which can be silenced) and a visual alarm. A 110 V signal shall also be available for a remote alarm.

D. A translucent 18-gallon or larger polyethylene solution container, complete with lid, shall be mounted on the pumping assembly and shall include a strainer and a shut off valve. A ½ in. NPT glycol solution recovery line shall be piped in from the system relief valve outlet to the solution container, through its lid in such a way that the lid can be removed for filling and mixing.

2.9 HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).

B. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).

C. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

D. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: EPDM, BUNA-N (Nitrile) or Hypalon
2. End Connections: Mild steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
3. Axial Compression: 2”
4. Axial Elongation: 1.375”
5. Transverse Movement: 1.375”
6. CWP Rating: 225 psig
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. See Piping Schedule on Drawings

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicate piping locations and arrangements if such were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.

L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 (DN 20) ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 (DN 20) threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.

M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.

N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.

O. Install branch connections to mains using tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.

P. Install valves according to Division 23 Section "HVAC System Valves"

Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.

S. Install strainers on inlet side of each control valve, pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, in-line pump, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4 (DN 20) nipple and ball valve in blowdown connection of strainers NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger. Match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2 (DN 50).

T. Identify piping as specified in Division 23 Section "HVAC System Identification"

3.3 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger, support, and anchor devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" and on the drawings.

B. Seismic restraints are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

C. Install hangers for steel piping with the maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes as scheduled and detailed on the drawings.

D. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper tubing with the maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes as scheduled and detailed on the drawings.

E. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot (3-m) intervals between floors.

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.

B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.

F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.

H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

I. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.

3.5 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.

B. Install automatic air vents where indicated on the drawings. Pipe vent discharge to floor.

C. Install air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve.

D. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.

B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.

C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.

D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections according to Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:

1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.

3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.

B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:

1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
6. Prepare written report of testing.

C. Perform the following before operating the system:

1. Open manual valves fully.
2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232113

SECTION 23 21 23 - HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Close-coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.

B. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.

B. Shop Drawings: Show pump layout and connections. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.

1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain hydronic pumps through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of hydronic pumps and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Manufacturer's Preparation for Shipping: Clean flanges and exposed machined metal surfaces and treat with anticorrosion compound after assembly and testing. Protect flanges, pipe openings, and nozzles with wooden flange covers or with screwed-in plugs.

B. Store pumps in dry location.

C. Retain protective covers for flanges and protective coatings during storage.

D. Protect bearings and couplings against damage from sand, grit, and other foreign matter.

E. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Mechanical Seals: One mechanical seal(s) for each pump.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 CLOSE-COUPLED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
2. Aurora Pump; Division of Pentair Pump Group.
3. Bell & Gossett; Div. of ITT Industries.
4. Grundfos Pumps Corporation.
5. PACO Pumps.
6. Patterson Pump Co.; a Subsidiary of The Gorman-Rupp Co.
7. Peerless Pump; a Member of the Sterling Fluid Systems Group.
8. Taco, Inc.

B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally or vertically. Rate pump for 175-psig (1204-kPa) minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F (107 deg C)

C. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, replaceable bronze wear rings, and threaded companion-flange connections.
2. Impeller: ASTM B584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For constant-speed pumps, trim impeller to match specified performance.
3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
4. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and EPT bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
5. Seal: Packing seal consisting of stuffing box with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
6. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings.

D. Motor: Single speed and rigidly mounted to pump casing.

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.

C. Examine foundations and housekeeping pads for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 CONCRETE BASES

A. Install concrete bases of dimensions indicated for pumps and controllers. Refer to Division 23 Section "Common Work Results for HVAC."

1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around full perimeter of base.
2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

B. Cast-in-place concrete materials and placement requirements are specified in Division 03.

3.3 PUMP INSTALLATION

A. Comply with HI 1.4 Install pumps with access for periodic maintenance including removal of motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.

B. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.

C. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and elastomeric hangers of sufficient size to support pump weight. Vibration isolation devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Fabricate brackets or supports as required. Hanger and support materials are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.4 ALIGNMENT

A. Align pump and motor shafts and piping connections after setting on foundation, grout has been set and foundation bolts have been tightened, and piping connections have been made.

B. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.

C. Adjust pump and motor shafts for angular and offset alignment by methods specified in HI 1.1-1.5, "Centrifugal Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.

D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.

E. Install check valve on discharge side of pumps.

F. Install strainer and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.

G. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.

H. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge, at integral pressure-gage tapping, or install single gage with multiple input selector valve.

I. Install electrical connections for power, controls, and devices.

J. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Sections

K. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Sections

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Check piping connections for tightness.
3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:

    a. Verify bearing lubrication.
    b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
    c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.

5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
6. Start motor.
7. Open discharge valve slowly.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 232123

This page is intentionally left blank.

SECTION 23 31 13- METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Duct liner.
5. Sealants and gaskets.
6. Hangers and supports.
7. Seismic-restraint devices.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in the "Duct Work Schedule" provided in the drawings.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Double wall rectangular and or round ductwork
3. Sealants and gaskets.
4. Seismic-restraint devices.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.

2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation.

C. Welding certificates when welding of any kind is required for duct fabrication, support or installation.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Transverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-5, "Longitudinal Seams - Rectangular Ducts," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 2, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Lindab Inc.
    b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    c. SEMCO Incorporated.
    d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
    e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.

B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Transverse Joints - Round Duct," for static-pressure class, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Seams - Round Duct and Fittings," for static-pressure class, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

E. Diverging-Flow Fittings: Fabricate with a reduced entrance to branch taps with no excess material projecting from body onto branch tap entrance.

F. Elbows: Fabricate in die-formed or segmented construction. Fabricate bend radius of die-formed, and segmented elbows one and one-half times elbow diameter. Unless elbow construction type is specifically indicated, fabricate elbows as follows:

1. Segmented Elbows: Welded construction complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible," unless otherwise indicated. Construct segmented round elbow as follows:

PRESSURE CLASS	MAXIMUM VELOCITY	MIN. NUMBER OF PIECES	MIN. R/D* RATIO
1”	1000	3	0.50
2”	1500	3	1.00
2”	1500	4	0.75
3” and Higher	2500	4	1.50
3” and Higher	2500	5	1.00

* R/D Ratio = Radius/Diameter Ratio

2. Round Elbows, 8 Inches (200 mm) and Smaller: Fabricated die-formed elbows or segmented for 45- and 90-degree. Fabricate nonstandard bend-angle configuration or nonstandard diameter elbows with gored construction.

3. 3” Pressure Class and Higher Round Elbows, 9 and larger: Segmented construction.

4. 2” Pressure Class and Lower Round Elbows, 14” diameter and smaller: Use adjustable segmented elbows.

2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60 (Z180).
2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.

C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.

D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch (6-mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

2.4 DUCT LINER

A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, ASTM C 1338, ASTM G21, ASTM G22, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. CertainTeed Corporation; Insulation Group.
   b. Johns Manville.
   c. Knauf Insulation.
   d. Owens Corning.

2. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:

   a. Type I, Flexible: 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.039 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature. ASTM C 518 test method.
   b. Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.033 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature. ASTM C 518 test method.

3. Sound Absorption. Tested in accordance with ASTM C 423 and ASTM E 795:

Minimum Sound Absorption Coefficients at octave band center frequencies (Hz)							
Thickness in. (mm)	**125**	**250**	**500**	**1000**	**2000**	**4000**	**NRC**
½" (13mm)	0.07	0.20	0.44	0.66	0.84	0.93	0.55
1" (25 mm)	0.08	0.25	0.49	0.84	0.86	0.90	0.60
1½" (38 mm)	0.10	0.36	0.61	0.83	0.90	0.92	0.70
2" (51 mm)	0.20	0.53	0.79	0.94	0.95	0.97	0.80

4. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and

erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.

5. Operating temperature to 250° F (121° C).
6. Solvent or Water Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.

B. Insulation Pins and Washers:

1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or G60 zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) or 0.135-inch- (3.5-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) galvanized carbon-steel washer.
2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-(0.41-mm-) thick G60 galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.

C. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-19, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."

1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
6. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches (100 mm) from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches (300 mm) transversely; at 3 inches (75 mm) from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches (450 mm) longitudinally.
7. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:

    a. Fan discharges.
    b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.

8. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS

A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. Flame Spread: <5
7. Smoke Developed: <5
8. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
9. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
10. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
11. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

C. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
6. Water resistant.
7. Mold and mildew resistant.
8. Flame Spread: <5
9. Smoke Developed: <5
10. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
11. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive or negative.
12. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
13. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.

E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg (0.14 L/s per sq. m at 250 Pa) and shall be rated for 10-inch wg (2500-Pa) static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot or Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Hanger Rods for Outdoors or Corrosive Enviroments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1 (Table 4-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.

E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.

F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:

1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

2.7 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
3. Hilti Corp.
4. Kinetics Noise Control.
5. Loos & Co.; Cableware Division.
6. Mason Industries.
7. TOLCO; a brand of NIBCO INC.
8. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.

B. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.

C. Channel Support System: Shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces and with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end. Include matching components and corrosion-resistant coating.

D. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603, galvanized for galvanized duct or ASTM A 492, stainless-steel cables for stainless steel duct, with end connections made of cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with an automatic-locking and clamping device or double-cable clips.

E. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.

B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.

D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.

E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch (25 mm), plus allowance for insulation thickness.

I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.

J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).

K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.

L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.

B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.

C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.

D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.

E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

F. Provide “paint-grip” or chemically etched surface for galvanized duct work that requires field painting.

3.3 DUCT SEALING

A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes as indicated on the drawings in the duct schedule.

3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Hangers and Supports."

B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.

1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.

C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1 (Table 4-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches (610 mm) of each elbow and within 48 inches (1200 mm) of each branch intersection.

D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet (5 m).

F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.5 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT-DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Install ducts with hangers and braces designed to support the duct and to restrain against seismic forces required by applicable building codes. Comply with SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."

1. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet (12 m) o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet (24 m) o.c.
2. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet (3.7 m).

B. Select seismic-restraint devices with capacities adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads.

C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.

D. Install cable restraints on ducts that are suspended with vibration isolators.

E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing and restraints to structure, to flanges of beams, to upper truss chords of bar joists, or to concrete members.

G. Drilling for and Setting Anchors:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcement or embedded items during drilling. Notify the Architect if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior applications and stainless-steel anchors for applications exposed to weather.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.7 PAINTING

A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Leakage Tests:

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
2. Test the following systems:

    a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 3-Inch wg (750 Pa): Test representative duct sections, totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.

3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.

C. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 START UP

A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.10 DUCT SCHEDULE

A. Refer to the **Duct Schedule** on the drawings.

END OF SECTION 233113

SECTION 23 33 00 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Manual volume dampers.
3. Control dampers.
4. Fire dampers.
5. Smoke dampers.
6. Flange connectors.
7. Turning vanes.
8. Duct-mounted access doors.
9. Duct access panel assemblies.
10. Flexible connectors.
11. Duct accessory hardware.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 233346 "Flexible Ducts" for insulated and non-insulated flexible ducts.
2. Section 233723 "HVAC Gravity Ventilators" for roof-mounted ventilator caps.
3. Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.
4. Section 284621.13 "Conventional Fire-Alarm Systems" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop, dynamic insertion loss, and self-generated noise data. Include breakout noise calculations for high-transmission-loss casings.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. <Double click to insert sustainable design text for ASHRAE 62.1.>

C. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories' fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:

    a. Special fittings.
    b. Manual volume damper installations.
    c. Control-damper installations.
    d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor-damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
    e. Duct security bars.

    f. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, or BIM model, drawn to scale, and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

B. Source quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

A. Description: Gravity balanced.

B. Performance:

1. Maximum Air Velocity: [1000 fpm (5.1 m/s)] [1250 fpm (6.4 m/s)] [2000 fpm (10 m/s)] [3000 fpm (15 m/s)] <Insert value>.

2. Maximum System Pressure: [1 inch wg (0.25 kPa)] [2 inches wg (0.5 kPa)] [3 inches wg (0.8 kPa)] [6 inches wg (1.5 kPa)] <Insert value>.
3. [AMCA Certification: Test and rate in accordance with AMCA 511.]
4. Leakage:

    a. Class IA: Leakage shall not exceed 3 cfm/sq. ft. (15.2 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.
    b. Class I: Leakage shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. (20 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.
    c. Class II: Leakage shall not exceed 10 cfm/sq. ft. (51 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.
    d. Class III: Leakage shall not exceed 40 cfm/sq. ft. (203 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.

C. Construction:

1. Frame:

    a. Hat shaped.
    b. [16-gauge- (1.6-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel] [10-gauge- (3.5-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel] [0.093-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick extruded aluminum] [18-gauge- (1.3-mm-) thick stainless steel] <Insert value and frame material type>, with welded or mechanically attached corners[and mounting flange].

2. Blades:

    a. Multiple single-piece blades.
    b. [Center] [Off-center] [End] pivoted, maximum 6-inch (150-mm) width, [16-gauge- (1.6-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel] [0.050-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick aluminum sheet] [26-gauge (0.48-mm) Type 304 stainless steel] [noncombustible, tear-resistant, neoprene-coated fiberglass] <Insert value and blade material type> with sealed edges.

3. Blade Action: Parallel.

D. Blade Seals: [Felt] [Vinyl foam] [Extruded vinyl, mechanically locked] [Neoprene, mechanically locked].

E. Blade Axles:

1. Material: [Nonferrous metal] [Galvanized steel] [Plated steel] [Stainless steel] [Nonmetallic] [Aluminum].
2. Diameter: [0.20 inch (5 mm)] <Insert dimension>.

F. Tie Bars and Brackets: [Aluminum] [Galvanized steel].

G. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

H. Bearings: [Steel ball] [Brass sleeve] [or] [synthetic pivot bushings].

I. Damper Actuator - Electric:

1. Electric - [120 V ac] [24 V ac].
2. UL 873 plenum rated.
3. [Two position] [Fully modulating] [with fail-safe spring return].

    a. Sufficient motor torque [and spring torque]to drive damper fully closed with adequate force to achieve required damper seal.
    b. Minimum 90-degree drive rotation.

4. Clockwise or counterclockwise drive rotation as required for application.
5. Environmental Operating Range:

    a. Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 130 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 55 deg C).
    b. Humidity: 5 to 95 percent relative humidity noncondensing.

6. Environmental Enclosure: NEMA 2.
7. Actuator to be factory mounted and provided with a single-point wiring connection.

J. Damper Actuator - Pneumatic:

1. Operated by 0 to 20 psig (0 to 138 kPa) pneumatic signal.
2. [Two position with] [Fully modulating with positioner and] fail-safe spring return.

    a. Sufficient power and spring force to drive damper fully closed with adequate force to achieve required damper seal.
    b. Maximum 15-second full-stroke closure.

3. Actuator to be factory mounted.

K. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring:

1. Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
2. Electrical Connection: [115 V, single phase, 60 Hz] [24 V, 60 Hz] <Insert values>.

L. Accessories:

1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
3. Chain pulls.
4. Screen Mounting:

    a. [Front] [Rear] mounted in sleeve.

        1) Sleeve Thickness: 20 gauge (1.0 mm) minimum.
        2) Sleeve Length: 6 inches (150 mm) minimum.

5. Screen Material: [Galvanized steel] [Aluminum].
6. Screen Type: [Bird] [Insect].
7. 90-degree stops.

2.3 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
2. Performance:

    a. Leakage Rating Class III: Leakage not exceeding 40 cfm/sq. ft. (203 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.

3. Construction:

    a. Linkage out of airstream.
    b. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.

4. Frames:

    a. Hat-shaped, [16-gauge- (1.6-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel] [18-gauge- (1.3-mm-) thick stainless steel].
    b. Mitered and welded corners.
    c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

5. Blades:

    a. Multiple or single blade.
    b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    d. [Galvanized] [Stainless] steel; 16 gauge (1.6 mm) thick.

6. Blade Axles: [Galvanized steel] [Stainless steel] [Nonferrous metal].
7. Bearings:

    a. [Oil-impregnated bronze] [Molded synthetic] [Oil-impregnated stainless steel sleeve] [Stainless steel sleeve].
    b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearing at each end of every blade.

8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
9. Locking device to hold damper blades in a fixed position without vibration.

B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
2. Performance:

    a. Leakage Rating Class III: Leakage not exceeding 40 cfm/sq. ft. (203 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.

3. Construction:

    a. Linkage out of airstream.

b. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.

4. Frames:

a. Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, aluminum sheet channels.
b. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

5. Blades:

a. Multiple or single blade.
b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick aluminum sheet.
e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick extruded aluminum.

6. Blade Axles: [Galvanized steel] [Stainless steel] [Nonferrous metal].
7. Bearings:

a. [Oil-impregnated bronze] [Molded synthetic] [Stainless steel sleeve].
b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearing at each end of every blade.

8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
9. Locking device to hold damper blades in a fixed position without vibration.

C. Jackshaft:

1. Size: [0.5-inch (13-mm)] [1-inch (25-mm)] diameter.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

D. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle, made of 3/32-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch (19-mm) hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.4 CONTROL DAMPERS

A. General Requirements:

1. Unless otherwise indicated, use parallel-blade configuration for two-position control, equipment isolation service, and when mixing two airstreams. For other applications, use opposed-blade configuration.
2. Factory or field assemble multiple damper sections to provide a single damper assembly of size required by the application.

B. Performance:

1. [AMCA Certification: Test and rate in accordance with AMCA 511.]
2. Leakage:

    a. Class IA: Leakage shall not exceed 3 cfm/sq. ft. (15.2 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.
    b. Class I: Leakage shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. (20 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.
    c. Class II: Leakage shall not exceed 10 cfm/sq. ft. (51 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.
    d. Class III: Leakage shall not exceed 40 cfm/sq. ft. (203 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.

3. Pressure Drop: 0.05 inch wg (12.5 Pa) at 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) across a 24-by-24-inch (600-by-600-mm) damper when tested in accordance with AMCA 500-D, Figure 5.3.
4. Velocity: Up to [3000 fpm (15 m/s)] <Insert velocity>.
5. Temperature: Minus 25 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 32 to plus 83 deg C).
6. Pressure Rating: Damper close-off pressure equal to fan shutoff pressure with a maximum blade deflection of 1/200 of blade length.

C. Construction:

1. Linkage out of airstream.
2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
3. Frames:

    a. Hat, U, or angle shaped.
    b. [0.08-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick extruded aluminum] [16-gauge- (1.6-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel] [18-gauge- (1.3-mm-) thick stainless steel].
    c. [Mitered and welded] [Interlocking, gusseted] corners.
    d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

4. Blades:

    a. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of [6 inches (150 mm)] [8 inches (200 mm)].
    b. [Parallel] [Opposed]-blade design.
    c. [Galvanized steel] [Stainless steel] [Aluminum].
    d. [16-gauge- (1.6-mm-) thick single skin] [or] [14-gauge- (1.9-mm-) thick air foil dual skin].

5. Blade Edging Seals:

    a. Replaceable [Closed-cell neoprene] [PVC].
    b. Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.

6. Blade Jamb Seal: Flexible stainless steel, compression type.
7. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch (13-mm) diameter; [galvanized] [stainless] steel.

8. Blade-Linkage Hardware: Zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings. Linkage mounted out of air stream.
9. Bearings:

    a. [Oil-impregnated bronze] [Molded synthetic] [Oil-impregnated stainless steel sleeve] [Stainless steel sleeve].
    b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

D. Damper Actuator - Electric:

1. Electric - [120 V ac] [24 V ac].
2. UL 873, plenum rated.
3. [Two position] [Fully modulating] [with fail-safe spring return].

    a. Sufficient motor torque [and spring torque]to drive damper fully open and fully closed with adequate force to achieve required damper seal.
    b. Minimum 90-degree drive rotation.

4. Clockwise or counterclockwise drive rotation as required for application.
5. Environmental Operating Range:

    a. Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 130 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 55 deg C).
    b. Humidity: 5 to 95 percent relative humidity noncondensing.

6. Environmental enclosure: NEMA 2.
7. Actuator to be factory mounted and provided with a single-point wiring connection.

E. Damper Actuator - Pneumatic:

1. Operated by 0 to 20 psig (0 to 138 kPa) pneumatic signal.
2. [Two position with] [Fully modulating with positioner and] fail-safe spring return.

    a. Sufficient power and spring force to drive damper fully open and fully closed with adequate force to achieve required damper seal.
    b. Maximum 15-second full-stroke closure.

3. Actuator to be factory mounted.

F. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring:

1. Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
2. Electrical Connection: [115 V, single phase, 60 Hz] [24 V, 60 Hz] <Insert values>.

2.5 FIRE DAMPERS

A. Type: [Static] [and] [dynamic]; rated and labeled in accordance with UL 555 by an NRTL.

B. Closing rating in ducts up to [4-inch wg (1-kPa)] <Insert value> static pressure class and minimum [2000 fpm (10 m/s)] <Insert value> velocity.

C. Fire Rating: [1-1/2] [and] [3] hours.

D. Frame: [Curtain type with blades inside airstream] [Curtain type with blades outside airstream] [Multiple-blade type] [Curtain type with blades outside airstream except when located behind grille where blades may be inside airstream]; fabricated with roll-formed galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners; gauge in accordance with UL listing.

E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, [galvanized sheet] [stainless] steel; gauge in accordance with UL listing.

F. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.

G. Blades: Roll-formed [galvanized sheet steel] [stainless steel], [interlocking] [full-length steel blade connectors]. Material gauge is to be in accordance with UL listing.

H. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless steel closure spring.

I. Heat-Responsive Device:

1. Replaceable, [165 deg F (74 deg C)] [212 deg F (100 deg C)] <Insert temperature> rated, fusible links.
2. [Electric] [Pneumatic], [resettable] [replaceable] link and switch package, factory installed, [165 deg F (74 deg C)] [and] [212 deg F (100 deg C)] <Insert temperature> rated.

2.6 SMOKE DAMPERS

A. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>

B. General Requirements:

1. Label to indicate conformance to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.
2. Label to indicate conformance to NFPA 80 and NFPA 90A by an NRTL.
3. Unless otherwise indicated, use parallel-blade configuration.
4. Factory or field assemble multiple damper sections to provide a single damper assembly of size required by the application.
5. Factory install damper actuator by damper manufacturer as integral part of damper assembly. Coordinate actuator location, mounting, and electrical requirements with damper manufacturer.

C. Performance:

1. [AMCA Certification: Test and rate in accordance with AMCA Publication 511.]
2. Leakage:

a. Class IA: Leakage shall not exceed 3 cfm/sq. ft. (15.2 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.

b. Class I: Leakage shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. (20 L/s/ per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.
c. Class II: Leakage shall not exceed 10 cfm/sq. ft. (51 L/s per sq. m) against 1-inch wg (250-Pa) differential static pressure.

3. Pressure Drop: 0.05 inch wg (12.5 Pa) at 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) across a 24-by-24-inch (600-by-600-mm) damper when tested in accordance with AMCA 500-D, Figure 5.3.
4. Velocity: Up to [3000 fpm (15 m/s)] <Insert velocity>.
5. Temperature: Minus 25 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 32 to plus 83 deg C).
6. Pressure Rating: Damper close-off pressure equal to fan shutoff pressure with a maximum blade deflection of 1/200 of blade length.

D. Construction:

1. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
2. Linkage out of airstream.
3. Frame:

a. Hat shaped.
b. [Galvanized sheet steel] [Stainless steel], with [welded] [interlocking, gusseted] [or] [mechanically attached] corners[and mounting flange].
c. Gauge in accordance with UL listing.

4. Blades:

a. Roll-formed, horizontal, [v-groove] [airfoil], [galvanized sheet steel] [stainless steel] [extruded aluminum].
b. Maximum width and gauge in accordance with UL listing.

5. Blade Edging Seals:

a. Silicone rubber.

6. Blade Jamb Seal: Flexible stainless steel, compression type.
7. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch (13-mm) diameter; [galvanized steel] [stainless steel]; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings. Linkage is to be mounted out of airstream.
8. Bearings:

a. [Oil-impregnated bronze] [Molded synthetic] [Oil-impregnated stainless steel sleeve] [Stainless steel sleeve].

E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application[with factory-furnished silicone caulking]; gauge in accordance with UL listing.

F. Damper Actuator - Electric:

1. Electric - [120 V ac] [24 V ac].
2. UL 873, plenum rated.
3. Designed to operate in smoke-control systems complying with UL 555S requirements.

4. [Two position] [Fully modulating] with fail-safe spring return.

    a. Sufficient motor torque and spring torque to drive damper fully open and fully closed with adequate force to achieve required damper seal.
    b. Maximum 15-second full-stroke closure.
    c. Minimum 90-degree drive rotation.

5. Clockwise or counterclockwise drive rotation as required for application.
6. Environmental Operating Range:

    a. Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 130 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 55 deg C).
    b. Humidity: 5 to 95 percent relative humidity noncondensing.

7. Environmental Enclosure: NEMA 2.
8. Actuator to be factory mounted and provided with single-point wiring connection.

G. Damper Actuator - Pneumatic:

1. Operated by 0 to 20 psig (0 to 138 kPa) pneumatic signal.
2. Designed to operate in smoke-control systems complying with UL 555S requirements.
3. [Two position with] [Fully modulating with positioner and] fail-safe spring return.

    a. Sufficient power and spring force to drive damper fully open and fully closed with adequate force to achieve required damper seal.
    b. Maximum 15-second full-stroke closure.

4. Actuator to be factory mounted.

H. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring:

1. Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
2. Electrical Connection: [115 V, single phase, 60 Hz] [24 V, 60 Hz] <Insert values>.

I. Accessories:

1. Auxiliary switches for [signaling] [fan control] [or] [position indication].
2. [Momentary test switch] [Test and reset switches], [damper] [remote] mounted.
3. Smoke Detector: Integral, factory wired for single-point connection.

2.7 FLANGE CONNECTORS

A. Description: [Add-on] [or] [roll-formed], factory fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.

B. Material: Galvanized steel.

C. Gauge and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.8 TURNING VANES

A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

D. Vane Construction:

1. [Single] [Double] wall.
2. Single wall for ducts up to [48 inches (1200 mm)] <Insert dimension> wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

2.9 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

A. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figure 7-2 (7-2M), "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and Figure 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."

1. Door:

a. Double wall, rectangular.
b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
c. [24-gauge- (0.70-mm-) thick galvanized steel] [or] [0.032-inch (0.81-mm) thick aluminum] [or] [24-gauge- (0.70-mm-) thick stainless steel] <Insert value> door panel.
d. Vision panel.
e. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch (25-by-25-mm) butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
f. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.

2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.

a. 24-gauge- (0.70-mm-) thick galvanized steel or 0.032-inch- (0.81-mm-) thick aluminum <Insert value> frame.

3. Number of Hinges and Locks:

a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches (300 mm) Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
b. Access Doors up to [18 Inches (460 mm)] Square: [Two hinges] [Continuous] and two sash locks.
c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches (600 by 1200 mm): [Three hinges] [Continuous] and two compression latches[with outside and inside handles].
d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches (600 by 1200 mm): [Four hinges] [Continuous] and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

B. Pressure Relief Access Door:

1. Door and Frame Material: Galvanized sheet steel.

a. [24-gauge- (0.70-mm-) thick galvanized steel] [or] [0.032-inch- (0.81-mm-) thick aluminum] [or] [24-gauge- (0.70-mm-) thick stainless steel] <Insert value> door panel.

2. Door: [Single wall] [Double wall with insulation fill] with metal thickness applicable for duct pressure class.
3. Operation: Open outward for positive-pressure ducts and inward for negative-pressure ducts.
4. Factory set at [3.0 to 8.0 inches wg (800 to 2000 Pa)] [10 inches wg (2500 Pa)] <Insert value>.
5. Doors close when pressures are within set-point range.
6. Hinge: Continuous piano.
7. Latches: Cam.
8. Seal: Neoprene or foam rubber.
9. Insulation Fill: [1-inch- (25-mm-)] <Insert dimension> thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

2.10 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

A. Access panels used in cooking applications:

1. Labeled compliant to NFPA 96 for grease duct access doors.
2. Labeled in accordance with UL 1978 by an NRTL.

B. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness [16-gauge (1.6-mm) carbon] [16-gauge (1.6-mm) stainless] <Insert value and steel type> steel.

C. Fasteners: [Carbon] [Stainless] steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.

D. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96, grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F (1093 deg C).

E. Minimum Pressure Rating: [10 inches wg (2500 Pa)] <Insert value> positive or negative.

2.11 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Fire-Performance Characteristics: Adhesives, sealants, fabric materials, and accessory materials shall have flame-spread index not exceeding 25 and smoke-developed index not exceeding 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

C. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.

D. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.

E. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip [3-1/2 inches (89 mm)] [5-3/4 inches (146 mm)] <Insert dimension> wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) wide, [0.028-inch- (0.7-mm-)] <Insert dimension> thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.

F. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.

1. Minimum Weight: [26 oz./sq. yd. (880 g/sq. m)] <Insert value>.
2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch (84 N/mm) in the warp and [360 lbf/inch (63 N/mm)] <Insert value> in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).

G. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.

1. Minimum Weight: [24 oz./sq. yd. (810 g/sq. m)] <Insert value>.
2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch (93 N/mm) in the warp and [440 lbf/inch (77 N/mm)] <Insert value> in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 45 to plus 121 deg C).

H. High-Temperature System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric coated with silicone rubber.

1. Minimum Weight: [16 oz./sq. yd. (542 g/sq. m)] <Insert value>.
2. Tensile Strength: 285 lbf/inch (50 N/mm) in the warp and [185 lbf/inch (32 N/mm)] <Insert value> in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F (Minus 55 to plus 260 deg C).

I. High-Corrosive-Environment System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric with chemical-resistant coating.

1. Minimum Weight: [14 oz./sq. yd. (474 g/sq. m)] <Insert value>.
2. Tensile Strength: 450 lbf/inch (79 N/mm) in the warp and [340 lbf/inch (60 N/mm)] <Insert value> in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F (Minus 55 to plus 260 deg C).

J. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of [1/4-inch (6-mm)] <Insert dimension> movement at start and stop.

2.12 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.

B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

2.13 MATERIALS

A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: [G60 (Z180)] [G90 (Z275)].
2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.

B. Stainless Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A480/A480M, Type 304, and having a [No. 2] <Insert finish designation> finish for concealed ducts and <Insert finish designation> finish for exposed ducts.

C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, one-side bright finish for exposed ducts.

D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M), Alloy 6063, Temper T6.

E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless steel ducts.

F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, [1/4-inch (6-mm)] <Insert dimension> minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; [3/8-inch (10-mm)] <Insert dimension> minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install duct accessories in accordance with applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116 for fibrous-glass ducts.

B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless steel accessories in stainless steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.

C. Install [backdraft] [control] dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.

D. Where multiple damper sections are necessary to achieve required dimensions, provide reinforcement to fully support damper assembly when fully closed at full system design static pressure.

E. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.

1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.

F. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

G. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated and as needed for testing and balancing.

H. Install fire[and smoke] dampers in accordance with UL listing.

I. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:

1. On both sides of duct coils.
2. Upstream[and downstream] from duct filters.
3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
4. At drain pans and seals.
5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
7. At each change in direction and at maximum [50-ft. (15-m)] <Insert value> spacing.
8. Upstream[and downstream] from turning vanes.
9. For grease ducts, install at locations and spacing as required by NFPA 96.

10. Control devices requiring inspection.
11. Elsewhere as indicated.

J. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.

K. Access Door Sizes:

1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches (200 by 125 mm).
2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches (300 by 150 mm).
3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches (460 by 250 mm).
4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches (530 by 355 mm).
5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches (635 by 355 mm).
6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches (635 by 430 mm).

L. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.

M. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

N. For fans developing static pressures of 5 inches wg (1250 Pa) and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.

O. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

P. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch (6-mm) movement during start and stop of fans.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors, and verify that size and location of access doors are adequate to perform required operation.
3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation, and verify that vanes do not move or rattle.
5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 34 16 - CENTRIFUGAL HVAC FANS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backward-inclined centrifugal fans, including airfoil and curved blade fans.
2. Forward-curved centrifugal fans.
3. Square in-line centrifugal fans.
4. Tubular in-line centrifugal fans.
5. Plenum fans.
6. Utility set fans.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators [and seismic restraints]and for designing vibration isolation bases.
5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

C. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. <Double click to insert sustainable design text for ASHRAE 62.1.>

D. Delegated Design Submittal: For vibration isolation[, supports,] [and seismic restraints] indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators[, supports,][, seismic restraints,] [and for designing vibration isolation bases].

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Fan room layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements, drawn to scale, and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: For fans, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Unusual Service Conditions

1. Base fan-performance ratings on the following:

a. Ambient Temperature: <Insert deg F (deg C) dry bulb>.
b. Altitude: <Insert feet (m)> above sea level.
c. Humidity: <Insert deg F (deg C) wet bulb>.
d. <Insert conditions>.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of unit components.

D. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

E. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

F. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design vibration isolation[, supports] [and seismic restraints], including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance and design criteria indicated.

G. Seismic Performance: Centrifugal fans shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to [ASCE/SEI 7] <Insert requirement>. See Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified[and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event]."
2. Component Importance Factor: [1.5] [1.0].

3. Fan Type: [Centrifugal] [Square in-line centrifugal] [Tubular in-line centrifugal] [Plenum] [Plug] [Utility set].
4. Blade Type: [Forward curved] [Backward inclined airfoil] [Backward inclined curved] [Backward inclined flat].
5. Airflow: <Insert cfm (L/s)>.
6. Total Static Pressure: <Insert inches wg (Pa)>.
7. Class: AMCA 99, Section 14, [Class I] [Class II] [Class III].
8. Drive Arrangement: <Insert AMCA arrangement number>.
9. Drive Type: [Belt] [Direct].
10. Discharge Arrangement: <Insert discharge arrangement configuration>.
11. Housing Material: [Reinforced steel] [Shaped fiberglass-reinforced plastic] [Aluminum] [Stainless steel].
12. Housing Coating: [None] [Thermoplastic vinyl] [Epoxy] [Synthetic resin] [Phenolic] [Hot-dip galvanized] [Powder-baked enamel]; <Insert manufacturer's name and trade name>.
13. Wheel Size (Diameter): <Insert inches (mm)>.
14. Wheel Material: [Steel] [Aluminum] [One-piece fiberglass-reinforced plastic] [Stainless steel].
15. Wheel Coating: [None] [Thermoplastic vinyl] [Epoxy] [Synthetic resin] [Phenolic] [Hot-dip galvanized] [Powder-baked enamel]; <Insert manufacturer's name and trade name>.
16. Brake Horsepower: <Insert number>.
17. Fan rpm: <Insert value>.
18. Outlet Velocity: <Insert fpm (m/s)>.
19. Motor:

    a. Motor Enclosure Type: [Open, dripproof] [Totally enclosed, fan cooled] [Explosion proof] [Totally enclosed air over] <Insert motor enclosure type>.
    b. Efficiency: [Insert number] percent.
    c. Service Factor: [100] <Insert number> percent.
    d. Suitable for Use with Variable-Frequency Drive: [Yes] [No].
    e. Electrical Characteristics:

        1) Horsepower: <Insert horsepower>.
        2) RPM: <Insert number>.
        3) Volts: [120] [208] [230] [460] <Insert number>.
        4) Phase: [Single] [Poly].
        5) Hertz: 60.
        6) Full-Load Amperes: <Insert number> A.
        7) Minimum Circuit Ampacity: <Insert number> A.
        8) Maximum Overcurrent Protection: <Insert number> A.

20. Discharge Sound Power:

    a. 1st Octave: <Insert dB>.
    b. 2nd Octave: <Insert dB>.
    c. 3rd Octave: <Insert dB>.
    d. 4th Octave: <Insert dB>.
    e. 5th Octave: <Insert dB>.
    f. 6th Octave: <Insert dB>.
    g. 7th Octave: <Insert dB>.
    h. 8th Octave: <Insert dB>.

21. Inlet Sound Power:

    a. 1st Octave: <Insert dB>.
    b. 2nd Octave: <Insert dB>.
    c. 3rd Octave: <Insert dB>.
    d. 4th Octave: <Insert dB>.
    e. 5th Octave: <Insert dB>.
    f. 6th Octave: <Insert dB>.
    g. 7th Octave: <Insert dB>.
    h. 8th Octave: <Insert dB>.

22. Vibration Isolators:

    a. Type: [Spring] [Restrained spring] <Insert type>.
    b. Static Deflection: [1 inch (25 mm)] <Insert inches (mm)>.

23. Spark-Resistance Class: Classified according to AMCA 99, Section 8 [Type A] [Type B] [Type C].

2.2 BACKWARD-INCLINED CENTRIFUGAL FANS

A. Description:

1. Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -tested, and -finished, [belt-][direct-]driven centrifugal fans, consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor, drive assembly, and support structure. Deliver fans as factory-assembled units, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations.
2. Factory-installed and -wired disconnect switch.

B. Housings:

1. Housing Material: [Reinforced steel] [Shaped fiberglass-reinforced plastic] [Aluminum] [Stainless steel] [See schedule] <Insert material>.
2. Housing Coating: [None] [Thermoplastic vinyl] [Epoxy] [Synthetic resin] [Phenolic] [Hot-dip galvanized] [Powder-baked enamel] [See schedule] <Insert manufacturer's name and trade name>.
3. Housing Assembly: Sideplates[continuously welded][or][spot welded][or][attached by continuous Pittsburgh lock seal or similar seal].

4. Formed panels to make curved-scroll housings with shaped cutoff.
5. Panel Bracing: Steel angle- or channel-iron member supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
6. Horizontally split, bolted-flange housing.
7. Spun inlet cone with flange.
8. Outlet flange.
9. Discharge Arrangement: Fan scroll housing is field rotatable to any of [seven] [eight] discharge positions. Provide fan with discharge positioned in proper direction to minimize connected duct turns.

C. Wheels:

1. Wheel Configuration: [SWSI] [DWDI] construction with a precision-spun curved inlet flange and a backplate fastened to shaft with setscrews. Wheels shall be statically and dynamically balanced, and nonoverloading.
2. Wheel and Blade Material: [Steel] [Aluminum] [One-piece fiberglass-reinforced plastic] [Stainless steel] [See schedule].

    a. Spark-Resistant Construction: Classified according to AMCA 99, Section 8, [Type A] [Type B] [Type C].

3. Wheel and Blade Coating: [None] [Thermoplastic vinyl] [Epoxy] [Synthetic resin] [Phenolic] [Hot-dip galvanized] [Powder-baked enamel] [See schedule] <Insert manufacturer's name and trade name>.
4. Cast-iron or cast-steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with set screws.
5. Backward-Inclined Airfoil Blades:

    a. Aerodynamic design.
    b. Heavy backplate.
    c. Hollow die-formed, airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate.

6. Backward-Inclined Curved Blades:

    a. Curved design.
    b. Heavy backplate.
    c. Single-thickness blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate.

D. Shafts:

1. Statically and dynamically balanced, and selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with protective coating of lubricating oil.
3. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.

E. Bearings:

1. Prelubricated and Sealed Shaft Bearings:

a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type ball bearings.

2. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings, Tapered Roller:

a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, tapered roller bearings with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
b. Extended Lubrication Lines: Extend lines to accessible location.

3. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings, Ball or Roller:

a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
b. Extended Lubrication Lines: Extend lines to accessible location.

F. Belt Drives:

1. Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: [1.5] [1.4] [1.3] [1.2].
3. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
4. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through [5] <Insert number> hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed pitch pulleys for use with motors larger than [5] <Insert number> hp.
5. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
6. Belt Guards: Comply with OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards"; [0.146 inch- (2.7 mm-)] <Insert dimension> thick, [3/4-inch (20-mm)] <Insert dimension> diamond-mesh wire screen, welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short-circuiting vibration isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.
7. Motor Mount: Adjustable for belt tensioning.

G. Motor Enclosure: [Open, dripproof] [Totally enclosed, fan cooled] [Explosion proof] [Totally enclosed, air over] <Insert motor enclosure type>.

H. Accessories:

1. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
2. Scroll Drain Connection: NPS 1 (DN 25) steel pipe coupling welded to low point of fan scroll.
3. Companion Flanges: Rolled flanges for duct connections of same material as housing.
4. Discharge Dampers: Assembly with [parallel] [opposed] blades constructed of two plates formed around, and to, shaft, channel frame, and sealed ball bearings; with blades linked outside of airstream to single control lever of same material as housing.
5. Inlet Screens: Grid screen of same material as housing.
6. Shaft Cooler: Metal disk between bearings and fan wheel, designed to dissipate heat from shaft.
7. Shaft Seals: Airtight seals installed around shaft on drive side of single-width fans.

8. Weather Cover: Enameled-steel sheet with ventilation slots, bolted to housing.
9. Piezometer Ring: Piezometer ring mounted at fan inlet cone for airflow measurement.

2.3 FORWARD-CURVED CENTRIFUGAL FANS

A. Description:

1. Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -tested, and -finished, [belt-] [direct-]driven centrifugal fans, consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor, drive assembly, and support structure.
2. Deliver fans as factory-assembled units, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations.
3. Factory-installed and -wired disconnect switch.

B. Housings:

1. Housing Material: [Reinforced steel] [Shaped fiberglass-reinforced plastic] [Aluminum] [Stainless steel] [See schedule].
2. Housing Coating: [None] [Thermoplastic vinyl] [Epoxy] [Synthetic resin] [Phenolic] [Hot-dip galvanized] [Powder-baked enamel] [See schedule] <Insert manufacturer's name and trade name>.
3. Housing Assembly: Sideplates [continuously welded][or][spot welded][or][attached by continuous Pittsburgh lock seal or similar seal].
4. Formed panels to make curved-scroll housings with shaped cutoff.
5. Panel Bracing: Steel angle- or channel-iron member supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
6. Horizontally split, bolted-flange housing.
7. Spun inlet cone with flange.
8. Outlet flange.
9. Discharge Arrangement: Fan scroll housing field rotatable to any of [seven] [eight] discharge positions. Provide fan with discharge positioned in proper direction to minimize connected duct turns.

C. Wheels:

1. Wheel Configuration: [SWSI] [DWDI] construction with a curved inlet flange, and a backplate fastened to shaft with setscrews.
2. Wheel and Blade Material: [Steel] [Aluminum] [One-piece fiberglass-reinforced plastic] [Stainless steel] [See schedule].

    a. Spark-Resistant Construction: Classified according to AMCA 99, Section 8, [Type A] [Type B] [Type C].

3. Wheel and Blade Coating: [None] [Thermoplastic vinyl] [Epoxy] [Synthetic resin] [Phenolic] [Hot-dip galvanized] [Powder-baked enamel] [See schedule] <Insert manufacturer's name and trade name>.
4. Cast-iron or cast-steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.
5. Forward-Curved Wheels:

a. Black-enameled or galvanized-steel construction with inlet flange, backplate, and shallow blades with inlet and tip curved forward in direction of airflow.
b. Mechanically secured to flange and backplate; cast-steel hub swaged to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.

D. Shafts:

1. Statically and dynamically balanced and selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with protective coating of lubricating oil.
3. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.

E. Bearings:

1. Prelubricated and Sealed Shaft Bearings:

a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type [ball] [roller] bearings.

2. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings, Tapered Roller:

a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, tapered roller bearings with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
b. Extended Lubrication Lines: Extend lines to accessible location.

3. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings, Ball or Roller:

a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
b. Extended Lubrication Lines: Extend lines to accessible location.

F. Belt Drives:

1. Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: [1.5] [1.4] [1.3] [1.2].
3. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
4. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through [5] <Insert number> hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed pitch for use with motors larger than [5] <Insert number> hp.
5. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
6. Belt Guards: Comply with OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards"; [0.146 inch- (2.7 mm-)] <Insert dimension> thick, [3/4-inch (20-mm)] <Insert dimension> diamond-mesh wire screen, welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short-circuiting vibration isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.
7. Motor Mount: Adjustable for belt tensioning.

G. Motor Enclosure: [Open, dripproof] [Totally enclosed, fan cooled] [Totally enclosed, air over] [Explosion-proof].

H. Accessories:

1. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
2. Scroll Drain Connection: NPS 1 (DN 25) steel pipe coupling welded to low point of fan scroll.
3. Companion Flanges: Rolled flanges for duct connections of same material as housing.
4. Discharge Dampers: Assembly with [parallel] [opposed] blades constructed of two plates formed around, and to, shaft, channel frame, and sealed ball bearings; with blades linked outside of airstream to single control lever of same material as housing.
5. Inlet Screens: Grid screen of same material as housing.
6. Shaft Cooler: Metal disk between bearings and fan wheel, designed to dissipate heat from shaft.
7. Shaft Seals: Airtight seals installed around shaft on drive side of single-width fans.
8. Weather Cover: Enameled-steel sheet with ventilation slots, bolted to housing.
9. Piezometer Ring: Piezometer ring mounted at fan inlet cone for airflow measurement.

2.4 SQUARE IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

A. Description: Square in-line centrifugal fans.

B. Housing:

1. Housing Material: [Reinforced steel] [Aluminum] [Stainless steel] [See schedule] <Insert material>.
2. Housing Coating: [None] [Thermoplastic vinyl] [Epoxy] [Synthetic resin] [Phenolic] [Hot-dip galvanized] [Powder-baked enamel] [See schedule] <Insert manufacturer's name and trade name>.
3. Housing Construction: Side panels shall be easily removable for service. Include inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.

C. Direct-Drive Units: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing[; with wheel, inlet cone, and motor on swing-out service door].

D. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosures around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.

E. Fan Wheels: Aluminum airfoil blades welded to aluminum hub.

F. Motor Enclosure: [Open, dripproof] [Totally enclosed, fan cooled] [Totally enclosed, air over] [Explosion-proof] <Insert motor enclosure type>.

G. Accessories:

1. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
2. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
3. Volume-Control Damper: Manually operated with quadrant lock, located in fan outlet.
4. Companion Flanges: For inlet and outlet duct connections.
5. Fan Guards: 1/2- by 1-inch (13- by 25-mm) mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet for units not connected to ductwork.
6. Motor and Drive Cover (Belt Guard): Epoxy-coated steel.
7. Side Discharge: Flange connector and attachment hardware to provide right-angle discharge on side of unit.

2.5 TUBULAR IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

A. Description: Tubular in-line centrifugal fans.

B. Housing:

1. Housing Material: [Reinforced steel] [Shaped fiberglass-reinforced plastic] [Aluminum] [Stainless steel] [See schedule] <Insert material>.
2. Housing Coating: [None] [Thermoplastic vinyl] [Epoxy] [Synthetic resin] [Phenolic] [Hot-dip galvanized] [Powder-baked enamel] [See schedule] <Insert manufacturer's name and trade name>.
3. Housing Construction: Split, spun aluminum with aluminum straightening vanes, inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.

C. Direct-Drive Units: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing[; with wheel, inlet cone, and motor on swing-out service door].

D. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosure around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.

E. Fan Wheels: [Steel] [Aluminum], airfoil blades welded to aluminum hub.

F. Motor Enclosure: [Open, dripproof] [Totally enclosed, fan cooled] [Totally enclosed, air over] [Explosion-proof] <Insert motor enclosure type>.

G. Accessories:

1. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
2. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
3. Volume-Control Damper: Manually operated with quadrant lock, located in fan outlet.
4. Companion Flanges: For inlet and outlet duct connections.
5. Fan Guards: 1/2- by 1-inch (13- by 25-mm) mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet for units not connected to ductwork.
6. Motor and Drive Cover (Belt Guard): Epoxy-coated steel.

2.6 PLENUM FANS

A. Description:

1. Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -tested, and -finished, [belt-] [direct-]driven centrifugal fans, consisting of wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor, drive assembly, and support structure.
2. Deliver fans as factory-assembled units, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations.
3. [Factory-installed and -wired disconnect switch.]

B. Wheels:

1. Wheel Configuration: SWSI construction with curved inlet flange and heavy backplate; fastened to shaft with setscrews.
2. Wheel and Blade Material: [Steel] [Aluminum] [One-piece fiberglass-reinforced plastic] [Stainless steel] [See schedule].

    a. Spark-Resistant Construction: Classified according to AMCA 99, Section 8, [Type A] [Type B] [Type C].

3. Wheel and Blade Coating: [None] [Thermoplastic vinyl] [Epoxy] [Synthetic resin] [Phenolic] [Hot-dip galvanized] [Powder-baked enamel] [See schedule] <Insert manufacturer's name and trade name>.
4. Backward-Inclined Airfoil Blades: Hollow, die-formed, airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate.

C. Shafts:

1. Statically and dynamically balanced, and selected for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with protective coating of lubricating oil.
3. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.

D. Bearings:

1. Prelubricated and Sealed Shaft Bearings:

    a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type ball bearings.
    b. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L(10) at [50,000] [120,000] <Insert number> hours.
    c. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L(10) at [50,000] [120,000] <Insert number> hours.

2. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings, Tapered Roller:

    a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, tapered roller bearings with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing.

b. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L(10) at [50,000] [120,000] <Insert number> hours.
c. Extended Lubrication Lines: Extend lines to accessible location.

3. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings, Ball or Roller:

a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
b. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L(10) at [50,000] [120,000] <Insert number> hours.
c. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L(10) at [50,000] [120,000] <Insert number> hours.
d. Extended Lubrication Lines: Extend lines to accessible location.

E. Belt Drives:

1. Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: [1.5] [1.4] [1.3] [1.2].
3. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
4. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through [5] <Insert number> hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed pitch for use with motors larger than [5] <Insert number> hp.
5. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
6. Belt Guards: Comply with OSHA and fabricate to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards"; [0.146 inch- (2.7 mm-)] <Insert dimension> thick, [3/4-inch (20-mm)] diamond-mesh wire screen welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short-circuiting vibration isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.
7. Motor Mount: Adjustable for belt tensioning.

F. Motor Enclosure: [Open, dripproof] [Totally enclosed, fan cooled] [Totally enclosed, air over] [Explosion proof].

G. Accessories:

1. Inlet Safety Screen: Comply with OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards." Diamond mesh wire screen is welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated.
2. Safety Enclosure: Comply with OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards." Diamond mesh wire screen is welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated.
3. Belt Guard: Comply with OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards." Diamond mesh wire screen is welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated.
4. Inlet Companion Flange: Rolled flanges for duct connections of same material as housing.
5. Shaft Cooler: Metal disk between bearings and fan wheel, designed to dissipate heat from shaft.

6. Shaft Seals: Airtight seals installed around shaft on drive side of single-width fans.
7. Piezometer Ring: Piezometer ring mounted at fan inlet cone for airflow measurement.

2.7 UTILITY SET FANS

A. Description:

1. Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -tested, and -finished, [belt-] [direct-]driven centrifugal fan utility vent sets, consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor, drive assembly, and support structure.

B. Housings:

1. Housing Material: [Reinforced steel] [Shaped fiberglass-reinforced plastic] [Aluminum] [Stainless steel] [See schedule] <Insert material>.
2. Housing Coating: [None] [Themoplastic vinyl] [Epoxy] [Synthetic resin] [Phenolic] [Hot-dip galvanized] [Powder-baked enamel] [See schedule] <Insert manufacturer's name and trade name>.
3. Formed panels to make curved-scroll housings with shaped cutoff.
4. Panel Bracing: Steel angle- or channel-iron member supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
5. Discharge Arrangement: Fan scroll housing field rotatable to any of [seven] [eight] discharge positions. Provide fan with discharge positioned in proper direction to minimize connected duct turns.

C. Wheels:

1. Wheel Configuration: SWSI, with hub keyed to shaft.
2. Wheel and Blade Materials: [Steel] [Aluminum] [One-piece fiberglass-reinforced plastic] [Stainless steel] [See schedule].

    a. Spark-Resistant Construction: Classified according to AMCA 99, Section 8, [Type A] [Type B] [Type C].

3. Wheel and Blade Coating: [None] [Thermoplastic vinyl] [Epoxy] [Synthetic resin] [Phenolic] [Hot-dip galvanized] [Powder-baked enamel] [See schedule] <Insert manufacturer's name and trade name>.
4. Backward-Inclined Airfoil Blades:

    a. Aerodynamic design.
    b. Heavy backplate.
    c. Hollow die-formed, airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate.

5. Backward-Inclined Curved Blades:

    a. Curved design.
    b. Heavy backplate.
    c. Single-thickness blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate.

6. Backward-Inclined Flat Blades:

    a. Flat design.
    b. Heavy backplate.
    c. Single-thickness blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate.

7. Forward-Curved Blades:

    a. Curved design.
    b. Heavy backplate.
    c. Single-thickness blades continuously welded or riveted at tip flange and backplate.

D. Shafts:

1. Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub. First critical speed at least 1.4 times maximum class speed.

E. Bearings:

1. Heavy-duty regreasable ball or roller type in a cast iron pillowblock housing.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, [L(50) of 200,000 hours] [L(10) of 80,000 hours] <Insert life>.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, [L(50) of 200,000 hours] [L(10) of 80,000 hours] <Insert life>.
4. Extend grease fitting to accessible location outside of unit.

F. Belt Drive:

1. Factory mounted, with final alignment and belt adjustment made after installation.
2. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: [1.5] [1.4] [1.3] [1.2].
3. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
4. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through [5] <Insert value> hp; fixed pitch for use with motors larger than [5] <Insert number> hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
5. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
6. Belt Guards: Comply with OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards," [0.146 inch- (2.7 mm-)] <Insert dimension> thick, [3/4-inch (20-mm)] <Insert dimension> diamond-mesh wire screen welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short-circuiting vibration isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.

G. Motor Enclosure: [Open, dripproof] [Totally enclosed, fan cooled] [Explosion-proof] <Insert motor enclosure type>.

H. Accessories:

1. Inlet and Outlet: Flanged.
2. Companion Flanges: Rolled flanges for duct connections of same material as housing.

3. Backdraft Dampers: Gravity actuated with counterweight and interlocking aluminum blades, with felt edges in steel frame installed on fan discharge.
4. Access Door: Gasketed door in scroll with latch-type handles.
5. Scroll Dampers: Single-blade damper installed at fan scroll top with adjustable linkage.
6. Inlet Screens: Removable wire mesh.
7. Outlet Screens: Removable wire mesh.
8. Belt Guard: OSHA-compliant, completely enclosed shaft and drive components.
9. Shaft Cooler: Metal disk between bearings and fan wheel, designed to dissipate heat from shaft.
10. Drain Connections: NPS 3/4 (DN 20) threaded coupling drain connection installed at lowest point of housing.
11. Weather Hoods: Weather resistant with stamped vents over motor and drive compartment.
12. Discharge Dampers: Assembly with [parallel] [opposed] blades constructed of two plates formed around, and to, shaft, channel frame, and sealed ball bearings, with blades linked outside of airstream to single control lever of same material as housing.
13. Grease Collection Trough and Receiver: For restaurant exhaust application.
14. Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.

2.8 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

B. Where variable-frequency drives are indicated or scheduled, provide fan motor compatible with variable-frequency drive.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. [AMCA Certification for Fan Sound Performance Rating: Test, rate, and label in accordance with AMCA 311.]

B. [AMCA Certification for Fan Aerodynamic Performance Ratings: Test, rate, and label in accordance with AMCA 211.]

C. [AMCA Certification for Fan Energy Index (FEI): Test, rate, and label in accordance with AMCA 211.]

D. Operating Limits: Classify fans in accordance with AMCA 99, Section 14.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install centrifugal fans level and plumb.

B. Disassemble and reassemble units, as required for moving to the final location, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Lift and support units with manufacturer's designated lifting or supporting points.

D. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install floor- or roof-mounted centrifugal fans on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Support duct-mounted and other hanging centrifugal fans directly from the building structure, using suitable hanging systems as specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
4. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

E. Curb Support, Field Built-Up: Install roof curb on roof structure, level and secure, according to "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual," detail "Equipment Support Curb," number "SPF-9" (page 1409) and detail "Equipment Support Curb," number "SPF-9S" (page 1410). Install and secure centrifugal fans on curbs, and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction.[Secure units to curb support with anchor bolts.]

F. Curb Support, Prefabricated: Rail-type wood support provided by fan manufacturer.

G. Unit Support: Install centrifugal fans level on structural [curbs] [pilings]. Coordinate with duct connections. [Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction.] [Secure units to structural support with anchor bolts.]

H. Isolation Curb Support: Install centrifugal fans on isolation curbs, and install flexible duct connectors and vibration-isolation[and seismic-control] devices.

1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC".
2. Comply with requirements in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

I. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.

J. Label fans according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 DUCTWORK AND PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Install ducts adjacent to fans to allow service and maintenance.

C. Install piping from scroll drain connection, with trap with seal equal to 1.5 times specified static pressure, to nearest floor drain with pipe sizes matching the drain connection.

D. Install heat tracing on all drain piping subject to freezing temperature and as indicated on Drawings. Furnish and install heat tracing according to Section 230533 "Heat Tracing for HVAC Piping."

3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.

1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.

3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.

B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE:

A. [Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform] [Perform] startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.

3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
4. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
5. For direct-drive fans, verify proper motor rotation direction and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation.
6. For belt-drive fans, disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
7. Adjust belt tension.
8. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
9. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
10. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
11. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation, adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
12. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
13. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B. Adjust belt tension.

C. Lubricate bearings.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.7 CLEANING

A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing and after completing startup service, clean fans internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: [Owner] [Contractor] will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections[with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative].

1. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3. Fans and components will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

A. [Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train] [Train] Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain centrifugal fans.

END OF SECTION

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 34 23 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Ceiling-mounted ventilators.
2. Tube-Axial Fans
3. Constant Pressure Controllers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints.

C. Delegated Design Submittal: For unit hangars and supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale and coordinated with all building trades.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: For fans, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

C. Product Certificates: Submit certificates that specified equipment will withstand required wind forces, from manufacturer.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of unit components.

C. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design vibration isolation, supports, and seismic restraints, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

D. Seismic Performance: HVAC power ventilators shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7. See Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.

2.2 CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS

A. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.

B. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel removable for service.

C. Back-draft damper: Integral.

D. Grille: Painted aluminum, louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew or spring retainer attachment to fan housing.

E. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.

F. Accessories:
   1. Isolation: Rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.

2.3 TUBE-AXIAL FANS

A. Housing: Continuously welded steel powder coated housing with pre-punched inlet and outlet flanges.

B. Fan: Replaceable, cast-aluminum, airfoil blades fastened to cast-aluminum hub; factory set pitch angle of blades.

C. Fan Drive, Direct: Direct-drive motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing.

D. Accessories:
   1. Disconnect Switch: Non-fusible type, with thermal-overload protection.
   2. Variable Frequency Drive
   3. Constant Pressure Controller

2.4 CONSTANT PRESSURE CONTROLLER

A. Control for stairwell pressurization system.

B. Controller shall modulate supply air fan motor speed and the relief air damper.

C. Color touchscreen interface.

D. Adjustable system parameters

E. Supply fan control and monitoring.

F. Relief damper control.

G. High and low pressure warnings.

H. Zone pressure sensor.

I. Dedicated input and relay output for FCCS interface.

J. Dedicated system enable for FACP interface

K. NEMA 4 painted housing.

L. UL864, Standard for Control Unites and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems

M. Modbus RTU RS485 Serial Protocol

N. Two year warranty.

2.5 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. AMCA Certification for Fan Aerodynamic Performance Ratings: Test, rate, and label in accordance with AMCA 211.

B. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.

B. Equipment Mounting:

1. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with zinc-plated hardware. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.
2. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.
3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
4. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

C. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.

D. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.

B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE:

A. Perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
4. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
5. For direct-drive fans, verify proper motor rotation direction and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation.
6. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
7. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.

8. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation, adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
9. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
10. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B. Lubricate bearings.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.7 CLEANING

A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing and after completing startup service, clean fans internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Contractor will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
3. Fans and components will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain centrifugal fans.

END OF SECTION 233423

SECTION 23 36 00 - AIR TERMINAL UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bypass, single-duct air terminal units.
2. Modulating, single-duct air terminal units.
3. Parallel fan-powered air terminal units.
4. Series fan-powered air terminal units.
5. DOAS, series, fan-powered air terminal units.
6. Casing liner.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of air terminal unit.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. <Double click to insert sustainable design text for adhesives.>
2. <Double click to insert sustainable design text for ASHRAE 62.1.>

C. Shop Drawings: For air terminal units.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment[, seismic restraints,] and vibration isolation.

D. Delegated Design Submittal: For vibration isolation[and supports,][and seismic restraints] indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data[signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation].

1. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators[, supports,][and seismic restraints].

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, indicating the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: For air terminal units, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a Qualified Electrical Testing Laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, "Section 6 - Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning."

D. Delegated Design: [Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to] design vibration isolation[, supports,][and seismic restraints], including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

E. Seismic Performance: Air terminal units shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with [ASCE/SEI 7] <Insert requirement>. See Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified[and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event]."
2. Component Importance Factor: [1.5] [1.0].

2.2 BYPASS, SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINAL UNITS

A. Description: Pressure-dependent, diverting-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud. Configuration enables variable volume airflow to individual zones while bypassing the unneeded air to the ceiling plenum for recirculation.

B. Casing: Minimum [20-gauge-] [22-gauge-] <Insert dimension> thick galvanized steel.

1. Casing Liner: Comply with requirements in "Casing Liner" Article below for ["Casing Liner, Fibrous Glass" Paragraph] ["Casing Liner, Flexible Elastomeric" Paragraph] [with "Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating" Subparagraph] [with "Foil-Faced Liner" Subparagraph] [with "Solid Metal Liner" Subparagraph] [with "Perforated Metal Liner" Subparagraph] [with "Specialty Liner" Subparagraph].

C. Diverter Assembly:

1. Damper, shaft, and heavy-duty self-lubricating bearings.

D. Attenuator Section: Casing material and thickness matching associated air terminal unit casing. Provide [absorptive] [packless] attenuator integral with the air terminal unit, with noise transmission loss performance as required in schedules on Drawings.

E. Hydronic Heating Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than [0.1 inch (2.5 mm)] [0.08 inch (2.0 mm)]. Include manual air vent and drain valve. Provide hydronic heating coils for air terminal units scheduled on Drawings.

F. Electric-Resistance Heating Coils: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free of expansion noise and hum, mounted in ceramic inserts in a galvanized-steel housing; with primary automatic, and secondary manual, reset thermal cutouts. Terminate elements in stainless steel, machine-staked terminals secured with stainless steel hardware. Provide electric-resistance heating coils for air terminal units scheduled on Drawings.

1. Stage(s): [One] [Two] [Three].
2. SCR controlled.
3. Access door interlocked disconnect switch.
4. Downstream air temperature sensor with local connection to override discharge-air temperature to not exceed a maximum temperature set point (adjustable).
5. Nickel chrome 80/20 heating elements.
6. Airflow switch for proof of airflow.
7. Fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection (for coils of more than 48 A).
8. Pneumatic-electric switches and relays.
9. Magnetic contactor for each step of control (for three-phase coils).

G. Electric Controls:

1. Electric Damper Actuator: 24 V, [spring-return open] [spring-return closed] [fail in last position] [, with microswitch to enable heating control circuit].
2. Electric Thermostat: Wall-mounted electric type with temperature display in Fahrenheit and Celsius, and space temperature set point.
3. Air Volume Controls: Pressure-dependent volume controls with field-adjustable minimum and maximum position stops.

H. Electronic Controls:

1. Electronic Damper Actuator: 24 V, [spring-return open] [spring-return closed] [capacitor-discharge-return open] [capacitor-discharge-return closed] [fail in last position].

2. Electronic Thermostat: Wall-mounted electronic type with temperature display in Fahrenheit and Celsius, and space temperature set point.
3. Electronic Air Volume Controls: Pressure-dependent volume controls with field-adjustable minimum and maximum position stops.

I. Direct Digital Controls:

Retain "Terminal Unit Controller" and "Room Sensor" and delete "Terminal Unit Controller, Section 230923" subparagraphs below if controllers and room sensor are to be furnished by the air terminal unit manufacturer. Delete "Terminal Unit Controller" and "Room Sensor" and retain "Terminal Unit Controller, Section 230923" subparagraphs if controllers and sensors are provided under Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."

1. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, VAV controller and integrated actuator, and electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes.

First four subparagraphs below are optional features.

a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."

2. Room Sensor: Wall mounted with temperature set-point adjustment and access for connection of portable operator terminal.
3. Terminal Unit Controller, Section 230923: Controller is to be factory mounted and wired by air terminal manufacturer; unit controller, actuators, and room sensors are to be furnished under Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."

J. Control Sequence: See [Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operation for HVAC"] [Drawings].

2.3 MODULATING, SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINAL UNITS

A. Description: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.

B. Casing: Minimum [20-gauge-] [22-gauge-] thick galvanized steel.

1. Casing Liner: Comply with requirements in "Casing Liner" Article below for ["Casing Liner, Fibrous Glass" Paragraph] ["Casing Liner, Flexible Elastomeric" Paragraph] [with "Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating" Subparagraph] [with "Foil-Faced Liner" Subparagraph] [with "Solid Metal Liner" Subparagraph] [with "Perforated Metal Liner" Subparagraph] [with "Specialty Liner" Subparagraph].
2. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections[, size matching inlet size].
4. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.

C. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.

1. Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 rated, [1] [2] percent of nominal airflow at [3-inch wg (750-Pa)] <Insert value> inlet static pressure.

D. Velocity Sensors: Multipoint array with velocity inlet sensors.

E. Attenuator Section: Casing material and thickness matching associated air terminal unit casing. Provide [absorptive] [packless] attenuator integral with the air terminal unit, with noise transmission loss performance as required in schedules on Drawings.

F. Hydronic Heating Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than [0.1 inch (2.5 mm)] [0.08 inch (2.0 mm)]. Include manual air vent and drain valve. Provide hydronic heating coils for air terminal units scheduled on Drawings.

G. Electric-Resistance Heating Coils: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free of expansion noise and hum, mounted in ceramic inserts in a galvanized-steel housing; with primary automatic, and secondary manual, reset thermal cutouts. Terminate elements in stainless steel, machine-staked terminals secured with stainless steel hardware. Provide electric-resistance heating coils for air terminal units scheduled on Drawings.

1. Stage(s): [One] [Two] [Three].
2. SCR controlled.
3. Access door interlocked disconnect switch.
4. Downstream air temperature sensor with local connection to override discharge-air temperature to not exceed a maximum temperature set point (adjustable).
5. Nickel chrome 80/20 heating elements.
6. Airflow switch for proof of airflow.
7. Fan interlock contacts.
8. Fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection (for coils of more than 48 A).
9. Pneumatic-electric switches and relays.
10. Magnetic contactor for each step of control (for three-phase coils).

H. Electric Controls:

1. Electric Damper Actuator: 24 V, [spring-return open] [spring-return closed] [fail in last position].
2. Electric Thermostat: Wall-mounted electronic type with clock display, temperature display in Fahrenheit and Celsius, and space temperature set point.
3. Air Volume Controls: Pressure-dependent volume controls with field-adjustable minimum and maximum position stops.

I. Electronic Controls:

1. Electronic Damper Actuator: 24 V, [spring-return open] [spring-return closed] [capacitor-discharge-return open] [capacitor-discharge-return closed] [fail in last position].
2. Electronic Thermostat: Wall-mounted electronic type with temperature set-point display in Fahrenheit and Celsius.
3. Electronic Air Volume Controller: Pressure-independent analog electronic controller, factory calibrated and field adjustable to minimum and maximum air volumes; provides

consistent airflow to the space in response to electronic thermostat signal while compensating for inlet static-pressure variations of up to 4 inches wg (1000 Pa); includes a multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet.

J. Pneumatic Controls:

1. Pneumatic Damper Actuator: [0 to 13 psig (0 to 90 kPa)] <Insert range> spring range.

2. Pneumatic Thermostat: Wall-mounted pneumatic type [direct acting] [and] [reverse acting] with appropriate mounting hardware.
3. Pneumatic Air Volume Controller: Factory calibrated and field adjustable to minimum and maximum air volumes; provides consistent airflow to the space in response to pneumatic thermostat signal while compensating for inlet static-pressure variations of up to 4 inches wg (1000 Pa); includes a multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet.

K. Direct Digital Controls:

1. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, VAV controller and integrated actuator, and electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes.

   a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
   b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
   c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
   d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."

2. Room Sensor: Wall mounted with [temperature set-point adjustment and]access for connection of portable operator terminal.
3. Terminal Unit Controller, Section 230923: Controller is to be factory mounted and wired by air terminal manufacturer; unit controllers, integrated actuators, and room sensors to be furnished under Section 230923 "Direct Digital Controls (DDC) for HVAC."

L. Control Sequence: See [Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operation for HVAC"] [Drawings] for control sequences.

2.4 PARALLEL FAN-POWERED AIR TERMINAL UNITS

A. Description: Volume-damper assembly and centrifugal fan in parallel arrangement inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud[; low-profile design].

B. Casing: Minimum [20-gauge-] [22-gauge-] thick galvanized steel.

1. Casing Liner: Comply with requirements in "Casing Liner" Article below for ["Casing Liner, Fibrous Glass" Paragraph] ["Casing Liner, Flexible Elastomeric" Paragraph] [with "Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating" Subparagraph] [with "Foil-Faced Liner" Subparagraph] [with "Solid Metal Liner" Subparagraph] [with "Perforated Metal Liner" Subparagraph] [with "Specialty Liner" Subparagraph].

2. Air Inlets: Round stub connections or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections.
4. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket and quarter-turn latches.
5. Fan: Forward-curved centrifugal, located at plenum air inlet.

C. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with flow-sensing ring and peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.

1. Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 rated, [1] [2] percent of nominal airflow at [3-inch wg (750-Pa)] <Insert value> inlet static pressure.

D. Velocity Sensors: Multipoint array with velocity inlet sensors.

E. Fan Motor:

1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
2. Type: [Permanent-split capacitor with SCR for speed adjustment] [Electronically commutated motor].
3. Fan-Motor Assembly Isolation: Rubber isolators.
4. Enclosure: [Open dripproof] [Totally enclosed, fan cooled] <Insert type>.
5. Enclosure Materials: [Cast iron] <Insert material>.
6. Motor Bearings: <Insert requirements>.
7. Unusual Service Conditions:

    a. Ambient Temperature: <Insert deg F (deg C)>.
    b. Altitude: <Insert feet (m)> above sea level.
    c. High humidity.

8. Efficiency: Premium efficient as defined in NEMA MG-1.
9. NEMA Design: <Insert designation>.
10. Service Factor: <Insert value>.
11. Motor Speed: [Single speed] [Variable speed].

    a. Speed Control: Infinitely adjustable with pneumatic-electric and electronic controls.

12. Electrical Characteristics:

    a. Horsepower: <Insert horsepower>.
    b. Volts: [120] [208] [230] [460] <Insert value>.
    c. Phase: [Single] [Poly].
    d. Hertz: 60.
    e. Full-Load Amperes: <Insert value>.
    f. Minimum Circuit Ampacity: <Insert value>.
    g. Maximum Overcurrent Protection: <Insert amperage>.

F. Filters:

1. Polyurethane Foam: [MERV 3] <Insert value>. Minimum efficiency reporting value and average arrestance is in accordance with ASHRAE 52.2.
2. [Flat, Nonpleated] [Pleated] Glass Fiber: Factory-fabricated, self-supported disposable air filter with holding frames. Provide [MERV 6] [MERV 13] <Insert value> filter with minimum efficiency reporting value is to be in accordance with ASHRAE 52.2.

G. Attenuator Section: Casing material and thickness matching associated air terminal unit casing. Provide [absorptive] [packless] attenuator integral with the [plenum inlet] [and] [discharge outlet] of the air terminal unit, of noise transmission loss performance as required in schedules on Drawings.

H. Hydronic Heating Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than [0.1 inch (2.5 mm)] [0.08 inch (2.0 mm)]. Include manual air vent and drain valve. Locate coil in [plenum air inlet] [discharge-air outlet] airstream. Provide hydronic heating coils for air terminal units scheduled on Drawings.

I. Electric-Resistance Heating Coils: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free of expansion noise and hum, mounted in ceramic inserts in a galvanized-steel housing; with primary automatic, and secondary manual, reset thermal cutouts. Terminate elements in stainless steel, machine-staked terminals secured with stainless steel hardware. Locate coil in discharge-air outlet airstream. Provide electric-resistance heating coils for air terminal units scheduled on Drawings.

1. Stage(s): [One] [Two] [Three].
2. SCR controlled.
3. Access door interlocked disconnect switch.
4. Downstream air temperature sensor with local connection to override discharge-air temperature to not exceed a maximum temperature set point (adjustable).
5. Nickel chrome 80/20 heating elements.
6. Airflow switch for proof of airflow.
7. Fan interlock contacts.
8. Fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection (for coils of more than 48 A).
9. Pneumatic-electric switches and relays.
10. Magnetic contactor for each step of control (for three-phase coils).

J. Factory-Mounted and -Wired Controls: Electrical components mounted in control box with removable cover. Incorporate single-point electrical connection to power source.

1. Control Transformer: Factory mounted for control voltage on electric and electronic control units with terminal strip in control box for field wiring of thermostat and power source.
2. Wiring Terminations: Fan and controls to terminal strip. Terminal lugs will match quantities, sizes, and materials of branch-circuit conductors. Enclose terminal lugs in terminal box that is sized in accordance with NFPA 70.
3. Disconnect Switch: Factory-mounted fuse type.

K. Control Panel Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, with access panel sealed from airflow and mounted on side of unit.

L. Electric Controls:

1. Electric Damper Actuator: 24 V, [spring-return open] [spring-return closed] [fail in last position].
2. Electric Thermostat: Wall-mounted electronic type with clock display, temperature display in Fahrenheit and Celsius, and space temperature set point.
3. Air Volume Controls: Pressure-dependent volume controls with field-adjustable minimum and maximum position stops.

M. Electronic Controls:

1. Electronic Damper Actuator: 24 V, [spring-return open] [spring-return closed] [capacitor-discharge-return open] [capacitor-discharge-return closed] [fail in last position].
2. Electronic Thermostat: Wall-mounted electronic type with temperature set-point display in Fahrenheit and Celsius.
3. Electronic Air Volume Controller: Pressure-independent analog electronic controller, factory calibrated and field adjustable to minimum and maximum air volumes; provides consistent airflow to the space in response to electronic thermostat signal while compensating for inlet static-pressure variations of up to 4 inches wg (1000 Pa); includes a multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet.

N. Pneumatic Controls:

1. Pneumatic Damper Actuator: [0 to 13 psig (0 to 90 kPa)] <Insert range> spring range.
2. Pneumatic Thermostat: Wall-mounted pneumatic-type, [direct acting] [reverse acting] [direct or reverse acting as indicated on Drawings], with appropriate mounting hardware.
3. Pneumatic Air Volume Controller: Factory calibrated and field adjustable to minimum and maximum air volumes; provides consistent airflow to the space in response to pneumatic thermostat signal while compensating for inlet static-pressure variations of up to 4 inches wg (1000 Pa); includes a multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet.

O. Direct Digital Controls:

1. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, VAV controller with integrated actuator and electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes.

    a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
    b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
    c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
    d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."

2. Room Sensor: Wall mounted with [temperature set-point adjustment and] access for connection of portable operator terminal.
3. Terminal Unit Controller, Section 230923: Controller is to be factory mounted and wired by air terminal manufacturer; unit controllers, actuators, and room sensors are to be furnished under Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."

P. Control Sequence: See [Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operation for HVAC"] [Drawings] for control sequences.

2.5 SERIES FAN-POWERED AIR TERMINAL UNITS

A. Description: Volume-damper assembly and centrifugal fan in series arrangement inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.

1. Designed for quiet operation.
2. Low-profile design.

B. Casing: Minimum [20-gauge-] [22-gauge-] thick galvanized steel.

1. Casing Liner: Comply with requirements in "Casing Liner" Article below for ["Casing Liner, Fibrous Glass" Paragraph] ["Casing Liner, Flexible Elastomeric" Paragraph] [with "Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating" Subparagraph] [with "Foil-Faced Liner" Subparagraph] [with "Solid Metal Liner" Subparagraph] [with "Perforated Metal Liner" Subparagraph] [with "Specialty Liner" Subparagraph].
2. Air Inlets: Round stub connections or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections.
4. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket and quarter-turn latches.
5. Fan: Forward-curved centrifugal.

C. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with flow-sensing ring and peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.

1. Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 rated, [1] [2] percent of nominal airflow at [3-inch wg (750-Pa)] <Insert value> inlet static pressure.

D. Velocity Sensors: Multipoint array with velocity sensors in air inlet.

E. Fan Motor:

1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
2. Type: [Permanent-split capacitor with SCR for speed adjustment] [Electronically commutated motor].
3. Fan-Motor Assembly Isolation: Rubber isolators.
4. Enclosure: [Open dripproof] [Totally enclosed, fan cooled] <Insert type>.
5. Enclosure Materials: [Cast iron] <Insert material>.
6. Motor Bearings: <Insert requirements>.
7. Unusual Service Conditions:

a. Ambient Temperature: <Insert deg F (deg C)>.
b. Altitude: <Insert feet (m)> above sea level.
c. High humidity.
d. <Insert conditions>.

8. Efficiency: Premium efficient as defined by NEMA MG-1.
9. NEMA Design: <Insert designation>.
10. Service Factor: <Insert value>.
11. Motor Speed: [Single speed] [Variable speed].

    a. Speed Control: Infinitely adjustable with pneumatic-electric and electronic controls.

12. Electrical Characteristics:

    a. Horsepower: <Insert horsepower>.
    b. Volts: [120] [208] [230] [460] <Insert value>.
    c. Phase: [Single] [Poly].
    d. Hertz: 60.
    e. Full-Load Amperes: <Insert value>.
    f. Minimum Circuit Ampacity: <Insert value>.
    g. Maximum Overcurrent Protection: <Insert amperage>.

F. Filters:

1. Polyurethane Foam: [MERV 3] <Insert value>. Minimum efficiency reporting value and average arrestance in accordance with ASHRAE 52.2.
2. [Flat, Nonpleated] [Pleated] Glass Fiber: Factory-fabricated, self-supported disposable air filter with holding frames. Provide [MERV 6] [MERV 13] <Insert value> filters with minimum efficiency reporting value is to be in accordance with ASHRAE 522.

G. Attenuator Section: Casing material and thickness matching associated air terminal unit casing. Provide [absorptive] [packless] attenuator integral with the [plenum inlet] [and] [discharge outlet] of the air terminal unit, of noise transmission loss performance as required in schedules on Drawings.

H. Hydronic Heating Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than [0.1 inch (2.5 mm)] [0.08 inch (2.0 mm)]. Include manual air vent and drain valve. Locate coil in discharge outlet airstream. Provide hydronic heating coils for air terminal units scheduled on Drawings.

I. Electric-Resistance Heating Coils: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free of expansion noise and hum, mounted in ceramic inserts in a galvanized-steel housing; with primary automatic, and secondary manual, reset thermal cutouts. Terminate elements in stainless steel, machine-staked terminals secured with stainless steel hardware. Locate coil in discharge outlet airstream. Provide electric-resistance heating coils for air terminal units scheduled on Drawings.

1. Stage(s): [One] [Two] [Three].
2. SCR controlled.
3. Access door interlocked disconnect switch.
4. Downstream air temperature sensor with local connection to override discharge-air temperature to not exceed a maximum temperature set point (adjustable).
5. Nickel chrome 80/20 heating elements.
6. Airflow switch for proof of airflow.
7. Fan interlock contacts.

8. Fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection (for coils of more than 48 A).
9. Pneumatic-electric switches and relays.
10. Magnetic contactor for each step of control (for three-phase coils).

J. Factory-Mounted and -Wired Controls: Electrical components mounted in control box with removable cover. Incorporate single-point electrical connection to power source.

1. Control Transformer: Factory mounted for control voltage on electric and electronic control units with terminal strip in control box for field wiring of thermostat and power source.
2. Wiring Terminations: Fan and controls to terminal strip. Terminal lugs to match quantities, sizes, and materials of branch-circuit conductors. Enclose terminal lugs in terminal box that is sized in accordance with NFPA 70.
3. Disconnect Switch: Factory-mounted fuse type.

K. Control Panel Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, with access panel sealed from airflow and mounted on side of unit.

L. Electric Controls:

1. Electric Damper Actuator: 24 V, [spring-return open] [spring-return closed] [fail in last position].
2. Electric Thermostat: Wall-mounted electronic type with clock display, temperature display in Fahrenheit and Celsius[, and space temperature set point].
3. Air Volume Controls: Pressure-dependent volume controls with field-adjustable minimum and maximum position stops.

M. Electronic Controls:

1. Electronic Damper Actuator: 24 V, [spring-return open] [spring-return closed] [capacitor-discharge-return open] [capacitor-discharge-return closed] [fail in last position].
2. Electronic Thermostat: Wall-mounted electronic type with temperature display in Fahrenheit and Celsius.
3. Electronic Air Volume Controller: Pressure-independent analog electronic controller, factory calibrated and field adjustable to minimum and maximum air volumes; provides consistent airflow to the space in response to electronic thermostat signal while compensating for inlet static-pressure variations of up to 4 inches wg (1000 Pa); includes a multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet.

N. Pneumatic Controls:

1. Pneumatic Damper Actuator: [0 to 13 psig (0 to 90 kPa)] <Insert range> spring range.
2. Pneumatic Thermostat: Wall-mounted, pneumatic type, [direct acting] [and] [reverse acting], with appropriate mounting hardware.
3. Pneumatic Air Volume Controller: Factory calibrated and field adjustable to minimum and maximum air volumes; provides consistent airflow to the space in response to pneumatic thermostat while compensating for inlet static-pressure variations of up to 4 inches wg (1000 Pa); includes a multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet.

O. Direct Digital Controls:

1. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, VAV controller and integrated actuator, and electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes.

    a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
    b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
    c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
    d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Section 230923 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."

2. Room Sensor: Wall mounted with [temperature set-point adjustment and]access for connection of portable operator terminal.
3. Terminal Unit Controller, Section 230923: Controller is to be factory mounted and wired by air terminal unit manufacturer; unit controller, actuators, and room sensors are to be furnished under Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) for HVAC".

P. Control Sequence: See [Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operation for HVAC"] [Drawings] for control sequences.

2.6 DOAS, SERIES, FAN-POWERED AIR TERMINAL UNITS

A. Description: Primary outside-air volume-damper assembly and fan in series arrangement inside unit casing, with control components inside a protective metal shroud, with chilled-water coil for sensible cooling.

B. Casing: Minimum [20-gauge-] [22-gauge-] thick galvanized steel.

1. Casing Liner: Comply with requirements in "Casing Liner" Article below for ["Casing Liner, Fibrous Glass" Paragraph] ["Casing Liner, Flexible Elastomeric" Paragraph] [with "Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating" Subparagraph] [with "Foil-Faced Liner" Subparagraph] [with "Solid Metal Liner" Subparagraph] [with "Perforated Metal Liner" Subparagraph] [with "Specialty Liner" Subparagraph].
2. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections[, size matching inlet size].
4. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.

C. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.

1. Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 rated, [1] [2] percent of nominal airflow at [3-inch wg (750-Pa)] <Insert value> inlet static pressure.

D. Velocity Sensors: Multipoint array with velocity inlet sensors.

E. Fan Motor:

1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2. Type: [Permanent-split capacitor with SCR for speed adjustment] [Electronically commutated motor].
3. Fan-Motor Assembly Isolation: Rubber isolators.
4. Enclosure: [Open dripproof] [Totally enclosed, fan cooled] <Insert type>.
5. Enclosure Materials: [Cast iron] <Insert material>.
6. Motor Bearings: <Insert requirements>.
7. Unusual Service Conditions:

    a. Ambient Temperature: <Insert deg F (deg C)>.
    b. Altitude: <Insert feet (m)> above sea level.
    c. High humidity.
    d. <Insert conditions>.

8. Efficiency: Premium efficient as defined in NEMA MG-1.
9. NEMA Design: <Insert designation>.
10. Service Factor: <Insert value>.
11. Motor Speed: [Single speed] [Variable speed].

    a. Speed Control: Infinitely adjustable with pneumatic-electric and electronic controls.

12. Electrical Characteristics:

    a. Horsepower: <Insert horsepower>.
    b. Volts: [120] [208] [230] [460] <Insert value>.
    c. Phase: [Single] [Poly].
    d. Hertz: 60.
    e. Full-Load Amperes: <Insert value>.
    f. Minimum Circuit Ampacity: <Insert value>.
    g. Maximum Overcurrent Protection: <Insert amperage>.

F. Filters:

1. Polyurethane Foam: [MERV 3] <Insert value>. Minimum efficiency reporting value and average arrestance in accordance with ASHRAE 52.2.
2. [Flat, Nonpleated] [Pleated] Glass Fiber: Factory-fabricated, self-supported disposable air filter with holding frames. Provide [MERV 6] [MERV 13] <Insert value> filter with minimum efficiency reporting value in accordance with ASHRAE 52.2.

G. Attenuator Section: Casing material and thickness matching associated air terminal unit casing. Provide [absorptive] [packless] attenuator integral with the air terminal unit, of noise transmission loss performance as required in schedules on Drawings.

H. Hydronic Heating Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than [0.1 inch (2.5 mm)] [0.08 inch (2.0 mm)]. Include manual air vent and drain valve. Provide hydronic heating coils for air terminal units scheduled on Drawings.

I. Electric-Resistance Heating Coils: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free of expansion noise and hum, mounted in ceramic inserts in a galvanized-steel housing; with primary automatic, and secondary manual, reset thermal cutouts. Terminate elements in stainless steel, machine-staked

terminals secured with stainless steel hardware. Provide electric-resistance heating coils for air terminal units scheduled on Drawings.

1. Stage(s): [One] [Two] [Three].
2. SCR controlled.
3. Access door interlocked disconnect switch.
4. Downstream air temperature sensor with local connection to override discharge-air temperature to not exceed a maximum temperature set point (adjustable).
5. Nickel chrome 80/20 heating elements.
6. Airflow switch for proof of airflow.
7. Fan interlock contacts.
8. Fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection (for coils of more than 48 A).
9. Pneumatic-electric switches and relays.
10. Magnetic contactor for each step of control (for three-phase coils).

J. Hydronic Cooling Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than [0.1 inch (2.5 mm)] [0.08 inch (2.0 mm)]. Include manual air vent and drain valve. Locate cooling coils at plenum air inlet. Include galvanized-steel factory-installed drip tray [and moisture sensor]for safety in cases where cooling coil temporarily experiences nondesign conditions.

K. Factory-Mounted and -Wired Controls: Electrical components mounted in control box with removable cover. Incorporate single-point electrical connection to power source.

1. Control Transformer: Factory mounted for control voltage on electric and electronic control units with terminal strip in control box for field wiring of thermostat and power source.
2. Wiring Terminations: Fan and controls to terminal strip. Terminal lugs to match quantities, sizes, and materials of branch-circuit conductors. Enclose terminal lugs in terminal box that is sized in accordance with NFPA 70.
3. Disconnect Switch: Factory-mounted fuse type.

L. Control Panel Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, with access panel sealed from airflow and mounted on side of unit.

M. Electric Controls:

1. Electric Damper Actuator: 24 V, [spring-return open] [spring-return closed] [fail in last position].
2. Electric Thermostat: Wall-mounted electronic type with clock display, temperature display in Fahrenheit and Celsius, and space temperature set point.
3. Air Volume Controls: Pressure-dependent volume controls with field-adjustable minimum and maximum position stops.

N. Electronic Controls:

1. Electronic Damper Actuator: 24 V, [spring-return open] [spring-return closed] [capacitor-discharge-return open] [capacitor-discharge-return closed] [fail in last position].

2. Electronic Thermostat: Wall-mounted electronic type with temperature display in Fahrenheit and Celsius.
3. Electronic Air Volume Controller: Pressure-independent analog electronic controller, factory calibrated and field adjustable to minimum and maximum air volumes; provides consistent airflow to the space in response to electronic thermostat signal while compensating for inlet static-pressure variations of up to 4 inches wg (1000 Pa); includes a multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet.

O. Pneumatic Controls:

1. Pneumatic Damper Actuator: [0 to 13 psig (0 to 90 kPa)] <Insert range> spring range.
2. Pneumatic Thermostat: Wall-mounted, pneumatic type, [direct acting] [and] [reverse acting], with appropriate mounting hardware.
3. Pneumatic Air Volume Controller: Factory calibrated and field adjustable to minimum and maximum air volumes; provides consistent airflow to the space in response to pneumatic thermostat signal while compensating for inlet static-pressure variations of up to 4 inches wg (1000 Pa); includes a multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet.

P. Direct Digital Controls:

1. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, VAV controller with integrated actuator and electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes.

    a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
    b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
    c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
    d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."

2. Room Sensor: Wall mounted with temperature set-point adjustment and access for connection of portable operator terminal.
3. Terminal Unit Controller, Section 230923: Controller is to be factory mounted and wired by air terminal manufacturer; unit controller, actuators, and room sensors are to be furnished under Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
4. Cooling Coil Drip Pan Sensor: Shuts off fan upon detection of moisture in drip pan.

Q. Control Sequence: See [Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operation for HVAC"] [Drawings] for control sequences.

2.7 CASING LINER

A. Casing Liner, Fibrous Glass: Fibrous-glass duct liner, complying with ASTM C1071, NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B, and with NAIMA AH124.

1. Minimum Thickness: [1/2 inch (13 mm)] [3/4 inch (19 mm)] [1 inch (25 mm)].

    a. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:

1) Type I, Flexible: [0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.039 W/m x K)] <Insert value> at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.
2) Type II, Rigid: [0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.033 W/m x K)] <Insert value> at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.

2. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to surface of liner that will form interior surface of duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound is to be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
3. Foil-Faced Liner: Minimum 0.001 inch (0.03 mm) reinforced, nonporous aluminum foil applied to matted insulation airstream face. [Encapsulate all insulation edges with sheet metal angles and channels, or tape.]
4. Solid Metal Liner: Solid [galvanized sheet metal] <Insert material> encapsulating matted insulation face from airstream.
5. Perforated Metal Liner: Perforated [galvanized sheet metal] <Insert material> encapsulating matted insulation face from airstream.
6. Specialty Liner: <Insert specialty liner in coordination with manufacturers>.
7. [Solvent] [Water]-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C916.

B. Casing Liner, Flexible Elastomeric: Flexible elastomeric duct liner fabricated of preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

1. Minimum Thickness: [1/2 inch (13 mm)] <Insert dimension>.
2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. [AHRI 880 Certification: Test, rate, and label assembled air terminal units in accordance with AHRI 880.]

B. [AHRI 880: Test and rate assembled air terminal units in accordance with AHRI 880.]

C. Water Coils: Factory pressure test to 300 psig (2070 kPa) in accordance with AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Comply with Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" and Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for hangers and supports.

B. Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A.

C. Install air terminal units level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance.

D. Install wall-mounted thermostats.

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Where installing piping adjacent to air terminal unit, allow space for service and maintenance.

B. Hot-Water [and] [Chilled-Water] Piping: Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties," and connect heating [and] [cooling] coils to supply piping with shutoff valve, strainer, control valve, and union or flange; and to return piping with balancing valve and union or flange.

3.3 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements in [Section 233113 "Metal Ducts"] [Section 233116 "Nonmetal Ducts"] for connecting ducts to air terminal units.

B. Make connections to air terminal units with flexible connectors complying with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A. Install field power to each air terminal unit electrical power connection. Coordinate with air terminal unit manufacturer and installers.

B. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

D. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

E. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.

1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least [1/2 inch (13 mm)] <Insert dimension> high.

3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.

B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Label each air terminal unit with drawing designation, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows[, and coil type]. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for equipment labels and warning signs and labels.

3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

A. [Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform] [Perform] startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
3. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.
4. Verify that control connections are complete.
5. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
6. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.
7. <Insert startup steps if any>.

3.8 ADJUSTING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air terminal unit testing, adjusting, and balancing.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: [Owner] [Contractor] will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections[with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative]:

1. After installing air terminal units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Leak Test: After installation, fill water coils and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Air terminal unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

A. [Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train] [Train] Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air terminal units.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 37 13.13 - AIR DIFFUSERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
   2. Louver face diffusers.
   3. Linear bar Grilles

B. Related Requirements:

   1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

A. Titus

B. Price

C. Hart & Cooley

2.2 RECTANGULAR AND SQUARE CEILING DIFFUSERS

A. See drawing Air Device Schedule for performance and options.

2.3 LOUVER FACE DIFFUSERS

A. See drawing Air Device Schedule for performance and options.

2.4 LINEAR BAR GRILLES

A. See drawing Air Device Schedule for performance and options.

B. Coordinate border and mounting type with General Contractor.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install diffusers level and plumb.

B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

C. Install diffusers with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.2 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, adjust diffusers to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 23 37 13.13

SECTION 23 52 16- WALL MOUNTED FIRETUBE BOILERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes gas-fired, pulse-combustion, fire-tube, floor-mounted condensing boilers, trim, and accessories for generating hot water.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for boilers.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For boilers, boiler trim, and accessories.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each boiler.

1. Design calculations and vibration isolation base details, signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

    a. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
    b. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for boiler, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

B. Source quality-control reports.

C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

D. Product Certificates:

1. ASME Stamp Certification and Report: Submit "A," "S," or "PP" stamp certificate of authorization, as required by authorities having jurisdiction, and document hydrostatic testing of piping external to boiler.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For boilers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of boilers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Where "prorated" is indicated, the boiler manufacturer will cover the indicated percentage of cost of replacement parts. With "prorated" type, covered cost decreases as age of equipment increases.

1. Warranty Period for Wall Mounted f Boilers:

a. Heat Exchanger: 10 years, parts only.
b. All other boiler parts: 5 years, parts only

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Manufacturer shall be a company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum five (5) years experience. Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering Meter and Gage products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Lochinvar
2. HTP

2.2 WALL MOUNTED BOILER REQUIREMENTS

A. The boiler shall be capable of full modulation, firing down to 10% of rated input with a turndown ratio of 10:1. The boiler shall be designed, engineered and assembled in the United States of America.

B. The boiler shall be of a fire tube design and shall be vertically down fired. The boiler shall bear the ASME "H" stamp for 50 psi working pressure and shall be National Board listed. The heat exchanger assembly shall be fully welded through an automated process to ensure weld integrity. The stainless steel combustion chamber and tubes shall be self-cleaning and designed to drain condensation to the bottom of the heat exchanger assembly. A built-in flue collector shall allow condensation to drain from the heat exchanger assembly and into the external condensate trap. The complete heat exchanger assembly shall carry a ten (10) year warranty.

C. The Boiler shall be certified and listed by C.S.A. International under the latest edition of the harmonized ANSI Z21.13 /CSA4.9 test standard for the U.S. and Canada. The boiler shall comply with the energy efficiency requirements of the latest edition of the ASHRAE 90.1 Standard and the minimum efficiency requirements of the latest edition of the ASHRAE 103 Standard. The boiler shall meet U.S. Environmental Protection Agency and Department of Energy guidelines for “Energy Star” efficiency. The boiler shall operate at a minimum of 95% Annual Fuel Utilization Efficiency. The boilers efficiency ratings shall be verified through third party testing by the Hydronics Institute Division of AHRI and listed in the AHRI Certification Directory.

D. The boiler shall be constructed with a heavy gauge steel jacket assembly, primed and pre-painted on both sides. The combustion chamber shall be sealed and completely enclosed, independent of the outer jacket assembly, so that integrity of the outer jacket does not affect a proper seal. A burner/flame observation port shall be provided. The burner shall be a premix design and constructed of high temperature stainless steel with a woven metal fiber outer covering to provide modulating firing rates. The boiler shall be supplied with a gas valve designed with negative pressure regulation and be equipped with a variable

speed blower system, to precisely control the fuel/air mixture to provide modulating boiler firing rates for maximum efficiency. The boiler shall operate in a safe condition at a derated output with gas supply pressures as low as 4 inches of water column.

E. The boiler shall utilize a 24 VAC control circuit and components. The control system shall have an electronic display using words not codes for boiler set-up, boiler status, and boiler diagnostics. All components shall be easily accessed and serviceable from the front and top of the jacket. The boiler shall be equipped with; a temperature/pressure gauge, high limit temperature control certified to UL353, ASME certified pressure relief valve, outlet water temperature sensor, return water temperature sensor, a UL 353 certified flue temperature sensor, outdoor air sensor, low water flow protection and built-in freeze protection.

F. The boiler shall feature the "Smart Control" control with a Graphic Electronic LCD display with password security, setpoint with outdoor air reset curve, pump delay with freeze protection, and pump exercise. The boiler shall have the capability to limit the heating Btu's produced by the boiler, space heat limiting. The Boiler shall have a built-in "Cascade" for space heat operation. Supply voltage shall be 120 volt / 60 hertz / single phase.

G. The boiler shall be equipped with a low voltage connection board with data points for safety and operating controls, i.e., Auxiliary Limit, Manual Reset Low Water Cutoff, Flow Switch, Outdoor Sensor, System Sensor, Heat Demand, Air Handler Contacts and Cascade Control Circuit.

H. The boiler shall be installed and vented with a direct vent sidewall system with a horizontal sidewall termination of both the vent and combustion air. The flue shall be PVC, CPVC or Stainless Steel sealed vent material terminating at the sidewall with the manufacturers specified vent termination. A separate pipe shall supply combustion air directly to the boiler from the outside. The air inlet pipe may be PVC or Stainless Steel sealed pipe. The air inlet must terminate on the same sidewall with the manufacturer's specified air inlet cap.

I. The boiler shall have an independent laboratory rating for Oxides of Nitrogen (NO_x) of 20 ppm or less corrected to 3% O_2. The manufacturer shall verify proper operation of the burner, all controls and the heat exchanger by connection to water and venting for a factory fire test prior to shipping.

J. The boiler shall be equipped with Direct Spark Ignition with Electronic Supervision,

K. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

L. Building Automation System Interface: Factory install hardware and software to enable building automation system to monitor, control, and display boiler status and alarms.

1. Hardwired Points:

    a. Monitoring: On/off status, common trouble alarm.
    b. Control: On/off operation, hot-water-supply temperature set-point adjustment.

2. A BACnet communication interface with building automation system shall enable building automation system operator to remotely control and monitor the boiler from an operator workstation. All monitoring and control features, which are available at the local boiler control panel, shall also be available at the remote operator workstation through the building automation system.

2.3 ELECTRICAL POWER

A. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are shown on Drawings and specified in electrical Sections.

B. Single-Point Field Power Connection: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power connection to boiler.

1. House in NEMA 250, Type 1enclosure.
2. Wiring shall be numbered and color coded to match wiring diagram.
3. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a metal raceway.
4. Field power interface shall be to wire lugs.
5. Provide branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with a disconnect switch or circuit breaker.
6. Provide each motor with overcurrent protection.

2.4 VENTING KITS

A. Kit: Complete system, ASTM A959, Type 29-4C stainless steel pipe, vent terminal, thimble, indoor plate, vent adapter, condensate trap and dilution tank, and sealant.

B. Combustion-Air Intake: Complete system, stainless steel pipe, vent terminal with screen, inlet air coupling, and sealant.

2.5 CONDENSATE-NEUTRALIZATION UNITS

A. Description: Factory-fabricated and -assembled condensate-neutralizing tank assembly of corrosion-resistant plastic material with threaded or flanged inlet and outlet pipe connections. Device functions to prevent acidic condensate from damaging grain system. It is to be piped to receive acidic condensate discharged from condensing boiler and neutralize it by chemical reaction with replaceable neutralizing agent. Neutralized condensate is then piped to suitable drain.

B. Tank features:

1. All corrosion-resistant material.
2. Suitable for use on all natural gas and propane boilers.
3. Includes initial charge of neutralizing agent.
4. Neutralizing agent to be easily replaceable when exhausted.
5. Inlet and outlet pipe connections.

C. Capsule Configuration:

1. Low-profile design for applications where boiler condensate drain is close to the floor.
2. Easily removed and opened for neutralizing agent replacement.
3. Multiple units may be used for larger capacity.

D. Tank Configuration:

1. Utilized where boiler is elevated or where tank is installed in a pit with tank top flush with floor.
2. Top easily removed for neutralizing agent replacement.
3. Internal baffles to channel flow for complete neutralization.
4. Integral bypass to prevent condensate backflow into appliance.
5. Multiple units may be used for larger capacity.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. UL Compliance: Test gas-fired boilers having input of more than 400,000 Btu/h (117 kW) for compliance with UL 795. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. UL Compliance, Gas-Fired: Test gas-fired boilers for compliance with UL 2764. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Performance Testing: Test and label boilers for efficiency to comply with AHRI 1500.

D. Burner and Hydrostatic Test: Factory adjust burner to eliminate excess oxygen, carbon dioxide, oxides of nitrogen emissions, and carbon monoxide in flue gas and to achieve combustion efficiency; perform hydrostatic test.

E. Test and inspect factory-assembled boilers, before shipping, in accordance with 2017 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Factory test boilers for safety and functionality; fill boiler with water, and fire throughout firing range, to prove operation of all safety components.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for concrete equipment bases, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, and piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Final boiler locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for piping and electrical connections.

B. Examine mechanical spaces for suitable conditions where boilers will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 BOILER INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Mounting:

1. Mount boilers on wall.

B. Install gas-fired boilers according to NFPA 54.

C. Assemble and install boiler trim.

D. Install electrical devices furnished with boiler but not specified to be factory mounted.

E. Install control wiring to field-mounted electrical devices.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for hydronic piping specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."

B. Connect piping to boilers, except safety relief valve connections, with flexible connectors of materials suitable for service. Flexible connectors and their installation are specified in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."

C. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

D. When installing piping adjacent to boiler, allow space for service and maintenance of condensing boilers. Arrange piping for easy removal of condensing boilers.

E. Install condensate drain piping to condensate-neutralization unit and from neutralization unit to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full size of connection. Install piping with a minimum of 2 percent downward slope in direction of flow.

F. Connect gas piping to boiler gas-train inlet with union. Piping shall be at least full size of gas-train connection. Provide a reducer if required.

G. Connect hot-water piping to supply- and return-boiler tappings with shutoff valve, and union or flange at each connection.

H. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain.

3.4 DUCT CONNECTIONS

A. Boiler Venting:

1. Install flue-venting kit and combustion-air intake.
2. Comply with all boiler manufacturer's installation instructions.
3. Field fabricate and install boiler vent and combustion-air intake.
4. Utilize vent and intake duct material, size, and configuration as indicated in boiler manufacturer's instructions and to comply with UL 1738.
5. Comply with all boiler manufacturer's installation instructions.
6. Connect boiler vent full size to boiler connections.
7. Comply with requirements in Section 235123 "Gas Vents."
8. Comply with all boiler manufacturer's installation instructions.

3.5 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.

1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.6 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.

B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency, Contractor: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Leak Test: Hydrostatic test. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
3. Operational Test: Start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Adjust air-fuel ratio and combustion.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

    a. Check and adjust initial operating set points and high- and low-limit safety set points of fuel supply, water level, and water temperature.
    b. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

D. Boiler will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

F. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain boilers. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."

1. Instructor shall be factory trained and certified.
2. Provide not less than two hours of training.
3. Train personnel in operation and maintenance and to obtain maximum efficiency in plant operation.
4. Provide instructional videos showing general operation and maintenance that are coordinated with operation and maintenance manuals.

5. Obtain Owner sign-off that training is complete.
6. Owner training shall be held at Project site.

END OF SECTION 235216

SECTION 23 64 23.13- AIR-COOLED, SCROLL WATER CHILLERS

PART 1- GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes packaged, air-cooled, electric-motor-driven, scroll water chillers.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. BAS: Building automation system.

B. COP: Coefficient of performance. The ratio of the rate of heat removal to the rate of energy input using consistent units for any given set of rating conditions.

C. DDC: Direct digital control.

D. EER: Energy-efficiency ratio. The ratio of the cooling capacity given in Btu/h to the total power input given in watts at any given set of rating conditions.

E. GFI: Ground fault interrupt.

F. IPLV: Integrated part-load value. A single-number part-load efficiency figure of merit for a single chiller calculated per the method defined by AHRI 550/590 and referenced to AHRI standard rating conditions.

G. I/O: Input/output.

H. kW/Ton: The ratio of total power input of the chiller in kilowatts to the net refrigerating capacity in tons at any given set of rating conditions.

I. NPLV: Nonstandard part-load value. A single number part-load efficiency figure of merit for a single chiller calculated per the method defined by AHRI 550/590 and intended for operating conditions other than the AHRI standard rating conditions.

J. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

K. TEAO: Totally enclosed air over.

L. TENV: Totally enclosed non-ventilating.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

C. Shop Drawings: Complete set of manufacturer's prints of water chiller assemblies, control panels, sections and elevations, and unit isolation. Include the following:

1. Assembled unit dimensions.
2. Weight and load distribution.
3. Required clearances for maintenance and operation.
4. Size and location of piping and wiring connections.
5. Diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Certificates: For certification required in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for water chillers, accessories, and components, from manufacturers.

C. Installation instructions.

D. Source quality-control reports.

E. Startup service reports.

F. Sample warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. AHRI Certification: Certify chiller according to AHRI 590 certification program.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of water chillers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Extended warranties include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Complete compressor and drive assembly including refrigerant and oil charge.
b. Refrigerant and oil charge.

1) Loss of refrigerant charge for any reason due to manufacturer's product defect and product installation.

c. Parts and labor.

2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Scroll water chillers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.

B. Site Altitude: Chiller shall be suitable for altitude at which installed without affecting performance indicated. Make adjustments to affected chiller components to account for site altitude.

C. Performance Tolerance: Comply with the following in lieu of AHRI 550/590:

1. Allowable Capacity Tolerance: Zero percent.
2. Allowable Full-Load Energy Efficiency Tolerance: Zero percent.
3. Allowable Part-Load Energy Efficiency Tolerance: Zero percent.

D. AHRI Rating: Rate water chiller performance according to requirements in AHRI 550/590.

E. ASHRAE Compliance: ASHRAE 15 for safety code for mechanical refrigeration.

F. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

G. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and stamp water chiller heat exchangers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

H. Comply with NFPA 70.

I. Comply with requirements of UL 1995, "Heating and Cooling Equipment," and include label by a qualified testing agency showing compliance.

J. Operation Following Loss of Normal Power:

1. Equipment, associated factory- and field-installed controls, and associated electrical equipment and power supply connected to backup power system shall automatically return equipment and associated controls to the operating state occurring immediately before loss of normal power without need for manual intervention by an operator when power is restored either through a backup power source, or through normal power if restored before backup power is brought on-line.
2. See drawings for equipment served by backup power systems.
3. Provide means and methods required to satisfy requirement even if not explicitly indicated.

K. Outdoor Installations:

1. Chiller shall be suitable for outdoor installation indicated. Provide adequate weather protection to ensure reliable service life over a 25-year period with minimal degradation due to exposure to outdoor ambient conditions.
2. Chillers equipped to provide safe and stable operation while achieving performance indicated when operating at extreme outdoor temperatures encountered by the installation. Review historical weather database and provide equipment that can operate at extreme outdoor temperatures recorded over past 30-year period.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

A. Trane
B. Carrier
C. Daikin

2.3 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and run-tested water chiller complete with compressor(s), compressor motors and motor controllers, evaporator, condenser with fans, electrical power, controls, and indicated accessories.

B. Fabricate water chiller mounting base with reinforcement strong enough to resist water chiller movement during a seismic event when water chiller is anchored to field support structure.

2.4 CABINET

A. Base: Galvanized-steel base extending the perimeter of water chiller. Secure frame, compressors, and evaporator to base to provide a single-piece unit.

B. Frame: Rigid galvanized-steel frame secured to base and designed to support cabinet, condenser, control panel, and other chiller components not directly supported from base.

C. Casing: Galvanized steel.

D. Finish: Coat base, frame, and casing with a corrosion-resistant coating capable of withstanding a 500-hour salt-spray test according to ASTM B117.

2.5 COMPRESSOR-DRIVE ASSEMBLIES

A. Compressors:

1. Description: Positive-displacement direct drive with hermetically sealed casing.
2. Operating Speed: Nominal 3600 rpm for 60-Hz applications.
3. Capacity Control: On-off compressor cycling.

    a. Digital compressor unloading is an acceptable alternative to achieve capacity control.

4. Oil Lubrication System: Automatic pump with strainer, sight glass, filling connection, filter with magnetic plug or removable magnet in sump, and initial oil charge.

    a. Manufacturer's other standard methods of providing positive lubrication are acceptable in lieu of an automatic pump.

5. Vibration Isolation: Mount individual compressors on vibration isolators.

    a. For multiple compressor assemblies, it is acceptable to isolate each compressor assembly in lieu of each compressor.

B. Compressor Motors:

1. Hermetically sealed and cooled by refrigerant suction gas.
2. High-torque, two-pole induction type with inherent thermal-overload protection on each phase.

C. Compressor Motor Controllers:

1. Across the Line: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, full voltage, nonreversing.

2.6 REFRIGERATION

A. Refrigerant: R-410A. Classified as Safety Group A1 according to ASHRAE 34.

B. Refrigerant Compatibility: Parts exposed to refrigerants shall be fully compatible with refrigerants, and pressure components shall be rated for refrigerant pressures.

C. Refrigerant Circuit: Each circuit shall include an electronic-expansion valve, refrigerant charging connections, a hot-gas muffler, compressor suction and discharge shutoff valves, a liquid-line shutoff valve, a replaceable-core filter-dryer, a sight glass with moisture indicator, a liquid-line solenoid valve, and an insulated suction line.

D. Pressure Relief Device:

1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 15, ASHRAE 147, and applicable portions of ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
2. Select and configure pressure relief devices to protect against corrosion and inadvertent release of refrigerant.
3. ASME-rated, spring-loaded, pressure relief valve; single- or multiple-reseating type. Pressure relief valve(s) shall be provided for each heat exchanger.

2.7 EVAPORATOR

A. Shell and Tube:

1. Description: Direct-expansion, shell-and-tube design with fluid flowing through the shell and refrigerant flowing through the tubes within the shell.
2. Code Compliance: Tested and stamped according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
3. Shell Material: Carbon steel.
4. Shell Heads: Removable carbon-steel heads with multipass baffles designed to ensure positive oil return and located at each end of the tube bundle.
5. Shell Nozzles: Fluid nozzles located along the side of the shell and terminated with mechanical-coupling end connections for connection to field piping
6. Tube Construction: Individually replaceable copper tubes with enhanced fin design, expanded into tube sheets.

B. Brazed Plate:

1. Direct-expansion, single-pass, brazed-plate design.
2. Type stainless-steel construction.
3. Code Compliance: Tested according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
4. Fluid Nozzles: Terminate with mechanical-coupling end connections for connection to field piping.
5. Inlet Strainer: Factory-furnished, 20-mesh strainer for field installation in supply piping to evaporator. Manufacturer has option to factory install strainer.

C. Flow Switch: Factory-furnished and -installed, flow switch wired to chiller operating controls.

D. Heater: Factory-installed and -wired electric heater with integral controls designed to protect the evaporator to minus 20 deg F.

2.8 AIR-COOLED CONDENSER

A. Coil(s) with integral subcooling on each circuit.

B. Copper Tube with Plate Fin Coils:

1. Construct coils of copper tubes mechanically bonded to aluminum fins.
2. Coating: None.

C. Hail Protection: Provide condenser coils with louvers, baffles, or hoods to protect against hail damage.

D. Fans: Direct-drive propeller type with statically and dynamically balanced fan blades, arranged for vertical air discharge.

E. Fan Motors: TENV or TEAO enclosure, with sealed and permanently lubricated bearings, and having built-in overcurrent- and thermal-overload protection.

1. Overcurrent- and thermal-overload protection not integral to motor is acceptable if provided with chiller electrical power package.

F. Fan Guards: Removable steel safety guards with corrosion-resistant coating.

2.9 INSULATION

A. Factory-applied 1.25” Armaflex II (k=0.28) or equal insulation over all cold surfaces of chiller capable of forming condensation. Components shall include, but not be limited to, evaporator, evaporator water boxes including nozzles, refrigerant suction pipe from evaporator to compressor, cold surfaces of compressor, refrigerant-cooled motor, and auxiliary piping.

2.10 ELECTRICAL

A. Factory installed and wired, and functionally tested at factory before shipment.

B. Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power connection to water chiller.

C. House in a unit-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure with hinged access door with lock and key or padlock and key.

D. Wiring shall be numbered and color-coded to match wiring diagram.

E. Field power interface shall be to a circuit breaker. Minimum SCCR according to UL 508 shall be as required by electrical power distribution system.

F. Each motor shall have branch power circuit and controls with one of the following disconnecting means having SCCR to match main disconnecting means:

1. UL 489, motor-circuit protector (circuit breaker) with field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.

G. Each motor shall have overcurrent protection.

H. Overload relay sized according to UL 1995, or an integral component of water chiller control microprocessor.

I. Phase-Failure and Undervoltage: Solid-state sensing with adjustable settings.

J. Controls Transformer: Unit-mounted transformer with primary and secondary fuses and sized with enough capacity to operate electrical load plus spare capacity.

K. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable time-delay relays, or an integral to water chiller microprocessor.

L. Service Receptacle:

1. Unit-mounted, 120-V GFI duplex receptacle.
2. Power receptacle from chiller internal electrical power wiring.

M. Indicate the following for water chiller electrical power supply:

1. Current, phase to phase, for all three phases.
2. Voltage, phase to phase and phase to neutral for all three phases.
3. Three-phase real power (kilowatts).
4. Three-phase reactive power (kilovolt amperes reactive).
5. Power factor.
6. Running log of total power versus time (kilowatt hours).
7. Fault log, with time and date of each.

2.11 CONTROLS

A. Factory installed and wired, and functionally tested at factory before shipment.

B. Standalone, microprocessor based, with all memory stored in nonvolatile memory so that reprogramming is not required on loss of electrical power.

C. Enclosure: Share enclosure with electrical power devices or provide a separate enclosure of matching construction.

D. Operator Interface: Keypad or pressure-sensitive touch screen. Multiple-character, digital display. Display the following:

1. Date and time.
2. Operating or alarm status.
3. Operating hours.
4. Outside-air temperature if required for chilled-water reset.
5. Temperature and pressure of operating set points.
6. Chilled-water entering and leaving temperatures.
7. Refrigerant pressures in evaporator and condenser.
8. Saturation temperature in evaporator and condenser.
9. No cooling load condition.
10. Elapsed time meter (compressor run status).
11. Pump status.
12. Antirecycling timer status.
13. Percent of maximum motor amperage.
14. Current-limit set point.
15. Number of compressor starts.
16. Alarm history with retention of operational data before unit shutdown.
17. Superheat.

E. Control Functions:

1. Manual or automatic startup and shutdown time schedule.
2. Capacity control based on evaporator leaving-fluid temperature.
3. Chilled-water entering and leaving temperatures, control set points, and motor load limit. Chilled-water leaving temperature shall be reset based on outside-air temperature.
4. Current limit and demand limit.
5. Condenser-water temperature.
6. External water chiller emergency stop.
7. Antirecycling timer.
8. Automatic lead-lag switching.

F. Manual-Reset Safety Controls: The following conditions shall shut down water chiller and require manual reset:

1. Low evaporator pressure or high condenser pressure.
2. Low chilled-water temperature.
3. Refrigerant high pressure.
4. High or low oil pressure.

5. High oil temperature.
6. Loss of chilled-water flow.
7. Loss of condenser-water flow.
8. Control device failure.

G. BAS System Interface: Factory-install hardware and software to enable system to monitor, control, and display chiller status and alarms.

1. Communication Interface: ASHRAE 135 (BACnet) communication interface shall enable control system operator to remotely control and monitor the water chiller from an operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at water chiller control panel shall be available through DDC system for HVAC.

2.12 ACCESSORIES

A. Louvered panels to conceal the complete condensing coils, evaporator and compressors.

B. Wide ambient control from 0 degrees F to 125 degrees F

C.

2.13 MATERIALS

A. Steel:

1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.

B. Stainless Steel:

1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.

C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.

D. Aluminum: ASTM B209.

2.14 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform functional test of water chillers before shipping.

B. Factory test and inspect evaporator according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1. Stamp with ASME label.

C. For water chillers located outdoors, rate sound power level according to AHRI 370 procedure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER CHILLER INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into concrete bases.

B. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install water chillers on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

C. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.

D. Maintain clearances required by governing code.

E. Chiller manufacturer's factory-trained service personnel shall charge water chiller with refrigerant if not factory charged and fill with oil if not factory installed.

F. Install separate devices furnished by manufacturer and not factory installed.

1. Chillers shipped in multiple major assemblies shall be field assembled by chiller manufacturer's factory-trained service personnel.

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Where installing piping adjacent to chillers, allow space for service and maintenance.

C. Connect each drain connection with a drain valve, full size of drain connection.

3.3 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

C. Provide nameplate for each electrical connection indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection. Nameplate shall be laminated phenolic layers of black with engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) high. Locate nameplate where easily visible.

3.4 CONTROLS CONNECTIONS

A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.

B. Connect control wiring between chillers and other equipment to interlock operation as required to provide a complete and functioning system.

C. Connect control wiring between chiller control interface and BAS system for remote monitoring and control of chillers. Comply with requirements in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."

D. Provide nameplate on face of chiller control panel indicating control equipment designation serving chiller and the I/O point designation for each control connection. Nameplate shall be laminated phenolic layers of black with engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

B. Inspect field-assembled components, equipment installation, and piping and electrical connections for proper assemblies, installations, and connections.

C. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:

1. Verify that refrigerant charge is sufficient and water chiller has been leak tested.
2. Verify that pumps are installed and functional.
3. Verify that thermometers and gages are installed.
4. Operate water chiller for run-in period.
5. Check bearing lubrication and oil levels.
6. Verify that refrigerant pressure relief device for chillers installed indoors is vented outside.

7. Verify proper motor rotation.
8. Verify static deflection of vibration isolators, including deflection during water chiller startup and shutdown.
9. Verify and record performance of chilled-water flow and low-temperature interlocks.
10. Verify and record performance of water chiller protection devices.
11. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Visually inspect chiller for damage before starting. Repair or replace damaged components, including insulation. Do not start chiller until damage that is detrimental to operation has been corrected.

E. Prepare a written startup report that records results of tests and inspections.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain water chillers.

1. Instructor shall be factory trained and certified.
2. Provide not less than eight hours of training.
3. Train personnel in operation and maintenance and to obtain maximum efficiency in plant operation.
4. Provide instructional videos showing general operation and maintenance that are coordinated with operation and maintenance manuals.
5. Obtain Owner sign-off that training is complete.
6. Owner training shall be held at Project site.

END OF SECTION 236423.13

SECTION 23 82 19- FAN COIL UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes ductless fan coil units and accessories.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fan coil units, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Sample warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with NFPA 70.

B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Factory-packaged and -tested units rated according to AHRI 440, ASHRAE 33, and UL 1995.

2.2 FAN COIL UNITS

A. Trane

B. Carrier

C. Daikin

D. Coil Section Insulation: 1-inch- thick, coated glass fiber complying with ASTM C1071 and attached with adhesive complying with ASTM C916.

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Insulation and adhesive shall have a combined maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E84 by a qualified testing agency.
2. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

E. Drain Pans: Plastic or Stainless steel. Fabricate pans and drain connections to comply with ASHRAE 62.1. Drain pans shall be removable.

F. Chassis: Galvanized steel where exposed to moisture, with baked-enamel finish and removable access panel, with powder-coat finish and removable access panel.

G. Cabinet: Steel with baked-enamel finish in manufacturer's standard paint color as selected by Architect.

1. Vertical Unit Front Panels: Removable, steel, with integral stamped steel discharge grille and channel-formed edges, cam fasteners, and insulation on back of panel.
2. Horizontal Unit Bottom Panels: Fastened to unit with cam fasteners and hinge and attached with safety chain; with discharge grilles.

H. Filters: Minimum arrestance and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2 and all addendums.

1. MERV Rating: 7 when tested according to ASHRAE 52.2.

2. Pleated Cotton-Polyester Media: 90 percent arrestance and MERV 7.

I. Hydronic Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch (2.5 mm), rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig (1378 kPa) and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F (104 deg C). Include manual air vent and drain valve.

J. Fan and Motor Board: Removable.

1. Fan: Forward curved, double width, centrifugal; directly connected to motor. Thermoplastic or painted-steel wheels, and aluminum, painted-steel, or galvanized-steel fan scrolls.
2. Motor: Permanently lubricated, multispeed; resiliently mounted on motor board. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
3. Wiring Termination: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.

K. Basic Unit Controls:

1. Control voltage transformer.

L. BAS Terminal Controller:

1. Scheduled Operation: Occupied and unoccupied periods on seven-day clock with a minimum of four programmable periods per day.
2. Unoccupied-Period-Override Operation: Four hours.

3. Controller shall have volatile-memory backup.

M. Electrical Connection: Factory wire motors and controls for a single electrical connection.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install fan coil units level and plumb.

B. Install fan coil units to comply with NFPA 90A.

C. Suspend fan coil units from structure with elastomeric hangers. Vibration isolators are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

D. Verify locations of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation. Install devices 54 inches above finished floor.

E. Install new filters in each fan coil unit within two weeks after Substantial Completion.

F. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:

1. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
2. Connect piping to fan coil unit factory hydronic piping package. Install piping package if shipped loose.
3. Connect condensate drain to indirect waste.

a. Install condensate trap of adequate depth to seal against fan pressure. Install cleanouts in piping at changes of direction.

G. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

H. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
2. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

B. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

END OF SECTION 238219

SECTION 23 82 41- CABINET UNIT HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cabinet unit heaters with centrifugal fans and hot-water coils.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BAS: Building automation system.

B. CWP: Cold working pressure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories for each product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1. Plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Location and size of each field connection.
3. Details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
4. Equipment schedules to include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
5. Location and arrangement of piping valves and specialties.
6. Location and arrangement of integral controls.
7. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Finish colors for units with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Samples for Verification: Finish colors for each type of cabinet unit heater and wall and ceiling heaters indicated with factory-applied color finishes.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cabinet unit heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Cabinet Unit Heater Filters: Furnish one spare filter(s) for each filter installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CABINET UNIT HEATERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Carrier Corporation.
2. Daikin
3. Sterling
4. Trane

B. Description: A factory-assembled and -tested unit complying with ARI 440.

C. Coil Section Insulation: ASTM C 1071; surfaces exposed to airstream shall be erosion-resistant coating to prevent erosion of glass fibers.

1. Thickness: 1/2 inch (13 mm.
2. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. at 75 deg F (0.037 W/m x K at 24 deg C) mean temperature.

3. Fire-Hazard Classification: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
4. Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916 and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

D. Cabinet: Steel with galvanized or baked-enamel finish.

E. Filters: Minimum arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1 and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2.

1. Pleated: 90 percent arrestance and 7 MERV.

F. Hot-Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch (2.5 mm) and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig (1378 kPa) and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F (104 deg C). Include manual air vent and drain.

G. Fan and Motor Board: Removable.

1. Fan: Forward curved, double width, centrifugal; directly connected to motor. Thermoplastic or painted-steel wheels, and aluminum, painted-steel, or galvanized-steel fan scrolls.
2. Motor: Permanently lubricated, multispeed; resiliently mounted on motor board. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
3. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.

H. Factory, Hot-Water Piping Package: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Label piping to indicate service, inlet and outlet.

1. Two-way, modulating control valve.
2. Hose Kits: Minimum 400-psig (2758-kPa) working pressure, and operating temperatures from 33 to 211 deg F (0.5 to 99 deg C). Tag hose kits to equipment designations.

    a. Length: 24 inches (600 mm).
    b. Minimum Diameter: Equal to cabinet unit heater connection size.

3. Two-Piece, Ball Valves: Bronze body with full-port, chrome-plated bronze ball; PTFE or TFE seats; and 600-psig (4140-kPa) minimum CWP rating and blowout-proof stem.
4. Calibrated-Orifice Balancing Valves: Bronze body, ball type, 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure, 250 deg F (121 deg C) maximum operating temperature; with calibrated orifice or venture, connection for portable differential pressure meter with integral seals, threaded ends, and equipped with a memory stop to retain set position.

5. Automatic Flow-Control Valve: Brass or ferrous-metal body, 300-psig (2068-kPa) working pressure at 250 deg F (121 deg C), with removable, corrosion-resistant, tamperproof, self-cleaning, piston-spring; factory set to maintain constant indicated flow with plus or minus 10 percent over differential pressure range of 2 to 80 psig (13.8 to 552 kPa).
6. Y-Pattern, Hot-Water Strainers: Cast-iron body (ASTM A 126, Class B); 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum working pressure; with threaded connections, bolted cover, perforated stainless-steel basket, and bottom drain connection. Include minimum NPS 1/2 (DN 15) threaded pipe and full-port ball valve in strainer drain connection.
7. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

I. Control devices and operational sequences are specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and Section 230993 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls."

J. Basic Unit Controls:

1. Control voltage transformer.
2. Verify control features with manufacturer.
3. Wall-mounted DDC temperature sensor.
4. Data entry and access port.

    a. Input data includes room temperature, and occupied and unoccupied periods.
    b. Output data includes room temperature, supply-air temperature, entering-water temperature, operating mode, and status.
    c. Retain first paragraph and subparagraphs below and coordinate with "Basic Unit Controls" Paragraph and subparagraphs above or with control devices specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."

5. DDC Terminal Controller:

6. Controller shall have volatile-memory backup.

K. BAS Interface Requirements:

1. Interface relay for scheduled operation.
2. Interface relay to provide indication of fault at central workstation.
3. Interface shall be BAC-net compatible for central BAS workstation and include the following functions:

    a. Adjust set points.
    b. Cabinet unit heater start, stop, and operating status.
    c. Data inquiry, including [outdoor-air damper position,]supply-air and room-air temperature.

d. Occupied and unoccupied schedules.

L. Electrical Connection: Factory wire motors and controls for a single field connection.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit heater installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install wall boxes in finished wall assembly; seal and weatherproof. Joint-sealant materials and applications are specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

B. Install cabinet unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.

C. Suspend cabinet unit heaters from structure with elastomeric hangers and seismic restraints. Vibration isolators and seismic restraints are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

D. Install wall-mounting sensors in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls. Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation.

E. Install new filters in each fan-coil unit within two weeks of Substantial Completion.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232213 "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to cabinet unit heater's factory, hot-water piping package. Install the piping package if shipped loose.

D. Connect supply and return ducts to cabinet unit heaters with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

E. Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995.

F. Unless otherwise indicated, install union and gate or ball valve on supply-water connection and union and calibrated balancing valve on return-water connection of unit heater. Hydronic specialties are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."

G. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

H. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
2. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust initial temperature set points.

END OF SECTION 238239

SECTION 26 05 19 LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1- GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

a. Wire and cable for 600 volts and less.

b. Wiring connectors and connections.

PART 2- PRODUCTS

2.01 WIRING REQUIREMENTS

a. Concealed Dry Interior Locations: Use only building wire in raceway or metal clad cable.

b. Exposed Dry Interior Locations: Use only building wire in raceway.

c. Above Accessible Ceilings: Use only building wire in raceway or metal clad cable.

d. Wet or Damp Interior Locations: Use only building wire in raceway.

e. Exterior Locations: Use only building wire in raceway.

f. Underground Installations: Use only building wire in raceway.

g. Use 10 AWG conductors for 20 amperes, 120 volt branch circuits longer than 100 feet.

h. Conductor sizes are based on copper unless indicated as aluminum or "AL".

2.02 BUILDING WIRE

a. Description: Single conductor insulated wire.

b. Conductor: Copper unless indicated as aluminum or “AL”.

c. Insulation Voltage Rating: 600 volts.

d. Insulation: NFPA 70 Type THHN/THWN or Type XHHW.

2.03 METAL CLAD CABLE

a. Description: NFPA 70, Type MC.

b. Conductor: Copper.

c. Insulation Voltage Rating: 600 volts.

d. Insulation Temperature Rating: 90 degrees C.

e. Armor Material: Steel or Aluminum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

a. Verify that interior of building has been protected from weather.

b. Verify that mechanical work likely to damage wire and cable has been completed.

c. Verify that raceway installation is complete and supported.

d. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.

3.02 INSTALLATION

a. Install wire and cable securely, in a neat and workmanlike manner, as specified in NECA 1.

b. Route wire and cable as required to meet project conditions.
   1. Wire and cable routing indicated is approximate unless dimensioned.
   2. Where wire and cable destination is indicated and routing is not shown, determine exact routing and lengths required.

c. Use wiring methods indicated.

d. Pull all conductors into raceway at same time.

e. Use suitable wire pulling lubricant for building wire 4 AWG and larger.

f. Protect exposed cable from damage.

g. Support cables above accessible ceiling, using spring metal clips or metal cable ties to support cables from structure or ceiling suspension system. Do not rest cable on ceiling panels.

h. Use suitable cable fittings and connectors.

i. Neatly train and lace wiring inside boxes, equipment, and panelboards.

j. Clean conductor surfaces before installing lugs and connectors.

k. Make splices, taps, and terminations to carry full ampacity of conductors with no perceptible temperature rise.

l. Terminate aluminum conductors with tin-plated aluminum-bodied compression connectors only.

m. Use insulated spring wire connectors with plastic caps for copper conductor splices and taps, 10 AWG and smaller.

END OF SECTION

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 26 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1- GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

a. Grounding and bonding components.

b. Provide all components necessary to complete the grounding system(s) consisting of:
   1. Metal underground water pipe.
   2. Concrete-encased electrode.
   3. Rod electrodes.
   4. Metal frame of the building.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ELECTRODES

a. Rod Electrodes: Copper-clad steel.
   1. Diameter: 3/4 inch.
   2. Length: 10 feet.

2.02 CONNECTORS AND ACCESSORIES

a. Mechanical Connectors: Bronze.

b. Wire: Stranded or solid copper.

c. Grounding Electrode Conductor: Size to meet NFPA 70 requirements.

PART 3- EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

a. Verify existing conditions prior to beginning work.

b. Verify that final backfill and compaction has been completed before driving rod electrodes.

3.02 INSTALLATION

a. Install ground electrodes at locations indicated.

b. Provide grounding electrode conductor and connect to reinforcing steel in foundation footing Bond steel together.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1- GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

a. Conduit and equipment supports.

b. Anchors and fasteners.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

a. Hangers, Supports, Anchors, and Fasteners - General: Corrosion-resistant materials of size and type adequate to carry the loads of equipment and conduit, including weight of wire in conduit.

b. Supports: Fabricated of structural steel or formed steel members.

c. Anchors and Fasteners:
   1. Obtain permission from Engineer before using powder-actuated anchors.
   2. Concrete Structural Elements: Use precast inserts or expansion anchors.
   3. Steel Structural Elements: Use beam clamps steel spring clips or welded fasteners.
   4. Concrete Surfaces: Use self-drilling anchors or expansion anchors.
   5. Hollow Masonry, Plaster, and Gypsum Board Partitions: Use toggle bolts.
   6. Solid Masonry Walls: Use expansion anchors or preset inserts.
   7. Sheet Metal: Use sheet metal screws.
   8. Wood Elements: Use wood screws.

d. Fastener Types:
   1. Concrete Wedge Expansion Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC193.
   2. Masonry Wedge Expansion Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC01.
   3. Concrete Screw Type Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC193.
   4. Masonry Screw Type Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC106.
   5. Concrete Adhesive Type Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC308.
   6. Other Types: As required.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

a. Install hangers and supports as required to adequately and securely support electrical system components, in a neat and workmanlike manner, as specified in NECA 1.
   1. Do not fasten supports to pipes, ducts, mechanical equipment, or conduit.
   2. Do not drill or cut structural members.

b. Install surface-mounted cabinets and panelboards with minimum of four anchors.

c. In wet and damp locations use steel channel supports to stand cabinets and panelboards 1 inch off wall.

d. Use sheet metal channel to bridge studs above and below cabinets and panelboards recessed in hollow partitions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 33.13 - CONDUITS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Type EMT-S duct raceways and elbows.
2. Type ERMC-S duct raceways, elbows, couplings, and nipples.
3. Type FMC-S duct raceways.
4. Type FMT duct raceways.
5. Type IMC duct raceways.
6. Type LFMC duct raceways.
7. Type PVC duct raceways and fittings.
8. Fittings for conduit, tubing, and cable.
9. Electrically conductive corrosion-resistant compounds for threaded conduit.
10. Solvent cements.

B. Products Installed, but Not Furnished, under This Section:

1. See Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for electrical equipment labels.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Conduit: A structure containing one or more duct raceways.

B. Duct Raceway: A single enclosed raceway for conductors or cable.

C. Duct Bank: An arrangement of conduit providing one or more continuous duct raceways between two points.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Type EMT-S duct raceways and elbows.
2. Type ERMC-S duct raceways, elbows, couplings, and nipples.
3. Type FMC-S duct raceways.
4. Type IMC duct raceways.
5. Type LFMC duct raceways.
6. Fittings for conduit, tubing, and cable.
7. Electrically conductive corrosion-resistant compounds for threaded conduit.
8. Solvent cements.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturers' Published Instructions:

1. Type EMT-S duct raceways and elbows.
2. Type ERMC-S duct raceways, elbows, couplings, and nipples.
3. Type FMC-S and Type FMC-A duct raceways.
4. Type IMC duct raceways.
5. Type LFMC duct raceways.
6. Type PVC duct raceways and fittings.
7. Fittings for conduit, tubing, and cable.
8. Electrically conductive corrosion-resistant compounds for threaded conduit.
9. Solvent cements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TYPE EMT-S DUCT RACEWAYS AND ELBOWS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN FJMX; including UL 797.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL FJMX - Steel Electrical Metal Tubing (EMT-S) and Elbows:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Allied Tube & Conduit; Atkore International.
b. Calconduit; Atkore International.
c. Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
d. Picoma; Zekelman Industries.
e. Republic Conduit; Nucor Corporation, Nucor Tubular Products.
f. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
g. Western Tube; Zekelman Industries.
h. Wheatland Tube; Zekelman Industries.

2. Material: Steel.
3. Options:

a. Exterior Coating: Zinc.
b. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).

2.2 TYPE ERMC-S DUCT RACEWAYS, ELBOWS, COUPLINGS, AND NIPPLES

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DYIX; including UL 6.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL DYIX - Galvanized-Steel Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit (ERMC-S-G), Elbows, Couplings, and Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Allied Tube & Conduit; Atkore International.
b. Calconduit; Atkore International.
c. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
d. Killark; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
e. Patriot Aluminum Products, LLC.
f. Republic Conduit; Nucor Corporation, Nucor Tubular Products.
g. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
h. Western Tube; Zekelman Industries.
i. Wheatland Tube; Zekelman Industries.

2. Exterior Coating: Zinc.

2.3 TYPE FMC-S DUCT RACEWAYS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DXUZ; including UL 1.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL DXUZ - Steel Flexible Metal Conduit (FMC-S):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. ABB, Electrification Business.
   b. Anaconda Sealtite; Anamet Electrical, Inc.
   c. Electri-Flex Company.
   d. International Metal Hose Co.
   e. Penn Aluminum Conduit & EMT; Penn Aluminum International LLC; Berkshire Hathaway.
   f. Topaz Lighting & Electric.

2. Material: Steel.
3. Options:

   a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).
   b. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

2.4 TYPE IMC DUCT RACEWAYS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DYBY; including UL 1242.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL DYBY - Steel Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. ABB, Electrification Business.
   b. Allied Tube & Conduit; Atkore International.
   c. Calconduit; Atkore International.
   d. Republic Conduit; Nucor Corporation, Nucor Tubular Products.
   e. Topaz Lighting & Electric.

f. Western Tube; Zekelman Industries.
g. Wheatland Tube; Zekelman Industries.

2. Options:

a. Exterior Coating: Zinc.
b. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).
c. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

2.5 TYPE LFMC DUCT RACEWAYS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DXHR; including UL 360.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL DXHR - Steel Liquidtight Flexible Metal Conduit (LFMC-S):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. ABB, Electrification Business.
b. Anaconda Sealtite; Anamet Electrical, Inc.
c. Electri-Flex Company.
d. International Metal Hose Co.

2. Material: Steel.

2.6 TYPE PVC DUCT RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DZYR; including UL 651.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL DZYR - Schedule 40 Rigid PVC Conduit (PVC-40) and Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. ABB, Electrification Business.
   b. Calconduit; Atkore International.
   c. JM Eagle.
   d. NAPCO; Westlake Chemical Corp.
   e. Opti-Com Manufacturing Network, Inc (OMNI).
   f. Topaz Lighting & Electric.

2. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 40.
3. Options:

   a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).
   b. Markings: For use with maximum 90 deg C wire.

D. UL DZYR - Schedule 80 Rigid PVC Conduit (PVC-80) and Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. ABB, Electrification Business.
   b. Calconduit; Atkore International.
   c. JM Eagle.
   d. Opti-Com Manufacturing Network, Inc (OMNI).
   e. Topaz Lighting & Electric.

2. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 80.
3. Options:

   a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).
   b. Markings: For use with maximum 90 deg C wire.

2.7 FITTINGS FOR CONDUIT, TUBING, AND CABLE

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL EBMB - Duct Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    b. Power Feed-Thru Systems and Connectors LLC.

2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN EBMB; including UL 1203.

D. UL DWTT - Fittings for Type IMC and Type PVC, Duct Raceways:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. ABB, Electrification Business.
    b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
    c. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    d. Konkore Fittings; Atkore International.
    e. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
    f. Penn Aluminum Conduit & EMT; Penn Aluminum International LLC; Berkshire Hathaway.
    g. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
    h. Southwire Company, LLC.
    i. Topaz Lighting & Electric.

2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DWTT; including UL 514B.
3. Options:

    a. Material: Steel.
    b. Coupling Method: Compression coupling or Raintight compression coupling with distinctive color gland nut.
    c. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible bonding jumper.

E. UL FKAV - Fittings for Type EMT Duct Raceways:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. ABB, Electrification Business.
    b. Allied Tube & Conduit; Atkore International.
    c. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
    d. Calconduit; Atkore International.
    e. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.

f. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
g. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
h. Southwire Company, LLC.
i. Topaz Lighting & Electric.

2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN FKAV; including UL 514B.
3. Options:

a. Material: Steel.
b. Coupling Method: Compression coupling.
c. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible bonding jumper.

F. UL ILNR - Fittings for Type FMC Duct Raceways:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. American Fittings Corp. (AMFICO).
b. Liquid Tight Connector Co.
c. Southwire Company, LLC.

2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN ILNR; including UL 514B.

G. UL DXAS - Fittings for Type LFMC Duct Raceways:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Arlington Industries, Inc.
b. Liquid Tight Connector Co.

2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DXAS; including UL 514B.

2.8 ELECTRICALLY CONDUCTIVE CORROSION-RESISTANT COMPOUNDS FOR THREADED CONDUIT

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN FOIZ; including UL Subject 2419.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL FOIZ - Electrically Conductive Corrosion-Resistant Compound for Threaded Conduit:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

a. ABB, Electrification Business.

2.9 SOLVENT CEMENTS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DWTT; including UL 514B.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.

2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL DWTT - Solvent Cements for Type PVC Duct Raceways and Fittings:

1. ABB: Carlon
2. Allied Tube & Conduit, a division of Atkore International
3. Cantex Inc.
4. Heritage Plastics, a division of Atkore International
5. JM Eagle

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SELECTION OF CONDUITS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for selection of duct raceways. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

B. Outdoors:

1. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: ERMC.
2. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: ERMC or IMC.

a. Locations less than 2.5 m (8 ft) above finished floor.

3. Exposed and Not Subject to Physical Damage: PVC-80.
4. Concealed Aboveground: PVC-40.

5. Direct Buried: PVC-80 or PVC-40.
6. Concrete Encased Not in Trench: PVC-40.
7. Concrete Encased in Trench: PVC-40.
8. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.

C. Indoors:

1. Hazardous Classified Locations: ERMC.
2. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: ERMC. Locations include the following:

    a. Loading docks.
    b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
    c. Mechanical rooms.
    d. Gymnasiums.

3. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: ERMC or IMC. Locations include the following:

    a. Locations less than 2.5 m (8 ft) above finished floor.
    b. Stub-ups to above suspended ceilings.

4. Exposed and Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
5. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
6. Damp or Wet Locations: ERMC or IMC.
7. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC.

D. Duct Fittings: Select fittings in accordance with NEMA FB 2.10 guidelines.

1. ERMC and IMC: Provide threaded-type fittings unless otherwise indicated.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF CONDUITS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.

B. Reference Standards for Installation: Unless more stringent installation requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with the following:

1. Type EMT-S: Article 358 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
2. Type ERMC-S: Article 344 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
3. Type FMC-S: Article 348 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
4. Type IMC: Article 342 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
5. Type LFMC: Article 350 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
6. Type PVC: Article 356 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 111.
7. Expansion Fittings: NEMA FB 2.40.
8. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

C. Special Installation Techniques:

1. General Requirements for Installation of Duct Raceways:

a. Complete duct raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
b. Provide stub-ups through floors with coupling threaded inside for plugs, set flush with finished floor. Plug coupling until conduit is extended above floor to final destination or a minimum of 2 ft (0.6 m) above finished floor.
c. Make bends in duct raceway using large-radius preformed ells except for parallel bends. Field bending must be in accordance with NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Provide only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
d. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
e. Support conduit within 12 inch (300 mm) of enclosures to which attached.
f. Install duct sealing fittings at accessible locations in accordance with NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed duct raceways, install fitting in flush steel box with blank cover plate having finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install duct sealing fittings in accordance with NFPA 70.
g. Install devices to seal duct raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal interior of duct raceways at the following points:

1) Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
2) Where an underground service duct raceway enters a building or structure.
3) Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
4) Conduit extending into pressurized duct raceway and equipment.
5) Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
6) Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

h. Do not install duct raceways or electrical items on "explosion-relief" walls or rotating equipment.
i. Do not install conduits within 2 inch (50 mm) of the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
j. Keep duct raceways at least 6 inch (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal duct raceway runs above water and steam piping.
k. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits metric designator 53 (trade size 2) and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length. Ream inside of conduit to remove burrs.
l. Install pull wires in empty duct raceways. Provide polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200 lb (90 kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inch (300 mm) of slack at both ends of pull wire. Cap underground duct raceways designated as spare above grade alongside duct raceways in use.
m. Install duct raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures without hubs with locknuts on both sides of enclosure wall. Install locknuts hand tight, plus one-quarter turn more.

1) Termination fittings with shoulders do not require two locknuts.

n. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to metric designator 35 (trade size 1-1/4) and insulated throat metal bushings on metric designator 41 (trade size 1-1/2) and larger conduits terminated with locknuts.

2. Types ERMC and IMC:

a. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound that maintains electrical conductivity to threads of duct raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's published instructions.

3. Types FMC and LFMC:

a. Provide a maximum of 72 inch (1830 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semi recessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.

4. Types PVC:

a. Do not install Type PVC conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 122 deg F (50 deg C). Conductor ratings must be limited to 75 deg C except where installed in a trench outside buildings with concrete encasement, where 90 deg C conductors are permitted.
b. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions for solvent welding and fittings.

5. Duct Raceways Embedded in Slabs:

a. Run duct raceways larger than metric designator 27 (trade size 1) below concrete slab.
b. Arrange duct raceways to cross building expansion joints with expansion fittings at right angles to the joint.
c. Arrange duct raceways to ensure that each is surrounded by minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) of concrete without voids.
d. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless locations have been specifically approved by Architect.

6. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:

a. Provide EMT, IMC, or ERMC for duct raceways.
b. Provide a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

7. Duct Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration:

a. Provide insulating bushings to protect conductors, including conductors smaller than 4 AWG.

8. Duct Fittings: Install fittings in accordance with NEMA FB 2.10 guidelines.

    a. EMT: Provide compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
    b. Flexible Conduit: Provide only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit type. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.

9. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

    a. Install in runs of aboveground PVC that are located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C) and that have straight-run length that exceeds 25 ft (7.6 m). Install in runs of aboveground ERMC conduit that are located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F (55 deg C) and that have straight-run length that exceeds 100 ft (30 m).
    b. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for the following locations:

        1) Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
        2) Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
        3) Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
        4) Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.

    c. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.
    d. Install expansion fittings at locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
    e. Install expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

10. Duct Raceways Penetrating Rooms or Walls with Acoustical Requirements: Seal duct raceway openings on both sides of rooms or walls with acoustically rated putty or firestopping.
11. Identification: Provide labels for conduit assemblies, duct raceways, and associated electrical equipment.

    a. Provide warning signs.

D. Interfaces with Other Work:

1. Coordinate installation of new products for existing conditions.

2. Coordinate with Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for installation of firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
3. Coordinate with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for installation of conduit hangers and supports.

3.3 PROTECTION

A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 26 05 33.13

SECTION 26 05 33.16 - BOXES AND COVERS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
2. Nonmetallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
3. Junction boxes and pull boxes.
4. Cover plates for device boxes.
5. Hoods for outlet boxes.

B. Products Installed, but Not Furnished, under This Section:

1. See Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for electrical equipment labels.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Metallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
2. Junction boxes and pull boxes.
3. Cover plates for device boxes.
4. Hoods for outlet boxes.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturers' Published Instructions:

1. Metallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
2. Junction boxes and pull boxes.
3. Cover plates for device boxes.
4. Hoods for outlet boxes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALLIC OUTLET BOXES, DEVICE BOXES, RINGS, AND COVERS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN QCIT; including UL 514A.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL QCIT - Metallic Outlet Boxes and Covers:

1. Description: Box having pryout openings, knockouts, threaded entries, or hubs in either the sides of the back, or both, for entrance of conduit, conduit or cable fittings, or cables, with provisions for mounting outlet box cover, but without provisions for mounting wiring device directly to box.

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. ABB, Electrification Business.
    b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
    c. Arlington Industries, Inc.
    d. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    e. Hubbell Premise Wiring; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
    f. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
    g. Killark; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
    h. MonoSystems, Inc.
    i. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
    j. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
    k. Patriot Aluminum Products, LLC.
    l. Plasti-Bond; Robroy Industries.
    m. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
    n. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
    o. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
    p. Wiremold; Legrand North America, LLC.

3. Options:

    a. Material: Sheet steel Cast metal.
    b. Sheet Metal Depth: Minimum 2 inch (50 mm).
    c. Cast-Metal Depth: Minimum 1.8 inch (44.5 mm).
    d. Luminaire Outlet Boxes and Covers: Nonadjustable, listed and labeled for attachment of luminaire weighing up to 50 lb (23 kg).

e. Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes and Covers: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing up to 70 lb (32 kg).

D. UL QCIT - Metallic Conduit Bodies:

1. Description: Means for providing access to interior of conduit or tubing system through one or more removable covers at junction or terminal point. In the United States, conduit bodies are listed in accordance with outlet box requirements.

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. ABB, Electrification Business.
b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
c. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
d. Killark; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
e. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
f. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
g. Patriot Aluminum Products, LLC.
h. Plasti-Bond; Robroy Industries.
i. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
j. Topaz Lighting & Electric.

E. UL QCIT - Metallic Device Boxes:

1. Description: Box with provisions for mounting wiring device directly to box.

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. ABB, Electrification Business.
b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
c. Arlington Industries, Inc.
d. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
e. Hubbell Premise Wiring; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
f. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
g. Killark; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
h. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
i. Patriot Aluminum Products, LLC.
j. Plasti-Bond; Robroy Industries.
k. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
l. Topaz Lighting & Electric.

3. Options:

a. Material: Sheet steel Cast metal.

b. Sheet Metal Depth: minimum 2 inch (50 mm).
c. Cast-Metal Depth: minimum 1.8 inch (44.5 mm).

F. UL QCIT - Metallic Extension Rings:

1. Description: Ring intended to extend sides of outlet box or device box to increase box depth, volume, or both.

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. ABB, Electrification Business.
b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
c. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
d. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
e. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
f. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
g. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
h. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
i. Topaz Lighting & Electric.

G. UL QCIT - Metallic Floor Boxes and Floor Box Covers:

1. Description: Box mounted in floor with floor box cover and other components to complete floor box enclosure.

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. ABB, Electrification Business.
b. AFC Cable Systems; Atkore International.
c. Arlington Industries, Inc.
d. Arrow Hart, Wiring Devices; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
e. FSR Inc.
f. Hubbell Premise Wiring; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
g. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
h. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
i. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
j. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
k. Wiremold; Legrand North America, LLC.

2.2 JUNCTION BOXES AND PULL BOXES

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN BGUZ; including UL 50 and UL 50E.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.

2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL BGUZ - Indoor Sheet Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:

1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Adalet.
b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
c. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
d. FSR Inc.
e. Hoffman; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
f. Hubbell Industrial Controls; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
g. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
h. Milgard Manufacturing, LLC.
i. N J Sullivan Company.
j. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
k. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
l. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
m. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.

3. Options:

a. Degree of Protection: Type 1.

D. UL BGUZ - Indoor Cast-Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:

1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Adalet.
b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.

c. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
d. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.

3. Options:

a. Degree of Protection: Type 1.

E. UL BGUZ - Outdoor Sheet Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:

1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Adalet.
b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
c. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
d. FSR Inc.
e. Hoffman; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
f. Hubbell Industrial Controls; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
g. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
h. Milgard Manufacturing, LLC.
i. N J Sullivan Company.
j. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
k. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
l. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
m. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.

3. Options:

a. Degree of Protection: Type 3R or Type 4.

F. UL BGUZ - Outdoor Cast-Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:

1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Adalet.
b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
c. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
d. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.

3. Options:

    a. Degree of Protection: Type 3R or Type 4.

2.3 COVER PLATES FOR DEVICES BOXES

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN QCIT or UL CCN QCMZ; including UL 514D.
3. Wallplate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match wallplate finish.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.

2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL QCIT or QCMZ - Metallic Cover Plates for Device Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. ABB, Electrification Business.
    b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
    c. Arrow Hart, Wiring Devices; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    d. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
    e. Hubbell Premise Wiring; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
    f. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
    g. Intermatic, Inc.
    h. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    i. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
    j. Panduit Corp.
    k. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
    l. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
    m. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
    n. Wiremold; Legrand North America, LLC.

2. Options:

    a. Damp and Wet Locations: Listed, labeled, and marked for location and use. Provide gaskets and accessories necessary for compliance with listing.
    b. Wallplate Material: 0.032 inch (0.8 mm) thick, Type 302/304 non-magnetic stainless steel with brushed finish.

D. UL QCIT or QCMZ - Nonmetallic Cover Plates for Device Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. ABB, Electrification Business.
b. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
c. Arlington Industries, Inc.
d. Arrow Hart, Wiring Devices; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
e. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
f. Hubbell Premise Wiring; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
g. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
h. Intermatic, Inc.
i. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
j. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
k. Panduit Corp.
l. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
m. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
n. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
o. Wiremold; Legrand North America, LLC.

2. Options:

a. Damp and Wet Locations: Listed, labeled, and marked for location and use. Provide gaskets and accessories necessary for compliance with listing.
b. Wallplate Material: 0.060 inch (1.5 mm) thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device.
c. Color: White

2.4 HOODS FOR OUTLET BOXES

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. Listing Criteria:

a. UL CCN QCIT or UL CCN QCMZ; including UL 514D.
b. Receptacle, Hood, Cover Plate, Gaskets, and Seals: UL 498 Supplement SA when mated with box or enclosure complying with UL 514A, UL 514C, or UL 50E.

3. Mounts to box using fasteners different from wiring device.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.

2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL QCIT or QCMZ - Extra-Duty, While-in-Use Hoods for Outlet Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. ABB, Electrification Business.
b. Allied Tube & Conduit; Atkore International.
c. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
d. Arlington Industries, Inc.
e. Arrow Hart, Wiring Devices; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
f. Intermatic, Inc.
g. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
h. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.

2. Additional Characteristics: Marked "Extra-Duty" in accordance with UL 514D.
3. Options:

a. Provides gray, weatherproof, "while-in-use" cover.
b. Manufacturer may combine nonmetallic device box with hood as extra-duty rated assembly.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SELECTION OF BOXES AND COVERS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for selection of boxes and enclosures. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

B. Degree of Protection:

1. Outdoors:

a. Type 3R unless otherwise indicated.
b. Locations Exposed to Hosedown: Type 4.
c. Locations Subject to Potential Flooding: Type 6P.
d. Locations Aboveground Where Mechanism Must Operate When Ice Covered: Type 3S.
e. Locations in-Ground or Exposed to Corrosive Agents: Type 4X.
f. Locations in-Ground or Exposed to Corrosive Agents Where Mechanism Must Operate When Ice Covered: Type 3SX.

2. Indoors:

a. Type 1 unless otherwise indicated.

C. Exposed Boxes Installed Less Than 2.5 m (8 ft) Above Floor:

1. Provide cast-metal boxes.
2. Provide exposed cover. Flat covers with angled mounting slots or knockouts are prohibited.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF BOXES AND COVERS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.

B. Reference Standards for Installation: Unless more stringent installation requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with the following:

1. Outlet, Device, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Article 314 of NFPA 70.
2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

C. Special Installation Techniques:

1. Provide boxes in wiring and raceway systems wherever required for pulling of wires, making connections, and mounting of devices or fixtures.
2. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to top of box unless otherwise indicated.
3. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box, whether installed indoors or outdoors.
4. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
5. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
6. Support boxes in recessed ceilings independent of ceiling tiles and ceiling grid.
7. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for purpose.
8. Fasten junction and pull boxes to, or support from, building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
9. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
10. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to ensure a continuous ground path.
11. Boxes and Enclosures in Areas or Walls with Acoustical Requirements:

    a. Seal openings and knockouts in back and sides of boxes and enclosures with acoustically rated putty.
    b. Provide gaskets for wallplates and covers.

12. Identification: Provide labels for boxes and associated electrical equipment.

    a. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components.

b. Provide warning signs.
c. Label each box with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

D. Interfaces with Other Work:

1. Coordinate installation of new products for existing conditions.

3.3 CLEANING

A. Remove construction dust and debris from boxes before installing wallplates, covers, and hoods.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. After installation, protect boxes from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 26 05 33.16

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 34 CONDUIT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

a. Conduit, fittings, and conduit bodies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 CONDUIT REQUIREMENTS

a. Conduit Size: Comply with NFPA 70.
   1. Minimum Size: 1/2 inch unless otherwise specified.

b. Underground Installations:
   1. More than 5 Feet from Foundation Wall: Use nonmetallic conduit.
   2. Within 5 Feet from Foundation Wall: Use PVC coated rigid steel conduit.
   3. Minimum Size: 1 inch.

c. Outdoor Locations Above Grade: Use rigid steel conduit.

d. In Slab Above Grade:
   1. Not Permitted

e. Wet and Damp Locations: Use rigid steel conduit.

f. Dry Locations:
   1. Concealed: Use electrical metallic tubing.
   2. Exposed: Use electrical metallic tubing.

2.02 METAL CONDUIT

a. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1.

b. Fittings and Conduit Bodies: NEMA FB 1; material to match conduit.

2.03 PVC COATED RIGID STEEL CONDUIT

a. Description: NEMA RN 1; rigid steel conduit with external PVC coating.

b. Fittings and Conduit Bodies: NEMA FB 1; steel fittings with external PVC coating to match conduit.

2.04 FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT

a. Description: Interlocked steel or aluminum construction.

b. Fittings: NEMA FB 1.

2.05 LIQUIDTIGHT FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT

a. Description: Interlocked steel or aluminum construction with PVC jacket.

b. Fittings: NEMA FB 1.

2.06 ELECTRICAL METALLIC TUBING (EMT)

a. Description: ANSI C80.3; galvanized tubing.

b. Fittings and Conduit Bodies: NEMA FB 1; steel type.

2.07 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT

a. Description: NEMA TC 2; Schedule 40 PVC.

b. Fittings and Conduit Bodies: NEMA TC 3.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

a. Verify that field measurements are as shown on drawings.

b. Verify routing and termination locations of conduit prior to rough-in.

c. Conduit routing is shown on drawings in approximate locations unless dimensioned. Route as required to complete wiring system.

3.02 INSTALLATION

a. Conduit may be exposed in utility areas, such as mechanical and electrical rooms. Conduit and cables shall be concealed in all other areas.

b. Install conduit securely, in a neat and workmanlike manner, as specified in NECA 1.

c. Arrange supports to prevent misalignment during wiring installation.

d. Do not support conduit with wire or perforated pipe straps. Remove wire used for temporary supports.

e. Do not attach conduit to ceiling support wires.

f. Arrange conduit to maintain headroom and present neat appearance.

g. Route exposed conduit parallel and perpendicular to walls.

h. Maintain adequate clearance between conduit and piping.

i. Cut conduit square using saw or pipecutter; de-burr cut ends.

j. Bring conduit to shoulder of fittings; fasten securely.

k. Join nonmetallic conduit using cement as recommended by manufacturer. Wipe nonmetallic conduit dry and clean before joining. Apply full even coat of cement to entire area inserted in fitting. Allow joint to cure for 20 minutes, minimum.

l. Use conduit hubs to fasten conduit to sheet metal boxes in damp and wet locations; to cast boxes.

m. Provide suitable fittings to accommodate expansion and deflection where conduit crosses expansion joints.

n. Provide suitable pull string in each empty conduit except sleeves and nipples.

o. Use suitable caps to protect installed conduit against entrance of dirt and moisture.

p. Ground and bond conduit under provisions of Section 26 0526.

q. Identify conduit under provisions of Section 26 0553.

r. Use flexible conduit only for connections to equipment requiring flexibility, such as transformers, air conditioning condensing units, and ventilation fans.

END OF SECTION

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 37 – BOXES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

a. Wall and ceiling outlet boxes.

b. Floor boxes.

c. Pull and junction boxes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 OUTLET BOXES

a. Sheet Metal Outlet Boxes: NEMA OS 1, galvanized steel.

b. Cast Boxes: NEMA FB 1, Type FD. Provide threaded hubs.

c. Wall Plates for Finished Areas: As specified in Section 26 2726.

2.02 PULL AND JUNCTION BOXES

a. Sheet Metal Boxes: NEMA OS 1, galvanized steel.

b. Hinged Enclosures: As specified in Section 26 2716.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

a. Verify locations of outlets in offices and work areas prior to rough-in.

3.02 INSTALLATION

a. Install boxes securely, in a neat and workmanlike manner, as specified in NECA 1.

b. Install in locations as shown on Drawings, and as required for splices, taps, wire pulling, equipment connections, and as required by NFPA 70.

c. Coordinate installation of outlet boxes for equipment connected under Section 26 2717.

d. Set wall mounted boxes at elevations to accommodate mounting heights specified in section for outlet device.

e. Electrical boxes are shown on Drawings in approximate locations unless dimensioned.
   1. Adjust box locations up to 5 feet if required to accommodate intended purpose.

f. Maintain headroom and present neat mechanical appearance.

g. Install pull boxes and junction boxes above accessible ceilings and in unfinished areas only.

h. Inaccessible Ceiling Areas: Install outlet and junction boxes no more than 12 inches from ceiling access panel or from removable recessed luminaire.

i. Coordinate mounting heights and locations of outlets mounted above counters, benches, and backsplashes.

j. Locate outlet boxes to allow luminaires positioned as shown on reflected ceiling plan.

k. Align adjacent wall mounted outlet boxes for switches, thermostats, and similar devices.

l. Use flush mounting outlet box in finished areas.

m. Locate flush mounting box in masonry wall to require cutting of masonry unit corner only. Coordinate masonry cutting to achieve neat opening.

n. Unless otherwise indicated, provide separate boxes for line voltage and low voltage systems.

o. Locate outlet boxes so that wall plates do not span different building finishes.

p. Do not fasten boxes to ceiling support wires.

q. Use cast outlet box in exterior locations exposed to the weather.

r. Large Pull Boxes: Use hinged enclosure in interior dry locations, surface-mounted cast metal box in other locations.

3.03 ADJUSTING

a. Adjust flush-mounting outlets to make front flush with finished wall material.

3.04 CLEANING

a. Clean interior of boxes to remove dust, debris, and other material.

b. Clean exposed surfaces and restore finish.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 48 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Restraints - rigid type.
3. Restraints - cable type.
4. Restraint accessories.
5. Post-installed concrete anchors.
6. Concrete inserts.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for commonly used electrical supports and installation requirements.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Restraints - rigid type.
3. Restraints - cable type.
4. Restraint accessories.
5. Post-installed concrete anchors.
6. Concrete inserts.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases.
2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
3. Show coordination of seismic and wind-load bracing for components with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.

C. Delegated Design Submittal for Each Seismic-Restraint Device: Signed and sealed by qualified structural professional engineer.

1. For each seismic-restraint device, that is required by this Section or is indicated on Drawings, submit the following:

a. Seismic Restraints: Select seismic restraints complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data.
b. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors and Inserts: Include calculations showing anticipated seismic loads. Include certification that device is approved by qualified testing laboratory for seismic reinforcement use.
c. Seismic Design Calculations: Submit input data and loading calculations.

D. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage qualified structural professional engineer to design seismic and wind-load control.

B. Seismic- and Wind-Load-Restraint Device Load Ratings: Devices to be tested and rated in accordance with applicable code requirements and authorities having jurisdiction. Devices to be listed by a nationally recognized third party that requires periodic follow-up inspections and has a listing directory available to the public. Provide third-party listing by one or more of the following: UL product listing.

C. Consequential Damage: Provide additional seismic restraints for suspended components or anchorage of floor-, roof-, or wall-mounted components so that failure of a non-essential or essential component will not cause failure of any other essential building component.

D. Fire/Smoke Resistance: Seismic-restraint devices that are not constructed of ferrous metals must have a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested by qualified testing laboratory in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, and be so labeled.

E. Component Supports:

1. Load ratings, features, and applications of reinforcement components must be based on testing standards of qualified testing laboratory.

2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
b. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
c. California Dynamics Corporation.
d. Isolation Technology, Inc.
e. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.

f. Korfund.
g. Mason Industries, Inc.
h. NOVIA; a division of Carpenter & Paterson.
i. VMC GROUP.
j. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
k. Vibration Isolation.
l. Vibration Management Corp.

2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties. Neoprene rubber, silicone rubber, or other elastomeric material.
5. Surface Pattern: Smooth, ribbed, or waffle pattern.

2.3 RESTRAINTS - RIGID TYPE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
2. California Dynamics Corporation.
3. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
4. Hilti, Inc.
5. Isolation Technology, Inc.
6. TOLCO Incorporated.
7. Unistrut; Atkore International.
8. VMC GROUP.

B. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of ANSI/AISI S110-07-S1 slotted steel channels, ANSI/ASTM A53/A53M steel pipe, or other rigid steel brace member. Includes accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

2.4 RESTRAINTS - CABLE TYPE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
2. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
3. Gripple Inc.
4. Loos & Co. Inc.
5. VMC GROUP.

B. Seismic -Restraint Cables: ASTM A1023/A1023M galvanized or ASTM A603 galvanized-steel cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts

designed for seismic-restraining cable service; with fittings attached by means of poured socket, swaged socket, or mechanical (Flemish eye) loop.

C. Restraint cable assembly and cable fittings must comply with ASCE/SEI 19. Cable fittings and complete cable assembly must maintain the minimum cable breaking force. U-shaped cable clips and wedge-type end fittings do not comply and are unacceptable.

2.5 RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
2. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
3. Hilti, Inc.
4. Loos & Co. Inc.
5. Mason Industries, Inc.
6. TOLCO Incorporated.
7. Unistrut; Atkore International.

B. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod. Non-metallic stiffeners are unacceptable.

C. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to rigid channel bracings.

D. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.

E. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.

F. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

2.6 POST-INSTALLED CONCRETE ANCHORS

A. Mechanical Anchor Bolts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
b. Hilti, Inc.
c. Mason Industries, Inc.
d. Powers Fasteners.
e. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
f. Unistrut; Atkore International.

2. Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E488/E488M.

B. Adhesive Anchor Bolts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
b. Hilti, Inc.
c. Mason Industries, Inc.
d. Powers Fasteners.
e. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
f. Unistrut; Atkore International.

2. Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing PVC or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E488/E488M.

C. Provide post-installed concrete anchors that have been prequalified for use in seismic and wind-load applications.

1. Prequalify post-installed anchors in concrete in accordance with ACI 355.2 or other approved qualification testing procedures.
2. Prequalify post-installed anchors in masonry in accordance with approved qualification procedures.

D. Expansion-type anchor bolts are not permitted for equipment in excess of 10 hp (7.46 kW) that is not vibration isolated.

1. Undercut expansion anchors are permitted.

2.7 CONCRETE INSERTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
2. Hilti, Inc.
3. Mason Industries, Inc.
4. Powers Fasteners.
5. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
6. Unistrut; Atkore International.

B. Provide preset concrete inserts that are seismically prequalified in accordance with ICC-ES AC446 testing.

C. Comply with MSS SP-58.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.

1. Include rated load capacity for each seismic-restraint device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic -restraint component used.
3. Annotate types and sizes of seismic restraints and accessories, complete with listing markings or report numbers and load rating in tension and compression as evaluated by UL product listing.
4. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive seismic and wind-load control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

A. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Secure raceways and cables to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES.

B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods caused by seismic forces.

C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SEISMIC-RESTRAINT AND WIND-LOAD CONTROL DEVICES

A. Provide seismic restraint and wind-load control devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Seismic Controls Schedule, where indicated on Drawings,

where the Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems, and where required by applicable codes.

1. Install equipment and devices to withstand the effects of earthquake motions and high wind events.

B. Coordinate location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

C. Installation of seismic restraints must not cause any stresses, misalignment, or change of position of equipment or conduits.

D. Equipment Restraints:

1. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
2. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES that provides required submittals for component.

E. Raceway, Cable, Wireway, Cable Tray, and Busway Support and Hanger Restraints:

1. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
2. Install seismic-restraint and wind-load-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES that provides required submittals for component.
3. Install resilient, bolt-isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
4. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES providing required submittals for component.

F. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.

G. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.

H. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

I. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Mechanical-Type Anchor Bolts: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors must be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.

4. Adhesive-Type Anchor Bolts: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque using a torque wrench.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

A. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where connection is terminated to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field tests must be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
4. Test no fewer than four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.

C. Nonconforming Work:

1. Seismic controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

D. Field Quality-Control Reports: Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 05 48

SECTION 26 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

a. Nameplates and labels.

b. Wire and cable markers.

c. Conduit markers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 IDENTIFICATION APPLICATIONS

a. Communication Cabinets: Nameplates.

b. Control Device Stations: Labels.

c. Electrical Distribution and Control Equipment Enclosures: Nameplates.

d. Junction Box Load Connections: Wire markers.

e. Outlet Box Load Connections: Wire markers.

f. Panel Gutter Load Connections: Wire markers.

g. Pull Box Load Connections: Wire markers.

2.02 NAMEPLATES AND LABELS

a. Nameplates: Engraved three-layer laminated plastic, black letters on white background.

b. Letter Size:
   1. Use 1/8 inch letters for identifying individual equipment and loads.
   2. Use 1/4 inch letters for identifying grouped equipment and loads.

2.03 WIRE MARKERS

a. Description: Tape; Split sleeve or Nylon type self-adhesive, snap-around, or sleeve wire markers.

b. Legend:
   1. Power and Lighting Circuits: Branch circuit or feeder number indicated on drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

a. Degrease and clean surfaces to receive nameplates and labels.

3.02 INSTALLATION

a. Install nameplates and labels parallel to equipment lines.

b. Secure nameplates to equipment front using screws or rivets.

c. Secure nameplates to inside surface of door on panelboard that is recessed in finished locations.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 09 23 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Outdoor photoelectric switches, solid state, luminaire-mounted.
2. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
3. Switchbox-mounted occupancy sensors.
4. Digital timer light switch.
5. Conductors and cables.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, non-networkable wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
2. Switchbox-mounted occupancy sensors.
3. Conductors and cables.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show installation details for the following:

   a. Occupancy sensors.
   b. Vacancy sensors.

2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranties.

1.4 WARRANTY

A. Special Extended Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer warrant that installed lighting control devices perform in accordance with specified requirements and agree to repair or replace, including labor, materials, and equipment, devices that fail to perform as specified within extended warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Faulty operation of lighting control devices.

2. Extended Warranty Period: Three year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Bryant; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
2. Douglas Lighting Controls.
3. Eaton.
4. Hubbell Control Solutions; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
5. Intermatic, Inc.
6. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
7. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
8. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
9. NSi Industries LLC.
10. Philips; Signify North America; Signify Holding.
11. RAB Lighting.
12. Sensor Switch, Inc.
13. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
14. WattStopper; Legrand North America, LLC.

B. General Requirements for Sensors:

1. Ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
2. Dual technology.
3. Integrated or Separate power pack.
4. Hardwired connection to switch.
5. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
6. Operation:

a. Occupancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.

7. Sensor Output: Sensor is powered from the power pack.
8. Power: Line voltage.
9. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20 A LED load at 120 and 277 V(ac), for 13 A tungsten at 120 V(ac), and for 1 hp at 120 V(ac). Sensor has 24 V(dc), 150 mA, Class 2 power source.
10. Mounting:

    a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position in a standard device box or outlet box.
    b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2 inch (13 mm) knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
    c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.

11. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
12. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
13. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lx); turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.

C. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.

1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6 inch (150 mm) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. inch (23 200 sq. mm), and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inch (305 mm) in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inch/s (305 mm/s).
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96 inch (2440 mm) high ceiling.

2.2 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Bryant; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
2. Douglas Lighting Controls.
3. Eaton.
4. Hubbell Control Solutions; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
5. Intermatic, Inc.
6. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
7. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
8. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
9. NSi Industries LLC.
10. Philips; Signify North America; Signify Holding.
11. RAB Lighting.

12. Sensor Switch, Inc.
13. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
14. WattStopper; Legrand North America, LLC.

B. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on-off switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox.

1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Occupancy Sensor Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn lights off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
3. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F (0 to 49 deg C).
4. Switch Rating: Not less than 800 VA LED load at 120 V, 1200 VA.

C. Wall-Switch Sensor:

1. Standard Range: 180-degree field of view, field adjustable from 180 to 40 degrees; with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft. (84 sq. m).
2. Sensing Technology: Dual technology - PIR and ultrasonic.
3. Switch Type: SP, field-selectable automatic "on," or manual "on," automatic "off."
4. Capable of controlling load in three-way application.
5. Voltage: 120 V.
6. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc (108 to 1600 lx). The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
7. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
8. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and helps eliminate false "off" switching.
9. Color: White.
10. Faceplate: Color matched to switch.

2.3 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 16 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine lighting control devices before installation. Reject lighting control devices that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

B. Examine walls and ceilings for suitable conditions where lighting control devices will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF SENSORS

A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.

B. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF WIRING

A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch (13 mm).

B. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors in accordance with conductor manufacturer's instructions.

C. Size conductors in accordance with lighting control device manufacturer's instructions unless otherwise indicated.

D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, device, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify components and power and control wiring in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems.

1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.

B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Nonconforming Work:

1. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting lighting control devices to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.

END OF SECTION 26 09 23

SECTION 26 22 00 - LOW-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

a. General purpose transformers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ALL TRANSFORMERS

a. Description: Factory-assembled, dry type transformers for 60 Hz operation designed and manufactured in accordance with NEMA ST 20 and listed and labeled by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

b. Unless noted otherwise, transformer ratings indicated are for continuous loading according to IEEE C57.96 under the following service conditions:
   1. Altitude: Less than 3,300 feet.
   2. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 86 degrees F average or 104 degrees F maximum measured during any 24 hour period.

c. Core: High grade, non-aging silicon steel with high magnetic permeability and low hysteresis and eddy current losses. Keep magnetic flux densities substantially below saturation point, even at 10 percent primary overvoltage. Tightly clamp core laminations to prevent plate movement and maintain consistent pressure throughout core length.

d. Impregnate core and coil assembly with non-hydroscopic thermo-setting varnish to effectively seal out moisture and other contaminants.

e. Basic Impulse Level: 10 kV.

f. Ground core and coil assembly to enclosure by means of a visible flexible copper grounding strap.

g. Isolate core and coil from enclosure using vibration-absorbing mounts.

h. Nameplate: Include transformer connection data, ratings, wiring diagrams, and overload capacity based on rated winding temperature rise.

2.02 GENERAL PURPOSE TRANSFORMERS

a. Description: Self-cooled, two winding transformers listed and labeled as complying with UL 506 or UL 1561; ratings as indicated on the drawings.

b. Insulation System and Allowable Average Winding Temperature Rise:
   1. Less than 15 kVA: Class 185 degrees C insulation system with 115 degrees C average winding temperature rise.

2. 15 kVA and Larger: Class 220 degrees C insulation system with 150 degrees C average winding temperature rise.

c. Coil Conductors: Continuous aluminum windings with terminations brazed or welded.

d. Winding Taps:
   1. Less than 3 kVA: None.
   2. 3 kVA through 15 kVA: Two 5 percent full capacity primary taps below rated voltage.
   3. 15 kVA through 300 kVA: Two 2.5 percent full capacity primary taps above and four 2.5 percent full capacity primary taps below rated voltage.
   4. 500 kVA and Larger: Two 2.5 percent full capacity primary taps above and two 2.5 percent full capacity primary taps below rated voltage.

e. Energy Efficiency: Standard efficiency complying with NEMA TP 1.
   1. Test efficiency according to NEMA TP 2.
   2. Label transformer according to NEMA TP 3.

f. Sound Levels: Standard sound levels complying with NEMA ST 20.

g. Mounting Provisions:
   1. Less than 15 kVA: Suitable for wall mounting.
   2. 15 kVA through 75 kVA: Suitable for floor mounting.
   3. Larger than 75 kVA: Suitable for floor mounting.

h. Transformer Enclosure: Comply with NEMA ST 20.
   1. Environment Type per NEMA 250: As indicated on the drawings.
   2. Construction: Heavy gage steel.
      a. Less than 15 kVA: Totally enclosed, non-ventilated.
      b. 15 kVA and Larger: Ventilated.
   3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard grey, suitable for outdoor installations.
   4. Provide lifting eyes or brackets.

i. Accessories:
   1. Weathershield Kits: Provide for ventilated transformers installed outdoors to provide a listed NEMA 250, type 3R assembly.
   2. Lug Kits: Sized as required for termination of conductors as indicated on the drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

a. Perform work in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1.

b. Install transformers in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

c. Install transformers in accordance with NECA 409 and IEEE C57.94.

d. For transformers 15kVA and larger, use flexible conduit, under the provisions of Section 26 0534, 2 feet minimum length, for connections to transformer case. Make conduit connections to side panel of enclosure.

e. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances as specified on transformer nameplate and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.

f. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 26 0526.

g. Remove shipping braces and adjust bolts that attach the core and coil mounting bracket to the enclosure according to manufacturer's recommendations in order to reduce audible noise transmission.

h. Where not factory-installed, install lugs sized as required for termination of conductors as shown on the drawings.

i. Where furnished as a separate accessory, install transformer weathershield per manufacturer's instructions.

j. Install transformer identification nameplate in accordance with Section 26 0553.

3.02 ADJUSTING

a. Measure primary and secondary voltages and make appropriate tap adjustments.

b. Adjust tightness of mechanical and electrical connections to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.

3.03 CLEANING

a. Clean dirt and debris from transformer components according to manufacturer's instructions.

b. Repair scratched or marred exterior surfaces to match original factory finish.

END OF SECTION

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 24 16 PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

a. Lighting and appliance panelboards.

b. Overcurrent protective devices for panelboards.

PART 2- PRODUCTS

2.01 ALL PANELBOARDS

a. Provide products listed and labeled by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose indicated.

b. Short Circuit Current Rating:
   1. Provide panelboards with listed short circuit current rating as indicated on the drawings.
   2. Listed series ratings are acceptable, except where not permitted by motor contribution according to NFPA 70.
   3. Label equipment utilizing series ratings as required by NFPA 70.

c. Panelboards Used for Service Entrance: Listed and labeled as suitable for use as service equipment according to UL 869A.

d. Mains: Configure for top or bottom incoming feed as indicated or as required for the installation.

e. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Replaceable without disturbing adjacent devices.

f. Bussing: Sized in accordance with UL 67 temperature rise requirements.
   1. Provide fully rated neutral bus with a suitable lug for each feeder or branch circuit requiring a neutral connection.
   2. Provide solidly bonded equipment ground bus in each panelboard, with a suitable lug for each feeder and branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.

g. Conductor Terminations: Suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.

h. Enclosures: Comply with NEMA 250, and list and label as complying with UL 50 and UL 50E.
   1. Environment Type per NEMA 250: As indicated on the drawings and required for the environment installed.
   2. Boxes: Galvanized steel unless otherwise indicated.
      a. Provide wiring gutters sized to accommodate the conductors to be installed.
   3. Fronts:
      a. Fronts for Surface-Mounted Enclosures: Same dimensions as boxes.

b. Fronts for Flush-Mounted Enclosures: Overlap boxes on all sides to conceal rough opening.
c. Finish for Painted Steel Fronts: Manufacturer's standard grey.

4. Lockable Doors: All locks keyed alike unless otherwise indicated.

i. Future Provisions: Prepare all unused spaces for future installation of devices including bussing, connectors, mounting hardware and all other required provisions.

j. Surge Protective Devices: Where factory-installed, internally mounted surge protective devices are provided in accordance with Section 26 4300.

2.03 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE PANELBOARDS

a. Description: Panelboards complying with NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch circuit type, circuit breaker type, and listed and labeled as complying with UL 67; ratings, configurations and features as indicated on the drawings.

b. Conductor Terminations:
1. Main and Neutral Lug Material: Aluminum, suitable for terminating aluminum or copper conductors.
2. Main and Neutral Lug Type: Mechanical.

c. Bussing:
1. Phase Bus Connections: Arranged for sequential phasing of overcurrent protective devices.
2. Phase and Neutral Bus Material: Aluminum or Copper.
3. Ground Bus Material: Aluminum or Copper.

d. Circuit Breakers: Thermal magnetic plug-in type.

e. Enclosures:
1. Provide surface-mounted enclosures unless otherwise indicated
2. Fronts: Provide hinged door with concealed hinges for access to overcurrent protective device handles without exposing live parts.
3. Provide clear plastic circuit directory holder mounted on inside of door.

2.04 OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

a. Molded Case Circuit Breakers:
1. Description: Quick-make, quick-break, over center toggle, trip-free, trip-indicating circuit breakers listed and labeled as complying with UL 489 ratings, configurations, and features as indicated on the drawings.
2. Interrupting Capacity:
a. Provide circuit breakers with interrupting capacity as required to provide the short circuit current rating indicated.
b. Fully Rated Systems: Provide circuit breakers with interrupting capacity not less than the short circuit current rating indicated.
c. Series Rated Systems: Provide circuit breakers listed in combination with upstream devices to provide interrupting rating not less than the short circuit current rating indicated.

3. Conductor Terminations:
   a. Provide mechanical lugs unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Lug Material: Aluminum, suitable for terminating aluminum or copper conductors.
4. Thermal Magnetic Circuit Breakers: For each pole, furnish thermal inverse time tripping element for overload protection and magnetic instantaneous tripping element for short circuit protection.
5. Multi-Pole Circuit Breakers: Furnish with common trip for all poles.
6. Provide the following circuit breaker types where indicated:
   a. Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Listed as complying with UL 943, class A for protection of personnel.
7. Do not use tandem circuit breakers.
8. Provide multi-pole circuit breakers; or circuit breaker handle-ties for multi-wire branch circuits as required by NFPA 70.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

a. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.

b. Verify that the ratings and configurations of the panelboards and associated components are consistent with the indicated requirements.

c. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive panelboards.

d. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.02 INSTALLATION

a. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

b. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.

c. Provide required supports in accordance with Section 26 0529.

d. Install panelboards plumb.

e. Install flush-mounted panelboards so that trims fit completely flush to wall with no gaps and rough opening completely covered.

f. Multi-Wire Branch Circuits: Group grounded and ungrounded conductors together in the panelboard as required by NFPA 70.

g. Provide filler plates to cover unused spaces in panelboards.

h. Provide computer-generated circuit directory for each lighting and appliance panelboard; clearly and specifically indicating the loads served. Identify spares and spaces.

i. Provide identification nameplate for each panelboard in accordance with Section 26 0553.

PART 4 BASIS OF PAYMENT

Payment will be made under the various lump sum pay items. This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all preparation, assembly, and installation of these materials, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete this item in accordance with the provisions and intent of the plans and specifications. No separate measurement will be made for work performed under this section.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 27 16 - ELECTRICAL CABINETS AND ENCLOSURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

a. Hinged cover enclosures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 HINGED COVER ENCLOSURES

a. Construction: NEMA 250, Type 1 steel enclosure.

b. Covers: Continuous hinge, held closed by flush latch operable by screwdriver or quarter turn keyed latch, as specified in plans.

c. Provide interior metal panel for mounting terminal blocks and electrical components.

d. Enclosure Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel.

PART 3

3.01 INSTALLATION

a. Install securely, in a neat and workmanlike manner, as specified in NECA 1.

b. Install enclosures and boxes plumb. Anchor securely to wall and structural supports at each corner under the provisions of Section 26 0529.

3.02 CLEANING

a. Clean electrical parts to remove conductive and harmful materials.

b. Remove dirt and debris from enclosure.

END OF SECTION

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 27 17 - EQUIPMENT WIRING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

a. Electrical connections to equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

a. Cords and Caps: NEMA WD 6; match receptacle configuration at outlet provided for equipment.
   1. Cord Construction: NFPA 70, Type SO or SJO; multiconductor flexible cord with identified equipment grounding conductor, suitable for use in damp locations.
   2. Size: Suitable for connected load of equipment, length of cord, and rating of branch circuit overcurrent protection.

b. Disconnect Switches: As required by National Electrical Code.

c. Wiring Devices: As specified in Section 26 2726.

d. Flexible Conduit: As specified in Section 26 0534.

e. Wire and Cable: As specified in Section 26 0519.

f. Boxes: As specified in Section 26 0537.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

a. Verify that equipment is ready for electrical connection, wiring, and energization.

3.02 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

a. Make electrical connections in accordance with equipment manufacturer's instructions.

b. Make conduit connections to equipment using flexible conduit. Use liquidtight flexible conduit with watertight connectors in damp or wet locations.

c. Connect heat producing equipment using wire and cable with insulation suitable for temperatures encountered.

d. Provide receptacle outlet to accommodate connection with attachment plug.

e. Provide cord and cap where field-supplied attachment plug is required.

f. Install suitable strain-relief clamps and fittings for cord connections at outlet boxes and equipment connection boxes.

g. Install disconnect switches, controllers, control stations, and control devices to complete equipment wiring requirements.

h. Install interconnecting conduit and wiring between devices and equipment to complete equipment wiring requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 27 26 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

a. Wall switches.

b. Receptacles.

c. Wall plates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 APPLICATIONS

a. Provide wiring devices suitable for intended use and with ratings adequate for load served.

b. Provide weather resistant GFCI receptacles with specified weatherproof covers for all receptacles installed outdoors or in damp or wet locations.

c. Unless noted otherwise, do not use combination switch/receptacle devices.

2.02 ALL WIRING DEVICES

a. Provide products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

b. Finishes:
   1. Wiring Devices Installed in Finished Spaces; White with white nylon wall plate unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Wiring Devices Installed in Unfinished Spaces; Gray with galvanized steel wall plate unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Wiring Devices Installed in Wet or Damp Locations: Gray with specified weatherproof cover unless otherwise indicated.

2.03 WALL SWITCHES

a. All Wall Switches: AC only, quiet operating, general-use snap switches with silver alloy contacts, complying with NEMA WD 1 and NEMA WD 6, and listed as complying with UL 20.
   1. Wiring Provisions: Terminal screws for side wiring screw actuated binding clamp for back wiring.

b. Standard Wall Switches: Commercial specification grade; 15A, 120V, with standard toggle type switch actuator and maintained contacts.

2.04 RECEPTACLES

a. All Receptacles: Complying with NEMA WD 1 and NEMA WD 6, and listed as complying with UL 498 types as indicated on the drawings.
   1. Wiring Provisions: Terminal screws for side wiring or screw actuated binding clamp for back wiring.
   2. NEMA configurations specified are according to NEMA WD 6.

b. Convenience Receptacles:
   1. Standard Convenience Receptacles: Commercial specification grade; 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R; single or duplex as indicated on the drawing.
   2. Weather Resistant Convenience Receptacles: Commercial specification grade; 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R; listed and labeled as weather resistant type complying with UL 498 Supplement SE suitable for installation in damp or wet locations; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings.

c. GFCI Receptacles:
   1. All GFCI Receptacles: Provide with feed-through protection, light to indicate ground fault tripped condition and loss of protection, and list as complying with UL 943, class A. Provide test and reset buttons of same color as device.
   2. Standard GFCI Receptacles: Commercial specification grade; duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R.
   3. Weather Resistant GFCI Receptacles: Commercial specification grade; duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R; listed and labeled as weather resistant type complying with UL 498 Supplement SE suitable for installation in damp or wet locations.

2.05 WALL PLATES

a. All Wall Plates: Comply with UL 514D.
   1. Configuration: One piece cover as required for quantity and types of corresponding wiring devices.
   2. Size: Standard.
   3. Screws: Metal with slotted heads finished to match wall plate finish.

b. Nylon Wall Plates: Smooth finish, high-impact thermoplastic.

c. Galvanized Steel Wall Plates: Rounded corners and edges, with corrosion resistant screws.

d. Weatherproof Covers for Damp Locations: Gasketed, cast aluminum with self-closing hinged cover and corrosion-resistant screws; listed as suitable for use in wet locations with cover closed.

e. Weatherproof Covers for Wet Locations: Gasketed, cast aluminum; with hinged lockable cover and corrosion-resistant screws; listed as suitable for use in wet locations while in use with attachment plugs connected.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

a. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.

b. Verify that outlet boxes are installed in proper locations and at proper mounting heights and are properly sized to accommodate devices and conductors in accordance with NFPA 70.

c. Verify that wall openings are neatly cut and will be completely covered by wall plates.

d. Verify that final surface finishes are complete.

e. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to wiring devices.

f. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.02 PREPARATION

a. Provide extension rings to bring outlet boxes flush with finished surface.

b. Clean dirt, debris, plaster, and other foreign materials from outlet boxes.

3.03 INSTALLATION

a. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 26 0537 as required for installation of wiring devices provided under this section.
   1. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated, as follows.
      a. Wall Switches: 48 inches above finished floor.
      b. Receptacles: 18 inches above finished floor or 6 inches above counter.
   2. Orient outlet boxes for vertical installation of wiring devices unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Where multiple receptacles or wall switches are installed at the same location and at the same mounting height, gang devices together under a common wall plate.

b. Provide GFCI receptacles with integral GFCI protection at each location indicated. Do not use feed-through wiring to protect downstream devices.

c. Install wiring devices plumb and level with mounting yoke held rigidly in place.

d. Install wall switches with OFF position down.

e. Install wall plates to fit completely flush to wall with no gaps and rough opening completely covered. Repair or reinstall improperly installed outlet boxes or improperly sized rough openings. Do not use oversized wall plates in lieu of meeting this requirement.

3.04 CLEANING

a. Clean exposed surfaces to remove dirt, paint, or other foreign material and restore to match original factory finish.

END OF SECTION

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 28 16 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fusible switches.
2. Nonfusible switches.
3. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
4. Molded-case switches.
5. Enclosures.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. GFEP: Ground-fault circuit-interrupter for equipment protection.

B. GFLS: Ground-fault circuit-interrupter for life safety.

C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
2. Enclosure types and details for types other than UL 50E, Type 1.
3. Current and voltage ratings.
4. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
5. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF and native calculation software electronic format.

B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty documentation.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Installer Extended Warranty: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed enclosed switches and circuit breakers perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components or products that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.

1. Extended-Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain products from single manufacturer.

B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ABB, Electrification Business.
2. Eaton.
3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
4. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty:

1. Single throw.
2. Three pole.

3. 240 V(ac).
4. 1200 A and smaller.
5. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses.
6. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
4. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.3 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ABB, Electrification Business.
2. Eaton.
3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
4. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240 V(ac), 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.4 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ABB, Electrification Business.
2. Eaton.
3. NOARK Electric North America.
4. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
5. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.

B. Circuit breakers must be constructed using glass-reinforced insulating material. Current carrying components must be completely isolated from handle and accessory mounting area.

C. Circuit breakers must have toggle operating mechanism with common tripping of all poles, which provides quick-make, quick-break contact action. Circuit-breaker handle must be over center, be trip free, and reside in tripped position between on and off to provide local trip indication. Circuit-breaker escutcheon must be clearly marked on and off in addition to providing international I/O markings. Equip circuit breaker with push-to-trip button, located on face of circuit breaker to mechanically operate circuit-breaker tripping mechanism for maintenance and testing purposes.

D. Maximum ampere rating and UL, IEC, or other certification standards with applicable voltage systems and corresponding interrupting ratings must be clearly marked on face of circuit breaker. Circuit breakers must be 100 percent rated.

E. MCCBs must be equipped with device for locking in isolated position.

F. Lugs must be suitable for 90 deg C rated wire, sized in accordance with 75 deg C temperature rating in NFPA 70.

G. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with required interrupting capacity for available fault currents.

H. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

I. Features and Accessories:

1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
2. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
3. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.

2.5 MOLDED-CASE SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ABB, Electrification Business.
2. Eaton.
3. NOARK Electric North America.
4. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
5. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.

B. Description: MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only, and short-circuit withstand rating equal to equivalent breaker frame size interrupting rating.

C. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.

D. Features and Accessories:

1. Standard frame sizes and number of poles.
2. Lugs:

    a. Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
    b. Lugs must be suitable for 90 deg C rated wire, sized in accordance with 75 deg C temperature rating in NFPA 70.

2.6 ENCLOSURES

A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, UL 50E, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

B. Enclosure Finish: Enclosure must be finished with gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (UL 50E Type 1) or gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized galvannealed steel (UL 50E Types 3R, 12).

C. Conduit Entry: UL 50E Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures may not contain knockouts. UL 50E Types 7 and 9 enclosures must be provided with threaded conduit openings in both endwalls.

D. Operating Mechanism: Circuit-breaker operating handle must be externally operable with operating mechanism being integral part of box, not cover. Cover interlock mechanism must have externally operated override. Override may not permanently disable interlock mechanism, which must return to locked position once override is released. Tool used to override cover interlock mechanism must not be required to enter enclosure in order to override interlock.

E. Enclosures designated as UL 50E Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K must have dual cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of enclosure cover when circuit breaker is ON and to prevent turning circuit breaker ON when enclosure cover is open.

F. UL 50E Type 7/9 enclosures must be furnished with breather and drain kit to allow their use in outdoor and wet location applications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

1. Commencement of work will indicate Installer's acceptance of areas and conditions as satisfactory.

3.2 SELECTION OF ENCLOSURES

A. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: UL 50E, Type 1.

B. Outdoor Locations: UL 50E, Type 3R.

C. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: UL 50E, Type 4.

D. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: UL 50E, Type 12.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.

B. Special Techniques:

1. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
2. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
3. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
4. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
5. Install fuses in fusible devices.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Preparation:

B. Field tests and inspections must be witnessed by owner.

C. Tests and Inspections for Switches:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
c. Verify that unit is clean.
d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.

g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods:

1) Use low-resistance ohmmeter.

a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of lowest value.

2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.

a) Bolt-torque levels must be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.

h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on Drawings.
i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.

2. Electrical Tests:

a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of lowest value.
b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuseholder. Drop values may not exceed high level of manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of lowest value.
c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
e. Perform ground fault test in accordance with NETA ATS Section 7.14 "Ground Fault Protection Systems, Low-Voltage."

D. Nonconforming Work:

1. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

E. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.

1. Test procedures used.
2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.
3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."

3.7 PROTECTION

A. After installation, protect enclosed switches and circuit breakers from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

3.8 MAINTENANCE

A. Infrared Scanning of Enclosed Switches and Breakers: Two months after Substantial Completion, perform infrared scan of joints and connections. Remove covers so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner. Take visible light photographs at same locations and orientations as infrared scans for documentation to ensure follow-on scans match same conditions for valid comparison.

1. Instruments and Equipment: Use infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
2. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform two follow-up infrared scans of enclosed switches and breakers, one at four months and another at 11 months after Substantial Completion.
3. Instrument: Use infrared-scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide documentation of device calibration.
4. Report: Prepare certified report that identifies units checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial actions taken, and scanning observations after remedial action.

END OF SECTION 26 28 16

SECTION 26 29 13 - ENCLOSED CONTROLLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

a. Manual motor controllers.

b. Magnetic motor controllers.

c. Combination magnetic motor controllers and disconnects.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUAL CONTROLLERS

a. Manual Motor Controllers: NEMA ICS 2, AC general-purpose, Class A, manually operated, full-voltage controller with overload element, and push button or toggle operator.

b. Fractional Horsepower Manual Controllers: NEMA ICS 2, AC general-purpose, Class A, manually operated, full-voltage controller for fractional horsepower induction motors, with thermal overload unit, and toggle or push button operator.

c. Motor Starting Switches: NEMA ICS 2, AC general-purpose Class A manually operated, full-voltage controller for fractional horsepower induction motors, without thermal overload unit, with toggle or push button operator.

d. Enclosures: NEMA ICS 6, Type as required to meet conditions of installation.

2.02 AUTOMATIC CONTROLLERS

a. Magnetic Motor Controllers: NEMA ICS 2, AC general-purpose Class A magnetic controller for induction motors rated in horsepower.

b. Reversing Controllers: Include electrical interlock and integral time delay transition between FORWARD and REVERSE rotation.

c. Two-Speed Controllers: Include integral time delay transition between FAST and SLOW speeds.

d. Coil Operating Voltage: 120 volts, 60 Hertz.

e. Overload Relays: NEMA ICS 2; bimetal.

f. Enclosures: NEMA ICS 6, Type as required to meet conditions of installation.

2.03 DISCONNECTS

a. Combination Controllers: Combine motor controllers with disconnects in common enclosure.

b. Thermal Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Integral thermal and instantaneous magnetic trip in each pole; UL listed.

c. Motor Circuit Protector: Circuit breakers with integral instantaneous magnetic trip in each pole; UL listed.

d. Nonfusible Switch Assemblies: NEMA KS 1, enclosed knife switch with externally operable handle.

e. Fusible Switch Assemblies: NEMA KS 1, enclosed knife switch with externally operable handle. Fuse clips: Designed to accommodate Class R fuses.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

a. Install enclosed controllers where indicated, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

b. Install securely, in a neat and workmanlike manner, as specified in NECA 1.

c. Provide supports in accordance with Section 26 0529.

d. Height: 5 ft to operating handle.

e. Select and install overload heater elements in motor controllers to match installed motor characteristics.

f. Provide engraved plastic nameplates; refer to Section 26 0553 for product requirements and location.

g. Neatly type label inside each motor controller door identifying motor served, nameplate horsepower, full load amperes, code letter, service factor, and voltage/phase rating. Place label in clear plastic holder.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 32 13.16 - GAS-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Engine.
2. Gas fuel system.
3. Control and monitoring.
4. Generator overcurrent and fault protection.
5. Generator, exciter, and voltage regulator.
6. Load bank.
7. Outdoor generator-set enclosure.
8. Remote radiator motors.
9. Vibration isolation devices.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 263600 "Transfer Switches" for transfer switches including sensors and relays to initiate automatic-starting and -stopping signals for engine generators.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EPS: Emergency power supply.

B. EPSS: Emergency power supply system.

C. LP: Liquefied petroleum.

D. Operational Bandwidth: The total variation from the lowest to highest value of a parameter over the range of conditions indicated, expressed as a percentage of the nominal value of the parameter.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Include thermal damage curve for generator.
3. Include time-current characteristic curves for generator protective device.
4. Include fuel consumption in cubic feet per hour (cubic meters per hour) at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75 and 1.0 times generator capacity.
5. Include generator efficiency at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75, and 1.0 times generator capacity.
6. Include air flow requirements for cooling and combustion air in cfm at 0.8 power factor, with air supply temperature of 95 deg F (35 deg C), 80 deg F (27 deg C), 70 deg F (21 deg C), and 50 deg F (10 deg C). Provide drawings showing requirements and limitations for location of air intake and exhausts.
7. Include generator characteristics, including, but not limited to, kilowatt rating, efficiency, reactances, and short-circuit current capability.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans and elevations for engine generator and other components specified.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Identify fluid drain ports and clearance requirements for proper fluid drain.
4. Design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include base weights.
6. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Complete schematic, wiring, and interconnection diagrams showing terminal markings for EPS equipment and functional relationship between all electrical components.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for engine generator, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: With engine and generator mounted on rails, identify center of gravity and total weight, supplied enclosure, and each piece of equipment not integral to the engine generator, and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Source Quality-Control Reports: Including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Certified summary of prototype-unit test report.

2. Certified Test Reports: For components and accessories that are equivalent, but not identical, to those tested on prototype unit.
3. Certified Summary of Performance Tests: Certify compliance with specified requirement to meet performance criteria for sensitive loads.
4. Report of factory test on units to be shipped for this Project, showing evidence of compliance with specified requirements.
5. Report of sound generation.
6. Report of exhaust emissions showing compliance with applicable regulations.
7. Certified Torsional Vibration Compatibility: Comply with NFPA 110.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For engine generators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at Project for ready access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of supply.
b. Operating instructions laminated and mounted adjacent to generator location.
c. Training plan.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: One for every 10 of each type and rating, but no fewer than one of each.
2. Indicator Lamps: Two for every six of each type used, but no fewer than two of each.
3. Filters: One set each of lubricating oil, fuel, and combustion-air filters.
4. Tools: Each tool listed by part number in operations and maintenance manual.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Caterpillar, Inc.; Electric Power Division.
2. Cummins Power Generation.
3. GE Power; General Electric Company.
4. Generac.
5. Hipower Systems.
6. Kohler Power Systems.
7. Rolls-Royce Solutions America Inc.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged engine generators and auxiliary components through one source from a single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Engine generator housing, engine generator, batteries, battery racks, silencers, load banks, and sound attenuating equipment, accessories, and components shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
2. Shake-table testing shall comply with ICC-ES AC156. Testing shall be performed with all fluids at worst-case normal levels.
3. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.

B. B11 Compliance: Comply with B11.19.

C. NFPA Compliance:

1. Comply with NFPA 37.
2. Comply with NFPA 70.
3. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 EPSS.

D. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with EPA Tier 3 requirements and applicable state and local government requirements.

E. Noise Emission: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements for maximum noise level at adjacent property boundaries due to sound emitted by engine generator including engine, engine exhaust, engine cooling-air intake and discharge, and other components of installation.

F. Environmental Conditions: Engine generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:

1. Ambient Temperature: 5 to 104 deg F (Minus 15 to plus 40 deg C).
2. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
3. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet (300 m).

G. Unusual Service Conditions: Engine generator equipment and installation are required to operate under the following conditions:

2.3 ENGINE GENERATOR ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

A. Factory-assembled and -tested, water-cooled engine, with brushless generator and accessories.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and use.

C. Power Rating: Standby.

D. Overload Capacity: 110 percent of service load for 1 hour in 12 consecutive hours.

E. EPSS Class: Engine generator shall be classified as Class 96 according to NFPA 110.

F. Service Load: 200 kVA.

G. Power Factor: 0.8, lagging.

H. Frequency: 60 Hz.

I. Voltage: 208 V ac.

J. Phase: Three-phase, four wire, wye.

K. Induction Method: Naturally aspirated.

L. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.

M. Mounting Frame: Structural steel framework to maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation. Provide lifting attachments sized and spaced to prevent deflection of base during lifting and moving.

N. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated at 0.8 power factor excluding power required for the continued and repeated operation of the unit and auxiliaries.
2. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component.

O. Engine Generator Performance for Sensitive Loads:

1. Oversizing generator compared with the rated power output of the engine is permissible to meet specified performance.

    a. Nameplate Data for Oversized Generator: Show ratings required by the Contract Documents rather than ratings that would normally be applied to generator size installed.

2. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 1 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
3. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 10 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within 0.5 second.
4. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: Plus or minus 0.25 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.
5. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
6. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 2-Hz variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
7. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to neutral shall not exceed 2 percent total with no slot ripple. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
8. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 300 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to winding insulation or other generator system components.
9. Excitation System: Performance shall be unaffected by voltage distortion caused by nonlinear load.
10. Start Time:
    a. Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10 system requirements.
    b. 10 seconds.

2.4 GAS ENGINE

A. Fuel: Natural gas.

B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.

C. Lubrication System: Engine or skid-mounted.

1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller while passing full flow.
2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.

D. Jacket Coolant Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with UL 499 and with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity.

E. Integral Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine generator mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.

1. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
2. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
3. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
4. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, ultraviolet-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.

    a. Rating: 50-psig (345-kPa) maximum working pressure with coolant at 180 deg F (82 deg C), and noncollapsible under vacuum.
    b. End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and equipment connections.

F. Muffler/Silencer:

1. Critical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.

    a. Minimum sound attenuation of 25 dB at 500 Hz.
    b. Sound level measured at a distance of 25 feet (8 m) from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 78 dBA or less.

G. Air-Intake Filter: Standard-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.

H. Starting System: 24-V electric, with negative ground.

1. Components: Sized so they are not damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle with ambient temperature at maximum specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
2. Cranking Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine flywheel without binding.
1. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified.

2. Battery: Lead acid, with capacity within ambient temperature range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least three times without recharging.
3. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
4. Battery Compartment: Factory fabricated of metal with acid-resistant finish and thermal insulation. Thermostatically controlled heater shall be arranged to maintain battery above 50 deg F (10 deg C) regardless of external ambient temperature within range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article. Include accessories required to support and fasten batteries in place. Provide ventilation to exhaust battery gases.
5. Battery Stand: Factory-fabricated, two-tier metal with acid-resistant finish designed to hold the quantity of battery cells required and to maintain the arrangement to minimize lengths of battery interconnections.
6. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing and float-charging type designed for lead-acid batteries. Unit shall comply with UL 1236 and include the following features:

    a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.
    b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 40 deg F (minus 40 deg C) to 140 deg F (plus 60 deg C) to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
    c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
    d. Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging rates.
    e. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
    f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 1, wall-mounted cabinet.

2.5 GAS FUEL SYSTEM

A. Natural Gas Piping: Comply with requirements in Section 22 16 23 “Fuel Gas Piping."

B. Gas Train: Comply with NFPA 37.

C. Engine Fuel System:

D. Natural Gas, Vapor-Withdrawal System:

1. Carburetor.
2. Fuel-Shutoff Solenoid Valves: NRTL-listed, normally closed, safety shutoff valves; one for each fuel source.

3. Fuel Filters: One for each fuel type.
4. Manual Fuel Shutoff Valves: One for each fuel type.
5. Flexible Fuel Connectors: Minimum one for each fuel connection.

2.6 CONTROL AND MONITORING

A. Automatic Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of engine generator. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, engine generator starts. The off position of same switch initiates generator-set shutdown. When engine generator is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and initiate alarms.

B. Provide minimum run time control set for 15 minutes with override only by operation of a remote emergency-stop switch.

C. Comply with UL 508A.

D. Configuration:

1. Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the engine generator. Mounting method shall isolate the control panel from generator-set vibration. Panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.

E. Control and Monitoring Panel:

1. Digital controller with integrated LCD, controls, and microprocessor, capable of local and remote control, monitoring, and programming, with battery backup.
2. Instruments: Located on the control and monitoring panel and viewable during operation.

    a. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
    b. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
    c. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
    d. Running-time meter.
    e. AC voltmeter, connected to a phase selector switch.
    f. AC ammeter, connected to a phase selector switch.
    g. AC frequency meter.
    h. Generator-voltage adjusting rheostat.

3. Controls and Protective Devices: Controls, shutdown devices, and common visual alarm indication, including the following:

    a. Cranking control equipment.
    b. Run-Off-Auto switch.
    c. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
    d. Overcrank alarm.
    e. Overcrank shutdown device.

f. Low water temperature alarm.
g. High engine temperature prealarm.
h. High engine temperature.
i. High engine temperature shutdown device.
j. Overspeed alarm.
k. Overspeed shutdown device.
l. Coolant low-level alarm.
m. Coolant low-level shutdown device.
n. Battery high-voltage alarm.
o. Low cranking voltage alarm.
p. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
q. Battery low-voltage alarm.
r. Lamp test.
s. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
t. Remote manual stop shutdown device.
u. Hours of operation.
v. Engine generator metering, including voltage, current, Hz, kW, kVA, and power factor.
w. Generator overcurrent protective device not closed alarm.

F. Connection to Datalink:

1. A separate terminal block, factory wired to Form C dry contacts, for each alarm and status indication.
2. Provide connections for datalink transmission of indications to remote data terminals via building automation system.

G. Common Remote Panel with Common Audible Alarm: Include necessary contacts and terminals in control and monitoring panel. Remote panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.

H. Remote Alarm Annunciator: An LED indicator light labeled with proper alarm conditions shall identify each alarm event, and a common audible signal shall sound for each alarm condition. Silencing switch in face of panel shall silence signal without altering visual indication. Connect so that after an alarm is silenced, clearing of initiating condition will reactivate alarm until silencing switch is reset. Cabinet and faceplate are surface- or flush-mounting type to suit mounting conditions indicated.

1. Overcrank alarm.
2. Coolant low-temperature alarm.
3. High engine temperature prealarm.
4. High engine temperature alarm.
5. Low lube oil pressure alarm.
6. Overspeed alarm.
7. Low fuel main tank alarm.
8. Low coolant level alarm.
9. Low cranking voltage alarm.
10. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
11. Audible-alarm silencing switch.
12. Air shutdown damper when used.

13. Run-Off-Auto switch.
14. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
15. Low cranking voltage alarm.

I. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Flush; wall mounted, unless otherwise indicated; and labeled. Push button shall be protected from accidental operation.

J. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator, unless otherwise indicated.

2.7 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

A. Overcurrent protective devices shall be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs.

1. Overcurrent protective devices for the entire EPSS shall be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs. Coordination of protective devices shall consider both utility and EPSS as the voltage source.

2. Overcurrent protective devices for the EPSS shall be accessible only to authorized personnel.

B. Generator Overcurrent Protective Device:

1. Molded-case circuit breaker, thermal-magnetic type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489:

a. Tripping Characteristic: Designed specifically for generator protection.
b. Trip Rating: Matched to generator output rating.
c. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when engine generator is shut down by other protective devices.
d. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.

2.8 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.

B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.

C. Electrical Insulation: Class H.

D. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other voltages if required. Provide six lead alternator.

E. Range: Provide limited range of output voltage by adjusting the excitation level.

F. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.

G. Enclosure: Dripproof.

H. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.

I. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified and as required by NFPA 110.

1. Adjusting Rheostat on Control and Monitoring Panel: Provide plus or minus 5 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.
2. Maintain voltage within 15 percent on one step, full load.
3. Provide anti-hunt provision to stabilize voltage.
4. Maintain frequency within 5percent and stabilize at rated frequency within 2 seconds.

J. Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew point.

K. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.

L. Subtransient Reactance: 12 percent, maximum.

2.9 LOAD BANK

A. Description:

1. Permanent, radiator-mounted**, resistive** unit capable of providing a balanced three-phase, delta-connected load to engine generator at 70 percent rated-system capacity. Unit shall be capable of selective control of load in 25 percent steps of load bank rating and with minimum step changes of approximately 5 and 10 percent available.

B. Resistive Load Elements: Corrosion-resistant chromium alloy with ceramic and stainless-steel supports. Elements shall be double insulated and designed for repetitive on-off cycling. Elements shall be mounted in removable aluminized-steel heater cases. Galvanized steel is prohibited. Element's maximum resistance shall be between 100 and 105 percent of rated resistance.

C. Load-Bank Heat Dissipation: Integral fan with totally enclosed motor shall provide uniform cooling airflow through load elements. Airflow and coil operating current shall be such that, at maximum load, with ambient temperature at the upper end of specified range, load-bank elements operate at not more than 50 percent of maximum continuous temperature rating of resistance elements.

D. Load-Element Switching: Remote-controlled contactors switch groups of load elements. Contactor coils are rated 120 V. Contactors shall be located in a separate NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure within load-bank enclosure, accessible from exterior through hinged doors with tumbler locks.

E. Contactor Enclosures: Heated by thermostatically controlled strip heaters to prevent condensation.

F. Protective Devices: Power input circuits to load banks shall be fused, and fuses shall be selected to coordinate with generator circuit breaker. Fuse blocks shall be located in contactor enclosure. Cooling airflow and overtemperature sensors shall automatically shut down and lock out load bank until manually reset. Safety interlocks on access panels and doors shall disconnect load power, control, and heater circuits. Fan motor shall be separately protected by overload and short-circuit devices. Short-circuit devices shall be noninterchangeable fuses with 200,000 A interrupting capacity.

G. Load Bank Remote-Control Panel: Separate from load bank in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure with a control power switch and pilot light, and switches controlling groups of load elements.

H. Control Sequence: Control panel may be preset for adjustable single-step loading of generator during automatic exercising.

2.10 OUTDOOR GENERATOR-SET ENCLOSURE

A. Description:

1. Vandal-resistant, sound-attenuating, weatherproof steel housing, wind resistant up to 100 mph (160 km/h). Multiple panels shall be lockable and provide adequate access to components requiring maintenance. Panels shall be removable by one person without tools. Instruments and control shall be mounted within enclosure.

    a. Sound Attenuation Level: critical.

2. Prefabricated or pre-engineered galvanized-steel-clad, integral structural-steel-framed.

B. Structural Design and Anchorage: Comply with ASCE/SEI 7 for wind loads up to 100 mph (160 km/h).

C. Seismic Design: Comply with seismic requirements in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

D. Hinged Doors: With padlocking provisions.

E. Space Heater: Thermostatically controlled and sized to prevent condensation.

F. Lighting: Provide weather-resistant LED lighting with 30 fc (330 lux) average maintained.

G. Thermal Insulation: Manufacturer's standard materials and thickness selected in coordination with space heater to maintain winter interior temperature within operating limits required by engine generator components.

H. Muffler Location: Within enclosure.

I. Engine Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Maintain temperature rise of system components within required limits when unit operates at 110 percent of rated load for 2 hours with ambient temperature at top of range specified in system service conditions.

1. Automatic Dampers: At engine cooling-air inlet and discharge. Dampers shall be closed to reduce enclosure heat loss in cold weather when unit is not operating.

J. Interior Lights with Switch: Factory-wired, vapor-proof fixtures within housing; arranged to illuminate controls and accessible interior. Arrange for external electrical connection.

1. AC lighting system and connection point for operation when remote source is available.
2. DC lighting system for operation when remote source and generator are both unavailable.

K. Convenience Outlets: Factory wired, GFCI. Arrange for external electrical connection.

2.11 VIBRATION ISOLATION DEVICES

A. Elastomeric Isolator Pads: Oil- and water-resistant elastomer or natural rubber, arranged in single or multiple layers, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.

1. Material: Standard neoprene separated by steel shims.
2. Shore "A" Scale Durometer Rating: 50.
3. Number of Layers: Two.
4. Minimum Deflection: 1 inch (25 mm).

B. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipement for vibration isolation and flexible connector materials for steel piping.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for vibration isolation and flexible connector materials for exhaust shroud and ductwork.

D. Vibration isolation devices shall not be used to accommodate misalignments or to make bends.

2.12 FINISHES

A. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Manufacturer's standard finish over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and compatible primer.

2.13 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine generator using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.

1. Tests: Comply with IEEE 115 and with NFPA 110, Level 1 Energy Converters.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, equipment bases, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting packaged engine generator performance.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems and electrical connections. Verify actual locations of connections before packaged engine generator installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 404.

B. Comply with packaged engine generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.

C. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install packaged engine generators on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for packaged engine generators. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.
3. Install packaged engine generator with elastomeric isolator pad having a minimum deflection of 1 inch (25 mm) on 4-inch- (100-mm-) high concrete base. Secure engine generator to anchor bolts installed in concrete bases. Concrete base construction is specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

D. Install packaged engine generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.

E. Cooling System: Install Schedule 40, black steel piping with welded joints for cooling water piping between engine generator and heat exchanger. Piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."

1. Install isolating thimbles where exhaust piping penetrates combustible surfaces. Provide a minimum of 9 inches (225 mm) clearance from combustibles.
2. Insulate cooling system piping and components according to requirements in Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

F. Exhaust System: Install Schedule 40, black steel piping with welded joints and connect to engine muffler. Piping shall be same diameter as muffler outlet.

1. Install flexible connectors and steel piping materials according to requirements in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
2. Insulate muffler/silencer and exhaust system components according to requirements in Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

G. Drain Piping: Install condensate drain piping to muffler drain outlet with a shutoff valve, stainless-steel flexible connector, and Schedule 40, black steel pipe, the full size of the drain connection, with welded joints.

H. Gaseous Fuel Piping:

1. Natural gas piping, valves, and specialties for gas distribution are specified in Section 221623 "Fuel Gas Piping."

I. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.

B. Connect fuel, piping adjacent to packaged engine generator to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect engine exhaust pipe to engine with flexible connector.

D. Gaseous Fuel Connections:

1. Connect fuel piping to engines with a gate valve and union and flexible connector.
2. Install manual shutoff valve in a remote location to isolate gaseous fuel supply to the generator.
3. Vent gas pressure regulators outside building a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from building openings.

E. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

F. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Provide a minimum of one 90-degree bend in flexible conduit routed to the engine generator from a stationary element.

G. Balance single-phase loads to obtain a maximum of 10 percent unbalance between any two phases.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" and Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Install a sign indicating the generator neutral is bonded to the main service neutral at the main service location.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency:

1. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical and mechanical test listed in the first two subparagraphs below as specified in the NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.

    a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

        1) Compare equipment nameplate data with drawings and specifications.
        2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
        3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
        4) Verify the unit is clean.

    b. Electrical and Mechanical Tests:

        1) Perform insulation-resistance tests in accordance with IEEE 43.

            a) Machines larger than 200 hp (150 kW). Test duration shall be 10 minutes. Calculate polarization index.
            b) Machines 200 hp (150 kW) or less. Test duration shall be one minute. Calculate the dielectric-absorption ratio.

        2) Test protective relay devices.
        3) Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by the application.
        4) Functionally test engine shutdown for low oil pressure, overtemperature, overspeed, and other protection features as applicable.
        5) Verify correct functioning of the governor and regulator.

2. NFPA 110 Acceptance Tests: Perform tests required by NFPA 110 that are additional to those specified here, including, but not limited to, single-step full-load pickup test.
3. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.

    a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
    b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
    c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.

d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.

4. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.
5. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine generator system before and during system operation. Check
6. Voltage and Frequency Transient Stability Tests: Use recording oscilloscope to measure voltage and frequency transients for 50 and 100 percent step-load increases and decreases, and verify that performance is as specified.
7. Harmonic-Content Tests: Measure harmonic content of output voltage at 25 percent and 100 percent of rated linear load. Verify that harmonic content is within specified limits.
8. Noise Level Tests: Measure A-weighted level of noise emanating from generator-set installation, including engine exhaust and cooling-air intake and discharge, at four locations 25 feet (8 m) from edge of the generator enclosure, and compare measured levels with required values.

C. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches and run them concurrently.

D. Test instruments shall have been calibrated within the last 12 months, traceable to NIST Calibration Services, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make calibration records available for examination on request.

E. Leak Test: After installation, charge exhaust, coolant, and fuel systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

F. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation for generator and associated equipment.

G. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

H. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

I. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations and retest until specified requirements are met.

J. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

K. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after final acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each power wiring termination and each bus connection while running with maximum load. Remove all access panels so terminations and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies terminations and connections checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include quarterly exercising to check for proper starting, load transfer, and running under load. Include routine preventive maintenance as recommended by manufacturer and adjusting as required for proper operation. Provide parts and supplies same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators.

END OF SECTION 26 32 13.16

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 33 53 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sectidons, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. UPS systems.
2. Surge suppression.
3. Rectifier-charger.
4. Inverter.
5. Controls and indications.
6. Static bypass transfer switch.
7. Maintenance bypass/isolation switch.
8. Output isolation transformer.
9. Remote status and alarm panel.
10. Remote monitoring.
11. Battery.
12. Basic battery monitoring.
13. Additional battery monitoring.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

B. GTO: Gate turn-off thyristor.

C. IGBT: Isolated gate bipolar transistor.

D. LCD: Liquid-crystal display.

E. LED: Light-emitting diode.

F. NiCd: Nickel cadmium.

G. PC: Personal computer.

H. SPD: Surge protection device.

I. THD: Total harmonic distortion.

J. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of UPS.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for UPS.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For UPS.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Show access, workspace, and clearance requirements; details of control panels; and battery arrangement.
4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For UPS equipment, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

B. Product Certificates: For each product, from manufacturer.

C. Factory Test Reports: Comply with specified requirements.

D. Product Test Reports: Indicate test results compared with specified performance requirements, and provide justification and resolution of differences if values do not agree.

E. Field quality-control reports.

F. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For UPS units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: One for every 10 of each type and rating, but no fewer than one of each.
2. Cabinet Ventilation Filters: One complete set(s).

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Power Quality Specialist Qualifications: A registered professional electrical engineer or engineering technician, currently certified by the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies, NICET Level 4, minimum, experienced in performance testing UPS installations and in performing power quality surveys similar to that required in "Performance Testing" Article.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Battery Warranties: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace UPS system storage batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranted Cycle Life for Premium Valve-Regulated, Lead-Calcium Batteries: Equal to or greater than that represented in manufacturer's published table, but not less than the following, based on annual average battery temperature of 77 deg F (25 deg C).

B. Special UPS Warranties: Specified form in which manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within special warranty period.

1. Special Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OPERATIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Automatic operation includes the following:

1. Double Conversion, Standard Efficiency:

a. Normal Conditions: Load is supplied with power flowing from the normal power input terminals, through the rectifier-charger and inverter, with the battery connected in parallel with the rectifier-charger output.
b. Abnormal Supply Conditions: If normal supply deviates from specified and adjustable voltage, voltage waveform, or frequency limits, the battery supplies

energy to maintain constant, regulated inverter power output to the load without switching or disturbance.

c. Power Failure: If normal power fails, energy supplied by the battery through the inverter continues supply-regulated power to the load without switching or disturbance.

2. When power is restored at the normal supply terminals of the system, controls shall automatically synchronize the inverter with the external source before transferring the load. The rectifier-charger shall supply power to the load through the inverter and simultaneously recharge the battery.
3. If the battery becomes discharged and normal supply is available, the rectifier-charger shall charge the battery. The rectifier-charger shall automatically shift to float-charge mode on reaching full charge.
4. If any element of the UPS system fails and power is available at the normal supply terminals of the system, the static bypass transfer switch shall switch the load to the normal ac supply circuit without disturbance or interruption.
5. The output power converters shall produce up to 300 percent of rated full-load current for short-circuit clearing. The inverter shall sustain steady-state overload conditions of up to 200 percent of rated full-load current for 60 seconds in normal operation.
6. The inverter shall be capable of sustaining 150 percent of system capacity for 30 seconds while powered from the battery.
7. Should overloads persist past the time limitations, the automatic static transfer switch shall switch the load to the bypass output of the UPS. When the fault has cleared, the static bypass transfer switch shall return the load to the UPS system.
8. If the battery is disconnected, the UPS shall supply power to the load from the normal supply with no degradation of its regulation of voltage and frequency of the output bus.

B. Manual operation includes the following:

1. Turning the inverter off causes the static bypass transfer switch to transfer the load directly to the normal ac supply circuit without disturbance or interruption.
2. Turning the inverter on causes the static bypass transfer switch to transfer the load to the inverter.

C. Maintenance Bypass/Isolation Switch Operation: Switch is interlocked so it cannot be operated unless the static bypass transfer switch is in the bypass mode. Device provides manual selection among the three conditions described below without interrupting supply to the load during switching:

1. Full Isolation: Load is supplied, bypassing the UPS. Normal UPS ac input circuit, static bypass transfer switch, and UPS load terminals are completely disconnected from external circuits.
2. Maintenance Bypass: Load is supplied, bypassing the UPS. UPS ac supply terminals are energized to permit operational checking, but system load terminals are isolated from the load.
3. Normal: Normal UPS ac supply terminals are energized and the load is supplied through the static bypass transfer switch and the UPS rectifier-charger and inverter, or the battery and the inverter.

D. Environmental Conditions: The UPS shall be capable of operating continuously in the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability, except battery performance:

1. Ambient Temperature for Electronic Components: 32 to 104 deg F (0 to 40 deg C).
2. Ambient Temperature for Battery: 41 to 95 deg F (5 to 35 deg C).
3. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent, noncondensing.
4. Altitude: Sea level to 4000 feet (1220 m).

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: UPS shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

B. UL Compliance: Listed and labeled by an NRTL to comply with UL 1778.

C. The UPS shall perform as specified in this article while supplying rated full-load current, composed of any combination of linear and nonlinear load, up to 100 percent nonlinear load with a maximum load crest factor of 3.0, under the following conditions or combinations of the following conditions:

1. Inverter is switched to battery source.
2. Steady-state ac input voltage deviates up to plus or minus 10 percent from nominal voltage.
3. Steady-state input frequency deviates up to plus or minus 5 percent from nominal frequency.
4. THD of input voltage is 15 percent or more with a minimum crest factor of 3.0, and the largest single harmonic component is a minimum of 5 percent of the fundamental value.
5. Load is 30 percent unbalanced continuously.

D. Minimum Duration of Supply: If battery is sole energy source supplying rated full-load UPS current at 80 percent power factor, duration of supply is five minutes.

E. Input Voltage Tolerance: System steady-state and transient output performance remains within specified tolerances when steady-state ac input voltage varies plus 10 percent and minus 15 percent from nominal voltage.

F. Overall UPS Efficiency: Equal to or greater than 94 percent at 100 percent load, 94 percent at 75 percent load, and 93 percent at 25 percent load.

G. Maximum Acoustical Noise: 57 dB, "A" weighting, emanating from any UPS component under any condition of normal operation, measured 36” from nearest surface of component enclosure.

H. Maximum Energizing Inrush Current: Eight times the full-load current.

I. AC Output-Voltage Regulation for Loads 100 Percent Unbalanced: Maximum of plus or minus 2 percent over the full range of battery voltage.

J. AC Output-Voltage Regulation for Loads 100 Percent Balanced: Maximum of plus or minus 1 percent over the full range of battery voltage.

K. Output Frequency: 60 Hz, plus or minus 0.1 percent over the full range of input voltage, load, and battery voltage.

L. Limitation of harmonic distortion of input current to the UPS shall be as follows:

1. Description:

a. Rectifier-charger circuits shall limit THD to 5 percent, maximum, at rated full-load UPS current, for power sources with X/R ratio between 2 and 30. Provide tuned harmonic filter if required to meet harmonic distortion limit.

M. Maximum Harmonic Content of Output-Voltage Waveform: 5 percent rms total and 3 percent rms for any single harmonic, for 100 percent rated nonlinear load current, with a load crest factor of 3.0.

N. Minimum Overload Capacity of UPS at Rated Voltage: 125 percent of rated full load for 10 minutes, 200 percent for 60 seconds in normal operation, and 150 percent for 30 seconds in battery operating mode.

O. Maximum Output-Voltage Transient Excursions from Rated Value: For the following instantaneous load changes, stated as percentages of rated full UPS load, voltage shall remain within stated percentages of rated value and recover to, and remain within, plus or minus 2 percent of that value within 50 ms:

1. 50 Percent: Plus or minus 3 percent.
2. 100 Percent: Plus or minus 5 percent.
3. Loss of AC Input Power: Plus or minus 1 percent.
4. Restoration of AC Input Power: Plus or minus 1 percent.

P. Input Power Factor: A minimum of 0.95 lagging when supply voltage and current are at nominal rated values and the UPS is supplying rated full-load current without additional filters.

Q. Output Power Factor Rating: Loads with power factor of 0.9 leading to 0.8 lagging shall not require derating of the UPS. For loads with power factors outside this range, derate the UPS output as follows:

1. Derate the UPS a maximum of 5 percent for 0.7 PF lagging.
2. Derate the UPS a maximum of 10 percent for 0.6 PF lagging.
3. Derate the UPS a maximum of 15 percent for 0.5 PF lagging.
4. Derate the UPS a maximum of 20 percent for a range of 0.4 to 0.1 PF lagging.

R. EMI Emissions: Comply with FCC rules and regulations and with 47 CFR 15 for Class A equipment.

2.3 UPS SYSTEMS

A. Description: Self-contained, battery backup device and accessories that provides three-phase electrical power in the event of failure or sag in the normal power system.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ABB, Electrification Business.
2. APC by Schneider Electric.
3. Eaton.
4. Liebert; Vertiv Holdings Co.
5. Mitsubishi Electric Automation, Inc.
6. Staco Energy Products Co.
7. Toshiba International Corporation.

C. Electronic Equipment: Solid-state devices using hermetically sealed, semiconductor elements. Devices include rectifier-charger, inverter, static bypass transfer switch, and system controls.

D. Enclosures: Comply with NEMA 250, Type 1, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Configuration: **Multicabinet** modular style units.

F. Control Assemblies: Mount on modular plug-ins, readily accessible for maintenance.

G. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

H. Seismic-Restraint Design: UPS assemblies, subassemblies, and components (and fastenings and supports, mounting, and anchorage devices for them) shall be designed and fabricated to withstand static and seismic forces.

2.4 SURGE SUPPRESSION

A. Protect internal UPS components from surges that enter at each ac power input connection including main disconnect switch, static bypass transfer switch, and maintenance bypass/isolation switch. Protect rectifier-charger, inverter, controls, and output components.

1. Use factory-installed surge suppressors tested according to IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category B.
2. Additional Surge Protection: Protect internal UPS components from low-frequency, high-energy voltage surges described in IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2. Design the circuits connecting with external power sources and select circuit elements, conductors, conventional surge suppressors, and rectifier components and controls so input assemblies will have adequate mechanical strength and thermal and current-carrying capacity to withstand stresses imposed by 400-Hz, 180 percent voltage surges described in IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2.

2.5 RECTIFIER-CHARGER

A. Description: Voltage source converter, six-pulse IGBT rectifier.

B. Capacity: Adequate to supply the inverter during rated full output load conditions and simultaneously recharge the battery from fully discharged condition to 95 percent of full charge within 10 times the rated discharge time for duration of supply under battery power at full load.

C. Output Ripple: Limited by output filtration to less than 0.5 percent of rated current, peak to peak.

D. Control Circuits: Immune to frequency variations within rated frequency ranges of normal and emergency power sources.

1. Response Time: Field adjustable for maximum compatibility with local generator-set power source.

E. Battery Float-Charging Conditions: Comply with battery manufacturer's written instructions for battery terminal voltage and charging current required for maximum battery life. The battery charger shall be matched to the battery type supplied.

F. Battery Charger: Sense full charge by measuring the rate of temperature increase. Battery charging shall be terminated when the rate of temperature rise reaches 1.8 deg F (1 deg C) per minute. If the battery reaches 140 deg F (60 deg C) prior to reaching this rate of temperature rise, charging shall terminate. Chargers that determine full charge by voltage measurement to sense a 10-mV drop per cell when reaching full charge are also acceptable.

2.6 INVERTER

A. Description:

1. Pulse-width modulated, carrier stored trench IGBT with sinusoidal output.
2. Include a bypass phase synchronization window adjustment to optimize compatibility with local engine-generator-set power source.

2.7 CONTROLS AND INDICATIONS

A. Description: Group displays, indications, and basic system controls on a common control panel on front of UPS enclosure.

B. Minimum displays, indicating devices, and controls include those in lists below. Provide sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and wiring required to support listed items. Alarms include audible signals and visual displays.

C. Indications: Plain-language messages on a digital LCD.

1. Quantitative indications shall include the following:

a. Input voltage, each phase, line to line.

b. Input current, each phase, line to line.
c. Bypass input voltage, each phase, line to line.
d. Bypass input frequency.
e. System output voltage, each phase, line to line.
f. System output current, each phase.
g. System output frequency.
h. DC bus voltage.
i. Battery current and direction (charge/discharge).
j. Elapsed time discharging battery.

2. Basic status condition indications shall include the following:

a. Normal operation.
b. Load-on bypass.
c. Load-on battery.
d. Inverter off.
e. Alarm condition.

3. Alarm indications shall include the following:

a. Bypass ac input overvoltage or undervoltage.
b. Bypass ac input overfrequency or underfrequency.
c. Bypass ac input and inverter out of synchronization.
d. Bypass ac input wrong-phase rotation.
e. Bypass ac input single-phase condition.
f. Bypass ac input filter fuse blown.
g. Internal frequency standard in use.
h. Battery system alarm.
i. Control power failure.
j. Fan failure.
k. UPS overload.
l. Battery-charging control faulty.
m. Input overvoltage or undervoltage.
n. Input transformer overtemperature.
o. Input circuit breaker tripped.
p. Input wrong-phase rotation.
q. Input single-phase condition.
r. Approaching end of battery operation.
s. Battery undervoltage shutdown.
t. Maximum battery voltage.
u. Inverter fuse blown.
v. Inverter transformer overtemperature.
w. Inverter overtemperature.
x. Static bypass transfer switch overtemperature.
y. Inverter power supply fault.
z. Inverter transistors out of saturation.
aa. Identification of faulty inverter section/leg.
bb. Inverter output overvoltage or undervoltage.
cc. UPS overload shutdown.
dd. Inverter current sensor fault.

ee. Inverter output contactor open.
ff. Inverter current limit.

4. Controls shall include the following:

a. Inverter on-off.
b. UPS start.
c. Battery test.
d. Alarm silence/reset.
e. Output-voltage adjustment.

D. Dry-form "C" contacts shall be available for remote indication of the following conditions:

1. UPS on battery.
2. UPS on-line.
3. UPS load-on bypass.
4. UPS in alarm condition.
5. UPS off (maintenance bypass closed).

E. Emergency Power off Switch: Capable of local operation and operation by means of activation by external dry contacts.

2.8 STATIC BYPASS TRANSFER SWITCH

A. Description: Solid-state switching device providing uninterrupted transfer with a contactor or electrically operated circuit breaker to automatically provide electrical isolation for the switch.

B. Switch Rating: Continuous duty at the rated full-load UPS current, minimum.

C. Input SPD: 80 kA.

2.9 MAINTENANCE BYPASS/ISOLATION SWITCH

A. Description: Manually operated switch or arrangement of switching devices with mechanically actuated contact mechanism arranged to route the flow of power to the load around the rectifier-charger, inverter, and static bypass transfer switch.

1. Switch shall be electrically and mechanically interlocked to prevent interrupting power to the load when switching to bypass mode.
2. Switch shall electrically isolate other UPS components to permit safe servicing.
3. Switch shall electrically isolate the rectifier-charger, inverter, and static bypass transfer switch from the load, but shall allow primary power to the UPS for testing.

B. Switch Rating: Continuous duty at rated full-load UPS current.

C. Mounting Provisions: Internal to system cabinet.

D. Key interlock with key that is released only when the rectifier-charger and inverter are bypassed by the static bypass transfer switch. Key shall be required to unlock maintenance

bypass/isolation switch before switching from open (normal) position to closed position. Lock shall be designed specifically for mechanical and electrical component interlocking.

2.10 OUTPUT ISOLATION TRANSFORMER

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. APC by Schneider Electric.
2. Eaton.

B. Description: Unit with low forward transfer impedance up to 3 kHz, minimum. Include the following features:

1. Comply with applicable portions of UL 1561, including requirements for nonlinear load current-handling capability for a K-factor of approximately 4.
2. Output Impedance at Fundamental Frequency: Between 3 and 4 percent.
3. Regulation: 5 percent, maximum, at rated nonlinear load current.
4. Full-Load Efficiency at Rated Nonlinear Load Current: 96 percent, minimum.
5. Electrostatic Shielding of Windings: Independent for each winding.
6. Coil Leads: Physically arranged for minimum interlead capacitance.
7. Shield Grounding Terminal: Separately mounted; labeled "Shield Ground."
8. Capacitive Coupling between Primary and Secondary: 33 pF, maximum, over a frequency range of 20 Hz to 1 MHz.

2.11 REMOTE STATUS AND ALARM PANEL

A. Description: Labeled LEDs on panel faceplate indicating five basic status conditions. Audible signal indicates alarm conditions. Silencing switch in face of panel silences signal without altering visual indication.

1. Cabinet and Faceplate: Surface or flush mounted to suit mounting conditions indicated.

2.12 REMOTE MONITORING

A. Description: Communication module in unit control panel provides capability for remote monitoring of status, parameters, and alarms specified in "Controls and Indications" Article. The remote computer and the connecting signal wiring are not included in this Section. Include the following features:

1. Connectors and network interface units for data transmission via RS-485, Ethernet, or web-based link.
2. Software designed for control and monitoring of UPS functions and to provide on-screen explanations, interpretations, diagnosis, action guidance, and instructions for use of monitoring indications and development of meaningful reports. Permit storage and analysis of power-line transient records. Designs for Windows applications, software, and computer are not included in this Section.

2.13 BATTERY

A. Description:

1. Valve-regulated, recombinant, lead-calcium units, factory assembled in an isolated compartment of UPS cabinet, complete with battery disconnect switch.

a. Arrange for drawout removal of battery assembly from cabinet for testing and inspecting.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. C&D Technologies, Inc.
2. Eaton.
3. EnerSys.
4. Exide Technologies.
5. Panasonic Corporation of North America.

C. Seismic-Restraint Design: Battery racks, cabinets, assemblies, subassemblies, and components (and fastenings and supports, mounting, and anchorage devices for them) shall be designed and fabricated to withstand static and seismic forces.

2.14 BASIC BATTERY MONITORING

A. Description: Continuous, real-time capture of battery performance data.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. APC by Schneider Electric.
2. Alber.
3. BTECH, Inc.
4. Canara.
5. Eaton.
6. Liebert; Vertiv Holdings Co.
7. Midtronics, Inc.
8. Power Systems Specialists, Inc.
9. Staco Energy Products Co.

C. Battery Ground-Fault Detector: Initiates alarm when resistance to ground of positive or negative bus of battery is less than 5000 ohms.

D. Battery compartment high-temperature detector initiates an alarm when smoke or a temperature greater than 167 deg F (75 deg C) occurs within the compartment.

E. Annunciation of Alarms: At UPS control panel and remotely.

2.15 ADDITIONAL BATTERY MONITORING

A. Monitoring features and components shall include the following:

1. Factory-wired sensing leads to cell and battery terminals and cell temperature sensors.
2. Connections for data transmission via RS-485 link, and network interface and external signal wiring to computer. External signal wiring and computer are not specified in this Section.
3. USB ports for printer and accessories.
4. PC-based software designed to store and analyze battery data, compile reports on individual-cell parameters and total battery performance trends, and provide data for scheduling and prioritizing battery maintenance.

B. Performance: Automatically measure and electronically record the following parameters on a routine schedule and during battery discharge events. During discharge events, record measurements timed to nearest second; including measurements of the following parameters:

1. Total battery voltage and ambient temperature.
2. Individual-cell voltage, impedance, and temperature, and string current. During battery-discharging events such as utility outages, measures battery and cell voltages, battery string current and records values versus time to nearest second.

2.16 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory test complete UPS system before shipment. Use simulated battery testing. Include the following:

1. Test and demonstration of all functions, controls, indicators, sensors, and protective devices.
2. Full-load test.
3. Transient-load response test.
4. Overload test.
5. Power failure test.

B. Observation of Test: Give 14 days' advance notice of tests and provide opportunity for Owner's representative to observe tests at Owner's choice.

C. Report test results. Include the following data:

1. Description of input source and output loads used. Describe actions required to simulate source load variation and various operating conditions and malfunctions.
2. List of indications, parameter values, and system responses considered satisfactory for each test action. Include tabulation of actual observations during test.
3. List of instruments and equipment used in factory tests.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of the UPS.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

C. Verify installation conditions are representative of the conditions used in the coordination studies for the electrical system. Provide fuse protection according to Section 262813 "Fuses" if required for coordination with UPS overcurrent protective device requirements.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

1. Comply with requirements for cable trays specified in Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems."
2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
3. Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

D. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and NFPA 70.

E. Connections: Interconnect system components. Make connections to supply and load circuits according to manufacturer's wiring diagrams unless otherwise indicated. Apply oxide inhibitor on battery terminals.

3.3 GROUNDING

A. Separately Derived Systems:

1. If part of a listed power supply for a data-processing room, comply with manufacturer's written instructions that include grounding requirements in excess of NFPA 70 requirements for connecting to grounding electrodes and for bonding to metallic piping near isolation transformer. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify each battery cell individually.

3.5 BATTERY EQUALIZATION

A. Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual-cell voltages.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Administrant for Tests and Inspections:

1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to administer and perform tests and inspections on components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect interiors of enclosures, including the following:

    a. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
    b. Component type and labeling verification.
    c. Ratings of installed components.

2. Test electrical and mechanical interlock systems for correct operation and sequencing.
3. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one or more of the following methods:

    a. Use of low-resistance ohmmeter according to Section 7.22.2.2 of NETA ATS.
    b. Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data or Table 100.12 of NETA ATS.
    c. Perform thermographic survey according to Section 9 of NETA ATS.

4. Test static transfer from inverter to bypass and back. Use normal load, if possible.
5. Test dc undervoltage trip level on inverter input breaker. Set according to manufacturer's published data.
6. Verify synchronizing indicators for static switch and bypass switches.
7. Test insulated-case and molded-case breakers.

    a. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with the circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 of NETA ATS.

b. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring for ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid-state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation.
c. Use primary current injection to determine long time and short time, ground fault, and instantaneous pickup, Use secondary current injection to test trip functions.
d. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils according to manufacturer's published data.
e. Verify operation of charging mechanism.
f. Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators, zone interlocking, electrical close and trip operation, trip-free, antipump function, and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators.

8. Test automatic transfer switches.

a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter, if applicable, according to Section 7.22.3.1 of NETA ATS.
b. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring for ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid-state components or for control devices that cannot tolerate the applied voltage, follow manufacturer's recommendation.
c. Perform a contact/pole-resistance test.
d. Verify settings and operation of control devices.
e. Calibrate and set all relays and timers according to Section 7.9 of NETA ATS.
f. Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by the application.
g. Perform automatic transfer tests.

1) Simulate loss of normal power.
2) Return to normal power.
3) Simulate loss of emergency power.
4) Simulate all forms of single-phase conditions.

h. Verify correct operation and timing of the following functions:

1) Normal source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
2) Time delay on transfer.
3) Alternative source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
4) Automatic transfer operation.
5) Interlocks and limit switch function.
6) Time delay and retransfer on normal power restoration.

9. Test direct current system's batteries.

a. Verify adequacy of battery support racks, mounting, anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.

10. Test communication of status and alarms to remote monitoring equipment.

C. Seismic-restraint tests and inspections shall include the following:

1. Inspect type, size, quantity, arrangement, and proper installation of mounting or anchorage devices.
2. Test mounting and anchorage devices according to requirements in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

D. The UPS system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Record of Tests and Inspections: Maintain and submit documentation of tests and inspections, including references to manufacturers' written instructions and other test and inspection criteria. Include results of tests, inspections, and retests.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 PERFORMANCE TESTING

A. Engage the services of a qualified power quality specialist to perform tests and activities indicated.

B. Monitoring and Testing Schedule: Perform monitoring and testing in a single 10-day period.

1. Schedule monitoring and testing activity with Owner, through Architect, with at least 14 days' advance notice.
2. Schedule monitoring and testing after Substantial Completion, when the UPS is supplying power to its intended load.

C. Monitoring and Testing Instruments: Three-phase, recording, power monitors. Instruments shall provide continuous simultaneous monitoring of electrical parameters at UPS input terminals and at input terminals of loads served by the UPS. Instruments shall monitor, measure, and graph voltage current and frequency simultaneously and provide full-graphic recordings of the values of those parameters before and during power-line disturbances that cause the values to deviate from normal beyond the adjustable threshold values. Instruments shall be capable of recording either on paper or on magnetic media and have a minimum accuracy of plus or minus 2 percent for electrical parameters. Parameters to be monitored include the following:

1. Current: Each phase and neutral and grounding conductors.
2. Voltage: Phase to phase, phase to neutral, phase to ground, and neutral to ground.
3. Frequency transients.
4. Voltage swells and sags.
5. Voltage Impulses: Phase to phase, phase to neutral, phase to ground, and neutral to ground.
6. High-frequency noise.
7. Radio-frequency interference.
8. THD of the above currents and voltages.
9. Harmonic content of currents and voltages above.
10. Battery cell temperature during charging.
11. Ambient temperature.

D. Monitoring and Testing Procedures:

1. Exploratory Period: For the first two days, make recordings at various circuit locations and with various parameter-threshold and sampling-interval settings. Make these measurements with the objective of identifying optimum UPS, power system, load, and instrumentation setup conditions for subsequent test and monitoring operations.
2. Remainder of Test Period: Perform continuous monitoring of at least two circuit locations selected on the basis of data obtained during exploratory period.

    a. Set thresholds and sampling intervals for recording data at values selected to optimize data on performance of the UPS for values indicated, and to highlight the need to adjust, repair, or modify the UPS, distribution system, or load component that may influence its performance or that may require better power quality.
    b. Perform load and UPS power source switching and operate the UPS on generator power during portions of test period according to directions of Owner's power quality specialist.
    c. Operate the UPS and its loads in each mode of operation permitted by UPS controls and by the power distribution system design.
    d. Using temporarily connected resistive/inductive load banks, create and simulate unusual operating conditions, including outages, voltage swells and sags, and voltage, current, and frequency transients. Maintain normal operating loads in operation on system to maximum extent possible during tests.
    e. Make adjustments and repairs to UPS, distribution, and load equipment to correct deficiencies disclosed by monitoring and testing; repeat appropriate monitoring and testing to verify success of corrective action.

E. Coordination with Specified UPS Monitoring Functions: Obtain printouts of built-in monitoring functions specified for the UPS and its components in this Section that are simultaneously recorded with portable instruments in this article.

1. Provide the temporary use of an appropriate PC and printer equipped with required connections and software for recording and printing if such units are not available on-site.
2. Coordinate printouts with recordings for monitoring performed according to this article, and resolve and report any anomalies in and discrepancies between the two sets of records.

F. Monitoring and Testing Assistance by Contractor:

1. Open UPS and electrical distribution and load equipment and wiring enclosures to make monitoring and testing points accessible for temporary monitoring probe and sensor placement and removal as requested.
2. Observe monitoring and testing operations; ensure that UPS and distribution and load equipment warranties are not compromised.
3. Perform switching and control of various UPS units, electrical distribution systems, and load components as directed by power quality specialist. Specialist shall design this portion of monitoring and testing operations to expose the UPS to various operating environments, conditions, and events while response is observed, electrical parameters are monitored, and system and equipment deficiencies are identified.
4. Make repairs and adjustments to the UPS and to electrical distribution system and load components, and retest and repeat monitoring as needed to verify validity of results and correction of deficiencies.

5. Engage the services of the UPS manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative periodically during performance testing operations for repairs, adjustments, and consultations.

G. Documentation: Record test point and sensor locations, instrument settings, and circuit and load conditions for each monitoring summary and power disturbance recording. Coordinate simultaneous recordings made on UPS input and load circuits.

H. Analysis of Recorded Data and Report: Review and analyze test observations and recorded data and submit a detailed written report. Include the following in report:

1. Descriptions of corrective actions performed during monitoring and survey work and their results.
2. Recommendations for further action to provide optimum performance by the UPS and appropriate power quality for non-UPS loads. Include a statement of priority ranking and a cost estimate for each recommendation that involves system or equipment revisions.
3. Copies of monitoring summary graphics and graphics illustrating harmonic content of significant voltages and currents.
4. Copies of graphics of power disturbance recordings that illustrate findings, conclusions, and recommendations.
5. Recommendations for operating, adjusting, or revising UPS controls.
6. Recommendations for alterations to the UPS installation.
7. Recommendations for adjusting or revising generator-set or automatic transfer switch installations or their controls.
8. Recommendations for power distribution system revisions.
9. Recommendations for adjusting or revising electrical loads, their connections, or controls.

I. Interim and Final Reports: Provide an interim report at the end of each test period and a final comprehensive report at the end of final test and analysis period.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the UPS.

END OF SECTION 26 33 53

This page is intentionally left blank.

SECTION 26 36 00 - TRANSFER SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Contactor-type automatic transfer switches.
2. Transfer switch accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for transfer switches.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, and installed features and devices.
2. Include material lists for each switch specified.
3. Single-Line Diagram: Show connections between transfer switch, **bypass/isolation switch,** power sources, and load; and show interlocking provisions for each combined transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For m**anufacturer-authorized service representative**.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for transfer switches, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.

3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual.
b. List of all factory settings of relays; provide relay-setting and calibration instructions, including software, where applicable.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of transfer switch or transfer switch components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.

C. Comply with NFPA 110.

D. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.

E. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Short-Circuit Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.

1. Short-time withstand capability for three cycles.

F. Repetitive Accuracy of Solid-State Controls: All settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.

G. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.62. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.

H. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism. Switches for emergency or standby purposes shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions to prevent simultaneous connection to both power sources unless closed transition.

I. Neutral Switching: Where four-pole switches are indicated, provide neutral pole switched simultaneously with phase poles.

J. Annunciation, Control, and Programming Interface Components: Devices at transfer switches for communicating with remote programming devices, annunciators, or annunciator and control panels shall have communication capability matched with remote device.

K. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable with printed markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable markers are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
4. Accessible via front access.

L. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, Type 1, complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 CONTACTOR-TYPE AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ABB, Electrification Business.
2. Caterpillar, Inc.; Electric Power Division.
3. Cummins Power Generation.
4. Eaton.
5. Generac.
6. Hubbell Utility Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
7. Kohler Power Systems.
8. Rolls-Royce Solutions America Inc.
9. Russelectric, Inc.
10. Vertiv; Vertiv Holdings Co.

B. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.

C. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.

1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are unacceptable.
2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Contactor-style automatic transfer-switch units, rated 600 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.
4. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
5. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
6. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
7. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type.
8. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.

D. Automatic Open-Transition Transfer Switches: Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.

1. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.

E. Manual Switch Operation, Load-Breaking: Under load, with door closed and with either or both sources energized. Transfer time is same as for electrical operation. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.

F. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval shall be adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.

G. Digital Communication Interface: Matched to capability of remote annunciator or annunciator and control panel.

H. Automatic Transfer-Switch Controller Features:

1. Controller operates through a period of loss of control power.
2. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal and Alternate Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage shall be adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from zero to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes. Override shall automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.

a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."

8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
11. Engine Shutdown Contacts:

    a. Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.

12. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods shall be adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings shall be for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:

    a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
    b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
    c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is unavailable.

2.3 TRANSFER SWITCH ACCESSORIES

A. Bypass/Isolation Switches:

1. Source Limitations: Same manufacturer as transfer switch in which installed.
2. Comply with requirements for Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
3. Description: Manual type, arranged to select and connect either source of power directly to load, isolating transfer switch from load and from both power sources. Include the following features for each combined automatic transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch:

    a. Means to lock bypass/isolation switch in the position that isolates transfer switch with an arrangement that permits complete electrical testing of transfer switch while isolated. Interlocks shall prevent transfer-switch operation, except for testing or maintenance, while automatic transfer switch is isolated.
    b. Provide means to make power available to transfer-switch control circuit for testing and maintenance purposes.

c. Drawout Arrangement for Transfer Switch: Provide physical separation from live parts and accessibility for testing and maintenance operations. Transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch shall be in isolated compartments.
d. Transition:

1) Provide closed-transition operation when transferring from main transfer switch to bypass/isolation switch on the same power source.

e. Bypass/Isolation Switch Current, Voltage, Closing, and Short-Circuit Withstand Ratings: Equal to or greater than those of associated automatic transfer switch, and with same phase arrangement and number of poles.
f. Contact temperatures of bypass/isolation switches shall not exceed those of automatic transfer-switch contacts when they are carrying rated load.
g. Manual Control: Constructed so load bypass and transfer-switch isolation can be performed by one person in no more than two operations in 15 seconds or less. Operating handles shall be externally operated.
h. Legend: Manufacturer's standard legend for control labels and instruction signs shall describe operating instructions.
i. Maintainability: Fabricate to allow convenient removal of major components from front without removing other parts or main power conductors.

4. Interconnection of Bypass/Isolation Switches with Automatic Transfer Switches: Factory-installed copper bus bars; plated at connection points and braced for the indicated available short-circuit current.

B. Remote Annunciator System:

1. Source Limitations: Same manufacturer as transfer switch in which installed.
2. Functional Description: Remote annunciator panel shall annunciate conditions for indicated transfer switches.
3. Annunciation panel display shall include the following indicators:

a. Sources available, as defined by actual pickup and dropout settings of transfer-switch controls.
b. Switch position.
c. Switch in test mode.
d. Failure of communication link.

4. Annunciator Panel: LED-lamp type with audible signal and silencing switch.

a. Indicating Lights: Grouped for each transfer switch monitored.
b. Label each group, indicating transfer switch it monitors, location of switch, and identity of load it serves.
c. Mounting: Flush, modular, steel cabinet unless otherwise indicated.
d. Lamp Test: Push-to-test or lamp-test switch on front panel.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment according to UL 1008. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

1. For each of the tests required by UL 1008, performed on representative devices, for emergency systems. Include results of test for the following conditions:

a. Overvoltage.
b. Undervoltage.
c. Loss of supply voltage.
d. Reduction of supply voltage.
e. Alternative supply voltage or frequency is at minimum acceptable values.
f. Temperature rise.
g. Dielectric voltage-withstand; before and after short-circuit test.
h. Overload.
i. Contact opening.
j. Endurance.
k. Short circuit.
l. Short-time current capability.
m. Receptacle withstand capability.
n. Insulating base and supports damage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Floor-Mounting Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.

1. Install transfer switches on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
3. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
4. Provide workspace and clearances required by NFPA 70.

B. Annunciator and Control Panel Mounting: Flush in wall unless otherwise indicated.

C. Identify components according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

D. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.

E. Comply with NECA 1.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to generator sets, control, and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.

B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within electrical enclosures. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.

D. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

E. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

F. Connect twisted pair cable according to Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."

G. Route and brace conductors according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not obscure manufacturer's markings and labels.

H. Brace and support equipment according to Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

I. Final connections to equipment shall be made with liquidtight, flexible metallic conduit no more than 18 inches (457 mm) in length.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Administrant for Tests and Inspections:

1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to administer and perform tests and inspections on components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing equipment, test for compliance with requirements according to NETA ATS.
2. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

a. Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and Specifications.
b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.

c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
d. Verify that the unit is clean.
e. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
f. Verify that manual transfer warnings are attached and visible.
g. Verify tightness of all control connections.
h. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods, or both:

1) Use of low-resistance ohmmeter.
2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data.

i. Perform manual transfer operation.
j. Verify positive mechanical interlocking between normal and alternate sources.
k. Perform visual and mechanical inspection of surge arresters.
l. Inspect control power transformers.

1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulation, broken leads, tightness of connections, defective wiring, and overall general condition.
2) Verify that primary and secondary fuse or circuit-breaker ratings match Drawings.
3) Verify correct functioning of drawout disconnecting contacts, grounding contacts, and interlocks.

3. Electrical Tests:

a. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground.
b. Verify settings and operation of control devices.
c. Calibrate and set all relays and timers.
d. Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation.
e. Perform automatic transfer tests.
f. Verify correct operation and timing of the following functions:

1) Normal source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
2) Engine start sequence.
3) Time delay on transfer.
4) Alternative source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
5) Automatic transfer operation.
6) Interlocks and limit switch function.
7) Time delay and retransfer on normal power restoration.
8) Engine cool-down and shutdown feature.

4. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.

a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.

b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
d. Perform manual transfer operation.

5. After energizing circuits, perform each electrical test for transfer switches stated in NETA ATS and demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.

a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and retransfer from emergency source with normal source available.
b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
c. Verify time-delay settings.
d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
e. Test bypass/isolation unit functional modes and related automatic transfer-switch operations.
f. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.

6. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.

a. Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.

C. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.

D. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

E. Transfer switches will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

F. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

H. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of switch. Remove all access panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

1. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
2. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
3. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment.

B. Training shall include testing ground-fault protective devices and instructions to determine when the ground-fault system shall be retested. Include instructions on where ground-fault sensors are located and how to avoid negating the ground-fault protection scheme during testing and circuit modifications.

C. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

END OF SECTION 26 36 00

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 41 13 - LIGHTNING PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes lightning protection system for ordinary structures.

B. Section includes lightning protection system for the following:

1. Ordinary structures.
2. Air Traffic Control Towers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include layouts of the lightning protection system, with details of the components to be used in the installation.
2. Include raceway locations needed for the installation of conductors.
3. Details of air terminals, ground rods, ground rings, conductor supports, splices, and terminations, including concealment requirements.
4. Include roof attachment details, coordinated with roof installation.
5. Calculations required by NFPA 780 for bonding of metal bodies.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Lightning protection system Shop Drawings, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Lightning protection cabling attachments to roofing systems and accessories.
2. Lightning protection strike termination device attachment to roofing systems, coordinated with the roofing system manufacturer.
3. Lightning protection system components penetrating roofing and moisture protection systems and system components, coordinated with the roofing system manufacturer.

B. Qualification Data: For Installer.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For lightning protection system to include in maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Dimensioned site plan showing dimensioned route of the ground loop conductor and the ground rod locations. Comply with requirements of Section 017839 "Project Record Documents."
b. A system testing and inspection record, listing the results of inspections and ground resistance tests, as recommended by NFPA 780, Annex D.

B. Completion Certificate:

1. UL Master Label Certificate.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: UL-listed installer, category OWAY.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ERICO; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
2. East Coast Lightning Equipment Inc.
3. Harger Lightning & Grounding; business of Harger, Inc.
4. Heary Bros. Lightning Protection Co. Inc.
5. Independent Protection Co.
6. National Lightning Protection.
7. Preferred Lightning Protection.
8. Robbins Lightning, Inc.
9. Thompson Lightning Protection, Inc.
10. VFC Lightning Protection.
11. allG Fabrication (formerly ALT).

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. NFPA Lightning Protection Standard: Comply with NFPA 780 requirements for Class II buildings.

B. FAA Standard 019F: Lighting and surge protection, grounding bonding, and shielding requirements for facilities and electronic equipment.

C. Lightning Protection Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency as complying with UL 96, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 MATERIALS

A. Air Terminals:

1. Aluminum unless otherwise indicated.
2. 5/8-inch (16-mm) diameter by 12 inches (305 mm), and minimum 10 inches higher than the item being protected long, and minimum 10 inches higher than the item being protected.
3. Rounded tip.
4. Threaded base support.

B. Class II Main Conductors:

1. Stranded Copper: 115,000 circular mils in diameter.
2. Aluminum: 192,000 circular mils in diameter.

C. Secondary Conductors:

1. Stranded Copper: 26,240 circular mils in diameter.
2. Aluminum: 41,400 circular mils in diameter.

D. Ground Loop Conductor: Stranded copper.

E. Ground Rods:

1. Material: Copper-clad steel.
2. Diameter: 3/4 inch (19 mm).
3. Rods shall be not less than 120 inches (3050 mm) long.
4. Sectional type, with integral threads.

F. Conductor Splices and Connectors: Compression fittings that are installed with hydraulically operated tools, or exothermic welds, approved for use with the class type.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install lightning protection components and systems according to NFPA 780 and FAA Standard 019F.

B. Install conductors with direct paths from air terminals to ground connections. Avoid bends less than 90 degrees and 8 inches (203 mm) in radius and narrow loops.

C. Conceal conductors within normal view from exterior locations at grade within 200 feet (60 m) of building. Comply with requirements for concealed systems in NFPA 780.

1. Roof penetrations required for down conductors and connections to structural-steel framework shall be made using listed through-roof fitting and connector assemblies with solid rods and appropriate roof flashings. Use materials approved by the roofing manufacturer for the purpose. Conform to the methods and materials required at roofing penetrations of the lightning protection components to ensure compatibility with the roofing specifications and warranty.
2. Install conduit where necessary to comply with conductor concealment requirements.
3. Air Terminals on Single-Ply Membrane Roofing: Comply with adhesive manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Ground Ring Electrode: The conductor shall be not less than the main-size lightning conductor.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Aboveground concealed connections, and connections in earth or concrete, shall be done by exothermic welds or by high-compression fittings listed for the purpose.

B. Aboveground exposed connections shall be done using the following types of connectors, listed and labeled for the purpose: bolted connectors, exothermic weld, high compression.

C. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.

1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.

3.3 CORROSION PROTECTION

A. Do not combine materials that can form an electrolytic couple that will accelerate corrosion in the presence of moisture unless moisture is permanently excluded from junction of such materials.

B. Use conductors with protective coatings where conditions would cause deterioration or corrosion of conductors.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:

1. Perform inspections as required to obtain a UL Master Label for system.
2. Perform inspections to obtain an LPI certification.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports and certificates.

END OF SECTION 26 41 13

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 43 13 - SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Type 2 surge protective devices.
2. Enclosures.
3. Conductors and cables.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. I_n: Nominal discharge current.

B. Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage (MCOV): The maximum designated RMS value of the power frequency voltage that may be continuously applied to the mode of protection of an SPD.

C. Metal-Oxide Varistor (MOV): An electronic component with a significant bidirectional, nonlinear current-voltage characteristic.

D. Mode(s), Modes of Protection, or Protection Modes: Electrical paths where the SPD offers defense against transient overvoltages. Examples include: line to neutral (L-N), line to ground (L-G), line to line (L-L), and neutral to ground (N-G).

E. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

F. Type 1 SPDs: Permanently connected SPDs intended for installation between the secondary of the service transformer and the line side of the service disconnect overcurrent device.

G. Type 2 SPDs: Permanently connected SPDs intended for installation on the load side of the service disconnect overcurrent device, including SPDs located at the branch panel.

H. Type 3 SPDs: Point of utilization SPDs.

I. Type 4 SPDs: Component SPDs, including discrete components, as well as assemblies.

J. Type 5 SPDs: Discrete component surge suppressors, such as MOVs that may be mounted on a printed wiring board, connected by its leads or provided within an enclosure with mounting means and wiring terminations.

K. Voltage Protection Rating (VPR): A rating selected from UL 1449 list of preferred values assigned to each mode of protection.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.

a. Include electrical characteristics, specialties, and accessories for SPDs.
b. Certification of compliance with UL 1449 by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction including the following information:

1) Tested values for VPRs.
2) I_n ratings.
3) MCOV, type designations.
4) OCPD requirements.
5) Manufacturer's model number.
6) System voltage.
7) Modes of protection.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. Special Manufacturer Extended Warranty: Manufacturer warrants that SPDs perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to provide repair or replacement of SPDs that fail to perform as specified within extended warranty period.

1. Initial Extended Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion, for labor, materials, and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TYPE 2 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES (SPDs)

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ABB, Electrification Business.
2. ALLTEC LLC.
3. Advanced Protection Technologies Inc. (APT).
4. Citel, Inc.
5. Eaton.
6. Intermatic, Inc.
7. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
8. Liebert; Vertiv Holdings Co.
9. Mersen USA.

10. SSI, an ILSCO Company.
11. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
12. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain devices from single source from single manufacturer.

C. General Characteristics:

1. Reference Standards: UL 1449, Type 2.
2. MCOV: Not less than 125 percent of nominal system voltage for 208Y/120 V power systems.
3. Peak Surge Current Rating: Minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase must not be less than 100 kA. Peak surge current rating must be arithmetic sum of the ratings of individual MOVs in a given mode.
4. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits must not exceed the following:

    a. Line to Neutral: 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
    b. Line to Ground: 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
    c. Neutral to Ground: 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
    d. Line to Line: 1200 V for 208Y/120 V.

5. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for 240/120 V, single-phase, three-wire circuits must not exceed the following:

    a. Line to Neutral: 700 V.
    b. Line to Ground: 700 V.
    c. Neutral to Ground: 700 V.
    d. Line to Line: 1200 V.

6. SCCR: Equal or exceed 100 kA.
7. I_n Rating: 10 kA.

D. Options:

1. Include LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
2. Include surge counter.

2.2 ENCLOSURES

A. Indoor Enclosures: Type 1.

2.3 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring: Same size as SPD leads, complying with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Provide OCPD and disconnect for installation of SPD in accordance with UL 1449 and manufacturer's instructions.

B. Install leads between disconnects and SPDs short, straight, twisted, and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Comply with wiring methods in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

1. Do not splice and extend SPD leads unless specifically permitted by manufacturer.
2. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length.
3. Do not bond neutral and ground.

C. Use crimped connectors and splices only. Wire nuts are unacceptable.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Compare equipment nameplate data for compliance with Drawings and the Specifications.
2. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
3. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's installation requirements.

B. Nonconforming Work:

1. SPDs that do not pass tests and inspections will be considered defective.
2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

D. Manufacturer Services:

1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to supervise field tests and inspections.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Complete startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Do not perform insulation-resistance tests of the distribution wiring equipment with SPDs installed. Disconnect SPDs before conducting insulation-resistance tests; reconnect them immediately after the testing is over.

C. Energize SPDs after power system has been energized, stabilized, and tested.

END OF SECTION 26 43 13

SECTION 26 51 19 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Downlight.
2. Recessed, linear.
3. Strip light.
4. Surface mount, linear.
5. Surface mount, nonlinear.
6. Materials.
7. Luminaire support.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.

C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."

D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.

E. LED: Light-emitting diode.

F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.

G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests.

    a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples: For each luminaire and for each color and texture with standard factory-applied finish.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Luminaires.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches (300 mm) of the plane of the luminaires.
4. Structural members to which or luminaires will be attached.
5. Initial access modules for acoustical tile, including size and locations.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:

    a. Other luminaires.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.
    c. Speakers.
    d. Sprinklers.
    e. Access panels.
    f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.

7. Moldings.

B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

C. Seismic Qualification Data: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.

E. Product Test Reports: For each type of luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

F. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications:

1. Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

C. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

1.8

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance:

1. Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.
2. Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.
3. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the luminaire will be fully operational during and after the seismic event."

B. Ambient Temperature: 5 to 104 deg F (Minus 15 to plus 40 deg C).

1. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.

C. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet (300 m)

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:

a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
c. CCT and CRI.

C. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.

2.3 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Steel:

1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
2. ASTM A568/A568M for sheet steel.

C. Stainless Steel:

1. Manufacturer's standard grade.
2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/240M.

D. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.

E. Aluminum: ASTM B209.

2.4 METAL FINISHES

A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.5 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.

C. Wires: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm).

D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch (5-mm) minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install lamps in each luminaire.

D. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

E. Flush-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secured to outlet box.
2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.

F. Wall-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Attached to structural members in walls.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

G. Suspended Luminaires:

1. Ceiling Mount:

   a. Two 5/32-inch- (4-mm-) diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to 10 feet (3 m) in length.

2. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
3. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
4. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
5. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

H. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

I. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.

1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 26 51 19

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 52 13 - EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Emergency lighting.
2. Exit signs.
3. Materials.
4. Luminaire support components.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Correlated Color Temperature (CCT): The absolute temperature, measured in kelvins, of a blackbody whose chromaticity most nearly resembles that of the light source.

B. Color Rendering Index (CRI): Measure of the degree of color shift that objects undergo when illuminated by the light source as compared with the color of those same objects when illuminated by a reference source.

C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.

D. Lumen (lm): The SI derived unit of luminous flux equal to the luminous flux emitted within a unit solid angle by a unit point source (1 lm = 1 cd-sr).

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.

a. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
b. Include physical description of unit and dimensions.
c. Battery and charger for light units.
d. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
e. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests by, or under supervision of, qualified luminaire photometric testing laboratory, for each luminaire type.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

a. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
b. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
c. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Product Schedule:

1. For emergency lighting units. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
2. For exit signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.

B. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire for tests performed by, or under supervision of, qualified luminaire photometric testing laboratory.

C. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Installer Extended Warranty for Emergency and Exit Lighting: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed emergency luminaires and exit signs, including batteries, perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components and assemblies that fail to perform as specified within extended warranty period.

1. Extended Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

B. Special Manufacturer Extended Warranty for Batteries for Emergency and Exit Lighting: Manufacturer warrants that batteries for emergency luminaires and exit signs perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to provide repair or replacement of batteries that fail to perform as specified within extended warranty period.

1. Extended Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and UL 924, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 101.

C. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.

D. Comply with UL 1598 for fluorescent luminaires.

E. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body and compatible with ballast.

1. Emergency Connection: Operate lamp(s) continuously at an output of 1400 lumens each upon loss of normal power. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire ballast.
2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
3. Nightlight Connection: Operate lamp continuously at 100 percent of rated light output.
4. Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening luminaire or entering ceiling space.

    a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
    b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.

5. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
6. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
7. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

2.2 EXIT SIGNS

A. General Characteristics: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Internally Lighted Sign

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Amerlux.
    b. Cooper Lighting Solutions; Signify North America Corp.
    c. Evenlite, Inc.
    d. Hubbell Lighting; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
    e. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
    f. Philips; Signify North America; Signify Holding.
    g. Ruud Lighting Direct.

2. Options:

    a. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V(ac).
    b. Lamps for AC Operation:

        1) LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.

    c. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Internal emergency power unit.

2.3 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components must be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:

1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
2. Designed to permit relamping without use of tools.
3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

C. Housings:

1. Polycarbonate housing.
2. White finish.

2.4 METAL FINISHES

A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.5 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

B. Support Wires: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 0.106 inch (2.69 mm).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.

C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.

B. Install lamps in each luminaire.

C. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.
3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power unit without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices must be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

D. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Attached to structural members in walls.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

E. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to outlet box, if provided.

2. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

.

A. Field tests and inspections must be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

C. Nonconforming Work:

1. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 SYSTEM STARTUP

A. Perform startup service:

1. Charge emergency power units and batteries minimum of one hour and depress switch to conduct short-duration test.
2. Charge emergency power units and batteries minimum of 24 hours and conduct one-hour discharge test.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjustments: Within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site visit to do the following:

1. Inspect luminaires. Replace lamps, emergency power units, batteries, exit signs, and luminaires that are defective.

a. Parts and supplies must be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

2. Conduct short-duration tests on all emergency lighting.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Remove and replace luminaires and exit signs that are damaged or caused to be unfit for use by construction activities.

END OF SECTION 26 52 13

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 56 19 - LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.
2. Luminaire types.
3. Materials.
4. Finishes.
5. Luminaire support components.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

B. CRI: Color rendering index.

C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."

D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.

E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.

F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.

1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaire.
4. Lamps, include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests.

a. Manufacturer's Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

6. Wiring diagrams for power, control, and signal wiring.
7. Photoelectric relays.
8. Means of attaching luminaires to supports and indication that the attachment is suitable for components involved.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For luminaire supports.

1. Include design calculations for luminaire supports and seismic restraints.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of the following:

1. Luminaire.
2. Photoelectric relay.

D. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

E. Source quality-control reports.

F. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and photoelectric relays to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
2. Provide a list of all photoelectric relay types used on Project; use manufacturers' codes.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications:

1. Luminaire manufacturers' laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

C. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

D. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering prior to shipping.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Verify existing and proposed utility structures prior to the start of work associated with luminaire installation.

B. Mark locations of exterior luminaires for approval by Architect prior to the start of luminaire installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures, including luminaire support components.
b. Faulty operation of luminaires and accessories.
c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.

2. Warranty Period: 2 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance:

1. Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
2. Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.
3. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the luminaire will be fully operational during and after the seismic event."

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 and listed for wet location.

C. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.

D. L70 lamp life of 35,000 hours.

E. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.

F. Internal driver.

G. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac.

H. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for outdoor use and in enclosed locations.

I. Source Limitations:

1. Obtain luminaires from single source from a single manufacturer.

2.3 LUMINAIRE-MOUNTED PHOTOELECTRIC RELAYS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Atlas Lighting Products.
2. Cooper Lighting Solutions; Signify North America Corp.
3. Deco Lighting.
4. Eaton.

5. GE Current, a Daintree company; American Industrial Partners (AIP).
6. Intelligent Illuminations, Inc.
7. Intermatic, Inc.
8. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
9. Philips; Signify North America; Signify Holding.
10. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
11. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.

B. Comply with UL 773 or UL 773A.

C. Contact Relays: Factory mounted, single throw, designed to fail in the on position, and factory set to turn light unit on at 1.5 to 3 fc (16 to 32 lx) and off at 4.5 to 10 fc (48 to 108 lx) with 15-second minimum time delay. Relay shall have directional lens in front of photocell to prevent artificial light sources from causing false turnoff.

1. Relay with locking-type receptacle shall comply with ANSI C136.10.
2. Adjustable window slide for adjusting on-off set points.

2.4 LUMINAIRE TYPES

A. Area and Site:

1. Manufacturers: per lighting fixture schedule on plans.
2. Luminaire Shape: Per lighting fixture schedule on plans.
3. Mounting: Per lighting fixture schedule on plans.
4. Luminaire-Mounting Height: Per lighting fixture schedule on plans.
5. Distribution: Per lighting fixture schedule on plans.
6. Diffusers and Globes: Per lighting fixture schedule on plans.
7. Housings:

    a. Aluminum housing and heat sink.
    b. Painted finish per lighting fixture schedule on plans.

2.5 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

B. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses.

D. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.

E. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.

F. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:

1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.

G. Housings:

1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.

H. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:

a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage and coating.
c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.6 FINISHES

A. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.

B. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.

2.7 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical conduit to verify actual locations of conduit connections before luminaire installation.

C. Examine walls, roofs, and overhang ceilings for suitable conditions where luminaires will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is substantially complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.

C. Install lamps in each luminaire.

D. Fasten luminaire to structural support.

E. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
3. Support luminaires without causing deflection of finished surface.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Attached to structural members in walls.

G. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceways and cables.

H. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished grade unless otherwise indicated.

I. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.

J. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation.

K. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.

C. Illumination Tests:

1. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IES testing guide(s):

   a. IES LM-5.

2. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.

D. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaires and photocell relays.

3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.

1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 265619

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 27 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 PRODUCTS

1.1 SUPPORT AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

A. General Requirements:

1. Comply with the following. Where requirements differ, comply with most stringent.

   a. TIA-569.

   b. NFPA 70.

   c. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Provide required hangers, supports, anchors, fasteners, fittings, accessories, and hardware as necessary for complete installation of communications work.

3. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for purpose intended, where applicable.

4. Where support and attachment component types and sizes are not indicated, select in accordance with manufacturer's application criteria as required for load to be supported with minimum safety factor of _____. Include consideration for vibration, equipment operation, and shock loads where applicable.

5. Do not use products for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.

6. Steel Components: Use corrosion-resistant materials suitable for environment where installed.

   a. Zinc-Plated Steel: Electroplated in accordance with ASTM B633.

   b. Galvanized Steel: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M.

B. Conduit Supports: Straps and clamps suitable for conduit to be supported.

1. Conduit Straps: One-hole or two-hole type; steel or malleable iron.

2. Conduit Clamps: Bolted type unless otherwise indicated.

C. Outlet Box Supports: Hangers and brackets suitable for boxes to be supported.

D. Metal Channel/Strut Framing Systems:

1. Description: Factory-fabricated, continuous-slot, metal channel/strut and associated fittings, accessories, and hardware required for field assembly of supports.

2. Comply with MFMA-4.

E. Hanger Rods: Threaded, zinc-plated steel unless otherwise indicated.

F. Anchors and Fasteners:

1. Unless otherwise indicated and where not otherwise restricted, use anchor and fastener types indicated for specified applications.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 27 05 33.13 - CONDUIT FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 PRODUCTS

1.1 CONDUIT - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NFPA 70 and TIA-569.

B. Provide conduit, fittings, supports, and accessories required for complete communications pathway.

C. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for purpose intended.

D. Where conduit size is not indicated, size to comply with NFPA 70, TIA-569, and BICSI TDMM, but not less than applicable minimum size requirements specified. Where specified standards differ, comply with most stringent.

END OF SECTION

This page is intentionally left blank.

SECTION 27 10 00 - STRUCTURED CABLING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Communications system design requirements.

B. Communications pathways.

C. Copper cable and terminations.

D. Fiber optic cable and interconnecting devices.

E. Communications identification.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

B. TIA-606 - Administration Standard for Telecommunications Infrastructure 2021d.

C. TIA-607 - Generic Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthing) for Customer Premises 2019d.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESIGN

A. Provide a complete permanent system of cabling and pathways for voice and data communications, including cables, conduits and wireways, pull wires, support structures, enclosures and cabinets, and outlets.

1. Provide fixed cables and pathways that comply with NFPA 70 and TIA-607 and are UL listed or third party independent testing laboratory certified.

2. Provide connection devices that are rated for operation under conditions of 32 to 140 degrees F (0 to 60 degrees C) at relative humidity of 0 to 95 percent, noncondensing.

3. In this project, the term plenum is defined as return air spaces above ceilings, inside ducts, under raised floors, and other air-handling spaces.

B. Main Distribution Frame (MDF): Centrally located support structure for terminating horizontal cables that extend to telecommunications outlets, functioning as point of presence to external service provider.

1. Locate main distribution frame as indicated on the drawings.

C. Cabling to Outlets: Specified horizontal cabling, wired in star topology to distribution frame located at center hub of star; also referred to as "links".

2.2 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Comply with TIA-606.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 28 20 00 - VIDEO SURVEILLANCE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Video surveillance system requirements.

B. Video recording and viewing equipment.

C. Cameras.

D. Accessories.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 078400 - Firestopping.

B. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.

C. Section 260529 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.

D. Section 260533.13 - Conduit for Electrical Systems.

E. Section 260553 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products andrequirements.

F. Section 271000 - Structured Cabling: Data cables for IP video surveillance system networkconnections.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. 47 CFR 15 - Radio Frequency Devices current edition.

B. IEEE C2 - National Electrical Safety Code(R) (NESC(R)) 2023.

C. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction 2015.

D. NECA 303 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Closed-Circuit Television (CCTV)Systems 2019.

E. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority HavingJurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordination:

1. Coordinate the placement of cameras with structural members, ductwork, piping, equipment, luminaires, diffusers, fire suppression system components, and other potentialconflicts installed under other sections or by others.

2. Coordinate the work with other installers to provide power for cameras and equipment atrequired locations.

3. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtaindirection before proceeding with work.

B. Preinstallation Meetings:

1. Conduct meeting with facility representative to review camera and equipment locationsand camera field of view objectives.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for each system component. Include ratings, configurations, standard wiring diagrams, dimensions, finishes, service condition requirements, and installed features.

C. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of system components and installed wiring arrangements and routing.

D. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include detailed information on system operation, equipment programming and setup, replacement parts, and recommended maintenanceprocedures and intervals.

1. Include contact information for entity that will be providing contract maintenance andtrouble call-back service.

E. Warranty: Submit sample of manufacturer's warranty and documentation of final executedwarranty completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with the following:

1. NFPA 70.

2. Applicable TIA/EIA standards.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum three years documented experience with video surveillance systems of similar

size, type, and complexity and providing contract maintenance service as a regular part of

their

business; authorized manufacturer's representative.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions andNECA 303.

B. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging, keep dry and protect from damage untilready for installation.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Maintain field conditions within manufacturer's required service conditions during and afterinstallation.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

B. Provide minimum one year manufacturer warranty covering repair or replacement due todefective materials or workmanship.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Video Recording and Viewing Equipment - Basis of Design: VIVOTEK.

B. Video Recording and Viewing Equipment - Other Acceptable Manufacturers:

1. Bosch Security Systems;_____: www.boschsecurity.us/#sle.

2. Honeywell International, Inc;_____: www.honeywellvideo.com/#sle.

3. Pelco, a brand of Schneider Electric;_____: www.pelco.com/#sle.

C. Cameras - Basis of Design: Axis Communications as indicated under product descriptionsbelow; www.axis.com/#sle.

D. Cameras - Other Acceptable Manufacturers:

1. Bosch Security Systems: www.boschsecurity.us/#sle.

2. Honeywell International, Inc: www.honeywellvideo.com/#sle.

3. VIVOTEK: www.vivotek.com/#sle.

4. Hanwha: www.hanwha.com.

E. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

F. Products other than basis of design are subject to compliance with specified requirements and prior approval of Engineer. By using products other than basis of design, Contractor accepts responsibility for costs associated with any necessary modifications to related work, includingany design fees.

G. Source Limitations: Where possible, furnish system components and accessories produced by asingle manufacturer and obtained from a single supplier.

2.2 VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM

A. Provide new video surveillance system consisting of all required equipment, conduit, boxes, wiring, connectors, hardware, supports, accessories, software, system programming, etc. as necessary for a complete operating system that provides the functional intent indicated.

B. System Description: IP system with connection to network (IP) cameras.

1. Video Storage Capacity: Suitable for storing video from all cameras for 30 days.

C. Cameras Required:

1. See article "CAMERAS" below for product descriptions.

D. Video Recording and Viewing Equipment Required:

1. See article "VIDEO RECORDING AND VIEWING EQUIPMENT" below for productdescriptions.

E. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.

F. Electromagnetic Interference/Radio Frequency Interference (EMI/RFI) Limits: Comply withFCC requirements of 47 CFR 15, for Class B, consumer application.

2.3 VIDEO RECORDING AND VIEWING EQUIPMENT

A. Provide video recording and viewing equipment compatible with cameras to be connected.

B. Network Video Recorders (NVRs):

1. Supports connection of network (IP) cameras.

2. Supports continuous and event-based recording.

3. Network Video Recorder:

a. Basis of Design: Vivotek NVR.

b. Capacity: 16 channels.

c. Recording and Viewing Performance: 480 fps at 1920x1080 resolution.

d. Storage Capacity: As required.

e. Removable Media: USB.

f. Network: Single 1 Gigabit Ethernet.

g. Features:

1) Supports PTZ camera control.

2) Supports remote access via desktop and mobile device.

C. Software:

1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide all software and licenses required for fullyoperational system.

2.4 CAMERAS

A. Provide cameras and associated accessories suitable for operation under the service conditions at the installed location. Provide additional components (e.g. enclosures, heaters, blowers, etc.)as required.

B. Where not factory-installed, provide additional components (e.g. lenses, mounting accessories,etc.) as necessary for complete installation.

C. Network (IP) Cameras:

1. Signal-to-Noise Ratio: Not less than 50 dB.

2. Provide the following standard features:

a. Automatic electronic shutter.

b. Automatic gain control.

c. Automatic white balance.

d. Web-based interface for remote viewing and setup.

e. Password protected security access.

3. Network (IP) Fixed Dome Camera - Basis of Design: Axis Communications P32 Series;Model P3245-LV (IR illumination, Vandal-resistant); www.axis.com/#sle.

a. Maximum Video Resolution: 1920 x 1080.

b. Maximum Frame Rate: 50/60 fps at 50/60 Hz.

c. Image Sensor Size: 1/2.8 inch.

d. Minimum Illumination/Light Sensitivity (Color): 0.1 lux.

e. Lens: 3.4-8.9 mm, F1.8; horizontal field of view of 100-36 degrees; varifocal, P-Iris, remote focus and zoom.

f. Features: Zipstream, forensic capture wide dynamic range, Lightfinder, local storage, Power over Ethernet (PoE), day and night functionality, built-in IR illumination, image rotation (0, 90, 180, or 270 degrees), IP52/IK10 casing.

4. Network (IP) Fixed Dome 360 Degree Multisensor Camera - Basis of Design: Axis Communications Model P3719-PLE (Outdoor, IR illumination, Vandal-resistant); www.axis.com/#sle.

a. Maximum Video Resolution: 1920 x 1080.

b. Maximum Frame Rate: 25/30 fps at 50/60 Hz.

c. Image Sensor Size: 4 x 1/2.8 inch.

d. Minimum Illumination/Light Sensitivity (Color): 0.17 lux.

e. Lens: 4 x 3-6 mm, F1.8-2.6; horizontal field of view of 96-49 degrees; varifocal,fixed iris.

f. Features: Zipstream, forensic capture wide dynamic range, Lightfinder, local storage, Power over Ethernet (PoE), day and night functionality, built-in IR illumination (four, individually controllable), image rotation (0, 90, 180, or 270 degrees), IP66/IP67/NEMA 4X/IK09 casing, individual adjustment and capturemode for each lens.

5. Network (IP) Fixed Dome 180 Degree Multisensor Camera - Basis of Design: Axis Communications Model P3807-PVE (Outdoor, Vandal-resistant); www.axis.com/#sle.

a. Maximum Video Resolution: 4320 x 1920.

b. Maximum Frame Rate: 25/30 fps at 50/60 Hz.

c. Image Sensor Size: 4 x 1/2.9 inch.

d. Minimum Illumination/Light Sensitivity (Color): 0.17 lux.

e. Lens: 4 x 3.2 mm, F2.0; horizontal field of view of 180 degrees; fixed focal, fixediris.

f. Features: Zipstream, forensic capture wide dynamic range, Lightfinder, local storage, Power over Ethernet (PoE), day and night functionality, IP66/IP67/NEMA4X/IK10 casing.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.

B. Verify that ratings and configurations of system components are consistent with the indicatedrequirements.

C. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive system components.

D. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection tosystem where applicable.

E. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install video surveillance system in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship) andNECA 303.

B. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

C. Provide required support and attachment in accordance with Section 260529.

D. Wiring Method: Unless otherwise indicated, use cables (not in conduit).

1. Use suitable listed cables in wet locations, including underground raceways.

2. Use suitable listed cables for vertical riser applications.

3. Use listed plenum rated cables in spaces used for environmental air.

4. Conceal all cables unless specifically indicated to be exposed.

5. Route exposed cables parallel or perpendicular to building structural members andsurfaces.

6. Include service loop cable lengths to allow relocation of cameras within 30 ft (9.0 m) ofinstalled location.

E. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 260526.

F. Install firestopping to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, usingmaterials and methods specified in Section 078400.

G. Identify system wiring and components in accordance with Section 260553.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. See Section 014000 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.

B. Prepare and start system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

C. Adjust cameras to provide desired field of view and produce suitable images under all servicelighting conditions.

D. Program system parameters according to requirements of Owner.

E. Test for proper interface with other systems.

F. Correct defective work, adjust for proper operation, and retest until entire system complies withContract Documents.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean exposed surfaces to remove dirt, paint, or other foreign material and restore to matchoriginal factory finish.

3.5 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

A. Demonstration: Demonstrate proper operation of system to Owner, and correct deficiencies ormake adjustments as directed.

B. Training: Train Owner's personnel on operation, adjustment, and maintenance of system.

1. Use operation and maintenance manual as training reference, supplemented withadditional training materials as required.

2. Provide minimum of four hours of training.

3. Location: At project site.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed system components from subsequent construction operations.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 28 46 00 - FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDES

A. Fire alarm contractor is responsible for all work in this section.

B. Base Bid:

1. Fire alarm system design and installation, including all components, wiring, and conduit.

2. Transmitters for communication with supervising station.

3. Circuits from protected premises to supervising station, including conduit.

4. Replacement and removal of existing fire alarm system components, wiring, and conduit indicated.

C. Alternate Bid:

1. None

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Fire alarm system design and installation, including all components, wiring, and conduit.

B. Transmitters for communication with supervising station.

C. Circuits from protected premises to supervising station, including conduit.

D. Replacement and removal of existing fire alarm system components, wiring, and conduit indicated.

1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 078400 - Firestopping: Materials and methods for work to be performed by this installer.

B. Section 142400 - Hydraulic Elevators: Elevator systems monitored and controlled by fire alarm system.

C. Section 211300 - Fire-Suppression Sprinkler Systems: Supervisory, alarm, and actuating devices installed in sprinkler system.

D. Section 233300 - Air Duct Accessories: Smoke dampers monitored and controlled by fire alarm system.

E. Section 275129.13 - Rescue Assistance Signal Systems: Two-way emergency communication systems for areas of refuge/rescue assistance.

1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. 36 CFR 1191 - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines current edition.

B. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design 2010.

C. IEEE C62.41.2 - IEEE Recommended Practice on Characterization of Surges in Low-Voltage(1000 V and less) AC Power Circuits 2002 (Corrigendum 2012).

D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

E. NFPA 72 - National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code Most Recent Edition Cited by Referring Code or Reference Standard.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Evidence of designer qualifications.

C. Design Documents: Submit all information required for plan review and permitting by authorities having jurisdiction, including but not limited to floor plans, riser diagrams, and description of operation:

1. Copy (if any) of list of data required by authority having jurisdiction.

2. NFPA 72 "Record of Completion", filled out to the extent known at the time.

3. Clear and concise description of operation, with input/output matrix similar to that shown in NFPA 72 Appendix A-7-5-2.2(9), and complete listing of software required.

4. System zone boundaries and interfaces to fire safety systems.

5. Location of all components, circuits, and raceways; mark components with identifiers used in control unit programming.

6. Circuit layouts; number, size, and type of raceways and conductors; conduit fill calculations; spare capacity calculations; notification appliance circuit voltage drop calculations.

7. List of all devices on each signaling line circuit, with spare capacity indicated.

8. Manufacturer's detailed data sheet for each component, including wiring

diagrams,installation instructions, and circuit length limitations.

9. Description of power supplies; if secondary power is by battery include calculationsdemonstrating adequate battery power.

10. Detailed drawing of remote annunciator(s).

11. Certification by either the manufacturer of the control unit or by the manufacturer of eachother component that the components are compatible with the control unit.

12. Certification by the manufacturer of the control unit that the system design complies withContract Documents.

13. Certification by Contractor that the system design complies with Contract Documents.

D. Evidence of installer qualifications.

E. Evidence of instructor qualifications; training lesson plan outline.

F. Evidence of maintenance contractor qualifications, if different from installer.

G. Inspection and Test Reports:

1. Submit inspection and test plan prior to closeout demonstration.

2. Submit documentation of satisfactory inspections and tests.

3. Submit NFPA 72 "Inspection and Test Form," filled out.

H. Operating and Maintenance Data: See Section 017800 for additional requirements; revise andresubmit until acceptable; have one set available during closeout demonstration:

1. Complete set of specified design documents, as approved by authority havingjurisdiction.

2. Additional printed set of project record documents and closeout documents, bound orfiled in same manuals.

3. Contact information for firm that will be providing contract maintenance and trouble call-back service.

4. List of recommended spare parts, tools, and instruments for testing.

5. Replacement parts list with current prices, and source of supply.

6. Detailed troubleshooting guide and large scale input/output matrix.

7. Preventive maintenance, inspection, and testing schedule complying with NFPA 72;provide printed copy and computer format acceptable to Using Agency.

8. Detailed but easy to read explanation of procedures to be taken by non-technical administrative personnel in the event of system trouble, when routine testing is beingconducted, for fire drills, and when entering into contracts for remodeling.

I. Project Record Documents: See Section 017800 for additional requirements; have one setavailable during closeout demonstration:

1. Complete set of floor plans showing actual installed locations of components, conduit,and zones.

2. "As installed" wiring and schematic diagrams, with final terminal identifications.

3. "As programmed" operating sequences, including control events by device, updatedinput/output chart, and voice messages by event.

J. Closeout Documents:

1. Certification by manufacturer that the system has been installed in compliance with manufacturer's installation requirements, is complete, and is in satisfactory operatingcondition.

2. NFPA 72 "Record of Completion", filled out completely and signed by installer andauthorized representative of authority having jurisdiction.

K. Maintenance Materials, Tools, and Software: Furnish the following for Using Agency's use inmaintenance of project.

1. Furnish spare parts of same manufacturer and model as those installed; deliver in original packaging, labeled in same manner as in operating and maintenance data and place in spare parts cabinet.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Designer Qualifications: NICET Level III or IV (3 or 4) certified fire alarm technician or registered fire protection engineer, employed by fire alarm control panel manufacturer, Contractor, or installer , with experience designing fire alarm systems in the jurisdictional areaof the authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Installer Qualifications: Firm with minimum 3 years documented experience installing fire alarm systems of the specified type and providing contract maintenance service as a regularpart of their business.

1. Authorized representative of control unit manufacturer; submit manufacturer's certification that installer is authorized; include name and title of manufacturer'srepresentative making certification.

2. Installer Personnel: At least 2 years of experience installing fire alarm systems.

3. Supervisor: NICET level III or IV (3 or 4) certified fire alarm technician; furnish nameand address.

C. Maintenance Contractor Qualifications: Same entity as installer or different entity withspecified qualifications.

D. Instructor Qualifications: Experienced in technical instruction, understanding fire alarm theory, and able to provide the required training; trained by fire alarm control unit manufacturer.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Provide control panel manufacturer's warranty that system components other than wire and conduit are free from defects and will remain so for 1 year after date of Substantial Completion.

B. Provide installer's warranty that the installation is free from defects and will remain so for 1year after date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Fire Alarm Control Units and Accessories - Other Acceptable Manufacturers:

1. Honeywell Security & Fire Solutions/Gamewell-FCI; www.gamewell-fci.com/#sle.

2. Honeywell Security & Fire Solutions/Notifier; www.notifier.com/#sle.

3. Potter Electric Signal Company; www.pottersignal.com/#sle.

4. Siemens Building Technologies, Inc; www.usa.siemens.com/#sle.

5. Simplex, a brand of Johnson Controls; www.simplex-fire.com/#sle.

6. Provide control units made by the same manufacturer.

B. Initiating Devices and Notification Appliances:

1. Honeywell Security & Fire Solutions/Gamewell-FCI; www.gamewell-fci.com/#sle.

2. Honeywell Security & Fire Solutions/Notifier; www.notifier.com/#sle.

3. Siemens Building Technologies, Inc; www.sbt.siemens.com/#sle.

4. Simplex, a brand of Johnson Controls; www.simplex-fire.com/#sle.

5. Same manufacturer as control units.

C. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

1. For other acceptable manufacturers of control units specified, submit product datashowing equivalent features and compliance with Contract Documents.

2. For substitution of products by manufacturers not listed, submit product data showing features and certification by Contractor that the design will comply with Contract Documents.

2.2 FIRE ALARM SYSTEM

A. Fire Alarm System: Provide a new automatic fire detection and alarm system:

1. Provide all components necessary, regardless of whether shown in Contract Documentsor not.

2. Protected Premises: Entire building shown on drawings.

3. Comply with the following; where requirements conflict, order of precedence ofrequirements is as listed:

   a. ADA Standards.

   b. The requirements of the local authority having jurisdiction.

   c. Applicable local codes.

   d. Contract Documents (drawings and specifications).

   e. NFPA 72; where the word "should" is used consider that provision mandatory; where conflicts between requirements require deviation from NFPA 72, identifydeviations clearly on design documents.

4. Evacuation Alarm: Multiple smoke zones; allow for evacuation notification of any individual zone or combination of zones, in addition to general evacuation of entirepremises.

5. General Evacuation Zones: Each smoke zone is considered a general evacuation zone unless otherwise indicated, with alarm notification in all zones on the same floor, on thefloor above, and the floor below.

6. Fire Command Center: Location indicated on drawings.

7. Fire Alarm Control Unit: New, located at fire command center.

8. Combined Systems: Do not combine fire alarm system with other non-fire systems.

B. Supervising Stations and Fire Department Connections:

1. Public Fire Department Notification: By on-premises supervising station.

2. Remote Supervising Station: Existing proprietary station operated by Using Agency.

3. Means of Transmission to Remote Supervising Station: Digital alarm communicatortransmitter (DACT), 2 telephone lines.

C. Circuits:

1. Initiating Device Circuits (IDC): Class B, Style A.

2. Signaling Line Circuits (SLC) Within Single Building: Class B, Style 0.5.

3. Notification Appliance Circuits (NAC): Class B, Style W.

D. Spare Capacity:

1. Initiating Device Circuits: Minimum 25 percent spare capacity.

2. Notification Appliance Circuits: Minimum 25 percent spare capacity.

3. Fire Alarm Control Units: Capable of handling all circuits utilized to capacity withoutrequiring additional components other than plug-in control modules.

E. Power Sources:

1. Primary: Dedicated branch circuits of the facility power distribution system.

2. Secondary: Storage batteries.

3. Capacity: Sufficient to operate entire system for period specified by NFPA 72.

4. Each Computer System: Provide uninterruptible power supply (UPS).

2.3 FIRE SAFETY SYSTEMS INTERFACES

A. Supervision: Provide supervisory signals in accordance with NFPA 72 for the following:

1. Sprinkler water control valves.

2. Elevator shut-down control circuits.

B. Alarm: Provide alarm initiation in accordance with NFPA 72 for the following:

1. Sprinkler water flow.

2. Stairwell pressurization system activation

3. Elevator lobby and elevator hoistway heat or smoke detectors.

4. Duct smoke detectors.

C. Elevators:

1. Elevator lobby and hoistway, smoke detectors: Elevator recall for fire fighters' service.

2. Elevator hoistway heat detector: Shut down elevator power prior to hoistway sprinkleractivation.

3. Sprinkler pressure or waterflow: Shut down elevator power prior to hoistway sprinkleractivation.

D. HVAC:

1. Duct Smoke Detectors: Close dampers indicated; shut down air handlers indicated.

E. Doors:

2.4 COMPONENTS

A. General:

1. Provide flush mounted units where installed in finish areas; in unfinished areas, surfacemounted unit are acceptable.

2. Provide legible, permanent labels for each control device, using identification used inoperation and maintenance data.

B. Fire Alarm Control Units: Analog, addressable type; listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.

C. Addressable Fire Alarm Control Unit:

1. Each control unit must provide power, supervision, control, and logic for the entire system, utilizing solid state, modular components, internally mounted and arranged for easy access. Each control unit must be suitable for operation on a 120 volt, 60 hertz, normal building power supply. Provide each control unit with supervisory functions forpower failure, internal component placement, and operation.

2. Visual indication of alarm, supervisory, or trouble initiation on the FACU must be by liquid crystal display or similar means with a minimum of 80 characters. The mass notification control unit must have the capability of temporarily deactivate the fire alarmaudible notification appliances while delivering voice messages.

3. Provide adequate discrete outputs to temporarily deactivate fire alarm audible notification and initiate/synchronize strobes. Provide a complete set of self-diagnostics for controller and appliance network. Provide local diagnostic information display and local diagnostic information and system event log file.

D. Stairwell Pressurization Control Panel

1. Provide an independent control panel for the stairwell pressurization system interlockedwith the building fire alarm system.

E. Remote Annunciators:

1. Provide remote annunciator that includes a LCD display at locations indicated on the drawings. The display shall indicate the device in trouble/alarm or any supervisory device. Display the device name, address, and actual building location. Remote annunciators shall have control functions as the main control panel. Contorl functions shall be secured behind a locked panel.

F. Initiating Devices:

1. Addressable Systems:

   a. Addressable Devices: Individually identifiable by addressable fire alarm controlunit.

   b. Provide suitable addressable interface modules as indicated or as required for connection to conventional (non-addressable) devices and other components thatprovide a dry closure output.

2. Manual Pull Stations

   a. Provide manual pull stations as indicated on the drawings.

3. Smoke Detectors:

   a. Provide addressable photoelectric smoke detectors as follows:

      1) Provide analog/addressable photoelectric smoke detectors utilizing the photoelectric light scattering principle for operation in accordance with UL
      268. Smoke detectors must be listed for use with the FACU.

      2) Provide self-restoring type detectors that do not require any readjustment after actuation at the FACU to restore them to normal operation. The detector must have a visual indicator to show actuation.

      3) Vibration must have no effect on the detector's operation. Protect the detection chamber with a fine mesh metallic screen that prevents the entrance of insects or airborne materials. The screen must not inhibit the movement of smoke particles into the chamber.

      4) Provide twist lock bases with screw terminals for each conductor. The detectors must maintain contact with their bases without the use of springs.

      5) The detector address must identify the particular unit, its location within the system, and its sensitivity setting. Detectors must be of the low voltage type rated for use on a 24 VDC system.

4. **Duct Smoke Detectors:**

   a. **Duct-mounted addressable photoelectric smoke detectors must consist of a smoke detector, as specified in paragraph Spot Type Detectors, mounted in a special housing fitted with duct sampling tubes. Detector circuitry must be mounted in a metallic or plastic enclosure exterior to the duct. It is not permitted to cut the duct insulation to install the duct detector directly on the duct. Detectors must be listed for operation over the complete range of air velocities, temperature and humidity expected at the detector when the air- handling system is operating. Detectors must be powered from the FACU.**

1) **Sampling tubes must run the full width of the duct. The duct detector package must conform to the requirements of NFPA 90A, UL 268A, and must be listed for use in air-handling systems. The control functions, operation, reset, and bypass must be controlled from the FACU.**

2) **Lights to indicate the operation and alarm condition must be visible and accessible with the unit installed and the cover in place. Remote indicators must be provided where required by NFPA 72. Remote indicators as well as the affected fan units must be properly identified inetched plastic placards.**

3) **Detectors must provide for control of auxiliary contacts that provide control, interlock, and shutdown functions per NFPA 90A and the operational matrix for the system included on the contract documents. Auxiliary contacts provide for this function must be located within 3 feet of the controlled circuit or appliance. The detectors and auxiliary contacts must be supplied by the fire alarm system manufacturer to ensure complete system compatibility.**

5. Heat Detectors:

a. Provide heat detection in elevator hoistway to shut down elevator power prior tosprinkler activation.

G. Notification Appliances:

1. Horns:

a. **Speakers must conform to the applicable requirements of UL 1480. Speakers must have six different sound output levels and operate with audio line input levels of 70.7 VRMs and 25 VRMs, by means of selectable tap settings. Interior speaker tap settings must include taps of 1/4, 1/2, 1, and 2 watt, at a minimum. Exterior speakers must also be multi-tapped with no more than 15 watt maximum setting. Speakers must incorporate a high efficiency speaker for maximum output at minimum power across a frequency range of 400 Hz to 4,000 Hz, and must have a sealed back construction. Speakers must be capable of installation on standard 4-inch square electrical boxes. Where speakers and strobes are provided in the same location, they may be combined into a single unit. All inputs must be polarized for compatibility with standard reverse polarity supervision of circuit wiring via the FACU. Provide speaker mounting plates constructed of cold rolled steel having a minimum thickness of 16 gage or molded high impact plastic and equipped with mounting holes and other openings as needed for a complete installation. Fabrication marks and holes must be ground and finished to provide a smooth and neat appearance for each plate. Each plate must be primed and painted. Speakers must utilize screw terminals for termination of all field wiring.**

2. Strobes:

a. Visual notification appliances must conform to the applicable requirements of UL 1638, UL 1971 and conform to the Architectural Barriers Act (ABA). Visual Notification Appliances must have clear high intensity optic lens, xenon flash tubes, or light emitting diode (LED) and be marked "FIRE" in red lettering. The light pattern must be disbursed so that it is visible above and below the strobe and from a 90 degree angle on both sides of the strobe. Strobe flash rate must be 1 flash per second and a minimum of 15 candela based on

the UL 1971 test.

H. Circuit Conductors: Copper or optical fiber; provide 200 feet (60 m) extra; color code andlabel.

I. Surge Protection: In accordance with IEEE C62.41.2 category B combination waveform andNFPA 70; except for optical fiber conductors.

J. Locks and Keys: Deliver keys to Using Agency.

1. Provide the same standard lock and key for each key operated switch and lockable paneland cabinet; provide 5 keys of each type

K. Instruction Charts: Printed instruction chart for operators, showing steps to be taken when a signal is received (normal, alarm, supervisory, and trouble); easily readable from normal operator's station.

1. Frame: Stainless steel or aluminum with polycarbonate or glass cover.

2. Provide one for each control unit where operations are to be performed.

3. Obtain approval of Using Agency prior to mounting; mount in location acceptable toUsing Agency.

4. Provide extra copy with operation and maintenance data submittal.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with applicable codes, NFPA 72, NFPA 70, and Contract Documents.

B. Conceal all wiring, conduit, boxes, and supports where installed in finished areas.

C. Obtain Using Agency's approval of locations of devices, before installation.

D. Install instruction cards and labels.

1. Provide labeling for all wiring inside panel

E. Painting:

1. In exposed areas or unfinished rooms and areas provide red conduit or paint 2 inch wide red bands every 10 feet and on either side of penetrations in unfinished spaces. Paint box covers red and provide a black plastic tag affixed with adhesive to the cover with the words “FIRE ALARM” in white, one-half inch letters. In finished areas, paint exposed electrical conduit (serving fire alarm equipment), fire alarm conduit, surface metal raceways, junction boxes, and electrical boxes to match adjacent finishes. Provide all boxes with a black plastic tag affixed with adhesive to the cover with the words “FIRE ALARM” in white, one-half inch letters.

3.2 INSPECTION AND TESTING FOR COMPLETION

A. Notify Using Agency 7 days prior to beginning completion inspections and tests.

B. Notify authorities having jurisdiction and comply with their requirements for schedulinginspections and tests and for observation by their personnel.

C. Provide the services of the installer's supervisor or person with equivalent qualifications tosupervise inspection and testing, correction, and adjustments.

D. Prepare for testing by ensuring that all work is complete and correct; perform preliminary testsas required.

E. Provide all tools, software, and supplies required to accomplish inspection and testing.

F. Perform inspection and testing in accordance with NFPA 72 and requirements of localauthorities; document each inspection and test.

G. Correct defective work, adjust for proper operation, and retest until entire system complies withContract Documents.

H. Diagnostic Period: After successful completion of inspections and tests, Operate system in normal mode for at least 14 days without any system or equipment malfunctions.

1. Record all system operations and malfunctions.

2. If a malfunction occurs, start diagnostic period over after correction of malfunction.

3. At end of successful diagnostic period, fill out and submit NFPA 72 "Inspection andTesting Form."

3.3 USING AGENCY PERSONNEL INSTRUCTION

A. Provide the following instruction to designated Using Agency personnel:

1. Hands-On Instruction: On-site, using operational system.

B. Administrative: One-hour session(s) covering issues necessary for non-technical administrativestaff; classroom:

1. Initial Training: 1 session pre-closeout.

C. Basic Operation: One-hour sessions for attendant personnel, security officers, and engineeringstaff; combination of classroom and hands-on:

1. Initial Training: 1 session pre-closeout.

D. Furnish the services of instructors and teaching aids; have copies of operation and maintenancedata available during instruction.

3.4 CLOSEOUT

A. Closeout Demonstration: Demonstrate proper operation of all functions to Using Agency.

1. Be prepared to conduct any of the required tests.

2. Have at least one copy of operation and maintenance data, preliminary copy of project record drawings, input/output matrix, and operator instruction chart(s) available duringdemonstration.

3. Have authorized technical representative of control unit manufacturer present duringdemonstration.

4. Demonstration may be combined with inspection and testing required by authority having jurisdiction; notify authority having jurisdiction in time to schedule demonstration.

5. Repeat demonstration until successful.

3.5 MAINTENANCE

A. Provide to Using Agency, a proposal as an alternate to the base bid, for a maintenance contract for entire warranty period, to include the work described below; include the total cost of contract, proposal to be valid at least until 30 days after date of Substantial Completion.

B. Perform routine inspection, testing, and preventive maintenance required by NFPA 72,including:

1. Maintenance of fire safety interface and supervisory devices connected to fire alarmsystem.

2. Repairs required, unless due to improper use, accidents, or negligence beyond the controlof the maintenance contractor.

3. Record keeping required by NFPA 72 and authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Provide trouble call-back service upon notification by Using Agency:

1. Provide on-site response within 2 hours of notification.

2. Include allowance for call-back service during normal working hours at no extra cost toUsing Agency.

3. Using Agency will pay for call-back service outside of normal working hours on an hourly basis, based on actual time spent at site and not including travel time; include hourly rate and definition of normal working hours in maintenance contract.

D. Provide a complete description of preventive maintenance, systematic examination, adjustment,cleaning, inspection, and testing, with a detailed schedule.

E. Maintain a log at each fire alarm control unit, listing the date and time of each inspection and call-back visit, the condition of the system, nature of the trouble, correction performed, and parts replaced. Submit duplicate of each log entry to Using Agency's representative upon completion of site visit.

F. Comply with Using Agency's requirements for access to facility and security.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 10 00 – SITE CLEARING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Removal of existing debris and site preparation.

1.02 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordination: Coordinate work with utility companies; notify before starting work and comply with their requirements; obtain required permits.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Clearing Firm: Company specializing in the type of work required.
   1. Minimum of three years of documented experience.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining pedestrian walk ways, contractor staging areas, aircraft parking, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.

B. Salvagable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on Owner's premises where indicated.

C. Utility Locator Service: 811 utility location service before demolition and site clearing.

D. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion and sedimentation-control and stownwater protection measures are in place.

E. Protect and maintain benchmarks, survey control points, and portions of the terminal to remain from disturbance.

F. Protect site improvements to remain from damage. Restore damaged improvements to condition existing before start of site clearing.

G. Do not store materials or equipment or permit excavation within drip line of remaining trees.

H. Provide temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures to prevent soil erosion and

discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to the Erosion Control requirements of the local Authority Having Jurisdiction.

3.02 SITE CLEARING

A. Comply with other requirements specified in Section 01 7000.

B. Minimize production of dust due to clearing operations; do not use water if that will result in ice, flooding, sedimentation of public waterways or storm sewers, or other pollution.

C. Protect remaining trees and shrubs from damage and maintain vegetation. Employ a licensed arborist to repair tree and shrub damage. Restore damaged vegetation. Replace damaged trees that cannot be restored to full growth, as determined by arborist.

D. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated and as necessary to facilitate new construction.

E. Dispose of waste materials, including trash, debris, and excess topsoil, off Owner's property. Burning waste materials on-site is not permitted.

F. Provide snow removal as necessary in and around the project area for the duration of the project.

3.03 DEBRIS

A. Remove debris, junk, and trash from site.

B. Leave site in clean condition, ready for subsequent work.

C. Clean up spillage and wind-blown debris from public and private lands.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 23 00 – EARTHWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Excavating for pile caps and utilities within the building.

B. Filling, backfilling, and compacting for pile caps and utilities within the building.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Contract Documents Appendix A: Geotechnical Investigation; bore hole locations and findings of subsurface materials.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Finish Grade Elevations: Indicated on Drawings.

B. Subgrade Elevations: Indicated on Drawings.

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM D698 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft3 (600 kN-m/m3)).

B. ASTM D3017 - Standard Test Method for Water Content of Soil and Rock in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth); 2005.

C. ASTM D1557 – Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft3 (2,700 kN-m/m3))

1.05 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordination: Coordinate requirements for special foundations and load bearing elements specified in other Sections.

1.06 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Project Record Documents: Accurately record actual locations of utilities remaining by horizontal dimensions, elevations or inverts, and slope gradients.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Locate stockpiles where indicated.
   1. Separate differing materials with dividers or stockpile separately to prevent intermixing.
   2. Prevent contamination.
   3. Protect stockpiles from erosion and deterioration of materials.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS - GENERAL

A. Soil materials, whether from sources on or off site must be approved by Owner's geotechnical engineer as suitable for intended use.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Structural Fill: clean rock fill or crushed concrete, or gravels (USCS classification GW or GP)
   1. Applications: Backfill against foundations, replace over-excavation of soft spots, under footings, slab on grade, and paved areas, and extend out 10" horizontally on all sides of footings.
   2. Graded and moisture conditioned as specified.
   3. GRAVELS: 6-inch max. particle size with no more than 40% oversize (greater than ¾-inch) and no more than 5% fines passing the #200 sieve.
      CRUSHED CONCRETE: shall meet the gradation requirement of gravels and shall be free of all debris and rebar.
      CLEAN ROCK: hard durable crushed or screened rock of ¾-inch – 4-inch size.
   4. Placed in 8-inch max. thick layers.
   5. Moisture conditioned to within 2% of optimum moisture content.
   5. Compacted to 95% max. dry density per ASTM D 698. (if more than 30% of material is greater than ¾-inch, field density may be determined by a test strip) .

B. Controlled Low Strength Material (CLSM) for Fill: Lean concrete; 28 day unconfined compressive strength between 50 and 200 psi.
   1. Applications: Pipe and conduit trench bedding and backfill.

C. Free Draining Gravel: Under floor slabs, exterior slabs, and sidewalks

   1. Provide a 4" leveling mat 4-inches thick composed of 3/4-inch minus free draining material WYDOT Grade GR or equivalent compacted to 95% max. dry density per ASTM D 698.

   2. Placed on subgrade soils compacted to a min. depth of 8-inches to 95% max. dry density per ASTM D 698.

   3. Any soft spots / fill material encountered within 2-feet of the slabs shall be replaced with structural fill compacted to 95% max. dry density per ASTM D 698.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that survey bench marks and intended elevations for the work are as indicated.

B. Verify structural ability of unsupported walls to support imposed loads by the fill.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum locations.

B. Locate, identify, and protect from damage above- and below-grade utilities that remain.

C. Protect site features to remain, including but not limited to bench marks, survey control points, existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving, and curbs, from damage by grading equipment and vehicular traffic.

D. Protect trees to remain by providing substantial fencing around entire tree at the outer tips of its branches; no grading is to be performed inside this line.

3.03 SOIL REMOVAL AND STOCKPILING

A. Remove excavated material that is unsuitable for re-use from site.

B. Remove excess excavated material from site.

C. Stockpile excavated subsoil to be re-used on site; remove remainder from site.

D. Stockpiles: Use areas designated on site; pile depth not to exceed 8 feet; protect from erosion.

E. Use of explosives is not permitted.

3.04 EXCAVATING

A. Excavate to accommodate new structures and construction operations.

B. Excavate subsoil required for building pad and footings depth required per Drawings.
   1. Excavate for utilities trenches, construction operations, and other work as specified in this Section and other Sections.
   2. Notify Architect/Engineer of unexpected subsurface conditions and discontinue affected work in area until notified to resume work.

C. Preparation for Foundations, Foundations, and Slab on Grade Work: Excavate to required working elevations.

D. Slope banks of excavations deeper than 4 feet to angle of repose or less until shored.

E. Do not interfere with 45 degree bearing splay of foundations.

F. Hand trim excavations. Remove loose matter.

G. Grade top perimeter of excavation to prevent surface water from draining into excavation.

H. Prepare excavated areas prior to backfilling; scarify and proof roll subgrade surfaces to a depth of 8 to 12 inches to identify soft spots.
   1. Cut out soft areas of subgrade not capable of compaction in place. Backfill with structural fill.
   2. Compact subgrade to density equal to or greater than requirements for subsequent fill material.
   3. Until ready to fill, maintain excavations and prevent loose soil from falling into excavation.

3.05 TRENCHING

A. Slope banks of excavations deeper than 4 feet to angle of repose or less until shored.

B. Do not interfere with 45 degree bearing splay of foundations.

C. Cut trenches wide enough to allow inspection of installed utilities.

D. Cut out soft areas of subgrade not capable of compaction in place. Backfill with general fill.

E. Compact subgrade to density equal to or greater than requirements for subsequent fill material.

F. Until ready to backfill, maintain excavations and prevent loose soil from falling into excavation.

G. Remove large stones and other hard matter that could damage piping or impede consistent backfilling or compaction.

3.06 BACKFILLING

A. Backfill to contours and elevations indicated using unfrozen materials.

B. Employ a placement method that does not disturb or damage other work.

C. Systematically fill to allow maximum time for natural settlement. Do not fill over porous, wet, frozen or spongy subgrade surfaces.

D. Moisture Content: Maintain moisture content of fill and backfill materials, expressed as a percentage in relation to optimum moisture content, to attain required compaction density.
   1. Structural Fill Soils: as required to meet density.
   2. Protect moisture content of prepared soil materials from moisture loss at all times.

E. Slope grade away from building minimum 12 inches in 10 ft, unless noted otherwise. Make gradual grade changes. Blend slope into level areas.

F. Correct areas that are over-excavated.
   1. All Areas: Use structural fill, flush to required elevation, compacted to minimum 95% max. dry density per ASTM D 698 for each lift.

G. Structural Fill Compaction Density under structural footings:
   1. Compact initial lift of Structural Fill placed on native soil to a minimum of 90% maximum density per ASTM D1557.
   2. Subsequent lifts of Structural Fill to be placed to a minimum of 95% max. dry density per ASTM D 698.

H. Structural Fill Compaction Density under slab on grade (interior and exterior):
   1. Compact Structural Fill placed on native soil to a minimum of 95% max. dry density per ASTM D 698.

I. Reshape and re-compact fills subjected to vehicular traffic.

3.07 BEDDING AND FILL AT SPECIFIC LOCATIONS

A. The paragraphs below identify location, fill material to be used (identified from lower to upper fill type), and compacted thickness of each fill:

B. Utility Piping, Conduits, Duct Bank, and Similar Items:
   1. Bedding: Use CLSM to 12 inches above top of pipe, conduit, duck bank or similar item.
   2. Cover with general fill.
   3. Fill up to subgrade elevation.

C. At Slab on Grade Areas:
   1. Grade, condition, and compact existing material. Place structural fill as required.
   2. Fill up to subgrade elevation with Structural Fill.
   3. Place 4-inches of Free Draining Gravel.

D. At Building Footings and Foundation Walls:
   1. Grade, condition, and compact existing general fill to depth as required.
   2. Fill up to subgrade elevation with Structural Fill.

3.08 FINISH GRADING

A. Before Finish Grading:
   1. Verify building and trench backfilling have been inspected.
   2. Verify subgrade has been contoured and compacted.

B. Remove debris, roots, branches, stones, in excess of 1/2 inch in size. Remove soil contaminated with petroleum products.

C. In areas where vehicles or equipment have compacted soil, scarify surface to depth of 3 inches.

D. Complete finish grading to elevations and slopes indicated.

3.09 REPAIR AND RESTORATION

A. Existing Facilities, Utilities, and Site Features to Remain: If damaged due to this work, repair or replace to original condition.

B. Trees to Remain: If damaged due to this work, trim broken branches and repair bark wounds; if root damage has occurred, obtain instructions from Architect/Engineer as to remedy.

C. Other Existing Vegetation to Remain: If damaged due to this work, replace with vegetation of equivalent species and size.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. See Section 01 4000 for general requirements for field inspection and testing.

B. Provide for visual inspection of load-bearing excavated surfaces before placement of foundations.

C. Compaction density testing will be performed on compacted fill in accordance with ASTM D3017.

D. Results will be evaluated in relation to compaction curve determined by testing uncompacted material in accordance with ASTM D698 ("standard Proctor") or ASTM D1557 (“modified proctor”) as indicated above.

E. If tests indicate work does not meet specified requirements, remove work, replace and retest.

F. Frequency of Tests:
   1. Conduct at least one field density test for foundation wall backfill at bottom and top lifts, and not less than one set of tests for each 50 lineal feet of backfill.
   2. Conduct at least one field density test for each 75 cubic yard of backfill for trenches at bottom, middle, and top lifts, and not less than one set of tests for each 100 lineal feet of trench.

3.11 PROTECTION

A. Prevent displacement of banks and keep loose soil from falling into excavation; maintain soil stability.

B. Protect bottom of excavations and soil adjacent to and beneath foundation from freezing.

3.12 MAINTENANCE

A. Protect newly graded areas from traffic and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.

B. Repair and re-establish grades in settled, eroded, and rutted areas to specified tolerance.

C. Where completed compacted areas are disturbed by subsequent construction operations or adverse weather, scarify surface, re-shape, and compact to required density prior to further construction.

D. Where settling is measurable or observable at excavated areas during general project warranty period, remove surface (pavement, lawn, or other finish), add backfill material, compact, and

replace surface treatment. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of surface or finish to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

3.13 TOLERANCES

A. Top Surface of Subgrade: Plus or minus 0.10 foot (1-3/16 inches) from required elevation.

B. Top Surface of Finish Grade: Plus or minus 0.04 foot (1/2 inch).

3.14 CLEANING

A. Remove unused stockpiled materials, leave area in a clean and neat condition. Grade stockpile area to prevent standing surface water.

B. Leave site clean and raked, ready to receive landscaping.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 201
CLEARING AND GRUBBING

201.1 Description. This work shall consist of clearing, grubbing, removing, and disposing of items, debris and other objectionable matter from within the limits of right of way and easement areas, except vegetation designated to remain or to be selectively treated.

201.2 Construction Requirements.

201.2.1 General. The engineer will designate all trees, shrubs, plants, and other objects that are to remain. Al designated items shall be preserved. Any damage to natural terrain, vegetation or objects designated to remain shall be repaired or replaced, as determined by the engineer, at the contractor's expense.

201.2.2 Clearing and Grubbing. Unless otherwise specified in the contract documents, the entire length of the project shall be cleared and grubbed to the limits and requirements specified. Clearing and grubbing shall include removal of all trees, stumps, roots and any objectionable matter resting on or protruding through the surface of the original ground, except for those items designated to remain.

201.2.2.1 Clearing. The area for clearing shall be within the following limits:

(a) Highway construction areas on the right of way or right of way easements, including structures frontage roads, streets, ramps, approaches, ditches, channels and all other access roads, connection and incidental items that are to be constructed. These areas shall extend 10 feet outside of construction lines, or to the right of way limits if less than 10 feet.

(b) Material sites within the right of way or right of way easements.

(c) Areas enclosed by interchange loops and ramps.

(d) Site distance areas for intersecting routes.

201.2.2.2 Limits of Grubbing. Within the limits of the cut areas, grubbing shall be performed to a minimum depth of 18 inches below the finished earth grade of roadways, ditches, channels, borrows and structures. The areas below the natural ground surface shall be grubbed to a depth necessary to remove all stumps, roots, buried logs and other objectionable material. In embankment areas, undisturbed stumps and roots extending no more than 6 inches above the ground line may remain, provided the stumps and roots are a minimum of 4 feet below the finished earth grade. Except in areas to be excavated, holes created by removals shall be backfilled with suitable material and compacted to the approximate density of the adjacent area.

201.2.2.3 Selective Clearing and Grubbing. All areas outside the limits designated for clearing and grubbing but on the right of way, shall be free of unsightly vegetation, debris, and other objectionable matter. In lieu of grubbing, undisturbed stumps outside the slope stake limits and in mowable areas may be cut to a maximum height of 3 inches above the ground. Low hanging, unsound or unsightly branches on trees or shrubs designated to remain shall be removed as directed by the Engineer.

201.2.3 Scalping. The contractor shall scalp all areas where excavation or embankment is to be performed except mowed or burned over sod may remain where the embankment to be constructed is at least 4 feet above natural ground. Scalping shall include the removal of surface material such as sod, grass, residue of agricultural crops, sawdust, and any other vegetative matter without removing more earth than is necessary.

201.2.4 National Forest Land. Before beginning work on a highway to be constructed over national forests land, the contractor shall obtain information from the forest ranger in charge to determine rules and regulation covering construction procedures and shall follow those requirements. Before any fires are set, the contractor shall notify the forest ranger in charge, and shall secure a burning permit.

201.2.5 Removal and Disposal of Material. The contractor shall dispose of all trees, stumps, brush, roots and all other objectionable matter removed in the clearing and grubbing process.

201.2.5.1 Open Burning. The contractor is encouraged to harvest marketable timber, utilize mulched timber for allowed unless prohibited elsewhere in the contract or disallowed by federal, state or local laws or ordinances.

Any required permits, licenses, fees, or other compliance requirements of open burning shall be the responsibility of the contractor in accordance with Sec 107. A contractor representative shall be present during all burning. Measures shall be taken to ensure that structures or vegetation on adjacent property, or items designated to remain on the right of way, shall not be jeopardized. Fires set for the purpose of training fire fighters and industrial employees in firefighting methods may be permitted after coordination with MDNR or local fire departments and shall be in strict accordance with NFPA standards.

201.2.5.2 Disposal of Wood. Burial of stumps and debris will not be permitted on the right of way. Products of clearing and grubbing may be removed from the right of way and disposed of out of sight from the roadway, provided there is no conflict with governing regulations for the wasted material. A signed, written agreement with the property owner shall be submitted by the contractor to the engineer prior to the disposal of material on that property.

201.2.5.3 Disposal of Scalping. The products of scalping shall be deposited at the toe of embankments where such areas are available within the limits of the roadway balance affected. If such areas are not available, the products shall be neatly and uniformly deposited on the right of way in such a manner that no drainage will be blocked.

201.2.5.4 Disposal of Timber. Except in national forest areas, all timber that has not been removed from the right of way prior to construction and is not designated to remain in place shall become the property of the contractor.

201.3 Method of Measurement. The work provided herein will not be measured for payment but will be considered a plan quantity. The following exceptions will be made on a measured quantity basis:

(a) An authorized change in the line or grade, or appreciable deviations in the original ground elevations in accordance with Sec 203.8.1, significantly alters the original construction limits of the contract.

(b) Authorized alterations or corrections to the plans provide additional work outside the original construction limits of the contract and will materially affect the final payment quantity.

(c) Appreciable errors within the original limits of construction, if the contractor provides written notification, and measurements of the proposed change to the engineer prior to commencing clearing operations. The engineer will accept or reject the changes by the close of the next business day.

201.3.1 If payment for additional work is required, a combined measurement of clearing and grubbing will be made on an area basis to the nearest 1/10 acre. An acre will consist of 87.12 units, each unit being a rectangular area 50 feet long and 10 feet wide.

201.3.2 The total area of the right of way, except that part secured for channel changes, inlet or outlet easements, and borrow areas will be laid out in units beginning at the centerline of the highway with corners at whole or half stations and extending outward until all of the right of way has been included. The total area of the right of way secured for channel changes, inlet or outlet easements, and borrow areas will be laid out in units in the same manner from longitudinal base lines run or designated for these areas.

201.3.3 Clearing and grubbing will be considered as one item. If additional clearing or grubbing is required, the entire unit will be counted for measurement. Areas of mowing or scalping, removal of small trees or brush 5 feet high or less, and all weeds, cornstalks and similar vegetation regardless of height, and the trimming of branches on trees and shrubs designated to remain, will not be measured and will be considered incidental to other required work. Only stumps 3 inches or more in diameter and 6 inches or more above the ground surface in areas where grubbing is required will be considered in the measurement of clearing and grubbing.

201.3.4 If any clearing or grubbing is performed within any unit, the entire area of that unit, except in the case of overlaps, will be included in the measurement. If individual trees or stumps, cause the overlapping of units as laid out, only one unit of clearing and grubbing, as applicable, will be allowed. If a fractional unit occurs as a result of measurement or of overlap, the fractional unit will be counted as one unit. If the boundary line of any unit intersects a single tree or stump, counting of another applicable unit will not be made if there is any clearing and grubbing to be paid for in the adjacent unit.

201.4 Basis of Payment.

201.4.1 Clearing and grubbing will be paid for at the contract unit price based on plan quantity.

201.4.2 If a bid item for clearing and grubbing is not included in the contract, any necessary clearing and grubbing, including scalping, selective clearing and the removal and disposal of all the resulting material required within the contract items specified, will be considered incidental to the contract and additional compensation will not be made.

201.4.3 If additional clearing and grubbing in accordance with Sec 201.3 is required outside the initial contract work, payment for that clearing and grubbing will be made per acre at the contract unit price, or if separate payment for clearing and grubbing is not included in the contract, payment will be made in accordance with Sec 109.

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Back to Table of Contents

SECTION 203
ROADWAY AND DRAINAGE EXCAVATION, EMBANKMENT AND COMPACTION

203.1 Description. This work shall consist of excavating, disposing of or compacting all material encountered within the limits of the work not being removed under some other item. This work shall be performed in accordance with the specifications and as shown on the plans, or directed by the engineer. All excavation will be classified as hereafter described.

203.2 Classification of Excavation.

203.2.1 Class A Excavation will consist of all roadway and drainage excavation not classified as Class C or Unclassified. Shale, fire clay, chert broken by intermittent clayey partings or clay seams (joint flint rock), stratified chert cemented with clay seams (hardpan), and plain or bituminous-bound bases or surface courses of macadam, gravel, broken stone or similar material will be considered as Class A Excavation, not Class C Excavation.

203.2.2 Class C Excavation will consist of the removal of stone, including sandstone or igneous formations, in ledges 6 inches thick or more. Laboratory analysis will be made, if necessary, to aid in the determination. A ledge will be considered to be a continuous deposit of rock that may or may not include thin, interbedded seams of soft material or shale. The vertical limits of each ledge will be determined by beds of soft material or shale greater than 24 inches thick. The beds of soft material or shale will be included in the measurement of Class A Excavation, unless the material falls within the vertical limits identified by Sec 203.8.2.3. Boulders or other detached stones, each having a volume of 2 1/2 cubic yards or more, will be considered Class C Excavation.

203.2.3 Unclassified Excavation will consist of the excavation of all material not classified within the contract.

203.3 Borrow.

203.3.1 Borrow will consist of approved material required for the construction of embankment or for other portions of the work, and shall be obtained either from borrow areas shown on the plans or from areas designated or approved by the engineer. The contractor shall notify the engineer sufficiently in advance of opening any borrow areas so the necessary cross sections or measurements may be taken. Borrow will be classified in the same manner as roadway excavation.

203.3.2 Borrow areas proposed by the contractor, other than those shown on the plans or designated by the engineer, may be approved, provided:

(a) The material and area are equally satisfactory.

(b) The final cost to the Commission, including the cost of easements, is not greater than the cost as originally designated.

(c) The substitution is in the best interest of the Commission.

(d) Proper environmental clearances have been obtained for use of any alternate borrow sites, with the exception of permitted quarries and other locations that have already obtained environmental clearances in accordance with Sec 203.3.2.5.

(e) The contractor has obtained appropriate land disturbance permits from MDNR in advance of excavation, unless the site is already under permit by MDNR.

203.3.2.1 Proposed sites for contractor furnished material will be sampled and tested only after award of the contract, and after a copy of the written agreement between the property owner and the contractor authorizing use of any borrow site and access has been provided to the engineer. The agreement shall include provisions for the final condition of the borrow site and access.

203.3.2.2 The preliminary subsurface investigations to determine depth to rock, general soil characteristics, etc., shall be the sole responsibility of the bidder or contractor.

203.3.2.3 The engineer shall be notified in writing sufficiently in advance of the proposed use of a borrow site to allow six weeks for sampling under the direction of the engineer for testing.

203.3.2.4 The contractor shall furnish equipment suitable for the purpose of soil sampling, and shall make all necessary arrangements for performing the work at a time mutually agreeable to the contractor and the engineer.

203.3.2.5 Environmental clearances under applicable federal and state laws and regulations will include, but are not limited to the following: Clean Water Act (COE and MDNR), the Endangered Species Act (USFW and MDC), the National Historic Preservation Act (SHPO), the Farmland Protection Act (NRCS), Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (MDNR), Comprehensive Environmental Response (MDNR), Compensation, and Liability Act (MDNR) and RSMo Chapter 194, Section 194.400 Unmarked Human Burial Sites (SHPO). Certification shall be obtained in advance of the proposed use of a borrow site and furnished to the engineer. Certification shall include clearance letters and other evidence of coordination from the appropriate regulatory agencies as attachments. Guidelines for obtaining environmental clearances for contractor furnished borrow sites may be obtained from the project contact as designated in the contract proposal.

203.3.2.6 After borrow material has been removed, the borrow site and access shall be finished in accordance with the agreement of the property owner.

203.4 Construction Requirements.

203.4.1 General. Prior to beginning excavation and embankment operations in any area, all necessary clearing, grubbing and stripping in that area shall have been performed. The excavation and embankment for roadway, intersections and entrances shall be made to the designated alignment, grade and cross section. Sideslopes, cuts and fills shall be finished to a reasonably smooth and uniform surface that will merge with the adjacent terrain without variations readily discernible from the road. Finishing by hand methods will not be required, except that all brush, weeds, excess mud and silt, or other debris shall be removed from culverts and channels within the scope of the work in accordance with Sec 104.11.2, even if such structures are used in place. Areas disturbed by the contractor outside the limits of construction shall be restored at the contractor's expense to a condition similar to that prior to construction operations.

203.4.1.1 Field Stone. Before final project acceptance, all loose field stone greater than 4 inches in size within the limits of the right of way shall be disposed of as directed by the engineer.

203.4.1.2 Shoulders. Earth shoulders shall be constructed of suitable material to the grade and cross section shown on the plans and shall be compacted in accordance with Sec 203.5. The construction of shoulders shall start when sufficient surfacing has been completed and the surfacing has attained satisfactory strength to permit continuous shouldering operations. Equipment that will damage the surfacing will be prohibited from operating on the surfacing during shouldering operations. Surfacing and curbs shall be protected where equipment is crossing or turning.

203.4.1.3 Grading for Aggregate Type Surface Roadway. If a roadway to receive an aggregate-type surface is specified in the contract, reasonable tolerance in alignment, grade and cross section will be permitted. A reasonable tolerance in alignment will be defined as a maximum gradual deviation of 2 feet , free from sharp breaks, made in the interest of economy and to take advantage of favorable topography. A reasonable tolerance in grade will be defined as a final grade that is uniform in appearance, free from sharp breaks or humps, and within 6 inches of plan grade if such tolerance results in economy to the Commission. Economy to the Commission will not refer to each individual cut, but to the entire project after due consideration has been given to the need of the material removed from cuts that are below grade and to the compensating feature of cuts that are left above grade. Loose rock on the finished subgrade over 2 inches in size shall be removed, picked up and disposed of as directed by the engineer.

203.4.2 Maintenance. During construction, the roadway shall be maintained by the contractor in such a condition that the roadway will be passable and well-drained at all times. Roadway ditches, channel changes, inlet and outlet ditches, and any other ditches in connection with the roadway shall be cut and maintained to the required cross section. All drainage work shall be performed in proper sequence with other operations. All ditches and channels shall be kept free of debris or obstructions. All material resulting from slides shall be removed and disposed of as directed by the engineer.

203.4.3 Removal of Oversize Material in Subgrade. The engineer may order the contractor to remove oversize material if the upper 4 inches of the subgrade, as tentatively completed, contains loose rock over 2 inches in size to make the subgrade unacceptable as a roadbed for the proposed type of surfacing in the judgment of the engineer.

203.4.4 Excavating in Rock. Excavating and undergrading in rock, that is material in accordance with the description of Class C, whether the contract calls for classified or unclassified excavation, shall be performed in a manner to produce material of such size as to permit placement in embankments in accordance with the requirements. Rock shall be removed to the limits of undergrading insofar as practical and in such manner as to leave no undrained depressions in the cut. Care shall be taken to avoid overshooting when blasting. Any loose or shattered rock, overhanging ledges and boulders above the roadbed that might dislodge shall be removed. If the contract provides a specific use for rock from roadway excavation, the work shall be performed in such order and manner as may be necessary to ensure that the desired quantity of such material may be placed as required.

203.4.4.1 Blasting Requirements. Reporting for all blasting shall be made in accordance with Sec 107.7.

203.4.4.1.1 The contractor shall submit a rock excavation blasting plan to the engineer at least 14 days before drilling operations begin. The blasting plan shall address all trenching, presplitting and production shots, and shall include, but is not limited to the following information: powder factor per cubic yard , hole size, subdrill, stemming depth, drill pattern, type of explosives and detonators, and safety precautions. A preblast survey will be required on all uncontrolled structures within 500 feet of planned blasting operations. A separate blasting plan will be required on all locations requiring blasting within 50 feet of any roadway structure. Any changes to blasting plans shall be provided to the engineer for review prior to performing the work.

203.4.4.1.2 The contractor shall not exceed blasting holes larger than 4 inches in diameter. The powder factor shall be between 0.60 to 1.35 pounds per cubic yard except for presplitting or trenching. If stemming ejection becomes a problem, crushed stone stemmings shall be used. Subdrill shall be no more than 30 percent of burden. The contractor shall not drill within a radius equal to the depth of the cut of a loaded borehole. Seismic monitoring will be required when the scaled distance is less than 65 , where the scaled distance equals the distance, in feet , divided by the square root of explosive weight, in pounds, per 8-millisecond delay.

203.4.4.1.3 The contractor shall perform the excavation of rock cuts by the technique of presplitting, cushion blasting or air decking to produce a neat line of the proposed excavation, with the results subject to the approval of the engineer. Holes for presplitting shall be drilled to the full depth of the cut or to a pre-selected bench elevation as shown on the plans or as determined by the engineer. Presplitting shall be done according to accepted practice to produce a clean face on the excavated cut. Presplit shots shall be made prior to production shots. Production holes shall not be drilled any closer to the presplit line than 12 times the diameter of the production blast hole.

203.4.4.2 Undergrading. Regardless of whether the contract includes paving, the final surface for the backfilled undergraded areas shall be of a uniform texture and grade suitable to the engineer for paving.

203.4.4.2.1 Unless specified otherwise, the final surface shall be substantially free of exposed rock exceeding the 2 inch size that would interfere with the final preparation of the base for paving. Areas of required undergrading, except where an aggregate-type surface is specified, shall be backfilled with one of the following material, with preference in the order given, depending on availability:

(a) The top approximately 2 inches of the rock backfill shall consist of either rock fragments or spalls or a 2-inch granular-type material having a plasticity index not exceeding 10, and a gradation such that at least 50 percent of the material will be retained on the No. 4 sieve.

(b) A 2-inch maximum size granular-type material having a plasticity index not exceeding 10, and a gradation such that at least 50 percent of the material will be retained on the No. 4 sieve.

(c) A material having a low plasticity index and designated by the engineer as suitable. No material shall exceed 2 inches in size.

203.4.4.2.2 If a roadway to receive an aggregate type surface is specified in the contract, undergraded areas shall be backfilled with material obtained from roadway excavation, and the upper 6 inches shall be free of granular material larger than 4 inches.

203.4.4.3 Overbreak. Overbreak resulting from blasting rock below the limits of undergrading shall be removed and backfilled with spalls or rock fragments at the contractor's expense. If spalls are not available and if the contractor does not elect to use rock fragments, the use of either of the following will be satisfactory.

(a) Material in accordance with Sec 1007.

(b) A granular-type material with a plasticity index not exceeding 10, and a gradation such that at least 50 percent of the material will be retained on the No. 4 sieve.

203.4.5 Unsuitable Material. Where excavation to the finished graded section results in a subgrade or slopes of unsuitable material, the engineer may require the contractor to remove the unsuitable material, and backfill to the finished graded section with approved material. The contractor shall conduct the operations in such a manner that the engineer may make the necessary measurements before the backfill is placed.

203.4.6 Borrow. Borrow material shall not be placed until after material from roadway excavation has been placed in the embankment, except as otherwise approved by the engineer. The contractor shall not excavate beyond the dimensions and elevations established, and no material shall be removed prior to staking and cross sectioning the site. If the contractor places more borrow than required, thereby causing a waste of excavation, such waste will be deducted from the borrow volume as measured in the borrow area. All borrow areas shall be bladed and left in such a shape as to permit taking the necessary cross sections after excavating has been completed. The finished borrow areas shall be approximately true to line and grade if so specified in the contract, and shall be finished, where practical, such that no water will collect or stand therein. If it is necessary to remove fencing in order to obtain borrow material, the fencing shall be replaced in as good condition as the fencing was at the time of removal. The contractor shall be responsible for confining livestock when a portion of the fence is removed. Removing and replacing such a fence or the confining of livestock shall be at the contractor’s expense.

203.4.7 Roadway Obliteration. If obliteration of existing roadways or temporary construction is designated in the contract to be performed on a roadway excavation basis, such obliteration shall include all operations necessary to fill the ditches and blend the old road with the natural ground to provide a pleasing appearance. Removal of concrete pavement and concrete base course will be paid for in accordance with Sec 202.30. The earthwork for obliteration, including bituminous surfacing, will be included as roadway excavation.

203.4.8 Human, Criminal, Historical, Archaeological or Geological Remains. If any human remains, or archaeological artifacts that may be of historical, archaeological or geological significance such as arrowheads, pottery, stone tools, animal bones, or fossils, are encountered during construction, the contractor shall stop all work within a 50-foot buffer around the human remains and/or artifacts, and then shall notify the MoDOT resident engineer or construction inspector. The contractor shall maintain the 50-foot minimum buffer until otherwise directed by the Engineer.

203.4.8.1 In the case of human remains, MoDOT HP staff will notify the local law enforcement and the State Historic Preservation Office (SHPO) as per state law. If the contractor is unable to contact appropriate MoDOT staff, the contractor shall initiate this involvement by local law enforcement and the SHPO. In this instance, a description of the contractor’s actions shall be promptly made to MoDOT.

203.4.8.2 In the case of archaeological artifacts, MoDOT HP will contact the appropriate staff at the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) and the SHPO to report the discovery after a preliminary evaluation of the artifacts is made and reasonable efforts to see if the findings represent an archaeological site which can be avoided. If MoDOT determines that the site/artifact is significant and will be adversely affected by the contract work, MoDOT HP will immediately notify the FHWA and SHPO of this finding and provide recommendations to minimize and/or mitigate the adverse effect.

203.4.8.3 If a temporary suspension of work under this section lasts for an unreasonable period of time, as defined in Sec 108.15.1, and the suspension results in an actual increase in the time or cost of performance of the contract, then this condition will be deemed a suspension of the work directed by the engineer under Sec 108.15 and will be handled in accordance with that section.

203.4.9 Excavated Material Stockpile. During the process of excavating cuts, the engineer may order specific excavated material placed in stockpiles in order to have suitable material available to complete the upper portion

of embankments and to backfill portions of undergraded cuts.

203.4.10 Embankment Construction. Embankment construction shall consist of constructing roadway embankments, including preparation of the area upon which the embankment is to be placed, constructing dikes and berms, placing and compacting approved material within roadway areas where unsuitable material has been removed, and placing and compacting embankment material in holes, pits and other depressions within the roadway area. Only approved material free of trees, stumps, rubbish and any other deleterious material shall be used in the construction of embankments and backfills. Rocks, broken concrete or other solid material shall not be placed in embankment areas where piling is to be placed or driven.

203.4.10.1 Embankments requiring surcharges, restricted loading rates, embankment control stakes or pore pressure measurement devices shall be constructed to the design template progressively for the full height. Failure of embankments or embankment foundations, or damage to structures that occurs when the contractor fails to observe restricted loading rates, or fails to construct slopes initially to the design template shall be repaired as directed by the engineer at the contractor's expense.

203.4.10.2 Construction of embankments shall not be started on foundation soil or partially completed embankments having more than 0.2 foot of frozen soil, nor shall embankment be built of frozen material. Frozen soil layers in partially completed embankments shall be at least 18 inches apart. No material shall be placed on frozen soil layers encountered within 12 inches of the top of the proposed grading section. Frozen material on foundation soil or partially completed embankment not meeting the above requirements shall be removed before placing material for the embankment. The removal of frozen material from the foundation of an embankment or from any layer of the embankment and the replacement with satisfactory material shall be at the contractor’s expense.

203.4.11 Embankment on Hillsides or Against Existing Embankment. Where embankment is to be placed on hillsides or where new embankment is to be constructed against existing embankments, existing slopes steeper than six horizontal to one vertical measured at a right angle to the roadway shall be continuously benched in no less than 12-inch rises over those areas as required, as the work is brought up in layers. Benching shall be of sufficient width to permit placing and compacting operations. Each horizontal cut shall begin at the intersection of the ground line and the vertical side of the previous bench. Existing slopes shall also be stepped to prevent any wedging action of the embankment against structures. The material thus cut out or compacted along with the new embankment material will be at the contractor’s expense.

203.4.12 Scalping. Scalping shall be performed in accordance with Sec 201.2.3. Where an embankment less than 4 feet high is to be constructed, all sod and vegetative material shall be removed from the surface upon which the embankment is to be placed, and the cleared surface completely broken up by plowing, scarifying or stepping to a minimum depth of 6 inches . This area shall be compacted in the same manner as that required for the embankment placed on the area. Sod not requiring removal shall be thoroughly disked before construction of embankment. Where an embankment less than 3 feet high is to be constructed over a compacted road surface containing bituminous or granular material, the old road surface shall be scarified to a depth of at least 6 inches . This scarified material shall be recompacted.

203.4.13 Embankment Against Existing Structures. If embankment is deposited on one side only of abutments, wingwalls, piers or culvert headwalls, care shall be taken that the area immediately adjacent to the structure is not compacted to the extent that the compaction will cause overturning of or excessive pressure against the structure. Equipment of such weight as may cause damage to culverts or other structures will not be permitted to work over or immediately adjacent to such structures. The embankment adjacent to the end bent of a bridge shall not be placed higher behind than in front of end bents until the superstructure is in place. If embankment is to be placed on both sides of a concrete wall or box-type structure, operations shall be conducted such that the embankment is kept at approximately the same elevation on each side.

203.4.14 Surcharged Embankments. Surcharged embankments shall be built in accordance with the plans and shall remain in place for such time as in accordance with the contract. The requirements for placing and compacting will be waived on the surcharge material above the specified compacted area.

203.4.15 Excess or Unsuitable Material. All excess or unsuitable excavated material, including rock and boulders that cannot be used in embankments, may be placed on the sideslopes of the nearest embankment in a satisfactory manner or shall be disposed of off the right of way in areas secured by the contractor. The contractor shall be responsible for compliance with all federal, state and local laws in the disposal of excess or unsuitable

material. Rock or boulders greater than 24 inches shall not be used routinely in constructing sideslope embankments. A distinct shoulder line shall be maintained by keeping all such waste material at least 24 inches below the finished shoulder elevation, and specific density control will not be required.

203.4.16 Placement of Embankment. Roadway embankment shall be placed in layers not exceeding 8 inches , an uncompacted measurement, and shall be compacted as specified before the next layer is placed. The layers shall be placed approximately parallel to both the proposed profile grade and to the finished roadbed. Effective spreading equipment shall be used on each lift to obtain uniform thickness prior to compacting. Continuous leveling and manipulating will be required during compacting operations. Construction equipment shall be routed uniformly over the entire surface of each layer. Occasional rocks and boulders greater than 24 inches shall be dispersed to allow for uniform compaction between them.

203.4.16.1 Occasional stones or rock fragments exceeding the thickness of the 8-inch layer shall be disposed of by being incorporated into the embankment outside the limits of the proposed surfaced traffic lanes. The thickness of the layer in these areas may be increased if necessary to accommodate the stones, but shall not exceed 12 inches, an uncompacted measurement. The stones or rock fragments shall be placed such that there is no nesting.

203.4.16.2 Lifts may be increased to a maximum of 12 inches , an uncompacted measurement, for berms, filling of old channels, waste or similar areas, and any roadway or approach for which a granular-type surface is proposed. These areas shall be compacted by uniformly distributing all equipment movements over the entire area, and specific density control will not be required. Compaction performed in these areas will be at the contractor's expense.

203.4.17 Rock Embankment. If the excavated material consists predominantly of rock fragments of such a size that the material cannot be placed in layers of the prescribed thickness, such material shall be placed in the embankment in layers having a thickness of the approximate average size of the larger rocks but not exceeding 24 inches . Rocks or boulders too large to permit placing in a 24-inch layer shall be reduced in size as necessary to permit this placement. Rock shall not be dumped in place, but shall be distributed by blading or dozing in a manner to ensure proper placement in final position in the embankment. Construction equipment shall be routed uniformly over the entire surface of each layer. The spalls and smaller stone fragments shall be left on the surface of each layer as formed.

203.4.18 Rigid or Flexible Pavements. If the specified or proposed surfacing consists of a rigid or flexible-type pavement, the top consolidated rock layer for the full width between roadbed slopes shall be finished to the same limits as shown on the plans for undergrading in rock cuts. If rigid pavement is to be constructed without an aggregate base, the material requirements of Sec 203.4.4.2.1 (a) or (b) shall govern the construction of the area between the bottom of the pavement and the top of the top consolidated rock layer. Any embankment necessary outside the limits of the pavement shall be constructed of suitable earth or as otherwise specified in the contract.

203.5 Compaction of Embankment and Treatment of Cut Areas with Moisture and Density Control. AASHTO T 99, Method C, replacing any material retained on a 3/4-inch sieve, as provided therein, or MoDOT Test Method TM 40 will be used as the Standard Compaction Test for determining the moisture density relations of soils. The optimum moisture as determined by the Standard Compaction Test may be used as a guide in determining the proper moisture content at which each soil type should be compacted. Water shall be added or removed as necessary to permit obtaining the required density and moisture control. The field density of the embankment after compaction will be determined in accordance with AASHTO T 191 or T 205, using the total material or T 310, for wet density. The volume of the test hole may be reduced as necessary to accommodate available testing equipment. If nuclear density methods are used, moisture content will be determined in accordance with AASHTO T 239, except that a moisture correction factor will be determined for each soil in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 35. The calculated density obtained in a field density test will be compared with the maximum density as directed by the Standard Compaction Test to determine the percent of compaction attained.

203.5.1 Maximum Density Compaction Requirements. If payment of Compacting Embankment or Embankment in Place is specified as a contract pay item, compaction to at least 90 percent of maximum density, as determined by the Standard Compaction Test, will be required in the following areas:

(a) All roadway embankments except as otherwise provided in the following sections: Secs 203.4.14, 203.4.15, 203.4.16.2, 203.5.3, 203.5.4, 203.5.5 and 203.5.7

(b) All backfilled undergraded cuts, except as modified by Sec 203.5.3.

(c) Certain portions of the roadbed in cuts specified in Sec 203.5.8, except as modified in Sec 203.5.3.

203.5.2 Moisture Control. The moisture content of the soil at the time of compaction shall be as specified herein.

203.5.2.1 When necessary to eliminate a rubbery condition of the embankment, it may be required that some soils have a moisture content below the optimum during compacting work, except that Class A material having a liquid limit of 40 or more, where placed in embankments within 5 feet of the top of the finished subgrade or where encountered in areas of cut compaction, shall be compacted at no less than the optimum moisture content. The liquid limit determination will be in accordance with AASHTO T 89. Some Class A material, including heavy clays and material commonly known as shales and fireclays, shall require breaking down such that the moisture can be uniformly distributed.

203.5.2.2 Loessial soils shall have moisture controlled so as not to exceed optimum plus 3 percentage points when placed in embankments less than 30 feet high. When placed in embankments 30 feet high or more, such soils shall have moisture controlled such that the optimum moisture is not exceeded. If wet foundation conditions contribute to the embankment moisture while compacting, the engineer may waive this specified moisture content for a height not to exceed 3 feet above the embankment foundation. In the event of conflict of provisions of this section with provisions in Sec 203.5.2.1, Sec 203.5.2.1 shall govern.

203.5.3 Top Lift Thicknesses. The upper 18 inches of the earth subgrade extending the full width between roadbed slopes shall be compacted to at least 95 percent of maximum density.

203.5.4 Structure Approach. Roadway embankment within 100 feet of each end of a structure on which the top slab or deck is to be used as the riding surface and the spill fill under such a structure shall be compacted to no less than 95 percent of maximum density.

203.5.5 Rocky Fill. Density requirements will not apply to portions of embankments constructed of material so rocky that the embankment cannot be satisfactorily tested in accordance with AASHTO T 191 or T 205. Material of a gradation having more than approximately 20 percent retained on a 3/4-inch sieve will generally be considered too rocky for satisfactory density testing. In lieu thereof, the compactive effort on rocky material shall consist of making four complete passes on each layer with a tamping-type roller or two complete passes on each layer with a vibratory roller. The tamping-type roller shall have tampers or feet protruding no less than 6 inches from the surface of the drum and shall have a minimum load on each tamper of 250 psi of tamping area. The vibratory roller shall have a manufacturer's rating of 16 to 20 tons compacting power. During compaction, each layer shall have the moisture content controlled such that, in the judgment of the engineer, any silt and clay fraction is in a plastic state. Simple diagnostic tests to establish such a plastic state will include ability to indent with a thumb or heel or to roll a short thread of soil between the hands. Material that crumbles under pressure will be considered too dry.

203.5.6 Lift Consistency. Each layer shall be wetted or dried as necessary, and shall be compacted to the required density. Regardless of the type of equipment used, the roadway shall be compacted uniformly and the surface kept reasonably smooth at all times. If large pieces of heavy clay are encountered, the material shall be broken down by suitable manipulation to permit satisfactory embankment construction. If shale is encountered, the shale shall be broken down as much as practical and compacted at or above optimum moisture.

203.5.7 Deep Fills. Compaction to at least 95 percent of maximum density will be required for that portion of any embankment below an elevation 50 feet below the top of the finished subgrade. If, because of embankment foundation conditions, the 95 percent maximum density cannot be obtained after reasonable compactive effort has been expended, the engineer may waive the 95 percent requirement for a height not exceeding 3 feet above the embankment foundation.

203.5.8 Compacting in Cut. Cut compaction shall be performed in all Class A material areas and in all unclassified material areas that meet the requirements of Sec 203.2.2 after removal of the roadway excavation material to the required section. A surface parallel to the pavement slope, 12 inches below the bottom of the

pavement or lowest base course, shall be temporarily exposed for the full width between roadway inslopes. The exposed material shall be manipulated and compacted to no less than the required density to a depth of 6 inches . The material above this compacted plane shall be spread in layers not exceeding 8-inch loose thickness, each layer being wetted or dried as necessary and compacted to the specified density. The entire volume of material so handled and compacted, including the 6-inch layer compacted in place, will be considered as Compacting in Cut. All Class A material having a liquid limit of 40 or more, including the 6-inch layer compacted in place, shall be compacted at no less than the optimum moisture content.

203.5.8.1 Cut compaction shall be performed to an additional depth of 12 inches for 50 feet on each side of the intersection of the natural ground and the top of the subgrade, then uniformly graded for 30 feet to meet the depth requirements of Sec 203.5.8 and, if necessary, Sec 203.5.8.2.

203.5.8.2 The existing ground for the full width between roadway slopes under embankments less than 18 inches high shall be treated in accordance with Sec 203.5.8 to only such depth as to ensure having 18 inches of material of the required density and moisture below the top of the finished subgrade.

203.5.9 Field Laboratory. When authorized by the engineer, the contractor shall provide a Type 2 field laboratory in accordance with Sec 601.

203.6 Compaction of Embankment not Constructed with Density or Moisture and Density Control. If compaction of embankment is a requirement of the contract but has not been specified as a pay item, the compactive effort on each layer shall consist of distributing all equipment movements over the entire embankment area and of at least three complete passes with a tamping-type roller over the entire area to be compacted. The tamping-type roller shall have tampers or feet projecting no less than 6 inches from the surface of the drum and shall have a minimum load on each tamper of 250 psi of tamping area. Compactive efforts shall be continued, if necessary, until the tamping feet penetrate no more than 2 inches into the layer of material being compacted. Continuous leveling and manipulating will be required during compacting operations and the moisture content shall be adjusted as necessary, in the judgment of the engineer, to permit proper consolidation.

203.6.1 Dumping and rolling areas shall be kept separate, and no lift shall be covered by another until compaction complying with these requirements has been attained. Unstable areas in the embankment shall be removed and replaced with suitable material at the contractor's expense.

203.6.2 Each layer of embankment constructed of rock or rocky material shall also be compacted by three complete passes of the tamping-type roller. A vibratory roller may be used if approved by the engineer.

203.7 Compaction of Embankment Without Specified Compaction Results or Specified Compaction Equipment. If compaction of embankment is not designated by the contract, compaction will not be required other than that attained by distributing equipment movements over the entire embankment area.

203.8 Method Of Measurement.

203.8.1 Contract Quantity Payment. The quantities of excavation , compacting embankment, and embankment in place for which payment will be made will be those shown in the contract for the various items, provided the project is constructed essentially to the lines and grades shown on the plans. A partial check of existing ground elevations will be made at the time slope stakes are set, and of the finished work for deviations in the grade, width or slope from the authorized grade or typical section.

203.8.1.1 Final measurement will not be made of Class A Excavation, Unclassified Excavation , Compacting Embankment, and Embankment in Place except when:

(a) Appreciable errors are found in the original computations.

(b) An original cross section is found to have an average deviation from the true elevation in excess of one foot.

(c) An authorized change in grade, slope or typical section is made.

(d) Unauthorized deviations decrease the quantities on the plans.

(e) Class C excavation is encountered, unless the contract calls for unclassified excavation. If this condition is encountered, corrections or revisions will be computed and added to or deducted from the contract quantity.

(f) Quantities are determined by measurement as specified in Sec 203.8.2.

203.8.1.2 If the plans have been altered or when disagreement exists between the contractor and the engineer as to the accuracy of the plan quantities of any balance, or the entire project, either party has the right to request a recomputation of contract quantities of excavation within any area by written notice to the other party. The written notice will contain evidence that an error exists in the original groundline elevation or in the original computations that will materially affect the final payment quantity. If such final measurement will be required, measurement will be made from the latest available ground surface and the design section.

203.8.2 Measured Quantities. If payment of excavation is to be made on a measured quantity basis, volumes of authorized excavation will be computed from cross section measurements by the average end area method. When not attributable to carelessness of the contractor, slides in Class A Excavation and in Unclassified Excavation will be included in such measurements. Authorized excavation of rock, shale, muck or other unsuitable material will also be included.

203.8.2.1 Authorized excavation of rock, shale, muck or other unsuitable material below grade shall consist of that excavation necessary to provide the designated depth of undergrading. No measurement or payment will be made of any material removed and replaced below the design limits of undergrading. No measurement will be made for overbreak or for the disposal of the same if such material is obtained from outside the neat lines of the proposed backslopes in rock excavation, except that such overbreak will be measured as Class A Excavation or Unclassified Excavation, as applicable, when all suitable authorized excavation has been used and the overbreak material will be required for completion of the embankment. A maximum tolerance of one foot will be permitted for rock protruding or extending within the neat lines of the proposed backslopes.

203.8.2.2 While work involving classified excavation is in progress, the engineer will fix points of elevation and stationing as required to establish the lines of demarcation between material of different classification. These top points will be determined before any Class C, sandstone or igneous rock excavation is removed, and the contractor shall notify the engineer before removing any such material. Any excavation removed before the engineer has been notified and given 24 hours to establish lines of demarcation will be included in the measurement of Class A Excavation only.

203.8.2.3 Excavation may be encountered in which lines of demarcation between material of different classifications are impractical to establish. The quantity of material classified as other than Class A Excavation may be determined by the engineer on a percentage basis as the work progresses after the limits of determinate classification material have been established. Where vertical or near vertical excavation limits are indicated by the plans, all Class A Excavation material encountered within the actual Class C vertical excavation limits will be included with Class C Excavation quantities.

203.8.2.4 Measured quantities of excavation will be used where the ground elevations shown on the plans are found to be erroneous. No revision of contract quantities will be made if the actual ground elevations are considered to agree generally with the ground line shown on the plans. Where the engineer authorizes a change in grade, slope or typical section affecting the volume of excavation allowed for payment in that particular balance or area, the revised volume will be determined by the average end area method on the basis of the revised grade, slope or typical section. Where unauthorized deviations result in a decrease in the contract quantities, the deviations will be measured and deducted from the contract quantity.

203.8.2.5 The quantity of Class C Excavation will be computed on a measured quantity basis. The volume of Class A Excavation allowed for payment in roadway balances involving rock excavation will be determined by one of the following methods, whichever in the judgment of the engineer is more applicable:

(a) Measuring and computing both the Class A Excavation and the Class C Excavation within the limits affected or as defined by Sec 203.8.2.3.

(b) Deducting the volume of Class C, sandstone or igneous rock excavation from the total adjusted volume of roadway excavation, regardless of classification, within the limits affected or as defined by

Sec 203.8.2.3.

203.8.2.6 Measurement will be made for unsuitable material actually excavated and removed to permit proper compaction in cut sections and in foundations for embankment sections. No measurement will be made of the suitable material temporarily removed and replaced to facilitate compaction in cuts or under shallow embankments.

203.8.2.7 Borrow quantities will be determined by measuring the borrow area before and after excavating.

203.8.2.8 Excavated material stockpiled in accordance with Sec 203.4.9 will be measured in the stockpile by the average end area method.

203.8.2.9 Only that material placed in accordance with Sec 203.5 will be included in the measurement of Compacting Embankment and Embankment in Place. If an error has been found in the original computations or ground elevations, or if there has been an authorized change in grade, slope or typical section, the plan quantity for Compacting Embankment and Embankment in Place for those areas or balances affected will be adjusted for final payment. All required compaction above the original ground line and all compacting of material placed in undergraded cut sections will be considered as Compacting Embankment and Embankment in Place.

203.8.2.10 Compacting in cuts will be measured to the nearest 1/10 station along the centerline of each roadbed regardless of width, and will include any required compaction of the original ground under shallow embankments. For the purpose of measurement, a divided highway will be considered as having two roadbeds. Measurement of ramps will be made from or to the ramp's gore point. Final measurement will not be made except for authorized changes during construction or where appreciable errors are found in the contract quantity. The revision or correction will be computed and added to or deducted from the contract quantity.

203.8.2.11 Measurement of roadway and drainage excavation, compacting embankments and embankments in place will be made to the nearest cubic yard .

203.9 Basis of Payment. Roadway and drainage excavation will be paid for at the contract unit price per cubic yard and will be considered full compensation for the following:

(a) Excavating.

(b) Hauling any distance.

(c) Placing and forming embankments.

(d) Preparation of subgrade.

(e) Shouldering, rounding slopes, obliterating existing roadbeds or temporary construction, finishing of graded earth roadway, picking up and disposing of field stone and other rock.

(f) Disposal of excess excavation.

(g) Any work noted on the plans to be included in the contract unit price for excavation.

203.9.1 No payment will be made for any material used for purposes other than those designated, except as approved by the engineer.

203.9.2 Payment will be made at the contract unit price per cubic yard for the applicable item of Class A Excavation or Unclassified Excavation for each handling of stockpiled excavation approved by the engineer.

203.9.3 No payment will be made for rock overbreak or for backfilling overbreak areas below the undergrading limits. Payment for the material for backfilling required undergraded areas will be made under an applicable excavation item. No direct payment will be made for backfilling around structures, the excavation for which has been paid for as roadway excavation.

203.9.4 If the contract does not contain a contract unit price for Class C Excavation and such material is encountered during construction, unless the project is let on an unclassified excavation basis, payment will be

made per cubic yard at the fixed contract unit price specified in Sec 109, except that payment will be determined in accordance with Sec 109.4 when the quantity exceeds 500 cubic yards.

203.9.5 No direct payment will be made for water required in compaction work. Any costs involved in reducing the moisture content in soils will be at the contractor's expense.

203.9.6 Payment for finishing a graded earth roadway will be considered completely covered by the contract unit price for the various classes of excavation except as otherwise specifically noted under Sec 104.11.2 in regard to material excavated in cleaning channels and culverts used in place.

203.9.7 When removal of unsuitable material is directed by the engineer, the contractor will be reimbursed for excavation of the unsuitable material and the excavation of the suitable replacement material. Payment will be made for each operation at the contract unit price of Class A Excavation or Unclassified Excavation. Payment for placement of the suitable material will be paid for at the contract unit price of Compacting Embankment.

203.9.8 Embankment in Place will be paid for at the contract unit price per cubic yard , and will be considered full compensation for:

(a) Furnishing and transporting material from stockpile sites or from a contractor-provided source.

(b) Placing and forming embankments.

(c) Compacting embankment or for adding or reducing the water content of the embankment.

(d) Any excavation required to provide the embankment material included under the item of embankment in place, including mulching and seeding a borrow site.

(e) Any work noted on the plans to be included in the contract unit price for embankment in place.

203.9.9 Payment will be made at the contract unit price for each of the pay items included in the contract.

SECTION 206
EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

206.1 Description. This work shall consist of the necessary excavation for the foundations of all structures, removal and disposal of all excavated material, backfilling around the completed structures, and all related work.

206.1.1 All removal work that might endanger the new structure shall be completed before any work on the new structure is started. Partial removals of any structure or adjustments to any utility shall be made with care to preserve the value of the retained portions. Work around any live utility shall be done in such a manner that uninterrupted service is maintained.

206.1.2 Excavated material that is unsuitable for backfill and embankments, and excess material not required for either, shall be disposed of. Excavated material shall not be dumped into the channel of a stream.

206.2 Depth of Excavation. The elevation of the bottoms of footings as shown on the plans shall be considered an approximate elevation, and the engineer by written order may make changes in plan elevations and dimensions of footings as necessary to secure a satisfactory foundation.

206.3 Foundation Stabilization and Tests.

206.3.1 The contractor shall furnish and place sand, rock, gravel or other suitable granular backfill material to replace unsuitable material encountered below box culvert slabs or below the foundation elevation of the structures.

206.3.2 The contractor shall stabilize suitable foundation material or form the bottom of pile footings, if necessary to obtain a stable foundation. The contractor shall assist in driving sounding rods or shall drill test holes to permit an adequate inspection of the foundation subgrade. The depth of the excavation, the character of the material and the condition of the foundation shall be approved by the engineer before any concrete is placed in the footing.

206.4 Construction Requirements.

206.4.1 Foundation Excavation Protection. Methods shall be used in excavating for foundations of structures that will ensure maintaining the stability of the material adjacent to the excavation. Sheeting, cribbing, timbering or bracing shall be placed by the contractor where indicated on the plans and wherever considered necessary. The contractor shall ensure the adequacy of all sheeting, cribbing, timbering or bracing used.

206.4.2 Foundation Key. Foundations for structures and retaining walls shall be free of loose material, and the footing shall be placed on undisturbed material. Footings shall be keyed no less than 6 inches into rock (limestone, dolomite or other suitable material with $q_u \geq 100$ ksf), and no less than 18 inches into weak rock (shale or other suitable material with 5 ksf $\leq q_u \leq$ 100 ksf)other suitable material specified for spread footings. Excavation in rock or weak rock for the key shall be made as near as practical to the size of the footing, or of the key, as shown on the plans. When placing the footing, the key portion shall be cast against the vertical, undisturbed face of the rock or weak rock. If side forms are necessary for footings, the forms shall be removed approximately 24 hours after placing the concrete, and the excavation immediately backfilled to the top of the footing. All cavities or crevices shall be cleaned out and filled with concrete in accordance with Sec 703.3.3.9, or spanned with a reinforced concrete beam, as directed by the engineer.

206.4.3 Foundation Subgrade. Care shall be taken to avoid disturbing the material below the bottom of the footings where the structure is founded on material other than rock, and final removal to grade shall not be made until just prior to placing concrete. Where foundation piles are required, the excavation of each pit shall be completed before the piles are driven, and after the driving is completed, all loose and displaced material shall be removed.

206.4.4 Culverts on Rock. If rock is encountered under a portion of the bottom slab of a concrete box-type structure, the rock shall be removed to at least 6 inches below the bottom of the slab and curtain walls, and backfilled with material similar to that under the remainder of the structure.

206.4.5 Footing Construction. Concrete footings for structures shall be placed on foundation material that is reasonably dry in the judgment of the engineer. The contractor shall perform all draining, bailing or pumping operations, drive any sheeting, and construct any cofferdams or cribs necessary to obtain this condition. Pumping from the interior of any foundation enclosure shall be done in a manner to preclude the possibility of the movement of water, or other fluids or semi-fluids, through any fresh concrete. If necessary, the footing form shall be made watertight and shall be sealed around the bottom, and all pumping done between the footing form and the wall of the enclosure.

206.4.6 Footing Drainage. All holes, pits or sumps resulting from excavating operations shall be kept drained or pumped out until the completion of the work. No ponding of water around footings on other than rock will be permitted.

206.4.7 Cofferdams. In accordance with the contract, the contractor shall provide cofferdams, consisting of sheet piling, or the contractor may propose alternate methods for the construction of the bridge foundations. Alternate designs or methods may consist of, but are not limited to: the construction of cofferdams, seal courses, over excavation, well point systems, dewatering and drainage diversion. The method proposed by the contractor shall stay within the right of way limits provided in the contract. The interior dimensions of cofferdams shall provide sufficient clearance for the construction of forms, and ample room for a sump and for pumping outside the footing forms. Cofferdams that have been tilted or moved laterally during the process of sinking shall be corrected to provide the necessary clearance. Cofferdams shall be constructed to protect the work against damage from sudden rising waters and to prevent damage to the foundation by erosion. Cofferdams shall be removed after the completion of the substructure unit, unless specific authority is given for the cofferdam to remain in place. The contractor shall submit the proposed method of cofferdam construction to the engineer prior to beginning work.

206.4.8 Temporary Shoring. When temporary shoring is required by the contract documents, the contractor shall provide temporary shoring as needed, consisting of sheet piling or alternate methods for the construction of roadway fills, mechanically stabilized earth walls or structures. The contractor shall submit the proposed method of temporary shoring construction to the engineer prior to beginning work.

206.4.9 Seal Courses. Seal courses will be required if indicated on the plans or if conditions are encountered that, in the judgment of the engineer, render it impractical to dewater the foundation area. The dimensions of the seal course shall be adequate to seal the foundation area. Pumping will not be permitted while excavating, pile driving or placing the seal course, and not until, by determination of the engineer, the seal course has attained sufficient strength to withstand the hydrostatic pressure. If seal courses are shown on the plans, and the engineer determines that the footings may be satisfactorily placed without sealing, the contractor shall dewater any completed excavation for investigation purposes. The seal course designs shown on the plans are based on the use of sheet piling in construction of the cofferdams at the indicated water elevations. If the contractor's proposed alternate method includes cofferdams that are to be constructed with seal courses, the contractor shall prepare construction plans that are properly designed for the site conditions and water elevations that may be encountered during footing construction. These plans shall be signed and sealed by a professional engineer licensed in the State of Missouri and shall be provided to the engineer for review a minimum of two weeks prior to the beginning of actual footing construction. The contractor is responsible for the safety and performance of the contractor's proposed system.

206.4.10 Backfill. Backfill material shall be free from large or frozen lumps, wood or other extraneous material. All spaces excavated and not occupied by the new structure or by porous backfill shall be refilled with earth to the original ground surface or to the finished ground lines shown on the plans. The backfill at end bents, walls or other units that fall within the limits of the roadbed shall be placed in successive 6-inch layers and compacted to the same density required for the adjacent roadbed. Dry footings at interior bents shall be backfilled and compacted to no less than the density of the adjacent undisturbed material. Precautions shall be taken to prevent any wedging action against the masonry. The slope bounding the excavation, if steeper than 6:1 shall be stepped or serrated. Backfill placed around culverts and piers shall be kept at approximately the same elevation on opposing sides. Drains consisting of 5 cubic feet of coarse aggregate shall be placed at weep holes, except where porous backfill is required. Backfill material shall not be placed against end bents of bridges, on sides of box culverts or behind retaining walls until the concrete has attained the strength specified in Sec 703.3.2.13. Backfill material shall not be placed higher behind than in front of end bents until the superstructure, including the bridge deck, is in place. Until the grade is in place, drainage shall be maintained away from the end bent backwall by constructing a 6:1 or steeper slope away from the backwall for a minimum distance of 3 feet and by providing a lateral path for all water to flow off the roadbed section.

206.4.11 Porous Backfill. Porous backfill, in accordance with Sec 1009, shall be placed behind abutments, wings and retaining walls where specified and shown on the plans. Porous backfill shall be placed and consolidated in successive 12-inch layers such that the porous backfill will not become mixed with other backfill material.

206.4.12 Flowable Backfill. Flowable backfill will be required when indicated on the plans. The contractor may, with approval from the engineer, use flowable backfill as an alternate to compacted backfill for structures, pipes or utility cuts. Flowable backfill intended for any other use by the contractor shall also be approved by the engineer. Flowable backfill shall not be used to surround drainage systems such as vertical drains or edge drains. Flowable backfill shall be in accordance with Sec 621.

206.4.13 Excavation Classification. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, excavation for structures will be classified as Class 1 Excavation, Class 1 Excavation in Rock, Class 2 Excavation, Class 2 Excavation in Rock, Class 3 Excavation, Class 3 Excavation in Rock, Class 4 Excavation and Class 4 Excavation in Rock. In general, Class 1 Excavation and Class 2 Excavation will apply to excavation for bridges and large retaining walls. Class 3 Excavation will apply to excavation for pipe culvert installations, utilities, retrofit pipe culverts, drop inlets, and manholes. Class 4 Excavation will apply to excavation for box culverts, small retaining walls and other miscellaneous structures. Class 1 Excavation will include all excavation above a specified elevation indicated on the plans while Class 2 Excavation will include all excavation below this specified elevation. The classification of excavation for all structures will be shown on the plans.

206.4.14 Culvert Cleanout. When cleanout of a culvert is specified, all silt, trash, rocks, broken concrete and any other debris shall be removed for the entire limits such that flow in the culvert is restored to full capacity. If a manual inspection cannot easily be made due to bends in the culvert, or excessive length, the contractor shall provide the engineer with a video inspection recording in accordance with Sec 724.3.4.

206.5 Method of Measurement.

206.5.1 Measurement of Class 1 and Class 2 Excavation will be made to the nearest 1/2 cubic yard for each structure of that volume of material actually removed from within the limits established in this section. The volume measured will be limited by vertical planes 18 inches outside of and parallel with the neat lines of footings, tie beams or overhangs of structures classed as bridges or retaining walls. The upper limits of the volume measured will be the existing ground line or the lower limits of the roadway, drainage or channel excavation, including any allowable overbreak, whichever is lower. Where roadway spill fills are required to be placed and compacted before driving piles or before constructing bridge substructure units, any required additional excavation for the substructure units will be measured from the spill slope. For stream crossings, the measured volume will not include water, but will include mud, muck and other semi-solids. The lower limits of the volume measured will be the bottom of the footings, bottom of seal courses, or 18 inches below the bottom of tie beams and overhangs. Excavation for columns above drilled shafts will be Class 1 Excavation, with measurement made of the volume of material actually removed above the top of the drilled shaft. The volume measured will not exceed that of a cylinder having a diameter 36 inches greater than that of the column above the drilled shaft. No measurement will be made of the material excavated for the drilled shaft below the bottom of the column.

206.5.2 Final measurement of Class 3 Excavation for pipe culverts, utilities, retrofit pipe culverts, drop inlets or manholes will not be made unless there is an authorized change from plan location resulting in a different quantity or there is an authorized change averaging more than 6 inches in the foundation elevation. If a revision is made or an appreciable error is found in the contract quantity, the revision or correction will be computed and added to or deducted from the contract quantity. Measurement of Class 3 Excavation will be made to the nearest cubic yard for each structure of that volume of material actually removed from within the area bounded by vertical planes 18 inches outside of the outer walls of the structure. The upper limits of the volume measured, will be the existing ground line, or the lower limits of the roadway excavation, whichever is lower. The lower limits of the volume measured will include excavation necessary for pipe bedding.

206.5.3 Measurement of Class 4 Excavation for box culverts classified as bridges will be made to the nearest cubic yard for each structure of that volume of material actually removed from within the area bounded by vertical planes 18 inches outside of the outer walls of box culverts with bottom slabs. The upper limits of the volume measured will be the existing ground line, or the lower limits of the roadway excavation, whichever is lower. Class 4 Excavation under embankments and in channel changes will be measured from the original

ground surface unless otherwise designated on the plans. For box culverts without bottom slabs, measurement will be made as above except no material below plan flow line will be included that is outside of the area bounded by vertical planes 18 inches each side of and parallel with the neat lines of the walls or footings. Final measurement of Class 4 Excavation for box culverts not classified as bridges, small retaining walls and miscellaneous structures will not be made unless there is an authorized change from plan location resulting in a different quantity or there is an authorized change averaging more than 6 inches in the foundation elevation. If a revision is made or an appreciable error is found in the contract quantity, the revision or correction will be computed and added to or deducted from the contract quantity. Excavation classification will not change if a substitution of a drainage structure type is approved.

206.5.4 Where concrete in footings or walls is cast against the vertical faces of the excavation, the neat lines of the concrete footings will be considered the limits of excavation for that depth in which the concrete is in contact with the excavation, and no measurement will be made of any excavation or overbreak beyond the neat footing lines.

206.5.5 Final measurement of the porous backfill will not be made except for authorized changes during construction, or where appreciable errors are found in the contract quantity. Where required, the volume of porous backfill will be computed to the nearest cubic yard at each structure from dimensions on the plans. Any porous backfill material placed outside the neat lines shown on the plans shall be placed at the contractor's expense. The revision or correction will be computed and added to or deducted from the contract quantity.

206.6 Basis of Payment.

206.6.1 Payment for additional Class 1 and Class 2 Excavation required to carry footings a maximum of 8 feet below elevations shown on the plans will be made at 125 percent of the contract unit price for that additional excavation within the limits of Class 1, and at 150 percent of the contract unit price for that additional excavation within the limits of Class 2 Excavation. Additional excavation required to carry footings a depth of more than 8 feet
below plan elevations will be considered changes in the work, and will be paid for in accordance with Sec 104.3.

206.6.2 Payment for drilling test holes for foundation tests will be made per foot of hole drilled at the fixed contract unit price specified in Sec 109.

206.6.3 Payment will not be made for removal or replacement of foundation material that became unsuitable because of improper methods of construction by the contractor. Payment for removal of inherently unsound material for foundation stabilization will be made at the contract unit price for excavation for structures. No payment will be made for any costs involved in replacing the volume below the foundations, except that the contractor will be reimbursed for the delivered cost of the granular backfill when directed by the engineer.

206.6.3.1 If Class C Excavation material, as defined in Sec 203, is encountered in Class 1 Excavation, and no pay item for Class 1 Excavation in Rock is included in the contract, payment for that material will be made per cubic yard at the fixed contract unit price specified in Sec 109.

206.6.3.2 If Class C Excavation material, as defined in Sec 203, is encountered in Class 2 Excavation and no pay item for Class 2 Excavation in Rock is included in the contract, payment for that material will be made per cubic yard at the fixed contract unit price specified in Sec 109.

206.6.3.3 If Class C Excavation material, as defined in Sec 203, is encountered in Class 3 Excavation and no pay item for Class 3 Excavation in Rock is included in the contract, payment for that material will be made per cubic yard at the fixed contract unit price specified in Sec 109.

206.6.3.4 If Class C Excavation material, as defined in Sec 203, is encountered in Class 4 Excavation and no pay item for Class 4 Excavation in Rock is included in the contract, payment for that material will be made per cubic yard at the fixed unit price specified in Sec 109.

206.6.4 No direct payment will be made for placing porous backfill at weepholes in accordance with Sec 206.4.11, or for backfilling the structure.

206.6.5 The accepted quantities of excavation for structures and porous backfill will be paid for at the contract unit price for each of the pay items included in the contract.

206.6.6 All costs for furnishing material, labor or equipment, construction, dewatering, drainage, and any other incidental work necessary to complete cofferdam construction; and subsequent removal of any cofferdams, berms, diversions, and any other features constructed for cofferdams as identified by the engineer will be considered completely covered in the contract unit price per lump sum per bent, regardless of construction method. Payment for Class 1 Excavation and/or Class 2 Excavation will be limited to the volume defined in Sec 206.5. No additional payment for excavation will be made for a contractor proposed method of cofferdam construction.

206.6.7 All costs for furnishing material, labor, equipment, construction, drainage and other incidental work necessary to complete temporary shoring construction; and subsequent removal of any temporary shoring, berms, diversions, and any other features as identified by the engineer will be considered completely covered in the contract unit price per lump sum regardless of construction method.

206.6.8 No direct payment will be made for removing existing structures within the limits of excavation for structures. Existing headwalls or culvert concrete to be removed will be paid for as removal of improvements for roadway culverts or partial removal of culvert concrete for bridge culverts.

206.6.9 Payment for seal courses other than those on the plans will be made only with written authorization from the engineer.

206.6.10 Any material excavated in cleaning out culverts will be paid for at the contract unit price per each structure. However, only the initial excavation will be paid for, and any subsequent cleaning required prior to final acceptance shall be done at the contractor's expense. No additional payment will be made for the video inspection, when required.

SECTION 209
SUBGRADE PREPARATION

209.1 Description. This work shall consist of preparing the subgrade upon which a base course is to be constructed or a surfacing placed as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer. After a base course has been constructed, the top of the completed base course will be considered the subgrade for the next operation. In surfacing contracts involving only incidental grading, the contractor shall complete subgrade compaction in accordance with Sec 210 before proceeding with this work.

209.2 Construction Requirements. The subgrade shall be substantially uniform in density throughout the entire width of the subgrade. The subgrade shall be constructed to drain surface water to the side ditches and all ditches shall be kept open by the contractor. Where hauling results in ruts or other objectionable irregularities, the contractor shall reshape and reroll the subgrade before the base or surfacing is placed. If an old roadway comprises any part of the roadbed, the contractor shall loosen the compacted portions to a depth of at least 6 inches and shall reshape the roadbed.

209.2.1 All subgrade shall be rolled. The subgrades shall be checked after rolling and, if not at the proper elevation at all points, sufficient material shall be removed or added and compacted to bring all portions of the subgrade to the required elevation and density. The moisture content of the top 6 inches of the finished subgrade at the time the base is placed, or at the time pavement is placed if no base is provided under the pavement, shall be no less than the minimum specified for compacting in Sec 203.5.3. If the moisture content has not been maintained, the subgrade shall be scarified, wet to the required moisture content and compacted. A maximum deviation of 1/2 inch, plus or minus, from the required elevation will be permitted on the surface of the finished subgrade.

209.2.2 Soft spots shall be removed to a maximum depth of 24 inches and backfilled with approved stable material. Unsuitable material shall be removed and backfilled in accordance with Sec 203.4.5.

209.2.3 The subgrade shall be compacted and brought to true shape. Any material added shall be satisfactorily incorporated and compacted. Care shall be taken in forming the crown and shaping the subgrade to ensure that the specified thickness of pavement will be attained. The finished concrete pavement subgrade at the time of paving shall be moist, but sufficiently firm to resist rutting or deforming under construction traffic.

209.3 Basis of Payment. No direct payment will be made for subgrade preparation.

SECTION 210
SUBGRADE COMPACTION

210.1 Description. This work shall consist of compacting the earth subgrade on the roadbed of a previously graded roadway. This work shall be performed prior to any work under Sec 209. The contractor shall perform this work on the subgrade at all locations specified by the engineer. Tentative locations of subgrade compaction will be shown in the plans, but the engineer will specify all locations and depths of this work by written order. No contract adjustment will be made for the direct or indirect costs, incidental or consequential costs, or effects of any overrun, or partial or complete underrun.

210.2 Construction Requirements.

210.2.1 The subgrade for the full width of the roadbed shall be scarified to a depth of at least 6 inches, and the scarified material shall be brought to a uniform moisture content either by drying or by adding water and manipulating. At the contractor's option, the upper 6 inches of soil may be removed and replaced with satisfactory material, or removed and manipulated before replacing. The material shall be compacted to the required density and within the moisture contents specified under Sec 203.5.

210.2.2 If it is determined that the required subgrade density cannot be obtained by moisture control and compaction of the upper 6 inches, the unsuitable material shall be excavated to a maximum depth of 18 inches, and replaced with satisfactory material compacted in layers not to exceed 6 inches, except as otherwise permitted by the engineer. Each 6-inch layer shall be processed, wetted or dried as necessary, and compacted to the required density.

210.2.3 If the contractor’s operations cause an unsatisfactory subgrade, the contractor shall restore the subgrade to a satisfactory condition at the contractor's expense.

210.3 Method of Measurement. Measurement will be made to the nearest 1/10 station along the centerline of each roadbed, regardless of width, for each depth of compaction authorized and totaled to the nearest 100 feet for the sum of all segments. For the purpose of measurement, a divided highway will be considered as having two roadbeds. Measurement of ramps will be made from the ramp’s gore point.

210.4 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantity of subgrade compaction, 6-inch depth, will be paid for at the contract unit price. Subgrade compaction to a depth of 12 inches will be paid for at the rate of two times the contract unit price for subgrade compaction, 6-inch depth. Subgrade compaction to a depth of 18 inches will be paid for at the rate of three times the contract unit price for subgrade compaction, 6-inch depth.

SECTION 212
SUBGRADING AND SHOULDERING

212.1 Description.

212.1.1 Subgrading and Shouldering, Class 1, shall consist of preparing the earth subgrade for surfacing and shoulders by fine-grading, and shaping the existing roadbed of a previously graded roadway and shaping fillslopes, inslopes and ditches as required to complete a finished roadway in accordance with the typical section shown on the plans.

212.1.2 Subgrading and Shouldering, Class 2, in addition to the above, shall include the construction and final shaping of earth shoulders.

212.2 Construction Requirements.

212.2.1 Subgrading and shouldering will normally be restricted to the roadway from ditch to ditch or to the roadbed and upper portions of fill slopes. All ditches shall be graded to drain. The median, if any, shall be shaped to conform to the typical section. If oversize rock in the subgrade cannot be removed by scarifying, compensation for additional work will be made in accordance with Sec 104.3. No work will be required on backslopes, except that necessary to blend the lower portion of the existing backslope with the regraded ditch. The work on fillslopes shall be confined to the upper 10 feet of the slope, measured along the slope line.

212.2.2 If the subgrade has less density than that required under Sec 203.5, the engineer may order the item of Subgrade Compaction to be performed. When lack of satisfactory density results from improper maintenance by the contractor, the subgrade density shall be restored at the contractor's expense. Earth shoulders shall be constructed in accordance with Sec 203.4.1.2.

212.2.3 Finishing of ditches, side slopes, cuts and fills shall be to a reasonably smooth and uniform surface that will merge with the adjacent slopes. Finishing by hand methods will not be required, except that all brush, weeds, excess mud and silt or other debris shall be removed from all channels and culverts within the scope of the work in accordance with Sec 104.11, even though such structures are used in place.

212.2.4 Any additional material required to complete the subgrade or shoulders to proper grade and section shall be obtained from within the right of way limits as directed by the engineer. Excess excavation shall be used for widening shoulders on fill sections or shall be wasted within the limits of the right of way as directed by the engineer.

212.3 Method of Measurement. Measurement of Subgrading and Shouldering, Class 1 and Class 2, will be made to the nearest 100 feet along the centerline of each roadbed, regardless of width. For the purpose of measurement, a divided highway will be considered as having two roadbeds. Measurement of ramps will be made from the ramp’s gore point.

212.3.1 Subgrading and Shouldering, Class 1 and Class 2, will apply only to those sections that have been specifically designated as such on the plans and the class will not be subject to change during construction.

212.4 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantity of subgrading and shouldering will be paid for at the contract unit price.

212.4.1 No direct payment will be made for minor drifting of excavated material or for any additional material required. If additional material is required to be hauled approximately 1000 feet or more to complete the work, compensation will be made in accordance with Sec 104.3.

212.4.2 The repair of major erosion beyond the limits as described in Sec 212.2.1 will be paid for in accordance with Sec 104.3.

Back to Table of Contents

SECTION 304
AGGREGATE BASE COURSE

304.1 Description. This work shall consist of furnishing and placing one or more courses of aggregate on a prepared subgrade in accordance with these specifications, and as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer. The type of aggregate to be used will be specified in the contract.

304.2 Material. Material for Type 1, 5 and 7 aggregate bases shall be crushed stone or reclaimed asphalt or concrete which meet the requirements of Sec 1007.

304.3 Construction Requirements.

304.3.1 Field Laboratory. When authorized by the engineer, the contractor shall provide a Type 2 field laboratory in accordance with Sec 601. Payment for the laboratory will be made in accordance with Sec 601.

304.3.2 Subgrade. All work on that portion of subgrade on which the base is to be constructed shall be completed in accordance with Sec 209.2.1 prior to placing any base material on that portion. Aggregate base shall not be placed on frozen subgrade.

304.3.3 Placing.

304.3.3.1 The contractor shall place base material on the roadbed as shown in the contract documents. The maximum compacted thickness of any one layer shall not exceed 6 inches. If the specified compacted depth of the base course exceeds 6 inches, the base shall be constructed in two or more layers of approximately equal thickness. The compacted depth of a single layer of the base course may be increased to 8 inches for shoulders.

304.3.3.2 Types 1 and 5 aggregate base used for shoulders adjacent to rigid or flexible type pavement, including pavement resurfacing, shall be simultaneously deposited and spread on the subgrade. Aggregate shall not be deposited on the pavement and bladed or dozed into place.

304.3.4 Shaping and Compacting. Each layer shall be compacted to the specified density or dynamic cone penetration index value before another layer is placed.

304.3.4.1 Segregated surface areas constructed of Type 1 aggregate base may be corrected by adding and compacting limestone screenings of such gradation and quantity as required to fill the surface voids, and firmly bind the loose material in place. Screenings used in correcting segregated surface areas will be measured and paid for as base material. Type 5 and Type 7 aggregate bases are intended to provide some drainage and shall not be segregated. Trimmed Type 5 and 7 aggregate base may not be reused until the material is verified as meeting the required specifications. Base material contaminated to the extent that the material no longer complies with the specifications shall be removed and replaced with satisfactory material at the contractor's expense.

304.3.4.2 Type 1 aggregate base used for shoulders shall be compacted to a minimum 95 percent of standard maximum density. Type 1 aggregate base used on other than shoulders shall be compacted to no less than standard maximum density. Type 5 aggregate base under both roadway and shoulders shall be compacted to a minimum 95 percent of standard maximum density. The Standard Compaction Test will be conducted in accordance with AASHTO T 99, Method C. Field density will be determined in accordance with AASHTO T 191 or AASHTO T 310, Direct Transmission, for wet density. The volume of the test hole may be reduced as necessary to accommodate available testing equipment. If nuclear density test methods are used, moisture content will be determined in accordance with AASHTO T 310, except a moisture correction factor will be determined for each aggregate in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 35. In lieu of the density requirements for Type 1 aggregate base used for shoulders with thicknesses less than 4 inches, the aggregate shall be compacted by a minimum of three complete coverages with a 5 ton roller. Rolling shall be continued until there is no visible evidence of further consolidation.

304.3.4.3 Type 7 aggregate base under both roadway and shoulders shall be compacted to achieve an average dynamic cone penetration index value through the base lift thickness less than or equal to 0.4 inches per blow, as determined by a standard dynamic cone penetrometer (DCP) device with a 17.6 lb hammer meeting the requirements of ASTM D6951.

304.3.4.3.1 Water shall be applied to the Type 7 base material during the mixing and spreading operations so that at the time of compaction the moisture content is not less than 5 percent of the dry weight.

304.3.4.3.2 Type 7 base shall be tested with the DCP within 24 hours of placement and final compaction.

304.3.4.4 If at any time the compacted aggregate base or subgrade becomes unstable, the contractor, at the contractor's expense, shall restore the earth subgrade and the aggregate base to the required grade, cross section and density.

304.3.5 Substitutions for Aggregate Base. If available, the contractor may substitute bituminous pavement cold millings or crushed recycled concrete in lieu of aggregate base for any temporary surface, regardless of the type or thickness of aggregate shown on the plans. If this option is exercised, the contractor shall notify the engineer at least two weeks prior to using the millings or recycled concrete, and shall identify the location from where the millings or concrete will be removed. The millings or recycled concrete shall be installed to the same dimensions shown on the plans for the aggregate base. Millings or recycled concrete shall be placed in maximum 4-inch lifts, and each lift shall be compacted by a minimum of three passes with a 10-ton roller.

304.3.6 Maintenance. The contractor shall maintain, at the contractor's expense, the required density and surface condition of any portion of the completed aggregate base until either the prime coat or a succeeding course or pavement is placed. If a prime coat is specified in the contract, the contractor will be required to apply the prime coat on any completed portion of the aggregate base as soon as practical, or as otherwise specified. The contractor will not be permitted to apply prime if the moisture in the top 2 inches of the Type 1 or 5 aggregate base exceeds the higher of either (1) the average of the optimum moisture as determined by the Standard Compaction Test and the absorption of the plus No. 4 fraction, or (2) two-thirds of the optimum moisture as determined by the Standard Compaction Test.

304.4 Quality Control/Quality Assurance (QC/QA).

304.4.1 Quality Control. The contractor shall control operations to ensure the aggregate base, in place, meets the specified requirements for density, thickness, gradation, deleterious, and plasticity index. Tests shall be taken at random locations designated by the engineer at the following frequency:

Tested Property	Test Method	Contractor Frequency	Engineer Frequency
Density	AASHTO T 191 or AASHTO T 310	1 per 1000 tons, minimum of 1 per day	1 per 4,000 tons, minimum of 1 per project
Dynamic Cone Penetrometer Index Value (for Type 7 base)	ASTM D6951	1 per 1000 tons, minimum of 1 per day	1 per 4,000 tons, minimum of 1 per project
Thickness	Applicable method meeting engineer's approval	1 per 1000 tons, minimum of 1 per day	1 per 4,000 tons, minimum of 1 per project
Gradation and Deleterious Material[a]	AASHTO T 11, AASHTO T 27 and MoDOT Test Method TM 71	1 per 2000 tons, minimum of 1 per day[b]	1 per 8,000 tons, minimum of 1 per project
Plasticity Index[a]	AASHTO T 89 and AASHTO T 90	1 per 10,000 tons, minimum of 1 per project	1 per 40,000 tons, minimum of 1 per project

[a]Sampled at point of delivery, prior to rolling.
[b]When production for a week is anticipated to be 1,000 tons or less, the contractor may test the material at a frequency of 1 per 250 tons or 1 per week, whichever occurs first.

304.4.1.1 The contractor shall provide copies of the test results, including all raw data, to the engineer the next business day following testing or sampling.

304.4.1.2 The contractor or the contractor's representative shall also determine the standard maximum dry density and the optimum moisture content for Type 1 and 5 base material and the dry weight for Type 7 base material and supply all test data to the engineer.

304.4.1.3 When density or DCP index value tests are less than specified or when thickness measurements indicate the thickness is deficient by more than 1/2 inch from the plan thickness, additional measurements will be taken at 100-foot intervals parallel to centerline ahead and behind the tested location until the extent of the deficiency has been determined. Each measurement will be assumed as representative of the base thickness for a distance extending one-half the distance to the next measurement, measured along centerline, or in the case of a beginning or ending measurement, the distance will extend to the end of the base section. Any deficient areas shall be corrected by reworking or adding material within the limits of the deficiency.

304.4.1.4 When two consecutive tests for gradation, deleterious material, or plasticity index do not meet the specification limits, the material shall be removed beginning at the point where the first test was conducted.

304.4.1.5 The contractor shall retain the untested portion of the plasticity index, gradation and deleterious sample for the engineer's use.

304.4.2 Quality Assurance. The contractor's QC test results and the engineer's QA test results shall meet the specifications and the following. For Type 1 and 5 base the contractor's compaction standard tests shall compare within 3.0 pounds of the maximum density of the MoDOT determined compaction standard. For Type 7 base the contractor's average DCP penetration index shall compare within 0.1 inches per blow of the MoDOT determined average penetration index. For retained samples, the contractor's test results and the engineer's test results shall compare within the following limits:

(a) The total deleterious material shall be within 2.0 percentage points.

(b) The plasticity index shall be within 2.

(c) The gradation test results shall compare within the following limits:

Sieve	Tolerance (%)
1 1/2-inch	± 5.0
1-inch	± 5.0
3/4-inch	± 5.0
1/2-inch	± 5.0
No. 4	± 4.0
No. 8	± 4.0
No. 10	± 3.0
No. 30	± 3.0
No. 40	± 2.0
No. 100	± 2.0
No. 200	± 1.0

304.4.3 Small Quantities. Small quantities are less than 50 ton, and will apply to individual projects, individual projects in combination contracts or projects with short discontinuous sections. The following acceptance procedures shall be used:

(a) QC/QA tests for gradation, deleterious material, plasticity index, density and DCP index will not be required.

(b) Each list will be compacted by a minimum of three complete coverages with a 5-ton roller until there is no visible evidence of further consolidation.

(c) Acceptance will be based on visual inspection of each compacted lift by the engineer.

In lieu of this section, the contractor has the option of electing in the QC Plan to use all testing frequencies in accordance with Sec 304.4.1 for each separate aggregate base course type qualifying as a small quantity.

304.5 Method of Measurement. Final measurement of the completed aggregate base course will not be made except for authorized changes during construction, or where appreciable errors are found in the contract quantity. Measurement will include aggregate course placed under curb and gutter. Where required, measurement of aggregate base course, complete in place, will be made to the nearest square yard . Where the aggregate base course extends to the inslope of the shoulder, the pay limit of the aggregate base course will be measured from the mid-point of the sloped portion. The revision or correction will be computed and added to or deducted from the contract quantity.

304.6 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantities of aggregate base course of the thickness and type specified will be paid for at the contract unit price for each of the pay items included in the contract. Payment will be considered full compensation for water used in performing this work. When bituminous pavement cold millings or recycled crushed concrete are substituted for aggregate base, payment will be made for the aggregate base quantity provided in the plans, regardless of whether millings, recycled crushed concrete or the aggregate base is used. Payment will be considered full compensation for hauling of millings, cold milling operations, and all other material or labor necessary to substitute bituminous pavement millings for aggregate base.

SECTION 401
PLANT MIX BITUMINOUS BASE AND PAVEMENT

401.1 Description. This work shall consist of a bituminous mixture placed, spread and compacted as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer.

401.2 Material.

401.2.1 The grade of asphalt binder will be specified in the contract. When the plasticity index on individual aggregate fractions with 10 percent or more passing the No. 30 sieve exceeds 3, a moisture susceptibility test shall be required in accordance with Sec 401.4.5 during the mix design process. If the plasticity index exceeds that of the material approved for the mix design, additional testing may be required. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section
Coarse Aggregate	1004.2
Fine Aggregate	1002.3
Mineral Filler	1002.4
Hydrated Lime	1002.5
Asphalt Binder, Performance Graded (PG)	1015

401.2.2 Reclaimed Asphalt. Reclaimed Asphalt may be obtained from Reclaimed Asphalt Pavement (RAP) and Reclaimed Asphalt Shingles (RAS). The asphalt binder content of recycled asphalt materials shall be determined in accordance with AASHTO T 164, ASTM D 2172 or other approved method of solvent extraction. A correction factor for use during production may be determined for binder ignition by burning a sample in accordance with AASHTO T 308 and subtracting from the binder content determined by extraction.

The use of reclaimed asphalt shall be limited to one of the following options with the exception of bituminous base. For bituminous base the limits specified may be increased according to the recycled materials used as follows; 10% for RAP only, 5% for RAS only and 10% for the appropriate RAP and RAS combination.

Binder	Percent Effective Virgin Binder Replacement		
	RAP	RAS	RAP and RAS combination
Contract Grade Virgin Binder shall be used	0 - 20	0 -10	RAP + (2*RAS) ≤ 20
Virgin Binder shall be Softened One Grade[a]	21 - 40	11 - 20	20 < RAP + (2*RAS) ≤ 40
Blend Chart[b]	0 - 100	N/A	N/A
Extraction and Grading of Binder from final Mixture[c]	0 - 100		

[a]The virgin binder shall have a low temperature grade 6 degrees lower than the binder grade specified in the contract. Lowering the high temperature of the virgin binder is not required; however, if lowered, the virgin binder shall have a high temperature grade no lower than 6 degrees below the binder grade specified in the contract. (Ex. Contract grade PG 64-22; virgin binder could be either PG 58-28 or PG 64-28). The Pressure Aging Vessel (PAV) test temperature (AASHTO M320) shall be tested at 19° C, regardless of the high temperature grade of the selected virgin binder

[b]Testing in accordance with AASHTO M323 including raw data shall be included with the mix design which demonstrates that the grade of the combine mixture meets the contract requirements.

[c]Testing in accordance with either AASHTO T319, or AASHTO T164 and R59 along with grading in accordance with AASHTO M320 including raw data shall be included with the mixt design which demonstrates that the grade of the combine mixture and rejuvenator, if applicable, meets the contract requirements.

401.2.2.1 Reclaimed Asphalt Pavement. Reclaimed Asphalt Pavement (RAP) may be used in any Sec 401, Plant Mix Bituminous Base and Pavement. All RAP material, except as noted below, shall be tested in accordance with AASHTO T 327, Method of Resistance of Coarse Aggregate Degradation by Abrasion in the Micro-Deval Apparatus. Aggregate shall have the asphalt coating removed either by extraction or binder ignition during production. The material shall be tested in the Micro-Deval apparatus at a frequency of once per 1500 tons. The percent loss shall not exceed the Micro-Deval loss of the combined virgin material by more than five percent. Micro-Deval testing will be waived for RAP material obtained from MoDOT roadways. All RAP material shall be in accordance with Sec 1002 for deleterious and other foreign material. The aggregate specific gravity shall be determined by performing AASHTO T 209 in accordance with Sec 403.19.3.1.2 and calculating the G_{se} to which a 0.98 correction factor will be applied in order to determine G_{sb} as follows:

$$G_{se} = \frac{100 - P_b}{\frac{100}{G_{mm}} - \frac{P_b}{G_b}}$$

RAP G_{sb} = RAP G_{se} X 0.98

See Sec 401.4.4.1 for mixes containing more than 40% effective binder replacement from reclaimed asphalt.

401.2.2.2 Reclaimed Asphalt Shingles. Reclaimed Asphalt Shingles (RAS) may be used in any mixture specified to use PG 64-22 in accordance with AASHTO PP 53. In addition, shingles shall be ground to 3/8-inch minus. Waste, manufacturer or new, shingles shall be essential free of deleterious materials. Post-consumer RAS shall not contain more than 1.5 percent wood by weight or more than 3.0 percent total deleterious by weight. Post-consumer RAS shall be certified to contain less than the maximum allowable amount of asbestos as defined by national or local standards. The bulk specific gravity of RAS used in the job mix formula shall be 2.600.

RAS G_{sb} = 2.600

See Sec 401.4.4.1 for mixes containing more than 40% effective binder replacement from reclaimed asphalt.

The gradation of the aggregate may be determined by solvent extraction of the binder or using the following as a standard gradation:

Shingle Aggregate Gradation	
Sieve Size	**Percent Passing by Weight**
3/8 in.	100
No. 4	95
No. 8	85
No. 16	70
No. 30	50
No. 50	45
No. 100	35
No. 200	25

401.2.2.3 Rejuvenators. Rejuvenators may be used in any asphalt mixture containing recycled material. When a rejuvenator is used for the purpose of softening the binder grade, the requirements for the Extraction and Grading of Binder from Final Mixture option in Sec 401.2.2 must be satisfied.

401.3 Composition of Mixtures. Aggregate sources shall be from the specific ledge or combination of ledges within a quarry, or processed aggregate from a particular product, as submitted in the mix design. The total aggregate prior to mixing with asphalt binder shall be in accordance with the following gradation requirements:

Sieve Size	**Percent Passing by Weight**			
	Base	**BP-1**	**BP-2**	**BP-3**

1 inch	100	100	100	100
3/4 inch	85-100	100	100	100
1/2 inch	60-90	85-100	95-100	100
3/8 inch	---	---	---	100
No. 4	35-65	50-70	60-90	90-100
No. 8	25-50	30-55	40-70	---
No. 16	---	---	---	30-60
No. 30	10-35	10-30	15-35	---
No. 200	4-12	5-12	5-12	7-12

401.4 Job Mix Formula. At least 30 days prior to placing any mixture on the project, the contractor shall submit a mix design for verification and approval by Construction and Materials. The mixture shall be designed in accordance with Asphalt Institute Publication MS-2, Mix Design Methods for Asphalt Concrete and Other Hot-Mix Types. The mixture shall be compacted and tested at a minimum of three asphalt contents separated by a maximum of 0.5 percent in accordance with AASHTO T 245, except as herein noted. The test method shall be modified by short-term aging the specimens in accordance with AASHTO R 30. A detailed description of the mix design process shall be included with the job mix formula. Representative samples of each ingredient for the mixture shall be submitted with the mix design. Aggregate fractions shall be in accordance with the same proportions as the proposed job mix formula. A minimum of 150 pounds will be required for any individual fraction. The amount of each ingredient submitted shall be as follows for each mix design to be verified:

Ingredient	Minimum Amount
Aggregate	300 lbs
Hydrated Lime, Mineral Filler and/or Baghouse Fines	20 lbs
Asphalt Binder	10 gal.

401.4.1 Mixture Design. Laboratories that participate and achieve a score of 3 or greater in the AASHTO proficiency sample program for T 11, T 27, T 84, T 85, T 166, T 209, T 308 and T 245 or T 312 will have the mixture verification process waived. The mix design shall be submitted to Construction and Materials for approval at least seven days prior to mixture production.

401.4.2 Required Information. The mix design shall include raw data from the design process and shall contain the following information:

(a) All possible sources intended for use, and grade and specific gravity of asphalt binder.

(b) Source, type (formation, etc.), ledge number(s) if applicable, gradation, and percent chert of each aggregate fraction.

(c) Plasticity index of each aggregate fraction which has 10 percent or more passing the No. 30 sieve.

(d) Bulk and apparent specific gravities and absorption of each aggregate fraction in accordance with AASHTO T 85 for coarse aggregate and AASHTO T 84 for fine aggregate, including all raw data, or in accordance with TM 81.

(e) Specific gravity of hydrated lime, mineral filler or baghouse fines, if used, in accordance with AASHTO T 100.

(f) Percentage of each aggregate component.

(g) Combined gradation of the job mix.

(h) Percent of asphalt binder, by weight, based on the total mixture.

(i) Bulk specific gravity (G_{mb}) by AASHTO T 166, Method A of a laboratory compacted mixture.

(j) Percent air voids (V_a) of the laboratory compacted specimen.

(k) Voids in the mineral aggregate (VMA) and voids in the mineral aggregate filled with asphalt binder (VFA).

(l) Theoretical maximum specific gravity (G_{mm}) as determined by AASHTO T 209 in accordance with Sec 403.19.3 after the sample has been short-term aged in accordance with AASHTO R 30.

(m) Mixing temperature and molding temperature.

(n) Bulk specific gravity (G_{mb}) of the combined aggregate.

(o) Percent deleterious content of the combine aggregate.

(p) Baghouse fines added for design. Provide the combine gradation with and without the baghouse percentage.

401.4.3 Mixture Approval. No mixture will be accepted for use until the job mix formula for the project is approved by Construction and Materials. The job mix formula approved for each mixture shall be in effect until modified in writing by the engineer. When unsatisfactory results or other conditions occur, or should a source of material be changed, a new job mix formula may be required. In lieu of a new laboratory design, mixtures requiring adjustment beyond the limits allowed in Sec 401.8.2 may be designed in the field based on characteristics of plant-produced mixture in accordance with Sec 401 and verified by Construction and Materials, which may require new aggregate characteristics.

401.4.4 Mixture Characteristics.

401.4.4.1 Base, BP-1, BP-2 and BP-3 mixtures shall have the following properties, when tested in accordance with AASHTO T 245 or AASHTO T 312. The number of blows with the compaction hammer shall be 35 or the number of gyrations shall be 35 with the gyratory compactor. BP-1 and BP-2 mixtures shall have between 60 and 80 percent of the VMA filled with asphalt binder and dust to effective binder ratio of 0.8 to 1.6. BP-3 mixtures shall be compacted with the gyratory compactor to 35 gyrations and shall have a minimum 75 percent of the VMA filled with asphalt binder and dust to effective binder ratio of 0.9 to 2.0.

Mix Type	Percent Air Voids	AASHTO T 245 Stability lb	Voids in Mineral Aggregate (VMA)[b]
BB	3.5	750	13.0[a]
BP-1	3.5	750	13.5
BP-2	3.5	750	14.0
BP-3	3.5	750	15.0

[a]Bituminous base mixtures that would require 12.0 percent VMA following Asphalt Institute MS-2 will have a minimum 12.0 percent requirement.
[b]If the effective virgin binder replacement from RAP, RAS, or any combination of RAP and RAS is greater than 40 percent; then the minimum VMA required shall be increased by 0.5.

401.4.4.2 When specified in the contract as BP-3NC, BP-3 mixtures containing limestone aggregate shall contain a minimum amount of non-carbonate aggregate as shown in the table below, or the aggregate blend shall have an acid-insoluble residue (A.I.R.), MoDOT Test Method TM 76, meeting the criteria of crushed non-carbonate material. The A.I.R. shall be determined on the minus No. 4 sieve. Non-carbonate aggregate shall have an A.I.R. of at least 85 percent insoluble residue.

Aggregate	Minimum Non-Carbonate by Volume
Limestone	20% Minus No. 4

Dolomite	No Requirement

401.4.5 Moisture Susceptibility. When required moisture susceptibility shall be tested in accordance with AASHTO T 283. The mixture shall have a tensile strength ratio (TSR) of 70 percent or greater when compacted to 3.7 inches with 7 ± 0.5 percent air voids. An approved anti-strip additive may be added to increase retained strength to a passing level. When testing is required by Sec 401.2.1 or Sec 401.9, the mixture shall be tested during production in accordance with Sec 403.19.

401.4.6 Time Limit. A mix design may be transferred to other projects for a period of three years from the original approval date provided satisfactory results are obtained during production and placement.

401.5 Gradation and Deleterious Content Control. The engineer shall be notified as soon as possible, but no later than 24 hours if a change is made to the cold feed settings, hot bin settings or the binder content. The contractor shall determine the mixture gradation at the frequency stated in Sec 401.8.1. The mixture gradation may be determined directly by using residual aggregate from the binder ignition process or by mathematical combination of the cold feed and recycled materials gradations. When the mathematical combination method is used, the RAS gradation shall be from the JMF and RAP gradation from the ignition or extraction residual aggregate. Mixtures as produced shall be subject to the following tolerances and controls:

(a) The maximum variations from the approved job-mix formula shall be within the tolerances as shown in the table below:

Sieve Size	Percent Passing by Weight	
	Tolerance	Action Limit
No. 8[a]	± 5.0	± 10.0
No. 200	± 2.0	± 4.0

[a] Use No. 16 sieve for BP-3

(b) The deleterious content of the material retained on the No. 4 sieve shall not exceed the limits specified in Sec 1004.2.

(c) The quantity of asphalt binder introduced into the mixer shall be the quantity specified in the job-mix formula. No changes shall be made to the quantity of asphalt binder without written approval from the engineer. The quantity of asphalt binder determined by tests on the final mixture shall not vary by more than - 0.3 to + 0.5 percent from the job-mix formula.

401.5.1 Sample Location. The gradations of the total aggregate will be determined from samples taken from the hot bins on batch-type plants or continuous mixing plants or from the composite cold feed belt on drum mix plants. The deleterious content of the total aggregate shall be determined from samples taken from the composite cold feed belt. When required, samples for plasticity index shall be taken from the stockpile. The RAP shall be sampled from the RAP feeding system on the asphalt plant. Samples for asphalt content determination may be taken at the plant.

401.5.2 Substitutions. At the option of the contractor and at no cost to the Commission, the contractor may use a Sec 401 mixture with a smaller nominal maximum size aggregate or an approved Sec 403 mixture, design level C, E, or F with the same or smaller nominal maximum size aggregate in lieu of any Sec 401 mixture. When a Sec 403 mixture is substituted, the layer thickness requirements of Sec 403 will apply. The gradation, asphalt content, deleterious, and density acceptance of the substituted mixture during production will be in accordance with Sec 401.

401.5.3 Commercial Mixture. If specified in the contract that an approved commercial mixture may be used, the contractor shall, at least seven days prior to the desired time of use, furnish a statement setting out the source and characteristics of the mixture proposed to be furnished. The statement shall include:

(a) The types and sources of aggregate, percentage range of each, and range of combined gradation.

(b) The percent and grade of asphalt binder.

(c) The mixing time and range of mixture temperature.

The plant shall be designed and operated to produce a uniform, thoroughly mixed material free from segregation. It will not be necessary for the plant to meet the requirements of Sec 404. A field laboratory will not be required. If the proposed mixture and plant are approved by the engineer, the component material and the mixture delivered will be accepted or rejected by visual inspection. The supplier shall furnish with the first truckload of each day's production, a certification that the material and mixture delivered are in conformance with the approved mixture. Upon completion of the work, a plant certification shall be furnished by the supplier for the total quantity delivered. The mixture shall be transported, placed and compacted in accordance with Sec 401.7. Without specific contract designation, an approved commercial mixture may be used in lieu of plant mix bituminous pavement or base course mixtures for work that is considered temporary construction and is to be maintained at the contractor's expense. Temporary construction will be defined as work that is to be removed prior to completion of the contract.

401.5.4 Moisture Content. The bituminous mixture, when sampled and tested in accordance with AASHTO T 329, shall contain no more than 0.5 percent moisture by weight of the mixture.

401.5.5 Contamination. The bituminous mixture shall not be contaminated with deleterious agents such as unburned fuel, objectionable fuel residue or any other material not inherent in the job mix formula.

401.6 Field Laboratory. The contractor shall provide a Type 3 field laboratory in accordance with Sec 601. The contractor may use the equipment provided in the Type 3 laboratory as long as adequate space is provided for the engineer’s work.

401.7 Construction Requirements.

401.7.1 Weather Limitations. Bituminous mixtures shall not be placed on any wet surface or frozen pavement. Temperatures shall be obtained in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 20.

401.7.2 Bituminous Mixing Plants. Bituminous mixing plants and preparation of material and mixtures shall be in accordance with Sec 404.

401.7.3 Subgrade or Surface Preparation. The subgrade upon which the bituminous mixture is to be placed shall be prepared in accordance with Sec 209 and primed as specified in the contract in accordance with Sec 408, as applicable. All material requirements of a tacked surface shall be in accordance with Sec 407.

401.7.3.1 Base Widening. For base widening work, the bottom of the trench shall be compacted until further consolidation is not visually evident, by use of a trench roller having a weight of no less than 300 psi of width of rear roller, or by mechanical tampers or other methods approved by the engineer. Suitable excavated material may be used in shouldering operations. On the outside of curves, the design depth of trench at the beginning of the superelevation transition shall be varied gradually to the minimum depth at the end of the superelevation transition. Slight transitioning of the width of the base widening will be necessary to permit the indicated angle of repose or shear angle outside of the ultimate edge of surface. The bottom of the trench shall in no case be less than 3 inches below the surface of the existing pavement. All surplus excavated material shall be disposed of by the contractor in areas to be secured by the contractor beyond the right of way limits. An acceptable written agreement with the property owner on whose property the material is placed shall be submitted to the engineer.

401.7.3.2 Application of Prime or Tack. Application of prime or tack shall be in accordance with Sec 403.12.

401.7.4 Hauling Equipment. Trucks used for hauling bituminous mixtures shall be in accordance with Sec 404.

401.7.5 Spreading. The base course, tacked or primed surface, or preceding course or layer shall be cleaned of all dirt, packed soil or any other foreign matter prior to spreading the bituminous mixture. The mixture shall be spread in the number of layers and in the quantity required to obtain the compacted thickness and cross section shown on the plans. When placing multiple layers with varying thicknesses, the thicker layer shall be placed first.

401.7.5.1 Irregularities. The mixture shall be spread without tearing the surface and struck off such that the surface is smooth and true to cross section, free from all irregularities, and of uniform density throughout. Care shall be used in handling the mixture to avoid segregation. Areas of segregated mixture shall be removed and replaced with a suitable mixture at the contractor’s expense. The outside edge alignment shall be uniform.

Irregularities shall be corrected by adding or removing mixture before compacting. In situations where there is a dispute in the existence of segregation, the area in question will be tested in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 75. Mixture production shall immediately cease if either criteria of MoDOT Test Method TM 75 fail. Segregated mixtures shall be removed and replaced to the limits determined by the engineer.

401.7.5.2 Leveling Course. If required by the contract, a leveling course consisting of a layer of variable thickness shall be spread to the desired grade and cross section to eliminate irregularities in the existing surface. Spot-leveling operations over small areas, with feather-edging at high points and ends of spot areas, may be required prior to placing the leveling course. Rigid control of the placement thickness of the leveling course will be required. The mixture shall be practically free from segregation.

401.7.5.3 Base Widening. The specified total thickness of base widening shall be completed to the adjacent traveled way elevation as shown on the plans. Additional thickness of base widening may be placed as required prior to coldmilling, at the contractor's expense, and shall subsequently be coldmilled to the same elevation as the traveled way, if conducive to expedite operations. On base-widening work, a succeeding layer of bituminous mixture may be placed the same day as the previous layer, if it can be shown that the desired results are being obtained. On small areas, and on areas that are inaccessible to mechanical spreading and finishing equipment, the mixture may be spread and finished by hand methods if permitted by the engineer. At least one lane of the existing pavement and the adjacent shoulder shall be kept open to traffic at all times during construction, except for short intervals when the movement of the contractor's equipment will seriously hinder the flow of traffic. Intervals during which the contractor will be allowed to halt traffic shall be as designated by the engineer. The contractor shall not open more trenches ahead of the first layer of the base widening than is necessary for placing that layer in one half a day's operations. The first layer of the base widening shall not be placed for a greater distance ahead of the second layer than is necessary for placing the second layer in one half a day's operations. The second layer shall not be placed for a greater distance ahead of the final layer than is necessary for placing the final layer in one day's operation. Any changes in these lengths shall be made only with written permission from the engineer.

401.7.5.4 Edge Differential. For roadways constructed under traffic, no pavement edge differential shall be left in place for more than seven days, unless approved by the engineer.

401.7.6 Joints. The minimum density of all traveled way pavement within 8 inches of a longitudinal joint, shall be no less than 2.0 percent below the specified density. The cores taken to evaluate this area shall be centered 6 inches from the longitudinal joint. If no deficient cores are found in the first 25 percent of production, the established rolling procedure may be used, at the direction of the engineer, in lieu of density tests provided no changes in the material, typical location or temperatures are made. Pay adjustments due to longitudinal joint density shall apply to the full width of the lane paved. Adjustments due to joint density shall apply to the day’s production from which the cores are obtained. Transverse joints shall be formed by cutting back on the previous run to expose the full depth of the layer. When a transverse vertical edge is to be left in place and opened to traffic, a temporary depth transition shall be constructed as approved by the engineer. The longitudinal joints in one layer shall offset those in the layer immediately below by approximately 6 inches. The joints in the final surface layer shall be at the lane lines of the traveled way, except that the placement width shall be adjusted such that pavement marking shall not fall on a longitudinal joint. Each side of the joint shall be flush and along true lines.

401.7.7 Surfaced Approaches. At locations designated in the contract or as specified by the engineer, approaches shall be primed in accordance with Sec 408 and surfaced with a plant mix bituminous mixture. The bituminous surface shall be placed as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer. Approaches shall not be surfaced before the surface course adjacent to the entrance is completed. No direct payment will be made for any work required to condition and prepare the subgrade on the approaches.

401.7.8 Compaction. The compacted mixture shall have a minimum density of 92 percent of the theoretical maximum specific gravity. Density will be determined by the direct transmission nuclear method in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 41 or by a specific gravity method. When the contractor elects to place a lift of mixture greater than six times the nominal maximum aggregate size, cores shall be cut in half and the density of each half determined separately. In lieu of density requirements, mixtures used for wedging, transitions, existing shoulder overlays, new shoulders constructed on a sub-grade or base that does not specify density control, temporary bypasses to be maintained at the expense of the contractor, and areas where a commercial mixture is used shall be thoroughly compacted by at least three complete coverage's over the entire area with either a pneumatic tire roller weighing no less than 10 tons, a tandem-type steel wheel roller weighing no less than 10

tons or an approved vibratory roller. Rolling shall be performed at proper time intervals on each layer and shall be continued until there is no visible evidence of further consolidation.

401.8 Quality Control. The contractor shall maintain equipment and qualified personnel to perform QC field inspection, sampling and testing in accordance with applicable portions of Sec 403. A QC Plan will not be required. A proposed third party for dispute resolution shall be included with the mix design submittal.

401.8.1 Mixture Testing. The contractor shall randomly test the mixture within the following frequencies. The gradation and the asphalt content shall be determined at least once every 1,000 tons of production or a minimum of once per day. Deleterious content shall be determined once per 5,000 tons unless quality concerns dictate more frequent testing as directed by the engineer. Gradation and asphalt content of RAP shall be determined once every 10,000 tons of production. If RAP is used and AASHTO T 308 is used to determine the asphalt content, the binder ignition oven shall be calibrated in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 77. At the engineer's discretion, testing may be waived when production does not exceed 200 tons per day. The contractor shall certify the proper proportions of a previously proven mixture were used.

401.8.2 Failing Test. If a, deleterious content, or asphalt content test result falls outside of the specification tolerances, a review or adjustment of the plant settings and production shall be made and another sample shall be immediately taken. If the second test falls outside of the specification tolerances, production shall be immediately ceased until the mixture can be brought back into specification. If a gradation test falls between the Tolerance and Action Limits, adjustments to plant shall be made and another gradation shall be taken immediately. Plant production for the following day shall not resume until the mixture is brought back into specification when the final gradation for the day is not within tolerance. If a gradation test falls outside the Action Limit, production shall cease until the mixture is brought back into specification.

401.8.3 Retained Samples. One half of the contractor's sample for gradation, deleterious content, and asphalt content and all cores shall be retained for the engineer. The contractor shall retain the samples for 7 days after testing has been completed and the results accepted by the engineer.

401.8.4 Pavement Testing. During construction, the engineer will designate as many tests as necessary to ensure that the course is being constructed of proper thickness, composition and density. Density of the roadway shall be determined by one core obtained by the contractor at a random location selected by the engineer for every 500 tons of production. The cores from each day's production will be averaged to determine acceptance. A joint density core shall be taken from the same transverse cross section as the mat core and alternate sides. The maximum theoretical density shown on the job mix formula shall be used for this determination. Minimum 4-inch diameter cores, shall be taken the full depth of the layer to be tested. Cores tested by AASHTO T 166 shall be in accordance with Sec 403.19.3.1.3. The contractor shall restore the surface from which samples have been taken immediately with the mixture under production or with a cold patch mixture acceptable to the engineer.

401.8.5 Density Adjustment. Payment for mixture placed at or below the required minimum density will be adjusted as follows:

Field Density Percent of Maximum Theoretical Density	Percent of Contract Unit Price[a]
91.5 or above	100%
91.0 to 91.4, inclusive	97%
90.5 to 90.9, inclusive	94%
90.0 to 90.4, inclusive	90%
89.5 to 89.9, inclusive	80%
Below 89.5	Remove and Replace

[a]When adjustments are necessary, the lower percent of the contract unit price of either the pavement or joint density adjustment will apply.

401.9 Quality Assurance. Acceptance tests for gradation, deleterious content and asphalt content will be performed by the engineer at a minimum rate of one independent sample per 4 QC samples. A favorable comparison will be considered when a QA test is within the specification tolerances. An acceptance test for plasticity index will be performed at a minimum rate of one per project by the engineer on an independent

sample taken during production. Initial testing will be performed the first week of production. When the plasticity index on an individual aggregate fraction is more than two percentage points above the value shown on the approved mix design, moisture susceptibility testing shall be required in accordance with Sec 401.4.5. At least once for every five days of production, a split of the contractor's sample will be tested. If the results of the split sample are not within five percent on all sieves above the No. 200, two percent on the No. 200, within the specification ranges on the deleterious content, and within 0.5 percent on the asphalt content from the contractor's results, another split sample will be taken jointly with the contractor and tested. If the second test results do not compare within the specification tolerances, production shall cease until the discrepancy is resolved. If the second test results compare within the above tolerances, production may continue. The engineer will retain one half of the plasticity index test and moisture susceptibility test for 7 days after testing is complete. Results of QA testing will be furnished to the contractor within 24 hours of obtaining the sample, with the exception of moisture susceptibility testing.

401.10 Surface Smoothness. The finish of the pavement surface shall be substantially free from waves or irregularities and shall be true to the established crown and grade. The pavement shall be thoroughly tested for smoothness by profiling or straightedging in accordance with Sec 610.

401.11 Defective Mixture. Any mixture showing an excess of bituminous material or that becomes loose and broken, mixed with dirt, or is in any way defective, shall be removed and replaced with a satisfactory mixture, which shall be immediately compacted to conform to the surrounding area.

401.12 Pavement Marking. If the contractor's work has obliterated existing pavement marking on resurfacing projects open to through traffic, the pavement marking shall be replaced at the contractor's expense in accordance with Sec 620.

401.13 Method of Measurement. Measurement will be in accordance with Sec 403.

401.14 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantities of plant mix bituminous pavement and base course will be paid for at the contract unit price for each of the pay items included in the contract. Payment for obtaining and delivering samples of compacted mixture from the base and replacement of the surface will be made per sample at the fixed contract unit price specified in Sec 109. No direct payment will be made for QC cores, excavating the trench for base widening, or for hauling and disposing of excess excavation material.

SECTION 402
PLANT MIX BITUMINOUS SURFACE LEVELING

402.1 Description. This work shall consist of placing, spreading and compacting a bituminous mixture as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer. Spot wedging will not be required.

402.2 Material. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section
Coarse Aggregate	1004.2
Fine Aggregate	1002.3
Mineral Filler	1002.4
Asphalt Binder, Performance Graded (PG)	1015.3

402.2.1 Asphalt Binder. The grade of asphalt binder will be specified in the contract.

402.2.2 Wet Bottom Boiler Slag. The contractor may furnish wet bottom boiler slag of approved quality in lieu of coarse aggregate specified in Sec 402.2. If wet bottom boiler slag is used, the slag shall meet the requirements for coarse aggregate, except that the percentage of wear specified in Sec 1004.2.1 will not apply.

402.2.3 Reclaimed Asphalt. Recycled asphalt materials may be used and shall be in accordance with Sec 401.2.2.

402.3 Composition of Mixture. Aggregate sources shall be from the specific ledge combination of ledges within a quarry, or processed aggregate from a particular product, as submitted in the mix design. The total aggregate prior to mixing with asphalt binder shall be in accordance with the following gradation requirements:

Plant Mix Bituminous Surface Leveling	
Sieve Size	**Percent Passing by Weight**
3/4 inch	100
1/2 inch	99-100
3/8 inch	90-100
No. 4	60-90
No. 8	40-70
No. 30	15-35
No. 200	5-12

BP-3 in accordance with Sec 401.3 is an allowable substitution.

402.3.1 Mixture Characteristics. Bituminous surface leveling mixture shall have the following properties, when tested in accordance with AASHTO T 245 or AASHTO T 312. The number of blows with the compaction hammer shall be 35 or the number of gyrations shall be 35 with the gyratory compactor. The mixture shall have a minimum voids filled with asphalt (VFA) of 75 percent. The dust to effective binder ratio shall be 0.8 to 1.6.

Percent Air Voids	AASHTO T 245 Stability lb	Voids in Mineral Aggregate (VMA)
3.5	750	14.5

402.4 Job Mix Formula. The mixture shall be in accordance with Sec 401.4.

402.5 Gradation and Deleterious Content Control. In producing mixture for the project, the plant shall be operated such that no deviations from the job mix formula are made. The contractor shall determine on a daily basis, at a minimum, the combined gradation and binder content if production exceeds 100 tons per day.

Gradation and asphalt content of RAP shall be determined once every 10,000 tons of production. Mixture as produced will be subject to the following tolerances and control:

(a) The total aggregate gradations shall be within the master range specified in Sec 402.3.

(b) Material passing the No. 200 sieve shall not vary from the job mix formula by more than ± 2.0 percentage points.

(c) The deleterious content of the material retained on the No. 4 sieve shall not exceed the limits specified in Sec 1004.2.

(d) If the plasticity index of any fraction exceeds that of the material approved for the mix design, additional testing may be required.

(e) The quantity of asphalt binder introduced into the mixer shall be that quantity specified in the job mix formula. No changes may be made to the quantity of asphalt binder specified in the job mix formula without written approval from the engineer. The quantity of asphalt binder determined by calculation or tests on the final mixture shall not vary more than - 0.3 to +0.5 percent from the job-mix formula.

402.6 Sample Location. The gradations of the total aggregate will be determined from samples taken from the hot bins on the batch-type plants, from the combined cold feed on dryer-drum plants or from aggregate residue from the ignition oven during production. The deleterious content of the total aggregate will be determined from the samples taken from the combined cold feed belt. Samples for plasticity index will be taken from the stockpile. The RAP shall be sampled from the RAP feeding system on the asphalt plant.

402.7 Moisture Content. The bituminous mixture, when sampled and tested in accordance with AASHTO T 329, shall contain no more than 0.5 percent moisture by weight of the mixture.

402.8 Contamination. The bituminous mixture shall not be contaminated with deleterious agents such as unburned fuel, objectionable fuel residue or any other material not inherent in the job mix formula.

402.9 Field Laboratory. The contractor shall provide a Type 3 field laboratory in accordance with Sec 601.

402.10 Construction Requirements.

402.10.1 Weather Limitations. Bituminous mixtures shall not be placed (1) when either the air temperature or the temperature of the surface on which the mixture is to be placed is below 50 F or (2) on any wet surface or frozen pavement. Temperatures shall be obtained in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 20.

402.10.2 Bituminous Mixing Plants. Bituminous mixing plants and preparation of material and mixtures shall be in accordance with Sec 404.

402.10.3 Application of Prime or Tack. Application of prime or tack coat shall be in accordance with Sec 403.12.

402.10.4 Hauling Equipment. Trucks used for hauling bituminous mixtures shall be in accordance with Sec 404.

402.10.5 Spreading. The existing surface shall be cleaned of all dirt, packed soil or any other foreign material prior to spreading the bituminous mixture. The mixture shall be spread in the quantity required to obtain the compacted thickness and cross section shown on the plans. The paver shall be operated at a speed that will give the best results. The rate of delivery of the mixture to the paver shall be coordinated to provide, where practical, a uniform rate of placement without intermittent operation of the paver. On small areas and on areas that are inaccessible to mechanical spreading and finishing equipment, the mixture may be spread and finished by hand methods when permitted by the engineer.

402.10.5.1 Irregularities. The mixture shall be spread without tearing the surface and struck off such that the surface is smooth and true to cross section, free from all irregularities and of uniform density throughout. Care shall be used in handling the mixture to avoid segregation. Areas of segregated mixture shall be removed and

replaced with suitable mixture. The outside edge alignment shall be uniform and any irregularities shall be corrected by adding or removing mixture before compacting.

402.10.5.2 Pavement Edge Differential. No pavement edge differential shall be left in place for more than seven days, without written approval from the engineer.

402.10.6 Joints. Transverse joints shall be formed by cutting back on the previous run to expose the full depth of the layer. When a transverse vertical edge is to be left and opened to traffic, a temporary depth transition shall be built as approved by the engineer. The longitudinal joint shall be at the lane lines of the traveled way except that the placement width of bituminous surface may be adjusted such that temporary raised pavement markers will not fall on a longitudinal joint. Each side of the joint shall be flush and along true lines.

402.10.7 Compaction. The mixture shall be thoroughly compacted by at least three complete coverages over the entire area with either a pneumatic tire roller or a tandem-type steel wheel roller each weighing no less than 10 tons. All rollers used shall be in satisfactory condition, capable of reversing without backlash, and steel wheel rollers shall be equipped with scrapers. Rollers shall have a system for moistening each roll or wheel. Rolling shall begin as soon after spreading the mixture as the new surface will bear the weight of the roller without undue displacement. Final rolling shall be done by the steel wheel roller. Rolling shall be performed at proper time intervals and shall be continued until there is no visible evidence of further consolidation and until all roller marks are eliminated.

402.10.8 Surface Condition. The surface of the mixture after compaction shall be smooth and uniform. Any mixture showing an excess of asphalt binder or that becomes loose and broken, mixed with dirt or is in any way defective shall be removed and replaced at the contractor's expense with a satisfactory mixture, which shall be immediately compacted to conform to the surrounding area.

402.10.9 Hauling Over Completed Surface. Hauling of plant mix bituminous mixture over any completed portion of the project will not be permitted unless allowed by special provision.

402.11 Method of Measurement. The weight of the mixture will be determined from the batch weights if a batch-type plant is used. If other types of plants are used, the weight of the mixture will be determined by weighing each truck load on scales in accordance with Sec 310. Measurement will be made to the nearest 0.1 ton for the total tonnage of material accepted.

402.12 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantities of plant mix bituminous surface leveling will be paid for at the contract unit price for each of the pay items included in the contract.

SECTION 403
ASPHALTIC CONCRETE PAVEMENT

403.1 Description. This work shall consist of providing a bituminous mixture to be placed in one or more courses on a prepared base or underlying course as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer. The contractor shall be responsible for QC of the bituminous mixture, including the design, and control of the quality of the material incorporated into the project. The engineer will be responsible for QA, including testing, to assure the quality of the material incorporated into the project.

403.1.1 Naming Convention. The nomenclature of Superpave bituminous mixture names, such as SP125CLP, will be as follows. When only the aggregate size is shown, such as SP125, the specifications shall apply to all variations of that size, such as SP125B, SP125C, SP125CLP, etc. When "x" is indicated, such as SP125xLP, specifications shall apply to all variations of mixture designs. Stone Matrix Asphalt will be generally referred to as SMA and designated by SM or SMR.

Superpave Nomenclature	
SP	**Superpave**
048	4.75mm (No. 4) nominal aggregate size
095	9.5 mm (3/8 inch) nominal aggregate size
125	12.5 mm (1/2 inch) nominal aggregate size
190	19.0 mm (3/4 inch) nominal aggregate size
250	25.0 mm (1 inch) nominal aggregate size
x	Mixture design: B, C, E or F (as described below)
LP	Limestone porphyry (when designated)
SM	Stone Matrix Asphalt (when designated)
SMR	Stone Matrix Asphalt limestone/non-carbonate (when designated)

403.1.2 Design Levels. The following cumulative equivalent single axle loads (ESALs) shall be used for the specified mix design. The same size aggregate mix design at a higher design traffic may be substituted at the contractor's expense for the contract specified mixture design with the approval from the engineer. Substitutions shall be done uniformly and project mixing of various designs for the same work will not be permitted. For example, an SP125B mixture may be substituted for an SP125C mixture, or SP190C for SP190E, etc. Mixture design substitution will be limited to one design level higher than that specified in the contract.

Design Traffic (ESALs)	Design
< 300,000	F
300,000 to < 3,000,000	E
3,000,000 to < 30,000,000	C
≥ 30,000,000	B

403.2 Material. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follow:

Item	Section
Aggregate	1002
Asphalt Binder, Performance Graded (PG)[a]	1015
Fiber Additive	1071
Anti-Strip Additive	1071

[a]The grade of asphalt binder will be specified in the contract.

403.2.1 Fine Aggregate Angularity. Fine aggregate angularity (FAA) shall be measured on the fine portion of the blended aggregate. When tested in accordance with AASHTO T 304 Method A, aggregate particles passing

the No. 8 sieve shall meet the following criteria for the minimum percent air voids in loosely compacted fine aggregate:

Design	FAA
F	--[a]
E	40
C	45
B	45

[a]For SP048 Mixtures the FAA shall be a minimum of 40.

403.2.2 Coarse Aggregate Angularity. Coarse aggregate angularity (CAA) shall be measured on the coarse portion of the blended aggregate. When tested in accordance with ASTM D 5821, the coarse aggregate shall meet the following criteria. Crushed limestone, dolomite, steel slag and porphyry will be considered as having 100 percent two fractured faces unless visual observations indicate an undesirable particle shape is being produced.

Design	CAA[a]
F	55/None
E	75/None
C	95/90
B	100/100

[a]The criteria denotes the minimum allowable percentage of the coarse aggregate with "one/two" fractured faces, such as a "95/90" requirement, means that the coarse aggregate shall have a minimum of 95 percent particles by weight with one fractured face and a minimum of 90 percent particles by weight with two fractured faces.

403.2.3 Clay Content. When tested in accordance with AASHTO T 176, blended aggregate particles passing the No. 4 sieve shall meet the following minimum sand equivalent criteria:

Design	Sand Equivalent
F	40
E	40
C	45
B	50

403.2.4 Thin, Elongated Particles. For all mixtures except SMA, the blended aggregate particles retained on the No. 4 sieve shall not exceed 10 percent, based on a ratio of 5:1 when tested for flat and elongated particles in accordance with ASTM D 4791.

403.2.5 Stone Matrix Asphalt. In addition to other requirements, material for SMA mixtures shall meet the following. Coarse aggregate shall consist of crushed limestone and either porphyry or steel slag in accordance with the quality requirements of Sec 1002, except as follows. The Los Angeles (LA) abrasion, when tested in accordance with AASHTO T 96, shall not exceed 40 percent based on initial ledge approval and source approval. The percent absorption, when tested in accordance with AASHTO T 85, shall not exceed 3.5 percent based on the individual fractions. The amount of flat and elongated particles, measured on material retained on a

No. 4 sieve, of the blended aggregate shall not exceed 20 percent based on a 3:1 ratio or 5 percent based on a 5:1 ratio.

403.2.5.1 Filler Restriction. Rigden void content determined in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM-73 shall be no greater than 50 percent.

403.2.5.2 Fibers. A fiber additive shall be used as a stabilizer in SMA Mixtures. Fibers shall be uniformly distributed by the end of the plant mixing process. The dosage rate for fibers shall be no less than 0.3 percent by weight of the total mixture for cellulose and no less than 0.4 percent by weight for mineral fibers.

403.2.6 Reclaimed Asphalt. A maximum of 30 percent virgin effective binder replacement may be used in mixtures without changing the grade of binder. The asphalt binder content of recycled asphalt materials shall be determined in accordance with AASHTO T 164, ASTM D 2172 or other approved method of solvent extraction. A correction factor for use during production may be determined for binder ignition by burning a sample in accordance with AASHTO T 308 and subtracting from the binder content determined by extraction. The aggregate specific gravity shall be determined by performing AASHTO T 209 in accordance with Sec 403.19.3.1.2 and calculating the G_{se} to which a 0.98 correction factor will be applied to obtain the G_{sb} as follows:

$$G_{se} = \frac{100 - P_b}{\frac{100}{G_{mm}} - \frac{P_b}{G_b}} \qquad \text{RAP Gsb = RAP Gse X 0.98}$$

403.2.6.1 Reclaimed Asphalt Pavement. Reclaimed Asphalt Pavement (RAP) may be used in any mixture, except SMA mixtures. Mixtures may be used with more than 30 percent virgin effective binder replacement provided testing according to AASHTO M 323 is included with the job mix formula that ensures the combined binder meets the grade specified in the contract. All RAP material, except as noted below, shall be tested in accordance with AASHTO T 327, Method of Resistance of Coarse Aggregate Degradation by Abrasion in the Micro-Deval Apparatus. Aggregate shall have the asphalt coating removed either by extraction or binder ignition during production. The material shall be tested in the Micro-Deval apparatus at a frequency of once per 1500 tons . The percent loss shall not exceed the Micro-Deval loss of the combined virgin material by more than five percent. Micro-Deval testing will be waived for RAP material obtained from MoDOT roadways. All RAP material shall be in accordance with Sec 1002 for deleterious and other foreign material.

403.2.6.2 Reclaimed Asphalt Shingles. Reclaimed Asphalt Shingles (RAS) may be used in any mixture specified to use PG 64-22 in accordance with AASHTO PP 53 except as follows: When the ratio of virgin effective binder to total binder in the mixture is between 60 and 70 percent, the grade of the virgin binder shall be PG 52-28 or PG 58-28. Shingles shall be ground to 3/8-inch minus. Waste, manufacturer or new, shingles shall be essential free of deleterious materials. Post-consumer RAS shall not contain more than 1.5 percent wood by weight or more than 3.0 percent total deleterious by weight. Post-consumer RAS shall be certified to contain less than the maximum allowable amount of asbestos as defined by national or local standards. The gradation of the aggregate may be determined by solvent extraction of the binder or using the following as a standard gradation:

Shingle Aggregate Gradation	
Sieve Size	**Percent Passing by Weight**
3/8 inch	100
No. 4	95
No. 8	85
No. 16	70
No. 30	50
No. 50	45
No. 100	35
No. 200	25

403.3 Composition of Mixtures.

403.3.1 Gradation. Prior to mixing with asphalt binder, the combined aggregate gradation, including filler if needed, shall meet the following gradation for the type of mixture specified in the contract. A job mix formula may be approved which permits the combined aggregate gradation during mixture production to be outside the limits of the master range when the full tolerances specified in Sec 403.5 are applied.

Percent Passing by Weight							
Sieve Size	**SP250**	**SP190**	**SP125**	**SP095**	**SP048**	**SP125xSM(R)**	**SP095xSM(R)**
1 1/2 inch	100	---	---	---	---	---	---
1 inch	90 - 100	100	---	---	---	---	---
3/4 inch	90 max.	90 - 100	100	---	----	100	---
1/2 inch	---	90 max.	90 - 100	100	---	90-100	100
3/8 inch	---	---	90 max.	90-100	100	50-80	70-95
No. 4	---	---	---	90 max.	90-100	20 - 35	30-50
No. 8	19 - 45	23 - 49	28 - 58	32-67	---	16 - 24	20-30
No. 16	---	---	---	---	30-60	---	21 max.
No. 30	---	---	---	---	---	---	18 max.
No. 50	---	---	---	---	---	---	15 max.
No. 100	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
No. 200	1 - 7	2 - 8	2 - 10	2-10	7-12	8.0-11.0	8.0-12.0

403.3.2 Anti-Strip Agent. An anti-strip will be allowed by the engineer to improve resistance to stripping. Anti-strip agents and application rates shall be from a list approved in accordance with Sec 1071.

403.3.3 Porphyry Mixtures. For LP and SMA mixtures, at least 50 percent by volume of the aggregate shall be crushed porphyry retained on the following sieves: No. 30 for SP048, No. 16 for SP095 and No. 8 for SP125. Depending on the actual gradation of porphyry aggregate furnished, the amount of crushed porphyry required may vary, however at least 40 percent by weight of crushed porphyry will be required. Steel slag may be substituted for porphyry in LP and SM mixtures, except at least 45 percent by weight of crushed porphyry and/or slag will be required. The engineer may approve the use of other hard, durable aggregate in addition to porphyry and steel slag. . When an SMR mixture is designated, the mixture shall contain aggregate blends with at least 30 percent non-carbonate material in accordance with Sec 403.3.5.

403.3.4 Minimum Stone Matrix Asphalt Binder. The percent asphalt binder for SMA mixtures shall not be less than 6.0 percent unless otherwise allowed by the engineer.

403.3.5 Surface Mixtures. Design level B surface mixtures and SP048NC, except as described in Sec 403.15.3, containing limestone coarse aggregate shall contain a minimum amount of non-carbonate aggregate. The LA abrasion values, AASHTO T 96, of the limestone will determine the type and amount of non-carbonate aggregate required as shown in the table below. The LA abrasion value will be determined from the most recent source approval sample. In lieu of the above requirements, the aggregate blend shall have an acid insoluble residue (AIR), MoDOT Test Method TM 76, meeting the plus No. 4 criteria of crushed non-carbonate material. Non-carbonate aggregate shall have an AIR of at least 85 percent insoluble residue.

Coarse Aggregate (+ No. 4)	**Minimum Non-Carbonate by Volume**
Limestone, LA ≤ 30	30% Plus No. 4
Limestone, LA > 30	20% Minus No. 4[a]
Dolomite	No Requirement

[a] Use for all SP095 and SP048NC containing limestone.

403.4 Job Mix Formula. At least 30 days prior to placing any mixture on the project, the contractor shall submit a mix design for approval to Construction and Materials. The mixture shall be designed in accordance with AASHTO R 35 or R 46 and shall be tested in accordance with AASHTO T 312 except as noted herein. A detailed description of the mix design process shall be included with the job mix formula (JMF). Representative

samples of each ingredient for the mixture shall be submitted with the mix design. Aggregate fractions shall be provided in the same proportions as the proposed job mix formula. A minimum of 150 pounds will be required for any individual fraction. The amount of each ingredient submitted shall be as follows for each mix design to be verified:

Ingredient	Minimum Amount
Aggregate	750 Pounds
Hydrated Lime, Mineral Filler and/or Baghouse Fines	20 Pounds
Asphalt Binder	10 Gallons

403.4.1 Proficiency Sample Program. Laboratories that participate in and achieve a score of three or greater in the AASHTO proficiency sample program for T 11, T 27, T 84, T 85, T 166, T 176, T 209, T 304 (ASTM C 1252), T 308 and T 312 will have the mixture verification process waived. The mix design shall be submitted to Construction and Materials for approval at least seven days prior to mixture production.

403.4.2 Required Information. The mix design shall include raw data from the design process and contain the following information:

(a) All possible sources intended for use, and grade and specific gravity of asphalt binder.

(b) Source, type (formation, etc.), ledge number if applicable, gradation, and deleterious content of each aggregate fraction.

(c) Bulk and apparent specific gravities and absorption of each aggregate fraction in accordance with AASHTO T 85 for coarse aggregate and AASHTO T 84 for fine aggregate including all raw data.

(d) Specific gravity of hydrated lime, mineral filler or baghouse fines, if used, in accordance with AASHTO T 100.

(e) Percentage of each aggregate component.

(f) Combined gradation of the job mix.

(g) Percent asphalt binder, by weight, based on the total mixture and percent asphalt binder contributed by reclaimed asphalt materials.

(h) Bulk specific gravity (G_{mb}) by AASHTO T 166 Method A of a laboratory compacted mixture compacted at N_{design} gyrations.

(i) Percent air voids (V_a) of the laboratory compacted specimen compacted to Ndesign gyrations.

(j) Voids in the mineral aggregate (VMA) and voids in the mineral aggregate filled with asphalt binder (VFA) at N_{design} gyrations.

(k) Theoretical maximum specific gravity (G_{mm}) as determined by AASHTO T 209, in accordance with Sec 403.19.3, after the sample has been short term aged in accordance with AASHTO R 30.

(l) The tensile strength ratio as determined by AASHTO T 283 including all raw data.

(m) The gyratory sample weight to produce a 115 mm minimum height specimen.

(n) Mixing temperature and gyratory molding temperature.

(o) Number of gyrations at $N_{initial}$, N_{design}, and $N_{maximum}$.

(p) Dust proportion ratio ($-200/P_{be}$).

(q) Bulk specific gravity (G_{sb}) of the combined aggregate.

(r) Percent chert contained in each aggregate fraction.

(s) Percent of G_{mm} at $N_{initial}$ and $N_{maximum}$.

(t) Blended aggregate properties for clay content, angularity, and thin and elongated particles.

(u) Voids in coarse aggregate (VCA) for both the mixture and dry-rodded condition for SMA mixtures.

(v) Draindown for SMA mixtures.

(w) Baghouse fines added for design.

(i) Batch and continuous mix plants – Indicate which aggregate fraction to add baghouse percentage during production.

(ii) Drum mix plants – Provide cold feed settings with and without baghouse percentage.

403.4.3 Approval. No mixture will be accepted for use until the JMF for the project is approved by Construction and Materials.

403.4.4 Job Mix Formula Modification. The JMF approved for each mixture shall be in effect until modified in writing by the engineer. When unsatisfactory results occur or should a source of material be changed, a new JMF may be required.

403.4.5 Design Gyrations. The number (N) of gyrations required for gyratory compaction shall be as follows:

Design	[b] $N_{initial}$	[a] N_{design}	[a,b] $N_{maximum}$
F	--	50	--
E	7	75	115
C	8	80 or 100	160
B	9	125	205

[a]SMA mixtures shall have N_{design} equal to 100 and no $N_{maximum}$ requirement.

[b]Design Level C mixtures designed at 80 gyrations shall have no $N_{initial}$ or $N_{maximum}$ requirements.

In addition, the compaction level, as a percent of theoretical maximum specific gravity, shall be less than or equal to 91.5 percent for Design F, 90.5 percent for Design E and 89.0 percent for Designs C and B at $N_{initial}$, equal to 96.0 percent at N_{design} and less than or equal to 98.0 percent at $N_{maximum}$.

403.4.6 Mixture Characteristics. When compacted in accordance with AASHTO T 312, the mixture shall meet the following criteria.

403.4.6.1 Air Voids (V_a). Design air voids for all mixtures at all traffic levels shall be 4.0.

403.4.6.2 Voids in the Mineral Aggregate (VMA).

Mixture	VMA Minimum (percent)
SP250	12.0
SP190	13.0
SP125 (except for SMA)	14.0
SP095 (except for SMA)	15.0
SP048	16.0

SMA	17.0

403.4.6.3 Voids Filled With Asphalt (VFA).

Design	VFA (percent)[a]
F	70 - 80
E	65 – 78
C	65 – 75[b]
B	65 – 75[b]

[a]SMA and SP048 mixtures shall have a minimum VFA of 75 percent.

[b]Maximum 76 percent for SP095 and 78 percent for SP048.

403.4.7 Dust to Binder Ratio. For all mixtures except SMA and SP048, the ratio of minus No. 200 material to effective asphalt binder (Pbe) shall be between 0.8 and 1.6. For SP048, the ratio of minus No. 200 material to effective asphalt binder (Pbe) shall be between 0.9 and 2.0.

403.4.8 Moisture Susceptibility. For all mixtures except SMA, the mixture shall have a tensile strength ratio (TSR) greater than 80 percent when compacted to 3.7 inches with 7 ±0.5 percent air voids and tested in accordance with AASHTO T 283. SMA mixtures shall have a TSR greater than 80 percent when compacted to 3.7 inches with 6 ±0.5 percent air voids and tested in accordance with AASHTO T 283.

403.4.9 Draindown. AASHTO T 305, Draindown Test, shall be performed on all SMA mixtures prior to job mix approval. The mixture shall be stabilized in such a way that the draindown of the asphalt binder shall not exceed 0.3 percent by weight of mixture.

403.4.10 Voids in Coarse Aggregate. The percent VCAMIX of SMA mixtures shall be less than or equal to the VCADRC as determined using AASHTO T 19. This may be calculated using the following equations:

$$VCA_{DRC} = 100 \times (G_{CA}\gamma_w - \gamma_s) / G_{CA}\gamma_w$$

$$VCA_{MIX} = 100 - (P_{bp} \times G_{mb} / G_{CA})$$

$$P_{bp} = P_s \times PA_{bp}$$

Where: G_{CA} = bulk specific gravity of the combined coarse aggregate (AASHTO T 85),
γ_s = unit weight of coarse aggregate in the dry-rodded condition (DRC) (lb/ft3) (AASHTO T 19),
γ_w = unit weight of water (62.34 lb/ft3) ,
P_{bp} = percent aggregate by total mixture weight retained on No. 4 sieve and
PA_{bp} = percent aggregate by total aggregate weight retained on No. 4 sieve*.

*Use No. 8 sieve for SP095xSM

403.5 Mixture Production Specification Limits.

403.5.1 Gradation and Deleterious Content Control. The gradation of the aggregate shall be determined from samples taken from the hot bins on batch-type or continuous mixing plants or from the composite cold feed belt on drum mix plants. The gradation may also be obtained by sampling the mixture and testing the residual aggregate. The deleterious content of the aggregate shall be determined from samples taken from the composite cold feed belt. The RAP shall be sampled from the RAP feeding system on the asphalt plant. The contractor shall determine on a daily basis at minimum, the gradation on the aggregate reclaimed from the RAP by either extraction or binder ignition. The results shall be used to determine the daily specification compliance for the combined gradation.

403.5.1.1 Stone Matrix Asphalt Tolerances. In producing mixtures for the project, the plant shall be operated such that no intentional deviations from the job mix formula are made. The maximum deviation from the approved job mix formula shall be as follows for SMA mixtures:

Sieve	Max. Tolerance	
	SP095	SP125
3/4 inch	---	---
1/2 inch	---	±4
3/8 inch	±4	±4
No. 4	±3	±3
No. 8	±3	±3
No. 200	±2	±2

403.5.1.2 Mixture Tolerance. For all other SP mixtures, the percent passing the first sieve size smaller than the nominal maximum size shall not exceed 92.0 percent, a tolerance not to exceed 2.0 percent on the No. 8 sieve from the table in Sec 403.3.1, and within the range listed in Sec 403.3.1 for the No. 200 sieve The deleterious content of the material retained on the No. 4 sieve shall not exceed the limits specified in Sec 1002.2.

403.5.2 Density. The final, in-place density of the mixture shall be 94.5 ± 2.5 percent of the theoretical maximum specific gravity for all mixtures except SMA. SMA mixtures shall have a minimum density of 94.0 percent of the theoretical maximum specific gravity. The theoretical maximum specific gravity shall be determined from a sample representing the material being tested. Tests shall be taken not later than the day following placement of the mixture. The engineer will randomly determine test locations.

403.5.2.1 Shoulder Density. Density on non-integral shoulders shall be in accordance with Sec 403.15.3.

403.5.2.2 Integral Shoulder. When shoulders are placed integrally with the traveled way, tests shall be taken on the traveled way.

403.5.2.3 Longitudinal Joint Density. Density along longitudinal joints shall be in accordance with Sec 403.16.1.

403.5.3 Asphalt Content. The asphalt content (AC) shall be within ±0.3 percent of the approved mix design.

403.5.4 Voids in the Mineral Aggregate. The VMA shall be within – 0.5 and + 2.0 percent of the minimum required for each type of mixture at N_{des} gyrations.

403.5.5 Air Voids. Air voids shall be within ±1.0 percent of the approved mix design at N_{des} gyrations.

403.5.6 Tensile Strength Ratio. The TSR shall be greater than or equal to 75 percent as determined from loose mixture taken from the roadway and tested in accordance with AASHTO T 283.

403.5.7 Aggregate Properties. Aggregate properties from Sec 403.2 on the combined aggregate during production shall be no less than 2 percent below the minimum for FAA, no less than 5 percent below the minimum for CAA, no less than 5 percent below the minimum for clay content and no more than 2 percent above the maximum for thin, elongated particles.

403.5.8 Fibers. The fiber proportioning and delivery system for SMA mixtures shall have an accuracy of 10 percent by weight of the material actually being measured in any given period of time.

403.5.9 Moisture Content. The asphaltic concrete mixture, when sampled and tested in accordance with AASHTO T 329, shall not contain more than 0.5 percent moisture by weight of the mixture.

403.5.10 Contamination. The asphaltic concrete mixture shall not be contaminated with deleterious agents such as unburned fuel, objectionable fuel residue or any other material not inherent to the job mix formula.

403.6 Field Laboratory. The contractor shall provide a Type 3 field laboratory in accordance with Sec 601. The contractor shall furnish the bituminous mixture equipment to perform all required test methods for QC and QA

work. The gyratory compactor shall be evaluated in accordance with AASHTO PP 35. An approved list will be maintained by Construction and Materials. All other equipment shall be capable of performing tests in accordance with the approved test methods.

403.7 Bituminous Mixing Plants. Bituminous mixing plants and preparation of material and mixtures shall be in accordance with Sec 404.

403.8 Hauling Equipment. Trucks used for hauling bituminous mixtures shall be in accordance with Sec 404.

403.9 Pavers. Bituminous pavers shall be self-contained units, provided with an activated screed or strike-off assembly, heated if necessary, and capable of spreading and finishing asphaltic concrete in lane widths applicable to the specified typical sections and thicknesses shown on the plans.

403.10 Construction Requirements.

403.10.1 Weather Limitations. No mixture shall be placed on any wet or frozen surface. Temperatures shall be obtained in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 20.

403.10.2 Substitutions. With approval from the engineer, the contractor may substitute a smaller nominal maximum size mixture for a larger sized mixture. Specifications governing the substitute mixture shall apply. Except for a single surface layer, the total pavement thickness shall be maintained when the substitute mixture layer is reduced as allowed in Sec 403.13 by increasing the thickness of other layers or courses. The contract unit price for the original mixture shall be used.

403.11 Field Adjustments of Job Mix Formulas. When test results indicate the mixture produced does not meet the specification requirements, the contractor may field adjust the job mix formula as noted herein. Field adjustments may consist of changing the percent binder as listed on the original approved job mix by no more than 0.3 percent. Additional fractions of material or new material will not be permitted as field adjustments. The engineer shall be notified immediately when any change is made in the cold feed settings, the hot bin settings or the binder content. A new Gsb shall be calculated using the new aggregate percentages. The gradation of the adjusted mixture shall meet the requirements of the mixture type specified in the contract. When the binder content is adjusted more than 0.3 percent, the mixture will be considered out of specification, and a new mix design shall be established.

403.11.1 Field Mix Redesign. When a new mix design will be required, the contractor will be permitted to establish the new mix design in the field. The mixture shall be designed in accordance with AASHTO R 35 or AASHTO R 46 and shall meet the mix design requirements, including TSR. A representative sample of the mixture shall be submitted with the new mix design to the Central Laboratory for mixture verification. The amount of mixture submitted for verification shall weigh at least 50 pounds.

403.11.1.1 Approval. New mix designs established in the field shall be submitted for approval to Construction and Materials. Upon approval, Construction and Materials will assign a new mix number to the mixture.

403.11.1.2 Resume Production. No mixture shall be placed on the project until the new field mix design is approved.

403.12 Application of Prime or Tack. The prime coat, if specified, shall be applied in accordance with Sec 408. A tack coat is required on all existing pavement and shoulder surfaces that will be overlaid with a bituminous mixture. A tack coat is also required between all lifts of bituminous pavements placed within the driving and turn lanes, unless otherwise specified in the contract. All construction requirements of a tacked surface shall be in accordance with Sec 407, and specified herein. The tack coat shall be applied uniformly and shall completely cover the surface upon which the bituminous mixture is to be placed. Placement of a bituminous mixture shall not be placed upon a tacked surface that is not uniformly covered or surfaces that have experienced excessive loss of tack due to tracking. Re-application of tack due to excess tracking or non-uniform coverage shall be at the contractor's expense.

403.13 Spreading and Finishing. The base course, primed or tacked surface, or preceding course or layer shall be cleaned of all dirt, packed soil or any other foreign material prior to spreading the asphaltic mixture. If lumps are present or a crust of mixture has formed, the entire load will be rejected. The thickness and width of each course shall conform to the typical section in the contract. The contractor may elect to construct each course in

multiple layers. The minimum compacted thickness shall be 0.75 inches for SP048, 1.25 inches for SP095, 1.75 inches for SP125, 2 inches for SP190, and 3 inches for SP250.

403.13.1 Paving Widths. The following shall apply for roadways constructed under traffic. For pavements having a width of 16 to 24 feet, inclusive, the asphaltic concrete pavement shall be laid in lanes approximately one half the full width of the completed pavement, and the full width shall be completed as soon as practical. Unless otherwise permitted, a single lane of any course shall not be constructed to a length that cannot be completed to full width of the pavement the succeeding operating day. For pavements greater than 24 feet wide, single lane width construction shall be limited to one day's production and completion to full width shall be accomplished as soon as practical. Uneven pavement shall be left in place for no more than seven days, unless approved by the engineer. Removal of pavement to be in accordance with this specification shall be at the contractor's expense.

403.13.2 Segregation. No segregation will be permitted in handling the mixture at the plant, from the truck or during spreading operations on the roadbed. All layers shall be feathered out, by hand raking if necessary, in transitioning the depth of the surface to meet present grades at bridges or ends of projects, to provide a uniform, smooth riding surface free of irregularities. Where only the top layer of the surfacing continues across a bridge, the bottom layers shall be feathered out. In situations where there is a dispute in the existence of segregation, the area in question will be tested in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 75. Mixture production shall immediately cease if either criteria of MoDOT Test Method TM 75 fail. Segregated mixture shall be removed and replaced to the limits determined by the engineer.

403.13.3 Release to Traffic. If the asphaltic concrete construction consists of more than a single layer, each layer shall be compacted as specified and allowed to cool to the ambient temperature before the next layer is placed. The contractor shall keep traffic off the asphaltic concrete until the surface of the asphaltic concrete is 140 F or below and the asphaltic concrete has cooled sufficiently to prevent flushing of the asphalt binder to the surface, marking or distorting the surface or breaking down the edges.

403.13.4 Draindown. Evidence of asphalt binder separation or draindown at delivery will be cause for rejection.

403.13.5 Shoulder Substitution. When a Sec 403 mixture is specified for traffic lanes, the same mixture may be used for the adjacent shoulder, subject to the density requirements in Sec 403.5.2.

403.14 Spot Wedging and Leveling Course. The engineer will specify the locations and thickness of spot wedging and the thickness of leveling course to obtain the smoothest possible riding surface. This procedure may result in spot wedging operations over small areas with feather-edging at high points and ends of wedge areas. Rigid control of the placement thickness of the leveling course shall be required. Leveling course, consisting of a layer of asphaltic concrete of variable thickness used to superelevate curves and eliminate irregularities in the existing base, shall be spread uniformly to the specified profile grade and cross section. The mixture shall be uniformly spread and compacted, with only minor segregation as accepted by the engineer. Type SP125 or finer mixtures, as applicable, shall be used for the spot wedging and for the leveling course.

403.15 Compaction. After the asphaltic mixture has been spread, struck off and surface irregularities adjusted, the asphaltic mixture shall be compacted thoroughly and uniformly by rolling to obtain the required compaction while the mixture is in a workable condition. Excessive rolling, to the extent of aggregate degradation, will not be permitted. Rollers shall not be used in the vibratory mode when the mixture temperature is below 225 F. When warm mix technology is used, as approved by the engineer, rollers shall not be used in the vibratory mode when the mixture temperature is below 200 F .

403.15.1 Rolling. Any displacement occurring as a result of starting, stopping or changing direction of a roller, or from other causes, shall be avoided. Excess liquid, to prevent adhesion of the mixture to the rollers, will not be permitted. Diesel fuel, fuel oil or other detrimental products shall not be used as wetting agents. Along forms, curbs, headers, walls and other places not accessible to the roller, the mixture shall be thoroughly compacted with hot hand tampers, smoothing irons or with mechanical tampers.

403.15.2 Defective Mixture. Any mixture that becomes loose and broken, mixed with dirt or is in any way defective shall be removed and replaced with fresh, hot mixture, which shall be compacted to conform with the surrounding area. Any area showing an excess or deficiency of asphalt binder shall be removed and replaced.

403.15.3 Non-Traffic Areas. Sec 403 mixtures used for surfacing medians and similar areas, shoulders adjacent to rigid or flexible pavement and shoulders adjacent to resurfaced pavement shall be compacted to the specified densities for the mixture. Once an established rolling pattern has been demonstrated to provide the required density for shoulders, at the engineer's discretion, the pattern may be used in lieu of density tests provided no changes in the material, typical location or temperatures are made. Regardless of the method, density will still be required and subject to testing as deemed necessary by the engineer. In lieu of roller and density requirements, temporary bypasses to be maintained at the expense of the contractor shall be thoroughly compacted. The rolling shall be performed at proper time intervals and shall be continued until there is no visible evidence of further consolidation.

403.15.4 Density Measurement. Measurements for determining the in-place density of the mixture shall be taken no later than the day following placement. Measurements not obtained within the prescribed time limits shall be subject to the requirements of Sec 403.22. If a core is taken, material from underlying layers that remain adhered to the core shall be removed in a manner that does not harm the integrity of the specimen. If the contractor elects to place a lift of mixture greater than six times the nominal maximum aggregate size, cores shall be cut in half and the density of each half determined separately.

403.16 Joints. Transverse joints shall be formed by any method that will produce a dense, vertical section for use when laying is resumed. When a transverse vertical edge is to be left and opened to traffic, a temporary depth transition shall be built as approved by the engineer. The joint formed when the fresh mixture is placed shall be dense, well sealed, and the grade, line and surface texture of the succeeding surface shall conform to that of the joined surface. If directed by the engineer, the transverse joint shall be painted with a light coating of liquid asphalt. Hand manipulation of the mixture shall be minimized to avoid unsightly surface texture.

403.16.1 Joint Composition. Longitudinal joints shall be formed by the use of an edging plate fixed on both sides of the finishing machine. Care shall be taken to obtain a well bonded and sealed longitudinal joint by placing the hot mixture in a manner ensuring maximum compaction at this point. If directed by the engineer for properly sealing the longitudinal joint, a light coating of bituminous material shall be applied to the exposed edge before the joint is made. The minimum density of all traveled way pavement within 6 inches of a longitudinal joint, including the pavement on the traveled way side of the shoulder joint, shall not be less than 2.0 percent below the specified density when unconfined. The density of the longitudinal joint when confined will be included in the evaluation of the remainder of the mat. Each side of the joint shall be flush and along true lines.

403.16.2 Joint Offset. The longitudinal joint in any layer shall offset that in the layer immediately below by a minimum of 6 inches; except, the joints in the completed surfacing shall be at the lane lines of the traveled way or other required placement width outside the travel lane. The placement width shall be adjusted such that pavement marking shall not fall on a longitudinal joint.

403.17 Quality Control.

403.17.1 Quality Control Operations. The contractor shall maintain equipment and qualified personnel to perform all QC field inspection, sampling and testing as required by this specification. All contractor personnel included in the QC operation shall be qualified by the MoDOT Technician Certification Program. Under no circumstances will unqualified personnel be allowed to perform QC sampling or testing. Personnel will be disqualified if acceptable methods and procedures are not followed.

403.17.1.1 Asphalt Test Results. The contractor shall record all test results and furnish a copy, including all raw data, to the engineer no later than the beginning of the day following the test. The contractor shall maintain all test results in an organized format and shall be available to the QA inspector at all times. Scale readings and other measurements not directly recorded by electronic media shall be recorded in an organized format. Printouts from gyratory compactors and asphalt content devices shall be retained as part of the testing records.

403.17.2 Bituminous Quality Control Plan. Prior to approval of the trial mix design by the engineer, the contractor shall submit a QC Plan to Construction and Materials for approval. The QC Plan shall include:

(a) The contractor representative in charge of QC and the project level representative if different from the contractor representative. Contact information should be recorded for these individuals.

(b) Lot and sublot sizes and how they will be designated.

(c) The test method for determining asphalt content and number of cores to be cut for density determination.

(d) A proposed independent third party name, contact, address, and phone number for dispute resolution.

403.17.2.1 Third Party. The third party shall be independent of the contractor, MoDOT consultants and all project subcontractors or suppliers on each specific project. All testing of material for dispute resolution shall be performed by an approved laboratory. Approved laboratories shall be AASHTO Accreditation Program certified in the areas of the material being tested.

403.17.2.2 Plant Calibration. Plant calibration shall be performed by the contractor in accordance with Sec 404, and records shall be made available to the engineer.

403.17.2.3 Retained Samples. All samples taken by the contractor, including but not limited to tested aggregate, volumetric and density samples, shall be retained for the engineer for a minimum of seven days after the contractor's tests are complete and accepted unless otherwise instructed. These samples shall be maintained in clean covered containers, without contamination, readily accessible to the engineer. The retained sample's identification shall consist of, but is not limited to:

(a) Time and date sampled.

(b) Product specification number.

(c) Type of sample, i.e. belt, bin, stockpile.

(d) Lot and sublot designation.

(e) Sampler/Tester.

(f) Project Job Number.

403.17.2.3.1 Gradation and Deleterious Content Samples. For each gradation and deleterious sample taken, the contractor shall retain for the engineer, the portion of the sample not tested after reducing the original sample to testing size.

403.17.2.3.2 Loose Mix Sample. All loose mix samples for determination of volumetrics, asphalt binder content and TSR shall be taken from the roadway at random locations designated by the engineer. A companion loose mix sample shall be taken, identified and retained for the engineer.

403.17.3 Quality Control Laboratory. All QC mixture testing shall be performed in an approved laboratory.

403.17.3.1 Calibration Schedule. The contractor shall calibrate or verify all significant test equipment associated with tests covered in this specification. Intervals as set by the contractor shall not exceed the following limits:

Equipment - Test Method (AASHTO)	Requirement	Interval (Month)
Gyratory Compactor - T 312	Calibrate – 1.16 ± .02° internal angle	12[a]
Gyratory Compactor - T 312	Verify	Daily
Gyratory Molds - T 312	Check Critical Dimensions	12
Thermometers - T 209, T 166, T 312	Calibrate	6
Vacuum System - T 209	Check Pressure	12
Pycnometer (Flask) - T 209	Calibrate	Daily
Binder Ignition Oven - T 308	Verify	12[b]
Nuclear Content Gauge – T 287 or MoDOT TM 54	Drift & Stability – Manuf. Recommendation	1

Mechanical Shakers - T 27	Check Sieving Thoroughness	12
Sieves	Check Physical Condition	6
Weighted Foot Assembly - T 176	Check Weight	12
Mechanical Shaker - T 176	Check Rate & Length of Throw	12
Liquid Limit Device - T 89	Check Wear & Critical Dimensions	12
Grooving Tool - T 89	Check Critical Dimensions	12
Ovens	Verify Temp. Settings	4
Balances	Verify	12[b]
Timers	Check Accuracy	6

[a]Calibrate and/or verify after each move.
[b]Verify after each move.

403.17.3.1.1 Inventory. An inventory of all major sampling, testing, calibration and verification equipment, including the serial number or other identifying number shall be maintained.

403.17.3.1.2 Calibration Records. Calibration and verification records shall include but are not limited to:

(a) Detailed results of the work performed (dimensions, mass, force, temperature, etc.)

(b) Description of the equipment calibrated including identifying number.

(c) Date the work was performed.

(d) Identification of the individual performing the work.

(e) Identification of the calibration or verification procedure used.

(f) The previous calibration or verification date and next due date.

(g) Identification of any in-house calibration or verification device used (including identification to establish traceability of items such as standard masses, proving rings, standard thermometers, balances, etc.).

403.17.3.2 Record Retention. Test records shall be maintained to permit verification of any test report. Records pertaining to testing, equipment calibration and verification, test reports, internal quality systems review, proficiency sample testing, test technician training and evaluation and personnel shall be retained in a secure location for a minimum of three years.

403.17.3.3 Test Method Availability. A current copy of all test methods and procedures shall be maintained in the QC laboratory at all times for reference by the technicians. Examples of report formats and procedures may be found in AASHTO R 18.

403.18 Quality Assurance. All QA field inspection, sampling and testing will be performed by a qualified MoDOT technician. The QA inspector shall have free access to any and all testing equipment used by the mixture producer and any workbooks, records or control charts maintained by the mixture producer for the QC process. The QA inspector shall also have sufficient access to the plant grounds to assure compliance with the approved QC Plan.

403.18.1 Assurance Testing. The engineer will independently sample and test the mixture from the roadway at the frequency listed in Sec 403.19.3. The independent sample will be of sufficient size to retain half for possible disputes. Further testing of this sample will be under the direction of the engineer. The retained portion of the QC samples for mixture properties, gradation, and deleterious content will be tested at a frequency no less than once per week. The engineer's test results, including all raw data, will be made available to the contractor when completed and no later than the next working day.

403.18.2 Core Chain of Custody..QA density cores shall be sealed in approved tamper-evident containers immediately after extraction in the presence of the engineer.

403.18.3 Aggregate Comparison. Comparison for aggregate will be considered favorable when the contractor's QC results and the engineer's QA test results of a retained sample compare within the following limits.

403.18.3.1 Gradation.

Sieve Size	Percentage Points
3/4 inch and larger	5.0
1/2 inch	5.0
3/8 inch	4.0
No. 4	4.0
No. 8	3.0
No. 10	3.0
No. 16	3.0
No. 20	3.0
No. 30	3.0
No. 40	2.0
No. 50	2.0
No. 100	2.0
No. 200	1.0

403.18.3.2 Coarse Aggregate Angularity. Angular particles shall be within 5 percentage points.

403.18.3.3 Fine Aggregate Angularity. Void content shall be within 2 percentage points.

403.18.3.4 Sand Equivalent. Sand equivalency shall be within 8 percentage points.

403.18.3.5 Thin, Elongated Particles. Flat, elongated particle content shall be within one percentage point.

403.18.3.6 Deleterious. The total and individual deleterious content shall not exceed the specification limits.

403.18.4 Federal Highway Administration Requirements. Performance and acceptance of QC/QA testing under these specifications shall not eliminate any FHWA requirements for acceptance of the material.

403.19 Acceptance of Material. Acceptance of bituminous mixture will be based on lots. Material will be sampled from the roadway behind the paver in lots or sublots on a random basis through the use of a random number system and evaluated using a Quality Level Analysis (QLA). A QLA will determine payment based on a combination of the total PWL (PWLt) determined for each pay factor item for each lot of material produced.

403.19.1 Random Numbers. The engineer will generate random numbers.

403.19.2 Lots. The lot size shall be designated in the contractor's QC Plan. Each lot shall contain no less than four sublots and no more than 28 sublots. The maximum sublot size shall be 1,000 tons. Sublots from incomplete lots totaling less than 4,000 tons shall be combined with the previous complete lot for determination of pay factors. When no previous lot exists, the mixture shall be treated in accordance with Sec 403.23.7.4.1. A new lot shall begin when the asphalt content of a mixture is adjusted in accordance with Sec 403.11.

403.19.3 Test and Pay Factor Items. As a minimum, the contractor and engineer shall test in accordance with the following table. Where multiple test methods are allowed, the contractor shall designate the test method to be used in the QC Plan. Final payment will be based on the indicated pay factor items.

Tested Property	Pay Factor	Test Method	Contractor Frequency	Engineer Frequency
Mixture temperature	No	----	1/Sublot	1/day
Temperature of	No	----	As needed	As needed

base and air				
Mat Density (% of theoretical maximum density) by contractor	Yes	MoDOT Test Method TM-41 or AASHTO T 166[e]	1 Sample[b]/Sublot As needed for joints & shoulders.	1 Sample/4 Sublots
Unconfined Joint Density	No	MoDOT Test Method TM-41 or AASHTO T 166[e]	1 Sample[b]/Sublot	1 Sample/4 Sublots
Cold feed or hot bin gradation and deleterious content	No	AASHTO T 27 and AASHTO T 11	1/2 Sublots	1/4 Sublots
Ground shingles	No	AASHTO T 27	1/10,000 tons with a minimum of 1/project	1/project
FAA, CAA, Clay Content and Thin, Elongated Particles from material sampled from the cold feed or hot bin	No	AASHTO T 304, ASTM D 5821, AASHTO T 176 and ASTM D 4791	1/10,000 tons with a minimum of 1/project/mix type	1/project
Asphalt content	Yes	AASHTO T 164, or MoDOT Test Method TM-54, or AASHTO T 287, or AASHTO T 308	1/Sublot	1/4 Sublots
Asphalt content of RAP	No	AASHTO T 164[d]	1/4 Sublots	1/project
VMA @ N_{des} gyrations	Yes[a]	AASHTO T 312 and R 35[e]	1/Sublot	1/4 Sublots
V_a @ N_{des} gyrations	Yes[a]	AASHTO T 312 and R 35[e]	1/Sublot	1/4 Sublots
VFA @ N_{des} gyrations	No[a]	AASHTO T 312 and R 35[e]	1/Sublot	1/4 Sublots
Theo. max SG of the mixture	No	AASHTO T 209	1/Sublot	1/4 Sublots
TSR of the in place mixture	No[c]	AASHTO T 283	1/10,000 Tons or fraction thereof	1/50,000 Tons or 1/project combination

[a]Based on the average of a minimum of two compacted specimens.
[b]Core samples shall consist of one core. Up to two additional cores, as stated in the QC Plan, may be obtained at the same offset within one foot of the randomly selected location. If more than one core is obtained, all cores shall be combined into one sample.
[c]Payment will be based on the table in Sec 403.23.5.
[d]Other methods may be approved by establishing correction factors for RAP from the same source.
[e]AASHTO T 331 may be substituted for AASHTO T 166.

403.19.3.1 Test Method Modification.

403.19.3.1.1 Binder Ignition Modification. Asphalt content determination in accordance with AASHTO T 308, Section 6.9.1 shall be modified by adding the following: If the calibration factor exceeds 1.0 percent, lower the test temperature to 800 ± 8 F and repeat test. Use the calibration factor obtained at 800 F even if it exceeds 1.0 percent. If RAP is used, the binder ignition oven shall be calibrated in accordance with MoDOT Test

Method TM 77. At the engineer's discretion, testing may be waived when production does not exceed 200 tons per day. The contractor shall certify the proper proportions of a previously proven mixture were used.

403.19.3.1.2 Rice Test. When the water absorption of any aggregate fraction is greater than 2.0 percent, the test method for determining theoretical maximum specific gravity, AASHTO T 209, shall be modified as follows: After completing the procedure in accordance with Section 9.5.1 or 9.5.2, drain water from the sample. To prevent loss of fine particles, decant the water through a paper towel held over the top of the container. Spread the sample before an electric fan to remove surface moisture. Weigh at 15-minute intervals, and when the loss in mass is less than 0.05 percent for this interval, the sample may be considered to be surface dry. This procedure requires about 2 hours and shall be accompanied by intermittent stirring of the sample. Break conglomerations of mixture by hand. Take care to prevent loss of particles of mixture. Calculate the specific gravity of the sample by substituting the final surface-dry mass for A in denominator of Equations 2 or 3.

403.19.3.1.3 Mixture Bulk Specific Gravity. Determining bulk specific gravity using paraffin-coated specimens, AASHTO T 275, shall not be used when required by AASHTO T 166. Alternate methods are AASHTO T 331 and ASTM D1188. The surface of specimens prepared for testing by these methods may have the surface texture removed by sawing a minimal amount. Specimens shall be securely held in a jig or other clamping device to eliminate distortion and retain a face parallel to the original surface. Measurements for lift thickness shall be made prior to sawing.

403.19.3.2 Miscellaneous Applications.

403.19.3.2.1 Small Quantities. Small quantities are less than 4000 tons for each separate mixture. This applies to individual projects, individual projects in combination contracts or projects with short discontinuous sections. The contractor has the option to use all testing frequencies in accordance with Sec 403.19.3 or the following shall apply:

(a) A field laboratory will not be required for monitoring mixtures. All required QC and QA testing shall be performed in an approved laboratory.

(b) QC tests required in Sec 403.19.3 shall be performed at a frequency of no less than one per day if production does not exceed 750 tons and at a frequency of no less than two per day if production exceeds 750 tons. Independent or retained sample QA tests shall be performed at least once per 1500 tons, as indicated.

403.19.3.2.2 Base Widening and Entrances. For base widening mixture and entrance work, the following will apply:

(a) All base widening shall be constructed in accordance with Sec 401.7 and subsections.

(b) The minimum density of these mixtures shall be attained as specified herein, except, compaction may be performed in accordance with Sec 403.15.3.

403.19.4 Dispute Resolution. When there are significant discrepancies between the engineer's and the contractor's test results, dispute resolution procedures will be used.

403.19.4.1 Cease Work. The contractor's operations may be required to cease until the dispute is resolved if the test results indicate the mixture is subject to failure.

403.19.4.2 Third Party Resolution. The first step in dispute resolution will be to identify differences in procedures and correcting inappropriate procedures before moving to third party resolution. If that does not resolve the dispute, either the contractor or the engineer may request the approved QC Plan third party involvement. The recommendations of the approved third party shall be binding on both the engineer and contractor.

403.19.4.3 Third Party Payment. The contractor shall be responsible for the cost associated with the third party testing and resolution if the final result indicates the engineer's test results were correct. Likewise the Commission will be responsible for the cost associated with the third party testing and resolution when the final result indicates the contractor's results were correct.

403.19.4.4 Other Adjustments. The contractor shall not be entitled to any additional payment for costs incurred due to use of the dispute resolution procedures such as, but not limited to, those for delay, cessation of operations, costs to subcontractors, etc. The engineer may give consideration to adjustment of working days if warranted.

403.20 Surface Smoothness. The finish of the pavement surface shall be substantially free from waves or irregularities and shall be true to the established crown and grade. The pavement surface shall be thoroughly tested for smoothness by profiling or straighedging in accordance with Sec 610.

403.21 General Requirements.

403.21.1 Sequence of Operations. To reduce inconvenience to the traveling public during widening or surfacing, the contractor will not be permitted to place any final surface course until the base widening, the leveling course and the binder course have been completed throughout the entire combination of sections, unless otherwise authorized by the engineer. The proper condition of the base widening, the leveling course and the binder course, at the time of placing the surface course, shall be the contractor's responsibility.

403.21.2 Pavement Marking. If the contractor's work has obliterated the existing pavement marking on resurfacing projects open to through traffic, the pavement marking shall be replaced in accordance with Sec 620.

403.21.3 Surfaced Approaches. At locations designated in the contract or as specified by the engineer, approaches shall be primed in accordance with Sec 408 and surfaced with Type SP125 asphaltic concrete. The asphaltic concrete surface shall be placed in accordance with the details shown on the plans or as specified by the engineer. Approaches shall not be surfaced until after the surface course adjacent to the entrance is completed. Any work required to condition and prepare the subgrade on the approaches will be at the contractor’s expense.

403.21.4 Filling Drain Basins. If shown on the plans, existing drain basins shall be filled to the top of the lip with plant mix bituminous base course or asphaltic concrete from the pavement edge to the edge of the shoulder. Any difficulty or delay created by this requirement will be at the contractor’s expense.

403.21.5 Pavement Repairs (Blow-Ups). A blow-up will be considered that area where excessive expansion has resulted in distress to the existing pavement. Blow-ups occurring prior to the application of the tack coat on the existing surface will normally be repaired by the Commission. Blow-ups occurring after the application of the tack coat shall be repaired by the contractor by removing the distressed concrete and replacing the pavement in accordance with Sec 613.

403.22 Method of Measurement.

403.22.1 Weight Determination. The weight of the mixture will be determined from the batch weights if a batch-type plant is used, and will be determined by weighing each truck load on scales in accordance with Sec 310 if other types of plants are used. Measurement will be made to the nearest 0.1 ton for the total tonnage of material accepted.

403.22.2 Full Depth.

403.22.2.1 The final driving surface area, for the full depth of the pavement, will be used as the area for all underlying bituminous lifts and will not include the additional quantity needed to construct the 1:1 slope.

403.22.2.2 Final measurement of the completed pavement will not be made except for authorized changes during construction, or where appreciable errors are found in the contract quantity. Where required, measurement of the pavement complete in place will be made to the nearest 0.1 square yard. The revision or correction will be computed and added to or deducted from the contract quantity.

403.22.3 Alternate Overlay.

403.22.3.1 Field Established Quantity. When bid as an alternate to a Portland cement concrete overlay, the contractor shall establish the existing roadway profile and set the final overlay profile. The engineer may adjust the final profile as needed. The tons of hot mix asphalt required will be determined by the engineer from the set or adjusted profile. This quantity will be the field established plan quantity.

403.22.3.2 Overlay Measurement. Final measurement of the completed pavement will be based on the field established plan quantity except for authorized changes during construction. The revision or correction will be computed and added to or deducted from the contract quantity. Measurement of the pavement complete in place will be made to the nearest 0.1 ton.

403.22.4 Pavement Testing. The finished courses shall have the nominal thickness shown on the plans. Tests will be conducted to ensure that each course is being constructed to proper thickness, composition and density. The contractor shall cut samples from any layer of the compacted mixture at locations designated by the engineer. QA samples shall be cut and delivered to the engineer no later than the end of the next day following the laydown operation. If the samples are not cut and delivered as stated, the asphaltic laydown operation may be suspended and a deduction of 5 percent per day of the contract unit price of the representative material may be applied, until samples are cut and delivered to the engineer. Samples may be obtained by either sawing or drilling 4-inch minimum diameter cores. Each sawed sample shall consist of a single piece of the pavement of the size designated by the engineer, but no larger than 12 inches square.

403.22.4.1 Pavement Thickness. Lift thickness may be determined by the average thickness of cores taken for density measurements for each lot. Total thickness samples for new full depth asphalt pavements shall be obtained after all bituminous construction is completed on the project and shall be taken at locations specified by the engineer. For the purpose of determining the constructed thickness of full depth pavement, cores shall be taken at random intervals in each traffic lane at the rate of one core per 1000 feet or increment thereof, or at any other locations as may be determined by the engineer and measured in accordance with AASHTO T 148. Sections of any asphaltic concrete determined to be 0.5 inches or more, less than the thickness shown on the plans, shall be corrected by the contractor. No payment will be made for any costs incurred by the contractor in correcting pavement deficient in thickness. Each core is representative of the pavement thickness for a distance extending one-half the distance to the next core, measured along centerline, or in the case of a beginning or ending core, the distance will extend to the end of the pavement.

403.22.4.2 Surface Restoration. The surface from which samples have been taken, including those for density measurements, shall be restored by the contractor with the mixture then being produced no later than the next day of plant operation, if construction is still active. If bituminous construction has been completed, the surface from which samples have been taken shall be restored within 48 hours with an approved commercial mixture or with cold patch mixtures acceptable to the engineer.

403.23 Basis of Payment.

403.23.1 Aggregate Variation. Due to possible variations in the specific gravity of the aggregates, the tonnage of mixture used may vary from the proposal quantities. No adjustment in contract unit price will be made because of such variation.

403.23.2 Compacted Samples. Payment for obtaining and delivering samples of compacted mixture from the pavement and replacing the surface will be made per sample at the fixed price specified in Sec 109. No direct payment will be made for samples taken for QC testing.

403.23.3 Payment for Pavement Repairs (Blow-ups). Payment for repairing blow-ups will be made in accordance with Sec 104.

403.23.4 Smoothness Adjustment. The contract unit price for all mixes, except wedge or level course, will be adjusted in accordance with Sec 610.5. The contract unit prices for asphaltic concrete pavement will be considered full compensation for all materials entering into the construction of the pavement and for the cost of the smoothness testing and correction.

403.23.5 Tensile Strength Retained Adjustment. The contract unit price of each 10,000 tons or fraction thereof for all mixtures shall be adjusted based on TSR according to the following:

TSR	Percent of Contract Price
90% and above	103
75-89%	100
70-74%	98

65-69%	97
<65%	Remove

403.23.6 Density Adjustment. Pay adjustments due to longitudinal joint density will apply to the full width of the lane paved. The average of joint cores from each lot will determine specification compliance. Adjustments will be in accordance with Sec 403.23.7.4.1(b). If payment reductions are necessary, the lower adjusted contract unit price of the PWL or unconfined joint density adjustment will apply. Adjustments due to joint density will apply to the lot from which the cores are obtained.

403.23.7 Percent Within Limits. PWL will be based on the mean, standard deviation and quality index of each lot's test results. The upper PWL (PWL_u) and lower PWL (PWL_l) is determined from the table in Sec 502.15.8. Total percent within limits, PWL_t, is: $PWL_t = (PWL_u + PWL_l) - 100$.

The mean is: $x_a = (\sum x_i)/n$

Where: x_a = Average of the individual values being considered

$\sum x_i$ = The summation of all the individual values being considered

n = The number of individual values under consideration

The Standard Deviation is: $s = (\sum(x_i - x_a)2/(n - 1))^{1/2}$

The Upper Quality Index is: $Qu = (USL - x_a)/s$

The Lower Quality Index is: $Q1 = (x_a - LSL)/s$

Where: Q_u = Upper Quality Index

Q_l = Lower Quality Index

USL = Pay Factor Item Upper Spec Limit

LSL = Pay Factor Item Lower Spec Limit

403.23.7.1 Quality Level Analysis. The engineer will make the QLA no more than 24 hours after receipt of the contractor's test results, by determining the PWLt for each designated pay factor item.

403.23.7.1.1 Acceptance. The contractor's test results will be used when applicable to determine the PWL, provided the contractor's QC tests and the engineer's QA tests compare favorably, and provided the engineer's inspection and monitoring activities indicate the contractor is following the approved QC Plan.

403.23.7.1.2 Comparison. Favorable comparison will be obtained when the engineer's QA test results on a production sample are within two standard deviations, or one-half the specification tolerance, whichever is greater, from the mean of the contractor's test results for that particular lot.

403.23.7.1.3 Outliers. No test result shall be discarded, except individual test results on a lot basis may be checked for an outlier in accordance with the statistic T in ASTM E 178, at a significance level of 5 percent. If an outlier is found, material from the retained QA sample may be tested, in the presence of the engineer, to determine a replacement test value. The replacement test value shall be used in the PWL determination.

403.23.7.1.4 Roadway/Shoulder Lots. For the purpose of QLA, mixture placed on the traveled way and placed on the traveled way and shoulders integrally, shall be accounted for in a regular lot/sublot routine. Mixture placed on shoulders only shall be accounted for in a shoulder lot/sublot routine.

403.23.7.1.5 Random Sampling. For the purpose of QLA, all mixture placed on the roadway shall be subject to random testing, except mixture placed within 6 inches of an unconfined longitudinal joint shall not be subject to evaluation. Random samples taken in the same day may be separated by 200 tons.

403.23.7.2 Pay Factors. The total pay factor (PF_T) for each lot will be equal to the weighted sum of the pay factors (PF) for each pay factor item for each lot, and is determined as follows:

$$PF_T = + (0.25)\ PF_{density} + (0.25)\ PF_{AC} + (0.25)\ PF_{VMA} + (0.25)\ PF_{Va}$$

The PF_T for each lot, on the shoulder or otherwise when the density pay factor is not directly included, will be equal to the weighted sum of the PF for each pay factor item for each lot, and will be determined as follows:

$$PF_T = + (0.3333)\ PF_{AC} + (0.3333)\ PF_{VMA} + (0.3333)\ PF_{Va}$$

The PF for each pay factor item for each lot will be based on the PWL_t of each pay factor item of each lot and will be determined as follows:

When PWL_t is greater than or equal to 70: $PF = 0.5\ PWL_t + 55$
When PWL_t is less than 70: $PF = 2\ PWL_t - 50$

403.23.7.2.1 Density Pay Factor. The theoretical maximum specific gravity of the mixture, as determined for each sublot and the bulk specific gravity of no less than one core from each sublot, will be used to perform the QLA for the percent of theoretical maximum density. Thick cores required to be cut in half in accordance with Sec 403.15.4 shall effectively double the number of sublots for cores. When density is not used as a pay factor, additional adjustment of the contract unit price will be based on the table in Sec 403.23.7.4.1(b).

403.23.7.2.2 Asphalt Content Pay Factor. The QLA will be performed using the asphalt content test results from each lot.

403.23.7.2.3 Voids in the Mineral Aggregate and Air Voids Pay Factor. Two gyratory specimens shall be compacted for each sublot and the average of the two specimens will be used to calculate the volumetrics of the sublot. The VMA, VFA, and air voids shall be determined from the gyratory compacted specimens. The VMA and air voids for the QLA shall be those calculated using the combined bulk specific gravity of the aggregate as listed on the approved job mix formula, the average bulk specific gravity of the gyratory compacted specimens and the theoretical maximum specific gravity of the mixture determined for the sublot of material. The aggregate content used for the calculation shall be that determined from field asphalt content testing for that sublot.

403.23.7.3 Removal of Material. All lots of material with a PFT less than 50.0 shall be removed and replaced with acceptable material by the contractor. Any sublot of material with a percent of theoretical maximum density of less than 90.0 percent or greater than 98.0 percent shall be removed and replaced with acceptable material by the contractor. For SMA mixtures, any sublot of material with a percent of theoretical maximum density of less than 92.0 percent shall be removed and replaced with acceptable material by the contractor. Any sublot of material with air voids in the compacted specimens less than 2.5 percent shall be removed and replaced with acceptable material by the contractor. No additional payment will be made for such removal and replacement. The replaced material will be tested at the frequencies listed in Sec 403.19. Pay for the material will be determined in accordance with the applicable portions of Sec 403.23 based on the replacement material.

403.23.7.4 Miscellaneous Applications.

403.23.7.4.1 Small Quantities. Small quantities are defined in Sec 403.19.3.2.1. Unless the contractor has elected to use the normal evaluation in the Bituminous QC Plan for small quantities, the following shall apply for each separate mixture qualifying as a small quantity:

(a) QLA and PWL shall not apply.

(b) Mixtures shall be within the specified limits for VMA, Va, AC and density. In addition to any adjustments in pay due to profile, the contract unit price for the mixture represented by each set of cores will be adjusted based on actual field density above or below the specified density using the following schedule:

Field Density (Percent of Laboratory Max. Theoretical Density)			Pay Factor (Percent of Contract Unit Price)
For all SP mixtures other than SMA:			
		92.0 to 97.0 inclusive	100
97.1 to 97.5	or	91.5 to 91.9 inclusive	90
	or	91.0 to 91.4 inclusive	85

97.6 to 98.0	or	90.5 to 90.9 inclusive	80
	or	90.0 to 90.4 inclusive	75
Above 98.0	or	Below 90.0	Remove and Replace
For SMA mixtures:			
		>94.0	100
		93.5 to 93.9 inclusive	90
		93.0 to 93.4 inclusive	85
		92.5 to 92.9 inclusive	80
		92.0 to 92.4 inclusive	75
		Below 92.0	Remove and Replace

403.23.7.4.2 Base Widening and Entrances. For base widening mixtures and entrance work, QLA and PWL will not be required. Payment for these mixtures will be made at 100 percent of contract unit price for material that otherwise meets the specifications.

403.23.7.4.3 Single Lift or Leveling Course Work. For resurfacing projects specifying a single lift, surface mixture of 3,000 tons or more, or for leveling course work, the following shall apply to the traveled way mixture. All bituminous mixture QC/QA requirements shall apply, except the density pay factor designated in Sec 403.23.7.2 will not be directly included in the total pay factor. In lieu of that, one density sample shall be taken per sublot and the pay adjustment for density will be made using the table in Sec 403.23.7.4.1(b).

SECTION 404
BITUMINOUS MIXING PLANTS

404.1 Description. This specification covers the requirements for mixing plants and equipment used in the production of bituminous mixtures.

404.2 Requirements for All Plants.

404.2.1 Aggregate. Sufficient storage space shall be provided for each size of aggregate. The different aggregate sizes shall be kept separated until delivery to the combined cold feed belt. The storage yard shall be maintained in a neat and orderly condition and the separate stockpiles shall be readily accessible for sampling.

404.2.2 Asphalt Binder. An asphalt binder storage tank shall be provided at the proportioning and mixing plant. If more than one storage tank is used to deliver asphalt binder to the proportioning unit, piping and valve arrangements shall permit material to be used from any one of the tanks without using from another at the same time.

404.2.2.1 Storage. Each tank used for storage from which asphalt binder is delivered to the proportioning unit shall be equipped for heating the material under effective and positive control at all times to the temperature requirements set forth in Sec 1015. Heating shall not allow contact of flame with the heating tank. The contractor shall furnish a tank capacity chart calculated in increments suitable for verifying quantities used during a normal production period.

404.2.2.2 Circulation. A circulating system of adequate capacity shall provide proper and continuous circulation of the asphalt binder between the storage tank and proportioning units during the entire operating period. The discharge end of the circulating pipe shall be maintained below the surface of the asphalt binder in the storage tank to prevent discharging into the open air. All pipe lines and fittings shall be properly insulated to prevent heat loss.

404.2.2.3 Binder Sampling. The contractor shall provide a sampling outlet in the asphalt binder feed lines connecting the plant storage tanks to the proportioning or injection system. The sampling outlet shall be installed in a readily accessible location such that representative samples may be withdrawn safely and slowly at any time during plant operation. A drainage receptacle shall be provided for flushing the outlet prior to sampling. When all of the chemical admixtures are added to the plant storage tank prior to use, the engineer may allow the contractor to sample the asphalt binder from the storage tanks located at the mixing facilities. Sampling procedures shall be approved by the engineer prior to samples being taken.

404.2.3 Cold Aggregate Feeder. The plant shall be provided with an accurate mechanical means for uniformly feeding the aggregate into the drier to provide uniform production and temperature. A synchronized method of proportioning the aggregate at the cold feeder shall be provided.

404.2.3.1 Cold Feed Calibration. For all plants producing bituminous mixtures composed of more than one fraction of aggregate, the aggregate cold feeds shall be calibrated as required by the engineer. On the basis of the calibration, aggregate cold feeds shall be adjusted to ensure the proper percentage of the various aggregate fractions of the mix, as required by the job mix formula.

404.2.3.2 Aggregate Sampling. Safe, adequate and convenient facilities shall be provided for obtaining representative aggregate samples from the full width and length of the discharge flow of the combined cold feed, or from each hot bin on batch-type plants.

404.2.4 Drier. A drier of any satisfactory design for drying and heating the aggregate shall be provided. The drier shall be capable of drying and heating the aggregate to a temperature within the limits of the range specified in Sec 1015 for the grade of asphalt binder used, without leaving any visible unburned oil or carbon residue on the aggregate. The mixture may be tested for contamination. Absorbed moisture in the aggregate shall be reduced to such a quantity that there is no visible segregation of asphalt binder resulting from escaping water vapor in the prepared mixture.

404.2.5 Dust Collector. An efficient dust collecting system shall be provided to prevent the loss of fine material into the surrounding environment. The material collected may be returned to the mixture at a uniform rate through a metering device or the dust may be wasted.

404.2.6 Filler Storage. If mineral filler or hydrated lime, or both, are required, adequate dry storage shall be provided and provisions shall be made for accurate proportioning.

404.2.7 Asphalt Control Unit. Satisfactory means, either by weighing or metering, shall be provided to obtain the proper quantity of asphalt binder. Metering pumps for asphalt shall deliver accurately to within plus or minus 2.0 percent of the required quantity when tested for accuracy. Asphalt scales shall be in accordance with Sec 404.3.4. If the quantity of asphalt binder is controlled by metering, provisions shall be made whereby the delivery meter may be readily checked by actual weight.

404.2.8 Thermometric Equipment. A thermometer of suitable range shall be fixed in the asphalt feed line at a suitable location near the discharge at the mixer unit. The thermometer included in the asphalt metering unit shall be displayed in a location readily accessible to the engineer. An approved recording thermometer, pyrometer or other recording thermometric instrument shall be installed in plants in such manner that the temperature of the heated mixture or aggregate is automatically registered and recorded. The terminal shall be maintained free of accumulated mixture or aggregate to ensure accuracy. The thermometric instrument shall be installed in the discharge chute of drum mix plants and in at least one hot aggregate bin of batch plants. The terminals shall be located where the hot material will flow around the terminals during the proportioning operation and shall not be located near the corners of the bins or at points where the material will collect or pack around the terminals. This instrument shall be located in clear view of the plant operator. A chart shall continuously record both time and temperature. The smallest interval of time shall be a maximum of 15 minutes and the temperature graduations shall be no more than 10 F. The chart shall be furnished to the engineer at the end of each day's operation.

404.2.9 Plant Calibration. Personnel, scales and equipment necessary for calibrating the plant and for verifying the accuracy of proportions shall be furnished by the contractor and shall be available at all times. All scales used in the final measurement of the mixture shall be in accordance with Sec 310. Records of all calibration shall be provided to the engineer.

404.2.10 Safety Requirements. A conveniently located, easily opened gate or door shall be provided in the mixer cover for observation of pugmill mixing operations. Adequate and safe stairways to the pugmill mixer platform and sampling points shall be provided. Guarded ladders to other plant units shall be placed at all points where accessibility to plant operations is required. Accessibility to the top of truck bodies shall be provided by a platform or other suitable device to enable the engineer to obtain samples and mixture temperature data. All gears, pulleys, chains, sprockets and other dangerous moving parts shall be thoroughly guarded and protected. Ample and unobstructed space shall be provided on the pugmill mixing platform. A clear and unobstructed passage shall be maintained at all times in and around the truck loading area. This area shall be kept free from drippings from the mixing platform.

404.2.11 Surge Bins. Surge bins used in the production of bituminous mixtures shall maintain the temperature of the mixture within 25 F of the contractor’s designated temperature. Mixture shall not be stored more than 8 hours.

404.2.12 Automatic Ticket Printer. The asphalt plant shall be equipped with an automatic ticket printer connected to the weighing system in such a manner that the printer automatically detects and prints the weight determined by the system. The printer shall store and recall the tare weight when the operator enters the vehicle identification. The weight shall be shown to at least the nearest 20 pounds or nearest one one-hundredth of a ton.

404.2.13 Ticket Information. The printer shall be capable of keeping and printing cumulative totals for each project for each type of bituminous mixture. The printer shall produce a ticket in triplicate to accompany each load delivered to the project and shall be furnished to the engineer. The ticket shall show the following: (as a minimum)

(a) Gross and tare and/or net weights.

(b) Current date and time.

(c) MoDOT mix number assigned to the mix being placed.

(d) Unique ticket number (may be preprinted on the ticket).

(e) Job number, route and county.

(f) License plate number of the delivery vehicle (Must be displayed legibly on the ticket).

404.2.13.1 Net Weight. The gross and tare weights will not be required when the net weight of bituminous mixture is determined by batch weights.

404.2.13.2 Gross Weight. When the net weight of bituminous mixture is determined from the gross weight of the loaded delivery vehicle, the empty delivery vehicle weight shall be determined daily or from time to time during the day as directed by the engineer.

404.2.13.3 Daily Total. At the end of each day's operation, the contractor shall furnish to the engineer a total tonnage of mixture produced by the asphalt plant in sufficient detail to determine the amount of asphalt binder used in that day's operation.

404.2.13.4 Printer Failure. In the event of automatic ticket printer failure, the contractor may be permitted, without approval from the engineer, to furnish manually written tickets to complete that day's operation.

404.3 Requirements for Batch-Type Plants.

404.3.1 Automatic Batching. For all contracts containing no more than 10,000 tons of bituminous mixture, standard manual batching methods approved by the engineer will be permitted. For contracts containing more than 10,000 tons of bituminous mixture, in accordance with Sec 401 or Sec 403, batching plants shall be equipped to operate automatically to the extent that the only manual operation required for the proportioning of all ingredients for one batch shall be a single actuation of a switch or starter. The equipment shall include devices capable of automatically proportioning each ingredient of the mixture in the selected sequence and quantity. Interlocks shall be provided which will hold or delay the automatic batch cycling whenever the batched quantity of any ingredient is not within the specified tolerance. The weight setting and timing controls shall be suitably equipped so the controls may be locked when specified by the engineer. Manual operation will not be permitted beyond 24 hours after breakdown in the automatic equipment, except with written approval from the engineer.

404.3.2 Aggregate Scales. Scales for weighing aggregate and mineral filler or hydrated lime, or both, may be beam, springless dial or electronic digital weigh meter type, and shall be of standard make and design having tolerances on overregistration and underregistration not exceeding 0.4 percent of the indicated weight when tested for accuracy. Each aggregate fraction shall be measured within one percent of the total batch weight of the mixture. Mineral filler or hydrated lime, or both, shall be measured within 0.5 percent of the total batch weight of the mixture. The total weight of the batch shall be within 2.0 percent of the desired batch weight. The change in load required to change the position of the rest of the indicating element or elements of a non-automatic indicating scale an observable amount shall be no greater than 0.1 percent of the nominal scale capacity. If manual batching methods are used, beam-type scales shall be equipped with a device to indicate to the operator that the required load is being approached. This device shall indicate at least the last 5 percent of the load weighed on any beam, except that this increment will not be required to be greater than 200 pounds. Multiple beam-type scales shall be equipped with a tare beam and a separate beam for each size of aggregate. Dial scales shall be equipped with adjustable pointers for marking the weight of each material to be weighed (incorporated) into the batch. Graduation intervals for either beam or dial scales shall be no greater than 0.1 percent of the nominal scale capacity. Quantity indicators necessary for batching shall be in full view of the operator.

404.3.3 Asphalt Bucket. If a bucket is used for weighing the asphalt binder, the filling system and bucket shall be of such design, size and shape that asphalt will not overflow, splash or spill outside the confines of the bucket during filling and weighing.

404.3.4 Asphalt Scales. Scales for weighing asphalt binder shall be in accordance with Sec 404.3.2, except a device to indicate at least the last 20 pounds of the approaching total load shall be provided. Asphalt binder shall be measured within 0.1 percent of the total batch weight of the mixture. Beam-type scales shall be equipped with a tare beam or adequate counter-balance for balancing the bucket and compensating periodically for the accumulation of asphalt on the bucket. Springless dial scales used for weighing asphalt binder shall have a tare beam and a dial graduated in increments not to exceed 0.1 percent of the nominal scale capacity and the maximum dial capacity shall be no more than 15 percent of the nominal capacity of the mixer.

404.3.5 Mixer Unit. The plant shall be capable of producing a uniform mixture. The mixer shall be heated and shall have a minimum capacity of 2000 pounds per batch. The mixer shall be constructed to prevent leakage of the contents and the mixer box shall be equipped with a hood to prevent loss of dust.

404.3.5.1 Time Lock. The mixer shall have an accurate time lock to control the operation of a complete mixing cycle by locking the weigh box gate after the charging of the mixer until the closing of the mixer gates at the completion of the cycle. The time lock shall lock the asphalt bucket throughout the dry mixing period and shall lock the mixer gate throughout the dry and wet mixing periods.

404.3.5.2 Mixer Rating Plate. A rating plate designating the manufacturer's rated capacity shall be attached to the mixer. The quantity of mixture produced per batch shall not exceed the manufacturer's rated capacity.

404.3.5.3 Mixing Times. The mineral aggregate for mixtures specified in Secs 401 and 402 shall be mixed dry for at least 10 seconds and for mixtures specified in Sec 403 shall be mixed dry for at least 15 seconds. The dry mixing period shall start when all of the mineral aggregate has been charged into the mixer, and end when the introduction of the asphalt binder begins. After dry mixing, the asphalt binder shall be charged into the mixer in a manner that will uniformly distribute the asphalt over at least 3/4 of the full length of the mixer. The time required to add the asphalt binder shall not exceed 15 seconds. Wet mixing shall begin at the introduction of the asphalt binder and shall continue for at least 30 seconds, or longer if necessary, to produce a complete and uniform coating of the particles and a thorough distribution of the asphalt binder throughout the aggregate. The wet mixing period shall end when the discharge gate is opened.

404.4 Requirements for Drum Mix Plants.

404.4.1 Drum Plant. The plant shall be specifically designed for drum mixing and shall be capable of satisfactorily heating, drying and mixing bituminous mixtures. Heating shall be controlled to prevent damage to the aggregate or the asphalt binder. The temperature of the mixture when discharged from the mixer shall be within the range specified in Sec 1015 for the grade of asphalt binder being used. The rate of flow through the drum shall be controlled such that the bituminous material and aggregate shall be mixed until a homogeneous mixture with all particles uniformly coated is obtained, and in no case shall the quantity of mixture produced exceed the manufacturer's rated capacity.

404.4.2 Feed Indicators. Each feeding orifice shall have an adjustable gate with an indicator provided to reference the opening setting. A device shall be installed on each aggregate feeder to indicate when the flow of material from the bin is below the point where accurate proportioning through the feeder gates can be accomplished. These indicators shall be positive in action and shall actuate a clearly visible or audible signal to the plant operator, or stop the flow of material to the drum when the level of material in the bin is too low for accurate proportioning. A scalping screen mounted independent of other proportioning or weighing equipment shall be provided if directed by the engineer. The total daily asphalt binder quantity numbers for the project shall be provided ot the engineer.

404.4.3 Asphalt Meter. Asphalt binder shall be introduced through a continuously registering cumulative indicating meter by a pump specifically designed for drum mix plants. The meter shall be located in the asphalt line so that the meter will continuously register the asphalt discharge to the mixer and such that the discharge through the meter can be readily diverted into a container for measurement. The meter shall be equipped with a nonsetback register and shall have an accuracy within 2 percent by weight of the material actually being measured in any given period of time. The nonsetback register shall register only the asphalt discharged to the mixer and shall not record asphalt circulated back to the storage tank. A device shall be provided in the asphalt storage tank to indicate when the supply of asphalt to the pump and metering device is such that accurate proportioning is not accomplished. The accuracy of the pump and meter shall be verified at periodic intervals as designated by the engineer. The total daily asphalt binder quantity number for the project shall be provided to the engineer.

404.4.4 Mineral Filler. If mineral filler or hydrated lime, or both, are used, a separate bin and feeder for each material shall be furnished and each material shall be dispensed by weight by continuous batching device. The batching device shall have a continuous weight display in clear view of the plant operator. The delivery system shall be variable speed and interlocked with the aggregate weigh belt so the total dry aggregate weight, including mineral filler or hydrated lime, or both, is indicated to the asphalt proportioning system. A continuously registering, cumulative, nonsetback register shall record the quantity of mineral filler or hydrated

lime, or both, discharged into the mixer. Mineral filler and hydrated lime shall be introduced and uniformly dispersed into the drum mixer at the point of introduction of the asphalt binder without loss to the dust collection system. The mineral filler and hydrated lime proportioning and delivery system shall have an accuracy of 10 percent by weight of the material actually being measured in any given period of time. The total daily mineral filler and hydrated lime quantity numbers for the project shall be project shall be provided to the engineer.

404.4.5 Belt Scales. Positive weight measurement of the combined cold feed aggregate shall be by use of belt scales. The combined cold feed aggregate shall be continuously recorded on a nonsetback register. The belt scale shall have an accuracy within 2 percent by weight of the material actually being measured in any given period of time. The accuracy of the belt scales shall be verified at periodic intervals as directed by the engineer. The total daily aggregate quantity numbers for the project shall be provided to the engineer.

404.4.6 Reclaimed Asphalt Pavement Weighing. Positive weight measurement of reclaimed asphaltic pavement shall be by use of belt scales in accordance with Sec 404.4.5.

404.4.7 System Interlocks. The aggregate feed system, reclaimed asphaltic pavement feed system if recycling is permitted, mineral filler or hydrated lime, or both if specified, and the asphalt flow shall be interlocked by a blending system which will automatically regulate the asphalt binder, mineral filler, hydrated lime and reclaimed asphaltic pavement flow, and shall cause synchronized corrections for variations in aggregate flow. The blending system shall include a moisture-compensating device to correct for moisture in the aggregate passing over the belt scales. Moisture determinations shall be made periodically during each day's operation. The blending system shall include a device to correct for changes in the specific gravity of the asphalt binder.

404.4.8 Sampling. Safe, adequate and convenient facilities shall be provided for obtaining representative samples of asphalt binder, cold aggregate and bituminous mixture. The plant shall be equipped with sampling devices capable of providing a sample of sufficient size from the full width of the combined aggregate flow and from the full width of the mixer discharge flow. Sampling devices shall be designed such that samples may be taken while the plant is operating at normal production rates.

404.4.9 Calibration. Safe, adequate and convenient facilities shall be provided for calibrating or verifying the asphalt binder, mineral filler, hydrated lime, reclaimed asphaltic pavement and the aggregate nonsetback registers. The manufacturer's recommendations shall be followed for calibration unless specified otherwise. The quantities of aggregate and asphalt binder measured in any given period of time shall vary no more than 2.0 percent by weight from the required quantity of each.

404.5 Stone Matrix Asphalt Mixtures. A homogeneous mixture shall be produced.

404.5.1 Fibers in Batch Plants. For batch plants, fibers shall be added to the mineral aggregate either in the weigh hopper or in the pugmill. The fibers shall be accurately added by weight, either manually by bag or other measure, or by an approved weight metering device. If fibers are added in the weigh hopper, no fiber shall be added until mineral aggregate from at least one hot bin has been placed in the weigh hopper. If fibers are added in the pugmill, the fiber shall be added immediately after the mineral aggregate and before the asphalt binder is added.

404.5.1.1 Dry Mixing. The mineral aggregate and the fibers shall be dry mixed for at least 20 seconds.

404.5.1.2 Wet Mixing. The wet mixing time shall be no less than 35 seconds to allow the cellulose fibers to expand and to ensure adequate distribution of the fibers and asphalt binder.

404.5.1.3 Uniformity. Dry and wet mixing times and batch mixing temperatures shall be adjusted as necessary to achieve a uniform mixture.

404.5.2 Fibers in Drum Plants. For drum plants, fibers shall be introduced into the plant in either loose or pelletized form.

404.5.2.1 Metering. Equipment for metering fibers into the plant shall ensure a consistent, uniform blending of the fibers into the mixture. The metering system shall be variable speed, shall proportion the fibers by weight, shall be accomplished as specified by the equipment manufacturer and be to the satisfaction of the engineer.

404.5.2.2 Pelletized Fibers. If used in a drum mix plant, pelletized fiber shall be added directly into the drum mixer through the recycle asphalt inlet.

404.6 Liquid Anti-Strip Additive Systems. Type I liquid anti-strip additives shall be blended into the asphalt binder. Type II additives shall be sprayed on the combined cold feed aggregate. Both shall be incorporated in a consistent and uniform manner.

404.6.1 Calibration. The method of adding an additive into the mix shall be accurate to within ± 10 percent of the amount to be added. Calibration of the blending system shall be provided to the engineer.

404.6.2 Flow Interruption. The feed system shall be equipped with a flow meter that signals if the additive is or is not being added. It shall be interlocked so that the operation will cease if the additive flow is interrupted or not within the allowable limits.

404.6.3 Interlock. The rate of application shall be interlocked with the plant to coincide with plant production rates when the additive is incorporated during mixture production.

404.6.4 Type I Addition. For Type I liquid anti-strip additive used in drum mix plants, the blending system shall add the material into a static in-line mixer between the asphalt binder storage tank and the asphalt binder flow meter. For batch plants, the blending system shall add the material into a static in-liner mixer between the asphalt binder storage tank and the mixing plant injection point. Controls shall be in place so that blended material is not permitted to recirculate back to the asphalt binder storage tank.

404.6.5 Type II Addition. For Type II liquid anti-strip blending systems, the blending system shall uniformly apply the material to the cold feed prior to the drum for continuous, batch and drum plants.

404.7 Hauling Equipment. Trucks used for hauling bituminous mixtures shall have tight, clean, smooth, metal beds that have been thinly coated with a minimum quantity of lime solution or an approved bituminous mixture release agent in accordance with Sec 1071 to prevent the mixture from adhering to the beds. The release agent shall not be diluted less than the minimum rate specified by the manufacturer and shall be applied with equipment recommended by the manufacturer. Use of diesel fuel, fuel oil or other detrimental products as a bed coating or dilution agent will not be permitted. Each truck shall have a cover of canvas or other suitable material of such size to protect the mixture from the weather. The cover shall be securely fastened over all sides of the truck bed. Truck beds shall be insulated, when necessary, such that the mixture will be delivered on the road at the specified temperature.

SECTION 407
TACK COAT

407.1 Description. This work shall consist of preparing and treating an existing bituminous or concrete surface with bituminous material, in accordance with these specifications.

407.2 Material. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section
Emulsified Asphalt or Performance Graded Asphalt Binder	1015

407.3 Equipment. The contractor shall provide a system for heating and applying the bituminous material. The system shall be designed, equipped, maintained and operated such that emulsified asphalt or liquid asphalt, at even heat, may be applied uniformly on variable widths of surface up to 15 feet with uniform pressure and an allowable variation from any specified rate of ±0.01 gallon per square yard. The system shall include a calibrated tank and a thermometer for measuring temperature of tank contents. The system shall be equipped with instrumentation that continuously verifies application rates. The calibration of the system shall be approved by the engineer prior to use, and the contractor shall furnish all equipment, material and assistance if calibration is required.

407.4 Construction Requirements.

407.4.1 Preparation of Surface. The existing surface shall be free of all dust, loose material, grease or other foreign material at the time the tack is applied. Any excess bituminous surface mixture or bituminous joint material will be removed by MoDOT without cost to the contractor before the tack is applied.

407.4.1.1 Coldmilled Surface. All coldmilled surfaces shall be in accordance with Sec 622.10, except modified herein. Coldmilled surfaces shall be swept or vacuumed prior to tack coat application. The sweeping or vacuuming requirement may be waived, if traffic is allowed onto the coldmilled surface and is considered clean by the engineer.

407.4.1.2 Pre-wetting. Existing surfaces may be pre-wetted just prior to the tack coat application. Pre-wetting shall consist of misting the surface with controlled spraying equipment to achieve a damp condition with no standing water or shiny appearance.

407.4.2 Asphalt Emulsion Application. Asphalt emulsion shall be applied uniformly with a pressure distributor or spray paver at the target rates indicated in the following table. Upon approval by the engineer, the target application rate may be varied by +/- 0.02 gal/sy in the field, based upon the existing pavement condition. The tack coat material shall be heated at the time of application to a temperature in accordance with Sec 1015. When an asphalt emulsion is applied through a pressure distributor, the tack coat shall be properly set and the tacked surface shall be clean of all dirt before the next course is placed.

Tack Coat Application Rates		
Surface Type	**Target Application Rate; Undiluted (gal/yd^2)**	**Target Application Rate; 20% Diluted (gal/yd^2)**
New Asphalt Surfaces	0.05	0.06
Existing Asphalt or Concrete Surfaces	0.08	0.10
Coldmilled Asphalt or Concrete Surfaces	0.10	0.13

407.4.2.1 Dilution of Asphalt Emulsions. Water may be added only by the tack coat manufacturer and shipped to the jobsite. No dilution shall be allowed in the field. When water is added to the asphalt emulsion, the resulting mixture shall contain no more than 20 percent of added water. The contractor shall notify the engineer of the use of a diluted emulsion. The exact quantity of added water shall be indicated on the manufacturer's bill of lading, manifest or truck ticket. The target application rate shall be adjusted to the diluted target application rate as specified in the table under Sec 407.4.2.

407.4.2.2 Performance Graded (PG) Asphalt Binder. Hot applied PG graded asphalt binders may be used as tack coat in lieu of emulsified asphalt. The PG graded binders shall be applied uniformly with a pressure distributor to provide complete coverage of the preceding course or layer. Safety procedures of hot applied asphalt shall be addressed in the contractor's safety plan. A pre-construction meeting shall be held to address all safety procedures and protocols of hot applied asphalt prior to tack coat application.

407.4.3 Tack. The tack coat shall be applied in such a manner as to cause the least inconvenience to traffic and to permit one-way traffic without tracking of asphalt emulsion. A bituminous mixture shall not be placed upon a tacked surface that is not uniformly covered or surfaces that have experienced excessive loss of tack due to tracking. Re-application of tack due to excess tracking or non-uniform coverage shall be at the contractor's expense. All exposed tack coat shall be covered with bituminous mixture prior to opening to traffic.

407.5 Method of Measurement. Measurement of asphalt emulsion to the nearest gallon will be made in accordance with Sec 1015. If water is added to asphalt emulsion, the quantity to be paid for will be determined prior to the addition of water.

407.6 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantity of tack coat will be paid for at the contract unit price. No direct payment shall be made for water added to the asphalt emulsion.

SECTION 408
PRIME COAT

408.1 Description. This work shall consist of preparing and treating an existing surface with bituminous material in accordance with these specifications, as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer.

408.2 Material. The type and grade of bituminous material will be specified in the contract. Liquid asphalt may be changed one grade by the engineer during construction at no change in the contract unit price. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Type RC and MC Liquid Asphalts 1015

Emulsified Asphalt 1015

408.3 Equipment. Equipment shall be in accordance with Sec 407.

408.4 Construction Requirements.

408.4.1 Preparation of Surface. The surface to be primed shall be shaped to the required grade and cross section, shall be free from all ruts, corrugations, segregated material or other irregularities, and shall be uniformly compacted by rolling. The surface shall be firm and slightly damp when primer is applied. Delays in priming may necessitate reprocessing or reshaping to provide a smooth compacted surface.

408.4.2 Application. Bituminous material shall be applied to the width of the section to be primed by means of a pressure distributor in a uniform, continuous spread. The application rate shall be as specified in the contract, or as revised by the engineer between 0.2 and 0.5 gallon per square yard. The primer shall be heated at the time of application in accordance with the limits provided in Sec 1015.

408.4.2.1 There shall be no overlapping of bituminous material. Pools of primer material remaining on the surface after the application shall be removed. As soon as the bituminous material has been absorbed by the surface and will not track, traffic may be routed onto the treated traveled way. Any damage caused to the prime coat due to the contractor's equipment or decision to allow traffic on the roadway too soon shall be primed again at the contractor's expense.

408.4.2.2 The primer shall be properly cured and the primed surface shall be cleaned of all dirt and surplus sand before the next course is placed.

408.5 Method of Measurement. Bituminous material will be measured to the nearest gallon in accordance with Sec 1015.

408.6 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantities of prime coat will be paid for at the contract unit price for each of the pay items included in the contract. No direct payment will be made for furnishing or applying any water required for dampening the surface to be primed.

SECTION 409
SEAL COAT

409.1 Description. This work shall consist of placing bituminous material followed by placing cover aggregate material.

409.2 Material. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section
Aggregate for Seal Coats[a]	1003

[a]The grade of aggregate will be specified in the contract

409.2.1 All limestone and dolomite shall be either pre-coated as specified herein or fog sealed in accordance with Sec 413.

409.2.2 Emulsified asphalt or polymer modified emulsions shall be in accordance with Sec 1015, with the following exceptions:

Asphalt Emulsion Requirements			
Tests on Asphalt Binder[a]	**Test Method**	**Minimum**	**Maximum**
Penetration @ 77°F	ASTM D 5	60	150
Elastic Recovery @ 50°F, %	AASHTO T 301	65	---

[a]These tests shall be done on the asphalt residue for emulsions and cutbacks.

409.2.3 Pre-coating binder shall be in accordance with Sec 1015 for PG binder or emulsions.

409.3 Job Mix Formula. The contractor shall submit the mix design to the laboratory for approval no less than two weeks prior to placing the seal coat.

409.3.1 The mix design shall contain the following information:

(a) All possible sources intended for use, grade and certified test results for the asphalt binder.

(b) Source, type (formation, etc.), ledge number if applicable, and gradation of the aggregate.

(c) The grade and certified test results for the aggregate.

(d) The application rate used to pre-coat the aggregate as allowed in Sec 1003.

(e) The percent binder application rate, gallons per square yard. The adjustment factor shall be included if specified in the contract plans.

(f) The aggregate application rate, pounds per square yard.

409.3.1.1 The target binder application rates for each aggregate grade, as found in Sec 1003, shall be:

Grade	A1	A2	B1	B2	C
Target Binder Application Rate, gal/sy[a]	0.38	0.28	0.38	0.28	0.38

[a]Corrections to the rate listed may be included in the plans

409.3.2 A surface condition, aggregate properties and traffic volume correction may be provided in the plans. This assessment will contain an allowable variance from the binder application rate. The aggregate application rates shall not vary from the mix design by more than ± 5 pounds per square yard.

409.4 Equipment. Equipment shall be capable to perform the following:

(a) Heating and applying bituminous material, measuring temperature of tank contents and continuously verify application rates. The calibration of the system shall be accomplished by the contractor and approved by the engineer prior to use. The contractor shall furnish all equipment, material, labor and supervision necessary to perform this calibration. Equipment shall be calibrated subsequent to any repair that may affect calibration.

(b) Removal of loose aggregate from applied surface.

(c) Seating of aggregate without causing aggregate fracture.

(d) Accurately measuring and uniformly spreading of the aggregate over the full width of the bituminous material and have ability to vary the application width depending upon road width. It shall also be able to have verifiable application rates. The calibration of the system shall be accomplished by the contractor and approved by the engineer prior to use. The contractor shall furnish all equipment, material, labor and supervision necessary to perform this calibration. Equipment shall be calibrated subsequent to any repair that may affect calibration.

409.5 Construction Requirements.

409.5.1 Weather Limitations. Bituminous material shall not be placed on any wet surface. Seal coat shall only be placed when the ambient temperature and the temperature of the pavement on which it is to be placed is above 60 F. Temperatures shall be obtained in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 20.

409.5.1.1 Forecasted Weather. No seal coat shall be placed when the forecast from the National Weather Service predicts ambient temperatures falling below 40 F within 24 hours of construction.

409.5.2 Surface Preparation. The surface shall be thoroughly cleaned or swept to remove all dirt, packed soil, or any other foreign material prior to spraying the bituminous material.

409.5.3 Application of Bituminous Material.

409.5.3.1 Bituminous material shall be uniformly applied within the temperature range recommended by the manufacturer. Any bituminous material applied on adjacent Portland cement or asphaltic concrete pavements, curbs, bridges or any areas not specified to be sealed shall be removed by the contractor, at the contractor's expense.

409.5.3.2 When pre-coating is required, the cover aggregate shall be pre-coated at a minimum rate of 0.5 percent residual asphalt by weight of aggregate.

409.5.4 Compaction. All aggregate shall be uniformly seated over the entire area being sealed in a manner which minimizes aggregate loss and prevents crushing of aggregate.

409.5.5 Dust Control. The contractor may be required to control dust should airborne dust become a concern, or as directed by the engineer.

409.5.6 Loose Aggregate. Loose aggregate shall be removed from curbs, gutters, sidewalks, driveways, and other areas designated by the engineer.

409.6 Traffic Control.

409.6.1 During application of the seal coat, the contractor shall control traffic through the work zone by means of pilot vehicles traveling at a maximum speed of 35 miles per hour. The contractor shall designate a responsible person for receiving and resolving damage claims made by the public. This person shall be available by telephone during the contractor's normal business hours Monday through Friday.

409.6.2 The contractor shall provide contact information signs with their company name and phone number on a variable width by 24 inch tall sign with black lettering on an orange background. The first line shall state "CONTRACTOR" in uppercase 4 inch C highway font, the second line shall contain the contractor name in upper/lower case 4 inch B highway font and the third line shall contain the contractor's phone number in 4 inch

C highway font. Signs shall be posted near the beginning and end of the project limits as approved by the engineer.

409.7 Basis of Acceptance. Acceptance shall be made no less than 14 days from completion of the route. Seal coat will be evaluated for acceptance by the engineer based on the following criteria:

(a) No location having bleeding of binder in excess of two square feet or a combined area of bleeding greater than 10 square feet on any 50 foot length of two lane roadway.

(b) No continued or ongoing tracking from seal coat onto other roadways or adjacent driveways.

(c) No transverse and longitudinal construction joints from the seal coat application that are not straight, create a bump, or produce a poor riding surface.

(d) Longitudinal construction joints that are straight and contain no gaps.

(e) No asymmetric appearance stemming from longitudinal grooves or ridges in the surface.

(f) A pavement treatment having complete aggregate coverage with full adherence to the roadway.

The contractor is responsible for any damage claims that are associated with the seal coat until the route is accepted by the engineer.

409.8 Method of Measurement.

409.8.1 Final measurement for aggregate in the completed seal coat will not be made except for authorized changes during construction, or where appreciable errors are found in the contract quantity.

409.8.2 Where required, measurement of seal coat, complete in place, will be made to the nearest square yard for aggregate.

409.8.3 Final measurement for binder will be made to the nearest gallon in accordance with Sec 1015. Any revision or correction will be computed and added to or deducted from the contract quantity.

409.9 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantities of seal coat aggregate and binder, in place, will be paid for at the contract unit price. No separate payment will be made for pre-coating aggregate, fog sealing, dust control, or for providing and installing contract information signs. If the binder application rate includes a correction factor, it is included in the plan quantities.

MoDOT 501 CONCRETE

501.1 Description. Concrete shall consist of a mixture of cement, fine aggregate, coarse aggregate and water, combined in the proportions specified for the various classes. Admixtures may be added as specifically required or permitted.

501.2 Material. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section
Coarse Aggregate*	1005.2
Fine Aggregate*	1005.3
Ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag	1017
Fly Ash	1018
Cement	1019
Concrete Admixture	1054
Water	1070

*Regardless of the gradation of the coarse and fine aggregate used in concrete for pavement or base, the aggregate shall meet the quality requirements of coarse and fine aggregate for concrete pavement.

501.2.1 Aggregate Acceptance. Quality control (QC) sampling and testing will be performed by the Contractor and quality assurance (QA) sampling and testing will be performed by the Engineer for aggregate in Portland cement concrete masonry in accordance with the following table at the last possible point of incorporation into the project. Aggregate samples may be taken either by sampling the flowing aggregate stream or upon approval by the Engineer, from the stockpile.

Item	Property	QC Test Frequency	QA Test Frequency
Portland Cement Concrete Masonry	Gradation of Course Aggregate- AASHTO T27 and T11	One per 500 cubic yards per fraction per project.	One QC split per 2,500 cubic yards with a minimum of one per project. One independent QA per project.
	Gradation of Fine Aggregate – AASHTO T27 and T11		
	Deleerious Content – MoDOT Test Method TM71		
	Absorption of Course Aggregate – AASHTO T85		
	Thin or Elongated Pieces – ASTM D4791 (+ ¾ in., 5:1)	One per source per project.	One per source per year.

501.2.2 Retained Samples. The Contractor shall retain the QC split sample, obtained as specified in Sec 502.11.2.1.5 below, for seven days until requested by the Engineer for comparison testing. A comparison will be considered favorable when the QA results of a QC retained sample are within two standard deviations, or one-half the specification tolerance, whichever is greater, from the mean of the Contractor's test results for that particular lot.

> **502.11.2.1.5 Retained Samples**. All aggregate samples taken by the Contractor for determining the gradation, deleterious content, absorption, and thin or elongated pieces shall be retained for the Contractor for a minimum of seven days unless otherwise instructed. The retained sample shall be the remaining half of the final reduction in sample size obtained for QC testing. These samples shall be maintained in clean covered containers, without contamination, readily accessible to the Engineer. The retained sample's identification shall consist of, but is not limited to:

a. Time and date sampled.

b. Product specification number.

c. Type of sample, i.e. belt, bin, stockpile.

d. Lot and sublot designation.

e. Sampler/Tester.

f. Project Job Number.

501.3 Mix Design. The proportions of cement, fine aggregate and coarse aggregate for concrete shall be approved by the Engineer within the applicable limits of the specifications for the class of concrete specified in the contract. The Contractor shall submit a mixture designed by absolute volume methods or an optimized mix design method such as Shilstone method or other recognized optimization method. Optimized will refer to aggregate gradations that produce lower water demands, as well as improved workability and finishing characteristics. The target and allowable gradation range of each fraction shall be included. The Contractor may be required to submit representative samples of each ingredient to the Engineer for laboratory testing.

501.3.1 Required Information. The concrete mix design shall contain the following information:

a. Source, type and specific gravity of Portland cement

b. Source, type (class, grade, etc.) and specific gravity of supplementary materials, if used

c. Source, name, type and amount of admixtures

d. Source, type (formation, etc.), ledge number if applicable, and gradation of the aggregate

e. Specific gravity and absorption of each fraction in accordance with AASHTO T 85 for coarse aggregate and AASHTO T 84 for fine aggregate, including raw data

f. Unit Weight of each fraction in accordance with AASHTO T 19

g. The percent of each aggregate component used for optimized concrete mixes

h. The design air content and slump

i. Batch weights of Portland Cement and supplemental cementitious materials

j. Batch weights of coarse, intermediate and fine aggregates

k. Batch weight of water

501.3.2 Paving Concrete. For PCCP mixes, the gradation requirements of Sec 1005 will not apply. For all fractions, 100 percent of each fraction shall pass the 2-inch sieve. When Grade F is required, 100 percent of each fraction shall pass the 3/4-inch sieve.

501.3.3 Optimized Masonry Concrete. For optimized PCCM mixes, the gradation requirements of Sec 1005.2 and Sec 1005.3 will not apply. For coarse aggregate, 100 percent of each fraction shall pass the one-inch sieve and no more that 2.5 percent shall pass the No. 200 sieve. This value may be increased to 3.0 percent passing, provided there is no more than 1.0 percent of the material passing the No. 200 sieve in the fine aggregate. For fine aggregate, no more than 2.0 percent shall pass the No. 200 sieve for natural sand, and no more than 4.0 percent shall pass the No. 200 sieve for manufactured sand.

501.3.4 Non-Optimized Masonry Concrete. When optimized aggregate gradations are not selected by the Contractor, all provisions, including gradations requirements of Sec 1005 shall apply

501.3.5 Fine Aggregate Classes. Fine aggregates are grouped into four classes and a minimum cement factor has been established for each class.

501.3.6 Cement Factors. The minimum cement requirements in pounds per cubic yard of concrete for the various classes of sand shall be as follows:

Cement Requirements[a,b]							
Class of Sand	Class A-1 Concrete	Class B Concrete	Class B-1 Concrete	Class B-2 Concrete	Class MB-2 Concrete[g,h]	Pavement Concrete	Seal Concrete
A[c]	600	525	610	705	600	560	660
B[d]	640	565	640	735	620	560	695
C[e]	-	585	660	750	640	560	715
D[f]	-	620	695	790	660	560	735

[a]When used, Type IP, I(PM), IS or I(SM) cement shall be substituted on a pound for pound basis for Type I or Type II cement and adjustments in design mix proportions will be required to correct the volume yield of the mixture.

[b]The Contractor may submit an optimized mix design which has a maximum 50 pounds per cubic yard reduction in cement from that shown in the tables. If the Contractor chooses this option, the mixture will be subject to review, laboratory testing and approval by the Engineer. All other requirements for the cement factor will apply.

[c]Class A sand will include all sand, except manufactured sand, weighing 109 pounds per cubic foot or more.

[d]Class B sand will include all chert, river and Crowley Ridge sand weighing from 106 to 108 pounds, inclusive, per cubic foot or glacial sand weighing 108 pounds or less per cubic foot.

[e]Class C sand will include all chert, river and Crowley Ridge sand weighing from 101 to 105 pounds, inclusive, per cubic foot.

[f]Class D sand will include all sand weighing 100 pounds or less per cubic foot and any manufactured sand that is produced by the process of grinding and pulverizing large particles of aggregate or which contains more than 50 percent of material produced by the reduction of coarser particles. Manufactured sand produced from limestone or dolomite shall not be used in Portland cement concrete for driving surfaces such as bridge decks, pavements and full depth shoulders.

[g]Modified B-2 (MB-2) concrete may be used in-place of Class B-2 Concrete.

[h]Modified B-2 (MB-2) concrete shall use at least one supplementary cementitious material in accordance with this specification. In no case shall MB-2 concrete use less than 15 percent fly ash or GGBFS when used as the individual supplementary cementitious material. In no case shall MB-2 concrete use less than 6 percent metakaolin when used as the individual supplementary cementitious material.

501.3.7 Unit Weight. The weight per cubic foot shall be the dry rodded weight per cubic foot of the aggregate, determined in accordance with AASHTO T 19.

501.3.8 Compressive Strength Requirements. Concrete classes shall meet the following minimum 28-day compressive strength requirements in pounds per square inch:

Minimum Design Compressive Strength[1]						
Class A-1 Concrete	Class B Concrete	Class B-1 Concrete	Class B-2 Concrete	Class MB-2 Concrete	Pavement Concrete	Seal Concrete
6,000	3,000	4,000	4,000	4,000	4,000	3,000

[1]Minimum compressive strength required unless otherwise specified in the contract documents or approved by the Engineer.

501.3.9 Absorptions. Coarse aggregate absorption tolerances shall be in accordance with the following:

The Contractor shall halt production and make appropriate adjustments whenever either of the following occurs:

a. One-point falls outside the action limit line for individual measurements or range.

b. Two points in a row fall outside the specification limit but within the action limit line for individual measurements.

Individual Measurements	
Control Parameter	Action Limit
Absorption	Mix Design plus 0.3% to Mix Design plus 0.6%

501.4 Sampling. Sampling of fresh concrete shall be in accordance with AASHTO R 60, except that for central or truck mixed concrete, the entire sample for slump and air tests and for molding compressive strength specimens may be taken at one time after approximately one cubic yard of concrete has been discharged, instead of at three or more regular intervals during the discharge of the entire batch. Acceptability of the concrete for slump and air content and, if applicable, for strength requirements, will be determined by tests on these samples.

501.5 Consistency. The slump of the concrete shall be within the limits for the respective classes of concrete. The concrete shall be uniform in consistency and shall contain the minimum quantity of water required to produce the designated slump. The slump of concrete mixes will be determined in accordance with AASHTO T 119. The quantity of mixing water in the concrete shall be considered the net quantity after proper allowance has been made for absorption by the aggregate. The slump and mixing water content of the concrete, when placed in the work, shall not exceed the following limits:

Slump and Maximum Water/Cementitious Materials Ratio			
Class of Concrete	Max. Slump, In.	Max. Pounds of Mixing Water Per Pound of Cementitious Materials	
		Air-Entrained	Non-Air-Entrained
A-1	3 ½	0.46	0.51
B	4	0.51	0.55
B-1	4	0.44	0.53
B-2	3	0.40	-
MB-2	6	0.42	-
Pavement	-	0.50	0.53
Seal	8	-	0.53

501.6 Measurement of Material. The cement and aggregate for concrete shall be measured by weight. The weights of coarse and fine aggregates to be used will be calculated from the proportions approved by the

Engineer. Batches that do not contain the proper quantities of material shall be wasted at the Contractor's expense.

501.6.1 Weighing Tolerances. The weighing and batching equipment shall be designed and maintained in such a condition that the material for each batch can be quickly and accurately weighed and shall be operated within a tolerance of plus or minus 0.5 percent for cement and plus or minus 1.0 percent for aggregate. The equipment used for delivery of material to the weigh hoppers shall not permit intermingling of material. Weighing hoppers shall discharge completely and there shall be no accumulation of tare material. Scales shall be accurate to within 0.4 percent of the net load applied. The change in load required to change the position of rest of the indicating element or elements of indicating scales an observable amount shall not be greater than 0.1 percent of the nominal scale capacity. If beam-type scales are used, a separate beam shall be provided for each type of material to be used and means shall be provided for adjustment of tare on a scale separate from those used for other material.

501.6.2 Water Meter Tolerances. Mixing water shall be measured by volume or by weight. If measured by weight, scales shall be in accordance with Sec 501.6.1. The device for the measurement shall be readily adjustable and under all operating conditions shall measure the required quantity within a tolerance of one quart or one percent, whichever is greater.

501.6.3 Calibration Frequency. Plant scales and water metering devices shall be calibrated and certified annually and after every plant move by an approved commercial scale service. Admixture metering devices shall be calibrated by a commercial scale company, the admixture company or the concrete plant company. Plant scales that have not been moved shall be verified six months after their calibration. A copy of the calibration and verification shall be provided to the Engineer.

501.7 Mixing. The mixer shall produce concrete uniform in color, appearance and distribution of the material throughout the mixture. The cement, aggregate and no less than 60 percent of the water shall be mixed a minimum of one minute. The remaining water shall be added within 15 seconds after all other material for the batch is in the mixer. If mixers having multiple compartment drums are used, the time required to transfer material between compartments will be considered mixing time. The speed at which the drum rotates shall be as designated by the manufacturer. If such mixing does not result in uniform and smooth texture concrete, a sufficient number of additional revolutions at the same speed shall be performed until a thorough mixing of each batch of concrete is secured. The mixing time shall be measured from the time all cement, aggregate and 60 percent of the water are in the drum. The volume of concrete mixed in each batch shall not exceed the manufacturer's rated capacity. The mixer shall be equipped to automatically time the mixing of each batch of concrete. If the automatic timing device becomes inoperable, a manual timing device shall be provided to complete the day's operation.

501.8 Central and Truck Mixed Concrete. The following additional requirements will apply to central and truck mixed concrete.

501.8.1 Mixer Inspection. All central mixers, truck mixers and agitators shall be in accordance with of these specifications prior to use, and inspection of the equipment shall be made periodically during the work. Only equipment found acceptable in every respect and capable of producing uniform results will be permitted.

501.8.2 Uniformity Testing. A uniformity test in accordance with ASTM C 94 Annex A1, shall be performed during the annual calibration at a central mix drum plant and at the beginning of production for a project at a mobile paving plant.

a. A uniformity test shall be performed for the largest and smallest proposed batch size.

b. The two samples shall be obtained within an elapsed time of no more than 15 minutes.

c. The air content, slump and mix proportions of the concrete tested shall be in accordance with these specifications for that class of concrete or the uniformity tests shall be invalid.

d. The use of a one-quarter cubic foot measure will be permitted in determination of weight per cubic foot.

e. Cylinders may be cured in damp sand after the first 48 hours.

f. The Contractor may designate the mixing time for which uniformity tests are to be performed. The mixing time shall be a minimum of 60 seconds. The maximum mixing time shall not exceed the mixing time established by uniformity tests by more than 60 seconds for air-entrained concrete. The mixed concrete shall meet the uniformity requirements specified above before any concrete may be used for pavement or structures. The Engineer may allow the use of the test concrete for appropriate incidental construction. Tests shall be performed by the Contractor, in the presence of the Engineer. No direct payment will be made for labor, equipment, material or testing. After operational procedures of batching and mixing are thus established, no changes in procedure will be permitted without re-establishing procedures by uniformity tests.

501.8.2.1 Measuring Mixing Time. Measurement of mixing time shall start at the time all the solid material is in the drum and shall end at the beginning of the next sequential operation.

501.8.2.2 Verification of Mixer. Mixer performance tests shall be repeated whenever the appearance of the concrete or the coarse aggregate content of samples selected in accordance with ASTM C 94, as modified above, indicates that adequate mixing is not being accomplished.

501.8.3 Truck Mixed Concrete. Truck mixed concrete shall be mixed at the proportioning plant and the mixer shall operate at agitating speed while in transit. Truck mixed concrete may be mixed at the point of delivery, provided the cement or cement and mixing water, are added at that point. Mixing of truck mixed concrete shall begin immediately after the introduction of the mixing water and cement to the aggregate or the introduction of the cement to the aggregate.

501.8.4 Truck Mixer Requirements. A truck mixer shall consist of a watertight revolving drum suitably mounted, fitted with adequate blades, and equipped with a device for determining the number of mixing revolutions. Truck mixers shall produce a thoroughly mixed and uniform mass of concrete and shall discharge the concrete without segregation. A truck agitator shall consist of a watertight revolving drum or a watertight container suitably mounted and fitted with adequate revolving blades. Truck agitators shall transport and discharge the concrete without segregation. Mixers and agitators shall be cleaned of accumulation of hardened concrete or mortar.

501.8.5 Rating Plate. Except as hereinafter permitted, each truck mixer shall have permanently attached to the truck a metal rating plate issued by and in accordance with the capacity requirements of the Truck Mixer Manufacturers Bureau (TMMB), as approved by NRMCA, on which is stated the maximum capacity in terms of volume of mixed concrete for the various uses to which the equipment is applicable. The truck shall also have attached a manufacturer's data plate that shall state the actual capacity as an agitator, and the maximum and minimum mixing and agitating speeds. If truck mixers are used for mixing or agitating, the volume of concrete in each batch shall not exceed the maximum capacity shown on the metal rating plate issued by the TMMB, as approved by NRMCA, except that if a lower capacity for agitating is shown on the manufacturer's data plate, that lower capacity shall govern. The minimum batch size for truck mixers shall be one cubic yard. The Engineer may reduce the batch size or reject use of any truck mixer that does not produce concrete uniform in color, appearance and distribution of material throughout the mass. A quantity of concrete that results in axle and gross loads in excess of statutory limits will not be permitted.

501.8.6 Truck Mixing Requirements. Truck mixers and agitators shall be operated at the speed of rotation designated by the manufacturer of the equipment. Truck mixed concrete shall initially be mixed no less than 70 or more than 100 revolutions of the drum at mixing speed after all ingredients, including water, are in the mixer, except that when the batch volume does not exceed 57.5 percent of the gross volume of the drum or 91 percent of the rated maximum capacity, the number of revolutions required for mixing shall be no less than 50 or more than 100. When a truck mixer or truck agitator is used for transporting concrete that has been completely mixed, agitation of the concrete shall continue during transportation at the speed designated by the manufacturer of the equipment as agitating speed. Water may be added to the mixture no more than two times after initial mixing is completed. Each time water is added, the drum shall be turned an additional 30 revolutions, or more if necessary, at mixing speed, until uniform mixing is accomplished. All water added will be included in determining the effective water in the mixture.

501.8.7 Water Adjustments at Job Site. Each increment of water added at the job site shall be measured within a tolerance of one percent of the total effective water required for the batch. Water used to wash the drum of the mixer shall not be used as mixing water.

501.8.8 Handling and Discharge Requirements. Central or truck mixed concrete shall be delivered to the site of the work and shall meet the following conditions:

a. The handling and discharge of concrete shall not cause segregation or damage to the concrete and will allow placement with a minimum of handling. All handling and discharge shall occur prior to initial set of the concrete.

b. Truck mixed concrete shall not exceed 300 revolutions after the beginning of mixing.

501.8.9 Non-Agitating Equipment. The discharge of concrete transported in non-agitating equipment shall not cause segregation or damage to the concrete and will allow placement with a minimum of handling. All handling and discharge shall occur prior to initial set of the concrete. Bodies of non-agitating hauling equipment shall be smooth, mortar-tight metal containers capable of discharging the concrete at a satisfactory, controlled rate without segregation.

501.8.10 Testing Facilities. The Contractor shall furnish the necessary equipment and personnel to assist the Engineer in obtaining a representative QA sample. The ready-mix producer shall notify the Engineer every day that concrete is being supplied for this project. A daily log of plant production shall be available for the Engineer to review.

501.8.11 Delivery Tickets. The manufacturer of truck mixed concrete and of central mixed concrete for use in structures shall furnish to the Engineer with each truck load of concrete before unloading at the site, a delivery ticket on which is shown information concerning the concrete as follows:

a. Name of concrete plant.

b. Serial number of the ticket.

c. Truck number when a truck mixer is utilized.

d. Name of Contractor.

e. Job Number, route and county designation.

f. Mix identification number assigned to the mix.

g. Specific class of concrete.

h. Quantity of concrete in cubic yards.

i. Date and time when batch was loaded or first mixing of cement and aggregate.

j. Number of revolutions, when truck mixed.

501.8.12 Concrete Plant Documentation. The Contractor shall complete the required concrete plant documentation once per working day at the central ready mix or paving plant. The documentation shall be made available to the Engineer within 24 hours after concrete is batched.

501.9 Volumetric Batched and Continuous Mixed Concrete. Upon written request by the Contractor, the Engineer may approve the use of concrete proportioned by volume. If concrete is proportioned by volume, the other requirements of these specifications with the following modifications will apply.

501.9.1 Proportional Devices. Volume proportioning devices, such as counters, calibrated gate openings or flow meters, shall be available for controlling and determining the quantities of the ingredients discharged. In operation, the entire measuring and dispensing mechanism shall produce the specified proportions of each ingredient.

501.9.2 Controls. All indicating devices that affect the accuracy of proportioning and mixing of concrete shall be in full view of and near enough to be read by the operator while concrete is being produced. The operator shall have convenient access to all controls.

501.9.3 Calibration. The proportioning devices shall be calibrated by the Contractor in the presence of and subject to approval from the Engineer. Calibration of the cement and aggregate proportioning devices shall be accomplished by weighing each component. Calibration of the admixture and water proportioning devices shall be accomplished by weight or volume. Tolerances in proportioning the individual components will be as follows:

Item	Tolerance
Cement, Weight percent	0 to +4
Fine Aggregate, Weight percent	± 2
Coarse Aggregate, Weight percent	± 2
Admixtures, Weight or Volume percent	± 3
Water, Weight or Volume Percent	± 1

501.9.4 Verification of Yield. Verification of the proportioning devices may be required at any time by the Engineer. Verification shall be accomplished as follows. With the cement meter set on zero and all other controls set for the designated mix, the activated mixer shall discharge mixed material into a 1/4 cubic yard container measuring 36 x 36 x 9 inches. When the container is level-struck full, making provisions for settling the material into all corners, the cement meter shall show a discharge equal to the design proportion of cement for 1/4 cubic yard. A tolerance of ± 1/8 inch from the top of the container will be permitted. If the correct yield is not obtained, the proportioning devices shall be adjusted to obtain the design mix or the proportioning devices shall be recalibrated as directed by the Engineer.

501.9.5 Water Control. The rate of water supplied shall be measured by a calibrated flow meter coordinated with the cement and aggregate feeding mechanism and with the mixer. The rate shall be adjustable in order to control slump at the desired level.

501.9.6 Liquid Admixture. Liquid admixtures shall be dispensed through a controlled flow meter. A positive means to observe the continuous flow of material shall be provided. If an admixture requires diluting, the admixture shall be diluted and thoroughly mixed prior to introducing the admixture into the dispenser. When admixtures are diluted, the ratio of dilution and the mixing shall be approved by and performed in the presence of the Engineer.

501.9.7 Concrete Mixer. The concrete mixer shall be approved by the Engineer and shall be an augertype continuous mixer used in conjunction with volumetric proportioning. The mixer shall produce concrete, uniform in color and appearance, with homogeneous distribution of the material throughout the mixture. Mixing time necessary to produce uniform concrete shall be established by the Contractor and shall comply with other requirements of these specifications. Only equipment found acceptable in every respect and capable of producing uniform results will be permitted.

501.9.7.1 Material Storage Capacity. The continuous mixer shall be capable of carrying sufficient unmixed dry bulk cement, fine aggregate, coarse aggregate, admixtures and water, in separate compartments to produce no less than 6 cubic yards of concrete at the job site. Each batching or mixing unit or both, shall carry in a prominent place a metal plate or plates on which are plainly marked the gross volume of the unit in terms of mixed concrete, discharge speed and the weight-calibrated constant of the machine in terms of a revolution counter or other output indicator.

501.9.7.2 Measurement of Cement. The continuous mixer shall be capable of positive measurement of cement being introduced into the mix. A recording meter visible to the operator and equipped with a ticket printout shall indicate the quantity.

501.9.7.3 Measurement of Water. The continuous mixer shall provide positive control of the flow of water and admixtures into the mixing chamber. Water flow shall be indicated by a flow meter and be readily adjustable to provide for minor variations in aggregate moisture. The mixer shall be capable of continuously circulating or mechanically agitating the admixtures.

501.9.7.4 Scalping Screen. The continuous mixer shall have a one-inch maximum size scalping screen over the fine aggregate bin to screen out mud balls, conglomerate lumps or any other contaminant material that could interrupt the flow of fine aggregate during proportioning.

501.9.7.5 Batching Operations. The continuous mixer shall be capable of being calibrated to automatically proportion and blend all components on a continuous or intermittent basis as required, and shall discharge mixed material through a conventional chute.

501.9.8 Handling Materials. Storage facilities for all material shall be designed to permit the Engineer to make necessary inspections prior to the batching operations. The facilities shall also permit identification of approved material at all times, and shall be designed to avoid mixing with or contaminating by, unapproved material. Coarse and fine aggregate shall be furnished and handled so variations in the moisture content affecting the uniform consistency of the concrete will be avoided.

501.10 Air-Entrained Concrete. Air content for all classifications of concrete shall be determined in accordance with AASHTO T 152. Air-entrained concrete shall be used for the construction of the following items:

a. All retaining walls and bridge units, except culvert-type structures and seal courses.
b. Concrete median barriers.
c. All piles (not required for cast-in-place concrete piles).
d. Concrete pavements.
e. Approach slabs and paved approaches.
f. Concrete medians and median strips.
g. Sidewalks, curb ramps and steps.
h. Curbs, gutters, curb and gutter and surface drain basins and drains.

i. Concrete pedestals for signs, signals and lighting.

501.10.1 Other Concrete. All other concrete, except seal concrete, may be air-entrained but only in accordance with the requirements of these specifications.

501.10.2 Air Content Limitations. When air-entrained concrete is used, the mix design target range for quantity of air content by volume shall not be less than 4.5 percent or greater than 7.5 percent. When field measured air content exceeds 7.5 percent, but is less than or equal to 9.0 percent, the concrete may be placed if allowed by the Contractor's quality control plan and at the Contractor's risk that all other concrete requirements will be met, including strength. When field measured air content is less than 4.5 percent, the concrete may be re-dosed with air entrainment admixture in accordance with Section 501.10.4. Under no circumstances shall any concrete be incorporated into the work with an air content less than 4.5 percent or greater than 9.0 percent.

501.10.3 Incorporation Procedures. Air-entraining admixtures shall be added to the concrete during the mixing process. The admixture shall be of such volume and strength that the admixture can be accurately measured and dispensed in accordance with the manufacturer 's recommendations. The dispenser shall consistently deliver the required quantity of admixture within a tolerance of ± 3 percent.

501.10.4 Re-Dosing. When the measured air content is below the minimum specified limit, the Contractor will be allowed one attempt per mixer truckload to re-dose the concrete in the field. The Contractor shall obtain approval of the Re-Dosing Plan from the Engineer prior to the start of work. The Re-Dosing Plan shall address the following:

a. Field measurement of the air entrainment admixture
b. Brand of air entrainment admixture being used
c. Incorporation and mixing of the air entrainment admixture
d. The use of additional water

501.11 Concrete Admixtures for Retarding Set. If specified in the contract, an approved retarding admixture shall be provided and incorporated into the concrete. If not specified in the contract, the use of an approved retarding admixture will be permitted upon written notification from the Contractor. Any retarding admixture shall be added in accordance with Sec 501.10.3 by means of a dispenser conforming to the requirements of that section. No direct payment will be made for furnishing the retarding admixture or for incorporating the admixture into the mixture.

501.12 Water-Reducing Admixtures. Type A water-reducing admixtures may be used in any concrete. When Type A water-reducing admixture is added to pavement concrete for paving purposes, a reduction of cement up to 25 lbs per cubic yard will be permitted. The dosage rate of Type A water-reducing admixture shall be within the ranges recommended by the manufacturer and approved by the Engineer. Any cementitious material substitution permitted by specification shall be based on the reduced cement content. Water-reducing admixtures shall be added in accordance with Sec 501.10.3 by means of a dispenser conforming to the requirements of that section. High range water-reducing admixtures may be used when specified or as approved by the Engineer.

501.12.1 Modified B-2 Utilized. Modified B-2 concrete shall use a Type A or Type D water-reducer admixture.

501.12.2 Silica Fume and Metakaolin Utilized. Concrete utilizing silica fume or metakaolin shall use a water-reducer admixture that may be added by hand methods. The amount of water contained by the water-reducer admixture shall be included in the overall water content of the concrete.

501.12.3 Consistency Requirement. When a water-reducer admixture is used the maximum allowed slump may be increased to 6 inches for all concrete classes. The concrete shall be homogeneous with no aggregate segregation.

501.13 Accelerating Admixtures. The use of calcium chloride or other approved accelerating admixtures in concrete mixtures will not be permitted.

501.14 Supplementary Cementitious Materials in Concrete. The Contractor may use fly ash, GGBFS, silica fume or metakaolin in the production of concrete in accordance with these specifications. Ternary mixes will be allowed for all concrete classes. Ternary mixes are mixes that contain a combination of Portland cement and two supplementary cementitious materials. Supplementary cementitious materials may be used to replace a maximum of 40 percent of the Portland cement. The amount of each supplementary cementitious materials used in a ternary mix shall not exceed the limits specified herein.

501.14.1 Fly Ash. Approved Class C or Class F fly ash may be used to replace a maximum of 25 percent of the Portland cement on a pound for pound basis in all concrete.

501.14.2 Ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag. Approved GGBFS may be used to replace a maximum of 30 percent of the Portland cement on a pound for pound basis in all concrete.

501.14.3 Silica Fume. Approved silica fume may be used to replace a percent of the Portland cement on a pound for pound basis. The following limits shall apply when silica fume is used:

Silica Fume Replacement Limits, %		
Class of Concrete	Minimum	Maximum
MB-2	6	8
A-1, B, B-1, B-2, PCCP, Seal	-	8

501.14.3.1 Silica Fume Requirements. Silica fume shall be approved prior to use and be in accordance with ASTM C 1240, except as noted herein. If dry compacted form, the admixture shall be 100 percent silica fume with no admixtures. Silica fume slurries may contain other approved admixtures, such as water reducers or retarders, if the admixtures are included by the manufacturer of the silica fume admixture.

501.14.3.2 Manufacturer Certification. The Contractor shall furnish to the Engineer a manufacturer's certification along with the brand name, batch identification, quantity represented, percent solids and the type, name and quantity of any admixtures, that are provided in the silica fume admixture.

501.14.3.3 Silica Fume Test Results. The manufacturer's certification shall contain results of recent tests conducted on samples of the silica fume material taken during production or transfer and indicating conformance with Tables 1 and 3 of ASTM C 1240 and this specification. The supplier shall further certify that the material being furnished is in accordance with this specification.

501.14.3.4 Silica Fume Approval. The Contractor shall furnish evidence of approval from the Missouri Department of Transportation (MoDOT) for the proposed silica fume.

501.14.3.5 Silica Fume Slurry. Liquid silica fume admixture shall be protected from freezing at all times.

501.14.3.6 Admixture Compatibility. All admixtures used shall be compatible with the silica fume admixture and shall be recommended or approved in writing by the manufacturer of the silica fume admixture.

501.14.4 Metakaolin. Approved metakaolin may be used to replace a maximum of 15 percent of the Portland cement on a pound for pound basis in all concrete.

501.14.4.1 Metakaolin Requirement. Metakaolin shall be approved prior to use and be in accordance with AASHTO M321.

501.14.4.2 Manufacturer Certification. The Contractor shall furnish to the Engineer a manufacturer's certification along with the brand name, batch identification and quantity represented.

501.14.4.3 Metakaolin Test Results. The manufacturer's certification shall contain results of recent tests conducted on samples of the metakaolin taken during production or transfer and indicating conformance with AASHTO M321 and this specification. The supplier shall further certify that the material being furnished is in accordance with this specification.

501.14.4.4 Metakaolin Approval. The Contractor shall furnish evidence of approval from the Missouri Department of Transportation (MoDOT) for the proposed metakaolin.

501.14.5 Source Changes. Changes in class or source of fly ash, grade and source of GGBFS, brand and source of silica fume or brand and source of metakaolin used in concrete structures will be permitted only with written approval from the Engineer. Only fly ash, GGBFS, silica fume or metakaolin resulting in concrete of the same color shall be used in any individual unit of the structure.

501.14.6 Mix Proportions. When fly ash, GGBFS, silica fume or metakaolin is used, an adjustment in design mix proportions will be required to correct the volume yield of mixture. Approval shall be obtained from the Engineer prior to any change in mix design or proportions.

501.14.7 Mixing Water. Maximum mixing water shall be based on total cementitious material. The quantity of mixing water in the concrete shall be considered the net quantity after proper allowance has been made for absorption by the aggregate.

501.14.8 Measuring Fly Ash and Ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag. Fly ash or GGBFS shall be measured in the same manner and with the same accuracy as cement. Fly ash or GGBFS may be weighed separately on the same scale as cement, provided the scale increments are such that the specified weighing accuracy can be maintained. If the fly ash or GGBFS is weighed together with the cement, the cement shall be weighed first and the accuracy shall apply to the combined weight.

501.14.9 Measuring Silica Fume and Metakaolin. Silica fume or metakaolin shall be measured by weight or volume within a tolerance of plus or minus 2 percent.

501.14.10 Silica Fume and Metakaolin Batching Sequence. Silica fume or metakaolin shall be added at the plant at the same point in the batch sequence as recommended by the manufacturer of the material. The silica fume or metakaolin may be added by hand methods.

501.14.11 Calculating Silica Fume Solids. For silica fume solutions, the quantity of liquid silica fume admixture needed to furnish the required silica fume solids shall be calculated based on the weight per gallon and percent solids of the silica fume admixture being used.

501.14.12 Measuring Cementitious Materials. Fly ash, GGBFS, silica fume or metakaolin will be considered as cement when measuring mixing time.

501.15 Commercial Mixture. If specified in the contract that an approved commercial mixture of concrete may be used, the Contractor shall notify the Engineer in writing, setting out for approval the source and proportions of the mixture proposed to be furnished. The statement shall include the following:

a. The types and sources of aggregate.

b. Type and source of cement and other cementitious material.

c. Scale weights of each aggregate proposed as pounds per cubic yard of concrete.

d. Quantity of water proposed, as pounds or gallons per cubic yard of concrete.

e. Quantity of cement proposed as pounds per cubic yard of concrete.

501.15.1 Minimum Cement Content. The concrete shall contain no less than 517 pounds of cement per cubic yard. The use of fly ash, GGBFS, silica fume or metakaolin shall be in accordance with Sec 501.14. The plant shall comply with other requirements of these specifications or be as approved by the Engineer. The concrete will be subject to acceptance or rejection by visual inspection at the job site.

501.15.2 Certification. The supplier shall furnish certification with the first truck load of each day's production of concrete that the material and mix proportions used are in accordance with the approved mixture. Upon completion of the work, plant certification shall be furnished by the supplier for the total quantity delivered.

501.16 Basis of Payment. No direct payment will be made for concrete. Concrete and all incidental items necessary to complete the work unless specifically provided as a pay item in the contract documents shall be considered incidental to other pay items. No direct payment will be made for furnishing and applying the surface sealer, imbedded steel, and all other incidental work. Payment shall be considered completely covered by the contract unit price for other bid items.

END OF ITEM MoDOT 501

Intentionally Left Blank

SECTION 502
PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE BASE AND PAVEMENT

502.1 Description. This work shall consist of constructing a Portland cement concrete base or pavement, with or without reinforcement as specified, shown on the plans or directed by the engineer.

502.2 Material. All material, proportioning, air-entrainment, mixing, slump and transporting for Portland cement concrete shall be in accordance with Sec 501. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section
Emulsified Asphalt (SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1 or CSS-1H)	1015
Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement for Concrete	1036
Concrete Curing Material	1055
Material for Joints	1057

502.3 Equipment. Equipment and tools necessary for handling material and performing all parts of the work shall be satisfactory to the engineer as to design, capacity and mechanical condition. The equipment shall be at the job site sufficiently ahead of the start of construction operations to be examined thoroughly by the engineer and shall be in accordance with the following:

502.3.1 Batching Plant, Mixer and Hauling Equipment. The batching plant, mixer, water measuring equipment, weighing and hauling equipment shall be in accordance with Sec 501.

502.3.2 Slip-Form Construction. Concrete base or pavement may be constructed by the use of sliding form methods. Slip-form construction shall be in accordance with these specifications.

502.3.2.1 Consolidating and Finishing Equipment. The concrete shall be consolidated and finished by a slip-form paver designed to spread, consolidate and shape the concrete in one complete pass of the machine in such a manner to provide a smooth, dense and homogeneous pavement in conformance with the plans and specifications. No apparent slumping of the concrete shall occur within 6 inches of the pavement edge. If necessary to stop the forward movement of the paver, the vibratory and tamping elements shall be stopped immediately.

502.3.3 Vibrators. Vibrators used for full width vibration of the concrete shall be of the internal type. Vibrating equipment shall be operated in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation at a frequency to provide satisfactory results, but shall be no less than 4500 impulses per minute. Hand vibrators shall have a frequency of no less than 4500 impulses per minute. The contractor shall have a tachometer available at all times for checking the vibration frequency.

502.3.4 Concrete Saw. If sawed joints are required, equipment shall be capable of providing a groove of the specified dimensions in the concrete. Equipment shall be a wet-cut saw, referred to as a “conventional concrete saw” or a lighter weight dry-cut saw, referred to as an “early-entry concrete saw,” used to establish joints sooner than the conventional saw.

502.3.5 Equipment for Sealing Joints. An approved double boiler-type heating kettle equipped with a mechanical agitator and a satisfactory temperature indicating device shall be required. The equipment shall be capable of heating the joint sealing material uniformly without damage.

502.3.6 Auxiliary Equipment. Auxiliary equipment shall be available at all times as follows:

(a) A minimum of one footbridge designed to be readily transportable and having no contact with the concrete base or pavement.

(b) Metal dyes with beveled face numerals 3 inches to 5 inches high and thick enough to make an indentation of 1/4 inch. A satisfactory dye shall be used for marking the location of the station number.

502.3.7 Field Laboratory. The contractor shall provide a Type 1 field laboratory in accordance with Sec 601.

502.4 Construction Requirements.

502.4.1 Weather Limitations. Concrete shall not be placed upon frozen subgrade. All concrete shall be effectively protected from freezing until a minimum compressive strength of 3,500 psi has been attained. The contractor shall provide a method, meeting the approval from the engineer, of monitoring the concrete that demonstrates that the concrete has been protected from freezing. Regardless of precautions taken, the contractor shall assume all risks, and all frozen concrete shall be replaced at the contractor's expense.

502.4.2 Protection Against Rain. To protect against rain, the contractor shall have on location at all times material for the protection of the edges and surface of the unhardened concrete. The contractor shall protect the concrete from damage due to rain. Failure to properly protect unhardened concrete may constitute cause for the removal and replacement of defective concrete at the contractor's expense.

502.4.3 Setting Forms. Forms shall be sufficiently supported to avoid displacement during paving operations. Both straight and curved forms shall be supported in such position that the face of the form shall be vertical on tangents and perpendicular to the superelevated section on curves. The top of the form shall not vary more than 1/8 inch from the true grade line during placing, compacting and finishing operations. The form alignment shall not vary more than 1/4 inch from the true alignment.

502.4.4 Conditioning of Subgrade. When forms have been securely set to grade, the subgrade shall be brought to proper cross-section in accordance with Sec 209. Low areas of treated bases shall be filled only with concrete integral with the pavement. No direct payment will be made for the concrete used to fill these low areas.

502.4.5 Proportioning and Mixing Concrete. Concrete shall be proportioned and mixed by truck or central mixers in accordance with Sec 501. This shall consist of batching all aggregate, cement and water by means of automatic weighing or metering, with all additives dispensed automatically and interlocked with the automatic weighing or metering controls. For central mixed concrete, the mixing cycle shall be timed and interlocked with the weight batch cycle. The weight setting controls shall be equipped such that the controls may be locked when directed by the engineer. The automatic batching equipment shall be capable of conversion to manual operation if necessary. Manual operation shall not be permitted beyond 24 hours after breakdown in the automatic equipment, except by written approval of the engineer. When a project includes paving that cannot be performed in a normal sequence, the contractor will be permitted to place a maximum of 7000 square yards using manual batching methods. For all contracts having a total of no more than 20,000 square yards of concrete base course and concrete pavement combined, manual batching methods will be permitted.

502.4.6 Placing Concrete. The concrete shall be deposited over the entire width of the subgrade in such a manner as to prevent segregation and to minimize handling. Mixers, including truck mixers and trucks used for transporting concrete, will be permitted to discharge concrete by chute or by dumping directly on the subgrade or prepared base provided the underlying material is not damaged or distorted. Honeycomb in the concrete base or pavement edge may be cause for rejection of the concrete.

502.4.7 Tie Bar Placement. Tie bars shall be supported in the proper position by chairs driven into the subgrade, or may be placed by approved mechanical methods prior to the consolidation of the concrete after the concrete has been struck off. Tie bars shall be free from dirt, oil, paint and grease. Tie bars required at longitudinal construction joints shall be positioned before concrete base or pavement consolidation.

502.4.8 Final Strike-off, Consolidation and Finishing. Machine finishing by extrusion methods or by vibrating and screeding processes shall be required for all concrete except as permitted in accordance with Sec 502.4.8.6. After the final course of the concrete has been placed, the concrete shall be struck-off and thoroughly vibrated until concrete of a uniform and satisfactory density is attained. The surface of the pavement shall be of uniform texture and to the proper grade and typical section.

502.4.8.1 Consolidation. Vibrating tubes shall extend into the concrete the distance necessary to provide adequate consolidation. Vibrators shall be operated only when the machine to which the vibrators are attached is moving. Care shall be taken that the vibrator does not penetrate the subgrade or dislodge or move the joints. Vibrators shall not come in contact with the reinforcement, load transfer devices, subgrade or side forms.

502.4.8.2 Added Finishing Water. Moisture in any form shall not be applied to the surface of the concrete except for emergency conditions. When emergency conditions exist and it becomes necessary to apply additional moisture to the surface of the concrete in order to complete the final finishing operation, water may

only be applied in the form of a fine pressure spray. Under such conditions, placement of additional concrete on the subgrade shall be discontinued until the emergency conditions cease.

502.4.8.3 Surface Texture. After surface irregularities have been removed, the concrete surface shall be given a uniformly roughened finish. The surface texture shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E 965, except as modified herein, to ensure the texture is adequate for desired friction characteristics. The test locations will be the same locations as identified for strength and thickness determination.

502.4.8.3.1 Sample Container. Plastic sample containers for ASTM E 965 testing shall be of a rigid material that will crack or break if the container is deformed. Damaged or deformed containers shall not be used.

502.4.8.3.2 Required Texture Depth. The results of ASTM E 965 shall show a texture depth of any sublot, as defined in Sec 502.10.1, to have a minimum value of 1.00 mm. Any sublot showing a texture depth of less than 1.00 mm shall require diamond grinding of the pavement represented by this sublot to attain the necessary texture. All testing of the surface texture shall be completed no later than the day following pavement placement.

502.4.8.3.3 Minimum Diamond Grinding Length. Diamond grinding, except for bump correction, shall be across the entire width of the traveled way and shall be continuous for a minimum of 0.1 mile.

502.4.8.3.4 Wave Texture Testing. ASTM E 965 will be waived if the contractor elects to diamond grind or tine the concrete with a wire comb. The concrete may be tined either longitudinally or transversely.

502.4.8.3.4.1 Wire Comb. A wire comb shall be no less than 10 feet long with a single line of wires exposed to a length of approximately 4 inches. The wire shall be blue-tempered and polished spring steel with nominal dimensions of 0.028 inch thick and 0.100 to 0.125 inch wide. The wires shall be spaced to provide 1/2-inch clear space between wires and securely mounted in a rigid head. Except for concrete finished by hand methods, the wire comb shall be mechanically operated and capable of covering the full width of slab in a single pass, at a uniform speed and at a uniform depth. Final approval of the wire comb will be based on satisfactory performance during actual use

502.4.8.3.4.2 Texturing with Wire Comb. Successive passes of the comb shall be overlapped the minimum necessary to attain a continuously textured surface. The surface texture produced shall have an average texture depth of approximately 0.125 inch. Small or irregular areas, or areas not suitable for machine texturing when adjacent surrounding concrete is ready for texturing, may be textured with a hand operated device producing a textured surface equivalent to that required for machine combing.

502.4.8.4 Edging at Forms and Joints. After the final finish, but before the concrete initial set, the edges of the concrete along each form line, and on each side of transverse expansion joints and construction joints shall be worked with an edging tool having a radius of approximately 3/8 inch. A well-defined and continuous radius having a smooth, dense finish shall be produced. The surface of the concrete shall not be unduly disturbed by tilting of the tool during use. Tool marks on the pavement shall be eliminated by brooming or dragging the surface. In doing this, the rounding of the corner of the pavement shall not be disturbed. All concrete on top of the joint filler shall be completely removed. All joints shall be tested with a straightedge before the concrete has set, and corrections made if one side of the joint is higher than the other.

502.4.8.5 Hand Finishing. Compacting, vibrating and finishing concrete by hand methods will be permitted:

(a) For all curves having a form line radius of less than 200 feet or where wood forms are used.

(b) For all irregularly shaped areas.

(c) For pavement lanes less than 200 feet long.

(d) For pavement lanes less than 10 feet wide.

(e) For bridge approaches and pavement to first expansion joint.

(f) When a breakdown of the mechanical compacting and finishing equipment occurs or in the event of some other emergency. After a breakdown, only material which has already been proportioned and

which may be rendered unsatisfactory for use may be finished by hand.

(g) For all Portland cement concrete base.

502.5 Joints. Joints shall be of the specified type and dimensions, and constructed at the locations shown on the plans or as approved by the engineer. Where joints are preformed, the form or joint shall be set and securely fastened to ensure the joint being in the required position when the concrete is finished. The final position of dowels and tie bars shall be parallel to the subgrade and perpendicular to the line of the joint. Dowel supporting assemblies shall conform to one of the types shown on the plans. The concrete shall be placed to avoid displacement or disarrangement of the joint installations.

502.5.1 Expansion Joints. Expansion joints shall extend for the full cross-section of the concrete pavement. Filler placed prior to the placement of the concrete shall be installed with a removable cap or edging bar as a guide for edging the joint and protection of the filler during the concrete's placing and finishing. Joints constructed after the placement of concrete shall be sawed full depth, and the exposed edges shall be ground to a chamfer of 3/8 inch. The filler shall rest snugly on the subgrade from form to form. The joints shall be sealed in accordance with Sec 502.5.4. Upon removal of the forms, any struts or fins of concrete extending across the joint shall be removed to the full width of the joint and the full thickness of the concrete base or pavement.

502.5.2 Construction Joints. Construction joints shall be made at the close of each day's work or when the work is stopped or interrupted for more than 30 minutes. Transverse construction joint shall be located 15 feet from the last contraction joint Construction joints shall be constructed perpendicular to the top surface and the centerline of the concrete base or pavement. Construction joints may be formed with a timber header or may be sawed full depth. The final joint shall conform to the cross-section of the pavement. Before paving operations are resumed, all surplus concrete and other refuse shall be removed from the subgrade.

502.5.3 Sawing Joints. Unless otherwise provided, all transverse contraction joints and all Type L longitudinal joints shall be sawed in a single cutting operation with all joint cuts to the dimensions shown on the plans. For intersections and irregular pavement, joints shall be sawed at locations as approved by the engineer. Sawing of the joints shall begin as soon as the concrete has hardened sufficiently to permit sawing without excessive raveling. All joints shall be established before uncontrolled shrinkage cracking takes place. The sawing of any joint shall be omitted if a crack occurs at or near the joint location prior to the time of sawing. Sawing shall be discontinued when a crack develops ahead of the saw. The engineer reserves the right to have the contractor install preformed type joints on multiple width construction when the use of sawed joints fails to prevent random cracking. Any pavement with random cracking not controlled by dowels or tie bars shall be either removed and replaced using dowels or tie bars as appropriate to the nearest controlled joint or repaired with some other method approved by the engineer at the contractor's expense.

502.5.3.1 Forming Longitudinal Joint. A joint forming device may be used to establish the longitudinal joint between the two driving lanes or between the driving lane and shoulder 6 foot wide or greater. The pavement shall have a plan thickness of 8 inches or greater.

502.5.3.1.1 Notification. The contractor shall indicate in the Quality Control Plan if the longitudinal joint forming device is going to be utilized on the project.

502.5.3.1.2 Joint Forming Device. The joint forming device shall consist of a pair of straight blades mounted under the paver. The first blade shall be placed under the front of the primary pan extending forward between the vibrators, if mechanically possible. The second blade shall be placed on the finishing pan in identical alignment to the first blade. Blade depth shall be equal to one-third of the slab thickness.

502.5.3.1.3 Depth Verification. The engineer shall have access behind the paver to randomly check joint formation by inserting a thin metal strip equal to one-third of the slab thickness into the formed joint.

502.5.3.1.4 Weak Plane Verification. The contractor shall take four 4-inch diameter cores in the longitudinal joint. Cores shall be taken and tested the following day after the first day of paving. Samples shall be taken from random locations determined by the engineer. The cores shall be centered within ± ½ inch around the joint forming trail. The first one-third of the slab thickness and the second one-third of the slab thickness of each core shall be sawed off from the top and tested in the vertical position for split tensile strength. The average strength ratio of the first and second cores shall be 1/3 or less.

502.5.3.1.5 Testing Frequency. For each successive day after the first day of paving, two 4-inch diameter cores shall be taken in the longitudinal joint. Samples shall be taken from random locations determined by the engineer. Cores shall be taken and tested the following day after placement. Cores shall be tested to determine the indirect tensile strength ratios. If satisfactory results are consistently achieved, the engineer may reduce the number of cores taken.

502.5.3.1.6 Joint Continuity. The contractor shall ensure longitudinal joint continuity between consecutive day's paving.

502.5.3.1.7 Unacceptable Results. If the test results or the quality of the joint forming process are not satisfactory to the engineer, the contractor shall saw the longitudinal joint for the length affected.

502.5.4 Sealing Joints. All sawed contraction joints shall be unsealed, unless otherwise specified. Sawed or formed expansion joints shall be sealed with joint sealing material before the pavement is opened to any traffic, including construction traffic. Immediately prior to sealing, the joints shall be thoroughly cleaned and dried. The sealing material shall be heated to the pouring temperature recommended by the manufacturer. Any material which has been heated above the maximum safe heating temperature will be rejected. Any excess material shall be removed from the pavement surface.

502.5.5 Joint Filler at Railroad Crossings. Bituminous filler for use between railroad crossing approach slabs and the crossing shall be an approved commercial bituminous mixture in accordance with Sec 401. The mixture shall be tamped into a firm and compacted state.

502.6 Curing. Immediately after the finishing operations have been completed and as soon as marring of the concrete will not occur, the entire surface and exposed edges of the newly placed concrete shall be covered and cured in accordance with one of the following methods. The concrete shall not be left exposed for more than 30 minutes between stages of curing or during the curing period.

502.6.1 White Pigmented Membrane. After the free water has left the pavement surface, the entire surface shall be sealed by spraying with a uniform application of white pigmented membrane curing material. The contractor shall provide satisfactory equipment to ensure uniform mixture and coverage of curing material, without loss, on the pavement at the rate of not less than one gallon for each 200 square feet. If rain falls on the newly coated pavement before the film has dried sufficiently to resist damage, or if the film is damaged in any other way, the contractor shall apply additional curing material to the affected portions. All areas cut by finishing tools subsequent to the application of the curing material shall immediately be given new applications at the rate specified above. If hairline cracking develops before the membrane can be applied, the concrete shall be initially cured with wet burlap in accordance with Sec 502.6.2 before the membrane is placed. Membrane curing shall not be used on Portland cement concrete base. Emulsified asphalt may be used to cure the concrete base if the surface course is to be a bituminous type.

502.6.2 Burlap. The top surface of the concrete shall be temporarily covered with thoroughly damp burlap after the concrete has set sufficiently to prevent marring of the surface. Burlap shall be handled in such a manner that contact with earth or other deleterious substances is avoided. All burlap, except burlap previously used for curing concrete, shall be thoroughly washed. The burlap shall be kept thoroughly wet until removed for application of the final curing material. Neither the top nor the edge of the concrete shall be left unprotected for more than 30 minutes. When the burlap is removed, white pigmented membrane curing material shall be continued by one of the approved methods.

502.7 Removing Forms. Forms shall be removed carefully to avoid damage to the concrete base or pavement. Honeycombed areas not rejected shall be immediately repaired. If the forms are removed less than 72 hours after placing concrete, the sides of the concrete shall be cured by one of the methods specified above. Any trench excavated for the forms shall be entirely backfilled so water will not stand next to the concrete base or pavement.

502.8 Surface Smoothness. The pavement surface shall be thoroughly tested for smoothness by profiling or straightedging as indicated in Sec 610.

502.9 Opening to Traffic. The concrete base and pavement shall not be opened for low volume, light construction traffic until the concrete has attained a minimum compressive strength of 2500 psi. The concrete base and pavement shall not be opened to all types of traffic until the concrete has attained a minimum

compressive strength of 3,000 psi and all sawed joints that have opened more than ¼ inch are sealed. Compressive strength will be determined by tests conducted in accordance with MoDOT test methods. Pavement shall be cleaned prior to opening to traffic.

502.10 Material Acceptance. Acceptance will be based on the following criteria being met:

(a) Test results indicating the concrete base or pavement meets the specification requirements

(b) Contractor following the approved Quality Control Plan (QCP)

(c) Favorable comparison between the contractor's quality control tests and the engineer's quality assurance tests. Favorable comparison will be obtained when the engineer's QA tests results are within two standard deviations from the mean of the QC test results for each individual lot of material. For properties not evaluated on a lot by lot basis, favorable comparison will be obtained when both the QC and QA tests results meet the specification requirements. Compressive strength and slab thickness will be evaluated on a lot by lot basis.

502.10.1 Lot Definition. A lot shall be the surface area placed in a single day. Each lot shall be divided into no less than four or more than six sublots of equal surface area. For high daily production rates exceeding 7,500 square yards per day, the contractor may choose to divide the day's production into two equal lots consisting of no less than four or more than six sublots each. The contractor shall notify the engineer of the size of the sublot or of the decision to divide a day's production into two equal lots prior to taking any core samples. When a day's production involves less than 600 square yards, combine the following day's or days' production to reach 600 square yards and treat as a single lot, except while completing a particular mix design or project, in which case combine with the previous day's production and treat as a single lot. If a project has less than 7,500 square yards of a particular mix type, the lot will be defined as the plan quantity shown in the contract documents.

502.10.2 Sampling. One QC sample shall be taken for each sublot and a minimum of one QA sample shall be taken per lot. A sample shall be taken from the finished concrete consisting of a 4-inch diameter core for concrete bases or pavements less than 12 inches thick and a 6-inch diameter core for concrete bases or pavements 12 inches or greater. Sampling locations will be determined by the engineer using random sampling procedures in accordance with ASTM D 3665.

502.10.3 Coring. Cores shall be taken in accordance with AASHTO T 24. Cores shall not be taken until a minimum compressive strength of 3,000 psi has been attained. Cores shall be neatly cut with a core drill. The contractor shall furnish all tools, labor and material for cutting samples and filling the cored hole. The contractor shall fill the core holes with an approved non-shrink grout within one day after sampling.

502.10.3.1 Testing Cores. The core thickness shall be determined by the average caliper measurement in accordance with AASHTO T 148. After the thickness is determined, the cores shall be sawed to an L/D ratio of 2.0 and tested in accordance with AASHTO T 22. Cores shall not be taken until a minimum compressive strength of 3,000 psi has been attained. The contractor shall determine the compressive strength by approved methods. Cores shall be tested for compressive strength 28 days after placement.

502.10.3.2 Pavement Thickness after Diamond Grinding. If the contractor elects to diamond grind to improve smoothness or surface texture, in accordance with Sec 610.5.1.3 and 610.5.1.4, then pavement thickness determination will be made after all smoothness correction has been completed. Cores shall be 4 inch in diameter. Location of coring will be determined by the engineer using random sampling procedures in accordance with ASTM D 3665.

502.10.4 Quality Level Analysis. Compressive strength and thickness shall be evaluated for acceptance on a lot-by-lot basis using a Quality Level Analysis (QLA). The QLA will consider the variability (standard deviation) of the material and the testing procedures, as well as the average (mean) value of the test results to calculate the percentage of material that is above the lower specification tolerance limit (LSL) for compressive strength and thickness.

502.10.4.1 Determine Quality Index. The Percent Within Limits (PWL) will be based on the mean, standard deviation and quality index of each lot's test results as follows:

Mean

$$x_a = \sum \frac{x_i}{n}$$

where:

x_a = Mean of the individual values being considered
$\sum x_i$ = The summation of all the individual values being considered
n = The number of individual values under consideration

Standard Deviation

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{\sum (x_i - x_a)^2}{n-1}}$$

Where:

s = Standard Deviation

Upper Quality Index

$$Q_U = \frac{USL - x_a}{s}$$

Lower Quality Index

$$Q_L = \frac{x_a - LSL}{s}$$

Where:

Q_U = Upper Quality Index
Q_L = Lower Quality Index
USL = Pay Factor Item Upper Spec Limit
LSL = Pay Factor Item Lower Spec Limit

502.10.4.2 Determine Percent Within limits. The upper (PWL_U) and lower (PWL_L) will be determined from Table I. Total percent within limits is:

PWL_t = (PWL_U + PWL_L) - 100. For thickness and compressive strength in this specification, PWL_U shall be 100.

502.10.4.3 Utilizing Quality Control Test Results. The engineer will make the Quality Level Analysis (QLA) within 24 hours after receipt of the contractor's test results, by determining the PWL_t for each designated pay factor item. The contractor's test results will be used when applicable to determine the PWL, provided the contractor's QC tests and the engineer's QA tests compare favorably, and provided the engineer's inspection and monitoring activities indicate the contractor is following the approved QC Plan.

502.10.4.4 Material Rendered Unfit. The engineer may at any time reject and require the contractor to dispose of any batch of concrete mixture which is rendered unfit for use due to contamination, segregation, improper slump or improper entrained air content. Such rejection may be based on only visual inspection. In the event of such rejection, the contractor may take a representative sample of the rejected material in the presence of the engineer, and if demonstrated in the laboratory in the presence of the engineer that such material was erroneously rejected, payment will be made for the material at the contract unit price.

502.10.4.5 Lower Specification Limits. The lower specification limit (LSL) for compressive strength and thickness shall be:

(a) Compressive Strength – 4,000 psi.

(b) Thickness – Plan thickness minus 1/2 inch.

502.10.5 Outliers. Individual compressive strength tests within a lot may be checked for an outlier in accordance with the determination of statistic T in ASTM E 178, at a significance level of 5 percent. Replacement cores shall be obtained at the location designated and in the presence of the engineer. The PWL shall be determined using the replacement values.

502.11 Contractor Quality Control.

502.11.1 Quality Control Plan. Prior to approval of concrete mix designs by the engineer, the contractor shall submit a QCP to Construction and Materials. The QCP shall be approved prior to placing any concrete. The QCP shall include:

(a) Name and contact information should be provided for the contractor's representative in charge of QC and the project level representative if different from the contractor's representative.

(b) Identify the number of sublots each lot will utilize and describe how lots and sublots will be designated.

(c) State the method for determining when concrete cores can be extracted.

(d) State the method for demonstrating the concrete has been protected from freezing.

(e) State the location where control charts will be posted, if utilized by the contractor.

(f) For optimized concrete mix, state the target gradation and allowable gradation ranges for each fraction being used.

(g) A proposed independent third party company name, contact person, address, and phone number for dispute resolution.

502.11.1.1 Third Party. The third party shall be independent of the contractor, MoDOT consultants, and all project subcontractors or suppliers on each specific project. All testing of material for dispute resolution shall be performed by an approved laboratory that is AASHTO Accreditation Program certified in the areas of the material being tested.

502.11.2 Quality Control Testing. The contractor shall perform all quality control tests necessary to control the production and construction processes applicable to this specification and as set forth in the QCP. Quality control testing shall be performed by technicians qualified through MoDOT's technician certification program. Testing shall include, but not necessarily be limited to, deleterious content, coarse aggregate absorption, thin or elongated pieces, entrained air content, slump, pavement thickness and compressive strength. The contractor shall record all test results and furnish a copy to the engineer no later than the beginning of the day following the test.

502.11.2.1 Fine and Coarse Aggregate.

502.11.2.1.1 Aggregate Gradation. A sieve analysis shall be performed once a week. Testing shall be performed in accordance with AASHTO T 27 from randomly sampled material taken from the discharge gate of storage bins or from the conveyor belt. Sieve analysis shall be performed on the following sieves:

Mix Design Method	Sieves Tested
Absolute Volume	Maximum sieve size[a]
Optimized	Sieves sizes specified by the mix design

[a]Coarse aggregate only

502.11.2.1.2 Deleterious Materials. Deleterious content shall be determined each day at a frequency of one test per 7500 square yards of material placed or fraction thereof. Test shall be performed in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 71 from randomly sampled material taken from the discharge gate of the storage bin or from the conveyor belt. Test shall be performed on coarse aggregate fractions.

502.11.2.1.3 Absorption. Samples for coarse aggregate absorption shall be taken from the discharge gate of the storage bins or from the conveyor belt at least once every 2,000 cubic yards with a minimum of once per project. Coarse aggregate absorption shall be in accordance with AASHTO T 85.

502.11.2.1.4 Thin or Elongated Pieces. Thin or elongated pieces shall be determined on samples of coarse aggregate taken from the discharge gate of the storage bins or from the conveyor belt. The aggregate particles retained on the 3/4 in. sieve shall not exceed 5 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4791, based on a 5:1 ratio. Test shall be performed at least once every 10,000 cubic yards with a minimum of once per project.

502.11.2.1.5 Retained Samples. All aggregate samples taken by the contractor for determining the gradation, deleterious content, absorption, and thin or elongated pieces shall be retained for the engineer for a minimum of seven days unless otherwise instructed. The retained sample shall be the remaining half of the final reduction in sample size obtained for QC testing. These samples shall be maintained in clean covered containers, without contamination, readily accessible to the engineer. The retained sample's identification shall consist of, but is not limited to:

(a) Time and date sampled.

(b) Product specification number.

(c) Type of sample, i.e. belt, bin, stockpile.

(d) Lot and sublot designation.

(e) Sampler/Tester.

(f) Project Job Number.

502.11.2.2 Slump. Slump tests shall be performed on a random basis for each 500 cubic yards of material produced. The engineer will designate the random location at the time of sampling. If a day's material production does not exceed 500 cubic yards, one slump test shall be performed. Slump tests shall be in accordance with AASHTO T 119 from randomly sampled material discharged from trucks at the paving site. Material samples shall be in accordance with AASHTO R 60.

502.11.2.3 Entrained Air Content. Tests for entrained air content shall be performed on a random basis for each 500 cubic yards of material produced. The engineer will designate the random location at the time of sampling. The air content shall be in accordance with Sec 501.10.2, except that the minimum air content in front of the paver shall be 4.5 percent plus the air loss through the paver. The air loss through the paver is determined a minimum of once per half-day production by sampling the concrete ahead of the paver and behind the paver and subtracting the value obtained ahead of the paver from the value obtained behind the paver. The engineer shall be given notification prior to determining the air loss in order to witness the air loss determination. On the first day of paving, the target air content shall be determined immediately after placing 200 cubic yards of concrete. The entrained air content of the first 200 cubic yards of concrete placed on the first day of paving, sampled in front of the paver, shall be greater than 6.0 percent. Tests shall be in accordance with AASHTO T 152.

502.11.3 Corrective Action. As a minimum, a process shall be deemed out of control and corrective action taken if any one of the conditions below exists. In addition, each truckload of material en route prior to the process of being deemed out of control shall be tested for specification compliance.

502.11.3.1 Aggregate Gradation. When one test is outside the allowable range, immediate steps shall be taken to correct the gradation.

502.11.3.2 Deleterious Content. When one test is outside the specification limits, immediate steps shall be taken to correct the deleterious content.

502.11.3.3 Slump and Absorption. The contractor shall halt production and make appropriate adjustments whenever either of the following occurs:

(a) One point falls outside the action limit line for individual measurements or range.

(b) Two points in a row fall outside the specification limit but within the action limit line for individual measurements.

Individual Measurements	
Control Parameter	**Action Limit**
Slump	+1 in.
Absorption	Mix Design plus 0.3% to Mix Design plus 0.6%

502.11.4 Pavement. For pavements with a plan thickness below 8 inches, the following shall apply:

(a) QC shall determine compressive strength at a frequency of no less than one per 7,500 square yards. Compressive strength shall be determined from at least two 6- by 12-inch cylinders or from at least three 4- by 8-inch cylinders made in accordance with AASHTO T-23 or by the Maturity Method in accordance with the contract documents. QA will determine the compressive strength at least once per 30,000 square yards. Cylinders shall be tested in accordance with AASHTO T-22. A compressive strength of 3,500 shall be attained by 28-day. Sampling location will be determined by the engineer using random sampling procedures in accordance with ASTM D 3665

(b) QC shall determine pavement thickness of the fresh concrete at a frequency of no less than one per 7,500 square yards. QA will determine the pavement thickness of the fresh concrete at least once per 30,000 square yards. Sampling locations will be determined by the engineer using random sampling procedures in accordance with ASTM D 3665

(c) QC shall determine the slump, air content, gradation, deleterious, thin and elongated and absorption in accordance with Sec 502.11. QA will determine the slump, air content, gradation, deleterious, thin and elongated and absorption in accordance with Sec 502.12.

502.11.5 Shoulders. Shoulders with a plan thickness 8 inches or greater shall be inspected in accordance with requirements applied to concrete placed in the travel way. Shoulders with a plan thickness below 8 inches shall be handled in accordance with Sec 502.11.4.

502.11.6 Dispute Resolution. When there are significant discrepancies between the engineer's and the contractor's test results, dispute resolution procedures will be used.

502.11.6.1 Cease Work. The contractor's operations may be required to cease until the dispute is resolved, if the test results indicate the mixture is unacceptable.

502.11.6.2 Third Party Resolution. The first step in dispute resolution will be to identify differences in procedures and to correct inappropriate procedures before moving to third party resolution. If that does not resolve the dispute, either the contractor or the engineer may request the approved QCP third party involvement. The recommendations of the approved third party will be binding on both the engineer and contractor.

502.11.6.3 Third Party Payment. The contractor shall be responsible for the costs associated with third party testing and resolution if the final result indicates the engineer's test results were correct. Likewise the Commission will be responsible for the cost associated with the third party testing and resolution if the final result indicates the contractor's results were correct.

502.11.6.4 Other Adjustments. The contractor will not be entitled to any additional payment for costs incurred due to use of the dispute resolution procedures such as, but not limited to, those for delay, cessation of operations, costs to subcontractors, etc. The engineer may give consideration to adjustment of working days, if warranted.

502.11.7 Concrete Mix Design Adjustment.

502.11.7.1 Field Adjustment. When test results indicate the concrete produced does not meet the specification requirements or is not performing satisfactory, the contractor may adjust the mix design in the field as noted herein. Field adjustments may consist of changing the constituents listed on the approved mix design by no more than 5.0 percent or changing the water cement ratio by no more than 0.02 from the approved mix design.

The engineer shall be notified immediately when any change is made to the mix design. Additional fractions of material or new material will not be permitted as a field adjustment. The field adjusted mix shall meet the requirements specified in Sec 501.

502.11.7.2 Field Redesign. When the constituents listed on the approved mix design are adjusted by more than 5.0 percent or the water cement ratio is changed by more than 0.02, the contractor shall submit a new mix design meeting the requirements specified in Sec 501. The mix design shall be submitted immediately to the District for approval. The contractor will be allowed to continue production while the mix design is reviewed.

502.12 Quality Assurance. Corrective action shall be required in accordance with Sec 502.11.3 for any QA tests outside the action limit. The engineer will at a minimum, independently test at the following frequency:

Test	Frequency
Compressive Strength	1 per lot
Thickness	1 per lot
Surface Texture	1 per lot
Slump	1 per day
Entrained Air Content	1 per day
Aggregate Gradation	1 per project
Coarse Aggregate Deleterious	1 per week
Aggregate Absorption	1 per 10,000 cubic yards
Thin or Elongated Pieces	1 per project

502.12.1 Retained Samples. The QA inspector will test at least ten percent of the retained portion of the QC samples for aggregate gradation and deleterious content. The QA inspector will test at least twenty percent of the QC retained samples for absorption and thin or elongated pieces. Retained samples will be chosen at random. A comparison will be considered favorable when the QA results of a QC retained sample are within the applicable limits specified in Sec 403.18.3

502.12.2 Core Chain of Custody. QA strength and thickness cores shall be sealed in tamper proof bags after extraction.

502.12.3 Quality Control Equipment. All QC mixture testing shall be performed using equipment maintained in accordance with Sec 403.17.3, except as follows:

Equipment – Test Method (AASHTO)	Requirement	Interval (Month)
Sieves	Check Physical Condition	6
Mechanical Shakers - T27	Check Sieving Thoroughness	12
Ovens	Verify Temp. Settings	4
Balances	Verify	12[a]
Air Meters - T152	Calibrate	12
Compression Testing Machine - T22	Verify Load Indications	12
Capping Material	Check Strength	3
Slump Cones - T119	Check Critical Dimensions	12

[a]Verify after each move.

502.13 Unacceptable Material. Any material meeting the following criteria shall be considered unacceptable:

(a) If any core measurement of thickness is greater than 10 percent deficient from the plan thickness.

(b) If any core measurement of compressive strength is less than 3,500 psi.

(c) All material with an entrained air content less than 4.0 percent.

502.14 Method of Measurement. Final measurement of the completed pavement will not be made except for authorized changes during construction, or where appreciable errors are found in the contract quantity. Where required, measurement of the Portland cement concrete base and pavement complete in place, will be made to the nearest 1/10 square yard. The revision or correction will be computed and added to or deducted from the contract quantity.

502.15 Basis of Payment.

502.15.1 Compensation. The contract unit price for Portland cement concrete base and pavement will be considered as full compensation for all material, including reinforcement, dowels, dowel supports, tie bars and any other items entering into the construction of the traveled way pavement or Portland cement concrete shoulders, and for the cost of QC testing and smoothness testing. No additional compensation will be allowed for any excess thickness.

502.15.2 Payment. The accepted quantities of concrete base will be paid for at the contract unit price with proper allowance made for any deductions for deficiency in thickness and compressive strength. The accepted quantities of Portland cement concrete pavement will be paid for at the contract unit price with proper allowance made for any deductions for deficiency in thickness, compressive strength, smoothness or marred surface.

502.15.3 Width. When paving widths are greater than the travel lane widths, payment for profiling will apply to the traffic lane design driving width only, normally 12 feet. Random lane coring for thickness or required lane replacement will include the full paved lane width to the longitudinal joints or edge of shoulder, whichever is first.

502.15.4 Pay Factors. The total pay factor (PF_t) for each lot is equal to the weighted sum of the pay factors (PF) for each pay factor item for each lot, and is determined as follows:

$PF_t = + (0.5)\ PF_T + (0.5)\ PF_{CS}$

Where: PF_T = Pay Factor for Thickness
PF_{CS} = Pay Factor for Compressive Strength

The PF for each pay factor item for each lot is based on the PWL_t of each pay factor item of each lot and is determined as follows:

When PWL_t is greater than or equal to 70: $PF = 0.5\ PWL_t + 55$
When PWL_t is less than 70: $PF = 2\ PWL_t - 50$

502.15.5 Small Quantities. For each mix type less than 7,500 square yards, the following shall apply:

QLA and PWL will not be required.

Concrete mix shall be within the specified limits for compressive strength, pavement thickness, slump, air content, gradation, deleterious, and thin and elongated.

Payment for each mix type will be made at 100 percent of the contract unit price if compressive strength is equal to or greater than 3,500 psi and the pavement thickness is not deficient by more that 10 percent of the plan thickness.

502.15.6 Pavements. For pavements with a plan thickness below 8 inches, the following shall apply:

(a) QLA and PWL will not be required

(b) Concrete mix shall be within the specified limits for compressive strength, pavement thickness, slump, air content, gradation, deleterious, and thin and elongated.

(c) Payment will be made at 100 percent of the contract unit price if compressive strength is equal to or greater than 3500psi and pavement thickness is not deficient by more than 10 percent of the plan thickness

502.15.7 Shoulders. Shoulders with a plan thickness below 8 inches shall be handle in accordance with Sec 502.15.6.

502.15.8 PWL Determination Table. Values in Table I are estimates of the PWL corresponding to specific values of the Quality Index (Q). For Q values less than zero, the table shall be subtracted from 100.

TABLE I
Variability-Unknown Procedure
Standard-Deviation Method

Quality Index	PWL For Selected Sample Sizes							
(Q_U or Q_L)	n=3	n=4	n=5	n=6	n=7	n=8	n=9	n=10
0.00	50.00	50.00	50.00	50.00	50.00	50.00	50.00	50.00
0.01	50.28	50.33	50.36	50.37	50.37	50.38	50.38	50.38
0.02	50.55	50.67	50.71	50.74	50.75	50.76	50.76	50.77
0.03	50.83	51.00	51.07	51.10	51.12	51.13	51.15	51.15
0.04	51.10	51.34	51.42	51.47	51.50	51.51	51.53	51.54
0.05	51.38	51.67	51.78	51.84	51.87	51.89	51.91	51.92
0.06	51.66	52.00	52.14	52.21	52.24	52.27	52.29	52.30
0.07	51.93	52.33	52.49	52.57	52.62	52.65	52.67	52.69
0.08	52.21	52.67	52.85	52.94	52.99	53.02	53.06	53.07
0.09	52.48	53.00	53.20	53.30	53.37	53.40	53.44	53.46
0.10	52.76	53.33	53.56	53.67	53.74	53.78	53.82	53.84
0.11	53.04	53.66	53.91	54.04	54.11	54.16	54.20	54.22
0.12	53.32	54.00	54.27	54.40	54.48	54.54	54.58	54.60
0.13	53.59	54.33	54.62	54.77	54.86	54.91	54.95	54.99
0.14	53.87	54.67	54.98	55.13	55.23	55.29	55.33	55.37
0.15	54.15	55.00	55.33	55.50	55.60	55.67	55.71	55.75
0.16	54.43	55.33	55.68	55.86	55.97	56.04	56.09	56.13
0.17	54.71	55.67	56.04	56.23	56.34	56.42	56.47	56.51
0.18	54.98	56.00	56.39	56.59	56.72	56.79	56.84	56.89
0.19	55.26	56.34	56.75	56.96	57.09	57.17	57.22	57.27
0.20	55.54	56.67	57.10	57.32	57.46	57.54	57.60	57.65
0.21	55.82	57.00	57.45	57.68	57.83	57.91	57.98	58.03
0.22	56.10	57.33	57.81	58.05	58.20	58.29	58.35	58.40
0.23	56.39	57.67	58.16	58.41	58.56	58.66	58.73	58.78
0.24	56.67	58.00	58.52	58.78	58.93	59.04	59.10	59.15
0.25	56.95	58.33	58.87	59.14	59.30	59.41	59.48	59.53
0.26	57.23	58.66	59.22	59.50	59.67	59.78	59.85	59.90
0.27	57.52	59.00	59.57	59.86	60.03	60.15	60.22	60.28
0.28	57.80	59.33	59.93	60.22	60.40	60.51	60.60	60.65
0.29	58.09	59.67	60.28	60.58	60.76	60.88	60.97	61.03
0.30	58.37	60.00	60.63	60.94	61.13	61.25	61.34	61.40
0.31	58.66	60.33	60.98	61.30	61.49	61.62	61.71	61.77
0.32	58.94	60.67	61.33	61.66	61.85	61.98	62.08	62.14
0.33	59.23	61.00	61.68	62.01	62.22	62.35	62.44	62.51
0.34	59.51	61.34	62.03	62.37	62.58	62.71	62.81	62.88
0.35	59.80	61.67	62.38	62.73	62.94	63.08	63.18	63.25
0.36	60.09	62.00	62.73	63.09	63.30	63.44	63.54	63.61
0.37	60.38	62.33	63.08	63.44	63.66	63.80	63.91	63.98
0.38	60.68	62.67	63.42	63.80	64.02	64.17	64.27	64.34

0.39	60.97	63.00	63.77	64.15	64.38	64.53	64.64	64.71
0.40	61.26	63.33	64.12	64.51	64.74	64.89	65.00	65.07
0.41	61.56	63.66	64.46	64.86	65.09	65.25	65.36	65.43
0.42	61.85	64.00	64.81	65.21	65.45	65.60	65.72	65.79
0.43	62.15	64.33	65.15	65.57	65.80	65.96	66.07	66.15
0.44	62.44	64.67	65.50	65.92	66.16	66.31	66.43	66.51
0.45	62.74	65.00	65.84	66.27	66.51	66.67	66.79	66.87
0.46	63.04	65.33	66.18	66.62	66.86	67.02	67.14	67.22
0.47	63.34	65.67	66.53	66.96	67.21	67.37	67.49	67.57
0.48	63.65	66.00	66.87	67.31	67.56	67.73	67.85	67.93
0.49	63.95	66.34	67.22	67.65	67.91	68.08	68.20	68.28
0.50	64.25	66.67	67.56	68.00	68.26	68.43	68.55	68.63
0.51	64.56	67.00	67.90	68.34	68.61	68.78	68.90	68.98
0.52	64.87	67.33	68.24	68.69	68.95	69.12	69.24	69.32
0.53	65.18	67.67	68.58	69.03	69.30	69.47	69.59	69.67
0.54	65.49	68.00	68.92	69.38	69.64	69.81	69.93	70.01
0.55	65.80	68.33	69.26	69.72	69.99	70.16	70.28	70.36
0.56	66.12	68.66	69.60	70.06	70.33	70.50	70.62	70.70
0.57	66.44	69.00	69.94	70.40	70.67	70.84	70.96	71.04
0.58	66.75	69.33	70.27	70.73	71.00	71.17	71.29	71.38
0.59	67.07	69.67	70.61	71.07	71.34	71.51	71.63	71.72
0.60	67.39	70.00	70.95	71.41	71.68	71.85	71.97	72.06
0.61	67.72	70.33	71.28	71.74	72.01	72.11	72.30	72.39
0.62	68.05	70.67	71.61	72.08	72.34	72.37	72.63	72.72
0.63	68.37	71.00	71.95	72.41	72.68	72.63	72.97	73.06
0.64	68.70	71.34	72.28	72.75	73.01	72.89	73.30	73.39
0.65	69.03	71.67	72.61	73.08	73.34	73.15	73.63	73.72
0.66	69.37	72.00	72.94	73.41	73.67	73.55	73.95	74.04
0.67	69.71	72.33	73.27	73.73	73.99	73.95	74.28	74.36
0.68	70.05	72.67	73.60	74.06	74.32	74.35	74.60	74.69
0.69	70.39	73.00	73.93	74.38	74.64	74.75	74.93	75.01
0.70	70.73	73.33	74.26	74.71	74.97	75.15	75.25	75.33
0.71	71.08	73.66	74.59	75.03	75.29	75.46	75.57	75.64
0.72	71.44	74.00	74.91	75.35	75.61	75.78	75.88	75.96
0.73	71.79	74.33	75.24	75.68	75.92	76.09	76.20	76.27
0.74	72.15	74.67	75.56	76.00	76.24	76.41	76.51	76.59
0.75	72.50	75.00	75.89	76.32	76.56	76.72	76.83	76.90
0.76	72.87	75.33	76.21	76.63	76.87	77.03	77.14	77.21
0.77	73.24	75.67	76.53	76.95	77.18	77.34	77.44	77.51
0.78	73.62	76.00	76.85	77.26	77.50	77.64	77.75	77.82
0.79	73.99	76.34	77.17	77.58	77.81	77.95	78.05	78.12
0.80	74.36	76.67	77.49	77.89	78.12	78.26	78.36	78.43
0.81	74.75	77.00	77.81	78.20	78.42	78.56	78.66	78.72
0.82	75.15	77.33	78.12	78.51	78.72	78.86	78.95	79.02
0.83	75.54	77.67	78.44	78.81	79.03	79.16	79.25	79.31
0.84	75.94	78.00	78.75	79.12	79.33	79.46	79.54	79.61
0.85	76.33	78.33	79.07	79.43	79.63	79.76	79.84	79.90
0.86	76.75	78.66	79.38	79.73	79.92	80.05	80.13	80.19
0.87	77.18	79.00	79.69	80.03	80.22	80.34	80.42	80.47

0.88	77.60	79.33	80.00	80.33	80.51	80.63	80.70	80.76
0.89	78.03	79.67	80.31	80.63	80.81	80.92	80.99	81.04
0.90	78.45	80.00	80.62	80.93	81.10	81.21	81.28	81.33
0.91	78.91	80.33	80.92	81.22	81.38	81.49	81.56	81.61
0.92	79.37	80.67	81.23	81.51	81.67	81.77	81.84	81.88
0.93	79.83	81.00	81.53	81.81	81.95	82.05	82.11	82.16
0.94	80.29	81.34	81.84	82.10	82.24	82.33	82.39	82.43
0.95	80.75	81.67	82.14	82.39	82.52	82.61	82.67	82.71
0.96	81.27	82.00	82.44	82.67	82.80	82.88	82.94	82.97
0.97	81.78	82.33	82.74	82.95	83.07	83.15	83.20	83.24
0.98	82.30	82.67	83.04	83.24	83.35	83.42	83.47	83.50
0.99	82.81	83.00	83.34	83.52	83.62	83.69	83.73	83.77
1.00	83.33	83.33	83.64	83.80	83.90	83.96	84.00	84.03
1.01	83.93	83.66	83.93	84.08	84.17	84.22	84.26	84.28
1.02	84.53	84.00	84.22	84.35	84.43	84.48	84.51	84.53
1.03	85.14	84.33	84.51	84.63	84.70	84.74	84.77	84.79
1.04	85.74	84.67	84.80	84.90	84.96	85.00	85.02	85.04
1.05	86.34	85.00	85.09	85.18	85.23	85.26	85.28	85.29
1.06	87.10	85.33	85.38	85.44	85.49	85.51	85.53	85.53
1.07	87.87	85.67	85.66	85.71	85.74	85.76	85.77	85.77
1.08	88.63	86.00	85.95	85.97	86.00	86.01	86.02	86.02
1.09	89.40	86.34	86.23	86.24	86.25	86.26	86.26	86.26
1.10	90.16	86.67	86.52	86.50	86.51	86.51	86.51	86.50
1.11	91.55	87.00	86.80	86.76	86.75	86.75	86.74	86.73
1.12	92.95	87.33	87.07	87.01	87.00	86.99	86.98	86.96
1.13	94.34	87.67	87.35	87.27	87.24	87.22	87.21	87.20
1.14	95.74	88.00	87.62	87.52	87.49	87.46	87.45	87.43
1.15	97.13	88.33	87.90	87.78	87.73	87.70	87.68	87.66
1.16	100.00	88.66	88.17	88.03	87.96	87.93	87.90	87.88
1.17	100.00	89.00	88.44	88.27	88.20	88.15	88.12	88.10
1.18	100.00	89.33	88.70	88.52	88.43	88.38	88.35	88.32
1.19	100.00	89.67	88.97	88.76	88.67	88.60	88.57	88.54
1.20	100.00	90.00	89.24	89.01	88.90	88.83	88.79	88.76
1.21	100.00	90.33	89.50	89.25	89.12	89.05	89.00	88.97
1.22	100.00	90.67	89.76	89.48	89.35	89.26	89.21	89.17
1.23	100.00	91.00	90.02	89.72	89.57	89.48	89.43	89.38
1.24	100.00	91.34	90.28	89.95	89.80	89.69	89.64	89.58
1.25	100.00	91.67	90.54	90.19	90.02	89.91	89.85	89.79
1.26	100.00	92.00	90.79	90.41	90.23	90.12	90.05	89.99
1.27	100.00	92.33	91.04	90.64	90.44	90.32	90.25	90.19
1.28	100.00	92.67	91.29	90.86	90.65	90.53	90.44	90.38
1.29	100.00	93.00	91.54	91.09	90.86	90.73	90.64	90.58
1.30	100.00	93.33	91.79	91.31	91.07	90.94	90.84	90.78
1.31	100.00	93.66	92.03	91.52	91.27	91.13	91.03	90.96
1.32	100.00	94.00	92.27	91.73	91.47	91.32	91.22	91.15
1.33	100.00	94.33	92.50	91.95	91.68	91.52	91.40	91.33
1.34	100.00	94.67	92.74	92.16	91.88	91.71	91.59	91.52
1.35	100.00	95.00	92.98	92.37	92.08	91.90	91.78	91.70
1.36	100.00	95.33	93.21	92.57	92.27	92.08	91.96	91.87

1.37	100.00	95.67	93.44	92.77	92.46	92.26	92.14	92.04
1.38	100.00	96.00	93.66	92.97	92.64	92.45	92.31	92.22
1.39	100.00	96.34	93.89	93.17	92.83	92.63	92.49	92.39
1.40	100.00	96.67	94.12	93.37	93.02	92.81	92.67	92.56
1.41	100.00	97.00	94.33	93.56	93.20	92.98	92.83	92.72
1.42	100.00	97.33	94.55	93.75	93.37	93.15	93.00	92.88
1.43	100.00	97.67	94.76	93.94	93.55	93.31	93.16	93.05
1.44	100.00	98.00	94.98	94.13	93.72	93.48	93.33	93.21
1.45	100.00	98.33	95.19	94.32	93.90	93.65	93.49	93.37
1.46	100.00	98.66	95.39	94.49	94.06	93.81	93.64	93.52
1.47	100.00	99.00	95.59	94.67	94.23	93.97	93.80	93.67
1.48	100.00	99.33	95.80	94.84	94.39	94.12	93.95	93.83
1.49	100.00	99.67	96.00	95.02	94.56	94.28	94.11	93.98
1.50	100.00	100.00	96.20	95.19	94.72	94.44	94.26	94.13
1.51	100.00	100.00	96.39	95.35	94.87	94.59	94.40	94.27
1.52	100.00	100.00	96.57	95.51	95.02	94.73	94.54	94.41
1.53	100.00	100.00	96.76	95.68	95.18	94.88	94.69	94.54
1.54	100.00	100.00	96.94	95.84	95.33	95.02	94.83	94.68
1.55	100.00	100.00	97.13	96.00	95.48	95.17	94.97	94.82
1.56	100.00	100.00	97.30	96.15	95.62	95.30	95.10	94.95
1.57	100.00	100.00	97.47	96.30	95.76	95.44	95.23	95.08
1.58	100.00	100.00	97.63	96.45	95.89	95.57	95.36	95.20
1.59	100.00	100.00	97.80	96.60	96.03	95.71	95.49	95.33
1.60	100.00	100.00	97.97	96.75	96.17	95.84	95.62	95.46
1.61	100.00	100.00	98.12	96.88	96.30	95.96	95.74	95.58
1.62	100.00	100.00	98.27	97.02	96.43	96.08	95.86	95.70
1.63	100.00	100.00	98.42	97.15	96.55	96.21	95.98	95.81
1.64	100.00	100.00	98.57	97.29	96.68	96.33	96.10	95.93
1.65	100.00	100.00	98.72	97.42	96.81	96.45	96.22	96.05
1.66	100.00	100.00	98.84	97.54	96.92	96.56	96.33	96.16
1.67	100.00	100.00	98.97	97.66	97.04	96.67	96.44	96.27
1.68	100.00	100.00	99.09	97.78	97.15	96.79	96.54	96.37
1.69	100.00	100.00	99.22	97.90	97.27	96.90	96.65	96.48
1.70	100.00	100.00	99.34	98.02	97.38	97.01	96.76	96.59
1.71	100.00	100.00	99.43	98.13	97.48	97.11	96.86	96.69
1.72	100.00	100.00	99.53	98.23	97.58	97.21	96.96	96.78
1.73	100.00	100.00	99.62	98.34	97.69	97.31	97.05	96.88
1.74	100.00	100.00	99.72	98.44	97.79	97.41	97.15	96.97
1.75	100.00	100.00	99.81	98.55	97.89	97.51	97.25	97.07
1.76	100.00	100.00	99.86	98.64	97.98	97.60	97.34	97.16
1.77	100.00	100.00	99.91	98.73	98.07	97.69	97.43	97.25
1.78	100.00	100.00	99.95	98.81	98.17	97.78	97.52	97.33
1.79	100.00	100.00	100.00	98.90	98.26	97.87	97.61	97.42
1.80	100.00	100.00	100.00	98.99	98.35	97.96	97.70	97.51
1.81	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.06	98.43	98.04	97.78	97.59
1.82	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.14	98.51	98.12	97.86	97.67
1.83	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.21	98.58	98.19	97.93	97.75
1.84	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.29	98.66	98.27	98.01	97.83
1.85	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.36	98.74	98.35	98.09	97.91

1.86	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.42	98.81	98.42	98.16	97.98
1.87	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.48	98.87	98.49	98.23	98.05
1.88	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.53	98.94	98.55	98.30	98.11
1.89	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.59	99.00	98.62	98.37	98.18
1.90	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.65	99.07	98.69	98.44	98.25
1.91	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.69	99.13	98.75	98.50	98.31
1.92	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.73	99.18	98.81	98.56	98.37
1.93	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.77	99.24	98.87	98.62	98.44
1.94	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.81	99.29	98.93	98.68	98.50
1.95	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.85	99.35	98.99	98.74	98.56
1.96	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.87	99.39	99.04	98.79	98.61
1.97	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.90	99.44	99.09	98.84	98.67
1.98	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.92	99.48	99.14	98.90	98.72
1.99	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.95	99.53	99.19	98.95	98.78
2.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.97	99.57	99.24	99.00	98.83
2.01	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.98	99.60	99.28	99.05	98.88
2.02	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.98	99.64	99.32	99.09	98.92
2.03	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.99	99.67	99.37	99.14	98.97
2.04	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.99	99.71	99.41	99.18	99.01
2.05	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.74	99.45	99.23	99.06
2.06	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.76	99.48	99.27	99.10
2.07	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.79	99.51	99.30	99.14
2.08	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.81	99.55	99.34	99.18
2.09	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.84	99.58	99.37	99.22
2.10	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.86	99.61	99.41	99.26
2.11	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.88	99.64	99.44	99.29
2.12	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.89	99.66	99.47	99.32
2.13	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.91	99.69	99.51	99.36
2.14	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.92	99.71	99.54	99.39
2.15	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.94	99.74	99.57	99.42
2.16	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.95	99.76	99.59	99.45
2.17	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.96	99.78	99.62	99.48
2.18	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.97	99.80	99.64	99.50
2.19	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.98	99.82	99.67	99.53
2.20	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.99	99.84	99.69	99.56
2.21	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.99	99.85	99.71	99.58
2.22	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.99	99.87	99.73	99.61
2.23	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.88	99.75	99.63
2.24	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.90	99.77	99.66
2.25	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.91	99.79	99.68
2.26	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.92	99.80	99.70
2.27	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.93	99.82	99.72
2.28	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.94	99.83	99.73
2.29	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.95	99.85	99.75
2.30	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.96	99.86	99.77
2.31	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.96	99.87	99.78
2.32	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.97	99.88	99.80
2.33	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.97	99.90	99.81
2.34	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.98	99.91	99.83

2.35	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.98	99.92	99.84
2.36	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.98	99.93	99.85
2.37	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.99	99.93	99.86
2.38	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.99	99.94	99.87
2.39	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.94	99.88
2.40	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.95	99.89
2.41	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.96	99.90
2.42	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.96	99.91
2.43	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.97	99.91
2.44	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.97	99.92
2.45	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.98	99.93
2.46	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.98	99.94
2.47	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.98	99.94
2.48	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.99	99.95
2.49	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.99	99.95
2.50	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.99	99.96
2.51	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.99	99.96
2.52	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.99	99.97
2.53	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.97
2.54	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.98
2.55	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.98
2.56	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.98
2.57	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.98
2.58	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.99
2.59	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.99
2.60	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.99
2.61	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.99
2.62	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	99.99
2.63	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00
2.64	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00
2.65	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00

SECTION 507
STRENGTH OF CONCRETE USING THE MATURITY METHOD

507.1 Description. This specification covers the maturity method as a non-destructive means of determining in-place concrete strength for pavement or structural applications. The concept of the maturity method is based on the combined effects of concrete age and temperature, during hydration, on the rate of strength gain for a specific concrete mix. This method requires the establishment of a relationship between compressive strength and calculated maturity indices for a specific concrete mixture prior to placement of the mixture in the field. The contractor may use the maturity method in accordance with this specification to estimate the compressive strength of the in-place concrete.

507.2 Procedure. In-place concrete strength determined by the maturity method shall be in accordance with ASTM C 1074, except as noted herein.

507.2.1 Maturity Meter. The maturity meter shall have a secure means of collecting data that is unalterable.

507.2.2 Maturity Function Values. In lieu of determining values for datum temperature, To, or activation energy divided by the gas constant, Q, values of 14° F or 5,000 Kelvin may be used, respectively.

507.2.3 Standardization. The calibration of systems used for monitoring the maturity of concrete shall be verified every seven working days in accordance with AASHTO T 325, Sec 9.1 and ASTM C 1074, Sec 7.1.

507.2.4 Development of the Strength-Maturity Relationship. The contractor shall develop the strength-maturity relationship prior to placing any concrete on the project, and shall notify the engineer prior to development of the maturity curve. The development of the
strength-maturity relationship shall be done in the field using project equipment and materials.

507.2.4.1 Preparing Test Specimens. When the strength-maturity relationship is developed, compressive strength specimens shall be fabricated, cured and tested at the plant site and fabricated from a minimum 3 cubic yard batch of concrete. Temperature of the fresh concrete shall be measured and recorded. All field specimens shall be fabricated and cured in accordance with AASHTO T 23, with the following exceptions. Specimens shall be cured for the first 24 hours under similar or like temperature conditions anticipated during construction, and specimens, including the cylinder used to monitor temperature, shall be de-molded at approximately 24 hours and cured in accordance with AASHTO T 23. The concrete mixture shall meet the specification requirements in order to determine the strength-maturity relationship. The concrete mixture shall be at or above the target air content established by the contractor.

507.2.4.2 Required Documentation. The contractor shall provide the engineer with the following information prior to placing any concrete on the project:

(a) The project number, route, county, concrete job mix number and date of testing.

(b) The air, slump and water content from the batch of concrete tested.

(c) The amount and type of admixture(s) used in the concrete mix.

(d) The strength of each test specimen, and the average strength of test specimens at each test age.

(e) Maturity index for each instrumented test specimen, and the average maturity index for the instrumented specimens at each test age.

(f) A graph of the average compressive strength versus the average value of the maturity index, as described in the strength-maturity relationship section of ASTM C 1074.

507.2.5 Compressive Strength Testing. At a minimum, compressive strength tests shall be performed on three specimens, and the average strength computed at 1, 3, 7, 14 and 28 days. Production may start after the seven-day compressive strengths have been determined with approval from the engineer.

507.2.6 Placement of Temperature Sensors. For pavement and pavement repairs, temperature sensors shall be embedded at approximately mid-depth and 18 inches from the edge of pavement. For other applications,

temperature sensors shall be embedded in locations considered critical in terms of exposure conditions and structural requirements. Temperature sensors shall be placed at the following frequency:

Structure Component	Frequency
Pavement	1 sensor per 3750 sq. yd., with a minimum of one in the last 50 feet of pavement
Pavement Repairs	1 sensor per 10 patches, with a minimum of one sensor in the last patch
Structural	A minimum of one sensor at the end of the pour, with three others sensors available to be placed as directed by the engineer

507.3 Proportioning, Mixing, Placing and Curing Field Placed Concrete. The maturity method does not account for variations in strength due to proportioning, mixing, placing and curing of concrete. Proper methods shall be followed at all times during proportioning, mixing, placing and curing the field placed concrete.

507.3.1 Field Placed Concrete Mix Requirements. Mix constituents of the field placed concrete shall not change, and mix proportions of the field placed concrete shall not vary more than 5.0 percent from the concrete mix used to develop the strength-maturity relationship. The water cement ratio shall not vary by more than 0.02.

507.3.2 Requiring Immediate Validation of Strength-Maturity Relationship. If the mix constituents a change more than 5.0 percent, the water cement ratio changes more than 0.02, the material sources change or the mixing operation changes, an immediate validation of the strength-maturity curve shall be done in accordance with Sec 507.4.

507.4 Validation of Strength-Maturity Relationship. At a minimum, every seventh day of concrete placement a validation test shall be conducted to verify that in-place concrete strength is accurately represented by the strength maturity relationship. The engineer shall be notified at least one business day in advance of when and where the validation test will be done.

507.4.1 Documentation for Validation. The contractor shall document the air, slump, and water content from the batch of concrete tested and any deviations from the original job mix.

507.4.2 Specimens for Validation. During placement of the field placed concrete, a minimum of four compressive strength cylinders shall be fabricated and cured as specified in Sec 507.2.4.1.

507.4.3 Sensor Location for Validation. A temperature sensor shall be embedded to within 1/2 inch of the center of one cylinder for computing the maturity index from the measured temperature history as specified in Sec 507.2.

507.4.4 Test Specimens for Validation. Once the maturity index, according to the temperature monitored cylinder, is achieved which corresponds to the maturity index desired for the first critical action such as opening pavement to traffic or removing formwork, three cylinders shall be tested for compressive strength.

507.4.5 Strength-Maturity Relationship Validated. The average compressive strength of the three cylinders shall be compared to the compressive strength as determined by the strength-maturity relationship. If the predicted strength is within 10 percent or 200 psi, whichever is less, of the actual compressive strength, then the strength-maturity relationship will be considered validated.

507.4.6 Strength-Maturity Relationship Acceptable. If the actual compressive strength is more than 10 percent or 200 psi above the compressive strength as determined by the strength-maturity relationship, then a new strength-maturity relationship may be developed.

507.4.7 Strength-Maturity Relationship Not Validated. If the actual compressive strength is more than 10 percent or 200 psi, whichever is less, below the compressive strength as determined by the strength-maturity relationship, the contractor shall make cylinders to determine compressive strengths until a new strength-maturity relationship has been developed.

507.5 Field Documentation. The contractor shall provide the engineer with the following information prior to taking any field action based on the strength-maturity strengths:

(a) Project number, route, county, and date tested.

(b) A list of each concrete lot evaluated.

(c) Station numbers.

(d) Quantity of concrete.

(e) Maturity index determined for each sensor location.

(f) Estimated strength determined for each sensor location.

507.5.1 Calibration and Verification Records. The contractor shall record all test results for equipment calibration and verification, and shall maintain all results in an organized format.

507.5.2 Availability of Test Results. Test results shall be available to the engineer at all times.

507.6 Basis of Payment. No additional payment will be made for compliance with this specification.

SECTION 601
FIELD LABORATORIES

601.1 Description. This work shall consist of providing one or more laboratories at the site of work and at locations designated by the engineer.

601.2 Laboratory Requirements. A laboratory shall be furnished for each item of work that is specified in the contract as requiring such a unit. Separate laboratories will not be required for successive items of work when any preceding item has been completed, provided that the laboratory complies with the requirements for specific work. Additional laboratories may be required for the proper control of the work when simultaneous operations on the same item of work are being carried on at more than one location separated by a distance of one mile or more and separate testing operations are necessary. The engineer will specify the number of laboratories required based on the operations of the contractor.

601.2.1 The laboratory shall be located and maintained at the site of current operations by the contractor. Work that requires the use of a field laboratory will not be permitted until a laboratory is provided. The laboratory shall remain the property of the contractor, and shall be disposed of by the contractor upon completion of the work requiring the laboratory.

601.2.2 Laboratory Approval. Laboratory verification and approval shall be required for laboratories performing acceptance tests for related work and shall be performed by the engineer annually; not to exceed 18 months.

601.2.2.1 Equipment Verification Samples. Equipment Verification Samples are required to verify equipment where QC and QA are performing acceptance test(s) on the same equipment Frequency of Equipment Verification Samples for permanent laboratories shall be required once per laboratory per quarter. Frequency of Equipment Verification Samples for mobile labs shall be required after setup and continued at once per quarter. Testing of samples shall be on independent equipment meeting the requirements as outlined in Sec 403.17.3.1. Test equipment that requires a correction factor is exempt.

601.2.3 Regardless of the number of field laboratories specified on the plans, the number may be increased, decreased or completely underrun at the discretion of the engineer.

601.3 Type 1 Field Laboratory. The Type 1 field laboratory shall be substantially constructed and weatherproof with wood or concrete floors, windows on at least two sides and at least one outside door. Windows and doors shall be equipped with screens and locks, and the necessary keys shall be furnished to the engineer. The laboratory shall have a minimum of 120 square feet of floor space. The ceiling shall be no less than 7 feet high. The laboratory shall have at least one worktable 30 inches high, with a smooth one-piece top, no less than 8 feet long and 30 inches wide. The laboratory shall be equipped with a storage shelf, a fire extinguisher, a desk and a chair. An operational electric hot plate or gas burner, having no less than two burners with adjustable temperature controls and capability of accommodating two 14 x 20-inch sample pans, shall be provided. A faucet-equipped sink capable of accommodating a 14 x 20-inch sample pan and connected to an operating water source of at least a 50-gallon capacity shall be provided. The contractor shall keep an adequate supply of potable water available at all times. Lighting facilities shall be located to adequately illuminate all work in the interior of the laboratory. When required by the engineer, grounded electrical outlets with 110 to 120 volts, 60-Hertz continuous current and a climate control capable of maintaining an ambient temperature range of 72 to 80 F shall be provided. Laboratories shall be relocated on the project as directed by the engineer.

601.4 Type 2 Field Laboratory. The laboratory shall be in accordance with Sec 601.3, except as follows. The laboratory shall have a minimum of 200 square feet of floor space. The laboratory shall be constructed with a dividing wall and doorway to allow for a separate testing work area and an office area suitable for computer operation meeting the engineer's approval. Telephone service shall be provided. The laboratory shall be provided with an exhaust fan capable of moving a volume of air equal to at least ten times the volume of the laboratory each hour. Grounded electrical outlets with 110 to 120 volts, 60-Hertz continuous current and a climate control capable of maintaining an ambient temperature range of 72 to 80 F shall be provided. When a field laboratory is provided in accordance with Sec 502, at least one window shall provide a direct view of plant operations.

601.5 Type 3 Field Laboratory. The laboratory shall be in accordance with Sec 601.4, except as follows. At least one window shall provide a direct view of plant operations. A locked storage area for nuclear equipment

shall be provided that is at least 15 feet from the normal work areas. A steel box shall be provided in the storage area with locks for the purpose of storing nuclear equipment in accordance with Nuclear Regulatory Commission specifications.

601.5.1 In accordance with Sec 401 or 402, a thermostatically controlled operating oven, capable of maintaining a minimum temperature of 375 F and having a capacity to accommodate at least one standard gallon can, shall be furnished. The laboratory shall have a minimum of 300 square feet of floor space. The laboratory shall contain a sieve shaker in accordance with AASHTO T 27, including time controls, a minimum sieve stacking height of 28 inches, platform adapters to accommodate 8 or 10-inch sieves, and a sample splitter meeting AASHTO T 248 requirements, having a minimum length of 20 inches with a 2-inch maximum opening size, complete with a minimum of three pans.

601.5.2 When a field laboratory is provided in accordance with Sec 403, the laboratory shall have a minimum of two outside doors and four windows. The outside doors shall be located such that ingress and egress is permitted from opposite ends of the building. Each window shall provide at least 4 square feet of glazed area. The laboratory shall have a minimum of 320 square feet of floor space, with a minimum width of 8 feet. An exhaust fan shall be provided that is capable of moving a volume of air each hour equal to at least ten times the volume of the laboratory. Anchored tables of adequate dimensions shall be furnished. All tables shall have smooth, one-piece tops. The laboratory shall be equipped with storage shelves, a minimum of four chairs, a two-drawer filing cabinet and the bituminous mixture equipment described in Sec 403.6. Circuitry shall be such that all indicated equipment can be used without disruption. The contractor may provide a facsimile machine with a private line, at the contractor's expense, to provide faster communications when mix adjustments are needed.

601.6 Basis of Payment. Unless otherwise specified, no direct payment will be made for Type 1 or Type 3 Field Laboratories. When provided in accordance with Sec 203, authorized Type 2 Field Laboratories, complete in place, will be paid for at the contract unit price. No direct payment will be made for relocation of Type 2 Field Laboratories. No direct payment will be made for furnishings, maintenance, utilities, heating and cooling facilities, including operation and fuel, and final removal of the laboratory.

SECTION 602
MARKERS

602.1 Description. This work shall consist of constructing drain markers or steel right of way markers as specified in the contract documents, at the locations shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer.

602.2 Material.

602.2.1 All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section
Steel Post for Markers	1044

602.2.2 Right of way and drain marker plaques and fasteners will be furnished at the job site at no cost to the contractor.

602.3 Construction Requirements. Steel markers shall be set with the legend facing the centerline of the highway. Posts shall be set vertically and the plaques firmly attached. Posts shall be driven in accordance with Sec 903. Posts having battered or mushroomed tops will not be accepted.

602.4 Method of Measurement. Measurement of drain markers and right of way markers will be made per each.

602.5 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantity of markers will be paid for at the contract unit price.

SECTION 603
WATER LINE INSTALLATION

603.1 Description. This work shall consist of furnishing material for, and installing water lines and appurtenances as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer.

603.2 Material. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section Specifications
Concrete	501
Reinforcing Steel	1036
Ductile Iron Pipe, 3 to 48 inches diameters	AWWA C151
Polyethylene (PE) Pipe and Tubing, 1.2 to 3 inch diameter	AWWA C901
Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pipe and Fitting, 4 to 63 inch diameter	AWWA C906
Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pipe and Fabricated Fittings, 4 to 12 inch diameter	AWWA C900
Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pipe and Fabricated Fittings, 14 to 48 inch diameter	AWWA C905
Ductile Iron and Gray-Iron Fittings	AWWA C110
Rubber Gasket Joints	AWWA C111
Cement Mortar Lining	AWWA C104
Gate Valves	AWWA C500
Rubber-Seated Butterfly Valves	AWWA C504
Dry-Barrel Fire Hydrants	AWWA C502
Seamless Copper Water Tube	ASTM B88, Type K (ASTM B 88 M, Type A)

603.2.1 Service Connections. Service connections shall be completed in accordance with AWWA, ANSI, ASTM or the local utility code, as applicable.

603.2.2 Material Acceptance. The contractor shall furnish one copy of each manufacturers' certification that all specified tests have been conducted and that the material and fittings are in accordance with these specifications.

603.3 Construction Requirements. Service shall not be interrupted without approval from the engineer and the proper utility official. The contractor shall arrange the work to minimize service interruptions. Prior notice of at least 24 hours shall be given to the proper utility official and the engineer before any main is shut off. In no case shall a valve or hydrant be opened or shut without proper authorization.

603.3.1 Construction and Installation. Construction and installation shall be in accordance with AWWA, ANSI, ASTM, or local utility code, as applicable.

603.3.2 Inspection and Acceptance. Inspection and acceptance of the completed installation, prior to backfilling, shall be the responsibility of the utility owner.

603.3.3 Appurtenance Installation. Appurtenances shall be located as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer.

603.3.4 Abandoned Water Mains. Abandoned water mains shall be plugged and sealed watertight by means of a ductile iron plug or cap, or by covering the end of the pipe with concrete of any mixture specified in Sec 501. The concrete cover shall provide a minimum of 6 inches cover around the outside of the pipe and shall extend a minimum of 6 inches in each direction from the end of the pipe. All existing valves that will have pressure on one side and an abandoned main on the other side shall be closed with a ductile iron plug and blocked with 295 reaction backing on the side where the main has been abandoned. A portion of the abandoned pipe shall be removed to allow clearance for plugging and backing.

603.3.5 Encasement. Encasement, if required, shall be as specified in the contract.

603.3.6 Backfilling. Material placed around and 12 inches above the top of the pipe shall be free of cinders, ashes, refuse, boulders, rocks or other unsuitable material. The remainder of the trench shall be backfilled in accordance with Sec 726.

603.3.7 Disinfection. The completed water line installation shall be disinfected in accordance with the provisions of MDNR.

603.4 Method of Measurement.

603.4.1 Pipe. Final measurement will not be made except for authorized changes during construction or where appreciable errors are found in the contract quantity. Where required, measurement of pipe, complete in place, including joint accessories, fittings and service connections greater than 2 inches inside diameter, will be made to the nearest linear foot along the geometrical center of the pipe with no exceptions for valves or fittings. The revision or correction will be computed and added to or deducted from the contract quantity.

603.4.2 Rock. Rock encountered in trenching and classified as Class 3 Excavation in Rock in accordance with Sec 203 will be measured to the nearest cubic yard. Measurement of yardage to be paid for as Class 3 Excavation in Rock will be a width 18 inches greater than the inside diameter of the pipe and a depth from the surface of the rock as determined by the engineer to a plane 6 inches below the outside bottom of the pipe or to the bottom of the rock, whichever is higher. Any Class 3 Excavation in Rock performed prior to the establishment of the lines of demarcation and notification to the engineer will not be measured or paid for.

603.4.3 Service Connections. Measurement of relocating service connections, 2 inches inside diameter or less, will be made per each.

603.4.4 Encasement. Final measurement will not be made except for authorized changes during construction or where appreciable errors are found in the contract quantity. Where required, measurement of encasement conduit will be made to the nearest linear foot along the geometrical center of the conduit. Contract quantities will be used for final payment except as hereinafter provided. Measurement of reinforced concrete encasement, including reinforcing steel, will be made to the nearest 1/10 cubic yard. The revision or correction will be computed and added to or deducted from the contract quantity.

603.5 Basis of Payment. Accepted water line will be paid for at the contract unit price for each of the pay items included in the contract. No direct payment will be made for excavation or backfill except in accordance with Secs 206.6.3.3 and

SECTION 604
MISCELLANEOUS DRAINAGE

SECTION 604.10 CONCRETE HEADWALLS, DROP INLETS AND MANHOLES.

604.10.1 Description. This work shall consist of constructing concrete headwalls, drop inlets and manholes in accordance with these specifications, as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer.

604.10.2 Material. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section
Precast Drainage Units	1023
Reinforcing Steel for Concrete	1036

604.10.2.1 All concrete, except that portion placed monolithic with paved surfaces, shall be Class B. Concrete for inverts shall be either Class B or concrete of a commercial mixture in accordance with Sec 501. Material, proportioning, mixing, slump and transporting shall be in accordance with Sec 501. Concrete shall be placed, finished and cured in accordance with Sec 703.

604.10.2.2 Steps for concrete manholes and drop inlets may be cast iron, aluminum alloy or polypropylene plastic coated reinforcing steel. The portion of the step to be embedded in the concrete shall have a configuration that will prevent any pullout. These steps shall withstand a single concentrated load of 300 pounds without distortion on that portion protruding from the wall. The minimum width of rungs or cleats shall be 10 inches and shall be shaped to prevent the foot from slipping off the side. The step shall project a minimum distance of 4 inches from the wall of the riser or cone section measured from the point of embedment. The steps shall be embedded a minimum distance of 3 inches and shall be spaced vertically at a maximum distance of 16 inches.

604.10.2.3 Steps for drop inlets may be steel step bars as shown on the plans or steps meeting the above requirements.

604.10.3 Construction Requirements.

604.10.3.1 All pipe built into the walls of the structure shall fit flush with the inside face of the wall. A joint, consisting of one layer of commercially available 55 pound smooth roll roofing, a heavy coat of bituminous material or other appropriate bond breaker, shall be placed around that portion of the pipe extending into the walls of the structure. Steps shall clear all pipes and shall be built in the wall as designated by the engineer. Reinforcement of these structures shall be in accordance with Sec 706, and the excavation shall be in accordance with Sec 206.

604.10.3.2 Steps for concrete manholes and drop inlets shall be embedded by casting in place, mortaring or by friction fit. Steps cast in place shall be set through the forms and secured against displacement before concrete is placed. The cavity receptacle for steps placed by friction fit shall be formed by casting in place a removable mold recommended for use by the manufacturer of the step.

604.10.3.3 New manholes for existing sewers shall be constructed as shown on the plans. Cutting the existing sewer will be required to provide inlet and outlet connections to the new structure, and a bypass line shall be provided around construction at all locations where continuous sewer service will be required. Any portion of an existing sewer that is damaged in constructing the new manhole shall be repaired or replaced at the contractor's expense with new material of a type matching the old.

604.10.4 Basis of Payment.

604.10.4.1 The accepted quantity of concrete headwalls, drop inlets and manholes will be paid for in the following manner: (a) Class B concrete will be measured and paid for in accordance with Sec 703 for miscellaneous concrete. 297 (b) Reinforcing steel will be measured and paid for in accordance with Sec 706. (c) Excavation will be measured and paid for in accordance with Sec 206.

604.10.4.2 No direct payment will be made for: (a) Maintaining service or for cutting the existing sewer. (b) Weep holes, including excavation, permeable granular backfill, 4-inch drain tile, screen for inlet or any other work incidental thereto. (c) Manhole steps. SECTION 604.20 ADJUSTING DRAINAGE FACILITIES.

604.20.1 Description. This work shall consist of adjusting manholes, catch basins, inlets and similar items as shown on the plans. Existing frames and covers shall be salvaged and reused if specified in the contract. New manhole steps shall be provided as necessary. New manhole adjusting rings (adapters) shall be provided if specified in the contract.

604.20.2 Basis of Payment. The accepted adjustments of manholes, catch basins and inlets will be paid for at the contract unit price for each of the pay items included in the contract. No direct payment will be made for steps or adjusting rings. SECTION 604.30 ADJUSTING HOUSE SEWER CONNECTIONS.

604.30.1 Description. This work shall consist of laying or relaying sanitary sewer house connections that are to be relocated or that are to be reconnected to new sewers or temporarily removed to permit the installation of other items in the contract.

604.30.2 Material. The size and class of pipe to be used shall be in accordance with the local authority having jurisdiction over the installation of sewer connections. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section
Vitrified Clay Sewer and Culvert Pipe	1030
Plastic Joint Compound for Pipe	1057.8
Mortar for Pipe Joints	1066

604.30.3 Construction Requirements. Excavation for the laying of pipe and for backfilling the trench shall be in accordance with Sec 726. The adjustment shall be made to the line and grade shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer. Where a house sewer connection is relocated or relaid above a water main, Class B concrete or concrete of a commercial mixture in accordance with Sec 501 shall be used to encase the sewer line a minimum thickness of 6 inches. The encasement shall extend to a point where the normal distance from the sewer to the water main is a minimum of 10 feet.

604.30.4 Method of Measurement. Measurement of adjusting house sewer connections will be made to the nearest linear foot along the geometrical center of the adjusted pipe.

604.30.5 Basis of Payment.

604.30.5.1 The accepted quantity of adjusted house sewer connections, complete in place, will be paid for at the contract unit price. Payment will be considered full compensation for all necessary pipe, tees,

bends, wyes, the cutting of and joining new pipe to old pipe or structure, excavation, backfill, traps, fittings and items incidental thereto.

604.30.5.2 Payment for encasement, complete in place, will be paid for at the contract unit price.

Intentionally Left Blank

609.60.5.3 If the contract documents provide for obtaining material from the right of way or other source furnished by the Commission, but all or part of the required quantity of acceptable material is not available, unless the shortage is due to the contractor's operations, payment for such additional rock base material that the contractor will be required to furnish and haul will be made per square yard at the fixed contract unit price in Sec 109, and will be measured in accordance with Sec 109.1.

609.60.5.4 If the plans do not provide for a source of material, the contractor shall provide the material. All costs for securing the source, quarrying, excavating, breaking and hauling the material to the site will be paid for at the contract unit price for Furnishing Rock Ditch Liner.

609.60.5.5 Placing Rock Ditch Liner will be paid for at the contract unit price per cubic yard.

609.60.5.6 The accepted quantity of bedding material, complete in place, will be paid for at the contract unit price. No direct payment will be made for excavation or for any work necessary to prepare the subgrade for the bedding material.

609.60.5.7 No direct payment will be made for excavation below the upper surface of the rock ditch liner, or for any work necessary for preparing the subgrade and backfilling the completed item.

SECTION 609.70 ROCK LINING.

609.70.1 Description. This work shall consist of constructing rock lining at the locations shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer.

609.70.2 Material. The material for rock lining shall be in accordance with Sec 611.30 for Type 2 Rock Blanket.

609.70.3 Construction Requirements. The rock lining material shall be placed by dumping and left in a rough condition to the approximate shape of the channel bottom.

609.70.4 Method of Measurement. Final measurement of the completed rock lining will not be made except for authorized changes during construction, or where appreciable errors are found in the contract quantity. Where required, measurement will be made to the nearest cubic yard of material in place in the completed rock lining. The revision or correction will be computed and added to or deducted from the contract quantity.

609.70.5 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantity of rock lining, complete in place, will be paid for at the contract unit price. No direct payment will be made for any excavation required to place the rock lining.

SECTION 610
PAVEMENT SMOOTHNESS

610.1 Description. This work shall consist of measuring the smoothness of the final pavement surface. Smoothness shall be measured using the International Roughness Index (IRI). The following pavement types shall comply with this specification:

a) Multi-lift asphalt construction greater than 3 inches contained in Secs 401 and 403.

b) Concrete pavement construction contained in Secs 502 and 506.

c) Combination of surface planning, such as diamond grinding or milling, and single lift asphalt construction or multi-lift asphalt construction less than or equal to 3 inches contained in Secs 401 and 403.

d) Single lift asphalt construction contained in Secs 401 and 403.

610.2 Material Requirements.

610.2.1 Inertial Profiler. IRI shall be computed from profile data collected with an inertial profiler (IP) that meets the requirements of AASHTO M 328

610.2.2 ProVAL Software. The ProVAL software program shall be used to compute IRI smoothness and locate areas of localized roughness (ALR) in accordance with MoDOT TM-59.

610.2.3 Straightedge. A rolling 10-foot straightedge shall be used for checking longitudinal elevation changes. A 4-foot straightedge shall be used for checking transverse elevation changes.

610.3 Certification. All inertial profilers used to collect data on MoDOT projects shall be annually certified at the MoDOT certification site in accordance with TM-59. The operator of the IP shall be certified through the MoDOT technician certification program.

610.4 Construction Requirements.

610.4.1 Smoothness Increments. Length of pavement shall be defined in the following increments for the purpose of smoothness acceptance:

a) Section – A section is a day's paving and shall begin and terminate at the construction joints. Interruptions designated by the engineer which cause placement to cease and begin at a new location will considered as a separate section for that day's operation if the separate section is greater than 250 feet.

b) Segment – Sections shall be divided into segments of 0.1 mile lengths with the exception of the last segment. If the last segment is greater than 250 feet and less than 0.1 mile, then the segment shall be measured for smoothness as an independent segment. If the last segment is 250 feet or less, the profile for that segment shall be included in the evaluation for the previous segment. The combined segment IRI shall be weighted for the length.

610.4.2 Profiling Areas.

610.4.2.1 Profiling will be applicable to the surface of all the following:

a) Mainline paving

b) Auxiliary lanes, turning lanes and ramps for projects or combination of projects, consisting of more than 0.5 mile of total profilable pavement.

610.4.2.2 Profiling will not be required for the following exceptions:

(a) Bridge decks, bridge approach slabs and concrete approach pavements.

(b) Pavement on horizontal curves with centerline radius of curve less than 1000 feet and pavement within the superelevation transition of such curves.

(c) Pavement on vertical curves having a "K" value less than 90 and a length less than 500 feet.

(d) Pavement width transitions.

(e) Fifty feet in direction of travel on each side of utility appurtenances such as manholes and valve boxes.

(f) Fifty feet in direction of travel on each side of intersecting routes.

(g) Shoulders.

(h) Interruptions designated by the engineer which provide independently placed sections shorter than 50 feet.

(i) The last 15 feet of any section where the prime contractor is not responsible for the adjoining surface.

(j) Any lane which abuts an existing lane not constructed under the same contract.

610.4.2.3 In addition to the exceptions in Sec 610.4.2.2, profiling may be waived by the engineer if staging of the overall project; such as multiple entrance lane gaps, lane staging, etc.; affects the normal paving operation, or if multiple profile exceptions continuously exist on a large portion of the same roadway. Upon waiver, exempted areas shall be checked with a 10-foot straightedge.

610.4.3 Longitudinal Straightedging. Any pavement surface not measured with an inertial profiler shall be measured with a 10-foot straightedge. The straightedge path in the longitudinal direction for driving lanes will be located three feet from the outside edge and for shoulders will be located in the center. Additional paths with suspect roughness may be selected at the engineer's discretion. Shoulders that are paved integrally with an adjacent driving lane will not require straightedging. The engineer also has discretion to use a straightedge for spot checking pavement that had been measured with an inertial profiler. Any variations in the longitudinal direction exceeding 1/4 inch in 10 feet on shoulders and 1/8 inch in 10 feet on all other pavements shall be marked for correction in a manner approved by the engineer.

610.4.4 Transverse Straightedging. The engineer shall randomly check driving lanes, regardless of the smoothness measurement method used, for variations in the transverse direction with a 4-foot straightedge. Any variations in the transverse direction more than 1/4 inch shall be marked for correction in a manner approved by the engineer.

610.4.5 Full Depth Pavement and Multi-lift Overlays > 3 Inches. These construction procedures apply to pavement treatments described in Sec 610.1 (a) and (b).

610.4.5.1 Quality Control Testing. The contractor shall perform quality control (QC) testing on all eligible profiling areas and provide electronic files for smoothness data in .PFF file format to the engineer in accordance with the testing and reporting procedures in MoDOT TM-59. Reported IRI for each segment is the average of both wheel paths. Furnishing inaccurate test results may result in decertification of the inertial profiler operator. Average segment IRIs shall meet the threshold require,ent in Table 1.

610.4.5.2 Quality Assurance Testing. The engineer will perform quality assurance (QA) testing with a MoDOT inertial profiler to verify the QC test results. The engineer shall select a continuous portion of roadway; not adjacent to the beginning or ending of the project limits and free to the degree possible of exempted areas, such as bridges; that constitute at least 10 percent of the project lane-miles, which will be designated as the QA test length. The beginning and ending of the QA test length shall be clearly marked with paint. Both the contractor and engineer shall measure the IRI in both wheel paths for the entire QA test length with their respective inertial profilers. The start and stop of the inertial profiler runs shall be triggered automatically. The contractor inertial profiler run on the QA test length may constitute the regular QC test result or may be run independently from previous QC test results. The contractor shall provide the electronic file for the QA test length run in .PFF

format to the engineer within 24 hours of testing. The IRI value for each segment within the QA test length shall be computed as the average of both wheel paths. The absolute value of the difference between the contractor and engineer IRIs shall be computed for each segment within the QA test length. The average of the absolute values of the IRI difference shall be 8 inches/mile or less. The absolute value of the IRI difference for any single segment shall be 12 inches/mile or less.

610.4.5.3 Areas of Localized Roughness. An area of localized roughness (ALR) is any length of pavement with a continuous 25-foot average IRI measured in the right wheel path that exceeds the maximum threshold set in Table 1. ALRs shall be corrected.

610.4.5.4 Method of Correction. Corrective action to eliminate ALRs and improve the average IRI shall be accomplished by a method approved by the engineer. Diamond grinding may be used for bumps, but the use of an impact device, such as a bush hammer, will not be permitted. Total grinding depth shall be limited to ¼ inch. Satisfactory longitudinal grinding is acceptable as the final surface of the corrected pavements. All corrective work shall be completed prior to determination of pavement thickness. The contractor shall reprofile the corrected lengths to verify smoothness compliance and submit an electronic data file in .PFF format to the engineer within 48 hours after testing.

Table 1

Treatment Type	Posted speed > 45 mph		Posted speed ≤ 45 mph	
	Maximum Segment IRI (in/mi)	**Maximum ALR IRI (in/mi)**	**Maximum Segment IRI (in/mi)**	**Maximum ALR IRI (in/mi)**
Full Depth Pavement or Multi-Lift Overlay > 3-inches Sec 610.1 (a) and 610.1 (b)	80.0	125.0	125.0	175.0
Multi-Treatment and Multi-Lift Overlays ≤ 3-inches	**Posted speed > 45 mph and AADT > 3500**		**Posted speed ≤ 45 mph or AADT ≤ 3500**	
	Maximum Segment IRI (in/mi)	**Maximum ALR IRI (in/mi)**	**Maximum Segment IRI (in/mi)**	**Maximum ALR IRI (in/mi)**
	80.0	175.0	125.0	175.0

610.4.6 Multi-treatment Overlays or Multi-lift Overlays ≤ 3 Inches. These construction procedures apply to pavement treatments described in Sec 610.1 (c).

610.4.6.1 Quality Control Testing. The requirements are the same as Sec 610.4.5.1, except that segment average IRIs shall meet the threshold requirements for multi-lift overlays less than or equal to 3 inches in Table 1.

610.4.6.2 Quality Assurance Testing. The requirements are the same as Sec 610.4.5.2.

610.4.6.3 Areas of Localized Roughness. All ALRs, as defined in Sec 610.4.5.3, that exceed the maximum threshold set in Table 1 shall be corrected.

610.4.6.4 Method of Correction. Corrective action to eliminate ALRs and improve the average IRI shall be accomplished with a method approved by the engineer. Diamond grinding bumps shall only be permitted for a 1½ inch or greater single lift overlay. Grinding depth shall be limited to ¼ inch. The contractor shall reprofile the corrected lengths to verify smoothness compliance and submit an electronic data file in .PFF format to the engineer within 48 hours after testing.

610.4.7 Single Lift Overlays. These construction procedures apply to pavement treatments described in Sec 610.1 (d).

610.4.7.1 Pre-Construction Quality Control Testing. Prior to performing any surface work or pavement repairs, the contractor shall profile the right wheel path in accordance with TM-59. This control profile will serve as the baseline for calculating percent improvement for the project.

610.4.7.2 Post-Construction Quality Control Testing. As soon as practical after resurfacing, the contractor shall profile the right wheel path again. The same stationing shall be used to ensure a direct comparison with the pre-construction profile.

610.4.7.3 Post-Construction Quality Assurance Testing. The requirements are the same as Sec 610.4.5.2, except that the testing shall only be performed in the right wheel path.

610.4.7.4 Method of Correction. Corrective action to improve the average IRI shall be accomplished with a method approved by the engineer. Diamond grinding bumps shall only be permitted for a 1½ inch or greater single lift overlay. Grinding depth shall be limited to ¼ inch. The final surface texture of corrected pavement shall be comparable to adjacent sections that do not require correcting.

610.4.8 Marred Surface Area. Any area of a segment that has corrective diamond grinding performed without grinding the entire segment shall be defined as a marred surface area.

610.5 Basis of Payment.

610.5.1 Fixed Value Improvement. The following basis of payment procedures shall apply to all pavement treatments described in Sec 610.1 (a), (b) and (c).

610.5.1.1 Smoothness Adjustment. Smoothness adjustments will be paid per segment based on the IRI before any corrections, except for the allowances in Sec 610.5.1.4. Any segment with an IRI above the maximum limit in Tables 2 and 3 must be corrected through a method approved by the engineer to achieve the desired smoothness. When paving widths are greater than the travel lane widths, incentive payment will apply to the driving lane design width only.

610.5.1.2 Incentives. Incentive payment for smoothness shall be based on either Table 2 or Table 3. Table 2 shall be used for all pavements, having a final posted speed greater than 45 mph, except multi-lift overlays less than or equal to 3 inches on routes with AADT less than or equal to 3500 and multi-treatment overlays on routes with AADT less than or equal to 3500. Table 3 shall be used for pavements having a final posted speed of 45 mph or less and multi-lift overlays less than or equal to 3 inches on routes with AADT less than or equal to 3500 and multi-treatment overlays on routes with AADT less than or equal to 3500 at any posted speed. Constant-width acceleration and deceleration lanes shall be considered as mainline pavements.

Table 2

International Roughness Index, Inches Per Mile	Percent of Contract Price
40.0 or less	105
40.1 - 54.0	103
54.1 - 80.0	100
80.1 or greater	100[a]

Table 3

International Roughness Index, Inches Per Mile	Percent of Contract Price
70.0 or less	103
70.1- 125.0	100
125.1 or greater	100[b]

[a]After correction to 80.0 inches per mile or less.
[b]After correction to 125.0 inches per mile or less.

610.5.1.3 Segment Correction. If the contractor elects to diamond grind an entire segment and the corrected surface drops below the maximum IRI limits in the designated Table, then the contractor cannot receive any

SECTION 616
TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL

616.1 Description. This work shall consist of furnishing, installing, operating, maintaining, cleaning, relocating and removing temporary traffic control devices and equipment, and the removal and relocation or covering and uncovering of existing signs and other traffic control devices in accordance with the contract documents or as directed by the engineer. For purposes of this specification, the work zone will be defined as the area between the first and last temporary traffic control device as shown on the plans for the work being performed.

616.2 Material. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section
Temporary Traffic Control Devices	1063

616.3 Safety Requirements.

616.3.1 All traffic control devices shall be in accordance with the MUTCD and any applicable safety and design codes.

616.3.2 The contractor shall submit a manufacturer's certification of crashworthiness, per NCHRP 350 or MASH 2016 Evaluation Criteria, for FHWA Category 1 temporary traffic control devices and appurtenances. The contractor shall submit the manufacturer's certification of crashworthiness per NCHRP 350 or MASH 2016 Test Level 3 criteria for all FHWA Category 2 and Category 3 temporary traffic control devices and appurtenances. Non MASH 2016 Category 2 temporary traffic control devices and appurtenances manufactured prior to January 1, 2023 may be used until January 1, 2026. Non MASH 2016 Category 3 temporary traffic control devices manufactured prior to January 1, 2023 may be used until January 1, 2030. All Category 2 and Category 3 temporary traffic control devices and appurtenances manufactured after January 1, 2023 shall meet MASH 2016 Test Level 3 crash test requirements. The contractor shall submit a manufacturer's certification of crashworthiness per NCHRP 350 or MASH 2016 for FHWA Category 4 temporary traffic control devices when available. Regardless whether the device meets NCHRP 350 or MASH 2016 criteria, the engineer reserves the right of final approval. Installation of a device prior to the engineer's approval will be at the contractor's risk.

616.3.3 The contractor shall:

(a) Designate an individual as the Work Zone Specialist (WZS) who is knowledgeable and competent by training and/or certification in the principles of proper temporary traffic control in accordance with Chapter 6 of the MUTCD, and who has the primary responsibility, with sufficient authority, for implementing the traffic management plan and other safety and mobility aspects of the project. The WZS shall be directly involved with daily traffic management, and shall communicate pertinent information with the engineer either in person or via telecommunication. Duties of the WZS shall include monitoring the work zone to ensure an efficient flow of traffic, correcting any failed or misaligned traffic control signs or devices, and recommending traffic management improvements to the engineer. The name, certification, and a 24-hour contact number for the WZS shall be provided to the engineer prior to the start of work. If the contractor makes a change in the designated WZS, the engineer shall be notified immediately. The WZS shall be trained and certified by a qualified person as defined by the Occupational Safety and Health Administration. The WZS shall have a card and/or certificate that includes the WZS's name, instructor's name and title, training entity/agency, date of training, and signature of the instructor. Re-certification shall be required a minimum of every four years.

(b) Ensure all contractor personnel are trained in traffic control to a level commensurate with their responsibilities.

(c) Obtain authorization from the engineer for any lane closure or traffic shift at least two working days prior to the planned closure or lane shift. Requests for complete road closures, or any imposition of height, width or weight restrictions shall be submitted to the engineer for approval at least 15 calendar days prior to the planned closure or restriction. The engineer reserves the right to deny any request for lane closure, traffic shift, road closure or restrictions of height, width or weight that the engineer

determines could be in conflict with other known or anticipated traffic impacts, including but not limited to, outstanding permits that have been issued by the Commission for oversized or overweight loads.

(d) Perform quality control of work zones to promote consistency and ensure compliance with contract documents, policies and guidelines.

616.4 Construction Requirements.

616.4.1 Performance and operational aspects of the devices shall be in accordance with the latest editions of the MUTCD and the Missouri Quality Standards for Temporary Traffic Control Devices.

616.4.1.1 All traffic control devices shall be removed as soon as practical when the devices are no longer needed. When work is suspended for short periods of time, traffic control devices that are no longer appropriate shall be turned away from traffic, removed or covered. All temporary traffic control devices shall be removed after the completion of construction and shall remain the property of the contractor unless specified otherwise. All permanent traffic control devices that are in conflict with temporary traffic control devices shall be covered or removed as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer. Upon completion of the work, all permanent traffic control devices to remain in place shall be restored to original condition.

616.4.1.2 All sign covers shall meet the requirements of the MoDOT Quality Standards for Temporary Traffic Control Devices.

616.4.1.3 All permanent traffic control devices relocated on a temporary basis shall be moved in the timeframe designated by the engineer, and shall remain visible to the traveling public during all stages of construction. The contractor shall place temporarily relocated permanent traffic control devices in the final location when construction is complete. Damaged devices shall be replaced by the contractor at the contractor's expense.

616.4.2 The contract will indicate the minimum requirements for traffic control. With the engineer's approval, the contractor may add to the traffic control plan any temporary traffic control devices or services the contractor considers necessary to adequately protect the public and the work. Device quantities may be adjusted accordingly.

616.4.2.1 Signs and sign quantities for blasting areas will not be included in the contract traffic control plan. The contractor will be responsible for furnishing, installing, maintaining and removing blasting zone signs in accordance with the MUTCD, at the contractor's expense. Placement of blasting zone signs will be subject to approval from the engineer.

616.4.2.2 All changes to the traffic control plan resulting from contractor staging revisions, including proposed total road closures for the contractor's convenience, shall be submitted in writing to the engineer for review and acceptance prior to implementation. Device quantities may be adjusted accordingly.

616.4.2.3 If the engineer determines the need for additional traffic control devices not included in the traffic control plan, the contractor will be notified in writing to provide the additional devices. Reimbursement for authorized changes to the traffic control plan will be made in accordance with Sec 104.3, unless covered by contract unit prices.

616.4.2.4 The contractor shall monitor traffic flow through the project and verify that all traffic control devices are in place and functioning properly during both daytime and nighttime conditions, as applicable. If the contractor determines that a deficiency in any traffic control device exists, the contractor shall take corrective action. No additional payment will be made for the corrective action.

616.4.2.5 As soon as possible after observing a traffic control deficiency, the engineer will report the deficiency to the contractor, either verbally or in writing. After receiving notification, if the contractor does not make corrections within an agreed upon timeline, order records or suspension of the work may occur. Regardless of the severity of the deficiency, corrections shall be made as soon as possible to maintain a quality work zone.

616.4.2.5.1 The severity of a deficiency will be categorized as follows:

(a) Category 1 – Presents an immediate danger to the traveling public or workers and needs to be addressed immediately.

(b) Category 2 – The situation doesn't pose an immediate threat to either the public or the workers, but can impact the proper functioning of the work zone.

(c) Category 3 – The situation doesn't impact the functioning of the work zone but is more of a maintenance or aesthetic issue.

616.4.2.5.2 When the engineer determines that the contractor has not made a good faith effort in correcting a deficiency as agreed upon in Sec 616.4.2.5, an order record will be issued and the contractor will be notified of the following timelines to correct the deficiency.

(a) A Category 1 deficiency shall be corrected within one hour.
(b) A Category 2 deficiency shall be corrected within 24 hours.
(c) A Category 3 deficiency shall be corrected within 96 hours.

616.4.2.5.3 When the engineer determines the contractor has not made a good faith effort in complying with an order record issued in accordance with Sec 616.4.2.5.2, the following action may be taken:

(a) A second order record will be issued.
(b) The engineer may find the contractor in violation of the contract in accordance with Sec 105.

616.4.2.5.4 For reoccurring deficiencies of similar nature within the contractor's control, the engineer may issue order records in accordance with Sec 616.4.2.5.3, bypassing Sec 616.4.2.5.2 requirements.

616.4.2.6 The contractor shall provide written notice to the engineer of any pedestrian or vehicular accident when physical evidence or other information suggests an accident has occurred in the work zone. The contractor shall obtain and provide to the engineer copies of law enforcement accident reports for any accidents in the work zone.

616.4.3 Each flagger, automated flagger assistance devices (AFAD) operator, portable signal flagging device (PSFD) operator and pilot vehicle operator shall maintain a valid flagger certification card that certifies the individual has been trained by a qualified person as defined by the Occupational Safety and Health Administration, in the principles and procedures of flagging in accordance with Chapter 6 of the MUTCD. Flagger certification cards shall include the flagger's name, instructor's name and title, training entity/agency, date, and signature of the instructor. Flagger certifications shall be provided to the engineer prior to flagging operations. Flagger re-certification shall be required a minimum of every four years. Certifications will not be required in emergency situations that arise due to actions beyond the contractor's control when flagging is necessary to maintain safe traffic control on a temporary basis. All flagging, AFAD, PFD and pilot vehicle operations shall be in accordance with the MUTCD. Flaggers and pilot vehicles shall be provided as shown on the plans or as approved or directed by the engineer. When not specified in the plans, the contractor may use a Type B (Red/Yellow Lens) AFAD PSFD or pilot vehicle to supplement the flagging operation upon approval from the engineer. When two-way traffic is maintained over a single lane, each flagger, AFAD operator, if used in tandem, and pilot vehicle operator involved in the traffic flagging operation shall be equipped with a portable, two-way, communication system approved by the engineer. When the AFAD or PSFD are not in use they shall be removed from the roadside.

616.4.4 Crossovers for hauling material will be permitted only at locations indicated in the traffic control plan or as authorized by the engineer. Modifications to specified locations shall be in accordance with applicable portions of Sec 104. Crossovers shall be signed in accordance with the traffic control plan. When the project has been completed, temporary crossovers shall be removed and the area restored to original condition. Existing crossovers shall be restored to original condition, including surface material.

616.5 Lighting Requirements.

616.5.1 Amber or Amber and White Warning Lights. All on-road construction-related vehicles and equipment shall operate with amber or amber and white warning lights having 360 degrees of total coverage and as follows:

(1) For daytime operations, SAE Class 1 or 2 lights shall be used.

(2) For dusk to dawn operations, SAE Class 2 lights shall be used, or SAE Class 1 lights with dimming capabilities to minimize glare experienced by travelers.

616.5.1.1 Red or Red and Blue Warning Lights. The contractor may elect to use red or red and blue warning lights in accordance with Missouri law 307.175 RSMo. and the following requirements:

(1) Use of red or red and blue lights shall be limited to use on a total of two vehicles and/or equipment per work zone and/or project.

(2) Use of red or red and blue warning lights shall be limited to areas in advance of tapers or lane shifts and at the active work location.

(3) Lights shall be SAE Class 2 or SAE Class 1 with dimming capabilities to minimize glare experienced by travelers.

The awarded contract will serve as a permit by the Commission, granting the prime contractor and approved sub-contractors to utilize red or red and blue lights as required by Missouri law.

616.5.2 Work zone lighting shall be provided between dusk and dawn as specified in Secs 616.5.2.1 and 616.5.2.2. Lighting systems shall be positioned such that the lighting systems do not cause glare or hot spots, i.e. concentrated areas of high lighting intensity when compared to the average, for motorists, spillover to adjacent properties or become safety concerns. When work zone lighting is required, a lighting plan shall be submitted to the engineer for review 14 days prior to the start of operations. The lighting plan shall show the areas to be illuminated, the type and layout of the lighting systems and calculations of average maintained footcandles.

616.5.2.1 Work area lighting shall be provided in areas where construction equipment and labor are active. Lighting shall provide a minimum maintained intensity of 5 footcandles.

616.5.2.2 Overhead lighting shall be provided for flaggers and other specified locations shown on the plans. Lighting in these areas shall provide a minimum maintained intensity of 5 footcandles.

616.5.2.3 Sequential lights shall be visible on a clear night from a distance of 3,000 feet. Visibilities must be maintained within a solid angle 9-degrees on each side of the vertical axis, and 5-degrees above and 5-degrees below the horizontal axis.

Sequential flashing warning lights shall be placed within the merging taper and be able to communicate with other lights with the sequence. The lights should be capable of being spaced at least 60 feet apart with an offset capability of at least 6 feet.

Warning lights shall be battery- or solar-powered and consist of a single unit (head and housing).

616.6 Flashing Arrow Panel. The contractor shall deploy, operate and maintain flashing arrow panels as specified on the plans for the duration of the project, in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, at the contractor's expense. A minimum vertical clearance of 7 feet shall be maintained from the edge of pavement to the bottom of the flashing arrow panel.

616.6.1 When not in use, trailer-mounted flashing arrow panels shall be stored in accordance with Sec 107.5.

616.6.2 Control programs shall be as follows:

(a) Flashing Caution: Flash the two highest and two lowest lamps on panel simultaneously.

(b) Alternating Diamond Caution: Flash eight lamps in a form of a diamond and alternates diamonds from left side to right side.

(c) Flashing Left or Right Arrow: Flash five lamps in the arrowhead and five lamps in the horizontal shank simultaneously.

(d) Sequential Arrow Left or Right Arrow: Five lamps in the arrowhead will move across the panel. The horizontal shank increases in length as the arrowhead moves across the panel.

(e) Double Arrow: Flash five lamps in both the left and right arrowheads and three lamps in the horizontal shank simultaneously.

The contractor has the option to use the sequential arrow or alternating diamond caution modes on mobile operations.

616.7 Changeable Message Signs. The contractor shall place the changeable message sign (CMS) at the location shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer. The CMS shall not be located in the median.

616.7.1 The contractor shall deploy, operate and maintain the CMS as specified in the traffic control plan and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for the duration of the project at the contractor's expense. The contractor shall program the CMS as directed by the engineer.

616.7.2 When a CMS with Communication Interface is specified in the plans, the contractor shall operate and maintain the CMS, including setting up initial communications and paying all monthly communications fees. The contractor shall furnish the telephone number and contact information for the contractor's work zone specialist who will promptly program the CMS board remotely under the direction of the engineer.

616.7.3 When the CMS is not in use, the message board shall be turned away from traffic. When not required for longer than a 24-hour period, the CMS shall be stored in accordance with Sec 107.5.

616.8 Work Zone Traffic Signals. Work Zone Traffic Signals (WZTS) provide one-lane, two-way temporary traffic control through the use of a temporary traffic signal or a portable traffic signal programmed for two-phase operation. WZTS shall be in accordance with the provisions of this section. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, the contractor may choose either method to fulfill the WZTS requirement.

616.8.1 The contractor shall notify the engineer at least 48 hours prior to the work zone traffic signal installation. After installation, the contractor shall receive approval from the engineer prior to activating the WZTS system. The contractor shall provide a service technician to be available for day, night and weekend trouble calls as required under test period requirements in Sec 902. The contractor shall furnish the telephone number or other contact information where the technician can be reached.

616.8.1.1 The contractor shall operate and maintain the WZTS, at the contractor's expense, as specified in the traffic control plan until two-way traffic is restored.

616.8.1.2 When the WZTS is not in use, the signal heads shall be covered to the satisfaction of the engineer.

616.8.1.3 Adequate traffic control, including flaggers, shall be provided at the contractor's expense during the startup and shutdown of the WZTS installation. If the WZTS installation becomes inoperable due to alterations, malfunctions or periods of shutdown for required maintenance when one-way traffic control is required, the contractor shall provide adequate traffic control, including flaggers, at the contractor's expense.

616.8.1.4 All signal timing and programming shall be provided by the contractor and furnished to the engineer for approval prior to use. The contractor shall ensure proper signal timing is provided for the duration of the project. The contractor shall provide the locations of the vehicle detection zones.

616.8.1.5 The WZTS and lighting system shall be removed after two-way traffic has resumed or as directed by the engineer. All equipment shall remain the property of the contractor.

616.8.1.6 Measurement of WZTS systems, consisting of lighting and traffic signals at both ends of a one-lane, two-way section, will be made per each.

616.8.2 Temporary Traffic Signals. Temporary traffic signals and lighting shall be in accordance with Sec 902.3.

616.8.3 Portable Traffic Signals. Portable traffic signals shall be in accordance with Sec 1063. The contractor shall place the portable traffic signal (PTS) units a minimum of 6 feet beyond the edge of shoulder at the

location shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer. Each unit shall be level to the satisfaction of the engineer. Each PTS shall be delineated with a minimum of five non-metallic drum-like channelizers. The PTS shall not be located in the median.

616.8.3.1 When not required for a longer than a 24-hour period, the PTS shall be stored in accordance with Sec 107.5.

616.8.3.2 The contractor shall deploy, operate and maintain the PTS in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The contractor shall provide two copies of the operating manual to the engineer.

616.8.3.3 Overhead lighting with an average maintained intensity of 0.6 footcandles shall be provided and maintained at each PTS location as authorized by the engineer.

616.9 Portable Signal Flagging Device. Portable signal flagging devices (PSFD) shall be installed on each side of roadway per direction and in accordance with Sec 1063.9.

616.10 Radar Speed Advisory System.

616.10.1 The contractor shall place the changeable message sign Radar Speed Advisory System at the location shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer.

616.10.2 The contractor shall deploy, operate and maintain the Radar Speed Advisory System as specified in the traffic control plan an in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for the duration of the project at the contractor's expense. The contractor shall program the Radar Speed Advisory System as directed by the engineer and shall not include advertising, animation, rapid flashing, dissolving, exploding, scrolling, or other dynamic elements as stated in Chapter 2L of the MUTCD.

616.10.3 When the Radar Speed Advisory System is not in use, it shall be turned away from traffic. When not required for longer than a 24-hour period, the Radar Speed Advisory System shall be stored in accordance with Sec 107.5.

616.11 Method of Measurement. Measurement for relocation of post-mounted signs will be made to the nearest square foot of sign area.

616.12 Basis of Payment. All temporary traffic control devices authorized for installation by the engineer will be paid for at the contract unit price for each of the pay items included in the contract. No direct payment will be made for the following:

(a) Incidental items necessary to complete the work, unless specifically provided as a pay item in the contract.

(b) Installing, operating, maintaining, cleaning, repairing, removing or replacing traffic control devices.

(c) Covering and uncovering existing signs and other traffic control devices.

(d) Relocating temporary traffic control devices, including permanent traffic control devices temporarily relocated, unless specifically included as a pay item in the contract.

(e) Worker apparel.

(f) Flaggers, AFADs, PFDs, pilot vehicles, and appurtenances at flagging stations.

(g) Furnishing, installing, operating, maintaining and removing construction-related vehicle and equipment lighting.

(h) Construction and removal of temporary equipment crossovers, including restoring pre-existing crossovers.

(i) Provide and maintaining work zone lighting and work area lighting.

SECTION 618
MOBILIZATION

618.1 Description. This item shall consist of the preparatory work and operations, including, but not limited to, those necessary for the movement of personnel, equipment, supplies and incidentals to the project site, for the establishment of all offices, buildings and other facilities necessary for work on the project, except as provided in the contract as separate pay items, payment for the actual cost of the contract bond and railroad liability insurance and for all other work and operations that must be performed or costs incurred prior to beginning work on the various items on the project site.

618.2 Basis of Payment. Payment for mobilization will be made incrementally as stated herein.

618.2.1 Reimbursement for Contract Bond and Railroad Liability Insurance. The contractor can receive reimbursement for expenditures incurred for contract bond and railroad liability insurance prior to the first incremental mobilization payment by submitting invoices to the engineer showing the amount expended for these services. The reimbursement payment will be made on the first estimate following the contractor's request. The amount of the reimbursement, not to exceed the contract price for mobilization, will be deducted from the contract price for mobilization and the remaining amount will be used to establish the partial payments defined in Sec 618.2.2.

618.2.2 Partial Payments. Each partial payment will be 25 percent of the contract price for mobilization, after any deductions made in accordance with Sec 618.2.1, or 2.5 percent of the original contract price, whichever is less. For purposes of this calculation, the original contract price will be construed as the total dollar value of all contract line items. The partial payments for mobilization will be paid incrementally as follows:

(a) The first partial payment will be made when five percent of the original contract amount is earned.

(b) The second partial payment will be made when ten percent of the original contract amount is earned.

(c) The third partial payment will be made when 25 percent of the original contract amount is earned.

(d) The fourth partial payment will be made when 50 percent of the original contract amount is earned.

(e) When the engineer has accepted the contract for maintenance in accordance with Sec 105, any remaining amount will be paid.

618.3 Additional Mobilization for Seeding. Additional mobilization to perform temporary or permanent seeding, beyond the initial occurrence, may be necessary as specified in Sec 806.50.2 and as required per terms of the SWPPP. Mobilization of all equipment, workers and materials necessary to perform seeding and mulching shall be considered included in this work.

618.3.1 Method of Measurement. When payment for Additional Mobilization is provided in the contract, measurement of the number of occurrences authorized by the engineer to mobilize equipment onto the project to perform temporary or permanent seeding will be made per each occurrence, except for the initial occurrence and as specified herein. No measurement will be made for mobilization necessary to perform repair work to previously seeded areas or for mobilization necessary due to removal of equipment prior to completion of seeding all areas available for seeding, as determined by the engineer.

618.3.2 When payment for Additional Mobilization is not provided in the contract, all mobilization occurrences necessary to comply with the SWPPP shall be considered included in payment for other items.

618.4 Basis of Payment. Payment for Additional Mobilization for Seeding will be paid per each occurrence at the fixed unit price specified in Sec 109. Payment for the initial occurrence to mobilize for seeding, and any additional mobilization costs in excess of the fixed price, shall be considered completely covered under other items.

SECTION 619
PAVEMENT EDGE TREATMENT

619.1 Description. This work shall consist of the elimination of pavement edge differential.

619.2 Material. Wedge slopes shall be constructed of an approved material or an approved preformed unit. Acceptance of wedge slope material will be based on visual examination.

619.3 Construction Requirements. At the contractor's option, elimination of pavement edge differential may be accomplished by either conducting operations in such a manner that traffic is exposed to no more than a two-inch differential, by constructing a wedge shaped slope adjacent to the pavement edge or by furnishing and installing temporary concrete traffic barrier in accordance with Sec 617.

619.3.1 Wedge slopes shall be constructed as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer. Slope material, other than preformed units, shall be compacted to the satisfaction of the engineer.

619.3.2 Wedge slope material shall be removed and the pavement edge returned to a vertical face prior to placement of adjacent shoulder or pavement material. Material used to construct wedge slope shall be disposed of as approved by the engineer.

619.3.3 Temporary concrete traffic barrier shall be installed as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer.

619.4 Method of Measurement. Final measurement will not be made except for authorized changes during construction or when appreciable errors are found in the contract quantities. Where required, measurement will be made to the nearest linear foot along each edge of pavement for all locations actually treated. No location will be measured more than once, regardless of the number of applications. The revision or correction will be computed and added to or deducted from the contract quantity.

619.5 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantity of pavement edge treatment will be paid for at the contract unit price for the units constructed. Payment will be considered full compensation for all labor, equipment and material to construct, maintain, replace, remove and dispose of pavement edge treatment. No direct payment will be made for more than one application at any location.

ITEM MO-620 RUNWAY AND TAXIWAY PAINTING

DESCRIPTION

620-1.1 This item shall consist of the painting of numbers, markings, and stripes on the surface of runways, taxiways, and aprons, in accordance with these specifications and at the locations shown on the plans, or as directed by the Engineer.

MATERIALS

620-2.1 MATERIALS ACCEPTANCE. The Contractor shall furnish manufacturer's certified test reports for materials shipped to the project. The certified test reports shall include a statement that the materials meet the specification requirements. The reports can be used for material acceptance or the Engineer may perform verification testing. The reports shall not be interpreted as a basis for payment. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer upon arrival of a shipment of materials to the site.

620-2.2 PAINT. Paint shall be **Waterborne** in accordance with the requirements as herein specified. Paint shall be furnished in White - 37925, Yellow - 33538 or 33655 and Black - 37038 in accordance with Federal Standard No. 595.

a. WATERBORNE. Paint shall meet the requirements of Federal Specification TT-P-1952E, **Type I**. The non-volatile portion of the vehicle for all paint types shall be composed of a 100% acrylic polymer as determined by infrared spectral analysis.

620-2.3 REFLECTIVE MEDIA. Glass beads shall meet the requirements for **Federal Specification TT-B-1325D, Type III, Gradation A**. Glass beads shall be treated with all compatible agents recommended by the manufacturer of the paint and reflective media to ensure adhesion and embedment.

620-2.4 MATERIALS: The non-volatile portion of the vehicle for all paint types shall be composed of a 100% acrylic polymer as determined by infrared spectral analysis. The acrylic resin used for Type III shall be a 100% cross linking acrylic as evidenced by infrared peaks at wavelengths 1568, 1624, and 1672 cm-1 with intensities equal to those produced by an acrylic resin known to be 100% cross linking.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

620-3.1 WEATHER LIMITATIONS. The painting shall be performed only when the surface is dry and when the surface temperature is at least 45 degrees F and rising and the pavement surface temperature is at least 5 degrees F above the dew point. Markings will not be applied when the pavement temperature is greater than 120 degrees F.

620-3.2 EQUIPMENT. Equipment shall include the apparatus necessary to properly clean the existing surface, a mechanical marking machine, a bead-dispensing machine, and such auxiliary hand-painting equipment as may be necessary to satisfactorily complete the job.

The mechanical marker shall be an atomizing spray-type or airless type-marking machine (truck mounted excluded) suitable for application of traffic paint. It shall produce an even and uniform film thickness at the required coverage and shall apply markings of uniform cross sections and clear-cut edges without running or spattering and without over spray.

620-3.3 SURFACE PREPARATION. Immediately before application of the paint, the surface shall be dry and free from dirt, grease, oil, laitance, or other foreign material that would reduce the bond between

the paint and the pavement. The area to be painted shall be cleaned by sweeping and blowing or by other methods as required to remove all dirt, laitance, and loose materials without damage to the pavement surface. Use of any chemicals or impact abrasives during surface preparation shall be approved in advance by the Engineer. Paint shall not be applied to Portland cement concrete pavement until the areas to be painted are clean of curing material. Sandblasting or high-pressure water shall be used to remove curing materials.

Prior to placing a new asphaltic concrete overlay, the existing surface shall be prepared in accordance with MO-601. Prior to placing the pavement friction sealcoat surface treatment, the existing surface shall be prepared in accordance with MO-623.

620-3.4 LAYOUT OF MARKINGS. The proposed markings shall be laid out in advance of the paint application. The locations of markings to receive glass beads shall be shown on the plans.

620-3.5 APPLICATION. Paint shall be applied at the locations and to the dimensions and spacing shown on the plans. Paint shall not be applied until the layout and condition of the surface has been approved by the Engineer.

The edges of the markings shall not vary from a straight line more than 1/2 inch in 50 feet and marking dimensions and spacings shall be within the following tolerances:

Dimension and Spacing	**Tolerance**
36 inches or less	+/- 1/2 inch
Greater than 36 inches to 6 feet	+/- 1 inch
Greater than 6 feet to 60 feet	+/- 2 inches
Greater than 60 feet	+/- 3 inches

The paint shall be mixed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and applied to the pavement with a marking machine at the rate(s) shown in Table 1. The addition of thinner will not be permitted.

A period of thirty (30) days is required between placement of new pavement (concrete or bituminous surface course) and the application of paint as specified below.

The paint shall be applied in one (1) application for all markings.

TABLE 1. APPLICATION RATES FOR PAINT AND GLASS BEADS

Paint Type	**Paint Square feet per gallon, ft^2/gal. (Sq ms per liter, m^2 /l)**	**Glass Beads, Type III Pounds per gallon of paint—lb/gal**
Waterborne (Permanent)	115 ft^2/gal Maximum	10 lb/gal Minimum

Glass beads shall be distributed upon the marked areas at the locations shown on the plans to receive glass beads immediately after application of the paint. A dispenser shall be furnished which is properly designed for attachment to the marking machine and suitable for dispensing glass beads. Glass beads shall be applied at the rate(s) shown in Table 1. **Glass beads shall not be applied to black paint.** Glass beads shall adhere to the cured paint or all marking operations shall cease until corrections are made.

All emptied containers shall be returned to the paint storage area for checking by the engineer. The containers shall not be removed from the airport or destroyed until authorized by the engineer.

620-3.6 PROTECTION. After application of the paint, all markings shall be protected from damage until the paint is dry. All surfaces shall be protected from excess moisture and/or rain and from disfiguration by spatter, splashes, spillage, or drippings of paint. The Contractor shall remove from the site all debris, waste, loose or unadhered reflective media, and by-products generated by the surface preparation and application operations to the satisfaction of the Engineer. The Contractor shall dispose of these wastes in strict compliance with all applicable state, local, and federal environmental statutes and regulations.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

620-4.1 The quantity of runway, taxiway, taxilane and apron markings to be paid for shall be the number of square feet of painting performed in accordance with the specifications and accepted by the Engineer.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

620-5.1 Payment shall be made at the respective contract price per square foot for runway, taxiway, taxilane and apron painting. No direct payment will be made for reflective media**.** This price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item MO-620-5.1-1	Airport Runway Pavement Marking (White)--per square foot
Item MO-620-5.1-2	Airport Taxiway Pavement Marking (Yellow)--per square foot
Item MO-620-5.1-3	Airport Pavement Marking (Black)--per square foot

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Federal Standard 595	Colors used in Government Procurement
Fed. Spec. TT-P-1952E	Paint, Traffic and Airfield Marking, Waterborne
Commercial Item Description (CID) A-A-2886B	Paint, Traffic, Solvent Based
Fed. Spec. TT-B-1325D	Beads (Glass Spheres) Retroreflective

SECTION 624
GEOTEXTILE CONSTRUCTION

624.1 Description. This work shall consist of installing geotextile for use in subsurface drainage, in erosion control, as a permeable separator or as otherwise specified.

624.2 Material. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section
Geotextile	1011

624.3 Construction Requirements. Geotextile shall be placed in accordance with AASHTO M 288 for the appropriate application.

624.4 Method of Measurement. Geotextile used for lining drain trenches, wrapping drain pipe or for control of piping through structural joints and facing panels will not be separately measured. Geotextile used for other purposes will be measured to the nearest square yard of surface area covered without regard to any overlap.

624.5 Basis of Payment. Geotextile used for lining drain trenches, wrapping drain pipe or for control of piping through structural joints and facing panels will be considered as incidental and will be included in the contract unit price for the drain or structure. The accepted quantity of geotextile used for other purposes will be paid for at the contract unit price for each of the pay items included in the contract. No direct payment will be made for securing pins or other incidental items.

SECTION 625
SLAB STABILIZATION

SECTION 625.10 SLAB UNDERSEALING.

625.10.1 Description. This work shall consist of stabilizing Portland cement concrete pavement by furnishing, hauling and pumping high density polyurethane or asphalt cement under the concrete slab. This work shall be completed after any required pavement repair and prior to the placement of any new overlay material.

625.10.2 Material.

625.10.2.1 High Density Polyurethane.

625.10.2.1.1 The material shall be a hydrophobic, closed cell, high density polyurethane system with the following physical characteristics and properties:

Property	Requirement
Density, min., per ASTM D 1622	4.0 ± ½lb/ft^3
Compressive Strength, min., per ASTM D 1621	80 psi
Tensile Strength, min.	90 psi
Volume Change, max.	+5.0 percent
Curing Rate	90 percent of compressive strength within 15 minutes after injection

625.10.2.1.2 The material shall be hydrophobic in the material's component reaction such that the injected product is not significantly compromised by soil moisture or free water under the pavement

625.10.2.1.3 When requested by the engineer, pumping units in service shall perform a product density test by injecting a sample of the unit's polyurethane material into a test cylinder of known volume. The sample's density shall be in accordance with Sec 625.10.2.1.1.

625.10.2.1.4 When requested by the engineer, the contractor, in the presence of the engineer, shall inject the polyurethane material into a container holding 40 gallons of ambient temperature water at 70 F. The resulting product shall demonstrate consistent, closed cell polyurethane material.

625.10.2.1.5 All stored polyurethane material shall be handled in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

625.10.2.2 Asphalt Cement.

625.10.2.2.1 Asphalt cement material shall meet ASTM D3141. The Contractor shall provide a supplier certification with each shipment in accordance with Sec 1015.3.1.

625.10.3 Construction Requirements.

625.10.3.1 General.

625.10.3.1.1 Pavement stabilization operations will not be allowed when daytime temperatures are below 35 F or if the subgrade is frozen.

625.10.3.1.2 A hole pattern shall be submitted for approval at least 7 days prior to starting slab stabilization operations. Drilled holes shall be a maximum of 1 1/2 inches in diameter, drilled smooth, vertical and round. Holes drilled with a break out in excess of 1 1/2 inches outside the hole diameter will be unacceptable.

625.10.3.1.3 The Contractor shall provide equipment capable of detecting slab lift to measurements of 0.001 inch. Pavement lifted in excess of 0.125 inch or pavement cracked as a result of the undersealing will be unacceptable.

625.10.3.1.4 Proof of full undersealing, such as material seeping from joints, cracks, or edges; vertical slab movement; or other visual indication, as determined by the engineer, will be required prior to acceptance. When required, deflection testing shall be performed in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 64. No testing shall be performed if the slabs are beginning to lock-up. Tests shall not be performed during Spring thaw conditions or when the subgrade is frozen.

625.10.3.1.5 Undersealing materials shall not enter into gutters or closed drainage systems. Residue shall not be spread within 100 feet of any streams, lakes or other open bodies of water or within 15 feet of a water filled ditch. All removed material shall be disposed of in an environmentally acceptable manner in accordance with all Federal, State, and local regulations.

625.10.3.1.6 All drill tailings, spilled material, and other debris shall be cleaned up at the end of each working day or before the lane is opened to traffic.

625.10.3.1.7 The drill holes shall be filled flush with the pavement surface using a material to match the existing surface.

625.10.3.1.8 The Contractor shall supply certification for the accuracy of the method used to measure the amount of material used on the project.

625.10.3.2 High Density Polyurethane.

625.10.3.2.1 Injection nozzles shall prevent leakage during injection and shall be removed at completion of the injection or driven into the injection hole to a minimum depth of 1-1/4 inches below the pavement surface.

625.10.3.2.2 Any excessive material on the pavement surface shall be removed from the area and the holes shall be sealed with polyurethane material or in accordance with Sec 625.10.3.1.7.

625.10.3.2.3 The pavement shall not be open to traffic until a minimum of 30 minutes after pumping operations have ceased.

625.10.3.3 Asphalt Cement.

625.10.3.3.1 Asphalt cement shall be heated to a temperature between 380 F and 450 F before pumping operations begin.

625.10.3.3.2 Pumping operations shall cease when asphalt cement seeps from cracks and joints. Pumping shall not resume until visible asphalt cement has congealed.

625.10.3.3.3 The Contractor shall provide adequate shielding to ensure passing traffic is not sprayed by asphalt cement.

625.10.3.3.4 The pavement shall not be open to traffic until a minimum of 30 minutes after pumping operations have ceased.

625.10.4 Method of Measurement.

625.10.4.1 High density polyurethane material shall be measured to the nearest pound.

625.10.4.2 Asphalt cement shall be measured to the nearest gallon in accordance with Sec. 1015.

625.10. 4.3 Measurement of testing for deflection will be per joint, crack or pavement repair patch per traffic lane in which testing is performed. Testing prior to undersealing and testing after undersealing will be measured separately.

625.10.5 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantities of undersealing material and deflection testing quantities will be paid for at the contract unit price. Payment will be considered full compensation for all labor, equipment and material necessary to complete the described work.

SECTION 625.20 SLAB JACKING.

625.20.1 Description. This work shall consist of injecting high density polyurethane or cementitious grout under a sunken section of concrete pavement and raising it back to the correct profile for an acceptable ride and positive drainage.

625.20.2 Material.

625.20.2.1 High density polyurethane used for slab jacking shall meet the requirements of Sec. 625.10.2.

625.20.2.2 The material used in grouting shall consist of a mixture of Portland cement, fly ash and water proportioned as specified or as approved by the engineer. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section
Fly Ash	1018
Cement, Type I, II or III	1019
Water	1070

625.20.2.3 Grout shall meet the following minimum requirements:

(a) Flow cone efflux time shall be 10 to 16 seconds, as determined in accordance with ASTM C 939.

(b) The minimum design strength at minimum efflux time shall be 600 psi at seven days, determined in accordance with ASTM C 942, with the exception that storage of compressive specimens after 24 hours shall be placed in a 100 percent humidity cabinet.

625.20.2.4 At least three weeks prior to the beginning of this work, the contractor shall submit the proposed mixture to the engineer. The submittal shall include the mix design, source and type of all material test results of the grout showing one-day, three-day and seven-day compressive strengths, efflux time, time of initial and final set by the Gilmore needle in accordance with ASTM C 266 and time delayed to molding specimens after mixing grout. The time delay between mixing and molding will be the maximum holding time permitted in the field. Sufficient quantities of all mixture components to permit laboratory verification of the grout properties listed herein shall accompany the mix design submittal. Approximately 10 pounds of Portland cement and 30 pounds of fly ash shall be furnished.

625.20.3 Construction Requirements. Construction requirements shall be in accordance with Sec 625.10.3.1 and specifically as follows.

625.20.3.1 General.

625.20.3.1.1 The contractor shall establish a finish target profile using an elevation measuring device or string line. Each profile shall be accepted by the engineer prior to work being performed at that location.

625.20.3.1.2 Pumping operations shall cease when the slab has achieved the target profile. The Contractor shall provide equipment capable of detecting slab lift to measurements of 0.001 inch. Pavement lifted in excess of 0.125 inch over the accepted profile or pavement cracked as a result of the slab jacking will be unacceptable.

625.20.3.1.3 The engineer may require the contractor to verify positive drainage on the lifted slab by flooding the surface area.

625.20.3.2 High Density Polyurethane. Construction requirements shall be in accordance with Sec 625.10.3.2.

625.20.3.3 Cementitious Grout.

625.20.3.3.1 Any admixtures used shall be incorporated in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Admixtures may be added by hand methods. Admixtures shall be measured within a tolerance of plus or minus three percent of the required quantity.

625.20.3.3.2 Personnel, scales and equipment necessary for calibrating the proportioning devices and for verifying the accuracy of proportions shall be furnished by the contractor and shall be available at all times. All equipment shall be calibrated by the contractor in the presence of the engineer, and subject to approval from the engineer. Verification of the accuracy of the scales and other dispensing methods may be required at any time deemed necessary by the engineer, but will be performed at least once each day of operation.

625.20.3.3.3 Weight proportioning and volume proportioning equipment, accuracy, calibration and verification shall be in accordance with Sec 501.

625.20.3.3.4 Grout may be re-tempered with water. Prior to re-tempering the grout, the engineer shall be notified.

625.20.3.3.5 The cement and fly ash for grout shall be measured by weight or volume. The quantity of cement and fly ash to be used shall be calculated from the approved mix design. Batches not containing the proper quantities of material will be unacceptable.

625.20.3.3.6 Filling holes shall be in accordance with Sec 625.10.3.1.7.

625.20.3.3.7 The contractor may disperse residue onto unpaved shoulders, adjacent roadside embankments or median ditch areas of divided highways where the residue runoff can percolate into the soil, unless specified otherwise in the contract. The spread rate shall not generate surface runoff. If surface runoff occurs at a grinding location, the contractor shall remove the residue to an approved location at the contractor's expense.

625.20.3.3.8 Traffic shall not be permitted on the undersealed pavement until three hours after the end of pumping operations, and after all drill holes have been plugged.

625.20.4 Method of Measurement.

625.20.4.1 High density polyurethane material shall be measured to the nearest pound.

625.20.4.2 Portland cement will be measured to the nearest pound.

625.20.4.3 Fly ash will be measured to the nearest pound.

625.20.4.4 Measurement of testing for deflection will be per joint, crack or pavement repair patch per traffic lane in which testing is performed. Testing prior to undersealing and testing after undersealing, will be measured separately.

625.20.5 Basis of Payment. The accepted slab jacking material and deflection testing quantities will be paid for at the contract unit price. Payment will be considered full compensation for all labor, equipment and material necessary to complete the described work.

SECTION 627
CONTRACTOR SURVEYING AND STAKING

627.1 Description. This work shall consist of providing the necessary surveying and staking for the successful prosecution of the work.

627.2 Staking Requirements. Staking work shall be in accordance with general accepted surveying practices and provisions of the contract. The MoDOT's current Engineering Policy Guide (EPG), 238.4, may be used as guidance and is available on MoDOT's web site.

627.2.1 The contractor shall preserve all right of way monuments, benchmarks control points and reference marks set by the engineer. If any monumentation is damaged, destroyed or disturbed by the contractor, the cost of replacement will be at the contractor's expense and will be deducted from the payment for the work.

627.2.2 All surveying shall be documented by the contractor in a written form acceptable to the engineer. During performance of the work, all surveying documents shall be available and supplied to the engineer upon request, at the contractor's expense. All documents shall be labeled with the route, state job number, county, contractor name, survey party supervisor and date.

627.2.3 The engineer will furnish and set control points with known coordinates. The engineer will furnish all coordinate data to lay out the job and locate benchmarks as shown on the plans. The contractor shall provide all other staking necessary for the successful prosecution of the work, including all staking necessary to facilitate the relocation of utilities. All alignment control established by the contractor shall be referenced, and a copy of the references shall be furnished to the engineer.

627.2.4 Any surveying or measurements necessary for computing pay quantities will be performed by the engineer. The contractor shall notify the engineer at least two working days prior to disturbing any areas used to calculate pay quantities.

627.2.5 All surveying work performed by the contractor shall be sufficient and accurate to construct the work in accordance with the contract documents. Any delays or additional costs to the project which result from insufficient or inaccurate staking or time lost for corrective action will be considered as a nonexcusable and noncompensable delay.

627.2.6 The construction centerline shown on the plans shall be accurately established and the control points of all curves shall be referenced. If it is necessary to introduce an equation in order to match the plan stationing or if a plan equation is changed, such changes will be at the written direction of the engineer.

627.2.7 Adjustments necessary to provide accurate staking or match improvements to existing features shall be immediately brought to the attention of the engineer The engineer will determine the nature of the discrepancy and will make revisions as necessary. The contractor shall perform any restaking required by such revisions. Any reimbursement due to the contractor for additional staking due to design errors will be in accordance with Sec 109.4.3.

627.2.8 After the centerline has been established and referenced, centerline elevations shall be taken at all stations and at any other points required to ensure the computation of accurate quantities. Centerline elevations shall be based on the plan datum. All benchmarks shown on the plans shall be checked.

627.2.8.1 In the event a difference of plus or minus 0.01 foot exists in elevation for any benchmark shown on the plans, check levels shall be run and shown in the notes. The elevations shall be corrected to plan elevation at each benchmark where any difference occurs, and shall be noted in the field notes. If a plan benchmark has been disturbed or if correction of the plan elevation is not feasible, a full explanation shall be made in the notes. The contractor shall furnish to the engineer a listing of benchmarks prior to beginning construction.

627.2.8.2 If original plan cross sections differ from existing conditions by an average deviation in excess of one foot, the contractor shall immediately notify the engineer. The engineer will be responsible for taking cross-sections where deviations are determined to exist.

627.2.9 After completing any bridge, box culvert or retaining wall staking, the contractor shall furnish to the engineer structural layout plan sheets which show the location of all points that have been staked. At the time of

furnishing the marked layout sheets, the contractor shall meet with the engineer to review the layout a minimum of two working days before construction begins.

627.2.10 Upon completion of the project, the contractor shall provide to the engineer all original surveying field notes, layouts and computations in standard bound survey notebooks or in a form acceptable to the engineer.

627.3 Method of Measurement. No measurement will be made for contractor surveying and staking. This work shall be considered a lump sum unit when a pay item is provided in the contract.

627.4 Basis of Payment. When a pay item is provided in the contract, contractor furnished surveying and staking will be paid for at the contract lump sum price and will be considered full compensation for the following:

(a) Performing this work.

(b) All material, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

(c) For all effects, impacts, cumulative impacts, incidental and consequential costs, loss or damage arising from, relating to or produced by error or discrepancies in surveys or staking and plans based on such surveys or staking, and any cost, including time effects, to correct the errors or discrepancies.

627.4.1 Payment for surveying and staking will only be made when a pay item is provided in the contract. If no pay item is provided, all costs associated with surveying and staking shall be considered included in the cost of other bid items.

627.4.2 Payment for contractor furnished surveying and staking completed, not to exceed the contract item amount, will be made upon written request by the contractor. Such a request shall be submitted to the engineer two business days prior to the progress estimate date.

627.4.3 Complete payment will not be made until the contractor has provided all of the original surveying field notes, layouts, computations and notebooks to the engineer.

SECTION 701
DRILLED SHAFTS

701.1 Description. This work shall consist of constructing cast-in-place reinforced concrete drilled shafts and rock sockets, as required, to serve as a structural foundation. This work shall provide reinforced concrete shafts cast in cylindrically excavated holes extending sufficiently into soil or sound rock to adequately support the structure and all externally applied loads for which the shaft was designed. The drilled shaft foundation, including the rock socket, where required, shall be constructed in accordance with these specifications, as shown on the plans and in accordance with other specifications included in the contract documents. When directed by the engineer, corrections made by the contractor will be noncompensable and any effect on time of performance nonexcusable.

701.2 Preconstruction Submittals. At least 30 days prior to drilled shaft construction, the contractor shall submit to the engineer for review an installation plan for the construction of drilled shafts. The installation plan shall be of sufficient detail to outline the contractor's intended overall construction sequence and methods of excavation for the drilled shafts, including use of slurry, placement of reinforcing steel, details of concrete delivery to the site, an emergency construction joint method, placement of concrete in a continuous pour, including operational procedures for tremie or pump, and methods to prevent and handle delays in concrete batching and delivery to the site. The installation plan shall include details of casings to be used, if applicable, including calculations showing the ability of the casing to withstand anticipated hydraulic and earth pressures, and to withstand stresses due to installation without undue deformation. These details shall include methods for casing handling, splicing, straightening and out-of-round correction. Calculations included in the installation plan shall be signed and sealed by a registered professional engineer licensed to practice in the State of Missouri.

701.3 Material. All material shall be in accordance with this specification, Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section
Reinforcing Steel for Concrete	1036
Concrete Admixtures	1054
Concrete Curing Material	1055
Mortars and Grout	1066
Water	1070

701.3.1 Concrete. Drilled shafts shall be constructed of Class B-2 concrete, and all material, proportioning, mixing and transporting of concrete shall be in accordance with Sec 501, except as specified herein. An air entrainment admixture shall be used. A high range water-reducing admixture may be used to increase the slump to a maximum of 9 inches ± 1 inch. If used, the water-reducing admixture shall be added only after the concrete has reached the job site to reduce the potential for flash setting. The concrete mix for drilled shafts shall be dense, homogeneous, fluid and resistant to segregation, and shall consolidate under self-weight. The concrete mix shall have a set time that ensures that fluidity is maintained throughout the shaft concrete placement and removal of temporary casing, if used. A concrete retarder in accordance with AASHTO M 194, Type B, may be incorporated into the mix to retard set approximately two hours. Concrete for drilled shafts shall have a 28-day minimum compressive strength of 4,000 psi. Portland cement shall be Type I or Type II. The maximum water to cement ratio of a concrete mix to be placed under water shall be 0.45.

701.3.2 Casing. Welded or seamless steel permanent casings shall be in accordance with ASTM A 252, Grade 2, unless otherwise specified. The contractor shall furnish two copies of certification from the fabricator detailing the designated specification with which the furnished casings comply.

701.3.2.1 Shop Drawings. Shop drawings for permanent steel casings shall be prepared in accordance with Sec 1080 and shall be submitted to the engineer prior to installation of the casings.

701.3.2.2 Condition of Casings. Casings shall be smooth, clean and watertight. For out-of-round tolerance of steel casings before and after installation, the departure of any point on the periphery of the casing from a true circle shall not exceed one inch, measured radially.

701.3.2.3 Extent of Casing Length. Permanent casings, if required, shall be continuous wherever possible or practical. The permanent casing shall terminate at the specified elevation, and the concrete shall be trimmed to within tolerances specified in Sec 701.4.16 prior to acceptance of the completed drilled shaft. Permanent casings shall be extended into rock, as needed, to provide a positive seal and to stabilize the shaft excavation against collapse, excessive deformation, or flow of water. Casings meeting all specified requirements shall be installed from the work platform to the elevations shown on the plans. Where drilled shafts are located in open water areas, casings shall be extended from at least 18 inches above the water elevation and unless otherwise specified in the contract documents, to the specified bottom of casing elevation to protect the shaft concrete from water action during placement and curing of concrete.

701.3.2.4 Use of Teeth or Cutting Edge. The casing may be fabricated with teeth or a cutting edge to facilitate insertion into the rock.

701.3.2.5 Splices. Splicing of permanent casings is not desirable and will only be permitted when approved by the engineer. If splices are required, the welding process shall be in accordance with the requirements specified herein. The contractor shall be fully responsible for the adequacy of welds during driving.

701.3.2.6 Welding. Shop welding of casings shall be performed by a fully-automated welding process to develop the full capacity of the shell. All welding shall be in accordance with Sec 1080, except that shop welding of casings will not require radiographic inspection. Inspection will be of a visual nature. If evidence indicating poor welding is found, the engineer may require radiographing. Field-welded splices of sections of the steel casings shall be made by shielded metal-arc welding procedures performed by a certified welder in accordance with Sec 712.6 field welding requirements using properly dried low-hydrogen E7018 electrodes that have been protected from the elements to maintain the dry condition. The welds shall be full penetration, watertight and of x-ray quality in accordance with Sec 1080.

701.3.3 Slurry. Drilling slurry will be defined as mineral slurry, polymer slurry, natural slurry formed during the drilling process, water or other fluids used to maintain stability of the drilled shaft excavation to aid in the drilling process or to maintain the quality of the rock socket. In addition, the terms mineral slurry and polymer slurry, as used herein, will be defined as the final mixed composite of all additives, including manufactured mineral or polymer slurry additives required to produce the acceptable drilling slurry.

701.3.3.1 Slurry Usage. Drilling slurry shall be used if detailed in the approved installation plan, if in accordance with the contract documents or if approved in writing by the engineer. Drilling slurry may be used at the contractor's option if the slurry is not in accordance with the contract documents; however, any slurry shall be approved by the engineer prior to use. Drilling slurry, when used, will be noncompensable and effect on time of performance due to the use of the slurry will be nonexcusable.

701.3.3.2 General Properties. The material used to make the slurry shall not be detrimental to the concrete or surrounding ground strata. Mineral slurries shall have both a mineral grain size that remains in suspension and sufficient viscosity and gel characteristics to transport excavated material to a suitable screening system. Polymer slurries shall have sufficient viscosity and gel characteristics to transport excavated material to suitable screening systems or settling tanks. The percentage and specific gravity of the material used to make the slurry shall be sufficient to maintain the stability of the excavation and to allow proper concrete placement. If approved by the engineer, the contractor may use water and on-site soils as a drilling slurry. In that case, the range of acceptable values for density, viscosity and pH, as shown in the following table for bentonite slurry, shall be met, except that maximum density shall not exceed 70 pounds/cubic foot. When water is used as the drilling fluid to construct rock sockets in limestone, dolomite, sandstone or other formations that are not erodible, the requirements for slurry testing will not apply if the entire fluid column is replaced with fresh water after drilling. To do so, fresh water should be introduced at the top of the casing and existing water used during drilling should be pumped out of the excavation from near the base of the socket until the entire volume of fluid has been replaced.

701.3.3.3 Preparation. Prior to introduction into the shaft excavation, the manufactured mineral or polymer slurry admixture shall be pre-mixed thoroughly with clean, fresh water and for adequate time in accordance with the slurry admixture manufacturer's recommendations allotted for hydration. Water used for mixing shall be in accordance with Sec 1070. Slurry tanks of adequate capacity will be required for slurry mixing, circulation, storage and treatment. No excavated slurry pits will be allowed in lieu of slurry tanks without written approval from the engineer. Adequate desanding equipment will be required as necessary to control slurry properties

during the drilled shaft excavation in accordance with the values provided in the table below. Desanding will not be required for signposts or lighting mast foundations unless specified in the contract documents.

701.3.3.4 Control Tests. Control tests using a suitable apparatus shall be performed by the contractor on the slurry to determine density, viscosity, sand content and pH of freshly mixed slurry, recycled slurry and slurry in the excavation. Tests of slurry samples from within one foot of the bottom and at mid-height of the shaft shall be conducted in each shaft excavation during the excavation process to establish a consistent working pattern. A minimum of four sets of tests shall be conducted during the first eight hours of slurry use on the project. When the results show consistent behavior, the testing frequency may be decreased to one set every four hours of slurry use, or as otherwise approved by the engineer. Reports of all tests, signed by an authorized representative of the contractor, shall be furnished to the engineer on completion of each drilled shaft. An acceptance range of values for the physical properties will be as shown in the table below.

701.3.3.5 Sampling. When slurry samples are found to be unacceptable, the contractor shall bring the slurry in the shaft excavation to within specification requirements. Concrete shall not be poured until resampling and testing results produce acceptable values. Prior to placing shaft concrete, the contractor shall take slurry samples from within one foot of the bottom and at mid-height of the shaft. Any heavily contaminated slurry that has accumulated at the bottom of the shaft shall be removed. Disposal of all slurry shall be done in areas approved by the engineer. The contractor shall perform final shaft bottom cleaning after suspended solids have settled from the slurry mix.

Range of Acceptable Values for Mineral and Polymer Slurries in Fresh Water Without Additives

Property	Bentonite	Emulsified Polymer	Dry Polymer	Units	Test Method
Density (Unit Weight)					
At Introduction	63.5 - 66.8	< 63	< 63	lb/ft^3	
Prior to Concreting	63.5 - 70.5	< 63	< 63		Density Balance
Marsh Funnel Viscosity					
At Introduction	32 – 60	33 – 43[b]	50 – 80[b]	sec/qt	Marsh Funnel
Prior to Concreting	32 – 60	33 – 43[b]	50 – 80[b]		
pH					pH Paper or pH Meter
At Introduction	8 – 10	8 – 11	7 – 11	--	
Prior to Concreting	8 – 10	8 – 11	7 – 11	--	
Sand Content				Percent by Volume	API Sand Content Kit
At Introduction	< 4	< 1	< 1		
Prior to Concreting	< 10	< 1	< 1		
Maximum Contact Time[a]	4	72	72	Hours	

[a]Without agitation and sidewall cleaning.
[b]Higher viscosities may be required to maintain excavation stability in loose or gravelly sand deposits.

701.4 Construction.

701.4.1 Protection of Existing Structures. All precautions shall be taken to prevent damage to existing structures and utilities. These measures shall include, but are not limited to, monitoring and controlling the vibrations from the driving of casing or drilling of the shaft, and selecting construction methods and procedures that shall prevent excessive caving of the shaft excavation.

701.4.2 Technique Shafts. When required by the contract documents, the contractor shall demonstrate the adequacy of methods and equipment used during construction of the first drilled shaft, which shall be an out of position technique shaft, constructed with reinforcement as identified for production shafts on the plans. This technique shaft shall be drilled in the position as directed by the engineer and drilled to the maximum depth for any production shaft shown on the plans. If at any time the contractor is unable to demonstrate, to the satisfaction of the engineer, the adequacy of methods or equipment and alterations required, an additional technique shaft(s) may be required. Technique shafts shall be cut off 3 feet below groundline, buried or otherwise disposed of as specified in the contract documents or as directed by the engineer. Once approval has been given to construct production shafts, no changes will be permitted in the methods of equipment used to construct the shaft without approval from the engineer. When a technique shaft is not required, construction of the first production shaft will be used to determine if the methods and equipment used by the contractor are acceptable. Failure at any time to demonstrate to the engineer the adequacy of methods or equipment will be cause for the engineer to require appropriate alterations in equipment or method by the contractor to eliminate unsatisfactory results.

701.4.3 Construction Sequence. Excavation to footing elevation shall be completed before shaft construction begins, unless otherwise authorized by the engineer. Any disturbance to the footing area caused by shaft installation shall be repaired by the contractor prior to pouring the footing. When drilled shafts are to be installed in conjunction with embankment placement, the contractor shall construct drilled shafts after placement of fills. Drilled shafts constructed prior to the completion of fills shall not be capped until the fills have been placed as near to final grade as possible, leaving only the necessary work room for construction of the caps.

701.4.4 General Equipment and Methods. The contractor shall perform excavations through whatever material is encountered to the dimensions and elevations shown on the plans. The contractor's methods and equipment shall be suitable for the intended purpose and for whatever material is encountered.

701.4.4.1 General Equipment. The contractor shall provide equipment capable of constructing shafts to a depth equal to the deepest shaft tip elevation shown on the plans plus 15 feet, or as otherwise specified in the contract documents. When a rock socket is identified on the plans at a shaft location, the definition of "shaft tip elevation", for the purposes of this subsection, shall be taken to refer to the bottom of the rock socket.

701.4.4.2 General Methods. Excavations required for shafts and rock sockets shall be completed in a continuous operation. The contractor shall be responsible for ensuring the stability of the shaft excavation and the surrounding soil. When obstructions, either expected or unexpected, are encountered, the contractor shall notify the engineer promptly. Either the dry method, wet method, temporary casing method, permanent casing method if specified, or combinations, as necessary, shall be used to produce sound, durable concrete drilled shafts free of defects. The permanent casing method shall be used only when required by the contract documents. Blasting excavation methods will not be permitted. When a rock socket is required, the engineer will be the sole judge as to what constitutes the top of sound rock. Sound rock will be considered as the point where the rock is sufficient quality to allow the permanent casing to be seated. The engineer may order in writing additional depths of rock socket below the top of sound rock as considered necessary to improve the foundation. If the top surface of the sound rock is found to be inclined across the width of the shaft, the contractor shall immediately notify the engineer. The contractor shall use an airlift, or other method approved by the engineer, to clean the bottom of the shaft excavation.

701.4.4.2.1 Dry Construction Method. The dry construction method shall be used only at sites where the groundwater table and site conditions, generally stiff to hard clays or rock above the water table, are suitable to permit construction of the shaft in a relatively dry excavation and where the sides and bottom of the shaft remain stable without any caving, sloughing or swelling and allow visual inspection prior to concrete placement. The dry method shall consist of drilling the shaft excavation, removing accumulated seepage water and loose material from the excavation and placing the shaft concrete in a relatively dry excavation. The dry construction method shall be used only when shaft excavations, as demonstrated in a technique shaft or first production shaft, have 12 inches per hour or less of seepage.

701.4.4.2.2 Wet Construction Method. The wet construction method shall be used at sites where a dry excavation cannot be maintained for placement of the shaft concrete. This method shall consist of drilling the shaft excavation below the water table, keeping the shaft filled with water, natural slurry formed during the drilling process, mineral slurry or polymer slurry to contain seepage and groundwater movement, and to maintain stability of the hole perimeter until excavation to the final depth and placement of the reinforcing cage

and concrete has been completed. This procedure will require placing the shaft concrete with either a tremie or concrete pump beginning at the shaft bottom, and displacing the water or slurry as concrete is placed. Temporary partial depth casings near the ground surface shall be provided to aid shaft alignment and position and to prevent sloughing of the top of the shaft excavation. Where drilled shafts are located in open water areas, shafts shall be constructed by the wet method using casings extending from above the water elevation to the plan casing tip elevation to protect the shaft concrete from water action during placement and curing. The casing shall be installed in a manner that produces a positive seal at the bottom of the casing.

701.4.4.2.3 Temporary Casing Construction Method. The temporary casing construction method shall be used at all sites where the stability of the excavated hole or the effects of groundwater cannot be controlled by other means. In this method, the hole shall be advanced through caving material by the wet method in accordance with Sec 701.4.4.2.2. When a formation is reached that is nearly impervious, a casing shall be placed in the hole and sealed. Drilling may proceed by the dry method to the projected depth. The placement of concrete shall proceed by the dry or wet method, except that the casing shall be withdrawn after the concrete is placed. In the event seepage conditions prevent use of the dry method, excavation shall be completed by the wet method. Before and during casing withdrawal, a 5-foot minimum head of fresh concrete above the bottom of the casing shall be maintained at such a level that fluid trapped behind the casing is displaced upward out of the shaft excavation without mixing with or displacing the shaft concrete. Casing extraction shall be at a slow, uniform rate with the pull in line with the axis of the shaft. Temporary casings shall be removed while the concrete is still workable and the slump of the concrete is between 6 and 10 inches. Vibratory hammers shall not be used for casing installation or removal within
50 feet of other shafts that have been completed less than 24 hours earlier. The reinforcing cage shall not be damaged or displaced when withdrawing the temporary casing.

701.4.4.2.4 Permanent Casing Construction Method. The permanent casing construction method shall be used only when required by the contract documents or authorized by the engineer. The casing shall be continuous between top and bottom elevations shown on the plans. Vibratory hammers shall not be used for casing installation within 50 feet of shafts that have been completed less than 24 hours earlier.

701.4.5 Slurry.

701.4.5.1 Time Limitations. When bentonite slurry is used, the contractor shall adjust construction operations such that the maximum time that slurry is in contact with the bottom 5 feet of the shaft, the time from the end of drilling to the beginning of concrete placement, does not exceed four hours without agitation. If the four-hour limit is exceeded, the bottom 5 feet of the shaft shall be overreamed prior to performing other operations in the shaft. For rock sockets constructed in shale using polymer slurry, concrete placement shall begin within 72 hours of starting the rock socket excavation to avoid degradation of the shaft sidewall. Before concrete placement begins, foundation inspection, when required, cleaning operations and reinforcing steel placement shall be completed and approved by the engineer. These operations will be included in the 72-hour time limit. If concrete placement is not begun within the time limit, the contractor shall take corrective measures to the satisfaction of the engineer.

701.4.5.2 Level of Slurry. During construction, the level of slurry shall be maintained at a height sufficient to prevent caving of the excavation. If the engineer determines that the slurry construction method is failing to produce the desired final results, the contractor shall discontinue operations and propose an alternate method for approval from the engineer. Correction for a failed slurry construction method will be noncompensable and any effect on time of performance nonexcusable.

701.4.5.3 Slurry Manufacturer's Representative. When manufactured mineral or polymer slurry additives are to be incorporated into the drilling slurry mix, the contractor shall provide the technical assistance of a representative of the mineral or polymer slurry additive manufacturer at the site prior to introduction of the slurry into the first shaft where slurry use will be required, and during drilling and completion of a minimum of one shaft to adjust the slurry mix to the specific site conditions.

701.4.5.4 Drilling Fluids for Rock Socket Excavation. For rock sockets excavated in limestone, dolomite, sandstone or other formations that are not erodible and cannot be constructed in the dry, only water shall be used as the drilling fluid, except that when other slurry types are used in drilling through overburden, that slurry shall be removed and replaced with fresh clean water prior to rock socket excavation. For rock sockets excavated in geomaterial that may be eroded by drilling water, such as shales, a polymer slurry will be required prior to beginning rock socket drilling through completion of concreting the rock socket.

701.4.6 Cleaning of Shaft or Casing Sidewalls. Cleaning of the shaft or casing sidewalls shall occur by a method approved by the engineer as necessary to remove the depth of softening or to remove excessive slurry cake buildup.

701.4.7 General Excavation Considerations. The plans will indicate the top of shaft elevations and the estimated bottom of shaft elevations between which the drilled shaft shall be constructed. Drilled shafts may be extended deeper when the engineer determines that the foundation material encountered while drilling the shaft excavation is unsuitable or is not the same as anticipated in the design of the drilled shaft. Drilled shafts may be shortened when the engineer determines the material encountered is better than that anticipated, or based on the results of load tests.

701.4.7.1 Time Restrictions. The integrity of the drilled shaft excavation shall be maintained by the placing of reinforcement and concrete in a timely manner following completion of the excavation. No two adjacent shafts shall be excavated at the same time, and shafts shall not be constructed within 24 hours of the completion of an adjacent shaft if the center-to-center spacing is less than 3 shaft diameters.

701.4.7.2 Disposal of Excavated Material. Excavated material removed from the shaft and any drilling fluids used shall be disposed of in accordance with the contract documents, as directed by the engineer, and in compliance with federal and state laws.

701.4.7.3 Worker Entry Into Shaft Excavation. The contractor shall not allow workers to enter the shaft excavation for any reason, unless both a suitable casing has been installed and adequate safety equipment and procedures have been provided to workers entering the excavation.

701.4.8 Unexpected Obstructions. When unexpected obstructions are encountered, the contractor shall notify the engineer immediately. Obstructions are defined as a impenetrable objects that a) cannot be removed or excavated with augers fitted with soil or rock teeth, drilling buckets and/or underreaming tools and b) cause a significant decrease in the rate of excavation advancement, relative to the rate of advancement for the rest of the shaft excavation with the particular strata that the obstruction is located in. The engineer will be the sole judge of the significance of any reduced rate of shaft advancement and shall be present to evaluate the occurrence of the obstructions. Subsurface obstructions at drilled shaft locations shall be removed by the contractor. Such obstructions may include man-made materials such as old concrete foundations and natural materials such as boulders. The contractor shall employ special procedures or tools which may include but are not limited to: chisels, boulder breakers, core barrels, air tools, hand excavation, temporary casings, and increasing the hole diameter. Blasting will not be permitted. In the event, unexpected obstructions are encountered, the contractor shall strictly follow the procedure provided for a differing site condition set forth in Sec 104. Any adjustment to the contract amount or time will only be those expressly permitted by the contract documents and only to the extent expressly provided in the contract documents. No contract adjustment will be determined, as to entitlement or amount on any basis other than under the contract as a differing site condition. Specifically, but not by way of limitation, the contractor agrees that the contractor will not be entitled to any contract adjustment arising from encountering an unexpected obstruction on the basis that, with respect to the obstruction, the Commission made: (1) a positive representation; (2) of a material fact; (3) which was false or incorrect; (4) as to which positive representation of material fact the contractor lacked knowledge that the representation was false or incorrect;
(5) upon which positive representation of material fact the contractor asserts that the contractor relied; and (6) was damaged as a direct result of the positive representation of material fact.

701.4.9 Lost Tools. Drilling tools lost in the excavation will not be considered obstructions and shall be promptly removed by the contractor. All work required to remove lost tools or to perform associated corrective work, including but not limited to repair of hole degradation due to removal operations, will be noncompensable and any effect on time of performance nonexcusable.

701.4.10 Excavation Inspection.

701.4.10.1 Inspection Equipment. The contractor shall maintain at the job at all times, all equipment suitable for use in the shaft inspection.

701.4.10.2 Removal of Excess Sediment and Water. Final shaft depth shall be measured with approved methods after final cleaning by airlift, or other method approved by the engineer. Unless otherwise stated in the

contract documents, a minimum of 50 percent of the base of each shaft shall have less than 1/2 inch of sediment at the time of concrete placement. The maximum depth of sediment or any debris at any place on the base of the shaft shall not exceed 1 1/2 inches. For dry excavations, the maximum depth of water shall not exceed 3 inches prior to concrete pour. Shaft cleanliness will be verified by the engineer for wet or dry shafts.

701.4.10.3 Video Camera Inspection. The primary means of inspecting a shaft excavation, steel casing and the rock socket shall be by video camera lowered into the shaft. The contractor shall furnish all equipment necessary to conduct the camera inspection. The contractor shall operate the camera and supporting equipment under the direction of the engineer in such a manner as to obtain optimum results from the equipment. The video camera and lighting equipment shall be capable of operating in dry or submerged conditions encountered during the inspection. The excavated shaft shall have the engineer's approval prior to proceeding with construction.

701.4.10.3.1 Equipment. Methods and equipment for controlling the camera will be subject to approval from the engineer and achievement of a satisfactory video record.

701.4.10.3.2 Drawings. The contractor shall submit layout drawings to the engineer showing the relative position of all components of the video inspection system, including type and size of barge or other work area. The information submitted shall include a written description of the operating procedure in a step-by-step sequence and shall state the source of power.

701.4.10.3.3 Shaft Inspection. Inspection of a shaft by video camera shall be performed as directed by the engineer. The excavated shaft, including the rock socket when applicable, shall be thoroughly cleaned of all loose fragments, sediment and turbidity prior to inspection. The camera shall be operated such that optimum clarity of detail can be obtained and all surface areas of the shaft, including the rock socket and the rock socket's base, can be observed. All scanning of the rock surfaces shall be recorded. After completion of the inspection of a rock socket, the engineer will direct whether or not drilling of the shaft shall be continued to a greater depth. Recordings shall be furnished to and shall become the property of the engineer upon completion of the work.

701.4.11 Foundation Inspection. NX size cores will be required for drilled shafts with rock sockets, where NX refers to the nominal diameter of rock core, and the NX core barrel has a 2 1/8-inch inside diameter. At least 15 days prior to drilled shaft construction the contractor shall drill one NX size core at the center of each rock socket to a depth of 10 feet or twice the diameter of the rock socket, whichever is greater, below the bottom of the rock socket. The contractor shall use the foundation inspection hole to determine the amount of casing needed and casing ordered prior to foundation inspections holes is at the contractor's risk. The contractor may be directed to extend the rock socket to a lower elevation, resulting from the engineer's evaluation of the foundation inspection cores.

701.4.11.1 Log of Excavated Material. The contractor shall maintain a log of excavated material for each foundation inspection hole, and a rough draft of the logs shall be delivered to the engineer within 24 hours of completion of the boring. A typed log prepared by a geologist or engineer along with recommendations for the tip of casing shall be delivered to the engineer within 5 days. The log shall include the following:

(a) The amount of NX cored per run and the amount recovered. All core loss shall be noted and explained. Clay layers shall be noted and located on the log by depth.

(b) The Rock Quality Designation (RQD) for the NX core. The bedding thickness and degree of weathering shall also be noted.

(c) One unconfined compression test shall be run per 5 feet of NX core. The results of these tests shall be delivered to the engineer. The results of the unconfined compression tests shall be reported in units of kips per square foot (ksf). Any effect on time of performance resulting from delays in delivery of the above test results to the engineer will be nonexcusable.

(d) Color photographs of the core.

701.4.11.2 Storage and Labeling of Rock Cores. Rock cores shall be stored in structurally sound core boxes and shall be protected from the elements. The core boxes shall be properly labeled to indicate location, depth, beginning elevation, contractor and date, and shall be delivered to the engineer.

701.4.12 Reinforcing Steel Cage Fabrication and Placement. The reinforcing steel cage, consisting of the longitudinal bars, ties, spirals, cage stiffener bars, spacers, centering devices, and other necessary appurtenances, shall be completely assembled as a unit, and shall be placed immediately after the shaft excavation is inspected and accepted, and just prior to shaft concrete placement. Temporary internal cage stiffeners shall be removed as the cage is placed in the shaft such that interference with the placement of concrete does not occur.

701.4.12.1 Reinforcing Ties, Splices and Clearances. All reinforcing steel in the shaft shall be double-wire tied and supported such that the steel remains within the allowable tolerances specified herein during placement of concrete or casing removal. Splices shall be located as shown on the plans and in accordance with plan details. With approval from the engineer, mechanical bar splices meeting the requirements specified in the contract documents may be used. Mechanical bar splices in adjacent bars shall be staggered not less than 30 inches apart. Welding of reinforcing steel will not be permitted. The reinforcing steel cage shall have sufficient rigidity to prevent racking or permanent deformations during delivery or installation.

Concrete Cover			
Shaft Diameter	**Uncased**	**Casing Remains**	**Casing Withdrawn**
2'-0" or less	3"	3"	4"
3'-0"	3"	3"	4"
4'-0"	4"	4"	4"
5'-0" or larger	6"	6"	6"

701.4.12.2 Spacers. Rolling spacers for reinforcing steel shall be used to minimize disturbance of the shaft sidewalls and to facilitate removal of the casing during concrete placement. Concrete spacers or other approved non-corrosive spacing devices shall be used at sufficient intervals, near the bottom and along the shaft at intervals not exceeding 5 feet , to ensure concentric location of the cage within the shaft excavation. When the vertical steel is greater than one inch in diameter, the maximum spacing may be increased to 10 feet. As a minimum, a set of spacers shall be provided within 2 feet of both the top and bottom of the shaft. In addition, one set of spacers shall be provided at both 2 feet above and below each change in shaft diameter. Non-corrosive spacers shall be provided at a minimum of one spacer per 30 inches of circumference of cage with a minimum of three at each level to maintain the required reinforcement clearances. The spacers shall be of adequate dimension to maintain the specified clearance between the outside of the reinforcing cage and the side of the excavated hole or casing.

701.4.12.3 Bottom Supports. Approved non-corrosive bottom supports shall be provided for the reinforcing cage to ensure that the reinforcing is the correct distance above the bottom of shaft. The bottom supports shall not be used to support the weight of the cage. In the event that the shaft has been excavated below the anticipated tip elevation, the reinforcing cage shall be extended at the lower tip end by lap lengths for No. 11 bars or smaller or by use of mechanical connectors. Splices of adjacent bars will not need to be staggered in this situation and all of the reinforcing bars may be spliced at a given location. Reinforcement will not be required for the bottom 12 inches.

701.4.12.4 Durability of Spacers. Concrete spacers and bottom supports shall be constructed of concrete equal in quality and durability to the concrete specified for the shaft. Spacers fabricated from reinforcing steel shall be epoxy coated.

701.4.12.5 Protection of Reinforcing Cage. The reinforcing cage bottom supports shall be positioned such that the reinforcing steel is not allowed to come into contact with the soil or rock and to ensure that the bottom of the cage is maintained at the proper distance above the base as identified in the contract documents or directed by the engineer.

701.4.12.6 Check of Tolerances for Placement of Reinforcing Cage. The elevation of the top of the reinforcing cage shall be checked before and after the concrete is placed. The reinforcing cage shall be maintained within the specified tolerances, and the contractor shall make corrections to those tolerances, as required, to the satisfaction of the engineer. No additional shafts shall be constructed until the contractor has modified the reinforcing cage support to obtain the required tolerances.

701.4.13 Concrete Placement.

701.4.13.1 General Considerations. Accumulations of water in casings and excess sediment at the base shall be removed as described herein before the concrete is placed. No concrete shall be placed until all casings, if used, within a 15-foot radius have been installed. Within the 15-foot radius, all driving or vibratory installation methods shall be discontinued until the concrete in the last shaft has set at least five days. Concrete placement shall begin as soon as possible after completion of the excavation, inspection and setting of the reinforcing cage, and shall proceed in a continuous operation from the bottom of the shaft to the plan construction joint or above as specified herein. An unplanned stoppage of work may require an emergency construction joint during the shaft construction.

701.4.13.1.1 Placement of Concrete in the Shaft. Concrete shall be placed for each shaft with the flow of concrete directed down the center of the shaft. Concrete shall be placed by free fall or through a tremie or concrete pump. The free fall placement method will only be permitted in dry holes when approved by the engineer. The maximum height of free fall placement shall be 80 feet. Concrete placed by free fall shall fall directly to the base without contacting either the reinforcing cage or hole sidewall. Drop chutes may be used to direct concrete to the base during free fall placement.

701.4.13.1.2 Extent of Concrete Placement. Concrete placement shall continue after the shaft is filled until good quality concrete, as determined by the engineer, is evident at the plan construction joint at the top of the shaft and until a minimum of 18 inches of concrete, measured vertically, has been expelled. Immediately after concrete placement has been completed, all contaminated concrete and deleterious material accumulated above the top of shaft shall be removed to within one foot of plan top of shaft. Any concrete remaining above the top of shaft shall be carefully removed to the plan construction joint after curing and excess casing removal.

701.4.13.1.3 Time Limitations. The elapsed time from the beginning of concrete placement in the shaft to the completion of the placement shall not exceed two hours. All admixtures shall be adjusted for the conditions encountered on the job so the concrete remains in a workable plastic state throughout the two-hour placement limit. Prior to concrete placement, the contractor shall provide test results of both a trial mix and a slump loss test conducted by an approved testing laboratory using approved methods to demonstrate that the concrete meets the two-hour requirement. The contractor may request a longer placement time if a concrete mix is provided that will maintain a slump of 6 inches or greater over the longer placement time in the entire shaft as demonstrated by trial mix and slump loss tests. The trial mix and slump loss tests shall be conducted using concrete and ambient temperatures approved for site conditions.

701.4.13.1.4 Adequacy of Concrete Placement Method. Failure to demonstrate the adequacy of concrete placement methods or equipment during construction of any technique or production shafts will be cause for the engineer to require appropriate alterations in equipment or methods by the contractor to eliminate unsatisfactory results. Drilled shafts that are completed, but do not meet the concrete placement requirements, will be unacceptable. The contractor shall correct all unacceptable completed shafts to the satisfaction of the engineer at the contractor's expense.

701.4.13.2 Concrete Placement by Tremie. Tremies used to place concrete shall consist of a tube of sufficient length to discharge concrete at the shaft base elevation. The tremie shall have sufficient weight to rest on the shaft bottom before the start of concrete placement and to prevent curling of the tremie line during placement of the concrete. The tremie shall not contain aluminum parts that may come in contact with the concrete. A tremie shall consist of a watertight tube having an inside diameter of no less than 10 inches and fitted with a hopper at the top. The inside and outside surfaces of the tremie shall be clean and smooth to permit both flow of concrete and unimpeded withdrawal during concrete placement. The tremie wall thickness shall be adequate to prevent crimping or sharp bends that restrict concrete placement. Tremies used for depositing concrete in a dry drilled shaft excavation shall be supported such that the free fall of the concrete is less than 80 feet at all times.

701.4.13.2.1 Adjustment of Concrete Free Fall or Rate of Concrete Flow. If the free fall concrete causes the shaft excavation to cave or slough, the contractor shall control the movement of concrete by reducing the free fall of the concrete or the rate of flow of concrete into the excavation. The contractor shall be responsible for proposing, developing, and after approval from the engineer, implementing corrective work.

701.4.13.2.2 Tremie Operation. Underwater placement of concrete shall not begin until the tremie is at the shaft base elevation. The discharge end of the tremie shall be constructed to permit the free radial flow of concrete during placement operations. The tremie discharge end shall remain immersed as deep as practical in the concrete, but shall be no less than 5 feet at all times. The tremie shall be supported such as to permit free movement of the discharge end over the entire top surface of the work and to permit rapid lowering when

necessary to retard or stop the flow of concrete. The discharge end shall be sealed closed at the start of work to prevent water from entering the tube before the tube is filled with concrete. After placement has started, the level of the concrete in the tremie shall be maintained above the level of slurry or water in the borehole at all times to prevent water or slurry intrusion into the shaft concrete. If water enters the tube after placement is started, the tremie shall be withdrawn, the discharge end resealed, and the placement restarted. The flow of concrete shall be continuous until the work is completed.

701.4.13.2.3 Removal of Tremie Orifice From Concrete. If at any time during the concrete pour, when using the wet construction method, the tremie line orifice is removed from the fluid concrete column and discharges concrete above the rising concrete surface, the entire drilled shaft will be considered defective. In such a case, the contractor shall remove the reinforcing cage and concrete, complete any necessary sidewall cleaning or overreaming as directed by the engineer, and repour the shaft. Corrections made by the contractor will be noncompensable and any effect on time of performance nonexcusable.

701.4.13.3 Concrete Placement by Pump. Concrete pumps and lines may be used for concrete placement by either the wet or dry construction method. All pump lines shall have a minimum diameter of 5 inches and shall be constructed with watertight joints. Concrete placement shall not begin until the pump line discharge orifice is at the shaft base elevation. For the wet construction method, a plug or similar device shall be used to separate the concrete from the fluid in the hole until pumping begins. The plug shall either be removed from the excavation or shall be of a material that does not cause a defect in the shaft if the plug is not removed. The discharge orifice shall remain at least 5 feet below the surface of the fluid concrete. If at any time during the concrete pour the pump line orifice is removed from the fluid concrete column and discharges concrete above the rising concrete level, the shaft will be considered defective. In such a case, the contractor shall remove the reinforcing cage and concrete, complete any necessary sidewall cleaning or overreaming as directed by the engineer, and repour the shaft. Corrections made by the contractor will be noncompensable and any effect on time of performance nonexcusable.

701.4.13.4 Drop Chutes. Drop chutes may be used to direct placement of free fall concrete down the center of the shaft excavations where the maximum depth of water does not exceed one inch. The free fall method of placement shall not be used in wet excavations. Drop chutes shall be a smooth tube constructed either as a continuous one-piece unit or as removable sections. Aluminum drop chutes will not be permitted. Concrete may be placed through either a hopper at the top of the tube or side openings as the drop chute is retrieved during concrete placement. The drop chute shall be supported such that the free fall of the concrete measured from the bottom of the chute is less than 80 feet at all times.

701.4.14 Construction Joints. Unless otherwise approved by the engineer, construction joints shall be made only where shown on the plans. All planned reinforcing steel shall extend uninterrupted through joints. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, horizontal joints may be constructed without keys. Surfaces of fresh concrete at horizontal construction joints shall be rough floated sufficiently to thoroughly consolidate the surface and to intentionally leave the surface in a roughened condition. Shear keys, if required, shall consist of formed depressions in the surface covering approximately one-third of the contact surface.

701.4.15 Concrete Protection and Curing. For at least 48 hours after shaft concrete has been placed, no construction operations that will cause soil movement adjacent to the shaft shall be conducted, except for movement of light construction equipment. Portions of drilled shafts exposed to a body of water shall be protected from the action of water by leaving the forms in place for at least seven days after concrete placement or until the shaft concrete reaches a minimum strength of 2,500 psi. After placement, the temporarily exposed surfaces of the shaft concrete shall be cured to prevent loss of water by use of one or more of the approved methods. Curing shall be in accordance with Sec 502.

701.4.16 Construction Tolerances. During excavation of the shaft, the contractor shall make frequent checks on the plumbness, alignment and dimensions of the shaft. Any deviation exceeding the allowable construction tolerances specified herein shall be corrected with a procedure approved by the engineer. Drilled shaft excavations constructed in such a manner that the concrete shaft cannot be completed within the required tolerances will not be accepted. Correction methods shall be submitted by the contractor for the engineer's approval. Drilled shaft construction shall not begin until approval has been obtained. When a shaft excavation is completed with unacceptable tolerances, the contractor shall propose, develop and, after approval from the engineer, implement corrective work. Redesign drawings and computations submitted by the contractor shall be signed by a professional engineer registered to practice in the State of Missouri. The following construction tolerances will apply to drilled shafts unless stated otherwise in the contract documents:

(a) Temporary casing diameters shall provide a final shaft diameter as shown on the plans. When approved by the engineer, the contractor may provide a larger casing at the contractor's expense.

(b) Shafts shall be constructed such that the center of the top of the shaft is within 3 inches of plan position in the horizontal plane at the plan elevation for the top of the shaft.

(c) The vertical alignment of a vertical shaft excavation shall not vary from the plan alignment by more than 1/4 inch per foot of depth. The alignment of a battered shaft excavation shall not vary by more than 1/2 inch per foot of the distance along the axis of the shaft from the prescribed batter.

(d) After all the shaft concrete is placed, the top of the reinforcing steel cage shall be no more than 6 inches above and no more than 3 inches below plan position.

(e) The top elevation of the shaft shall be no more than one inch above or 3 inches below the plan top of shaft elevation.

(f) The bottom of the shaft excavation shall be normal to the axis of the shaft within a tolerance of 3/8 inch per foot of shaft diameter.

701.4.17 Integrity Testing. The completed shaft shall be subjected to the specified testing methods, such as concrete coring or sonic logging testing, to determine the extent of any defects that may be present. Work and material required for testing shall be furnished by the contractor and will be paid for in accordance with the contract documents. If testing reveals voids or discontinuities in the concrete that, as determined by the engineer, indicate that the shaft is not structurally adequate, the shaft will be rejected. The contractor shall then repair, replace or supplement the defective shaft in a method approved by the engineer. The construction of additional drilled shafts shall be discontinued until the contractor demonstrates the adequacy of the shaft construction method to the satisfaction of the engineer. Any additional work required by the contractor as a result of shaft defects will be noncompensable and any effect on time of performance nonexcusable.

701.4.17.1 Concrete Coring. At locations where concrete coring is to be provided, as indicated in the contract documents or as directed by the engineer, the following will apply. Upon completion of placing concrete and after waiting a minimum of 48 hours, the top surface of concrete shall be cleaned of laitance and any unsound concrete, and then one core hole shall be drilled completely through the shaft concrete and the rock socket to approximately one foot below the bottom of the rock socket of each shaft. Provisions for the inspection of the concrete surface shall be in accordance with the applicable requirements described herein. Core holes shall be drilled at locations specified by the engineer. The holes shall be drilled to recover NX size cores. The core samples recovered shall be labeled as to the location from which the samples were taken. The samples shall be delivered to the engineer for examination. If the cores indicate defective concrete in the shaft, which in the judgment of the engineer impairs the strength of the completed shaft, the contractor shall drill additional cores as directed by the engineer. If the concrete is found to be defective, the contractor shall submit to the engineer in writing a proposal for correction, and those corrective procedures shall be approved by the engineer before such corrective work is undertaken. The cored holes in non-defective concrete shall be filled with grout such that all voids are filled. All grout used for core holes shall be in accordance with Sec 1066. No direct payment will be made for grout and grouting.

701.4.17.2 Sonic Logging Testing. The contractor shall perform non-destructive integrity testing on completed drilled shafts and rock sockets using the crosshole sonic logging (CSL) method for concrete drilled shafts. The tests shall be conducted as indicated on the plans or other contract documents, or as directed by the engineer. Sonic logging measurements and data interpretation shall be performed by a CSL consultant with at least two years of experience in CSL drilled shaft testing. The contractor shall submit the testing organization experience record to the engineer, along with a written description of the testing procedures, operation manuals for the testing equipment, and samples of previous test results indicating both sound and defective concrete. The contractor shall inform the engineer of scheduled test dates at least seven days prior to CSL testing. The contractor shall provide reasonable access to the shaft top for performance of the sonic logging testing.

701.4.17.2.1 Installation of Pipes. The contractor shall furnish and install 2-inch nominal inside diameter steel pipes, ASTM A 53, Standard Weight, for use in sonic testing of each drilled shaft. Pipes shall be installed in each drilled shaft at the locations shown on the plans, as required by the testing agency or as directed by the engineer. The pipes shall be sufficiently regular and free from defects to permit the free and unobstructed

passage of the probes. The pipe shall be installed such that all internal joints are flush. Stiffening devices such as mandrels, tape or similar material to seal the joints shall not be used. Pipe shall be watertight with clean internal and external faces, the latter to ensure a good bond between the concrete and the pipes. The pipes shall be fitted with a screw-on watertight shoe and cap and shall be securely fixed to the interior of the reinforcement cage with a minimum cover of 3 inches from the shaft periphery. The pipes shall be as near to parallel as possible, equally spaced and vertical. Where several sections of pipe are required to reach the full length, joints shall be made watertight. The pipes shall be filled with water and plugged or capped before shaft concrete is poured. The upper end of the pipe shall not be left open after the pour. The pipes shall extend at least 3 feet above the top of the concrete in the shaft to compensate for water displaced by insertion and removal of the transmitter, receiver, and cable. For shafts with a rock socket, the lower end of the pipes shall extend to the bottom of the rock socket. Care shall be taken during the drilled shaft concrete pour to not damage the pipes. If a tremie is used, the tremie shall not be permitted to rest on top of the pipes during the pour. After completion of the sonic logging and final acceptance of the drilled shaft, the contractor shall fill the access pipes with grout.

701.4.17.2.2 Sonic Logging Equipment. The sonic logging equipment furnished by the CSL consultant shall consist of all necessary supplies, support equipment and power to perform the sonic logging testing requirements as described herein.

701.4.17.2.3 Sonic Logging Test Procedure. The drilled shaft shall be tested between 2 and 40 days after concrete placement. The following procedures shall apply:

(a) Pipes shall be checked to ensure the pipes are free from blockages and are filled with water any addition of water shall be noted and reported.

(b) Levels shall be taken on top of each pipe, each pipe shall be plumbed and the length shall be recorded.

(c) Testing shall be performed between each pair of adjacent pipes around the shaft perimeter and also in pairing combinations between each pipe with all other pipes in the shaft. If concrete coring is performed to confirm the nature of an anomaly identified during CSL testing, a subsequent CSL survey shall be performed using the concrete core hole(s) and the CSL access pipes.

(d) All tests shall be carried out with the probes in the same horizontal plane unless the engineer directs that defects be further evaluated with the probes on different horizontal planes.

(e) The probes shall be raised simultaneously from the bottom of the pipes ensuring that all slack is taken out of the cables before the analyzer is switched on, and that the distance between transducers remains constant during the course of the test. The speed of ascent shall be less than 12 inches per second. Measurements shall be taken at 3-inch intervals or less. Anomalies indicated by reduced velocity in the drilled shaft concrete and significantly lower energy shall be reported. If anomalies are detected, additional tests with two or more sources per receiver with vertical offsets of greater than or equal to 20 inches may be conducted at the request of the engineer between the same tubes unless the anomaly is within 20 inches of the bottom of the shaft.

(f) The contractor shall provide accurate measurements of probe depths on the logs.

701.4.17.2.4 Record of Testing. Preliminary results of the testing shall be provided on site prior to the CSL consultant leaving the site. A detailed CSL report and test data shall be submitted to the engineer within seven days. The CSL report shall be signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer. The CSL report shall include, but is not limited to, the following: project identification and dates of testing, a table and schematic showing shafts tested with accurate identification of tube coordinates and collar elevation, name of personnel that performed the tests and interpretation and those personnel's affiliation, equipment used, data logs, interpretation, analysis, and results. The data logs shall include XY plots of velocity and energy versus depth. CSL data shall be processed to provide easy to understand 2D cross-sections between tubes for all tube pair combinations. These plots shall be annotated by the CSL consultant as appropriate to delineate anomalous results. If offset surveys are performed as part of 3D tomography, data plots shall include 3D volumetric images for the entire shaft, color-coded, to indicate velocity or energy variations along the shaft. Locations and geometry of anomalies or unconsolidated zones shall be identified in 3D color images with detailed discussion. The results for CSL and 3D surveys shall be based on the percentage decrease in velocity as correlated to the following Concrete Condition Rating

Criteria (CCRC). The velocity of good concrete shall be established from a nearby zone of good concrete. Deviations from the velocity shall be used for determining the Concrete Condition Rating.

Concrete Condition Rating Criteria			
Concrete Condition Rating	**Rating Symbol**	**Velocity Reduction**	**Indicative Results**
Good	G	0 to 10%	Acceptable concrete
Questionable	Q	10% to 25%	Minor concrete contamination or intrusion. Questionable quality concrete.
Poor	P/D	> 25%	Possible defects exist, possible water slurry contamination, soil intrusion, and or poor quality concrete.
Water	W	V= 4760 to 5005 ft/sec	Water intrusion, or water filled gravel intrusion with few or no fines present.
No Signal	NS	No signal received	Soil intrusion or other severe defect absorbed the signal, tube debonding if near top.

701.4.17.2.5 Correction of Unacceptable Results. The contractor shall immediately inform the engineer of any suspected anomalies, honeycombing or poor concrete quality detected by testing. The contractor and CSL consultant shall duly perform further tests as directed by the engineer to evaluate the extent of any detected anomalies. Core drilling, or other investigative methods as approved by the engineer, shall be performed to further investigate the anomaly. If a defect is confirmed, the contractor shall bear all costs involved with the shaft coring, grouting and remediation. If no defect is found the length of the core will be eligible for payment. Within 14 days of the completion of testing, the contractor shall provide a report signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer registered in the State of Missouri providing the results of the additional investigations and recommendations to accept or repair the shaft. The report shall also contain recommendations for modification of construction procedures to prevent defects for subsequent shaft installations. The dates of the completion of drilling, cleaning, steel placement and concrete pour shall also be provided. Construction above the top of shaft shall not be performed until the shaft has been accepted by the engineer.

701.5 Drilled Shaft Load Tests. All load tests, when required by the contract documents, shall be completed and submitted to the engineer for review and approval before construction of any production drilled shafts. The locations of load test shafts, the maximum loads to be applied, the test equipment to be furnished by the contractor, and the actual sequence of the load testing shall be as shown on the plans or as specified in the contract documents. After completion of testing, test shafts not used as production shafts shall be cut off at an elevation 3 feet below the finished ground line. The portion of shafts cut off shall be disposed of by the contractor, at the contractor's expense, in a manner approved by the engineer.

701.6 Method of Measurement.

701.6.1 Drilled Shaft. Accepted drilled shafts will be measured for payment to the nearest 0.10 linear foot of length along the axis of each shaft complete-in-place. For shafts without a rock socket, measurement will be from the plan top of the shaft elevation to the bottom of the shaft. For shafts with a rock socket, measurement will be from the plan top of the shaft to the top of the rock socket. "Top of the rock socket" will be defined as the upper elevation at which rock occurs across the entire width of the shaft, as determined by the engineer. Reinforcing steel will be measured for payment in accordance with Sec 706.

701.6.2 Rock Socket. The accepted rock sockets, if required, will be measured for payment to the nearest 0.10 linear foot of length along the axis of each rock socket in-place from the top elevation of the rock, as determined by the engineer and in accordance with Sec 701.6.1, to the bottom of the rock socket as built. In the event that additional rock socket construction is directed by the engineer, the additional length will be measured to the nearest 0.10 linear foot. Reinforcing steel will be measured for payment in accordance with Sec 706.

701.6.3 Technique Shafts. Accepted technique shafts, if required, will be measured for payment to the nearest 0.10 linear foot of length along the axis of each shaft in-place from the plan top of the shaft elevation to the bottom of the rock socket or shaft as built for each size of acceptable technique shaft drilled, including rock socket. Reinforcing steel will be measured for payment in accordance with Sec 706.

701.6.4 Video Camera Inspection. Video camera inspection, as required, will be measured for payment per each.

701.6.5 Foundation Inspection Holes. Measurement for payment for foundation inspection holes will be to the nearest 0.10 linear foot of length along the axis of each hole by the linear foot. Measurement will be from the top of the rock socket to the bottom of the foundation inspection hole. If the engineer directs foundation inspection borings more than 10 feet or twice the diameter of the rock socket, whichever is greater, below the anticipated bottom of the rock socket elevation as shown on the plans, measurement for payment for that portion of the boring in excess of 10 feet below or twice the diameter anticipated bottom of the rock socket elevation as shown on the plans will be to the nearest 0.10 linear foot of excess.

701.6.6 Concrete Coring. Measurement for payment for concrete cores will be to the nearest 0.10 linear foot of length along the axis of the shaft from the top of concrete to a point as determined by the engineer, and may extend the entire length of the shaft plus one foot below the bottom of the rock socket.

701.6.7 Sonic Logging Testing. Sonic logging testing of drilled shafts, as required, will be measured for payment per each.

701.6.8 Drilled Shaft Load Tests. Load tests will be measured for payment per each load test performed.

701.7 Basis of Payment.

701.7.1 Drilled Shaft. Payment will be considered full compensation for all steel casing required, costs of drilling, excavation, slurry, cleaning, an acceptable method of inspection as required, furnishing and placing concrete, grouting and incidental work and material required by the contract documents. Payment for any drilled shaft installed and accepted will be at the contract unit price per linear foot for the diameter of the drilled shafts specified, irrespective of the character of the material actually encountered during excavation. No additional compensation will be made for concrete required to fill an oversized casing or for oversized excavation. If the method of construction requires that drilled shaft casing be seated into the sound rock such that the bottom of the casing is below the determined top of sound rock elevation, payment for excavation below the top of the sound rock layer (top of the rock socket) will be included in the payment for the rock socket. If sound rock is encountered within the excavation at which point a rock auger, core barrel or other rock-removing specialty tool must be used by the contractor before the top of the sound rock elevation to be used as “top of the rock socket” is confirmed by the engineer, that work will be paid for as rock socket excavation. Payment for reinforcing steel will be in accordance with Sec 706.

701.7.2 Rock Socket. Payment will be considered full compensation for drilling, excavation, slurry, cleaning, dewatering, an acceptable method of inspection as required, furnishing and placing concrete, and incidental work and material according to the contract documents. For payment purposes the length of any rock socket installed and accepted shall be paid for at the contract unit price per linear foot for the diameter of the rock socket specified, irrespective of the character of the material actually encountered during excavation. In the event that the engineer orders additional rock socket construction, payment for the additional length will be at the rate of 150 percent of the contract unit price per linear foot of rock socket up to a maximum additional length of 8 feet. Any work necessary to extend the length of the rock socket more than the additional 8 feet will be paid for as changes in the work in accordance with Sec 104.3. Payment at the adjusted rate will be considered full compensation for the additional excavation into rock, all additional concrete, except reinforcing steel, including any and all splices, and all incidentals necessary to complete the work down to the elevation designated by the engineer. Reinforcing steel will be paid for in accordance with Sec 706.

701.7.3 Technique Shafts. Payment for technique shafts will be in accordance with the contract unit prices for the appropriate drilled shaft and rock socket diameters. Payment will be considered full compensation for any steel casing required, all costs of drilling, excavation, an acceptable method of inspection as required, furnishing and placing concrete, grouting and incidental work, and material necessary to satisfactorily construct the technique shafts according to the contract documents. Reinforcing steel will be paid for in accordance with Sec 706.

701.7.4 Unexpected Obstructions. Contract adjustment, in time or amount, resulting from encountering any obstructions in the work covered by Sec 701 will be made only if the obstruction constitutes a differing site condition, as defined by the contract. Contract adjustments will be determined only under the terms of the contract for adjustments in time or compensation due to encountering a differing site condition. Contract adjustments will be allowed only to the extent, in type and amount of contract adjustment, that such adjustment is expressly allowed for or permitted by the contract documents, specifically: (1) Secs 109.4 through 109.4.3 for cost adjustment; (2) Sec 109.11 for any compensable delay to the work to deal with the obstruction, but not for any effect upon the unchanged work; and (3) Sec 108.14 to determine any adjustment in contract time.

701.7.5 Video Camera Inspection. Payment for one complete video camera inspection of each shaft, including the rock socket when applicable, will be paid at the contract unit price. Any additional video camera inspections required by the engineer due to extending the rock socket to a greater depth will be paid for at the contract unit price for video camera inspection. Payment for video camera inspection will be considered full compensation for moving in equipment, flushing turbid water from the shaft, conducting the actual scanning as specified, furnishing video recording, removing equipment, and all tools, labor and any incidentals necessary to complete the work.

701.7.6 Foundation Inspection Holes. Payment for foundation inspection holes will be at the contract unit price and will be considered full compensation for drilling or coring the holes, extracting and packaging the samples or cores, laboratory testing, delivering the samples or cores to the specified MoDOT location and for all other expenses necessary to complete the work. If the engineer directs foundation inspection borings more than 10 feet or twice the diameter of the rock socket, whichever is greater, below the anticipated bottom of rock socket elevation as shown on the plans, payment for that portion of the boring in excess of 10 feet or twice the diameter of the rock socket, whichever is greater, below the anticipated bottom of the rock socket elevation as shown on the plans will be at the rate of 150 percent of the contract price per linear foot of excess.

701.7.7 Concrete Coring. Payment for concrete coring will be considered full compensation for all material, labor, tools, equipment, grouting and incidentals necessary to complete the work. The number of feet of cored holes may vary from the estimated quantities, but the contract unit price shall prevail regardless of the variation. When concrete coring has not been setup as a contract item and is eligible for payment, payment for concrete coring will be made per foot at the fixed contract unit price specified in Sec 109.

701.7.8 Sonic Logging Testing. Payment for sonic logging testing of drilled shafts as required by the engineer will be made at the contract unit price per each for sonic logging testing. No payment will be made for supplementary sonic logging testing to evaluate defects. Payment for sonic logging testing will be considered full compensation for providing all equipment, access pipes, conducting the actual probing measurements as specified, furnishing reports, removing equipment, and all tools, labor and any incidentals necessary to complete the work. The number of sonic logging inspections may vary from the estimated quantities, but the contract unit price shall prevail regardless of the variation.

701.7.9 Drilled Shaft Load Tests. Payment will be at the contract unit price and will be considered full compensation for all costs related to the performance of the load tests as specified by the contract documents.

701.7.10 Welding Inspection. If evidence of poor welding is found, radiographing or other non-destructive testing of welds required by the engineer will be noncompensable and any effect on time of performance nonexcusable.

ITEM MO-701 PIPE FOR STORM DRAINS AND CULVERTS

DESCRIPTION

701-1.1 This item shall consist of the construction of pipe culverts and storm drains in accordance with these specifications and in reasonably close conformity with the lines and grades shown on the plans. The pipe materials shall conform to the requirements of the 2004 Missouri Standard Specification for Highway Construction (MSSHC), Section 725 - Metal Pipe and Pipe-Arch Culverts, Section 726 - Rigid Pipe Culverts, Storm Drains and Sewers, and Section 732 - Flared End Sections.

All construction methods, testing, and acceptance criteria shall be in accordance with the standards included within this Item MO-701.

MATERIALS

701-2.1 PIPE MATERIALS. Pipe materials shall conform to the requirements of the 2004 MSSHC, as follows:

Reinforced Concrete Pipe - Class V	Section 726
Flared End Sections – Class V	Section 732

Prior to the use of materials, the contractor shall furnish manufacturer's certified test reports to the Engineer for those materials proposed for use during construction. The certified test reports shall include a statement that the materials meet the specification requirements.

701-2.2 CONCRETE. Concrete for pipe cradles shall have a minimum compressive strength of 2000 psi at 28 days and conform to the requirements of ASTM C 94.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

701-3.1 EXCAVATION. The width of the pipe trench shall be sufficient to permit satisfactory jointing of the pipe and thorough tamping of the bedding material under and around the pipe, but it shall not be less than the external diameter of the pipe plus 6 inches on each side. The trench walls shall be approximately vertical.

Where rock, hardpan, or other unyielding material is encountered, the Contractor shall remove it from below the foundation grade for a depth of at least 12 inches or one-half inch for each foot of fill over the top of the pipe (whichever is greater) but for no more than three-quarters of the nominal diameter of the pipe. The width of the excavation shall be at least 1 foot greater than the horizontal outside diameter of the pipe. The excavation below grade shall be backfilled with selected fine compressible material, such as silty clay or loam, and lightly compacted in layers not over 6 inches in uncompacted depth to form a uniform but yielding foundation.
Where a firm foundation is not encountered at the grade established, due to soft, spongy, or other unstable soil, the unstable soil shall be removed and replaced with approved granular material for the full trench width. The Engineer shall determine the depth of removal necessary. The granular material shall be compacted to provide adequate support for the pipe.

The excavation for pipes that are placed in embankment fill shall not be made until the embankment has been completed to a height above the top of the pipe as shown on the plans.

701-3.2 BEDDING. Bedding for reinforced concrete pipe will be classified as Class A, Class B, or Class C. When no bedding class is specified or detailed on the plans, the requirements for Class C bedding shall apply.

a. Reinforced Concrete Pipe.

Class A bedding shall be used if, in the judgment of the engineer, soil conditions are such that a firm bed cannot be otherwise secured. The pipe shall be laid in the center of a concrete cradle having a minimum width of 6 inches greater than the outside diameter of the pipe. The minimum thickness of the cradle under the bottom of the pipe shall be 1/4 of the internal diameter of the pipe, and the cradle shall extend up the sides of the pipe for a height equal to 1/4 its outside diameter. The concrete shall meet the requirements of item MO-610.

Class B bedding shall consist of a bed of granular material having a thickness of at least 6 inches below the bottom of the pipe and extending up around the pipe for a depth of not less than 30 percent of the pipe's vertical outside diameter. The layer of bedding material shall be shaped to fit the pipe for at least 10 percent of the pipe's vertical diameter and shall have recesses shaped to receive the bell of bell and spigot pipe. The bedding material shall be sand or selected sandy soil, all of which passes a 3/8 inch (9mm) sieve and not more than 10 percent of which passes a No. 200 (0.075 mm) sieve.

Class C bedding shall consist of a soil foundation shaped to fit the lower part of the pipe exterior for at least 10 percent of its overall height, and shall afford a uniformly firm bed throughout its entire length. In lieu of Class C bedding, Class B bedding may be used at no additional cost to the Sponsor.

b. Corrugated Metal Pipe.

For corrugated metal pipe, the bed shall be roughly shaped to fit the pipe, and a bedding blanket of sand or fine granular material shall be provided as follows:

Pipe Corrugation Depth (in.)	Minimum Bedding Depth (in.)
1/2	1
1	2
2	3
2 1/2	3 ½

701-3.3 LAYING PIPE. The pipe laying shall begin at the lowest point of the trench and proceed upgrade. The lower segment of the pipe shall be in contact with the bedding throughout its full length. Bell or groove ends of rigid pipes and outside circumferential laps of flexible pipes shall be placed facing upgrade.

Paved or partially lined pipe shall be placed so that the longitudinal center line of the paved segment coincides with the flow line.

Elliptical and elliptically reinforced pipes shall be placed with the manufacturer's top of pipe mark within five degrees of a vertical plane through the longitudinal axis of the pipe.

701-3.4 JOINING PIPE. All joints shall be sealed with an approved plastic compound, cement mortar or tubular joint seal. Rubber gasketed joints may be used at no additional cost to the sponsor. Where permissible lift holes have been used, the holes shall be carefully filled with expansive mortar to provide a watertight section. The mortar shall be finished flush on the inside of the pipe and shall be properly cured on the outside. Lifting devices shall have sufficient bearing on the inside of the pipe to avoid damage resulting from a concentration of stresses around the lift holes.

If rubber gasket type pipe is specified or used, the joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations to ensure that joint devices are properly installed and that rubber gaskets are not displaced.

In sealing rigid pipe with mortar, the mortar contact areas of all pipe ends shall be damp when mortar is applied. After applying mortar to the entire interior surface of the bell or groove, the spigot or tongue end shall be forced into position. Any remaining void in the bell or groove shall be filled with a hub of mortar built up adjacent to the bell, or a bead of mortar built up around a groove-type joint. The interior joints of either type of pipe shall be finished flush with the surface of the pipe. Outside surface of mortar joints shall be cured with membrane curing compound.

In sealing rigid pipe with plastic joint compound, trowel grade compound shall be applied to the mating surfaces of both the tongue and groove, or to the entire interior surface of the bell and the upper portion of the spigot. Rope or tape type plastic compound shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The joints shall be forced together with excess compound extruding both inside and outside the joint. Excess compound shall be removed from the interior surface where accessible. Tubular joint seals shall be installed in a manner as recommended by the manufacturer. The joint between the bell and spigot shall be uniform for the full circumference and care shall be taken to prevent the bell from supporting the spigot.

In joining corrugated metal pipe, the ends shall be butted as closely as the corrugations will permit and shall be joined with a firmly bolted coupling band of the same material as the pipe.

701-3.5 BACKFILLING. Pipes shall be inspected before any backfill is placed; any pipes found to be out of alignment, unduly settled, or damaged shall be removed and relaid or replaced at the Contractor's expense.

Material for backfill shall be fine, readily compatible soil, or granular material selected from the excavation or a source of the Contractor's choosing. It shall not contain frozen lumps, stones that would be retained on a 2-inch sieve, chunks of highly plastic clay, or other objectionable material. No less than 95 percent of a granular backfill material shall pass through a 1/2 inch sieve, and no less than 95 percent of it shall be retained on a No. 4 sieve.

When the top of the pipe is even with or below the top of the trench, the backfill shall be compacted in layers not exceeding 6 inches on both sides of the pipe and shall be brought up one foot above the top of the pipe or to natural ground level, whichever is greater. Care shall be exercised to thoroughly compact the backfill material under the haunches of the pipe. Material shall be brought up evenly on both sides of the pipe.

When the top of the pipe is above the top of the trench, the backfill shall be compacted in layers not exceeding 6 inches and shall be brought up evenly on both sides of the pipe to 1 foot above the top of the pipe. The width of backfill on each side of the pipe for the portion above the top of the trench shall be equal to twice the pipe's diameter of 12 feet, whichever is less.

All backfill shall be compacted to the density required under Item MO-152.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

701-4.1 The length of pipe shall be measured in linear feet of pipe in place, completed, and approved. It shall be measured along the centerline of the pipe from end or inside face of structure to the end or inside face of structure, whichever is applicable. The several classes, types and size shall be measured separately.

701-4.2 The number of concrete and/or corrugated metal pipe flared end sections of each class, type, and size shall be measured by the number per each installed and approved by the Engineer.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

701-5.1 Payment will be made at the contract unit price per linear foot for each kind of pipe of the type and size designated, and per each for each kind of flared end section of the type and size designated.

These prices shall fully compensate the Contractor for furnishing all materials, excavation, bedding, installation of these materials, backfilling, and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item MO-701a	18” Reinforced Concrete Pipe – per linear foot
Item MO-701b	24” Reinforced Concrete Pipe – per linear foot
Item MO-701c	23” x 14” Elliptical Reinforced Concrete Pipe – per linear foot
Item MO-701d	30” x 19” Elliptical Reinforced Concrete Pipe – per linear foot
Item MO-701e	Storm Pipe / Trench Drain Removal – per linear foot
Item MO-701f	Inlet / Manhole Removal – per each

****END OF ITEM MO-701****

SECTION 703
CONCRETE MASONRY CONSTRUCTION

703.1 Description. This work shall consist of constructing culverts, bridges and other concrete structures as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer.

703.2 Material. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section
Bearing Pads for Structures	1038
Concrete Sealer	1053
Concrete Curing Material	1055
Concrete Tinting and Staining Material	1056
Material for Joints	1057

703.2.1 Concrete Requirements. All material, proportioning, air-entraining, mixing, slump and transporting of Portland cement concrete shall be in accordance with Sec 501.

703.2.2 Material Source Changes. Changes in sources of cement and aggregate will be permitted only with written approval from the engineer. Aggregate of essentially the same characteristics, except as noted in Sec 1005, and cements resulting in concrete of the same color, shall be used in any individual unit of the structure. The superstructure will be considered an individual unit of the structure unless otherwise shown on the plans.

703.3 Construction Requirements.

703.3.1 Falsework. Falsework for concrete masonry construction shall be adequate to support and hold the forms true to lines, camber and grades shown on the plans. If requested by the engineer, the contractor shall submit detailed plans for falsework, including the supporting design computations. The engineer's acceptance of the plans will not relieve the contractor of the responsibility for obtaining satisfactory results. The falsework shall be constructed in general accordance with the submitted plans. Falsework and forms for single and multi-span concrete frames and for continuous concrete slab and girder-type bridges shall be provided for the full length of each continuous or monolithic unit and for the full width of the structure before starting concrete placement in that unit. The use of shims or blocking shall be held to a minimum. Jacks shall be placed at approved locations to secure and maintain the required camber. Means shall be provided by the contractor for accurately determining settlement of the falsework while the falsework is being loaded. The contractor shall correct for any settlement of forms or falsework during the concrete placing process.

703.3.2 Forms. Forms for concrete shall be built true to the lines and grades specified, and shall be mortar-tight and of sound material adequate to prevent distortion during the placing and curing of concrete. All concrete shall be formed unless otherwise specified. A concrete pad of approved thickness may be used as a form for the unexposed bottom of end bent beams on piles. If required by the engineer, formwork plans shall be submitted by the contractor before formwork is started. If during or after placing the concrete the forms sag or bulge, the affected concrete shall be removed, the forms realigned and new concrete placed. Construction camber to accommodate shrinkage or settlement impairing the strength of the structure by the reduction of depth will not be permitted. The forms shall be designed for following minimum criteria: a fluid pressure of 150 pounds per cubic foot, and for a live load of 50 pounds per square foot on horizontal surfaces and 30 pounds per square foot on vertical surfaces for impact and vibration.

703.3.2.1 Face lumber of forms for exposed surfaces of concrete shall have a smooth dressed surface free of loose knots, knotholes and other defects. The spacing of supports and the thickness of face lumber shall be adequate to prevent distortion due to the pressure of the concrete. Form material shall be placed with horizontal joints. Triangular moulding, smooth on three sides and having a 3/4-inch width on each of the two form sides, shall be used to bevel all exposed edges of the structure, except where special bevels are shown on the plans.

703.3.2.2 Forms reused shall be in good condition.

703.3.2.3 Design and construction of forms shall permit the removal of the forms without damage to the concrete. Cofferdam braces or struts that will extend through any exposed concrete section will not be permitted. Forms under copings and around offsets may be given a draft of no more than one inch per foot to permit removal without damage to the concrete. For narrow walls where access to the bottoms of the forms is not otherwise obtainable, an opening shall be provided to allow chips, dirt, sawdust or other foreign material to be removed immediately prior to placing concrete.

703.3.2.4 Form lining will be permitted, and will be required for exposed curved surfaces. Liners other than plywood may be used with approval from the engineer.

703.3.2.5 Fiber tubes for column forms above the ground line shall have a finish free of gaps or overlaps in the inside ply and shall be coated inside with a waterproofing material that will not stick or bond to, or discolor the concrete surface of the column. Fiber tubes for column forms from 6 inches below the finished ground line down may show seams, shall be waterproofed and need not be removed.

703.3.2.6 If wood forms are to be used in combination with metal forms, form details shall be submitted for approval if requested by the engineer. Steel panels, or panels with metal frames and wood that leaves permanent impressions or ridges shall not be used, except for concrete box culvert-type structures and other non-exposed areas.

703.3.2.7 The inside of all forms shall be oiled, except for forms having composition linings. The oil used shall be a light, clear paraffin-based oil or other approved material that will not discolor or damage the exposed concrete surface. The coating shall be applied before placing reinforcing steel.

703.3.2.8 Ties, spreaders and all metal appliances used inside of forms to hold the forms in correct alignment and location shall be constructed such that after removal of the forms, the metal may be removed to a depth of at least one inch below the surface of the concrete. Metal tie rods used inside the forms where concrete will have an exposed surface shall be of a type that will not produce a cavity at the surface of the concrete greater than 1 1/2 inches in diameter. Bolts and rods used as ties shall not be removed by pulling the bolts and rods through the concrete. Wire ties and pipe spreaders will not be permitted, and metal or wood spreaders, which are separate from form ties, shall be removed as concrete is being placed. A bolt-through method of supporting forms for massive substructure units may be used with approval from the engineer. No form ties shall be embedded in concrete above the roadway surface on bridges, except that coil ties and threaded rods may be permitted through the vertical face of the base and vertically through the top of barrier curbs. Coil ties, and all metal to be embedded in barrier curbs shall be epoxy-coated or galvanized.

703.3.2.9 Cavities produced by the removal of metal tie rods shall be filled with mortar composed of approximately one part Portland cement to two parts sand or a non-shrinking, non-staining type of mortar. After the cavities are filled, the finished surface shall be left smooth, even and uniform in color and texture with minimal evidence of shrinkage. White cement may be added to the mortar if necessary to obtain the required color. Tie rod cavities in surfaces against which backfill is to be placed shall be filled with mortar or an approved plastic compound in accordance with Sec 1057. Patching of tie rod cavities in the interior surfaces of box girders will not be required.

703.3.2.10 Fiber tubes for voids shall be properly designed for the use indicated. The outside surface shall be waterproof. Distortion of the tubes shall be prevented. The ends shall be covered with suitably designed mortar-tight caps. If material used for capping tubes expands when moist, preformed joint filler 5/16 inch thick shall be used around the perimeter of the caps to prevent distortion, or another method approved by the engineer.

703.3.2.11 Steel tubes for voids shall be properly designed for the use indicated. Excessive distortion shall be prevented in handling, storage and placing. The diameter of the tube shall be as shown on the plans with a tolerance of plus zero and minus 3/4 inch. The ends of tubes shall be covered with suitably designed mortar-tight metal end caps.

703.3.2.12 Tubes for producing voids in concrete slab superstructures shall be accurately located in positions shown on the plans and shall be positively anchored to the joists carrying the floor forms. Anchors and ties shall be designed to leave a minimum of supporting material exposed in the bottom of the finished slab of the completed structure. Details of proposed anchorage and ties for the tubes shall be submitted for approval before work is started on the bridge superstructure. One 3/4-inch diameter weephole shall be provided near each end of each tube. Weepholes shall be placed in straight lines parallel to bents, and shall extend through the forms and

be kept open at all times. Tubes shall be protected from moisture and heat until concrete is placed. Distortion of tubes after placing of concrete shall not increase the tubes' vertical axis by more than 1/2 inch.

703.3.2.13 Falsework and form removal from under any structural concrete unit shall not be started until the concrete has attained at least the required compressive strength shown. The falsework support of all concrete spans of a continuous or monolithic series shall be first released from the center of all spans, and shall proceed simultaneously from all span centers each way toward adjacent bents. Release shall be in such a manner as to permit the concrete to gradually and uniformly take stresses due to the self weight of the concrete. Compressive strength will be determined by tests conducted in accordance with AASHTO T 22.

Class of Concrete	Compressive Strength, psi, min.
B	2750
B-1	3000
B-2	3000

703.3.2.14 Except in accordance with Sec 703.3.6, forms for vertical surfaces of bridge superstructures shall be removed as soon as the concrete is self-supporting to permit prompt patching of tie holes.

703.3.2.15 Girders and beams shall not be set on bent cap until the concrete in the bent cap has attained at least the required compressive strength shown in Sec 703.3.2.13.

703.3.3 Placing Concrete. Placing concrete in any unit of a structure shall not begin until preparations for placing and finishing are satisfactory to the engineer. The concrete temperature shall not exceed 90°F at the time of placement. Concrete shall be placed in the form in layers as near final position as practical with minimum handling. Each placement shall be completed in a continuous operation with no interruption in excess of 45 minutes between the placing of contiguous portions of concrete. Where a finishing machine is to be used, the machine shall be moved over the area to be finished immediately prior to placing concrete in any bridge deck pour to facilitate checking reinforcement cover and slab thickness. This checking shall be done in the presence of the engineer and with the screeds in the finishing position. Placing of concrete for bridge decks shall proceed uniformly for the full width of the placement. Once begun, placing of concrete in the superstructure of a continuous or monolithic series of spans shall proceed as rapidly as good construction practice will permit until all concrete in that series is placed. Vibrators having a minimum frequency of 4,500 impulses per minute shall be used to thoroughly consolidate the concrete in the forms and around the reinforcing steel. Sufficient vibrators shall be on hand to ensure continuous placement of the concrete without delay. The vibrators shall not be used for moving concrete nor shall vibrators penetrate or disturb previously placed layers of concrete after initial set. Vibration shall not cause segregation of the material. Reinforcing steel protruding through transverse or longitudinal headers shall not be disturbed until the concrete is at least 24 hours old.

703.3.3.1 Where placing operations involve dropping the concrete more than 5 feet, the concrete shall be deposited as approved by the engineer to avoid segregation and contamination. Where concrete is placed in the interior of pneumatic caissons, the concrete may be deposited through air locks or other approved devices, and the requirement of dropping the mixture no more than 5 feet may be waived.

703.3.3.2 Concrete shall be worked under and around the reinforcing steel without displacing the steel. Forms and reinforcing steel above concrete being placed, and placing equipment shall be kept clean and free from coatings of hardened concrete. Water used for flushing the equipment shall be discharged clear of the concrete and forms.

703.3.3.3 Concrete shall be placed around the tubes forming voids in slab spans using methods to prevent the displacement of the tubes. For tubes having an inside diameter greater than 14 inches, the concrete shall be placed in three layers. The first layer shall extend from the floor forms up to a plane 1/4- tube diameter above the bottom of the tubes and the second layer to 3/4-tube diameter. For tubes 14 inches or smaller, the concrete shall be placed in two layers, with the lower layer extending to the middle of the tube. Each layer shall be vibrated and allowed to settle after placing, before the next succeeding layer is placed. The succeeding layer shall be deposited while the concrete in the layer below is still plastic enough to permit intermixing the two layers by use of a vibrator.

703.3.3.4 The sequence of placement of concrete for roadway slabs on a continuous series of spans will be shown on the plans, along with the minimum rates of placement required for the basic sequence and for

combinations thereof. The basic sequence of placement shall be observed unless it can be demonstrated that the contractor can place and satisfactorily finish combined placements at the required rate. If the contractor wishes to alter the placing sequence or to combine units, the contractor shall submit a written request subject to approval from the engineer.

703.3.3.5 Concrete for substructure units shall be placed in the dry unless otherwise approved by the engineer. If the supporting material at plan elevation of the bottom of a pile footing is not sufficiently stable to support the concrete, the material shall be stabilized, or the bottom of the footing shall be formed to adequately support the concrete. The stabilizing of material or forming under pile footings will be at the contractor's expense.

703.3.3.6 Depositing concrete under water will be permitted if provided for in the contract documents or upon written approval from the engineer. The concrete shall be placed by tremie bottom dump bucket or mechanically applied pressure. The concrete shall be placed in the final position in still water and shall not be vibrated or disturbed after being deposited. Concrete placed under water for seal courses shall be Seal Concrete in accordance with
Sec 501.

703.3.3.7 Conveying, placing and pumping equipment shall have adequate capacity, be suitable for the intended work and shall be operated to produce a continuous stream of uniform concrete. Equipment shall be arranged to prevent transmission of vibration to freshly placed concrete. The system through which the concrete is pumped shall be manufactured such that no aluminum parts will come into contact with the concrete.

703.3.3.8 At the completion of concrete placement, the last concrete in the pipeline shall not be used.

703.3.3.9 Concrete used for filling cavities or crevices as directed by the engineer and as required in Sec 206 shall be Class B concrete. This concrete shall be unformed mass concrete placed separately from and prior to the placing of footing concrete.

703.3.3.10 When a closure pour is specified on the bridge plans, or is necessary for other requirements, the closure pour between slabs poured independently shall be expansive Class B-2 concrete. Unpolished aluminum powder shall be added to the Class B-2 concrete as recommended by the powder manufacturer or as approved by the engineer for controlled expansion. A shrinkage compensating cement may be substituted for the unpolished aluminum powder and cement. If a shrinkage compensating cement is substituted, the type and amount shall be approved by the engineer.

703.3.3.10.1 Prior to placing the closure pour, the contractor shall release the falsework to allow the initial deflection in the slab extension. The contractor shall obtain approval from the engineer prior to placing the closure pour.

703.3.3.10.2 The slab area to be in contact with the closure pour shall be sand or shot blasted to remove all foreign matter and shall be cleaned to remove all dirt and loose material. Clean-up and disposal of blast material shall be in accordance with Sec 202.3.1.3. After the slab area has been cleaned and any damaged epoxy coating on the reinforcing bars repaired, an epoxy-bonding compound shall be applied to the slab area to be in contact with the closure pour. The concrete bonding compound and application shall be in accordance with Sec 623.

703.3.3.10.3 Immediately following application and before the concrete bonding compound has set, the closure pour shall be placed.

703.3.4 Joints in Concrete Masonry. Construction and expansion joints in concrete masonry shall be located where shown on the plans, except that in case of an unforeseen contingency, an emergency construction joint may be permitted.

703.3.4.1 Surfaces of construction joints shall be roughened or scored unless shear keys are shown on the plans. The face edges of all joints shall be carefully finished, and feathered edges shall be avoided. When the placing of concrete is temporarily discontinued, the concrete shall be cleaned of laitance and other objectionable material after becoming firm enough to retain form, and shall be thoroughly wetted before placing new concrete. Contraction joints in floor slabs of truss bridges may be sawed. Waterstops and flashings as shown on the plans shall be continuous if practical. Splices shall be watertight.

703.3.4.2 Preformed sponge rubber expansion joint material shall be of the dimensions shown on the plans. Splices shall be held to a practical minimum and shall be made by lacing with copper wire or soft-drawn galvanized steel wire. All joint material shall be securely stitched to one face of the concrete with No. 10 gage copper wire or No. 12 gage soft-drawn galvanized steel wire. Unless joint sealing is specified, the sponge rubber material shall be left exposed for the material's full length with clean and true edges.

703.3.4.3 Geotextile filter cloth, three feet wide double in thickness, meeting the requirements of Sec 1011.3.4, shall be centered on transverse joints in top slab and sidewalls for both cast-in-place and precast box culverts.

703.3.5 Concrete Finishes. Riding surfaces shall be finished true to the alignment, grade, cross section and camber shown on the plans. These surfaces shall be finished by use of an approved mechanical finishing machine. On skewed structures the finishing machine shall be adjusted to finish the surface approximately parallel to the skew if the angle of skew exceeds 45 degrees, or if the angle of the skew exceeds 30 degrees and the placement width divided by the span length equals or exceeds 0.8. Vibratory screeds shall not be used, including those that are a part of the proposed finishing machine.

703.3.5.1 Machine finishing shall be with an approved self-propelled mechanical finishing machine. The engineer may waive the use of a finishing machine on isolated irregular shaped areas of the bridge surface. The finishing machine shall travel on adjustable rails or guides set to proper grade, and supported outside the limits of the finished riding surface. Where a longitudinal joint is shown on the plans, the finishing machine rails or guides shall be placed as close as practical to the longitudinal joint. The rails shall be supported to limit the full operating load deflection between supports to 1/8 inch or less. The rails shall be placed parallel with the centerline of roadway or the longitudinal axis of the area to be finished. Where supports are located such that fresh concrete must be placed around the supports, the rails or guides shall be furnished in sections of 10 feet or less and placed above the concrete surface. The sections and supports shall be removed and the holes filled with concrete immediately after the final straightedging. The finishing machine shall make sufficient passes to obtain the specified cross section and surface finish. The final pass of the machine shall be of the maximum practical length, and shall be coordinated with the rate of placement. Finishing machine loads will not be permitted on concrete that has not reached a compressive strength of 3200 psi.

703.3.5.2 Where hand finishing of riding surfaces is permitted, the surface shall be finished to the specified cross section and surface texture .

703.3.5.3 Sufficient work bridges shall be provided to complete the work in an orderly and continuous manner. Work bridges shall be supported outside the limits of concrete placement.

703.3.5.4 The riding surface shall be checked with a 10-foot straightedge immediately after the final finishing operation. The straightedge shall be pulled lightly across the surface from one edge of the finished area to the other without interruption. Reaching from outer edges to the center of the finished area will not be permitted. Each transverse pass shall overlap the previously straightedged portion by approximately one-half the length of the straightedge. The straightedge shall not be used to cut or move concrete from its finished position. Any irregularities, bumps or improperly finished areas shall be refinished and the surface again checked by repeating the straightedging operation.

703.3.5.5 The roadway surface, except within 12 inches of the inside face of the curb, shall be textured as soon as the condition of the concrete will permit. The roadway finishing shall otherwise be in accordance with Sec 502.4. Hand-operated devices producing a satisfactory texture will be permitted. At the contractor's option, a finned float with a single row of fins may be used. The grooves produced by the finned float shall be approximately 1/8 inch wide at 5/8 to 3/4-inch centers and shall be approximately 1/8 inch deep. This operation shall be performed at such a time and in such a manner that the desired texture will be achieved while minimizing displacement of the layer aggregate particles.

703.3.5.6 As soon as curing has been completed, the riding surface will be thoroughly straightedged by the engineer, and all variations exceeding 1/8 inch in 10 feet will be plainly marked. Areas more than 1/8 inch high shall be removed by an approved device consisting of multiple cutting edges leaving a grooved surface finish comparable to that produced by the broom. The use of a bush hammer or other impact device will not be permitted.

703.3.5.7 Unless an armored joint is shown on the plans, construction and expansion joints in the roadway surface shall be carefully edged and left free of all mortar and concrete. If shown on the plans, these joints shall

be sealed with joint sealing material. Joints shall be dry and cleaned immediately before the joints are sealed. Required joint sealing shall be done prior to surface sealing the bridge deck.

703.3.5.8 Surface finish for concrete masonry units, other than those specified in Sec 703.3.5, shall begin immediately following removal of the forms. Fins and irregular projections shall be removed. Form tie cavities, holes, honeycomb spots in other than exposed surfaces, and other defects shall be thoroughly cleaned, saturated with water and carefully pointed with a mortar in accordance with Sec 703.3.2.9. Repaired surfaces shall be satisfactorily cured.

703.3.5.9 Bridge seats shall be finished to a smooth even surface. Where lead plates or fabric pads are used to seat steel bearing plates, the area under the lead plates or fabric pads shall be finished to within 1/8 inch above plan elevation and shall be dressed to a uniform, level bearing with a Carborundum brick or power grinder after the concrete has set sufficiently to fix the larger particles of sand. The deviation of the bearing seat from a true level surface shall not exceed 1/16 inch. Where elastomeric bearing pads are used, the finishing of 1/8 inch above plan elevation and grinding of the bridge seat area will not be required. Wells for anchor bolts shall be completely filled with an approved non-shrink grout in accordance with ASTM C1107 after the steel has been erected and adjusted. In lieu of wells, anchor bolt holes may be drilled in accordance with Sec 712. Keyways, anchor bolt wells, holes and other depressions that might collect water and freeze shall be sealed.

703.3.6 Curing Concrete.

703.3.6.1 Bridge Decks. Curing compound for bridge decks shall be Type 1-D liquid membrane-forming curing compound in accordance with Sec 1055 Bridge Curing Compounds, except that if diamond grinding is specified, either Type 1-D or Type 2 liquid membrane-forming curing compound in accordance with Sec 1055 may be used for the surfaces to be textured by diamond grinding. Wet curing is required and shall be performed in accordance with Sec 703.3.6.1.4.

703.3.6.1.1 Application Rate. The material shall be approved by the engineer prior to use and shall be applied at the manufacturer's recommended rate, but at a rate of no less than one gallon per 200 square feet.

703.3.6.1.2 Conventional Texturing. When conventional texturing is specified, fresh concrete shall be sprayed immediately with a curing compound following texturing as specified in Sec 703.3.5.5. The application of the curing compound shall progress such that no more than 10 linear feet of the textured concrete surface is exposed without curing compound at any time.

703.3.6.1.3 Diamond Grinding. When diamond grinding is specified in lieu of conventional deck texturing, fresh concrete shall be sprayed immediately after surface floating to smooth surface with curing compound as specified in Sec 703.3.6.1.

703.3.6.1.4 Wet Curing. The contractor shall submit to the engineer a plan to monitor the free moisture and maintain continuous free moisture for the 7 day period. The concrete shall be covered with clean mats as soon as the curing compound has dried sufficiently to prevent adhesion, and the concrete surface will support the curing mat without marring or distorting the finish, but no more than 90 minutes after the concrete is floated or textured. If the concrete mix contains more than 15 percent fly ash or slag or combination thereof and remains plastic after 90 minutes, coverage with mats may be delayed, as directed by the engineer, until the surface will support the curing mat without marring or distorting the finish. The mats shall be sufficiently wet at the time of placement to prevent moisture absorption from the finished surface. The contractor shall control the run-off so as not to cause a traffic hazard or soil erosion. The continuous wet cure shall be maintained a minimum of seven days and until the concrete has attained a minimum compressive strength of 3,000 psi.

703.3.6.1.5 Opening to Construction Activities. Light material and equipment weighing less than 1,000 pounds may be carried onto the bridge deck after the deck concrete has been in place at least 24 hours, provided curing is not interfered with and the surface texture is not damaged. Vehicles, material and equipment needed for construction activities and weighing less than 4,000 pounds shall not be moved onto any span until after the last placed deck concrete has attained a compressive strength of at least 3,200 psi. Loads in excess of the above shall not be moved onto the bridge deck until the deck concrete has reached the compressive strength specified on the plans. Placement of barrier walls on bridge decks shall not begin until the 7 day wet cure is complete and the deck has reached the minimum compressive strength shown on the plans.

703.3.6.1.6 Open To Traffic. Structures shall not be opened to any public vehicular traffic until at least 10 days after the last placement of deck concrete and until such time that the concrete has attained the compressive strength specified on the plans.

703.3.6.1.7 Railroad Bridge. Railroad bridge decks to be waterproofed shall not be cured with liquid membrane-forming compound.

703.3.6.2 Concrete Masonry Not to be Sealed. Curing of exposed concrete masonry surfaces not to be sealed shall be initiated after finishing operations are completed and as soon as marring of the concrete will not occur by application of the curing process. The surface of exposed concrete shall be covered and cured in accordance with one of the following methods. Concrete adjacent to construction joints shall be wet cured, and other locations shall be either wet cured or cured by application of Type 1-D liquid membrane-forming curing compound in accordance with Sec 1055. Curing mats for curing exposed surfaces shall be kept wet for 72 hours. The mats shall remain in place until the mats are dry, or if not dry, at least 24 hours after the wet curing period. Concrete shall not be left exposed for more than 30 minutes between stages of curing and during the curing period.

703.3.6.2.1 Damp Proofed. Surfaces to be damp proofed shall not be cured with liquid membrane-forming compound.

703.3.6.2.2 Footings. Footings may be cured by submersion with approval from the engineer.

703.3.6.2.3 Precast Members. Steam curing or curing by complete submersion in water will be permitted for precast members. If steam curing is applied, the jets shall not impinge directly on the concrete or on the forms, free circulation around the units shall be maintained, the steam shall be thoroughly saturated at all times, and the temperature around the concrete shall be raised no more than 40ºF per hour and shall not exceed 160ºF at any time. After the steam curing period, the temperature inside the chamber shall be reduced at a rate of no more than 40ºF per hour until the temperature has reached about 20ºF above the temperature of the air to which the concrete will be exposed.

703.3.6.3 Concrete Masonry to be Sealed. Curing of exposed concrete masonry surfaces to be sealed shall be initiated after finishing operations are completed and as soon as marring of the concrete will not occur by application of the curing process.

703.3.6.3.1 Curing. Concrete curing shall be performed in accordance with Sec 703.3.6.1, except for curbs, parapets, medians and bridge barriers.

703.3.6.3.2 Curbs, Parapets, Medians and Bridge Barrier.

703.3.6.3.2.1 Curing. Curing compounds for sealed concrete masonry shall be Type 1-D liquid membrane-forming curing compound in accordance with Sec 1055 Bridge Curing Compounds. Wet curing will not be required for curbs, parapets, medians and bridge barriers.

703.3.6.3.2.2 Application Rate. The material shall be approved by the engineer prior to use and shall be applied at the manufacturer's recommended rate, but no less than 150 square feet per gallon.

703.3.6.3.2.3 Application Time. The application of the curing compound shall progress such that no more than 10 linear feet of the textured concrete surface is exposed without curing compound at any time.

703.3.6.3.2.4 Open to Traffic. Structures shall not be opened to any public vehicular traffic adjacent to curbs, parapets, medians and bridge barrier until such time that the concrete has attained the compressive strength specified on the plans. The requirement for reaching compressive strength prior to adjacent traffic will be waived for curb blockouts placed on existing curbs.

703.3.7 Bridge Deck Surface Texturing. For conventional texturing, the roadway surface shall be textured in accordance with Sec 703.3.5.5 prior to the application of the curing compound.

703.3.7.1 When diamond grinding is specified, following the curing period and the attainment of design strength, the deck surface shall be diamond ground in accordance with the following.

703.3.7.1.1 The bridge deck shall be diamond ground in accordance with Sec 622.30, except traffic control and closure for grinding operations shall be as specified by other portions of the contract documents, except as noted herein. Grinding may proceed after design strengths are attained and shall be completed prior to opening to any traffic other than construction traffic.

703.3.7.1.2 Bumps and high areas shall be removed prior to the start of final grinding operations in accordance with Sec 703.3.5.6. Typically 1/8 inch, and no more than 1/4 inch shall be removed from the plan profile of the deck. The final surface shall be textured to the satisfaction of the engineer.

703.3.7.1.3 The surface of the approach slabs and deck shall be ground simultaneously in a longitudinal manner to a distance 2 feet from the bridge barrier.

703.3.8 Surface Sealing for Concrete. Bridge decks shall be sealed with one application of an approved penetrating concrete sealer in accordance with Sec 1053. The penetrating concrete sealer shall also be applied to the top surface of the concrete bridge approach slabs, top and roadway faces of sidewalks, curbs, parapets, medians and barrier. The surfaces of deck patching shall not be sealed unless the surface of the rest of the deck is being sealed. The surface of a latex modified concrete wearing surface shall not be sealed. The surface of all other concrete wearing surfaces shall be sealed.

703.3.8.1 Equipment. Application equipment shall be as recommended by the manufacturer except as mentioned below. A low pressure, high volume method of application shall be used that will not atomize the silane. Hand pump sprayer shall not be used. The spray equipment, tanks, hoses, brooms, rollers, coaters, squeegees, etc. shall be free of foreign matter, oil residue and water prior to applying the treatment.

703.3.8.2 Cleaning and Surface Preparation. Surfaces which are to be treated shall meet the approved product's requirements for surface condition. Sealing shall not be done until all concrete construction or repair has been completed and cured to the requirements of the manufacturer. The contractor shall furnish the engineer with written instructions for the surface preparation requirements.

703.3.8.2.1 Sealing shall be done after the bridge deck has been textured or diamond ground.

703.3.8.2.2 At a minimum, the surface shall be thoroughly cleaned to remove dust, dirt, oil, wax, curing components, efflorescence, laitance, coatings and other foreign materials. The manufacturer or manufacturer's representative shall approve the use of chemicals and other cleaning compounds to facilitate the removal of these foreign materials before use. The treatment shall be applied within 48 hours following surface preparation.

703.3.8.2.3 Cleaning equipment shall be fitted with suitable traps, filters, drip pans and other devices to prevent oil and other foreign material from being deposited on the surface.

703.3.8.3 Test Application. Prior to final application, the contractor shall treat a measured test coverage area on horizontal and vertical surfaces of the different components of the structure to be treated for the purpose of demonstrating the desired physical and visual effect on an application or of obtaining a visual illustration of the absorption necessary to achieve the specified coverage rate. In the latter case, the applicator shall use at least ½ gallon (1.9 liter) of treatment following the manufacturer's recommended method of application for the total of the test surfaces. Horizontal test surfaces shall be located on the deck and on the curb or sidewalk, and vertical test surfaces shall be located on a parapet or safety barrier curb so that the different textures are displayed.

703.3.8.4 Application. The sealer shall be applied by thoroughly saturating the concrete surfaces so that one gallon of material shall not be spread over more than 200 square feet.

703.3.8.4.1 The concrete surface temperature shall be between 35ºF and rising and 100ºF and falling.

703.3.8.4.2 At a minimum, the wet cure must be complete and the moisture content of the concrete must be at or below 8 percent as measured by a moisture meter.

703.3.8.4.3 Allow concrete to dry a minimum of 48 hours after any measurable precipitation.

703.3.8.4.4 The treatment shall be spread from puddles to dry areas.

703.3.8.4.5 If the applicator is unable to complete the entire application continuously, the location where the application was stopped shall be noted and clearly marked.

703.3.8.5 Protection of Adjoining Surfaces and the Public.

703.3.8.5.1 When applying the sealer, the contractor shall protect adjoining surfaces of the structure that are not to be sealed. The contractor shall also make provision to protect the public from overspray.

703.3.8.5.2 Asphalt and mastic type surfaces shall be protected from spillage and overspray. Any asphalt pavement damaged by the sealer will result in removal and replacement at the contractor's expense. Joint sealants, traffic paints and asphalt wearing surfaces may be applied to the treated surfaces 48 hours after the treatment has been applied. Adjoining and nearby surfaces of aluminum or glass shall be covered where there is possibility of the treatment being deposited on the surfaces. Plants and vegetation shall be protected from overspray by covering with drop cloths. Precautions shall be followed as indicated on the manufacturer's product and material safety data sheet.

703.3.8.6 Opening to Traffic. Traffic may be allowed on a deck when the material is tack free.

703.3.9 Hot Weather Concreting. The contractor shall schedule placing and finishing of bridge deck concrete during hours in which the ambient temperature will be lower than 85ºF. The mixed concrete when placed in the deck forms shall have a temperature no higher than 85ºF, however, if the contractor starts the concrete placement at least 30 minutes after sundown and covers the concrete with wet burlap when it will not mar the surface, but before morning solar radiation dries the surface and implements, to the extent possible, precautionary measures for hot weather concreting recommended in ACI 305R 'Hot Weather Concreting', then the concrete temperature can be increased to 90ºF.

703.3.10 Cold Weather Concreting. Concrete work shall proceed on all structures, except bridge superstructures, whether or not heating will be required, unless it can be definitely established that the overall progress of the project will not be affected. Placing of concrete in the superstructure of a continuous or monolithic series of spans once begun shall be continued within the provisions of cold weather concreting procedures until all the concrete in that series is placed. Concrete placed in cold weather shall be protected from freezing during the curing period. Concrete shall not be placed on frozen ground, or against steel or concrete surfaces with temperatures lower than 35ºF. Concrete shall not be placed where the ambient temperature is below 35ºF without prior approval from the engineer. Concrete in bridge superstructures shall not be placed where the ambient temperature is below 40ºF without prior approval from the engineer.

703.3.10.1 The aggregate, the water, or both, shall be heated during the season when the atmospheric temperature may drop below 40ºF. Aggregate shall not be heated higher than 150ºF. The temperature of the aggregate and water combined shall not be higher than 100ºF when the cement is added. Any method of heating during the mixing of concrete may be used, provided the heating apparatus will heat the mass uniformly and avoid hot spots that will burn the material. The temperature of the concrete at the time of placing in the forms shall be no lower than 45ºF for concrete in footings, massive piers and abutments, or less than 60ºF for all other concrete.

703.3.10.2 When the ambient temperature is below 40ºF, with the approval from the engineer, curing of superstructure concrete, substructure units above ground surface, retaining walls and box culverts of more than 15 square feet opening shall be accomplished by methods that will prevent concrete from freezing. The minimum compressive strength required for form removal and ending protection from freezing shall be in accordance with Sec 703.3.2.13. The contractor shall furnish temperature monitoring equipment and accessories that demonstrate to the engineer that concrete has been protected from freezing, with payment for such equipment and accessories included in the contract unit price for concrete. Exposed surfaces of the concrete shall be kept moist during the curing process. Substructure concrete below ground surface may be protected by submersion provided the temperature of the water is maintained between 40° and 80° F for seven days.

703.3.10.3 Concrete headwalls for pipe culverts, drop inlets and box culverts of 15 square feet or less openings, may be placed without air temperature limitations, but the contractor shall be responsible for proper protection from freezing during placing and curing of the concrete.

703.3.11 Extending and Widening Structures. Extending and widening of existing concrete structures shall be in accordance with the details shown on the plans. A continuous groove at least one inch deep shall be sawed in

the faces of the existing concrete as a guide for the line of break to prevent spalling. Surfaces of existing concrete that are to come in contact with new concrete shall be thoroughly cleaned, saturated with water and painted with an epoxy mortar of paint consistency or other approved products. The new concrete shall be placed immediately after the cement grout has been applied. If new concrete is to be placed against the natural finish of existing concrete work, the surface shall be roughened by bushhammering or other approved methods before being cleaned and treated. Before applying a new concrete riding surface, any existing bituminous surfacing shall be removed, and the exposed concrete surface shall be roughened by bushhammering or other approved methods before being cleaned and treated. Work incidental to joining new concrete to existing concrete will be at the contractor's expense.

703.3.12 Stenciling Structure Identification Numbers. Bridge numbers shall be stenciled in black paint on all concrete bridges. The letters shall be capitals and 2 to 3 inches high. The bridge numbers shall be stenciled on concrete surfaces at two locations as directed by the engineer.

703.3.13 Aesthetic Concrete Stain. This stain shall consist of a two coat acrylic resin system. The surface preparation and application shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Field approval of the proposed material will be in accordance with Sec 1056.

703.4 Method of Measurement. Final measurement will not be made unless changes from contract plans are authorized by the engineer during construction, or appreciable errors are found in the contract quantity. The revision or correction will be computed and added to or deducted from the contract quantity. Where required, quantities for concrete masonry will be computed from dimensions shown on the plans, or as revised in writing by the engineer because of changes to the contract plans or due to appreciable errors, and will be computed to the nearest 1/10 cubic yard for each structure. No deduction will be made for the space occupied by reinforcing steel, conduit or piles. Deductions will be made for the space occupied by the tubes in voided slabs.

703.4.1 Measurement of concrete quantities in seal courses will be made for the actual quantity placed, except that this quantity will be limited to that included within vertical planes 18 inches outside the neat lines of the footings, and to the maximum depth shown on the plans or as authorized by the engineer.

703.4.2 Measurement of concrete quantities used to fill cavities or crevices will be made for the accepted quantity placed below the authorized elevation of the structure footing.

703.4.3 Final measurement for diamond grinding will not be made except for authorized changes during construction or where appreciable errors are found in the contract quantity. The revision or correction will be computed and added to or deducted from contract quantity.

703.5 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantity of concrete masonry, complete in place, will be paid for at the contract unit price for each of the pay items included in the contract.

703.5.1 The accepted quantity of concrete used to fill cavities or crevices below final authorized bottom elevation of the footing structure will be paid for based on the accepted quantity per cubic yard at the fixed unit price specified in Sec 109.

703.5.2 No direct payment will be made for incidental items necessary to complete the work unless specifically provided as a pay item in the contract documents. No direct payment will be made for concrete required to fill overbreak where footings or walls are cast against vertical faces of rock or shale excavation.

703.5.3 Payment for diamond grinding will be made per square yard of surface.

703.5.4 No direct payment will be made for furnishing and applying the surface sealer and all incidental work. Payment shall be considered completely covered by the contract unit price for other items.

703.5.5 Payment for the work necessary to complete a closure pour, including all material, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals, will be made and considered completely covered under the contract unit price for the applicable pay item for the slab.

SECTION 706
REINFORCING STEEL FOR CONCRETE STRUCTURES

706.1 Description. This work shall consist of furnishing and placing reinforcing steel of the designated shape, size and grade as shown on the plans.

706.2 Material.

706.2.1 All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section
Reinforcing Steel for Concrete	1036

706.2.2 Reinforcing steel shall be accurately cut and bent to the dimensions and shapes shown on the plans. Cutting and bending tolerances for reinforcing steel shall be in accordance with the Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute's Manual of Standard Practice. Flame-cutting of uncoated reinforcing steel will be permitted.

706.3 Construction Requirements.

706.3.1 Reinforcing steel shall be protected from damage at all times. When placed in the work and before concrete is placed, reinforcing steel shall be free from dirt, oil, paint, grease, loose mill scale, thick rust, any dried mortar and other foreign substances. A thin layer of powdery rust may remain. All reinforcing steel required for superstructure concrete, such as slabs, girders and beams and top slabs of culverts with more than a 4-foot span, shall be held securely in correct position with approved metal or plastic bar supports and ties. Reinforcing bars shall be positively secured against displacement. For bridge decks and top slabs of culverts, bars in the top mat shall be tied at all intersections except where spacing is less than or equal to 12 inches in each direction, in which case alternate intersections shall be tied. At other locations, the bars shall be firmly tied at alternate crossings or closer. The steel shall be tied in the correct position with proper clearance maintained between the forms and the reinforcement. The contractor shall construct the unit as shown on the plans. Measurements to reinforcing steel will be made to the centerline of bar, except where the clear distance from face of concrete is shown on the plans.

706.3.2 Bars shall not be spliced, except as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer.

706.3.3 Mechanical bar splice systems, as shown on the plans, shall be capable of developing 125 percent of the specified yield strength of the bar being spliced and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and as modified herein.

706.3.3.1 The contractor shall furnish to the engineer a manufacturer's certification stating that the mechanical bar splice systems are in accordance with this specification. The certification shall include or have attached specific results of tests showing yield and ultimate tensile load capacities.

706.3.3.2 The splicing system may attach directly to the bars being coupled or may be of a type that provides reinforcing bars of like size that lap with the bars being joined. A threaded-type splice system will be required where clearance considerations require the splicing device to be placed flush to the face of the construction joint for the initial concrete placement.

706.3.3.3 Regardless of the type of splicing system that will be used, the total bar lengths for bars indicated in the bill of reinforcing steel are determined based on the end of the bars being located flush to the face of the construction joint. No additional payment will be made for any additional bar lengths required for the mechanical bar splices. Reinforcing bar lengths shown in the bill of reinforcing steel may require modification to accommodate the specific mechanical bar splice system that will be used. The contractor shall determine the actual reinforcing bar lengths to accommodate the manufacturer's recommendations for installation of the mechanical bar splices.

706.3.3.4 For mechanical bar splice systems that require laps with the reinforcement, the minimum lap length in inches on each side of the joint shall be as shown in the tables below provided that the actual cover to the nearest concrete surface or actual bar spacing is no less than minimums shown.

Minimum Lap Lengths										
	Location 1 - Horizontal and Inclined Bars with more than 12 inches of fresh concrete cast below bars				Location 2 - Vertical Bars - Horizontal and Inclined Bars with 12 inches or less of fresh concrete cast below bars					
	f'c = 3 ksi		f'c = 4 ksi		f'c = 3 ksi		f'c = 4 ksi		Minimums (Inches)	
Bar Size	Plain	Epoxy Coated	Plain	Epoxy Coated	Plain	Epoxy Coated	Plain	Epoxy Coated	Cover	Spacing
4	29	37	25	32	22	33	19	29	1 ½	2 ½
5	36	46	31	40	28	41	24	36	1 ⅞	3 ⅛
6	43	56	37	48	33	49	29	43	2¼	3¾
7	50	65	43	56	38	57	33	50	2⅝	4⅜
8	57	74	49	64	44	65	38	57	3	5
9	64	83	55	72	49	74	43	64	3½	5¾
10	72	94	62	81	55	83	48	72	3⅞	6⅜
11	80	104	69	90	61	92	53	80	4¼	7⅛

Values are LRFD Class B splices based on the following modification factors:
$\lambda rl = 1.3$ (Location 1), $\lambda rl = 1.0$ (Location 2), $\lambda cf = 1.0$ (Plain), $\lambda cf = 1.5$ (Epoxy),
$\lambda rc = 0.4$ (Minimum reinforcement confinement factor)

706.3.3.4.1 For reinforcement with cover or spacing less than required minimums shown in the table provided in Sec 706.3.3.4, the required minimum lap length in the table shall be multiplied by the reinforcement confinement adjustment ratio, B.

$$B = \frac{d_b}{0.4c_b}, \text{ if } B > 2.5, \text{ then } B = 2.5$$

Where:

d_b = diameter of bar (inches)

c_b = the smaller of the distance from center of bar to the nearest concrete surface and one half the center-to-center spacing of the bars (inches)

706.3.3.4.2 Mechanical bar splice systems that require laps with the reinforcement shall not be used for voided slab and solid slab bridges. Systems that require laps shall be Grade 60 deformed bars in accordance with Sec 1036. Epoxy-coated bars shall have epoxy-coated mechanical bar splices.

706.4 Method of Measurement. Final measurement will not be made except for authorized changes during construction or where appreciable errors are found in the contract quantity. Where required, measurement of reinforcing steel will be made to the nearest 10 pounds for each structure. The weight will be the plan weight of uncoated bars, and will not include mechanical bar splice systems, clips, wire, supports, spacers or other fastening devices for holding the reinforcement in place. Allowances will not be made for an overrun in scale weights of bars. The revision or correction will be computed and added to or deducted from the contract quantity. Mechanical bar splice systems will be measured per each.

706.5 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantity of reinforcing steel including any approved mechanical bar splice systems, complete in place, will be paid for at the contract unit price.

SECTION 707
CONDUIT SYSTEM ON STRUCTURE

707.1 Description. This work shall consist of furnishing and placing all material and equipment and performing all work necessary to create a complete conduit system as shown on the plans.

707.2 Material. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section
Electrical Conduit	1060
Pull and Junction Boxes	1062

707.3 Construction Requirements.

707.3.1 Conduit systems shall be free from corrosion, restrictions, sharp edges and debris. The ends of conduit runs shall be protected by bushings and shall be temporarily capped if conductor cable is not installed immediately. Conduit shall be rigidly held in place to prevent misalignment during placement of concrete. Reinforcing bars shall not be cut, bent, displaced or otherwise altered unless authorized by the engineer. All joints shall be rigid and waterproof. A 1/2-inch diameter drain hole in all low points of conduits and junction boxes where exposed and a 1/2-inch rigid steel conduit drop from the low point if the conduit and junction boxes are encased in concrete, shall be provided for drainage of water. Exposed ends of such drains shall be covered with either a commercial bronze or a stainless steel insect screen having an open area between 60 percent and 70 percent, held in place with a conduit bushing.

707.3.2 After placing concrete, the conduit around which the concrete is placed shall be tested by the contractor, in the presence of the engineer, for continuity and freedom from obstruction by pulling a steel ball through the entire length. The steel ball shall have a diameter 1/2 inch smaller than the inside diameter of the conduit being tested. Galvanized pullwires shall be installed in conduit for pulling wiring by others.

707.3.3 Junction box covers shall have a waterproof seal securely fastened in place. Junction boxes shall be drilled and tapped for all conduit connections.

707.4 Method of Measurement. The work provided herein will not be measured for payment, but will be considered a lump sum unit.

707.5 Basis of Payment. The accepted conduit system on structure will be paid for at the contract lump sum price.

SECTION 711
PROTECTIVE COATINGS FOR EXPOSED CONCRETE SURFACES

711.1 Description. This work shall consist of the surface preparation and application of protective coatings for sealing and protecting exposed concrete elements. The locations and elevations of the protective coatings shall be as shown on the bridge plans. The work involving temporary coating on weathering steel bridges shall also include the removal of the temporary coating.

711.2 Material. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section
Protective Coating Material	1059

711.3 Construction Requirements.

711.3.1 Protective Coating - Concrete Bents and Piers (Urethane). This protective coating shall consist of a modified urethane or polyurethane elastomer. New concrete shall cure a minimum of 28 days prior to application of the protective coating. The coating shall be applied to dry surfaces. The surface preparation and application shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The surface preparation shall include removal of all loose or delaminated concrete, as well as any other contaminants or latent materials. The coating shall be applied to obtain a minimum dry film thickness of 40 mils. Any unevenly applied film that causes ponding of water shall be given additional coats as directed by the engineer.

711.3.2 Protective Coating - Concrete Bents and Piers (Epoxy). This protective coating shall consist of a two-component, modified polyamide converted epoxy, clear or gray in color. New concrete shall cure a minimum of 28 days prior to application of the protective coating. The coating shall be applied to dry surfaces. The surface preparation and application shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The surface preparation shall include removal of all loose or delaminated concrete, as well as any other contaminants or latent materials. The coating shall be applied to obtain a minimum dry film thickness of 6 mils.

711.3.3 Concrete and Masonry Protection System. This protective coating shall consist of a clear penetrating siloxane or silane based sealer. The surface preparation and application shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Field approval of the proposed material will be in accordance with Sec 1059.

711.3.4 Sacrificial Graffiti Protection System. This system shall consist of a clear coating that can be removed with a hot water wash. The surface preparation and application shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Field approval of the proposed material will be in accordance with Sec 1059.

711.3.5 Temporary Coating - Concrete Bents and Piers (Weathering Steel). This protective coating shall consist of a clear temporary coating applied to the concrete substructure for protection against staining from weathering steel girders during initial weathering. The surface preparation and application shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The concrete substructure shall be cured a minimum of 14 days prior to application, unless otherwise specified by the manufacturer. The coating shall be applied to the concrete substructure before the erection of structural steel. The temporary coating shall be removed by the contractor after construction of the deck and curbs is complete, or as directed by the engineer.

711.4 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantity of protective coatings for exposed concrete surfaces will be paid for at the contract lump sum price.

SECTION 724
PIPE CULVERTS

724.1 Description. This work shall consist of providing pipe or pipe arch of the diameter or shape designated, laid upon a firm bed and backfilled as specified. Where appropriate this specification will also apply to pipe arches.

724.1.1 The contract will specify either the type of pipe or the group of permissible types of pipe. If a group of permissible types is specified, the contractor may use any of the types listed within the specified group and size range as follows:

		Group A[b]	Group B[b]	Group C
Rigid Pipe		**Size**	**Size**	**Size**
Reinforced Concrete Culvert Pipe		ALL	ALL	ALL
Vitrified Clay Pipe		ALL	ALL	ALL
Flexible Pipe – Metal[a]		**Size**	**Size**	**Size**
Aluminum Coated Steel Pipe		ALL	ALL	ALL
Polymer Coated Steel Pipe		ALL	ALL	ALL
Aluminum Alloy Pipe		ALL	ALL	ALL
Bituminous Coated Steel Pipe		NA	NA	ALL
Zinc Coated Steel Pipe		NA	NA	ALL
Flexible Pipe - Thermoplastic		**Size**	**Size**	**Size**
Polypropylene Pipe	Double Wall	≤ 30”	≤ 60”	≤ 60”
	Triple Wall	30” – 60”	30” – 60”	30” – 60”
Polyethylene Pipe	Corrugated	≤ 24”	≤ 60”	≤ 60”
	Steel Reinforced	≤ 24”	≤ 60”	≤ 60”
Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe (PVC)		≤ 36”	≤ 36”	≤ 36”

[a] Metal Pipe used for storm sewer applications shall be Type IA or Type IR.

[b] Pipe used for storm sewers under the influence of a pavement section or future anticipated influence of a pavement section which has a 3,500 ADT or greater shall be Group A pipe. Pipe used in other storm sewer applications shall be Group B. No other substitutions will be allowed.

724.1.2 If the contract specifies pipe culverts by group and the contractor elects to furnish metal pipe, the culvert shall be constructed in accordance with Sec 725. If the contractor elects to furnish vitrified clay or reinforced concrete pipe, the culvert shall be constructed in accordance with Sec 726. If the contractor elects to furnish thermoplastic culvert pipe, the culvert shall be constructed in accordance with Sec 730.

724.1.3 When Group A, Group B and Group C pipe are specified, two pipe diameters will be shown on the plans at those locations. The first dimension will indicate the diameter of pipe that shall be provided if the contractor elects to provide pipe for that location with a corrugated interior wall, and the second dimension provided in parenthesis will indicate the diameter of pipe that shall be provided if the contractor elects to provide pipe for that location with a smooth interior wall. Helical rib (Type IA) pipe may be considered to have varying hydraulic coefficients and may be substituted in accordance with FHWA HD-5 hydraulic design of highway culverts considering the corrugation configuration at the joints. The specified diameters may be the same or different and will be dependent upon the design features for that pipe location. Regardless of which diameter of pipe is selected for a given location, the pipe flow line shall be maintained at the elevations shown on the plans.

724.1.4 The contractor may elect to furnish pipe one size larger than specified so long as the minimum fill heights are met. No additional compensation shall be given for the larger diameter pipe or any related items

necessary to construct the larger pipe.

724.2 Construction Requirements.

724.2.1 Construction Loads. Before heavy construction equipment is operated over the pipe, the contractor shall provide adequate depth and width of compacted backfill or other cover to protect the pipe from damage or displacement. Any damage or displacement shall be repaired or corrected at the contractor's expense.

724.2.2 Installation. Pipe installation shall be according to the plans and specifications. Care shall be taken when preparing the subgrade and compacting fill around the pipe especially in the haunch areas. The contractor shall verify adequate compaction during construction of the pipe by performing density tests.

724.2.3 Pipe Plugs. The ends of all pipe stubs for future connections at inlet and manhole structures, and all pipe installed as part of future sewers, shall be sealed with approved plugs. The plugs shall be installed in such a manner that infiltration of soil into the pipe is prevented.

724.3 Performance Inspection, Performance Report and Evaluation.

724.3.1 The contractor shall conduct either manual performance inspection or remote performance inspection along with performance reporting and evaluation as it relates to this specification.

724.3.2 The contractor shall notify the Engineer at least five workdays before conducting a performance inspection. The inspection shall be performed no sooner than 30 days after the completion of the finished grade when not below pavement and after the completion of the aggregate base when any portion of the culvert pipe is below pavement. The condition of the culvert pipe shall allow for an accurate inspection. The contractor shall inspect the entire length of the pipe. The frequency of inspection shall be as follows:

a) 100% of locations for Group A pipe

b) 25% of locations for Group B. Locations to be determined by the engineer. Criteria for selection will include pipes under large fills or any locations of potential concern.

c) Group C pipe shall be inspected at the discretion of the engineer.

d) If issues are found with any pipe from the performance inspection the engineer may require that all pipe be inspected according to this specification.

724.3.3 The actual inside diameter of flexible pipe products shall be determined for the purposes of measuring deflection by averaging nine equally spaced measurements at one location in the barrel of an unloaded pipe. If the pipe has a corrugated interior, the measurements shall be from the top of corrugation to top of corrugation as viewed from the inside of the pipe.

724.3.4 The contractor shall furnish a video recording of each inspection. The recording shall identify the date and time of the inspection, a description of the culvert pipe, the location, and the viewing direction. The recording shall be for the entire run of the culvert pipe being inspected. The contractor shall provide sufficient enough source of light to allow all areas of concern to be readily observed on the video recording in a digital, reproducible format on one of the following media types: DVD, CD or other media type approved by the engineer.

724.3.5 Manual Inspection. Perform a manual inspection by entering the culvert pipe to record video and to make measurements. Culverts should be entered only by inspection personnel trained in working with confined spaces and using procedures in full compliance with applicable State, Local, and Federal OSHA regulations. The manual inspection shall include the following at a minimum:

1) Measure the deflection of the culvert pipe to the nearest 1/4 inch. A minimum of three measurements shall be taken: vertically from the crown to invert (12 o'clock to 6 o'clock), and at 60 degrees from vertical (2 o'clock to 8 o'clock and 4 o'clock to 10 o'clock).

2) Measure crack width using a crack comparator, micrometer or a feeler gage capable of measuring 0.01 inch. Other measuring devices may be used if approved by the Engineer. Record the

measurements and include them in the written inspection performance report including: For rigid culvert pipe, document the location, length, width, and greatest width of each crack exceeding .01 inch. For flexible culvert pipe (Corrugated Metal Pipe and Thermoplastic Pipe), document the location and length of all cracks.

3) For all culvert pipe, measure and record the widest gap at each joint in the run.

4) For culvert pipe with manufactured seams, measure the location, length, and greatest width of any separation at the seam.

5) Measure the location, length and greatest width of each crack and the widest gap at each culvert pipe entering a drainage structure or transition.

724.3.6 Remote Inspection. Perform a remote inspection by using a crawler mounted camera with low barrel distortion to record video and that has the capability to make measurements. In addition deflection shall be measured by either laser profiling and measuring technology or use of a mandrel capable of verifying deflection on a minimum of 9 points. Laser profiling and measurement technology must be certified by the company performing the work to be in compliance with the calibration criteria as per MoDOT TM 84. Reports shall be submitted by electronic media in a format approved by the Engineer.

724.3.7 Inspection Criteria. Based on the type of culvert pipe, in the measurements and acceptance criteria shall be in accordance with the table below. Also record the location of any other defect not listed in the table and describe the defect. Potential defects include, but are not limited to damaged coatings on corrugated metal pipe, racking, dents, protrusions, misalignment of line or grade, slabbing, and excessive corrugating of thermoplastic pipe. For each measurement location in a culvert pipe, record the length from the left end of the pipe according to roadway stationing.

Inspection Criteria				
Pipe Type	Measurement Equipment	Type of Measurement	Limitations	Required Action
Rigid Culvert Pipe	Manual: Video Camera Remote: Crawler mounted camera with crack measuring capability	Joint gaps	Soiltight in accordance with AASHTO R 82-17	Seal joints with excessive gap
		Crack widths	Greater than .01 inch less than 0.10 crack	Note for future evaluation
			Greater than 0.1 inch crack	Unacceptable
Flexible Culvert Pipe with Hydraulically Smooth Interior	Manual: Video Camera Remote: Crawler mounted camera with crack measuring capability and laser profiler or Crawler mounted camera with crack measuring capability and 9 point minimum mandrel	Joint gaps	Soiltight in accordance with AASHTO R 82-17	Seal joints with excessive gap
		Crack widths	None allowed	Unacceptable
		Deflection	Greater than 5% less than 7.5%	Replace deficient pipe or 50% of pay item for entire line
			Greater than 7.5%	Unacceptable
Flexible Culvert Pipe with	Manual: Video Camera	Joint gaps	Soiltight in accordance with	Seal joints with excessive gap

Corrugated Interior	Remote: Crawler mounted camera with crack measuring capability and mandrel		AASHTO R 82-17	
		Crack widths	None allowed	Unacceptable
		Deflection	Greater than 5% less than 7.5%	Replace deficient pipe or 50% of pay item for entire line
			Greater than 7.5%	Unacceptable

724.3.8 Performance Report. The contractor shall provide a performance report for each performance inspection per drainage structure. Each report shall include:

a) Project number and County-Route-Section

b) Date of performance inspection

c) Type and size of culvert pipe including any transitions in pipe run

d) Time of video recording

e) Location (e.g. station and offset) and viewing direction.

f) Summary of all defects including type, measurement, and location

g) For remote inspections using a mandrel, indicate in the performance report the size of the mandrel and whether or not it was successfully pulled through the culvert pipe.

h) For remote inspections using a crawler mounted camera with laser profiler, include:

1) Three dimensional model of the culvert pipe based on the laser profile measurements.

2) Digital profile of culvert pipe extracted from the inspection video

3) Calculations of the ovality, capacity and delta of the culvert pipe

4) Explanation as to why data was unattainable for any section of the culvert pipe

The contractor shall submit a performance report to the Engineer within 5 days of completing the performance inspection of the culvert pipe run. Submit the performance report in an electronic format approved by the Engineer.

724.3.9 Culvert Pipe Evaluation. The culvert pipe shall be evaluated based on the Performance report. Defects exceeding limitations in this specification will require an action plan addressing noted deficiencies. Other defects will require the contractor to submit an action plan to the Engineer.

724.3.10 Repairs. Required repairs shall be made at no additional cost to the Department and to the satisfaction of the Engineer. The contractor shall submit their required action plan including repair process and/or revised installation plan to the Engineer for approval at least 7 days before performing the repairs. The action plan shall provide written confirmation from the culvert pipe manufacturer that the repair methods are appropriate. Any repairs shall have a performance evaluation conducted of the repaired portion of the culvert pipe and any culvert pipe potentially affected by the repair work 30 days after the repair has been made, at no additional cost to the Department.

724.4 Method of Measurement.

724.4.1 Final measurement will not be made except for authorized changes during construction or where appreciable errors are found in the contract quantity. When two different diameters of pipe are shown on the

plans for a given location for Group A, Group B or Group C pipe, the quantity of pipe installed will be based on the plan quantity for the larger diameter pipe and will not be considered as an appreciable error in the contract quantity if the smaller allowed diameter pipe is used. Where required, measurement of pipe, complete in place, will be made to the nearest foot along the geometrical center of the pipe. The revision or correction will be computed and added to or deducted from the contract quantity.

724.4.2 When concrete pipe is used, the length of the structure may be increased by no more than 3 feet as necessary to avoid cutting the pipe, but such increased length will not be included in the contract quantity for payment.

724.4.3 When PVC pipe is used, measurement will include any other pipe used to protect the pipe from exposure to sunlight.

724.5 Basis of Payment.

724.5.1 The accepted quantities of pipe, complete in place, including all necessary tees, bends, wyes, coupling bands, cutting and joining new pipe to existing pipe or structures, unless otherwise specified, will be paid for at the contract unit price for each of the pay items included in the contract.

724.5.2 The accepted quantities of corrugated metal drop inlets and metal curtain walls, complete in place, including coupling bands, toeplates, nuts and bolts will be paid for at the contract unit price for each of the pay items included in the contract.

724.5.3 Unless specified otherwise, no direct payment will be made for the following:

(a) Beveling, skewing or additional work required in laying pipe with beveled or skewed ends.

(b) Work involved in elongating pipe.

(c) Any required backfilling, except as specified in Sec 206.6.3.

(d) Construction of bedding or for bedding material.

(e) Furnishing and installing plugs.

(f) Material or work required for placing couplings on exposed ends of pipe.

724.5.4 Payment for removal of unsuitable material and for backfilling will be made in accordance with Sec 206.6.3, unless the unsuitable material is a result of the contractor's operations, in which case the removal and backfilling shall be at the contractor's expense.

SECTION 804
TOPSOIL

804.1 Description. This work shall consist of furnishing and placing approved selected topsoil at the locations shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer.

804.2 Material. Topsoil shall be obtained from sources approved by the engineer. Topsoil shall be a fertile, friable and loamy soil of uniform quality, without admixture of subsoil material, and shall be free from material such as hard clods, stiff clay, hardpan, partially disintegrated stone, pebbles larger than one inch in diameter and other impurities. Topsoil shall be relatively free from grass, roots, weeds and other objectionable plant material or vegetative debris undesirable or harmful to plant life or which will prevent the formation of a suitable seedbed.

804.3 Construction Requirements.

804.3.1 The engineer shall be notified sufficiently in advance of the opening of any material source to permit the engineer to prepare for necessary checking and measurement. Topsoil shall be secured from areas from which the topsoil has not been previously removed either by erosion or mechanical methods. The soil shall not be removed in excess of the depth approved by the engineer. The contractor shall furnish the source of material, unless otherwise shown on the plans. During the period of removal of the topsoil material, the site shall be kept drained, and when all material has been removed, the site shall be left in a neat and presentable condition to the satisfaction of the engineer.

804.3.2 The surface on which the topsoil is to be placed shall be free of all loose rock and foreign material greater in any dimension than one half the depth of the topsoil to be added. The surface shall be raked or otherwise loosened just prior to being covered with topsoil. Topsoil shall be placed and spread over the designated areas to the depth shown on the plans. After settling, the completed work shall conform to the thickness shown on the plans. After spreading, all large clods and foreign material shall be removed by the contractor.

804.4 Method of Measurement. Topsoil will be measured to the nearest cubic yard, based on area multiplied by the average depth as determined by the engineer.

804.5 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantity of topsoil will be paid for at the contract unit price, including hauling from any distance.

Intentionally Left Blank

SECTION 805
SEEDING

805.1 Description. This work shall consist of furnishing and sowing seed as specified in the contract. All disturbed areas shall be seeded except for sodded areas, surfaced areas, solid rock, and slopes consisting primarily of broken rock.

805.2 Material.

805.2.1 The seed shall be grown and processed in the United States or Canada and shall comply with the requirements of the Missouri Seed Law. Certain lots of seed may be desirable for the advancement of a local ecotype when specified, and will be the only seed permitted. The following percentages for purity and germination or pure live seed will be the minimum requirements in the acceptance of seed, unless otherwise permitted by the engineer.

Seed Requirements

Non-native

Grasses Scientific Name Purity Germinationa Pure Live

Seed

Bermuda Grass Cynodon dactylon 95 80

Smooth

Bromegrass Bromus inermis 85 80

Kentucky

Bluegrass Poa pratensis 85 80

Orchardgrass Dactylis glomerata 85 80

Perennial

Ryegrass Lolium perenne 98 85

Tall Fescue Festuca arundinacea 97 85

Red Fescue Festuca rubra 97 85

Timothy Phleum pratense 98 85

Cereal or Cover

Crop Purity Germination Pure Live

Seed

Annual Ryegrass Lolium multiflorum 98 85

German Millet Setaric italica 98 85

Redtop Agrostis alba 92 85

Oat Grain Avena sativia 98 85

Rye Grain Secale cereale 98 80

Teff Grass Eragrostis tef 97 80

Wheat Grain Triticum aestivum 97 85

Wildrye, Virginia Elymus virginicus 60

Wildrye, Canada Elymus canadensis 60

Legumes Purity Germination Pure Live

Seed

Korean Lespedeza Lespedeza stipulacea 98 85

Alsike Clover Trifolium hybridum 98 85

Red Clover Trifolium pratense 98 85

White Clover Trifolium repens 98 85

Hairy Vetch Vicia villosa 97 80

Partridge Pea Chamaecrista fasciculate 98 80

Native Grasses Scientific Name Purity Variety(s)

Pure Live

Seed

Big Bluestem

Andropgon gerardii

Mo. Ecotype

Roundtree

Kaw

40

Blue Grama Bouteloua gracilis 40

Buffalograss Buchloe dactyloides

Mo. Ecotype

Sharp's

Improved

Texoka

65

Indiangrass

Sorghastrum nutans

Mo. Ecotype

Rumsey

Cheyenne

50

Little Bluestem

Schizachyrium scoparium

Mo. Ecotype

Aldous

Cimmaron

40

Eastern Gamagrass

Tripsacum dactyloides Mo. Ecotype

River Oats

Chasmanthium latifolium Mo. Ecotype 40

Sideoats Grama Bouteloua curtipendula

Mo. Ecotype

El Reno

Trailway

40

Switchgrass Panicum virgatum

Mo. Ecotype

Trailblazer

Cave-in-Rock

80

Wildrye, Virginia Elymus virginicus 60

Wildrye, Canada Elymus canadensis 60

Cluster Fescue Festuca paradoxa Mo. Ecotype

Rough Dropseed Sporobolus compositus Mo. Ecotype

Prairie Dropseed Sporobolus heterolopus

Prairie Cordgrass Spartina pectinata

Will not apply if unhulled or unscarified seed is specified.

Wildflowers (Forbs) (PLS for all wildflowers shall be 80)

Common Name Scientific Name

Annual Black-eyed Susan Rudbeckia hirta

Golden Alexanders Zizua aurea

Greyhead Coneflower Ratibida pinnata

Lanceleaf Coreopsis Coreopsis lanceolata

Milkweed Asclepias syriaca

New England Aster Aster novae-angliae

Prairie Blazing Star Liatris pycnostachya

Purple Coneflower Echinacea purpurea

Purple Prairie Clover Dalea purpurea

Sky Blue Aster Aster oolentangiensis

Swamp Milkweed Asclepias incarnata

White Prairie Clover Dalea candida

805.2.2 If the specified quantity is in pounds of seed, no reduction will be permitted in the specified quantity of seed if the purity or germination or both, are higher than the minimum required by the specifications. If the specified quantity is in pounds of pure live seed, the pure live seed quantity shall be determined from the actual percentage shown by the supplier for native grasses or by multiplying the actual percentages of purity times the actual percentage of germination, including hard seed for other seed.

805.2.3 All leguminous seed shall

805.2.3.1 The inoculant for treating leguminous seed shall be a nitrogen-fixing bacteria culture. The inoculant containers shall be plainly marked with the expiration date for use. The manufacturer's recommendations for inoculating seed shall be followed.

805.2.3.2 Native grasses shall be a local ecotype variety adapted for growth in Missouri. In the event a local ecotype is unavailable, the contractor shall promptly provide documentation to the engineer substantiating the variety is unavailable. As part of the documentation, the contractor shall propose an alternative variety source. Alternate ecotype varieties may be used, provided acceptable results are achieved.

805.3 Construction Requirements.

805.3.1 The seedbed shall be prepared in accordance with Sec 801. Seeding shall be done before the seedbed becomes eroded and in accordance with the Missouri State Operating Permit for land disturbance. The grass seed mix type (cool season or warm season) shall be as indicated in the plans, or as directed by the engineer.

Grass seed mixes and application rates shall be as specified in the Missouri Standard Plans for Highway Construction for the region that corresponds with the project location. When a project extends across two regions, the region with the greater acreage of seeding shall be used to determine seed mixes and rates, unless otherwise specified in the contract. Seed shall be uniformly applied at no less than the rates identified in the plans.

805.3.1.1 Cool Season Grasses. Full seeding periods for cool season grasses include the months of December through May, August, and September. When seeding during these months, the full rate of lime, fertilizer, seed, and mulch shall be applied. When seeding of cool season grasses is necessary during the months of June, July, October, or November, lime, fertilizer, seed and mulch shall be applied at the following rates:

Lime 100 percent of the specified rate

Fertilizer 75 percent of the specified rate

Seed 50 percent of the specified rate

Mulch 100 percent of the specified rate

When the partial application has been made during June, July, October, or November, overseeding of the partially seeded areas shall occur during August, September, December, January, or February. Overseeding requires the application of fertilizer and seed at the following rates:

Fertilizer 25 percent of the specified rate

Seed 75 percent of the specified rate

805.3.1.2 Warm Season Grasses. Warm season grass mixes shall be placed during the period of October 15 through April 15 both dates inclusive. During this period, the rate specified for lime, fertilizer, seed and mulch shall be applied to the prepared seedbed. When grading of an area designated to receive warm season grasses is completed from April 16 through October 14, temporary seeding shall be applied in accordance with Sec 806 and the full amount of lime specified for the warm season grass mix shall be applied. The temporary seeded area shall be overseeded with the warm season grass seed mix, and fertilizer, at the full rates specified in the standard plans, during the next allowable period. No additional lime should be applied with the overseeding.

805.3.2 Disturbed areas outside of authorized construction limits shall be seeded, mulched, limed, and fertilized at the contractor's expense.

805.3.3 All seeded areas shall be limed and fertilized in accordance with Sec 801 and mulched in accordance with Sec 802.

805.4 Acceptance. Acceptance of permanent seeding will be made when seeded areas meet the requirements for final stabilization as defined in the current state operating permit for land disturbance. Inspection for acceptance of cool season grasses will be made within 60 days after seeding, excluding seeding dates that fall between September 30 and March 1. Cool season seeding that occurs between

September 30 and March 1 will be inspected no earlier than May 1. Inspection for acceptance of warm season grasses will be made no earlier than May 1.

805.5 Time Exception. The contractor shall notify the engineer in writing when final seeding cannot be completed within the specified contract time due to contractual seeding period limitations. The notification shall include a proposed work schedule that shows prompt completion of final seeding during the next allowable seeding period. If the delay of final seeding past the contract completion date is deemed of no fault of the contractor, the engineer will grant an exception to the contract time to allow completion of final seeding without assessment of liquidated damages. This time exception shall not apply to any other uncompleted work.

805.6 Certification. The contractor shall certify the seed and seed mixture meets the contract requirements and be in accordance with Sec 805. The certification shall list the seed type, lot numbers, pure live seed, percent germination, and quantity used for each lot. In lieu of listing the lot specific information, the certification may include attached individual bag label analysis for all seed used.

805.7 Corrective Action. Inadequate stands shall be reworked and reseeded within the time period agreed upon at the contractor's expense. On previously accepted seeded areas, the engineer may authorize eroded areas to be repaired in accordance with Sec 104.3.

805.8 Method of Measurement. Measurement of seeded areas will be made to the nearest 1/10 acre.

805.9 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantity of seeding will be paid for at the contract unit price for cool season and warm season grasses. No direct payment will be made for seedbed preparation or any costs associated with overseeding. The cost of lime and fertilizer will be considered included in the cost of seeding.

Payment for mulch will be made separately in accordance with Sec 802.

SECTION 806
POLLUTION, EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL

806.1 Description. This work shall consist of furnishing, installing, maintaining and removing temporary pollution, erosion and sediment control measures; furnishing and placing permanent erosion control features; or a combination of both as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer.

806.2 Schedule of Work. Prior to the preconstruction conference and the start of construction, the contractor shall submit schedules for the implementation of temporary pollution control and temporary and permanent erosion control work, as applicable, for construction operations. The contractor's schedule shall address specifically the pollution and erosion control measures planned at all streams or other bodies of water. No work shall start until the pollution and erosion control schedules and methods of operations have been approved by the engineer. Any delay of the work resulting from failure to submit acceptable pollution and erosion control schedules and methods of operations will be considered nonexcusable.

806.3 Material. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as herein.

806.4 Construction Requirements. The engineer will limit the surface area of erodible earth material exposed by clearing and grubbing or by excavation, borrow and fill operations in accordance with the following. The engineer may direct the contractor to provide immediate permanent or temporary pollution control measures to prevent contamination of adjacent streams or other bodies of water. Such work may involve the construction of temporary berms, dikes, dams, sediment basins and slope drains, and use of temporary mulches, seeding or other control devices or methods as necessary to control erosion and pollution.

806.4.1 If erosion and sediment control measures, as shown on the plans, are not suitable due to site conditions, a suitable system of Best Management Practices (BMP) as defined by the applicable Missouri State Operating Permit for land disturbance activities and the Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP), shall be applied as approved by the engineer.

806.4.2 The contractor shall exercise effective management practices throughout the life of the project to control pollution. Pollutants such as chemicals, fuels, lubricants, bitumen, raw sewage or other harmful material shall not be discharged on or from the project. Temporary pollution control measures, such as storage and handling of petroleum products and other pollutants, shall be coordinated with temporary and permanent erosion and sediment control features specified in the contract to ensure economical, effective and continuous erosion and pollution control. These requirements will also apply to work within easements designated by the Commission.

806.4.3 The contractor shall incorporate all permanent erosion, sediment, and pollution control features into the project at the earliest practical time. Temporary measures shall be used to correct conditions that develop during construction which were not foreseen during the design stage, that are needed prior to installation of permanent pollution control features, or that are needed temporarily to control erosion and sediment that develops during normal construction practices, but are not associated with permanent control features on the project.

806.4.4 Installation of temporary control measures shall be scheduled to coincide with clearing and grubbing operations, but before grading operations begin. The project land area disturbance shall not exceed one acre without installation of erosion and sediment controls. The total project land disturbance area shall not exceed 20 acres without written approval from the engineer.

806.4.5 The engineer may allow additional land disturbance acreage if appropriate BMP's including temporary seeding and mulching, have been applied to previously disturbed areas and the contractor has the resources to apply the BMP's to the expanded area.

806.4.6 Unless otherwise provided or approved in writing by the engineer, construction operations in streams or other bodies of water shall be restricted to those areas that must be entered for the construction of temporary or permanent structures. Streams or other bodies of water shall be promptly cleared of all falsework, piling, debris or other obstructions placed therein or caused by construction operations.

806.4.7 Fording of streams or other bodies of water with construction equipment will not be permitted, except as allowed by the engineer. Temporary bridges or other structures shall be used when frequent crossing of streams or other bodies of water is necessary. Unless otherwise approved in writing by the engineer, mechanized

equipment shall not be operated in streams or other bodies of water except as may be required to construct channel changes and temporary or permanent structures. If a Corps of Engineer Section 404 or Department of Natural Resources Section 401 permit is applicable for a project, the permit requirements and conditions will prevail.

806.4.8 The contractor shall obtain all necessary permits for all project support activities located off the project site. Project support activities include, but are not limited to, borrow areas, waste areas, plant sites, and staging areas. All costs associated with the permits and pollution control shall be at the contractor's expense, including providing, installing, maintaining, and removal of all erosion and sediment control devices, and final stabilization of disturbed areas.

806.4.9 In the event of conflict between these requirements and the pollution control laws, rules or regulations of other federal, state or local agencies, the more restrictive laws, rules or regulations will apply.

806.4.10 The contractor is encouraged to incorporate mulch from the clearing and grubbing operation into the BMP's on the project. BMP's may consist of compost filled socks, compost filter berms, soil protection cover or any other method as approved by the engineer.

806.4.11 Unless otherwise specified, or directed by the engineer, all temporary erosion and sediment control measures shall be removed by the contractor after permanent erosion and sediment control measures are established and the project has achieved final stabilization as defined in the SWPPP. Biodegradable erosion and sediment control materials may be allowed to be incorporated into the project in accordance with the SWPPP, as approved by the engineer. Rock from ditch checks and other temporary sediment devices may be repositioned to serve as ditch liner in accordance with the SWPPP, and as directed by the engineer.

806.4.12 Portland cement concrete residue and wash water and other operations that produce sediment laden runoff shall be managed by an appropriate control measure.

806.4.12.1 Portland cement concrete residue and wash water shall be discharged into a plastic lined pit, plastic lined straw bale enclosure, or other commercially available water tight enclosure suitable for containing concrete residue and wash water as approved by the Engineer.

806.4.12.2 Water from aggregate washing and other operations that produce sediment laden water shall be treated by filtration, settling basins, or other means sufficient to comply with the general water quality criteria established by MDNR.

806.4.12.3 No direct payment will be made for the design, installation, maintenance or removal of controls necessary to contain Portland cement concrete residue and wash water or other water from sediment producing operations.

SECTION 806.10 TEMPORARY BERMS.

806.10.1 Description. This work shall consist of constructing and maintaining temporary berms at the top of slopes or transverse to the centerline of fills as shown on the plans.

806.10.2 Material. Type B berms shall consist of graded material from within the project limits, rock, or other suitable material approved by the engineer. Type C berms shall consist of rock with a predominant size between 4 inches and 12 inches.

806.10.3 Construction Requirements. Temporary berms shall be constructed and maintained to the approximate dimensions shown on the plans.

806.10.3.1 Type B Berms. Type B berms shall be machine compacted with a minimum of three passes over the entire width of the berm. Material removed from Type B berms shall be incorporated in the embankment when possible. The contractor shall remove and dispose of any excess or unsuitable material to a location approved by the engineer.

806.10.3.1 Type B berms shall drain to a compacted outlet at slope drain. On transverse berms, the top width of the berms may be wider and the side slopes flatter to allow equipment to pass over these berms with minimal disruption.

806.10.3.2 Type C Berms. Vegetative mulch, erosion control blanket or geotextile fabric, if required by the engineer, shall be placed on the upslope of the Type C berm. The vegetative mulch shall be placed in such a manner that the final compacted thickness is 2 inches. The material for the vegetative mulch shall be in accordance with Sec 802. The vegetative mulch erosion control blanket or geotextile fabric shall be removed and replaced as directed by the engineer.

806.10.4 Method of Measurement. Measurement of Type B and C berms will be made to the nearest linear foot.

806.10.5 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantities of Type B and C berms will be paid for at the contract unit price and will be considered full compensation for material, installation, maintenance, removal and any other hand work necessary to construct the berms. No payment will be made for the straw layer, erosion control blanket or geotextile fabric on the Type C berm. No payment will be made for any seeding and mulching needed after removal.

SECTION 806.20 TEMPORARY SLOPE DRAINS.

806.20.1 Description. This work shall consist of furnishing, constructing maintaining and removing temporary slope drains to carry water down slopes and to reduce erosion. The method selected shall be approved by the engineer prior to construction.

806.20.2 Construction Requirements. The contractor shall provide temporary, impermeable slope drains to carry water or water with suspended solids down fill slopes until permanent erosion control measures are established. The contractor shall provide temporary slope drains on fillslopes at approximately 500-foot intervals or as directed by the engineer. All temporary slope drains shall be adequately anchored to the slope to prevent disruption of flow. The inlet ends shall include a ditch check and be constructed to channel water into the temporary slope drain. Outlet ends shall have some means of dissipating the energy of the water to reduce erosion downstream and have the ability to capture sediment. After removal, the contractor shall restore the site of the slope drains to the satisfaction of the engineer.

806.20.3 Method of Measurement. Measurement of temporary slope drains will be made to the nearest linear foot.

806.20.4 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantities of temporary slope drains will be paid for at the contract unit price. Payment shall include furnishing, constructing, maintaining and removing temporary slope drains, and restoration of the slope drain sites. No payment will be made for any seeding and mulching needed after removal.

SECTION 806.30 TEMPORARY DITCH AND INLET CHECKS.

806.30.1 Description. This work shall consist of furnishing, constructing, maintaining, removing and disposing of temporary ditch and inlet checks.

806.30.2 Construction Requirements.

806.30.2.1 Rock Ditch Checks. Rock ditch checks shall be constructed in accordance with the plans, or as directed by the engineer, and shall have a minimum effective height of 18 inches. The predominant size of the rock used shall range between 4 inches and 12 inches.

806.30.2.2 Alternate Ditch Checks. Alternate ditch checks shall be constructed in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications, and as shown on the plans, or as directed by the engineer. Alternate ditch checks shall have a minimum effective height of 9 inches, shall follow guidance provided in the SWPPP, and shall perform to the level that meets or exceeds the requirement of the current Missouri Operating Permit.

806.30.2.2.1 Unless otherwise disallowed, the contractor has the option to construct rock ditch checks in lieu of alternate ditch checks. Rock ditch checks constructed in lieu of alternate checks shall have a minimum effective height of 18 inches. Spacing shall be increased, as determined by the engineer, to account for the additional height of rock ditch check. The toe-to-top capacity requirements shown on the plans will be used to determine the spacing.

806.30.2.3 Inlet Checks. Inlet checks shall be installed in accordance with the plans or as directed by the engineer to prevent sediment from entering drop inlets, manholes, and other openings to culverts and closed drainage systems.

806.30.2.3.1 Inlet checks shall be constructed in accordance with Sec 806.30.2.1, rock ditch checks, and shall completely surround the inlet or other structure, as indicated on the plans. Other allowable methods of protecting inlets will be listed in the SWPPP.

806.30.2.4 Curb Inlet Checks. Curb inlet checks shall consist of socks filled with rock, or other fillers of sufficient weight to keep the device in place. Curb inlet checks shall be installed in the gutter or as shown on the plans. Other proprietary devices may be used, as approved by the engineer.

806.30.3 Maintenance. The contractor shall monitor the condition of all temporary checks and repair or replace checks that are not functional. The contractor shall remove sediment in accordance with Sec 806.110. Alternate ditch checks shall be maintained in accordance with this provision and the manufacturer's specifications or as directed by the engineer.

806.30.4 Removal. All types of temporary checks shall remain in service until removal has been approved by the engineer. Removal shall be in accordance with Sec 806.4.11 and as stated herein. The contractor shall remove any sediment from the check, remove the check, and restore the area to match existing ground condition. When necessary, seeding and mulching shall be in accordance with Secs 802 and 805 respectively, and shall be considered incidental.

806.30.5 Method of Measurement.

806.30.5.1 Measurement of rock ditch checks will be made to the nearest linear foot as measured along the top of the check. Rock ditch checks constructed in lieu of alternate checks will be included in this measurement for payment. Inlet checks, except for curb inlet checks, will be included in this measurement for payment.

806.30.5.2 Measurement of alternate ditch checks will be made to the nearest linear foot as measured along the top of the check.

806.30.5.3 No measurement will be made for any portion of a check that exceeds the length necessary to adequately span the ditch as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer.

806.30.5.4 Measurement of curb inlet checks will be made per each check.

806.30.6 Basis of Payment.

806.30.6.1 The accepted quantities of rock ditch checks, alternate ditch checks, inlet checks, and curb inlet checks will be paid for at the contract unit price for each pay item included in the contract. If the engineer determines unusual conditions warrant complete replacement of a check, payment will be made for the replacement check at the contract unit price.

806.30.6.2 Payment for sediment removal shall be in accordance with Sec 806.110.

SECTION 806.40 SEDIMENT BASINS.

806.40.1 Description. This work shall consist of constructing and maintaining temporary or permanent sediment basins as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer. This work shall include clearing and excavation to construct the basin, disposal of excavated material, and providing and installing rock or other stabilizing material as approved by the engineer. For temporary basins, removal, backfilling, and site restoration is also included in the work.

806.40.2 Construction Requirements. The sediment basin shall be an excavated or dammed storage area with defined side slopes. Inlet and outlet areas shall be lined with rock of sufficient size to withstand the water flow. In lieu of rock, other allowable liners may be used as described in the SWPPP. Outlets may be constructed with a riser pipe, surface skimmers, or stabilized spillway, or a combination of one or more of these features.

806.40.2.1 The inlet of a sediment basin shall be constructed with a wide cross-section and a minimum grade to prevent turbulence and to allow deposition of soil particles.

806.40.2.2 Sediment shall be removed and disposed in accordance with Sec 806.110, and before the depth reaches approximately one-half the original depth of the sediment basin in any part of the pool.

806.40.2.3 Temporary sediment basins shall remain in service until removal has been approved by the engineer. Removal shall be in accordance with Sec 806.4.11 and as stated herein. The contractor shall remove any sediment from the basin, backfill, compact all excavations, restore the area to match existing ground conditions, and seeding and mulching in accordance with Secs 802 and 805 respectively.

806.40.3 Method of Measurement.

806.40.3.1 Measurement of excavation to construct sediment basin will be made to the nearest tenth of a cubic yard.

806.40.3.2 Measurement of rock placed to construct sediment basins will be made to the nearest tenth of a cubic yard.

806.40.4 Basis of Payment.

806.40.4.1 The accepted quantities for excavation to construct sediment basins will be paid for at the contract unit price. Payment includes clearing, excavation, removal, backfilling and final grading.

806.40.4.2 The accepted quantity for rock used to construct sediment basins will be paid for at the contract unit price. Payment shall include furnishing, placing, and removal of rock.

806.40.4.3 No direct payment will be made for seeding and mulching necessary to restore the area after removal.

806.40.4.4 Payment for sediment removal shall be in accordance with Sec 806.110.

SECTION 806.50 TEMPORARY SEEDING.

806.50.1 Description. This work shall consist of furnishing and applying fertilizer and seed in disturbed areas authorized by the engineer. Mulch shall be applied following temporary seeding in accordance with Sec 802. Temporary seeding and mulching is utilized to provide interim stabilization of disturbed areas where staging requires the area to be disturbed again at a later date, and for areas to be seeded with warm season grasses that are finish-graded, but application of permanent seeding is disallowed per Sec 805.3.1.2. Finish grading will not be required except for areas that will not receive further grading prior to permanent seeding. Hydraulic seeding and fertilizing in accordance with Sec 805 will be permitted.

806.50.2 Construction Requirements. Seeding and mulching shall be a continuous operation on all cut and fillslopes, excess material sites and borrow pits during the construction process. All disturbed areas shall be seeded and mulched as necessary to control erosion in accordance with the Missouri State Operating Permit. Seed bed shall be prepared in accordance with Sec 801. When the engineer allows the contractor to disturb additional ground beyond the restrictions in Sec 806.4.4 solely to enhance the contractor's operation, the contractor shall not receive compensation for temporary seed or mulch, as required by the engineer, for ground cover for areas exceeding the restrictions in Sec 806.4.4.

806.50.2.1 The contractor shall provide permanent seeding and mulching following temporary seeding in accordance with Sec 805. Any preparation of the seed bed that might be necessary prior to permanent seeding to ensure germination shall be considered incidental to temporary seeding. All washouts and rills shall be repaired at the contractor's expense prior to permanent seeding.

806.50.2.2 Temporary seeding mixtures of cereal grains shall be applied at a minimum rate of 100 pounds per acre. All erodible seeded areas shall provide a minimum of 20 plants of the species planted per square foot on at least two random counts per acre in representative areas of the field. For areas with a large percentage of rock, the number of living plants shall be proportional to the percentage of erodible surface, as determined by the engineer. The counts will be conducted 60 days after the species is planted.

806.50.2.3 Fertilizer shall be applied at a rate of 40 pounds nitrogen (N) per acre.

806.50.2.4 Lime will not be required for temporary seeding of unfinished areas. In finished areas, where temporary seeding is placed due to warm season grass planting time restrictions, 100 percent of the lime specified for warm season grasses shall be applied at the time of temporary seeding.

806.50.3 Method of Measurement. Measurement of temporary seeding areas will be made to the nearest tenth of an acre.

806.50.4 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantities of temporary seeding will be paid for at the contract unit price per acre. Payment for fertilizer shall be included in the cost of temporary seeding. When lime is applied in accordance with Sec 806.50.2.4 upon request from the contractor, payment for the lime application will be made as a partial payment for Seeding - Warm Season Grasses. The remaining payment for Seeding - Warm Season Grasses will be made after permanent seeding is complete.

SECTION 806.60 SEDIMENT TRAP.

806.60.1 Description. This work shall consist of constructing, maintaining and removing sediment traps as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer.

806.60.2 Construction Requirements.

806.60.2.1 Sediment traps shall be constructed as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer. Traps may require excavation, or placement of rock of sufficient size to impound water, or a combination of excavation and placement of rock.

806.60.2.2 Sediment traps shall be installed with clearing and grubbing operations or as directed by the engineer. The contractor shall monitor sediment levels and remove sediment in accordance with Sec 806.110.

806.60.2.3 Sediment traps shall remain in service until removal has been approved by the engineer. Removal shall be in accordance with Sec 806.4.11 and as stated herein. The contractor shall remove any sediment from the trap, backfill, compact all excavations, restore the area to match existing ground condition, and seeding and mulching in accordance with Secs 802 and 805 respectively.

806.60.3 Method of Measurement.

806.60.3.1 Measurement of excavation to construct sediment traps will be made to the nearest tenth of a cubic yard.

806.60.3.2 Measurement of rock placed to construct sediment traps will be made to the nearest tenth of a cubic yard.

806.60.4 Basis of Payment.

806.60.4.1 The accepted quantity for excavation to construct sediment traps will be paid for at the contract unit price. Payment includes clearing, excavation, removal, backfilling, and final grading.

806.60.4.2 The accepted quantity for rock used to construct sediment traps will be paid for at the contract unit price. Payment shall include furnishing, placing, and removal of rock.

806.60.4.3 No direct payment will be made for seeding and mulching necessary to restore the area after removal.

806.60.4.4 Payment for sediment removal will be in accordance with Sec 806.110.

SECTION 806.70 SILT FENCE.

806.70.1 Description. This work shall consist of furnishing, installing, maintaining, and removing of a silt fence to control sediment along slopes and other designated areas. The quantity of silt fence shown on the plans may

be increased or decreased, as directed by the engineer. The engineer may also modify the location as necessary to improve the effectiveness of the silt fence. Variations in quantity and location will not be considered as a change in work.

806.70.2 Material. When geotextile fabric is used, material shall be in accordance with Sec 1011. All other material shall be as specified in the SWPPP.

806.70.2.1 Posts. Wood, steel or synthetic posts may be used. Posts shall be of sufficient length, but no less than 4 feet, to ensure adequate embedment while fully supporting the fence and shall have sufficient strength to resist damage during installation and to support applied loads while in service.

806.70.2.2 Prefabricated Fence. Prefabricated fence systems may be used if the systems meet all of the above material requirements.

806.70.3 Construction and Maintenance Requirements.

806.70.3.1 Fabric Fence. The contractor shall install silt fence as shown on the plans and at other locations directed by the engineer. Fence construction shall be adequate to handle the stress from hydraulic and sediment loading. Fabric at the bottom of the fence shall be buried a minimum of 6 inches to prevent flow under the barrier. The trench shall be backfilled, and the soil compacted over the fabric. Fabric splices with a minimum 2-foot overlay shall be located only at a support post. Any installation method acceptable to the engineer will be allowed as long as the effectiveness and intent of the silt fence is achieved.

806.70.3.1.1 Post spacing shall not exceed 5 feet. Posts shall be driven a sufficient depth into the ground or placed on closer spacing as necessary to ensure adequate resistance to applied loads.

806.70.3.1.2 The silt fence shall be fastened securely to the upslope side of the post. When wire support fence is used, the wire shall extend into the trench a minimum of 2 inches.

806.70.3.2 Alternate Fence Types. Alternate silt fence types shall be in accordance with the SWPPP or as approved by the engineer.

806.70.3.3 Maintenance. The contractor shall monitor the condition of all fences and repair or replace fences that are not functional as long as the fences are necessary to contain sediment runoff. Any deficiencies shall be corrected by the contractor in accordance with the SWPPP. In addition, the contractor shall review the effectiveness of silt fences in areas where construction activities have changed the natural contour and drainage runoff. Where deficiencies exist, additional silt fences shall be installed as approved or directed by the engineer.

806.70.3.4 Sediment. The contractor shall remove and dispose of sediment in accordance with Sec 806.110. Segments of silt fence that receive heavy sediment loading may require a secondary silt fence or installation of other controls to adequately contain sediment.

806.70.3.5 Removal. Silt fence shall be removed in accordance with Sec 806.4.11 and as specified herein. The contractor shall remove and dispose of any excess silt accumulation along the fence, shall restore the area to match existing ground condition, and seeding and mulching in accordance with Secs 802 and 805 respectively.

806.70.4 Method of Measurement. Silt fence will be measured to the nearest linear foot from end to end of each separate installation.

806.70.5 Basis of Payment.

806.70.5.1 The accepted quantities of silt fence will be paid for at the contract unit price.

806.70.5.2 No direct payment will be made for seeding and mulching necessary to restore the area after removal.

806.70.5.3 Payment for sediment removal will be in accordance with Sec 806.110.

SECTION 806.80 TEMPORARY PIPE.

806.80.1 Description. This work shall consist of installing and removing temporary pipe utilized to carry water under temporary roadways, silt fences, berms or other locations determined by the engineer.

806.80.2 Material. Any pipe approved by the engineer may be used.

806.80.3 Construction Requirements. Installation of temporary pipe shall be in accordance with the specifications for permanent pipe and shall prevent water from causing erosion around the pipe. All backfill material for pipes shall be placed in 6-inch lifts and mechanically compacted. Compaction tests will not be required. Temporary pipe placed in intermittent or active streams for the convenience of the contractor shall be installed in accordance with Sec 806.100 and any applicable permits.

806.80.4 Method of Measurement. Measurement of temporary pipe will be made to the nearest linear foot for those pipes specified on the plans.

806.80.5 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantities of temporary pipe will be paid for at the contract unit price for temporary pipes specified on the plans. No payment will be made for temporary pipes that the contractor chooses to install to facilitate construction. Unless provided as a pay item in the contract documents, no direct payment will be made for the placement and removal of the backfill material or rock.

SECTION 806.90 EROSION CONTROL BLANKETS AND TURF REINFORCEMENT MATS.

806.90.1 Description. This work shall consist of furnishing and placing erosion control blankets (ECBs) and turf reinforcement mats (TRMs) on slopes or ditches for short-term or long-term protection of seeded areas at locations shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer.

806.90.2 Material. ECBs and TRMs shall be used as designated in the contract or as approved by the engineer. The contractor shall provide ECBs and TRMs of the type specified in the contract and shall provide a manufacturer's certification stating that they are in accordance with Sec 1011.

806.90.3 Construction Requirements. ECBs and TRMs shall be installed and maintained according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

806.90.4 Method of Measurement. Measurement of ECBs and TRMs will be made to the nearest square yard of surface area covered.

806.90.5 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantity of ECBs and TRMs will be paid for at the contract unit price for each of the pay items included in the contract. If ECBs and TRMs are used in lieu of other erosion control measures, payment will be made at the contract unit price for the pay items in the contract for the respective items that the blanket replaces.

SECTION 806.100 TEMPORARY STREAM CROSSING.

806.100.1 Description. This work shall consist of constructing a temporary stream crossing to facilitate the movement of equipment across a stream.

806.100.2 Construction Requirements. The contractor shall be responsible for the design, installation, maintenance and removal of the temporary stream crossing and any structures installed for the construction of the temporary stream crossing. Appropriate measures shall be taken to maintain near normal downstream flows and to minimize flooding upstream. The temporary stream crossing shall be constructed to permit the free movement of the stream’s aquatic life. Fill material shall be clean rock of sufficient size to withstand expected high flows. Only graded rock and/or quarry-run rock shall be used. The rock must be reasonably well graded, with no particle dimension greater than approximately 12 inches, and no particle dimension less than approximately 9 inches. Gravel and dirt should not exceed 15% of the total fill volume.

806.100.2.1 Prior to construction of the temporary stream crossing, all information shall be submitted to the engineer to ensure that it meets the terms and conditions of the Corps of Engineer permit. The contractor shall not begin construction on any temporary stream crossing without written permission from the engineer.

806.100.2.2 All approaches to the temporary stream crossing shall be maintained such that all storm water runoff is diverted to retention devices.

806.100.2.3 When the temporary stream crossing is no longer needed, the crossing shall be removed as soon as possible and the area shall be restored to pre-project conditions or to the satisfaction of the engineer.

806.100.3 Basis of Payment. No direct payment will be made for the design, installation, maintenance or removal of temporary stream crossings. The contractor shall be responsible for all costs, including damage and penalties.

SECTION 806.110 SEDIMENT REMOVAL.

806.110.1 Description. This work shall consist of removing and disposing of sediment from sediment control devices, such as ditch and inlet checks, sediment basins, sediment traps, silt fence, and other devices that accumulate sediment.

806.110.2 Construction Requirements. The contractor shall monitor sediment levels in all sediment control devices and remove sediment prior to the level reaching approximately one-half the design heights for checks and fences, and one-half the storage capacities for basins and traps. The engineer may require sediment removal from devices prior to levels reaching the specified limits.

806.110.2.1 The contractor shall dispose of the sediment in a location that does not allow the sediment to erode back into the sediment devices or to pollute streams or other bodies of water.

806.110.3 Method of Measurement. Measurement of sediment removal will be made to the nearest tenth of a cubic yard.

806.110.3.1 No measurement will be made for sediment removal that accumulates due to the contractor's failure to complete erosion control measures in accordance with the SWPPP or as directed by the engineer. The engineer shall determine the volume of sediment that will be excluded from payment due to a lack of required erosion control measures.

806.110.3.2 No measurement will be made for removing any remaining sediment during final removal of the sediment control devices.

806.110.4 Basis of Payment. The accepted quantity of sediment removal will be paid for at the contract unit price.

SECTION 903
HIGHWAY SIGNING

903.1 Description. This work shall consist of furnishing and installing highway signs as shown on the plans. All signs shall be in accordance with the MUTCD. Any signs not detailed on the plans shall be in accordance with Standard Highway Signs by the U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration.

903.2 Material. All material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section/Specification
Reinforcing Steel for Concrete	1036
Highway Sign Material	1042
Delineators, Mile and Marker Posts	1044
Paints for Structural Steel	1045
Electrical Conduit	1060
Expansive Mortars	1066
Carbon Steel Bolts, Nuts and Washers	1080
Structural Carbon Steel	1080
Structural Low Alloy Steel	1080
Low-Carbon Steel Anchor Bolts	ASTM F1554, Grade 36
High-Strength Anchor Bolts and Nuts	ASTM F1554, Grade 55
High-Strength Bolts, Nuts and Washers	1080
Galvanized Coating of Structural Steel, Tubular Steel Sign Supports, Sign Trusses and Appurtenances	1081

903.2.1 Sign Posts and Tubular Steel Sign Supports.

Item	Section/Specification
Perforated Square Steel Tube Posts	1044
Wood Posts	1050
Steel Pipe Posts	ASTM A53, Grade B, or ASTM A500, Grade B
Galvanizing of Steel Pipe Posts	ASTM A53
Structural Steel Welding Electrodes	AWS A5.1 or AWS A5.5
Structural Steel Posts	AASHTO M270 Grade 50 or 50w
U-Channel Posts	ASTM A499, Grade 60

903.2.2 Overhead Sign Trusses.

Item	Specification
Aluminum Extruded Tube	ASTM B221, 6061-T6
Aluminum Permanent Mold Castings	ASTM B108, A 356.0-T61
Aluminum Sand Castings	ASTM B26, 356.0-T6
Aluminum Plate	ASTM B209, 6061-T6
Aluminum Structural Shapes	ASTM B308, 6061-T6
Aluminum Pipe Handrail	ASTM B241, 6061-T6 or 6063-T6
Aluminum Pipe Fittings for Schedule 10 Pipe	ASTM B26, 356.0-T6 or ASTM B108, A 356.0-T61
Aluminum Grating Bearing Bars Cross Bars	ASTM B211, 6061-T6 or ASTM B221, 6061-T6 or 6063-T6 ASTM B211, 6061-T6 or

	ASTM B221, 6061-T6 or 6063-T5 or T6
Aluminum Washers	ASTM B209, 2024-T4 or Alclad 2024T4
Aluminum Beveled Washers	ASTM B221, 2024-T4
Filler Wire for Welding Aluminum	AWS A 5.10 ER5356, ER5556
Stainless Steel U-Bolts	ASTM A276 Chromium-Nickel Grade, min. yield 30,000 psi
Stainless Steel Bolts, Nuts, Screws and Washers	ASTM A320 or SAE J405D, Austenitic Steel, min. yield 30,000 psi
Structural Steel Welding Electrodes	AWS A 5.1 or AWS A 5.5

903.2.3 Hardware. Anchor bolts, bolts, nuts and washers specified to be galvanized shall be galvanized in accordance with AASHTO M 232 (ASTM A153), Class C or mechanically galvanized in accordance with ASTM B695, Class 55. Except for anchor bolts, galvanizing thickness shall not exceed 6 mils. For high strength bolts, the contractor shall furnish to the engineer a copy of the manufacturer's inspection test report for each production lot or shipping lot furnished, and shall certify the bolts furnished are in accordance with Sec 1080.

903.2.4 Concrete. Concrete shall be of the class specified in the contract. Material, proportioning, mixing, slump and transporting of concrete shall be in accordance with Sec 501 for the specific class specified. Concrete shall be placed, finished and cured in accordance with Sec 703.

903.2.5 Equipment and Material. Equipment and material shall be of new stock unless the contract provides for relocation of existing units or use of units furnished by others. New equipment and material shall meet the approval of the engineer.

903.3 Construction Requirements.

903.3.1 Footings for Trusses and Posts.

903.3.1.1 Bolt-Down Installations. Bolt-down footings and end supports are those in which anchor bolts are cast into the footing, such as overhead sign trusses and tubular steel sign supports. Class B concrete shall be used to construct bolt-down footings. Footings shall be formed, unless in the judgment of the engineer, soil conditions permit excavation to be made to the neat lines of the footings and the footings cast against the undisturbed vertical soil face. In all cases, the top 12 inches below finished ground line shall be formed. Footings shall be placed on firm, stable, undisturbed soil to the minimum depth shown on the plans. Backfill shall be thoroughly compacted, and care taken to prevent damage to finished concrete. Backfill shall be brought up level with the finished ground line. Anchor bolts shall be firmly held in proper position, supported at the top, during placement of concrete.

903.3.1.2 Embedded Installations. Embedded installations are defined as footings for pipe posts and structural steel posts only. Class B or B-1 concrete, or concrete of a commercial mixture meeting the requirements of Sec 501, or prepackaged dry commercial concrete mixture meeting the requirements of Sec 903.3.1.2.1 shall be used for the footings for embedded-type sign posts. Posts shall be supported in proper position until the concrete or other approved material has set. Excavation and backfill shall be in accordance with Sec 903.3.1.1, except forming will not be required unless soil conditions warrant forming. Tops of footings shall be finished flush with the slope of the ground. Footings shall be visually inspected for acceptance by the engineer.

903.3.1.2.1 Pre-packaged dry commercial concrete mixture used for embedded footings shall have a manufacturer's 28-day compressive strength rating of no less than 4,000 psi for the footings for embedded-type sign posts. The concrete shall be thoroughly mixed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Strength requirements shall meet or exceed Class B concrete as specified in Sec 501.

903.3.1.3 Perforated Square Steel Tube Post Anchor Installations. Construction requirements and concrete material requirements for perforated square steel tube (PSST) anchor installations shall be in accordance with Sec 903.3.1.2. In lieu of concrete, polyurethane foam meeting the requirements of Sec 903.3.1.3.1 may be used, except that, concrete shall be used for post anchor installations for Emergency Reference Markers.

903.3.1.3.1 Polyurethane foam shall be a quick-setting hydrophobic, closed cell, high density polyurethane foam with a minimum compressive strength of 80 psi (550 kPa), in the direction of rise, when tested in accordance with ASTM D1621, and shall have a minimum density of 4 pounds per cubic foot (65 kg/m3) when tested in

accordance with ASTM D1622. Foam shall not be placed in standing water. Polyurethane foam shall be mixed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Polyurethane foam will not be permitted if soil conditions are such that forming is necessary. Material shall be tested in the presence of the engineer in accordance with Sec 625.10.2.1.4.

903.3.1.4 Optional Footings. Substructures for butterfly and cantilever overhead sign trusses and posts may be either drilled shafts or spread footings.

903.3.1.4.1 The quantities shown on the plans reflect the total cubic yards of substructure, based upon drilled shaft quantities.

903.3.1.4.2 No adjustment in payment will be made for providing the equivalent spread footing design that differs in area from the specified drilled shaft design.

903.3.1.4.3 If rock is encountered and the depth of drilled shafts is adjusted accordingly, cubic yard quantities will be recalculated for those locations and payment will be adjusted accordingly. Cubic yard quantities will not be recalculated for spread footings if rock is encountered, unless it is considered differing site conditions in accordance with Sec 104.2 of the standard specifications.

903.3.2 Posts for Ground Mounted Signs.

903.3.2.1 Post Lengths. Post lengths shown on the plans for ground-mounted signs are for bidding purposes only. The contractor shall be responsible for determining post lengths to provide the vertical clearance shown on the plans. Field cutting of posts will be permitted.

903.3.2.2 Post Alignment. Sign posts shall be vertical. Any post bent or otherwise damaged to the extent that the post is considered unfit for use shall be removed and replaced with an acceptable post at the contractor's expense.

903.3.2.2.1 Structural Steel Posts. Structural steel sign posts for ground mounting of signs shall be fabricated and erected as shown on the plans. Welds shall be of full section and sound throughout. Posts with dimensional defects and structural discontinuities will be rejected. Posts built up by welding two lengths together will be permitted, provided the welds are ground smooth and flush with the base metal. Posts and appurtenances shall be hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Posts with breakaway assemblies shall be cut at the hinge prior to galvanizing, except for field cutting. Hinge plates shall not be attached to the posts at the time of galvanizing. All welds shall be cleaned before galvanizing. All exposed steel areas and damaged galvanizing shall be repaired in accordance with Sec 1081.

903.3.2.2.2 Pipe Posts. Pipe posts shall be fabricated as shown on the plans and shall be hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Welds shall be of full section and sound throughout. Posts with dimensional defects and structural discontinuities will be rejected. All welds shall be cleaned before galvanizing. Exposed steel areas and damaged galvanizing shall be repaired in accordance with Sec 1081. Friction caps for pipe posts shall be of the dimensions shown on the plans and may be galvanized steel or aluminum alloy.

903.3.2.2.3 Perforated Square Steel Tube Posts. Perforated square steel tube posts (PSST) shall be installed at locations shown on the plans. Exposed steel areas and damaged galvanizing shall be repaired in accordance with Sec 1081. A six foot 2.25" PSST insert shall be installed inside the 2.5" PSST post, above the breakaway assembly, when required per the plans.

903.3.2.2.4 U-Channel Posts. U-Channel posts shall be installed at locations shown on the plans. Exposed steel areas and damaged galvanizing shall be repaired in accordance with Sec 1081.

903.3.2.2.5 Wood Posts. Wood posts shall be installed at locations shown on the plans.

903.3.2.3 Certification. The contractor shall furnish to the engineer the fabricator’s certification that the material supplied is in accordance with the requirements specified.

903.3.3 Tubular Steel Sign Supports. Tubular sign supports for overhead mounting of signs shall include span, cantilever and butterfly types, complete with poles, beams, mast arms, sign bracket assemblies and other

specified appurtenances. All steel shall be hot-dip galvanized after fabrication in accordance with Sec 1081. All welds shall be cleaned before galvanizing. Shop drawings will not be required for these supports.

903.3.3.1 Tapered Steel Poles and Beams. Tapered steel poles and beams shall be a continuous taper tube, fabricated from one length of open hearth sheet steel with one continuous welded longitudinal seam. After fabrication, the material shall have a minimum yield strength of 48,000 psi. Straight steel arms shall be standard or extra heavy pipe, of the dimensions and grades shown on the plans. Bolts, nuts, washers, clamps and sign bracket assemblies shall be hot-dip galvanized or of stainless steel. Clamps shall be fabricated of low alloy steel.

903.3.3.2 Certification. The contractor shall furnish to the engineer the manufacturer's certification that the tubular steel sign supports are in accordance with the requirements specified.

903.3.3.3 Surfaces. Galvanized material shall be handled to avoid damage to the surfaces. Any material on which the galvanizing has been bruised or broken will be rejected or may, with approval from the engineer, be repaired in accordance with Sec 1081.

903.3.4 Overhead Sign Trusses. Overhead sign trusses shall be steel or aluminum, and shall include all structural steel, structural aluminum, aluminum castings, pipe railing, gratings, supports and appurtenances above the top surface of the concrete footings. Shop drawings in accordance with Sec 1080 shall be furnished to the engineer for approval.

903.3.4.1 Testing and Certification. The contractor shall furnish to the engineer a copy of certified mill test reports on all material furnished, providing the actual chemical analysis and the actual results of physical tests. In lieu of mill test reports for secondary members, the contractor may furnish a certification from the fabricator certifying the material supplied is in accordance with the requirements of these specifications. All test reports and certifications shall be furnished to the engineer before any requests for shop inspection are made.

903.3.4.2 Steel Fabrication and Erection. Structural steel fabrication and erection shall be in accordance with Secs 712 and 1080, except as hereinafter specified.

903.3.4.3 Welder Qualifications. Before starting fabrication of structural aluminum, all welders shall be qualified in accordance with the latest edition of ANSI/AWS D1.2 – Structural Welding Code, Aluminum. The test specimens shall be made using a base metal of aluminum alloy 6061-T6 using filler metal acceptable for welding this alloy and inert gas shield arc. Requalification may be required any time there is specific reason to question the welder's ability.

903.3.4.4 Welding Inspection. All aluminum welds shall be inspected by the fabricator to verify the reliability of production as follows:

(a) Visual inspection of all welds, proof testing of welds, and sufficient destructive testing of weld samples fabricated during the production welding.

(b) Poor welding workmanship noted by visual inspection will be sufficient cause for rejection.

903.3.4.5 Contact Surfaces. Contact surfaces of aluminum flange castings shall be finished to provide at least 50 percent contact after assembly, as indicated by the Standard Machinist's Blue Test.

903.3.4.6 Fabrication of Aluminum Alloy. Fabrication of aluminum alloy material shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and the following requirements. Flame cutting will not be permitted. All holes in castings shall be machined for final fit. Welding shall be done by the inert gas shielded arc method, and flux shall not be used. Precautions shall be taken to avoid scoring or marring of aluminum surfaces. The engineer will reject any scoring or marring that gives an objectionable appearance. Cast parts shall have all casting irregularities removed. Tubing shall be seamless, and exterior and interior surfaces shall be clean, smooth and free from slivers, laminations, grooves, cracks or other defects.

903.3.4.7 Shop Inspection. Shop inspection will be in accordance with Sec 1080.

903.3.4.8 Wind Testing. Simulated wind-shop test loading for aluminum trusses will be required as shown on the plans. The load in kips and location of the point of application shall be indicated on the shop drawings.

903.3.4.9 Handling and Storage. Handling and storage of material shall be in accordance with Sec 712. If specified, galvanized high strength bolts and washers shall be in accordance with Sec 903.2.2. Bolts shall be snugly tightened. Connections in which steel and aluminum are in contact shall be protected as shown on the plans.

903.3.4.10 Surfaces. Galvanized and aluminum material shall be handled to avoid damage to the surfaces. Any material on which the galvanizing has been bruised or broken will be rejected or may, with approval from the engineer, be repaired in accordance with Sec 1081.

903.3.5 Sign Storage, Certification and Erection.

903.3.5.1 Storage of Signs. Signs delivered for use on a project shall be stored in a manner meeting the approval of the engineer. Any sign damaged, discolored or defaced during transportation, storage or erection may be rejected.

903.3.5.2 Fabricator's Certification. The contractor shall furnish to the engineer, prior to sign erection, the fabricator's certification stating, "I hereby certify that only material and manufacturing processes in full compliance with the Missouri Department of Transportation job specification requirements were used in the fabrication of signs for Job _____, Route _____, County _____."

903.3.5.3 Erection of Signs. Sign posts shall be set vertically true to line such that the signs will be level, at the proper angle with the roadway, and with the minimum clearances shown on the plans. Mounted signs shall present a smooth flat surface varying no more than 3/8 inch from a 4-foot straightedge placed in any position on the face of the sign after erection. Signs on traffic signal posts shall be mounted with strap or clamp type sign supports as shown on the plans or as approved by the engineer. Signs shall not be mounted on light poles.

903.3.6 Delineators. Delineators shall be installed vertically and any delineator considered unfit for use by the engineer shall be removed and replaced at the contractor’s expense.

903.4 Final Cleanup. Final cleanup of right of way shall be in accordance with Sec 104.11.

903.5 Method of Measurement. Final measurement will not be made except for authorized changes during construction, or where appreciable errors are found in the contract quantity. The revision or correction will be computed and added to or deducted from the contract quantity. Where required, measurements will be made in the following manner.

Measurement of concrete for bolt-down footings and embedded footings will be made separately to the nearest 0.01 cubic yard for each footing and to the nearest 0.1 cubic yard for the total, as shown on the plans. No measurement will be made for concrete or polyurethane foam used in footings for perforated square steel tube posts (PSST).

903.5.1 Measurement of the weight of structural steel and pipe posts will be made to the nearest pound for each post and to the nearest 10 pounds for the total, as shown on the plans. Weights will be computed using the theoretical weight of the various sections.

903.5.2 Measurement of sign areas will be made to the nearest 1/10 square foot for each sign and to the nearest square foot for the total. The area of each sign will be that of the smallest rectangular, triangular or trapezoidal shape that will encompass the sign panel.

903.5.3 Measurement of perforated square steel tube, u-channel and wood posts will be made to the nearest linear foot for each post, as shown on the plans.

903.5.4 Measurement of post anchors for PSST will be made per each for each post anchor type. Measurement of breakaway assemblies for PSST will be made per each complete assembly.

903.5.5 Measurement of delineators will be made per each.

903.6 Basis of Payment.

903.6.1 Breakaway assemblies for pipe posts and structural steel posts, including the base connection, hinge plate, fuse plate, structural bolts and all other fabrication, complete in place, are incidental, regardless of the post size or shape. Breakaway assemblies for perforated square steel tube posts, complete in place, will be paid for at the contract unit price each, regardless of the post size.

903.6.2 Highway signing will be paid for at the contract unit price for each of the items included in the contract. No direct payment will be made for incidental items necessary to complete the work, unless specifically provided as a pay item in the contract.

903.6.3 Delineator posts will be paid for at the contract unit price. No direct payment will be made for reflective sheeting or post anchors.

903.6.4 Perforated square steel tube (PSST), u-channel and wood posts will be paid for at the contract unit price for each of the items included in the contract. PSST post anchor installations will be paid for separately for each anchor type. All costs for PSST footing installations shall be considered included in the cost of the post anchor.

903.6.5 Concrete footings for bolt-down and embedded installations will be paid for separately at the contract unit price. Excavation, backfilling, reinforcing steel, anchor bolts and nuts, grout and other items shown on the plans will be considered included in payment for concrete footings. No payment will be made for concrete or polyurethane foam used for the installation of PSST footings.

903.6.6 Structural steel and pipe posts will be paid for at the contract unit price for each of the items included in the contract.

ITEM MO-908 MULCHING

DESCRIPTION

908-1.1 This work shall consist of furnishing, hauling, placing, and securing mulch on surfaces indicated on the plans or as designated by the engineer. Disturbed areas outside of authorized construction limits shall be mulched at the contractor's expense.

MATERIALS

908-2.1 MULCH MATERIALS (Vegetative with an Overspray). The vegetative mulch shall be prairie hay or straw from oats, rye, wheat or barley. Prairie hay shall consist of any combination of any of the following plants: Big Bluestem, Little Bluestem, Indiangrass, Sideoats Gramma and native wildflowers. The mulch shall be free of prohibited weed seed as stated in the Missouri Seed Law and shall be relatively free of all other noxious and undesirable seed. The mulch shall be clean and bright, relatively free of foreign material and be dry enough to spread properly. If the above specifications cannot be met practicably, hay of the following plants may, with the engineer's approval, be substituted: Smooth Brome, Timothy, Orchard Grass, Reed Canary Grass, Tall Fescue, Redtop, Kentucky Bluegrass, Alfalfa and Birdfsfoot Trefoil.

The overspray material may be virgin wood cellulose fibers or recycled slick paper as herein specified. It shall not contain any germination or growth inhibiting substances. The overspray shall be green in color after application and shall have the property to be evenly dispersed and suspended when agitated in water. When sprayed uniformly over vegetative mulch, the mulch fibers shall form an absorbent cover, allowing percolation of water to the underlying soil. The mulch shall be packaged in moisture resistant bags with the net weight of the packaged material plainly shown on each bag. The mulch fibers shall not be water-soluble.

Virgin wood cellulose fibers shall be produced by either the ground or cooked fiber process and shall have the following properties:

Moisture Content, percent by weight, max	15
Organic Matter-Wood Fiber, percent by weight, min	80
pH	4.3-8.5

Recycled slick paper mulch shall be produced from printer's slick paper containing wood cellulose and kaolin clay. Recycled newsprint or cardboard will not be allowed. The material shall be free of other material or fillers and shall have the following properties:

Moisture Content, percent by weight, max	8
pH	4.5-6.5

The contractor shall furnish a manufacturer's certification in triplicate certifying that the overspray mulch materials comply with these specifications. The engineer may sample and test these materials prior to approval and use. Acceptance will be based upon a satisfactory certification and results of any test deemed necessary by the engineer.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

908-3.1 MULCHING. Before spreading mulch, all stones larger than 2 inches in any diameter, sticks, stumps, and other debris shall be removed from the area to be mulched. All mulch shall be distributed evenly over the area to be mulched within 24 hours following the seeding operation.

The vegetative mulch shall be uniformly applied at the rate of 2 1/2 tons per acre. Recycled slick paper shall be applied at the rate of 750 pounds per acre. The recycled slick paper shall be hydraulically applied over the vegetative mulch as a separate operation. Virgin wood cellulose fibers with 90 percent or more organic matter shall be applied at the rate of 750 pounds per acre and that with 80 to 89 percent inclusive shall be applied at a rate calculated as follows:

$$\text{Rate lb/acre} = \frac{100}{\text{Actual Percent Organic Matter}} \times 750 \text{ lb/acre}$$

The overspray material shall be mixed with water in a manner to provide a homogenous slurry. Equipment for mixing and applying the slurry shall be capable of applying it uniformly over the entire vegetative mulched area. The slurry mixture shall be agitated during application to keep the ingredients thoroughly mixed.

908-3.2 CARE AND REPAIR.

Following the mulching operation, precautions shall be taken to prohibit foot or vehicular traffic over the mulched area. The contractor shall be required to repair or replace any mulching that is defective or becomes damaged until the project is finally accepted. When, in the judgment of the engineer, such defects or damages are the result of poor workmanship or failure to meet the requirements of the specifications, the cost of the necessary repairs or replacement shall be borne by the contractor.

However, once the contractor has completed the mulching of any area in accordance with the provisions of the specifications and to the satisfaction of the engineer, no additional work at his/her expense will be required, but subsequent repairs and replacements deemed necessary by the engineer shall be made by the contractor and will be paid for as additional or extra work in accordance with Section 40-04 of the General Provisions.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

908-4.1 Measurement of mulch will be made to the nearest 1/10 acre of the area mulched.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

908-5.1 Payment shall be made at the contract unit price per acre or fraction thereof, for the accepted quantity of mulching. The price shall be full compensation for furnishing and placing all material and for all labor, equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the work prescribed in this item.

Payment will be made under:

Item MO-908-5.1	Airport Mulching--per acre

SECTION 1001
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR MATERIAL

1001.1 All requirements of Sec 106 will apply to material hereinafter specified. Material or processes requiring pre-qualification or pre-acceptance shall be in accordance with the applicable sections of these specifications. After approval, the material or process will be placed on either the qualified list or the pre-acceptance list (PAL) maintained on MoDOT's web site by Construction and Materials. The contractor shall select materials or processes from the appropriate list for use in MoDOT work. Final acceptance may be based on field inspection.

1001.2 All packaged material shall be plainly marked showing the quantity and nature of the contents and shall be delivered intact.

1001.3 A description of the classification of deleterious material may be found in MoDOT's *EPG 106.3.2.71* on MoDOT's web site.

1001.4 Chat will be defined as an aggregate waste material that was formed in the course of milling operations employed to recover lead and zinc from metal-bearing ore minerals.

1001.5 Crushed stone will be defined as the product obtained by the artificial reduction in the size of rock that has been mined or excavated from ledge formation. Chat as defined in Sec 1001.4 is not included.

1001.6 Gravel will be defined as the coarse granular material, generally considered as material retained on the No. 4 or No. 10 sieve, but may include finer sizes, resulting from the natural disintegration and abrasion of rock, or from processing of weakly bound conglomerate. Gravel may include such material that has been further reduced in size by artificial means.

1001.7 Porphyry will be defined as a fine-grained, dense, igneous rock generally occurring in the Missouri counties of Iron, Madison, St. Francois and their adjacent counties.

1001.8 Wet bottom boiler slag will be defined as a hard, angular by-product of the combustion of coal in wet bottom boilers.

1001.9 Sieves specified for gradation requirements shall have openings as prescribed in AASHTO M 92.

1001.10 Storage and Handling of Aggregate. Aggregate shall be produced, handled and stockpiled to minimize segregation, degradation and contamination. Regardless of the method of storage and handling, all aggregate that is segregated, degraded or contaminated to the extent that the aggregate does not meet specifications, will be considered unacceptable. Aggregate may be reconditioned by any method that produces satisfactory material.

1001.11 Approval of Aggregate Sources. All sources of aggregate shall be evaluated by the engineer for initial approval and source approval as herein prescribed, prior to acceptance of aggregate from that source.

1001.11.1 Sources of crushed stone shall be evaluated for initial approval on a ledge by ledge basis. Each exposed ledge will be identified, and the engineer will describe the ledge boundaries. Only identified ledges shall be used in the manufacture of the final product. A sample for initial approval will be required from each ledge. Resampling will be required if source approvals indicate a significant change has occurred.

1001.11.2 Source approvals will be required a minimum of every year. Source approval samples will be required for each unique combination or ledges. Resampling will be required at closer intervals if, in the judgment of the engineer, any significant change has occurred to the source. Samples of aggregate for source approval shall be taken while the engineer is present.

1001.11.3 Sources approval of natural sand, gravel and manufactured lightweight aggregate shall be evaluated as the final product .

1001.11.4 Sources of aggregate such as chat, slag and other by-products from previously produced material or any other undefined sources will be evaluated on an individual basis.

1001.12 Mining By-Product Aggregate. Chat may be furnished under the following requirements.

1001.12.1 Chat used in hot, warm, or cold mix asphalt, slurry seal, microsurfacing, or in epoxy seal delivered to MoDOT projects or property shall have a total lead content less than 4,500 ppm as determined by EPA Method 3050B, Acid Digestion of Sediments, Sludges, and Soils. Testing shall be conducted a minimum of once per year per source/location of chat.

1001.12.2 Chat used in Portland cement concrete, granular road base, flowable fill, stabilized road base, ice control material, or chip seal delivered to MoDOT projects or property shall have Synthetic Precipitation Leaching (SPLP) testing conducted using EPA SW-846 Method 1312 as required by 40 CFR 278. The leachate testing results shall not exceed the National Primary Drinking Water Standards for lead and cadmium and the gresh water chronic National Recommended Water Quality Criterion for zinc of 120 ug/1. Testing shall be conducted a minimum of once per year per source/location of chat.

1001.12.3 Test reports shall be submitted to Construction and Materials prior to chat being used on any MoDOT project or property. The report shall identify the location of the stockpile, date of sample, and specific test results as required in 40 CFR 278. Attached to the report shall be a certification from the supplier stating that the material furnished does not exceed the lead amounts specified in 40 CFR 278. The Engineer will maintain copies of laboratory test results and certifications for a minimum of three years.

1001.12.4 The supplier shall also provide a summary at the end of each calendar year that identifies the quantity and location of chat shipped for use on MoDOT projects.

1001.13 Dust Suppressants. Approved dust suppressant additives may be used during the crushing or aggregate handling process provided there is no detrimental effect to the aggregate or subsequent products made from the affected aggregate.

1001.13.1 Manufacturer and Brand Name Approval. Prior to approval and use of a dust suppressant additive, the manufacturer shall submit to Construction and Materials a certified test report from an approved independent testing laboratory showing specific test results when tested in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 62. The certified test report shall contain the manufacturer's name, brand name of material, date tested, date of manufacture and dosage rate of the additive used. In addition, the manufacturer shall submit to Construction and Materials a sample representing the additive tested by the independent testing laboratory and accompanied by a material data sheet, an MSDS showing the brand name, composition or description of the product, the normal and maximum recommended dosage rates, the manner of identification on containers and a copy of the infrared spectrum. The manufacturer shall certify that the material, when used at or below the maximum dosage rate, does not affect the properties of the aggregate or subsequent products made from the treated aggregate. The manufacturer shall also guarantee that as long as the material is furnished under that brand and designation, the material will be of the same composition as originally approved and will in no way be altered or changed. Upon approval of the additive, the manufacturer and brand name will be placed on a list of qualified dust suppressant additives for aggregate.

1001.13.2 The aggregate supplier shall keep the inspector advised of the use of any dust suppressant material and shall provide for the inspection of such facilities. No dust suppressant shall be applied above the manufacturer's maximum recommended rate.

1001.14 Producer Quality Management Plan

1001.14.1 Scope. This specification covers the acceptance criteria for material items produced under the producer Quality Management Plan (QMP). The producer shall develop a QM plan for MoDOT's acceptance as defined by one of the following:

a) Producer QC and membership in an industry recognized audit program.

b) Producer QC and independent QA testing.

1001.14.2 MoDOT shall perform audits including testing, inspection, and documentation review. QC testing, independent assurance testing, documentation, and conformance to product specifications may be subject to verification by MoDOT at the production facility or at the jobsite. MoDOT may audit the QMP of the producer at any time.

1001.14.3 Quality Management Requirements. The producer's QMP shall include the minimum following requirements:

a) Frequency of QC sampling and testing.

b) Frequency of the producer's QA sampling, testing and identification of a third party testing firm if applicable.

c) Organizational structure of QC staff, job duties, and responsibilities including the identification of a QC manager.

d) Method of documenting product compliance. The producer shall provide documentation of the material meeting specification.

e) Type of material to be produced.

f) An independent dispute resolution testing firm (company name), contact person, address, and phone number.

g) A process for tracking deficient work and corrective actions in accordance with Sec 1001.14.8.

h) A process for addressing non-conforming work and corrective action requests in accordance with Sec 1001.14.9.

i) A list of hold points for QC in accordance with Sec 1001.14.10.

j) A list of MoDOT hold points in accordance with Sec 1001.14.10.

1001.14.4 Third Party Resolution. The third party shall be independent of the producer, contractor, MoDOT, consultants, and all project subcontractors or suppliers. All testing of material for dispute resolution shall be performed by a laboratory that is AASHTO Accreditation Program certified in the areas of the material being tested.

1001.14.5 Testing Personnel. Where applicable, testing shall be performed by individuals who are certified by the MoDOT Technician Certification Program or an accredited laboratory.

1001.14.6 Record Retention. The producer shall maintain copies of the plant QMP, applicable AASHTO, ASTM, MoDOT, and/or LPA standards and approved production drawings. The records shall include information related to all components used to produce final product such as aggregate tests, steel certifications and mill tests, PAL numbers, QC test results and other material component documentation such as the bill of lading for material used in the production of the finished product. Records related to QC tester qualifications shall be retained. Records shall be retained for a minimum of three years and provided to the engineer in electronic form upon request.

1001.14.7 Producer Quality Assurance. When required, QA testing by a third party shall be performed at the frequency required in each specification. Participation in an industry recognized auditing organization may be substituted for a third party QA testing.

1001.14.8 Control fo Deficient Work. Deficient work is considered work that is found to be not specification compliant by QC. Deficient work may be corrected to be specification compliant as defined in the QMP. It is the responsibility of QC to identify, document, and correct deficient work. When QC personnel discovers deficient work that cannot be corrected the work becomes non-conforming. For non-conforming work, QC shall submit a Non-Conformance Report (NCR) to the engineer and contractor for acceptance or rejection.

1001.14.9 Control of Non-Conforming Work. Non-conforming work are items that are not compliant with the specifications and have gone through the QC process undiscovered or uncorrected. When non-conforming work is identified by QC, independent QA, MoDOT QA testing, or auditing of the contractor, a solution will be proposed by the producer in writing and approved or rejected by both the engineer and contractor.

1001.14.9.1 Reoccurring non-conforming work shall be addressed by the producer and Construction and Materials Division by one of the following methods:

a) The producer develops a corrective action plan.

b) Alteration of the QMP by the producer with the engineer's approval.

c) Review producer's QC results with producer's associated independent organization. Producer to be re-audited by independent organization.

1001.14.10 Hold Points

1001.14.10.1 Hold points are events that require approval prior to continuation of work. Hold points occur at definable stages of work or progress phases when the succeeding work depends on acceptance of the preceding work. QC staff shall provide complete inspection reports and checklist to MoDOT personnel prior to all MoDOT hold points.

1001.14.10.2 QC hold points are established by the QMP for compliance verification prior to any MoDOT hold point. At a minimum, a QC hold point shall occur just prior to or simultaneous with each MoDOT hold point.

1001.14.10.3 A list of MoDOT hold points will be determined by the engineer. The engineer may make changes to the MoDOT hold point list at any time. Following a MoDOT hold point inspection, all non-conforming work identified by MoDOT shall be corrected prior to continuing work and a new hold point shall be scheduled.

1001.14.10.4 MoDOT may waive hold points at any time. Waivers will be in writing sent to the producer as soon as possible from the engineer.

SECTION 1002
AGGREGATE FOR ASPHALTIC CONCRETE

1002.1 Scope. This specification covers aggregate to be used in asphaltic concrete.

1002.2 Coarse Aggregate.

1002.2.1 All coarse aggregate shall consist of sound, durable rock, free from cemented lumps or objectionable coatings. When tested in accordance with AASHTO T 96, the percentage of wear shall not exceed 50. The percentage of deleterious substances shall not exceed the following values, and the sum of percentages of all deleterious substances shall not exceed 8.0 percent.

Deleterious Material	Percent by Weight
Deleterious Rock	8.0
Shale	1.0
Other Foreign Material	0.5

1002.2.1.1 The above requirements apply to combined aggregates during production when used in accordance with Sec 403.

1002.2.1.2 Crushed stone shall be obtained from rock of uniform quality. Rock tested from any combination of ledges for source approval, and trial mix samples, shall meet the following criteria.

Property	Value
Los Angeles Abrasion, AASHTO T 96, percent loss, max	50
Absorption, AASHTO T 85, percent, max	4.0

1002.2.2 Gravel aggregate shall be washed sufficiently to remove any objectional coating and shall meet the following criteria for source approval and trial mix samples.

Property	Value
Los Angeles Abrasion, AASHTO T 96, percent loss, max	50
Absorption, AASHTO T 85, percent, max	5.5

1002.2.3 Steel slag consisting principally of a fused mixture of oxides and silicates shall be a synthetic aggregate produced as a by-product of basic oxygen, electric or open hearth steel making furnaces. The steel slag shall be aged at least three months after crushing and screening. Steel slag, which has been previously crushed, screened, and aged three months will not be required to receive additional aging. Steel slag from one source shall not be blended with steel slag from a different source.

1002.3 Fine Aggregate.

1002.3.1 Fine aggregate for asphaltic concrete shall be a fine, granular material passing the 3/8-inch sieve, naturally produced by the disintegration of rock of a siliceous nature and/or manufactured by the mechanical reduction of sound durable rock in accordance with Secs 1002.2.1.2 and 1002.2.2. With written approval from the engineer and compliance with this specification, chat sand produced from flint chat in the Joplin area, dolomite chat as produced in the southeast lead belt area, fines manufactured from igneous rock, chert gravel or wet bottom boiler slag may be used as fine aggregate for asphaltic concrete. Fine aggregate shall be free from cemented or conglomerated lumps and shall not have any coating or injurious material. The percentage of deleterious substances shall not exceed the following values:

Item	Percent by Weight
Clay lumps and shale	1.0
Total lightweight particles, including coal and lignite	0.5
Other deleterious substances	0.1

1002.3.2 The total lightweight particle requirement will not apply to wet bottom boiler slag, angular chert sand or manufactured sand.

1002.4 Mineral Filler. Mineral filler shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 17. Prior to approval and use of mineral filler for SMA mixtures, the manufacturer shall submit to Construction and Materials a certified test report from an approved independent testing laboratory showing specific test results when tested in accordance with applicable sections of AASHTO M17 and MoDOT Test Method TM-73. The certified test report shall contain the manufacturer's name, product, date tested and date of manufacture. In addition, the manufacturer shall submit to Construction and Materials a sample representing the mineral filler tested by the independent testing laboratory and accompanied by a material data sheet and an MSDS showing the product and composition or description of the product. The manufacturer shall guarantee that as long as the material is furnished under that brand and designation, the material will be of the same composition as originally approved and will in no way be altered or changed. Upon approval of the mineral filler, the manufacturer and product will be placed on a list of qualified SMA mineral fillers.

1002.5 Hydrated Lime. Hydrated lime shall be thoroughly dry and free of lumps. Hydrated lime shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 303, Type I or II, except the gradation shall be determined in accordance with AASHTO T 37.

SECTION 1003
AGGREGATE FOR SEAL COATS

1003.1 Scope. This specification covers aggregate to be used for seal coat.

1003.2 Aggregate. Aggregate for seal coats shall consist of sound durable rock particles, free from objectionable coatings.

1003.2.1 When tested in accordance with AASHTO T 96, the percentage of wear shall not exceed 50 percent. The sum of the percentages of all deleterious substances shall not exceed 2.0 percent for Grade A aggregate, 4.0 percent for Grade B or 8.0 percent for Grade C aggregate, and the aggregate shall meet the following criteria:

Property	Grade A1 & A2 Aggregate	Grade B1 & B2 Aggregate	Grade C Aggregate
Deleterious rock, percent by weight, max	2.0	4.0	8.0
Shale, percent by weight, max	0.5	0.75	1.0
Other foreign material, percent by weight, max	0.5	0.5	0.5
Two fractured faces, percent, min	100	100	100
Thin, elongated particles, ASTM D 4791, 5:1, percent, max[a]	10	N/A	N/A
Micro-Deval, AASHTO T 327, percent, max	18	20	N/A

[a]Test material retained on the No. 4 sieve.

1003.2.2 The aggregate shall be in accordance with the following requirements for the grade specified in the contract:

Sieve Size	Grade A1 Aggregate	Grade A2 Aggregate	Grade B1 Aggregate	Grade B2 Aggregate	Grade C Aggregate
	Percent Passing by Weight	Percent Passing by Weight	Percent Passing by Weight	Percent Passing by Weight	Percent Passing by Weight
1/2"	100	100	100	100	100
3/8"	97-100	100	95-100	100	95-100
1/4"	--	97-100	--	95-100	--
No. 4	0-25	--	0-30	--	0-35
No. 8	--	0-30	--	0-30	--
No. 200[a, b]	0-1.0	0-1.5	0-2	0-2.5	0-2

[a]The percent passing the No. 200 sieve may be increased by 1.0 percent provided the aggregate is pre-coated with bituminous material.
[b]These values may be raised by 0.5% at the destination to account for handling provided the material meets this gradation at the source.

1003.2.3 Crushed stone shall be obtained from rock of uniform quality. Rock from individual ledges and gravel tested for initial source approval shall meet the following criteria:

Property	Grade A1 & A2 Aggregate	Grade B1 & B2 Aggregate	Grade C Aggregate
Absorption, AASHTO T 85, percent, max	2.0	4.0	4.0

1003.2.4 Lightweight aggregate shall be in accordance with the following requirements for the grade specified in the contract:

Property	Grade	Grade	Grade C

	A1 & A2 Aggregate	B1 & B2 Aggregate	Aggregate
Absorption, ASSHTO T 85, percent, max	n/a	n/a	n/a
Los Angeles Abrasion for Lightweight Aggregate, MoDOT Test Method TM 78, percent, max	50	50	50

SECTION 1004
GRADED AGGREGATE FOR BITUMINOUS SURFACES

1004.1 Scope. This specification covers aggregate to be used in bituminous surfacing.

1004.2 Coarse Aggregate.

1004.2.1 All coarse aggregate shall consist of sound, durable rock, free from cemented lumps or objectionable coatings. The percentage of deleterious substances shall not exceed the following values and the sum of percentages of all deleterious substances shall not exceed 8.0 percent.

Deleterious Material	Percent by Weight
Deleterious Rock	8.0
Mud Balls and Shale Combined	2.0
Clay, uniformly dispersed	3.0
Other Foreign Material	0.5

1004.2.1.1 The above requirements apply to combined aggregates during production when used in accordance with Sec 401 and 402.

1004.2.1.2 If a density requirement is specified for asphaltic concrete, the total quantity of chert in each size or fraction of produced crushed stone aggregate, including that permitted as deleterious, shall not vary by more than 10 percentage points from the quantity present in the aggregate used in the approved laboratory job mixtures.

1004.2.1.3 Crushed stone shall be produced from rock of uniform quality. Rock tested from any combination of ledges for source approval and trial mix samples shall meet the following criteria.

Property	Value
Los Angeles Abrasion, AASHTO T 96, percent loss, max.	55
Absorption, AASHTO T 85, percent, max.	4.5

1004.2.2 Gravel aggregate shall be washed sufficiently to remove any objectionable coating and shall meet the following criteria for source approval and trial mix samples.

Property	Value
Los Angeles Abrasion, AASHTO T 96, percent loss, max.	55
Absorption, AASHTO T 85, percent, max.	5.5

1004.2.3 Steel slag consisting principally of a fused mixture of oxides and silicates shall be a synthetic aggregate produced as a by-product of basic oxygen, electric or open hearth steel making furnaces. The steel slag shall be aged at least three months after crushing and screening. Steel slag, which has been previously crushed, screened, and aged three months will not be required to receive additional aging. Steel slag from one source shall not be blended with steel slag from a different source.

1004.3 The aggregate shall be in accordance with the following requirements for the grade specified in the contract. If grade is not specified, any listed grade may be used.

Percent Passing								
		Sieve Size						
Grade	Type of Material	3/4 in.	1/2 in.	3/8 in.	#4	#8	#30	#200
1	Crushed Stone or Porphyry	100	95 – 100	65 – 95	20 –55	2 – 20	….	0 – 5
2	Gravel	100	95 – 100	….	40 – 80	15 – 50	0 – 30	0 – 5
3	Chat	100	95 – 100	….	45 – 85	30 – 60	0 – 30	0 – 5

SECTION 1005
AGGREGATE FOR CONCRETE

1005.1 Scope. This specification covers aggregate to be used for concrete construction.

1005.2 Coarse Aggregate.

1005.2.1 All coarse aggregate for concrete shall consist of sound, durable rock, free from objectionable coatings and frozen and cemented lumps. The percentage of deleterious substances shall not exceed the following values, and the sum of percentages of all deleterious substances, exclusive of Items 5 and 6, shall not exceed 6.0 percent. For crushed stone, the percentage of wear shall not exceed 50 when tested in accordance with AASHTO T 96.

Deleterious Material	Percent by Weight
Deleterious Rock	6.0
Shale	1.0
Chert in Limestone	4.0
Other Foreign Material	0.5
Material Passing No. 200 Sieve Gradations D & E	2.5[a]
Thin or Elongated	5.0

[a] Value may be raised to 3.0 percent, providing the material passing the #200 sieve in the fine aggregate is less than or equal to 1.0 percent.

1005.2.1.1 The above requirements will apply to each size or fraction of aggregate produced.

1005.2.1.2 Crushed stone shall be obtained from rock of uniform quality. Rock tested for initial approval shall be in accordance with the criteria below. Source approval and production samples shall also meet the following criteria:

Property	Value
Los Angeles Abrasion, AASHTO T 96, percent loss, max	50
Absorption, AASHTO T 85, percent, max.:	
(a) Portland Cement Concrete Pavement	--
(b) Portland Cement Concrete Masonry	3.5
Soundness, MoDOT Test Method TM 14, percent loss, max.:	
(a) Portland Cement Concrete Pavement	--
(b) Portland Cement Concrete Masonry	18.0
Durability Factor, AASHTO T 161 Procedure B, percent, min:	
(a) Portland Cement Concrete Pavement	75[a]
(b) Portland Cement Concrete Masonry	--

[a] Approval will be based on maximum aggregate size produced that meets durability requirements.

1005.2.1.3 Gravel shall be washed and shall be in accordance with the criteria below for initial approval. Source approval and production samples shall also meet the following criteria:

Property	Value
Los Angeles Abrasion, AASHTO T 96, percent loss, max.	45
Absorption, AASHTO T 85, percent, max.	4.5
Soundness, MoDOT Test Method TM 14, percent loss, max.	18.0

1005.2.1.4 The engineer reserves the right to use additional test methods, such as ASTM C 586, AASHTO T 161 or other appropriate tests, to measure the soundness and durability of aggregate for use in concrete when deemed necessary.

1005.2.2 Coarse aggregate for concrete pavement or base course shall be crushed stone or porphyry.

1005.2.3 Grade F Aggregate. Coarse aggregate for Portland cement concrete pavement, base and approach slabs for bridges that is not produced from the Burlington, Keokuk, Cedar Valley (formerly Callaway) or Warsaw limestone formations, which is obtained from sources in the following areas shall have a maximum top size of ¾ inch:

(a) State of Kansas, Iowa and Nebraska.

(b) Counties of Missouri – Adair, Andrew, Atchison, Bates, Benton, Buchanan, Caldwell, Carroll, Cass, Cedar, Chariton, Clay, Clinton, Daviess, DeKalb, Gentry, Grundy, Harrison, Henry, Holt, Jackson, Johnson, Lafayette, Linn, Livingston, Mercer, Macon, Nodaway, Pettis, Platte, Putnam, Randolph, Ray, St. Clair, Saline, Schuyler, Sullivan, Vernon and Worth.

1005.2.4 Coarse aggregate for concrete for structures, except as specified in Sec 1005.2.5, may be gravel or crushed stone. Coarse aggregate for Class B, B-1, B-2, MB-2 or Seal concrete shall be in accordance with either Gradation D or E. Coarse aggregate for Class A-1 concrete shall be in accordance with Gradation E.

Gradation D	Percent by Weight
Passing 1-inch sieve	100
Passing 3/4-inch sieve	85-100
Passing 3/8-inch sieve	15-55
Passing No. 4 sieve	0-10

Gradation E	Percent by Weight
Passing 3/4-inch sieve	100
Passing 1/2-inch sieve	70-100
Passing 3/8-inch sieve	30-70
Passing No. 4 sieve	0-20
Passing No. 8 sieve	0-6

1005.2.5 Coarse aggregate for ornamental concrete shall be crushed stone in accordance with Sec 1005.2.4, Gradation E. However, the use of coarse aggregate containing more than 2 percent chert will not be permitted.

1005.3 Fine Aggregate.

1005.3.1 Fine aggregate for concrete shall be a fine granular material naturally produced by the disintegration of rock of a siliceous nature, or shall be manufactured from an approved limestone or dolomite source as defined in Sec 1005.2. By specific approval from the engineer, chat sand produced from flint chat in the Joplin area or fines manufactured from igneous rock or chert gravel may be used. Fine aggregate shall be free from cemented or conglomerated lumps and shall not have any coating of injurious material. The percentage of deleterious substances shall not exceed the following values:

Deleterious Material	Percent by Weight
Clay Lumps and Shale	0.25
Coal and Lignite	0.50
Total Lightweight Particles, Including Coal and Lignite	0.50
Material Passing No. 200 Sieve (a) Natural Sand (b) Manufactured Sand	 2.0 4.0
Other Deleterious Substances	0.10

1005.3.2 The total lightweight particle requirement will not apply to angular chert sand or manufactured sand.

1005.3.3 Fine aggregate shall produce a mortar having a seven-day compressive strength of at least 90 percent of a control mortar developed at the same proportions, using standard Ottawa sand. Tests shall be performed in accordance with AASHTO T 106. Cement used in the tests shall be Type I, in accordance with Sec 1019. AASHTO T 106 may be waived provided the fine aggregate produces a glass color standard lighter than Organic Platte No. 3, in accordance with AASHTO T 21.

1005.3.4 Fine aggregate for ornamental concrete shall be free from coal and lignite material when tested in accordance with AASHTO T 113.

1005.3.5 All fine aggregate for PCCM shall meet the following gradation requirements:

Sieve	Percent by Weight
Passing 3/8-inch sieve	100
Passing No. 4 sieve	95-100
Passing No. 8 sieve	70-100
Passing No. 16 sieve	45-90
Passing No. 30 sieve	15-65
Passing No. 50 sieve	5-30
Passing No. 100 sieve	0-10

1005.4 Lightweight Aggregate.

1005.4.1 Lightweight aggregates shall be prepared by expanding, calcining, or sintering argillaceous material such as clay, shales, and slates.

1005.4.2 Grading The grading shall be uniform and conform to the requirements given in Table I.

1005.4.3 Unit Weight. The unit weight of lightweight aggregates shall not exceed the following:

Dry, Loose Weight, Max. lb/cu ft
Fine Aggregate 70
Coarse Aggregate 55

1005.4.3.1 Uniformity of Weight. If the unit weight of any shipment of lightweight aggregate when tested in accordance with AASHTO T 19 is found to vary by more than 10 percent from that of the sample submitted for source approval, the aggregate shipment may be rejected.

1005.4.4 Soundness. When tested in accordance with AASHTO T 104, the loss of lightweight fine or coarse aggregate in 5 cycles of the accelerated soundness test shall not exceed 8 percent if sodium sulfate is used or 10 percent if magnesium sulfate is used.

1005.4.5 Drying Shrinkage. The drying shrinkage of concrete specimens prepared and tested in accordance with AASHTO M 195, shall not exceed 0.07 percent.

1005.4.6 Sampling. Samples of fine and coarse aggregate shall be furnished by the contractor for source approval. Other samples shall be taken from shipments at intervals specified by the engineer.

Table I
Grading Requirements for Lightweight Aggregate

		Percent Passing Sieve Sizes									
Grade	Size	1 1/2"	1"	3/4"	1/2"	3/8"	No. 4	No. 8	No. 16	No. 50	No. 100

Fine Aggregate											
No. 4 to 0		---	---	---	---	100	85-100	---	40-80	10-35	5-20
Coarse Aggregate											
1	1" to 1/2"	100	90-100	20-55	0-10	0-5	---	---	---	---	---
2	1" to No. 4	100	95-100	---	25-60	---	0-10	0-5	---	---	---
3	3/4" to No. 4	---	100	90-100	---	20-55	0-10	0-5	---	---	---
4	1/2" to No. 4	---	---	100	90-100	40-70	0-15	0-5	---	---	---
5	3/8" to No. 8	---	---	---	100	85-100	10-30	0-10	0-5	---	---

SECTION 1006
AGGREGATE FOR SURFACING

1006.1 Scope. This specification covers aggregate to be used for surfacing.

1006.2 Aggregate for surfacing shall be composed durable particles of rock or reclaimed concrete. When tested in accordance with AASHTO T 96, the wear shall not exceed 60 percent. The deleterious substances shall not exceed the following values and the sum of percentages of all deleterious substances shall not exceed 12 percent.

Deleterious Material	Percent by Weight
Deleterious Rock and Shale	12.0
Mud Balls	5.0
Other Foreign Material	2.0

1006.3 Aggregate shall be in accordance with the following for the grade specified in the contract:

Grade	Type of Material	Percent Passing Sieve Sizes					
		1 in.	3/4 in.	3/8 in.	No. 4	No. 10	No. 200
A[a]	Gravel	100	80-100	---	60[b]	10-35	0-10
B[a]	Crushed Stone or Reclaimed Concrete	100	---	65[b]	---	5-25	---
C	Chat	100	---	---	80[b]	45[b]	---

[a]Type 1 Aggregate for Base may be used, except all material shall be in accordance with Sec 1007.
[b]Indicates maximum permitted.

1006.4 If the quantity is of a size that makes sampling not practical, this material may be accepted on certification or visual inspection as allowed in Sec 106.1.4.

1006.4.1 If the quantity is less than 500 tons, a commercially available grade of aggregate may be accepted on certification or visual inspection.

SECTION 1007
AGGREGATE FOR BASE

1007.1 Scope. This specification covers aggregate to be used for base.

1007.2 Type 1 Aggregate.

1007.2.1 Type 1 aggregate for base shall consist of crushed stone, sand and gravel or reclaimed asphalt or concrete. The aggregate shall not contain more than 15 percent deleterious rock and shale. The fraction passing No. 40 sieve shall have a maximum plasticity index of six. Any sand, silt and clay and any deleterious rock and shale shall be uniformly distributed throughout the material.

1007.2.2 The aggregate shall be in accordance with the following gradation requirements:

Sieve	Percent by Weight
Passing 1-inch	100
Passing 1/2-inch	60-90
Passing No. 4	35-60
Passing No. 30	10-35

1007.3 Type 5 Aggregate.

1007.3.1 Type 5 aggregate for base shall consist of crushed stone, sand and gravel or reclaimed asphalt or concrete. The aggregate shall not contain more than 15 percent deleterious rock and shale. The fraction passing the No. 40 sieve shall have a plasticity index not to exceed six. Any sand, silt and clay, and any deleterious rock and shale shall be uniformly distributed throughout the material.

1007.3.2 Type 5 aggregate shall be in accordance with the following gradation requirements:

Sieve	Percent by Weight
Passing 1-inch	100
Passing 1/2-inch	60-90
Passing No. 4	35-60
Passing No. 30	10-35
Passing No. 200	0-15

1007.4 Type 7 Aggregate.

1007.4.1 Type 7 aggregate for base shall consist of crushed stone, sand and gravel, or reclaimed asphalt or concrete. The aggregate shall not contain more than 15 percent deleterious rock and shale. The fraction passing the No. 40 sieve shall have a plasticity index not to exceed six. Any sand, silt and clay, and any deleterious rock and shale shall be uniformly distributed throughout the material.

1007.4.2 Type 7 aggregate shall be in accordance with the following gradation requirements:

Sieve	Percent by Weight
Passing 1 1/2-inch	100
Passing 1-inch	70-100
Passing No. 8	15-50
Passing No. 200	0-12

SECTION 1009
AGGREGATE FOR DRAINAGE

1009.1 Scope. This specification covers material requirements for aggregate as specified for various drainage systems.

1009.2 Quality. All aggregate shall be in accordance with Sec 1002, and shall be of the material and gradation specified herein.

1009.3 Gradation.

1009.3.1 Grade 1. The aggregate shall be sand and shall be in accordance with Sec 1005.3.

1009.3.2 Grade 2. The aggregate shall be a washed sand-gravel mixture in accordance with the following gradation requirements:

Sieve Size	Percent by Weight
1-inch	100
1/2-inch	55-90
No. 10	25-50
No. 40	10-30
No. 100	0-10
No. 200	0-3

1009.3.3 Grade 3. The aggregate shall be gravel, crushed stone, reclaimed concrete, or other approved material meeting on the gradation requirements for Sec 1005.2.

1009.3.4 Grade 4. The aggregate shall be crushed limestone or dolomite or reclaimed concrete, in accordance with the following gradation requirements:

Gradation A	
Sieve Size	**Percent by Weight**
1 1/2-inch	100
1-inch	95-100
1/2-inch	25-60
No. 4	0-10
No. 8	0-5

Gradation B	
Sieve Size	**Percent by Weight**
1-inch	100
3/4-inch	90-100
3/8-inch	20-55
No. 4	0-10
No. 8	0-5

1009.3.5 Grade 5. The aggregate shall be crushed limestone or dolomite or reclaimed concrete, in accordance with the following gradation requirements:

Sieve Size	Percent by Weight
1 1/2-inch	100
1-inch	95-100
1/2-inch	60-80
No. 4	40-55

No. 8	5-25
No. 16	0-8
No. 50	0-5

SECTION 1011
GEOTEXTILE

1011.1 Scope. This specification covers geotextile for use in subsurface drainage, sediment control and erosion control, or as a permeable separator.

1011.2 Acceptance. Acceptance of the material will be based on the manufacturer's certification and upon the results of such tests as may be performed by the engineer.

1011.3 Material. Geotextiles shall be in accordance with the physical and chemical requirements of AASHTO M 288 for the specified application, except as modified in this specification.

1011.3.1 Subsurface Drainage Geotextile. Subsurface drainage geotextile shall be used in subsurface drainage as a filter to protect drainage media from clogging with fines from adjacent soil. Typical applications include the lining of drainage trenches and the wrapping of drainpipes.

1011.3.1.1 The minimum permittivity shall be 1.0 sec-1.

1011.3.1.2 The material shall be AASHTO Class 2.

1011.3.2 Temporary Silt Fence Geotextile. Temporary silt fence geotextile shall be used in supported or non-supported sediment control fencing.

1011.3.3 Permanent Erosion Control Geotextile. Permanent erosion control geotextile shall be used when the erosion control measure will not be removed, such as erosion control of slopes and channels when placed under a rock blanket, rock ditch liner, etc.

1011.3.3.1 The minimum permittivity shall be 1.0 sec-1.

1011.3.3.2 The material shall be either AASHTO Class 1 or Class 2.

1011.3.4 Separation Geotextile. Separation geotextile shall be used as a separation material to prevent mixing of dissimilar material, and to control migration of backfill material through joints in structural elements.

1011.3.4.1 The minimum permittivity shall be 1.0 sec-1.

1011.3.4.2 The material shall be AASHTO Class 1.

1011.3.5 Erosion Control Blankets. Erosion control blankets (ECB) shall be categorized based on performance testing for the C-factor by ASTM D6459 and physical testing for the minimum tensile strength by ASTM D5035. Erosion control blankets shall meet the following requirements.

ECB Type	Description	Material Composition	Longevity	Max Slope	C-factor	Minimum Tensile Strength
1.A	Mulch Control Nets	A photodegradable synthetic mesh or woven biodegradable natural fiber netting	3 months	5:1	≤ 0.10 @ 5:1	5 lb/ft
1.B	Netless Rolled Erosion Control Blankets	Natural and/or polymer fibers mechanically interlocked and/or chemically adhered together to form an RECP	3 Months	4:1	≤ 0.10 @ 4:1	5 lb/ft
1.C	Light-Weight Double-Net Erosion Control Blankets	Natural and/or polymer fibers mechanically bound together by two rapidly degrading, synthetic or natural fiber netting	3 months	3:1	≤ 0.15 @ 3:1	50 lb/ft
1.D	Heavy Double-Net Erosion	Processed degradable natural and/or polymer fibers mechanically bound together between two rapidly degrading, synthetic or natural fiber nettings	3 months	2:1	≤ 0.20 @ 2:1	75 lb/ft

	Control Blankets					
2.A	Mulch Control Nets	A photodegradable synthetic mesh or woven biodegradable natural fiber netting	12 months	5:1	≤ 0.10 @ 5:1	5 lb/ft
2.B	Netless Rolled Erosion Control	Natural and/or polymer fibers mechanically interlocked and/or chemically adhered together to form an RECP	12 months	4:1	≤ 0.10 @ 4:1	5 lb/ft
2.C	Light-Weight Double-Net Erosion Control Blankets	Natural and/or polymer fibers mechanically bound together by two degrading, synthetic or natural fiber netting	12 months	3:1	≤ 0.15 @ 3:1	50 lb/ft
2.D	Heavy Double-Net Erosion Control Blankets	Processed degradable natural and/or polymer fibers mechanically bound together between two degrading, synthetic or natural fiber netting	12 months	2:1	≤ 0.20 @ 2:1	75 lb/ft
3.A	Mulch Control Nets	A slow degrading synthetic mesh or woven natural fiber netting	24 months	5:1	≤ 0.10 @ 5:1	25 lb/ft
3.B	Erosion Control Blankets	An erosion control blanket composed of processed slow degrading natural or polymer fibers mechanically bound together between two slow degrading synthetic or natural fiber nettings to form a continuous matrix	24 months	1.5:1	≤ 0.25 @ 1.5:1	100 lb/ft
4	Erosion Control Blankets	An erosion control blanket composed of processed slow degrading natural or polymer fibers mechanically bound together between two slow degrading synthetic or natural fiber nettings to form a continuous matrix	36 months	1:1	≤ 0.25 @ 1:1	125 lb/ft

1011.3.5.1 Anchors. Anchors as recommended by the erosion control product manufacturer shall be used.

1011.3.5.2 Test Methods.

1011.3.5.2.1 ASTM D6459 testing shall be performed on loam soil. The calculated C-factor for the tested slope shall be determined from the reported C-factor regression equation using an erosivity value of 224. Type 1.A, Type 2.A, and Type 3.A mulch control nets must be tested in conjunction with pre-applied mulch material. Minimum tensile strength shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D5035 in the machine direction.

1011.3.5.2.2 Texas Department of Transportation and the Texas Transportation Institute testing for product acceptance on 3:1 or 2:1 sand may be substituted for acceptance of ASTM D6459 on loam soil.

1011.3.5.3 Pre-Qualification List: Prior to use, the manufacturer shall furnish a manufacturer's certification to the Construction and Materials division stating the name of the manufacturer, the chemical composition of the filaments or yarns and certifying that the material supplied is in accordance with this specification. The certification shall include recent results of tests for all specified requirements. Final acceptance of erosion control blankets will be based on certification and field performance.

1011.3.5.4 Acceptance. Final acceptance of erosion control blankets will be based on the erosion control blankets being utilized as pre-qualified and actual field performance.

1011.3.6 Turf Reinforcement Mats. Turf reinforcement mats (TRM) shall be certified by the manufacturer for open flow channels and shall meet the following calculated shear stress:

TRM Type	Calculated Shear Stress (lbs/ft^2)
Type 1	3.5 – 6
Type 2	6.1 – 8

Type 3	8.1 – 10
Type 4	10.1 or greater

1011.3.6.1 Anchors. Anchors as recommended by the product manufacturer shall be used.

1011.3.6.2 Test Methods. Turf reinforcement mats tested and evaluated by either ASTM D6460 or by the Texas Department of Transportation and Texas Transportation Institute independent testing. The test results must indicate the maximum allowable shear strength. ASTM D6460 shall be tested on the loam soil.

1011.3.6.3 Pre-Qualification List: Prior to use, the manufacturer shall furnish a manufacturer's certification to the Construction and Materials division stating the name of the manufacturer, the chemical composition of the filaments or yarns and certifying that the material supplied is in accordance with this specification. The certification shall include recent results of tests for all specified requirements. Final acceptance of turf reinforcement mat will be based on certification and field performance.

1011.3.6.4 Acceptance. Final acceptance of turf reinforcement mats will be will be based on the turf reinforcement mat being utilized as pre-qualified and actual field performance..

1011.3.7 Unbonded Concrete Overlay Interlayer. Unbonded concrete overlay interlayers shall have the following material properties:

Property	Requirement	Test Method
Fabric Type	Non-woven Geotextile	
Mass per unit area	Min. 14.8 oz/sq.yd	ASTM D 5261
Thickness under load (pressure)	0.29 psi: ≥ 0.12 in 2.9 psi: ≥ 0.10 in 29 psi: ≥ 0.04 in	ASTM D 5199, modified under loads of 0.29, 2.9, and 29 psi
Tensile strength	≥ 685 lb/ft	ASTM D 4595
Maximum elongation	≤ 130%	ASTM D 4595
Water permeability in normal direction under load (pressure)	$\geq 3.3\times10^{-4}$ ft/s [under pressure of 2.9 psi]	ASTM D 5493
Water permeability in the plane direction of the fabric (transmittivity) under load (pressure)	$\geq 1.6\times10^{-3}$ ft/s [under pressure of 2.9 psi] $\geq 6.6\times10^{-4}$ ft/s [under pressure of 29 psi]	ASTM D 6574
Weather resistance	Resistance ≥ 60%	EN 12224
Alkali resistance	≥ 96% Polypropylene/Polyethylene	

1011.4 Certification. The contractor shall furnish a manufacturer's certification to the engineer for each lot of material furnished stating the name of the manufacturer, the chemical composition of the filaments or yarns and certifying that the material supplied is in accordance with this specification. The certification shall include or have attached typical results of tests from specific lots for all specified requirements.

SECTION 1013
MISCELLANEOUS DRAINAGE MATERIAL

1013.1 Scope. This specification covers material requirements for various plastic pipes and other miscellaneous items required to provide underdrainage and edge drainage as specified elsewhere.

1013.2 Acceptance. Acceptance of the material will be based on visual examination and the results of such tests as required by the engineer.

1013.3 Material. Pipe material shall be PVC or HDPE.

1013.3.1 Plastic Pipe. The pipe material shall have a minimum pipe stiffness of 46 psi.

1013.3.1.1 Corrugated PVC sewer pipe with a smooth interior and fittings shall be in accordance with ASTM F 949.

1013.3.1.2 Smooth wall PVC underdrain pipe and fittings shall be in accordance with ASTM D 3034.

1013.3.1.3 Corrugated PE pipe with a smooth interior and fittings shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 252, Type S or SP.

1013.3.1.4 Schedule 40 PVC pipe shall be in accordance with ASTM D 1785.

1013.4 Rodent Screens. Rodent screens shall be press-formed of 3 or 4 mesh, 21 gage or heavier, stainless steel or hot-dipped galvanized wire screen or approved equivalent, to provide a cup-shaped screen that will provide a friction-tight fit when inserted into the drain outlet.

1013.5 Certification. The contractor shall furnish a manufacturer's certification to the engineer for each lot of plastic pipe material furnished stating the name of the manufacturer and certifying that the material supplied is in accordance with this specification.

SECTION 1015
BITUMINOUS MATERIAL

1015.1 Scope. This specification covers bituminous material to be used in highway construction.

1015.2 Approval of Source. The contractor shall obtain approval of the source of bituminous material from the engineer before any shipments to the work site are made.

1015.3 Sampling, Testing and Acceptance Procedures .The supplier shall certify that the bituminous material complies with the specification requirements.

1015.3.1 Certification. The supplier shall furnish the truck driver a copy of the bill of lading, manifest or truck ticket to be available to MoDOT at the destination prior to unloading. The engineer at the source shall be furnished a copy. The bill of lading, manifest or truck ticket shall provide the following information regarding the shipment: type and grade of material, specific gravity at 60 F, net gallons, consignee, truck number, identification number, weight of truck before and after loading, destination, date loaded, name and location of the source, and a certification statement. The certification statement shall be signed by an authorized representative of the supplier and shall be substantially as follows:
"This certifies that the bituminous material in this shipment is in accordance with MoDOT specifications for the grade specified and the weights (masses) shown hereon were obtained on MoDOT approved scales and are correct within the specified scale requirements."

1015.3.2 Sampling. The engineer will at random observe the sampling and testing of truck shipments and tanks, and will select representative samples of the material being supplied for testing in the field or in the Central Laboratory. When test results certified by the supplier are not representative of the material being shipped, the source approval will be withdrawn. A source may be reinstated when proof is furnished that the deficiency has been corrected and adequate controls are in effect to guarantee delivery of material meeting specifications. Sampling and test methods for asphalt shall be as follows:

Property	Method	RC	MC	PG
Sampling	AASHTO T 40	X	X	X
Water	AASHTO T 55	X	X	X
Flash Point (Tag Open Cup)	AASHTO T 79	X	X	
Flash Point (Cleveland Open Cup)	AASHTO T 48			X
Viscosity, Centistokes	AASHTO T 201	X	X	
Distillation	AASHTO T 78	X	X	
Penetration	AASHTO T 49	X	X	
Ductility	AASHTO T 51	X	X	
Solubility in Trichlorethylene	AASHTO T 44	X	X	X
Ash in Bituminous Material	AASHTO T 111			
Viscosity (Rotational)	ASTM D 4402			X
Dynamic Shear	AASHTO 315			X
Rolling Thin Film Oven Test	AASHTO T 240			X
Pressure Aging Test	AASHTO R28			X
Creep Stiffness	AASHTO T 313			X
Direct Tension	AASHTO T 314			

1015.3.3 Sampling Equipment. The supplier shall furnish the required sampling equipment and shall sample the contents of the truck under the direction of the engineer. The supplier shall keep all sampling equipment clean and in good condition. Sampling devices on truck transports will be approved provided an adequately insulated valve is used with a pipe or nipple inserted a suitable distance into the tank.

1015.3.4 Truck Log. Each truck transport shall carry a log showing types of material and the dates hauled with respect to previous shipments, or the supplier shall furnish to the engineer such information with respect to the previous load.

1015.3.5 Intermediate Storage. Intermediate storage tanks for storage and transfer of material between the refinery or terminal and the point of acceptance shall be equipped for sealing and shall be reserved exclusively for MoDOT work. Use of any material from unsealed tanks will be subject to delay until material can be sampled, tested and approved.

1015.3.6 Other Transportation. At sources from which liquid bituminous material is being accepted by certification, the applicable requirements of the foregoing sections shall be followed for shipments of material in transportation units other than trucks. The certification and all information regarding each shipment shall be furnished to the engineer at the source.

1015.3.7 Railroad Shipments. For railroad shipments from refineries where inspection is not maintained by MoDOT, the supplier shall sample each car load at the source and submit the sample promptly to the Central Laboratory. A bill of lading or identification sheet shall accompany each sample and contain the following information: car number, type and grade of material, quantity represented, including gross gallons, temperature and net gallons at 60 F, destination of shipment, project number and consignee. A certification statement as specified in Sec 1015.3.1 shall accompany each sample. Approval of the source may be withdrawn if samples submitted are not representative of the material shipped in the car.

1015.4 Proportioning and Blending Bituminous Material Constituents. All material shall be properly proportioned and thoroughly blended in suitable tanks prior to delivery to transportation equipment, or material may be proportioned and blended by use of automatic proportioning equipment. All automatic-proportioning blenders shall meet the approval of the engineer and shall be equipped with precision instruments, including electrically interlocked motors and automatic meters.

1015.5 Application Temperatures for Bituminous Material.

Bituminous Material	Temperature, Degrees Fahrenheit			
	Spraying		Mixing	
	Min	Max	Min	Max
Asphalt Binder				
PG 46-28	260	325	----	----
All Other Grades	285	350	275	350
Liquid Asphalt RC-MC				
Grade				
30	70	150	50	110
70	100	180	90	140
250	150	220	130	170
800	180	260	170	210
3000	210	290	200	240
Asphalt Emulsions				
RS-1	120	140	----	----
RS-2	125	185	----	----
SS-1	120	160	70	160
SS-1h	120	160	70	160
SS-1vh	160	180	140	160
CRS-1	125	185	----	----
CRS-2	125	185	----	----
CSS-1	120	160	70	160
CSS-1h	120	160	70	160
EA-90P	130	180	----	----
CRS-2P	130	180	----	----
CHFRS-2P	130	180	----	----

[a] The minimum mixing temperature shall be lowered to 200 when a warm mix technology, as approved by the engineer,

is used.

1015.5.1 Application temperatures of other grades of emulsions shall be as specified in the contract.

1015.5.2 The spraying temperature for non-modified PG 46-28 asphalt binder shall be 260 - 325 F, and for all other higher temperature non-modified performance grades, the spraying temperature shall be 285 - 350 F. The mixing and compaction temperatures for performance graded asphalt binder shall be determined by rotational viscosity testing as defined in ASTM D 4402.

1015.5.3 When material to be applied by pressure distributor is, due to refining or blending procedures, delivered at a temperature above the specified limits, the material may be applied at the higher temperature provided satisfactory application can be obtained at the specified rate and provided sufficient precaution is exercised with respect to the fire hazard.

1015.6 Measurement of Bituminous Material. Field weight or field volumetric determinations of the material actually incorporated into the work will be used for measurement of the quantity of bituminous material for payment. The volume of material supplied from intermediate storage tanks will be determined from the net weight of the material. The net weight will be determined from the gross weight of the loaded transport vehicle used to deliver the material to the project less the empty transport vehicle weight. The volume correction methods specified below will be used for determining the volume of bituminous material. Scales for determining the weight of bituminous material shall be in accordance with Sec 310.

1015.6.1 Liquid Bituminous Material and Asphalt Binder - Volumetric Determination. Measurement of the material will be based on the volume at 60 F. The volume correction factors of ASTM D 1250, Table 24b, will be used for converting the material from the volume at the observed temperature to the volume at 60 F. The volume of uncalibrated distributors and tank trucks will be determined from the net weight of the material. The net weight will be determined from the gross weight of the loaded delivery vehicle less the empty delivery vehicle weight. For computing the volume in gallons from weight, the following formula will be used:

$$G = \frac{W}{SG \times 8.328}$$

where:
G = Volume in gallons at 60 F.
W = Weight of material in pounds.
SG = Specific Gravity of material at 60 F.

1015.6.2 Emulsified Asphalt. Measurement of the material will be based on the volume at 60 F using a coefficient of expansion of 0.0003 per degree F for converting the material from the volume at the observed temperature to the volume at 60 F.

SECTION 1015.10 PEFORMANCE GRADED ASPHALT BINDER.

1015.10.1 General. Performance graded asphalt binder shall be an asphalt-based binder produced from petroleum residue either with or without the addition of non-particulate organic modifiers. The grade shall be as specified in the contract.

1015.10.2 Basis of Acceptance. Suppliers furnishing performance graded asphalt binders to MoDOT projects by certification shall be in accordance with AASHTO R 26, except as noted herein. To become pre-qualified to furnish material, a written request shall be sent to Construction and Materials, along with a copy of the supplier's QC plan. Split samples may be required. Changes in formulation, base stock or methods of manufacture of qualified performance graded binders shall be noted and may require requalification.

1015.10.2.1 Quality Control Plan Requirements. The QC plan shall be in accordance with AASHTO R 26 with the following exceptions and modifications:

(a) The plan shall be written to cover multiple terminals or shipping facilities, in addition to the primary manufacturing facility, provided specific requirements for each location are clearly stated.

(b) The plan shall state the lot size used to designate the frequency of QC and specification compliance testing for each performance grade to be supplied. The lot size will depend upon the method of manufacture and may be designated on a tank basis, or on a time basis in the case of binders that are blended into trucks or tanks or that are continually blended into "live" tanks.

(c) For terminals or manufacturing facilities, the minimum reduced frequency of testing for QC or specification compliance shall be one series of tests every two weeks for "live" tanks or blenders and one series of tests every four weeks for "static" tanks that have had no material added between testing, per lot per grade of binder shipped.

(d) Quality Control testing may be used to determine that binders being shipped from terminals or manufacturing facilities have not been contaminated, provided that such testing is shown to be of sufficient accuracy to detect contamination and to assure that material meets required specifications. Surrogate tests may be used for QC testing of non-modified performance graded binders.

(e) Terminals or shipping facilities that blend performance graded binders from different sources, that blend to produce a different performance grade, or that blend to modify the properties of an existing performance grade shall perform complete AASHTO M 320 specification compliance testing.

(f) The shipping facility shall document that each transport vessel was inspected prior to loading and was found to be acceptable for the material being shipped. The inspection shall be documented by a statement on the bill of lading or truck ticket, or by maintaining a record of transport vessel inspections at the shipping facility, which shall be available for review by MoDOT.

1015.10.2.2 Quality Control Plan Test Data. The facility shall retain test data of specification compliance and QC testing for five years. At a minimum, the name of the facility, the dates of testing activity, results of individual specification compliance and QC tests identified by blender or tank number, and the mean, minimum and maximum test result for each specification compliance and QC test performed shall be readily available to MoDOT upon request.

1015.10.2.3 Approval of Laboratories. The supplier's primary testing laboratory shall be approved by MoDOT. The approval process will include split sample testing, and may include an on-site visit by department personnel. The primary testing laboratory shall be regularly inspected by the AASHTO Materials Reference Laboratory (AMRL). Any satellite testing laboratory operated by a supplier shall be inspected at the same frequency by the supplier's primary AMRL inspected laboratory staff, and a copy of the inspection report shall be forwarded to MoDOT.

1015.10.2.4 Failure to Comply. Failure to fulfill any of these requirements may result in disqualification of the performance graded binder supplier. If a primary manufacturing facility is disqualified, all terminals shipping performance graded binder manufactured at the primary facility and who are not performing AASHTO M 320 specification compliance testing will automatically be disqualified. In cases of dispute, test results obtained by MoDOT will be considered final.

1015.10.3 Characteristics. Performance graded asphalt binder shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 320 for the grade specified, except as follows. AASHTO T 111, Inorganic Matter or Ash in Bituminous Materials, may be substituted for AASHTO T 44, Solubility of Bituminous Materials, at the specification value indicated prior to the addition of ground tire rubber (GTR.) All blends containing GTR shall include 4.5 percent transpolyoctenamer rubber (TOR) by weight of the GTR. The direct tension test will be waived. The following additional requirements will apply:

Binder Characteristics		
Absolute Temperature Spread Between Upper and Lower Temperature for PG Binder Grade[a]	**Elastic Recovery[b], Percent, Minimum, AASHTO T 301**	**Separation Test[c], Percent Difference, Maximum, ASTM D 5976**
86 C	-	-
92 C	55	10
98 C	65	10

104 C	75	10

[a]Temperature Spread = Upper PG Temperature minus Lower PG Temperature.
[b]Elastic recovery test to be performed on the residue from the Rolling Thin Film Oven Test at 25 C and 10 cm elongation.
[c]Separation test to be performed in accordance with ASTM D 5976, except test upper and lower portions as original binder for G* value according to AASHTO T 315 except for GTR binders that require continuous agitation.

1015.10.3.1 In lieu of AASHTO M 320, AASHTO M 332 may be substituted eliminating the elastic recovery requirement, except for use with Sec 413.30, Ultrathin Bonded Asphalt Wearing Surface. The equivalent grading will PG 64-22, Grade S for PG 64-22, Grade H for PG 70-22 and Grade V for PG 76-22. Specialty grades will be tested at the grade temperature for the desired characteristics, i.e. PG 58-28 for RAS mixtures.

1015.10.4 Characteristics for GTR. Ground tire rubber shall be ambient ground, free of wire or other contaminating materials and not contain more than 0.1 percent fabric. Cryogenically ground rubber may be used by demonstrating that the GTR is satisfactorily suspended during all phases of production and storage. The gradation of the GTR shall be as follows:

Ground Tire Rubber	
Sieve Size	**Percent Passing by Weight**
No. 8	100
No. 16	100-96
No. 30	100-90
No. 50	20 min.

1015.10.4.1 Modification Process. The percentage by weight of binder shall be included with each lot of material. Ground tire rubber modified asphalt binder shall be tested and certified in accordance with Sec 1015.10.2 and may be incorporated by any of the following methods:

1015.10.4.1.1 Blending at HMA Plant. All sampling and testing shall be performed in accordance the requirements for terminal blending including high and low temperature testing.

1015.10.4.1.2 Terminal Blending. Blending and certification shall be in accordance with Sec 1015.

1015.10.5 Storage. Performance graded asphalt binder shall be furnished as a uniform mixture shipped directly to the project site from the asphalt binder supplier's permanent plant address or intermediate storage facility, suitable for direct use. Asphalt binder shall be capable of being stored at the project site without separation or settling. Automatic blending will be allowed at the terminal. Intermediate blending of asphalt binder and additives will not be allowed at the project site, unless the asphalt binder is sampled at a point in the operation which captures the final blended binder with all additives incorporated.

SECTION 1015.20 LIQUID BITUMINOUS MATERIAL.

1015.20.1 Basis of Acceptance. Suppliers electing to furnish liquid bituminous material to MoDOT projects by QC/QA certification shall furnish material in accordance with Sec 1015.20.2. To become pre-qualified to furnish material, a written request shall be submitted to Construction and Materials, along with a copy of the supplier's QC plan. For source approval for any supplier of liquid bituminous material, split samples and an on-site laboratory inspection may be required. A manufacturer may forgo a formal QC plan and elect to perform full compliance testing, and certify each batch of material. If a manufacturer elects to forgo a formal QC Plan, all truck shipments shall be loaded from approved storage tanks that have been sampled, tested and certified by the supplier. If a manufacturer so elects, and automatic blending equipment is used, blender material will be approved for use provided the finished product is in accordance with this specification. At least one complete specification compliance test shall be conducted every two weeks on each grade of material furnished for MoDOT work from the blender. A certified copy of the test results shall be furnished to the engineer. For all liquid bituminous material, AASHTO T 111, Inorganic Matter or Ash in Bituminous Materials, may be substituted for AASHTO T 44, Solubility of Bituminous Materials, at the specification value indicated.

1015.20.2 Quality Control Plan Requirements. The QC plan shall be in accordance with the following:

(a) The plan may be written to cover multiple terminals, shipping facilities, blending or manufacturing facilities.

(b) The plan shall state the location, organization and responsible personnel for each facility, including the physical address and telephone contact information. In general, following the guidelines in AASHTO R 26 will be acceptable.

(c) The plan shall state the minimum testing frequency for all material supplied. At a minimum, each grade of material supplied to MoDOT shall have complete specification compliance testing conducted monthly. Polymer modified material shall have complete specification compliance testing conducted every two weeks. The manufacturer's internal QC testing frequency shall be approved by MoDOT prior to implementation. The manufacturer shall perform sufficient tests and at a frequency to ensure specification compliant material is being supplied to MoDOT at all times. For emulsified asphalt, QC testing on each batch, at a minimum, shall consist of viscosity, sieve test, determination of residue by either distillation or evaporation and an identifier test, if applicable, for that particular grade, either cement mixing, particle charge or demusibility. The manufacturer may elect to perform additional QC tests. For cutback material, QC testing shall be a minimum of the viscosity on a daily basis when material is being shipped to MoDOT work.

(d) In the event of a failing sample, the manufacturer shall follow the steps outlined in AASHTO R 26, Sec. 9.2. If a sample fails to comply with any specification requirement at the Central Laboratory, the manufacturer may only ship new material of that grade after full specification compliance testing. After the manufacturer has certified through specification compliance testing that three consecutive batches are in accordance with the material specification, the manufacturer may return to the testing frequency outlined in the QC/QA plan. If a second sample of the same grade from the same facility fails to comply with any specification requirement within the same calendar year, approval of that facility to supply that grade under QC/QA may be withdrawn. If approval for a grade is withdrawn, that material may only be supplied to MoDOT work after full certification compliance testing has been performed at the Central Laboratory. Re-approval to supply under the supplier's QC/QA Plan will occur only after three consecutive batches meet specifications after testing at the Central Laboratory. Failure of multiple grades from a single facility tested at the Central Laboratory may result in that facility being removed from approval to supply material to MoDOT. Reinstatement will occur only after all materials in question have been tested at the Central Laboratory and have met all specifications, and documentation from the supplier outlining the reason for the failures and what corrective measures have been taken are to the satisfaction of MoDOT.

(e) The shipping facility shall document that each transport vessel was inspected prior to loading and was found to be acceptable for the material shipped. The inspection shall be documented by a statement on the bill of lading or truck ticket, or by maintaining a record of transport vessel inspections at the shipping facility, which shall be available for review by MoDOT.

The results of QC/QA testing shall be retained by the supplier for a period of three years. A report containing all test results for any material shall be available to MoDOT upon request.

1015.20.3 Type RC Liquid Asphalt. Type RC liquid asphalt shall be produced by fluxing an asphaltic base with suitable petroleum distillates. The material shall show no separation or curdling prior to use and shall not foam when heated to the application temperature. The material shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 81, invoking Note 3 using penetration in lieu of viscosity for the grade specified in the contract.

1015.20.4 Type MC Liquid Asphalt. Type MC liquid asphalt shall be produced by fluxing an asphaltic base with suitable petroleum distillates. The material shall show no separation or curdling prior to use and shall not foam when heated to the application temperature. The material shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 82, invoking Note 4 using penetration in lieu of viscosity for the grade specified in the contract.

1015.20.5 Emulsified Asphalt. Non-polymer emulsified asphalt shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 140 or AASHTO M 208, for the type and grade specified in the contract.

1015.20.5.1 Polymer Modified Asphalt Emulsion - Seal Coat. Bituminous material for polymer modified asphalt shall be in accordance with the following:

Polymer Modified Asphalt Emulsion				
Test[a]	**CRS-2P**		**EA-90P**	
	Min	**Max**	**Min**	**Max**
Viscosity, SSF @ 50 C	100	400	100	400
Storage Stability Test[b], 24 hour, percent	----	1	----	1
Classification Test	Pass	----	----	----
Particle Charge Test	Positive	----	----	----
Sieve Test,percent	----	0.3	----	0.3
Demulsibility, 0.02 N $CaC1_2$, percent	----	----	30	----
Distillation:				
Oil distillate by volume of emulsion, percent	----	3	----	3
Residue from distillation[c] , percent	65	----	65	----
Tests on Residue from Distillation:				
Penetration,25 C, 100 g, 5 sec	100	200	100	200
Ductility, 4 C, 5 cm/minute, cm	30	----	25	----
Ash[d], percent	----	1	----	1
Float Test at 60 C, sec	----	----	1200	----
Elastic Recovery[e], percent	58	----	58	----

[a]All tests shall be performed in accordance with AASHTO T 59 except as noted.

[b]In addition to AASHTO T 59, upon examination of the test cylinder, and after standing undisturbed for 24 hours, the surface shall show no appreciable white, milky colored substance and shall be a homogeneous brown color throughout.

[c]AASHTO T 59 shall be modified to maintain a 399 F ± 10 F maximum temperature for 15 minutes.

[d]Percent ash shall be determined in accordance with AASHTO T 111, *Ash in Bituminous Material*.

[e]Elastic recovery shall be determined as follows. Condition the ductilometer and samples to be treated at 50 F. Prepare the brass plate, mold and briquet specimen in accordance with AASHTO T 51. Keep the specimen at the specified test temperature of 50 F for 85 to 95 minutes. Immediately after conditioning, place the specimen in the ductilometer and proceed to elongate the sample to 20 cm at a rate of pull of 5 cm/min. After the 20 cm elongation has been reached, stop the ductilometer and hold the sample in the elongated position for 5 minutes. After 5 minutes, clip the sample approximately in half by means of scissors or other suitable cutting devices. Let the sample remain in the ductilometer in an undisturbed condition for one hour. At the end of this time period, retract the half sample specimen until the two broken ends touch. At this point note the elongation (x) in cm. Calculate the percent recovery by the following formula:

$$\% \text{ Recovery} = \frac{20 - X}{20} \times 100$$

Polymer Modified Asphalt Emulsion		
Test[a]	**CHFRS-2P**	
	Min.	**Max.**
Viscosity, SFS @ 50 C	100	400
Storage Stability Test, 24 hour, percent	---	1.0
Demulsibility, 35 ml 0.8% dioctyl sodium sulfosuccinate, percent	60	---

Sieve Test, percent	---	0.10
Particle Charge Test	Positive	
Distillation[b]		
Oil Distillate, by volume of emulsion, percent	---	0.5
Residue from distillation, percent	65	---
Tests on Residue from Distillation:		
Polymer content, weight, percent (solids based)	3.0	---
Softening Point, C	54	---
Float test at 60 C, s	1800	130
Penetration, 25 C, 100 g, 5 s	80	---
Viscosity @ 60 C, Poise	1300	---
Solubility in Trichloroethylene, percent	95	---
Elastic Recovery[c] @ 10 C , percent	65	

[a]All tests shall be performed in accordance with AASHTO T-59 except as noted.
[b]AASHTO T59 shall be modified to maintain a 177 ± 5 C maximum temperature to be held for 20 minutes. Complete the total distillation in 60 ± 5 minutes from the first application of heat.
[c]Elastic recovery shall be determined as follows. Condition the ductilometer and samples to be treated at 10 C. Prepare the brass plate, mold, and briquet specimen in accordance with AASHTO T 51. Keep the specimen at the specified test temperature of 10 C for 85 to 95 minutes. Immediately after conditioning, place the specimen in the ductilometer and proceed to elongate the sample to 20 cm at a rate of pull of 5 cm/min. After the 20 cm elongation has been reached, stop the ductilometer and hold the sample in the elongated position for 5 minutes. After the 5 minutes, clip the sample approximately in half by means of scissors or other suitable cutting devices. Let the sample remain in the ductilometer in an undisturbed condition for one hour. At the end of this time period, retract the half sample specimen until the two broken ends touch. At this point note the elongation recovery (X) in cm. Calculate the percent recovery by the following formula:

$$\% \text{ Recovery} = \frac{20 - X}{20} \times 100$$

1015.20.5.1.1 Polymer Modified Asphalt Emulsion - Tack Coat. Bituminous material for polymer modified asphalt shall be in accordance with the following:

Slow Setting Polymer Modified Asphalt Emulsion[a]					
		SS-1HP		CSS-1HP	
Test on Emulsion	Method	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol @ 25°C (77°F), s	AASHTO T 59	20	100	20	100
Particle Charge Test		Negative		Positive	
Storage Stability Test[b], 24 hr, percent	AASHTO T 59	--	1	--	1
Sieve Test, percent	AASHTO T 59	--	0.50	--	0.50
Residue by Distillation[c], percent	AASHTO T 59	57		57	
Oil Distillate by Distillation, percent	AASHTO T 59	--	--	--	--
Test on Residue from Distillation					
Penetration 25°C, 100 g, 5 s	AASHTO T 49	40	90	40	90
Elastic Recovery[d], 20 cm, 5 cm/min, 60 min, %	AASHTO T 301	30	--	30	--
Solubility in Trichloroethylene[e], %	AASHTO T 44	97.5	--	97.5	--

[a] The emulsified asphalt shall be in accordance with Sec 1015.20.5 of the 2011 Missouri Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, except as indicated above, and shall be modified with a styrene-butadiene diblock or triblock copolymer or a styrene butadiene rubber.

[b] In addition to AASHTO T 59, upon examination of the test cylinder, and after standing undisturbed for 24 hours, the surface shall show no appreciable white, milky colored substance and shall be homogeneous brown color throughout. The storage stability test may be waved provided the asphalt emulsion storage tank at the project site has adequate provisions for circulating the entire contents of the tank, provided satisfactory field results are obtained.
[c] AASHTO T 59 shall be modified to use a lower distillation temperature of 177° C (350° F).
[d] AASHTO T 301 shall be modified to allow the residue to be obtained from distillation as long as the distillation temperature is modified as stated above. The test on residue shall be conducted at a temperature of 10° C (50° F).
[e] In lieu of performing AASHTO T 44, AASHTO T 111, Ash in Bituminous Material, may be performed with a maximum allowable percent ash of 1.0 percent.

1015.20.5.2 Asphalt Emulsion for Micro-Surfacing. Bituminous material for micro-surfacing shall be a polymer modified asphalt emulsion, grade CSS-lh, in accordance with the following table. The bituminous material shall show no separation after mixing. A minimum of 3.0 percent polymer content, by mass, of an approved polymer shall be milled into the asphalt emulsion at the time of manufacture of the emulsion. The emulsion shall be sampled in accordance with AASHTO T 40.

Micro-Surfacing Emulsion (MSE-1)			
	Min.	**Max.**	**Test Method**
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol at 77 F, s	20	100	AASHTO T 59
Storage stability test, 24 hr, percent	- -	1[a]	AASHTO T 59
Particle charge test positive[b]			AASHTO T 59
Sieve test, percent	- -	0.50	AASHTO T 59
Residue, percent	62	- -	AASHTO T 59
Tests on Residue from Distillation	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Test Method**
Penetration, 77 F, 100 g, 5 s,	40	90	AASHTO T49
Ductility, 25 C, 5cm/min, cm,	40	- -	AASHTO T 51
Solubility in Trichloroethylene, %	97.50	- -	AASHTO T 44

[a]The storage stability test may be waived provided the asphalt emulsion storage tank at the project site has adequate provisions for circulating the entire contents of the tank, and provided satisfactory field results are obtained.
[b]If the particle charge test is inconclusive, material having a maximum pH value of 6.7 will be acceptable.

1015.20.5.3 Scrub Seal Emulsion. Scrub seal emulsion shall be smooth and homogeneous, polymer modified, shall contain an asphalt rejuvenator and shall be in accordance with the following:

Scrub Seal Emulsion (SSE-1)			
	Min.	**Max.**	**Test Method**
Saybolt Furol Viscosity, SFS @ 77 F	30	100	AASHTO T 59
Storage Stability Test[a] , 24 hr., %	--	1[a]	AASHTO T 59
Demulsibility, 35 ml of 0.02N, $CACl_2$, %	--	60	AASHTO T 59
Sieve Test[b], percent	--	0.3	AASHTO T 59
Residue by Distillation[(c)] @ 401 ± 10 F, %	60	--	AASHTO T 59
Oil Distillate by Volume, percent	--	3	AASHTO T 59
Tests on Residue from Distillation	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Test Method**
Penetration @ 77 F, 5 s, 100 g, dmm	100	300	AASHTO T 49
Float Test @ 140 F, s	1200	--	AASHTO T 50
Ash, percent	--	1	AASHTO T 111

Elastic Recovery, 10 C, 200 mm elongation, 60 min. recovery, percent	30	--	ASTM D 5976
Saturates[d], percent	- -	20	ASTM D 4124

[a]Upon examination of the test cylinder after standing undisturbed for 24 hours, the surface shall show no white, milky colored substance and shall be a homogeneous brown color throughout.
[b]A percentage of 0.30 will be acceptable for samples taken at the point of use or shipped to the Central Laboratory for testing.
[c]ASTM D 244 shall be modified to include a 205 ± 5 C maximum temperature to be held for 15 minutes.
[d]ASTM D 4124 shall be modified to use Alumina, CG - 20 Grade, available from Aluminum Company of America, Pittsburgh, PA.

1015.20.5.4 Hard Penetration Asphalt Emulsions (SS-1vh). The hard penetration asphalt emulsions shall be in accordance with the following:

Emulsion Properties of Hard Penetration Asphalt Emulsions (SS-1vh)			
Test on Emulsion	**Method**	**Min.**	**Max.**
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol @ 25º C (77º F), s	AASHTO T 59	20	100
Storage Stability Test[a], 24 hr., percent	AASHTO T 59	--	1.0
Sieve Test, percent	AASHTO T 59	--	0.30
Residue by Distillation, percent	AASHTO T 59	50	--
Oil Distillate by Distillation, percent	AASHTO T 59	--	1
Tests on Residue from Distillation	**Method**	**Min.**	**Max.**
Softening Point, º F	AASHTO T 53	149	200
Penetration 25º C (77º F), 100 g, 5 s	AASHTO T 49	--	40
G* / sin delta @ 76º C – 10 rad/sec, kPa	AASHTO T 315	1.0	--
Solubility in Trichloroethylene[b], %	AASHTO T 44	97.5	--

[a]In addition to AASHTO T 59, upon examination of the test cylinder, and after standing undisturbed for 24 hours, the surface shall show no appreciable white, milky colored substance and shall be homogeneous brown color throughout. The storage stability test may be waved provided the asphalt emulsion storage tank at the project site has adequate provisions for circulating the entire contents of the tank, provided satisfactory field results are obtained.
[b]In lieu of performing AASHTO T 44, AASHTO T 111, Ash in Bituminous Material, may be performed with a maximum allowable percent ash of 1.0 percent.

1015.20.6 Ultrathin Bonded Wearing Surface. Bituminous material for ultrathin bonded wearing surface shall be in accordance with the following.

1015.20.6.1 Asphalt Binder. The asphalt binder shall be in accordance with Sec 1015.10, and specifically as follows:

Tests	**Method**	**Min.**	**Max.**
Separation Test, %	AASHTO PP-5		10
Elastic Recovery Test, %	ASTM D 6084	65	

1015.20.6.2 Polymer Modified Emulsion Membrane. The anionic or cationic emulsion shall be polymer modified and shall be in accordance with one of the following:

Anionic Polymer Modified Emulsion Membrane (PEM-1)			
Tests on Emulsion	**Method**	**Min.**	**Max.**
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol @122°F, s	AASHTO T 59	25	125
Storage Stability Test[a], 24 h, percent	AASHTO T 59		1

Sieve Test[b], percent		AASHTO T 59		0.3
Residue by Distillation[c], percent		AASHTO T 59	63	
Oil Distillate by Distillation, percent		AASHTO T 59		2
Demulsibilty, %	35 ml, 0.02 N $CaCl_2$	AASHTO T 59	60	
Tests on Residue From Distillation				
Penetration		AASHTO T 49	90	150
Elastic Recovery, percent		AASHTO T 301	60	

Cationic Polymer Modified Emulsion Membrane (CPEM-1)				
Tests on Emulsion		**Method**	**Min.**	**Max.**
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol @122°F, s		AASHTO T 59	25	125
Storage Stability Test[a], 24 h, percent		AASHTO T 59		1
Sieve Test[b], percent		AASHTO T 59		0.3
Residue by Distillation[c], percent		AASHTO T 59	63	
Oil Distillate by Distillation, percent		AASHTO T 59		2
Demulsibility, %	35 ml, 0.8% dioctyl sodium sulfosuccinate	AASHTO T 59	60	
Tests on Residue From Distillation				
Penetration		AASHTO T 49	90	150
Elastic Recovery, %		AASHTO T 301	60	

[a]After standing undisturbed for 24 hours, the surface shall show no white, milky colored substance, but shall be a smooth homogeneous color throughout.

[b]The sieve test will be waived if successful application of the material has been achieved in the field.

[c]AASHTO T 59 shall be modified to include a 400 F ± 10 F maximum temperature to be held for a period of 15 minutes.

SECTION 1017
GROUND GRANULATED BLAST FURNACE SLAG

1017.1 Scope. This specification covers ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag (GGBFS) for use in Portland cement concrete.

1017.2 General. All GGBFS shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 302, Grade 100 or 120, except as herein specified. Only GGBFS from sources qualified in accordance with these specifications will be permitted.

1017.2.1 GGBFS may only be used with AASHTO M 85, Type I or Type II Portland cement, unless otherwise directed by the engineer.

1017.2.2 The mixing of different grades and sources of GGBFS will not be permitted.

1017.2.3 The term "manufacturer", as used in this specification, will be the company grinding the granulated blast furnace slag to produce GGBFS. The term "marketing entity", as used in this specification, will be the supplier or broker of the GGBFS. The marketing entity will be responsible for complying with these specifications.

1017.2.4 All tests shall be performed in a MoDOT approved laboratory.

1017.3 Sampling, Testing and Acceptance Procedures. All marketing entities and terminals furnishing GGBFS to MoDOT projects shall be qualified as herein described. All GGBFS will be subject to inspection and sampling by MoDOT at the source of manufacture, an intermediate shipping terminal or destination. MoDOT shall be allowed unlimited access to all facilities and records as required to conduct inspection and sampling.

1017.3.1 Marketing Entity Qualification. In order to become qualified, a written request shall be sent by the marketing entity to Construction and Materials, along with a copy of the marketing entity's QC plan. The production source and terminals may be inspected to verify the information and to establish personal contact with the QC personnel.

1017.3.1.1 The following information shall be included in the request for qualification:

(a) An outline of the QC program from the source of manufacture to the point where the product is relinquished to the purchaser. The QC program shall cover all tests in accordance with the specification and include the testing frequency for each test. The name of the testing laboratory shall be included. Each sample shall not represent less than 500 tons.

(b) A copy of the testing laboratory's most recent Cement and Concrete Reference Laboratory (CCRL) inspection report and the latest CCRL proficiency sample report. The CCRL inspection shall cover all tests in accordance with the specification. Documentation showing satisfactory resolution of all inspection deficiencies shall be included.

(c) Complete name and address of the GGBFS source and owner. If located in an area without precise address identification, a complete map description shall be furnished. If more than one source is used, all sources shall be listed.

(d) Grade of GGBFS produced.

(e) Description of storage facilities, including capacities, set-aside capabilities and sampling method(s).

(f) A copy of a typical bill of lading with the required certification statement.

(g) A split sample of the GGBFS proposed for use, obtained over a minimum of one production day. The marketing entity's test results for the split sample shall also be submitted. The marketing entity shall provide reference cement if the cement used is unavailable to the area.

1017.3.1.2 In order to maintain qualification, the following will be required:

(a) QC test results covering the production of all GGBFS proposed for use in MoDOT projects, including the high, low and average results shall be kept on file by the marketing entity. Sampling and testing shall be in accordance with these specifications.

(b) A sample shall be tested for each 2000 tons intended for use. The sample shall be tested by the marketing entity for fineness, No. 325 sieve analysis and Blaine, air content, 7-day and 28-day Slag Activity Index, percent sulfide sulfur (S) and percent sulfate ion (SO3), taken from a composite sample representing each 2000 tons of GGBFS transported to the storage silo. The composite shall be comprised of a minimum of four samples, each representing not more than 500 tons. Automatic samplers may be used in lieu of the individual 500-ton grab samples.

(c) A copy of the most recent CCRL inspection and proficiency sample reports and any deficiency resolutions shall be forwarded promptly to MoDOT.

(d) Semi-annual split samples for the class of approved GGBFS will be obtained by MoDOT for joint testing by the marketing entity. Marketing entity test results on the split samples shall be furnished to Construction and Materials when completed.

(e) All QC test results shall be available for a minimum of three years, for MoDOT review upon request.

(f) Only GGBFS in compliance with these specifications shall be allowed into a silo destined for MoDOT projects.

1017.3.2 Terminal Qualification. In order to become a qualified terminal, a written request shall be sent from terminal personnel to Construction and Materials. A letter shall accompany the request from each affected and qualified marketing entity, advising of the intent to ship through the respective terminal. Any changes in GGBFS sources shall be updated in the same manner. Terminals will be inspected to ensure adequacy to accept, retain and ship GGBFS from qualified marketing entities.

1017.3.3 Failure to Comply. Failure to fulfill any of these requirements may result in disqualification of the GGBFS manufacturer, marketing entity or terminal. In cases of dispute, test results obtained by MoDOT will control.

1017.3.4 Disqualified Facilities. If a facility has been disqualified, the marketing entity will be required to designate the silo, bin or storage facility from which the marketing entity proposes to furnish GGBFS for MoDOT projects. Each silo, bin or storage facility designated must be sampled, tested, sealed and approved by MoDOT prior to shipment. The marketing entity shall also sample, test and report the test results for each designated silo, bin or storage facility. This procedure will continue until adequate QC has been established.

1017.3.5 Shipping. GGBFS continually sampled and tested via autosamplers at a location, frequency and duration acceptable to MoDOT, may be continuously shipped direct from a marketing entity. All GGBFS manually sampled and tested shall be held in the silo or bin until such time as the test results are completed prior to shipping.

1017.3.6 Storage. All GGBFS intended for use shall be sampled, tested and placed in a designated silo or bin.

1017.4 Acceptance. The marketing entity shall certify that the material complies with the specification requirements. When a qualified marketing entity or terminal is shipping GGBFS for, or purchasing GGBFS from, another qualified marketing entity, the bill of lading or delivery receipt shall be from the shipping company. The certification statement showing the actual manufacturer shall be prominently placed on the bill of lading or delivery receipt. A copy of the bill of lading or delivery receipt shall accompany each shipment and shall be furnished to MoDOT at the shipping and destination points.

1017.4.1 The bill of lading or delivery receipt for each shipment to MoDOT projects shall carry the following certification statement:
"This is to certify this Grade _____ GGBFS originated from a MoDOT qualified manufacturer, has been maintained to meet MoDOT specifications and was loaded from silo number _____."
_____ Name and Location of Manufacturer
_____ Name and Location of Shipping Facility

By_____ Signature and Name of Marketing Entity

SECTION 1018
FLY ASH FOR CONCRETE

1018.1 Scope. This specification covers fly ash for use in Portland cement concrete.

1018.2 General. Only fly ash from sources qualified in accordance with these specifications will be permitted. The mixing of different classes and sources of fly ash will not be permitted. All fly ash shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 295, Class C or F, except as herein specified.

1018.2.1 Class C fly ash shall meet either (a) or (b) of the following requirements:

(a) The 7-day Strength Activity Index with Portland cement shall be at a minimum of 85 percent of the control.

(b) The Calcium oxide content shall be 23 percent, minimum.

1018.2.1.1 All Class C fly ash shall have a minimum Strength Activity Index with Portland cement of 85 percent of the control at 28 days.

1018.2.2 The percent each of silicon dioxide (SiO_2), aluminum oxide (Al_2O_3) and iron oxide (Fe_2O_3) shall be reported in addition to the total of the three.

1018.2.3 Loss on Ignition shall not exceed 1.5 percent unless supplies provide test data verifying performance and durability in fly ash concrete applications for sources exceeding this requirement.

1018.2.4 The term “manufacturer”, as used in this specification, will be the actual manufacturer of the fly ash. The term, “marketing entity”, as used in this specification, will be the supplier or broker of the fly ash. The marketing entity shall be responsible to be in accordance with these specifications.

1018.2.5 Cement used for testing fly ash shall be in accordance with AASHTO M85.

1018.2.6 All marketing entities, terminals, and independent testing laboratories shall be qualified prior to acceptance of any material.

1018.3 Laboratory Qualification.

1018.3.1 In order to become qualified, a written request shall be sent by the marketing entity to Construction and Materials, along with a copy of the laboratory’s QC Plan, the QC departments most recent Cement and Concrete Reference Laboratory (CCRL) certification and the latest CCRL Pozzolan proficiency sample report. The CCRL inspection shall cover all tests required by the specification. Documentation showing satisfactory resolution of all inspection deficiencies shall be included. In addition, the plant may be inspected to verify the information and to establish personal contact with the QC personnel.

1018.3.2 Failure to Comply. Failure to comply with any of these requirements and/or specified herein may result in the issuance of a strike. If a laboratory accumulates three strikes, the laboratory shall be disqualified. For every year a laboratory does not receive a strike, a strike will be removed from the laboratory’s accumulated total. In cases of dispute, test results obtained by MoDOT will control.

1018.3.3 Disqualified Facilities. If a laboratory has been disqualified, the marketing entity must utilize an existing MoDOT approved laboratory or qualify a laboratory fulfilling MoDOT requirements. A disqualified laboratory will be unable to maintain qualification based on requirements governed in this specification.

1018.4 Marketing Entity Qualification. In order to become qualified, a written request shall be sent by the marketing entity to Construction and Materials, along with a copy of the marketing entity’s QC plan and the following information. The power plant and terminals may be inspected to verify the information and to establish personal contact with the QC personnel.

1018.4.1 The following information shall be included in the request for qualification:

(a) An outline of the QC program from the coal yard to the point where the product is relinquished to the purchaser. The QC program shall cover all tests required by the specification, and shall include the testing frequency for each test. The name of the testing laboratory shall also be included.

(b) A copy of the testing laboratory's most recent Cement and Concrete Reference Laboratory (CCRL) inspection report and the latest CCRL proficiency sample report. The CCRL inspection shall cover all tests required by the specification. Documentation showing satisfactory resolution of all inspection deficiencies shall be included.

(c) Complete name and address of the fly ash source and owner. If located in an area without precise address identification, a complete map description shall be furnished.

(d) Complete name and address or map location of the coal mine. If more than one source of coal is used, all sources shall be listed.

(e) Type of coal used.

(f) Class of fly ash produced.

(g) A description of production procedures including, but not limited to, any additives mixed with the coal during production, any additive or dust suppressant used to collect the fly ash, ash collection methods, production capacity in tons (Mg) per day, and the proportions and proportioning procedures of any blended coals.

(h) Description of storage facilities, including capacities and set-aside capabilities.

(i) A copy of a typical bill of lading in accordance with the certification statement.

(j) A split sample of the class of fly ash proposed for use, obtained from the autosampler over a minimum of one production day. The marketing entity's test results for the split sample shall also be submitted.

1018.4.2 In order to maintain qualification, the following will be required:

(a) Quality control test results covering the production of all fly ash proposed for use in MoDOT projects, including the high, low and average results for each class shall be kept on file by the marketing entity. Sampling and testing frequency shall be in accordance with ASTM C 311. Results shall include the percent each of silicon dioxide (SiO2), aluminum oxide (Al2O3) and iron oxide (Fe2 O3) in addition to a total of all three.

(b) A copy of the most recent CCRL inspection and proficiency sample reports and any deficiency resolutions shall be forwarded promptly to MoDOT.

(c) Semi-annual split samples for the class of approved fly ash shall be obtained by MoDOT for joint testing by the marketing entity. Marketing entity test results on the split samples shall be furnished to Construction and Materials when completed.

(d) All QC test results shall be available for a minimum of three years, for MoDOT review upon request.

(e) All monthly or each 3200-ton samples shall be available for a minimum of one year, for MoDOT testing upon request.

(f) Only fly ash in compliance with these specifications shall be allowed into a silo destined for MoDOT projects.

1018.4.3 Failure to Comply. Failure to comply with any of these requirements and/or specified herein may result in the issuance of a strike. If a marketing entity accumulates three strikes, the marketing entity shall be disqualified. For every year a marketing entity does not receive a strike, a strike will be removed from the marketing entities' accumulated total. In cases of dispute, test results obtained by MoDOT will control.

1018.5 Terminal Qualification. In order to become a qualified terminal, a written request shall be sent from terminal personnel to Construction and Materials. A letter shall accompany the request from each affected and qualified marketing entity, advising of the intent to ship through the respective terminal. Any changes in fly ash source shall be updated in the same manner. Terminals shall be inspected to ensure adequacy to accept, retain and ship fly ash from qualified marketing entities.

1018.6 Sampling, Testing and Acceptance Procedures. All fly ash will be subject to inspection and sampling by MoDOT at the power plant, an intermediate shipping terminal or destination. MoDOT shall be allowed unlimited access to all facilities and records in order to conduct inspection and sampling.

1018.6.1 Failure to Comply. Failure to fulfill any of these requirements may result in disqualification of the fly ash manufacturer, marketing entity or a terminal. In cases of dispute, test results obtained by MoDOT will control.

1018.6.2 Disqualified Facilities. If a facility has been disqualified, the marketing entity may elect to designate the silo, bin or storage facility from which the marketing entity proposes to furnish fly ash for MoDOT projects. If this option is used, each silo, bin or storage facility designated must be sampled, tested, sealed and approved by MoDOT prior to shipment. The marketing entity shall also sample, test and report the test results for each designated silo, bin or storage facility.

1018.6.3 Shipping. Fly ash shall be continually sampled and tested via autosamplers at a location, frequency and duration acceptable to MoDOT, and may be continuously shipped direct from a marketing entity or generating station silo.

1018.6.4 Storage. All fly ash intended for use shall be sampled, tested, and placed in designated silos or bins.

1018.6.5 Coal Sources and Process. Fly ash from each coal source at each plant shall be qualified separately. Coals from different sources may be blended prior to burning, but the qualification shall be based on the blend. When the production procedure or fuel source is changed, or when any change is made by the manufacturer that alters the properties or characteristics of the qualified fly ash, requalification may be required.

1018.6.6 Acceptance. The marketing entity shall certify that the material complies with the specification requirements. When a qualified marketing entity or terminal is shipping fly ash for, or purchasing fly ash from, another qualified marketing entity, the bill of lading or delivery receipt shall be from the shipping company. The certification statement showing the actual manufacturer shall be prominently placed on the bill of lading or delivery receipt. A copy of the bill of lading or delivery receipt shall accompany each shipment and shall be furnished to MoDOT at the shipping and destination points.

1018.6.7 The bill of lading or delivery receipt for each shipment to MoDOT projects shall carry the following certification statement:
"This is to certify this Class ___ fly ash originated from a MoDOT qualified manufacturer, has been maintained to meet MoDOT specifications and was loaded from silo number _____."
_____ Name and Location of Manufacturer
_____ Name and Location of Shipping Facility
By_____ Signature and Name of Marketing Entity

SECTION 1019
CEMENT

1019.1 Scope. This specification covers Portland cement, hydraulic cement and blended hydraulic cement.

1019.2 General. All Portland cement shall be in accordance with the following requirements. The basis of acceptance will be as described in Sec 1019.3.

1019.2.1 Portland Cement. All Portland cement shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 85 with the following modifications:

(a) Specific surface, fineness, for all Type I Portland cements shall not exceed 430 m2/kg using Air permeability test. Maximum fineness limits do not apply if the sum of C3S + 4.75C3A is less than or equal to 90.

1019.2.2 Hydraulic Cement. All hydraulic cement shall be in accordance with ASTM C 1157.

1019.2.3 Blended Hydraulic Cement. All blended hydraulic cement shall be in accordance with Type IP, IS, IL or IT of AASHTO M 240 with the following modification that chemical composition shall be provided, and tolerances checked in accordance with Section 7.1.1 of AASHTO M240 and allowable constituent amounts of Type IP, IS, IL and IT cements are within the specified limits listed below:

(a) Type IP cement shall have a pozzolan constituent up to 25 percent by mass of the blended cement. Type IP cements, in which the pozzolan constituent is metakaolin or silica fume, shall be a maximum of 15 or 8 percent, respectively.

(b) Type IS cement shall have a slag cement constituent up to 25 percent by mass of the blended cement.

(c) Type IL cement shall have a limestone constituent up to 15 percent by mass of blended cement.

(d) Type IT cement shall have a slag cement, limestone and pozzolan constituent up to 40 percent by mass of the ternary blended cement. The maximum constituent requirements shall be in accordance with Sec 1019.2.3 (a), (b) and (c) in some combination up to 40 percent.

1019.2.4 Other Cements. White Portland cement shall meet the requirements for Type I. Air-entraining Portland cement shall be used only when specified in the contract. Different types of cement shall not be mixed, nor shall different types be used in the same unit of construction.

1019.2.5 Sack or Bag. A sack or bag of cement will be considered to be 94 pounds net.

1019.3 Sampling, Testing and Acceptance Procedures. All manufacturers and terminals furnishing cement to MoDOT projects shall be qualified as herein described. All cement will be subject to inspection and sampling by MoDOT at the source of manufacture, an intermediate shipping terminal or destination. MoDOT shall be allowed unlimited access to all facilities and records as required to conduct inspection and sampling.

1019.3.1 Manufacturer Qualification. In order to become qualified, a written request shall be sent by the manufacturer to Construction and Materials, along with a copy of the QC plan. In order to maintain qualification, the manufacturer shall submit additional information, as listed, to MoDOT. The plant may be inspected to verify the information and to establish personal contact with the QC personnel.

1019.3.1.1 The following information shall be included in the request for qualification:

(a) An outline of the QC program from the quarry to the point where the product is relinquished to the purchaser. The QC program shall cover all tests required by the specification and shall include the testing frequency for each test.

(b) A copy of the most recent Cement and Concrete Reference Laboratory (CCRL) inspection report and the latest CCRL proficiency sample report. The CCRL inspection shall cover all tests required by

the specification. Documentation showing satisfactory resolution of all inspection deficiencies shall be included.

(c) The physical layout of the plant, including the number and capacity of finish mills and silos and the type of cement stored in each silo.

(d) A copy of a typical bill of lading with the required certification statement.

(e) A split sample of each type of cement proposed for use. Manufacturer test results for the split sample shall also be submitted.

1019.3.1.2 In order to maintain qualification, the following will be required:

(a) Monthly QC test results covering the production of cement types proposed for use in MoDOT projects, including the high, low and average results for each type shall be forwarded to MoDOT upon manufacturer completion.

(b) A copy of the most recent CCRL inspection and proficiency sample reports and any deficiency resolutions shall be forwarded promptly to MoDOT.

(c) Semi-annual split samples for each type of approved cement will be obtained by MoDOT for joint testing by the manufacturer. Manufacturer test results on the split samples shall be furnished to MoDOT when completed.

(d) All QC test results shall be available for a minimum of three years, for MoDOT review upon request.

(e) Only cement in compliance with these specifications shall be allowed into a silo destined for MoDOT projects.

1019.3.2 Terminal Qualification. In order to become a qualified terminal, a written request shall be sent from terminal personnel to Construction and Materials. The request shall be accompanied by a letter from each affected and qualified manufacturer, advising of the intent to ship through the respective terminal. Any changes in cement source shall be updated in the same manner. Terminals will be inspected to ensure adequacy to accept, retain and ship cement from qualified manufacturers.

1019.3.3 Failure to Comply. Failure to fulfill any of these requirements may result in disqualification of the cement manufacturer or a terminal. In cases of dispute, test results obtained by MoDOT will control.

1019.3.4 Disqualified Manufacturers. If a manufacturer has been disqualified, the manufacturer will be required to designate the silo, bin or storage facility from which they propose to furnish cement for MoDOT projects. Each silo, bin or storage facility designated shall be sampled, tested, sealed and approved by MoDOT prior to shipment. The manufacturer shall also sample, test and report the test results for each designated silo, bin or storage facility. This procedure shall continue until adequate QC has been established.

1019.3.5 Foreign Cement. All tests on foreign cement shall be performed by a qualified domestic manufacturer.

1019.4 Acceptance. The supplier shall certify that the material complies with the specification requirements. When a qualified manufacturer or terminal is shipping cement for, or purchasing cement from, another qualified manufacturer, the bill of lading or delivery receipt shall be from the shipping company. The certification statement showing the actual manufacturer shall be prominently placed on the bill of lading or delivery receipt. A copy of the bill of lading or delivery receipt shall accompany each shipment and shall be furnished to MoDOT at the shipping and destination points.

1019.4.1 Certification. The bill of lading or delivery receipt for each shipment to MoDOT projects shall carry the following certification statement:
"This is to certify this Type ___ cement originated from a MoDOT qualified manufacturer, has been maintained to meet MoDOT specifications and was loaded from silo number _____."
_____ Name and Location of Manufacturer
_____ Name and Location of Shipping Facility

By_____
Signature and Name of Marketing Entity

SECTION 1033 PRECAST DRAINAGE UNITS

1033.1 Scope. This specification covers precast reinforced concrete manhole and drop inlet sections and appurtenances, such as grade rings, tops and special sections.

1033.2 Acceptance. Unless otherwise specified, the basis for acceptance shall be in accordance with Sec 1001.14 and AASHTO M 199.

1033.2.1 Lot Size Definition. A lot is defined as one day's production.

1033.2.2 Quality Control. The producer QM plan shall define quality control testing and inspection frequencies and shall include the following minimum requirements.

1033.2.2.1 Compressive strength of cylinders or cores shall be taken at a minimum of once per lot in accordance with AASHTO M 199. Compressive strength testing may also be performed to control handling and curing operations. Cylinders shall be cured in accordance with AASHTO T23 field curing procedures.

1033.2.2.2 Air and slump of fresh concrete shall be taken a minimum of once per lot.

1033.2.2.3 Aggregate gradation, absorption and deleterious shall be checked a minimum of once per month per aggregate source in accordance with Sec 1005.

1033.2.2.4 Absorption samples shall be taken and tested in accordance with AASHTO M199 a minimum of once every four months. Each sample shall be a piece broken, core drilled from the wall, having a thickness equal to the wall and free of visible cracks.

1033.2.2.5 Steel placement shall be checked and documented for each unit.

1033.2.2.6 Finished dimensions shall be checked and documented for each unit.

1033.2.2.7 Pull out testing of steps and ladders shall be checked in accordance with AASHTO M199.

1033.2.2.8 All equipment used for testing shall be maintained and calibrated in accordance with AASHTO R18 or equivalent program.

1033.2.2.9 Concrete plant(s) shall be calibrated and monitored in accordance with producer's QMP.

1033.2.3 Quality Assurance. The QMP shall reference an industry organization or define independent QA testing frequencies including the following:

Tested Property[a]	Test Method	Independent QA
Air	T152	Twice a year
Slump	T119	Twice a year
Coarse Aggregate Deleterious	TM71	Twice a year
Coarse Aggregate Absorption	T85	Twice a year
Compressive Strength	T22	Twice a year
Absorption (per mix)	T280	Once a year

[a] All samples shall be taken at the precast plant

1033.2.4 MoDOT Hold Points

1033.2.4.1 Prior to shipping, producers shall notify MoDOT and obtain a MoDOT identification number(s).

1033.2.4.2 Repair methods and completion of repairs for non-conforming work shall be approved by the engineer and contractor

1033.2.5 MoDOT Quality Assurance and Auditing. The engineer may perform MoDOT Quality Assurance testing or audit the producer's QMP, documentation and production at any time, which may include coring of the precast units and the producer's expense.

1033.2.6 Deficient Work. A procedure addressing deficient work shall be in accordance with Sec 1001.14.

1033.2.6.1 Filling of form tie cavities and repair of other defects shall be in accordance with Sec 703.

1033.2.7 Non-Conforming Work. A procedure addressing non-conforming work shall be in accordance with Sec 1001.14.

1033.3 Material.

1033.3.1 Cement. Cement shall be in accordance with Sec 1019. Fly ash or Ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag (GGBFS) may be substituted for cement in accordance with Sec 501.

1033.3.2 Fly Ash. Fly ash shall be in accordance with Sec 1018.

1033.3.3 Ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag. GGBFS shall be in accordance with Sec 1017.

1033.3.4 Aggregate. Fine and coarse aggregate shall be in accordance with Sec 1005, except that requirements for gradation and percent passing the No. 200 sieve shall not apply.

1033.3.5 Steel Reinforcement. Reinforcement shall be in accordance with Sec 1036.

1033.3.6 Concrete Mixture. The manufacturer may designate the mixture proportions, but in no case shall the proportion of cement in the mixture be less than 470 pounds per cubic yard of concrete. Admixtures or blends may be used with the approval from the engineer. At the option of the manufacturer, Class B or B-1 concrete may be used. If Class B or B-1 concrete is used, material, proportioning, mixing, slump and transporting of concrete shall be in accordance with Sec 501.

1033.4 Design.

1033.4.1 Precast Drainage Units. The design of precast drainage units shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 199 with the following modifications.

1033.4.1.1 Wall thickness for rectangular drop inlets shall be as shown on the plans.

1033.4.1.2 The quantity of steel reinforcement for rectangular drop inlets shall be as shown on the plans.

1033.4.2 Modified or Special Designs. The manufacturer may request approval of designs, prior to manufacture, other than those specified in the contract documents. Special or modified designs shall be submitted to the engineer, in writing and shall fully describe any deviations from the contract documents. The description shall also include the wall thickness, all other dimensions, concrete compressive strength and the area, type, placement and strength of the steel reinforcement. Such sections shall meet all of the test and performance requirements specified by the engineer in accordance with Sec 1033.2.

1033.4.3 Reinforcement in Rectangular Drop Inlets. Placement of reinforcement in rectangular drop inlets shall be as shown on the plans.

1033.4.4 Manhole Risers and Conical Tops. Each line of circumferential reinforcement shall be assembled into a cage that shall contain sufficient spacer bars or members, extending through the wall of the manhole risers and conical tops, to maintain the reinforcement rigidly in shape and correct position within the form. The exposure of the ends of stirrups or spacers that have been used to position the cages during the placement of the concrete will not be cause for rejection.

1033.5 Joints. The reinforced concrete riser sections, except grade rings, shall be formed such that the risers and top when assembled will make a continuous and uniform structure compatible with the tolerances specified for risers in AASHTO M 199. The joints shall be designed to permit placement without appreciable irregularities in the interior wall surface.

1033.6 Manufacture.

1033.6.1 Placement of Concrete. The transporting and placing of concrete shall be by methods that will prevent the segregation of the concrete material and the displacement of the reinforcing steel from the proper position in the form.

1033.6.2 Curing.

1033.6.2.1 Precast units shall be cured in accordance with Sec 1026. Precast sections shall not be transported or erected until the design compressive strength has been reached.

1033.6.2.2 If Class B or B-1 concrete is used, the sections shall be cured with wet burlap for 72 hours or by covering with transparent membrane applied in accordance with Sec 502. Precast units constructed with Class B or B-1 concrete shall not be transported or erected until at least seven days after casting. If forms are removed before the expiration of the curing period, the parts of the structure exposed shall be cured as directed by the engineer.

1033.6.3 Lift Holes. Lift holes shall be in accordance with Sec 1026. If approved by the engineer, lifting hooks or bars may be cast into the sections.

1033.6.4 Forms. Forms shall be mortar-tight and of sound material adequate to prevent distortion during placing and curing of the concrete. Forms shall be reasonably smooth and free of loose knots, holes and other defects.

1033.6.5 Cold Weather Concreting. Concrete placed in cold weather shall be protected from freezing during the curing period by the use of a heated, weatherproof enclosure. Concrete shall not be placed on or against reinforcing steel or other surfaces with temperatures lower than 35 F. No concrete shall be placed when the ambient temperature is below 35 F.

1033.7 Physical Test Requirements.

1033.7.1 Concrete Test Requirements. The basis for concrete test requirements shall be AASHTO M 199. The specified number of specimens required for the tests shall be furnished without charge by the manufacturer and shall be selected at random by the engineer. The cores for compression tests shall be taken from manhole or drop inlet sections that would not otherwise be rejected under this specification. The selection shall be made at the point or points designated by the engineer.

1033.7.2 Compression Tests. Compression tests for satisfying the design concrete strength requirement may be made on either standard rodded concrete cylinders or cylinders compacted and cured in a similar manner to the manhole or drop inlet sections or, at the option of the manufacturer, on cores drilled from the wall of the section. If compression test cylinders are being used, the manufacturer shall furnish a sufficient number of molds of a type meeting the approval from the engineer. The compressive strength of each core tested shall be equal to or greater than the design strength of the concrete. If a core does not meet the required strength, another core from the same section may be tested. If this core does not meet the required strength, that section will be rejected. Additional tests shall be made on other sections to determine the acceptability of the lot.

1033.7.3 Absorption Test Requirements. The engineer may require samples for absorption tests if concrete other than Class B or B-1 is used. Each sample shall be a piece broken from the wall or a core drilled from the wall, have a minimum area of 9 square inches as measured on one surface of the wall, have a thickness equal to the wall and be free of visible cracks.

1033.8 Permissible Variations in Dimensions.

1033.8.1 The basis for permissible variations in dimensions shall be AASHTO M 199.

1033.8.2 The internal dimensions of precast units shall not vary more than one percent or 3/8 inch, whichever is greater.

1033.8.3 The vertical spacing and vertical alignment between adjacent manhole steps and horizontal distance from the inside wall to the centerline of a manhole step shall not vary more than one inch from the design dimensions.

1033.9 Steps. Steps for precast manholes and drop inlets shall be in accordance with Sec 604 and as shown on the plans.

1033.10 Repairs. Filling of form tie cavities and repair of other defects shall be in accordance with Sec 703.

1033.11 Inspection. The quality of material, the process of manufacture and the finished precast units shall be subject to inspection and approval by the engineer.

1033.12 Marking. Marking shall be indented into the section or shall be painted thereon with waterproof paint. The following information shall be clearly marked on the inside of each precast unit:

MH for manholes or DI for drop inlets. Other units do not need a designation.

Date of manufacture.

Name or trademark of the manufacturer.

SECTION 1036
REINFORCING STEEL FOR CONCRETE

1036.1 Scope. This specification covers reinforcing steel to be used in concrete.

1036.2 Acceptance.

1036.2.1 All material shall be obtained from a source identified on the PAL designated for this specification. The source shall be listed on the PAL at the time the material is incorporated into the project.

1036.2.2 All material will be inspected and accepted in accordance with Sec 106.

1036.2.3 AASHTO specifications, when referenced, will control only the physical properties, chemical properties and handling and storage of the material, except as otherwise specified herein or shown on the plans.

1036.3 Reinforcing Steel for Concrete Structures.

1036.3.1 Unless otherwise specified, reinforcement shall be deformed bars in accordance with AASHTO M 31.

1036.3.2 Spiral reinforcement shall be in accordance with Sec 1036.3.1, except that the reinforcement may be plain or deformed or shall be cold drawn steel wire in accordance with AASHTO M 32 or deformed steel wire in accordance with AASHTO M 225.

1036.3.3 Steel welded wire reinforcement shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 336.

1036.4 Epoxy Coated Reinforcing Steel.

1036.4.1 Epoxy coated reinforcing steel shall be in accordance with ASTM A 775/A 775M except as otherwise specified herein or shown on the plans.

1036.4.1.1 Only steel in accordance with Sec 1036.3.1 shall be used.

1036.4.1.2 Coated bars shall not be spliced except as shown on the plans.

1036.4.1.3 Organic coatings, other than epoxy, shall not be used.

1036.4.1.4 Patching or repair material shall be compatible with the coating, inert in concrete and in accordance with the epoxy resin manufacturer’s recommendations. The material shall be epoxy and be suitable for application at the plant or in the field to uncoated areas and damaged areas of the coating.

1036.5 Documentation.

1036.5.1 Documentation of uncoated steel shall include the steel manufacturer’s certified mill test report showing complete chemical and physical test results for each heat.

1036.5.2 Documentation of coated steel shall include the coating applicator's certification that all material used, the preparation of the bars, coating and curing are in accordance with these specifications, and that no bar contains more than one holiday per linear foot. The certification shall include or have attached specific results of tests of coating thickness and flexibility of coating.

SECTION 1039 POLYMER PRODUCTS

SECTION 1039.10 TYPE II EPOXY.

1039.10.1 Scope. This specification covers epoxy resin to be used to bond plastic concrete or mortar to hardened concrete or mortar.

1039.10.2 General Requirements. The epoxy shall be furnished as a system in accordance with the requirements of ASTM C 881, Type II, Grade 2, Class B or C.

1039.10.3 Manufacturer and Brand Name Approval. Prior to approval and use of this material, the manufacturer shall submit to Construction and Materials a certified test report showing specific test results from an independent laboratory in accordance with all requirements of these specifications. The certified test report shall contain the manufacturer's name, brand name of material, lot tested, date of manufacture and ratio of components. In addition, the manufacturer shall submit a one-quart sample of each component, A and B, for laboratory testing accompanied by a technical data sheet and an MSDS. With approval from the engineer of the certified test report and satisfactory results of tests performed on the sample submitted, the brand name and manufacturer will be placed on a qualified list of concrete bonding compounds. New certified test results and samples shall be submitted any time the manufacturing process or the material formulation is changed and may be required when random sampling and testing of material offered for use indicates nonconformity with any of the requirements herein specified.

1039.10.4 Acceptance. To obtain final acceptance of this material, the manufacturer shall furnish certification to the engineer at the destination that the material supplied is in accordance with all requirements specified and stating that the material is the same system and is identically formulated to the material tested for manufacturer and brand name approval.

SECTION 1039.20 TYPE III EPOXY.

1039.20.1 Scope. This specification covers epoxy to be used in the grouting of dry cracks, in epoxy mortar for

patching concrete and in epoxy mortar surface leveling.

1039.20.2 General Requirements. The epoxy shall be furnished as a system in accordance with the requirements of ASTM C 881, Type III, Grade 1, Class B or C.

1039.20.3 Manufacturer and Brand Name Approval. Prior to approval and use of this material, the manufacturer shall submit to Construction and Materials a certified test report showing specific test results from an independent laboratory in accordance with all requirements of these specifications. The certified test report shall contain the manufacturer's name, brand name of material, lot tested, date of manufacture and ratio of components. In addition, the manufacturer shall submit a one-quart sample of each component, A and B, for laboratory testing accompanied by a technical data sheet and an MSDS. With approval from the engineer of the certified test report and satisfactory results of tests performed on the sample submitted, the brand name and manufacturer will be placed on a qualified list of concrete bonding compounds. New certified test results and samples shall be submitted any time the manufacturing process or the material formulation is changed and may be required when random sampling and testing of material offered for use indicates nonconformity with any of the requirements herein specified.

1039.20.4 Acceptance. To obtain final acceptance of this material, the manufacturer shall furnish a certification to the engineer at destination certifying that the material supplied is in accordance with all requirements specified and stating that the material is the same system and is identically formulated to the material tested for manufacturer and brand name approval.

SECTION 1039.30 EPOXY OR POLYESTER BONDING AGENTS FOR DOWELS.

1039.30.1 Scope. This specification covers a multi-component epoxy or polyester bonding agent to be used in anchoring epoxy coated dowel bars in concrete for pavement repair.

1039.30.2 General Requirements. Epoxy or polyester bonding agents for anchoring epoxy coated dowel bars shall be furnished as a multi-component system. The system shall include automatic mixing, whether in

cartridge or bulk form. The component ratios shall be shown on the label of each cartridge or bulk container.

1039.30.3 Properties. The epoxy or polyester bonding agent shall exhibit good bonding properties between the

epoxy coated dowel bar and the existing concrete and shall cure in accordance with the manufacturer's

recommendation. Bonding agents, when initially mixed, shall have a viscosity, which prevents flow from a

horizontal hole. When tested in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 49, the minimum pull-out load shall

be 8,100 pounds.

1039.30.4 Manufacturer and Brand Name Approval. Prior to approval and use of this material, the

manufacturer shall submit to Construction and Materials a certified test report from an independent laboratory

showing specific test results in accordance with all requirements of this specification. The certified test report

shall contain the manufacturer's name, brand name of material, lot tested, date of manufacture, ratio of

components by volume and system tested. In addition, the manufacturer shall submit to Construction and

Materials a sample representing the system for laboratory testing accompanied by a technical data sheet, an

MSDS and any special installation instructions relative to the system being submitted, including recommended

curing time. With approval from the engineer of the certified test report and satisfactory results of tests

performed on the sample submitted, the brand name and manufacturer will be placed on a qualified list of

bonding agents for dowels. New certified test results and samples shall be submitted any time the manufacturing

process or the material formulation is changed and may be required when random sampling and testing of

material offered for use indicates nonconformity with any of the requirements herein specified.

1039.30.5 Acceptance. To obtain final acceptance of this material, the manufacturer shall furnish certification to

the engineer at the destination that the material supplied is in accordance with all requirements specified and

stating that the material supplied is the same system and is identically formulated to the material tested for

manufacturer and brand name approval.

SECTION 1039.40 EPOXY BONDING AGENTS FOR RESIN ANCHOR SYSTEMS.

1039.40.1 Scope. This specification covers a multi-component epoxy bonding agents to be used in anchoring

steel components in concrete for structures.

1039.40.2 General Requirements. The epoxy shall be furnished as a system in accordance with the requirements of ASTM C 881, Type IV, and Grade 3 and as described herein. When a cartridge dispensing system is used the epoxy shall have a gel time as stated in ASTM C 881 paragraph 5.2. Epoxy bonding agents are not approved for sustained tension loads.

1039.40.3 Pull Test. The epoxy bonding agent shall exhibit good bonding properties between the anchored product and the existing concrete and shall cure in less than 24 hours or manufacturer's recommendation. For acceptance on the qualified list, Resin Anchor Systems shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E 488. The ultimate minimum pull-out load shall be in accordance with the following table when installed per manufacturer's recommendation. Resin Anchor Systems shall also have a minimum strength of 9,000 lbs when tested in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM-74. TM-74 testing will not be required if the Resin Anchor System has a current International Code Council Evaluation Service (ICC-ES) evaluation indicating the material complies with the latest edition of the International Building Code.

Pull-Out Specification Requirements

Diameter of Threaded Rod or Reinforcing Bar	Minimum Ultimate Pullout Strength
1/2"	9,800 lbs
5/8"	15,500 lbs
3/4"	20,400 lbs
7/8"	27,500 lbs
1"	33,600 lbs

1039.40.4 Manufacturer and Brand Name Approval. Prior to approval and use of this material, the manufacturer shall submit to Construction and Materials a certified test report from an independent laboratory

showing specific test results in accordance with all requirements of this specification. The certified test report

shall contain the manufacturer's name, brand name of material, lot tested, date of manufacture, bar or rod size

tested, embedment depth and ratio of components. In addition, the manufacturer shall submit a one- quart

sample of each component, A and B, for laboratory testing accompanied by a technical data sheet and a material

safety data sheet. A copy of the current ICC-ES evaluation for the material shall be submitted to waive TM-74

testing. With approval from the engineer of the certified test report and satisfactory results of tests performed on

the sample submitted, the brand name and manufacturer will be placed on a qualified list of Epoxy Bonding

Agents for Resin Anchor Systems. New certified test results and samples shall be submitted any time the

manufacturing process or the material formulation is changed and may be required when random sampling and

testing of material offered for use indicates nonconformity with any of the requirements herein specified.

1039.40.5 Acceptance. To obtain final acceptance of this material, the manufacturer shall furnish certification to

the engineer at the destination that the material supplied is in accordance with all requirements specified and

stating that the material is the same system and is identically formulated to the material tested for manufacturer

and brand name approval.

SECTION 1039.50 SAND FOR EPOXY MORTAR.

1039.50.1 Scope. This specification covers sand for use in epoxy mortar for the repairing of concrete surfaces.

The epoxy material used in epoxy mortar shall be Type III epoxy in accordance with Sec 1039.20.

1039.50.2 Properties. Sand for mortar shall be a quartzite sand, Ottawa sand or equal. The sand shall be clean

and dust free. The maximum moisture content shall be 2 percent. The gradation shall be in accordance with the

following requirements:

Gradation Requirements

Sieve Size Percent Passing by

Weight

No. 16 100

No. 30 97-100

No. 50 5-35

No. 100 0-2

No. 200 0-0.4

1039.50.3 Acceptance. The manufacturer shall furnish certification to the engineer at the destination that the

material supplied is in accordance with all requirements of this specification. Acceptance will be based on certification and testing.

SECTION 1039.60 EPOXY POLYMER WEARING SURFACE.

1039.60.1 Scope. This specification covers epoxy polymer and aggregate to be used for an epoxy polymer wearing surface.

1039.60.2 Epoxy Polymer. The infrared spectrum for each component of the epoxy polymer shall essentially

match that of the standard infrared spectrum for the particular component as specified in AASHTO T 237, Sections 4 and 5. The epoxide equivalent for Component A shall not exceed 270. The mixed epoxy polymer shall meet the following requirements:

Property Requirement

Pot life (at75 F), minutes 10 to 55

Tensile Strength (at 75 F, 7 days), psi, min. 1500

Tensile elongation (at 75 F), percent, min. 20

Water Absorption, percent, max. 0.8

Compressive Strength (at 4 hr), psi, min. 1000

Compressive Strength (at 48 hr, wet), psi, min. 4000

Ash Content, percent, max 0.5

Rotational Viscosity, (at 75 F, spindle 3, 60 rpm), poise 7 to 25

Volatile Content, percent, max. 3.0

Thermal Shear (shearing, shrinkage, expansion or scaling) None

1039.60.2.1 Classes. Epoxy resin shall be formulated for use at specific temperatures as specified in ASTM C

881. The controlling temperature shall be that of the hardened concrete surface to which the polymer is applied.

Where unusual curing rates are desired and upon the approval from the engineer, a class of epoxy resin may be

used at a temperature other than that for which the epoxy resin is normally intended.

1039.60.2.2 Packaging. Containers shall be identified as "Component A--Contains Epoxy Resin" and

"Component B--Contains Hardener" and shall show the type, class and mixing directions. Each container shall

be marked with the name of the manufacturer, class, batch, or lot number, date of packaging, date of shelf life

expiration, pigmentation, if any, manufacturer, and the quantity contained in pounds and gallons.

1039.60.3 Aggregate. Aggregate shall be bauxite, crushed porphyry, aluminum oxide, flint chat or other

similarly hard, durable, dry aggregates with less than 0.2 percent moisture. Aggregate shall be in accordance

with the following gradation:

Sieve Size % Passing By Weight

No. 4 100

No. 20 0-5

No. 200 0-1.0

1039.60.3.1 Lead Content. Aggregate produced as a by-product from lead or zinc mining operations shall not

have a total lead content greater than 4,500 ppm, as determined by EPA Method 3050A, “Acid Digestion of

Sediments, Sludges and Soils. Suppliers of this aggregate shall provide certification to the engineer for each

shipment that the total lead content of the aggregate does not exceed this value, and attach a typical test report

from the same source no older than 12 months prior to the shipment.

1039.60.3.2 Aggregate Recommendation. For each contract, the epoxy polymer supplier shall supply a letter to

the engineer specifically recommending the use of a designated aggregate and source, which has been

previously approved by Construction and Materials.

1039.60.4 Epoxy Polymer Performance. The epoxy polymer system shall not exhibit shearing, shrinkage,

expansion or scaling.

1039.60.5 Test Methods. Tests will be performed in accordance with the following methods:

Test Methods

Rotational Viscosity ASTM C881

Epoxy Equivalent ASTM C881 and AASHTO T237

Volatile Content a ASTM D 1259, Method B, for mixed system

Filler Content ASTM C881

Ash Content ASTM D 482

Pot Life AASHTO T 237

Tensile Strength ASTM D 638

Compressive Strength ASTM C 881

Water Absorption ASTM D 570

Thermal Shear ASTM C881

a Sample cured 4 days at room temperature and weighed on a previously

weighed metal foil.

1039.60.6 Manufacturer and Brand Name Approval. Prior to approval and use of this material, the

manufacturer shall submit to Construction and Materials a certified test report showing specific test results in

accordance with all requirements of this specification. The certified test report shall include the manufacturer's

name, brand name of material, lot tested, date of manufacture, ratio of components by volume and system

tested. In addition, the manufacturer shall submit to Construction and Materials a sample representing the

system for laboratory testing accompanied by a technical data sheet, an MSDS and any special installation

instructions relative to the system being submitted. Upon approval of the certified test report and satisfactory

results of tests performed on the sample submitted, the brand name and manufacturer will be placed on a

qualified list of epoxy resin material for epoxy polymer concrete wearing surface. New certified test results and

samples shall be submitted any time the manufacturing process or the material formulation is changed and may

be required when random sampling and testing of material offered for use indicates non-conformity with any of

the requirements herein specified.

1039.60.7 Product History. The epoxy polymer shall have a proven record of a minimum of two years on

similar bridge decks within the United States. A list including the location, the name of the agency involved with the project, and a name and phone number of a contact person with that agency, shall be provided for each location used as evidence of satisfactory use.

1039.60.8 Acceptance. The manufacturer shall furnish certification to the engineer at the destination that the material supplied is in accordance with all requirements specified and stating that the material supplied is the same system and is identically formulated to the material tested for manufacturer and brand name approval. Acceptance will be based on certification and testing.

SECTION 1039.70 POLYMER CONCRETE.

1039.70.1 Scope. This specification covers polymer concrete consisting of a fast setting epoxy based solid that may contain aggregate for use at bridge expansion joints.

1039.70.2 General Requirements. The polymer concrete shall be resilient, self-adhering, water tight and shall withstand and remain bonded to the surrounding material under repeated impact and thermal cycling. The polymer concrete shall not flow or become tacky at temperatures up to 130 F, shall be resistant to ultraviolet radiation, petroleum products and abrasion, and shall be capable of curing at all temperatures above 50 F. Mixing and placement shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

1039.70.2.1 The combined liquid components with no aggregate added shall be in accordance with the following requirements:

Epoxy Requirements

Property Specific Value

Mixing Ratio, by Volume 1:1

Viscosity (ASTM D 2393), Poises, Spindle 2, 30 rpm, 25 C ± 2 C 9-20

Color Black

Gel Time (AASHTO M-200-73), minutes 25-50

Elongation (ASTM D 638a), percent 45-55

Tensile Strength (ASTM D 638a), psi , min. 900

Shore D Hardness (ASTM D 2240), 77 F 45-75

a Test Method Type 1, Molded Specimens, 0.25 inches thickness

1039.70.2.2 The cured polymer concrete including aggregate, which shall be supplied by the manufacturer, shall

be in accordance with the following requirements:

Polymer Concrete Requirements

Property Specific Value

Compression strength (ASTM C 579), psi min. at 24 hours 2,500

Bond Shear Strength (ASTM C 882), psi 700

Abrasion Resistance (ASTM C 501), Wear Index

(Taber H-22), max. 1.0

Compressive Stress (OK/OHD L-6), psi 350

Resilience (OK/OHD L-6), percent 70

1039.70.3 Manufacturer and Brand Name Approval. Prior to approval and use of this material, the

manufacturer shall submit to Construction and Materials a certified test report from an independent laboratory

showing specific test results in accordance with all requirements of this specification. The certified test report

shall contain the manufacturer's name, brand name of material, lot tested, date of manufacture and ratio of

components. In addition, the manufacturer shall submit a one-quart sample of each component, A and B, for

laboratory testing accompanied by a technical data sheet and a material safety data sheet. With approval from

the engineer of the certified test report and satisfactory results of tests performed on the sample submitted, the

brand name and manufacturer will be placed on a qualified list of polymer concretes. New certified test results

and samples shall be submitted any time the manufacturing process or the material formulation is changed and

may be required when random sampling and testing of material offered for use indicates nonconformity with

any of the requirements herein specified.

1039.70.4 Acceptance. To obtain final acceptance of this material, the manufacturer shall furnish certification to

the engineer at destination certifying that the material supplied is in accordance with all requirements specified

and stating that the material is identically formulated to the material tested for manufacturer and brand name

approval.

SECTION 1039.80 METHYL METHACRYLATE (MMA) POLYMER SLURRY WEARING SURFACE.

1039.80.1 Scope. This specification covers MMA primer, polymer slurry and top coat; and broadcast aggregate

to be used for a MMA polymer slurry wearing surface.

1039.80.2 Preapproved Product. The following material has been preapproved for use under this specification:

Transpo T-18 Thin Overlay and SterlingLloyd Bridgemaster.

1039.80.3 MMA Primer. The MMA primer shall be wax-free low odor and comply with the following

requirements:

Property Requirement Test Method

Viscosity, cps 50 to 70 ASTM D2393

Density, lb/gal 8 to 9 ASTM D2849

Pot Life (at 70 F), minutes 10 to 30 ASTM C881

Flash Point, F, min 43 ASTM D1310

Solids Content (w/catalyst), %, min. 100 ASTM D1644

1039.80.4 MMA Polymer Slurry. The MMA polymer slurry shall comply with the following requirements:

Property Requirement Test Method

Elongation at Break, percent, min. 50 ASTM D 638 (Type 1)

Tensile Strength (at 75 F), psi 500 to 900 ASTM D 638

Tensile Adhesion, psi, min. 250 ASTM C 1583

Water Absorption (at 24 hr), %, max. 0.8 ASTM D 570

Volatile Content, percent, max. 3.0 ASTM D 2369

1039.80.5 Broadcast Aggregate. Aggregate shall be in accordance with Sec 1039.60 unless otherwise

specified. Unless otherwise specified, aggregate shall be light-colored (i.e. flint rock or similar).

1039.80.5.1 All aggregates shall be furnished in appropriate packaging that is clearly labeled and protects the

aggregate from any contaminates on the jobsite and from exposure to rain or other moisture.

1039.80.6 MMA Top Coat. The MMA top coat shall comply with the following requirements:

Property Requirement Test Method

Viscosity, cps 200 to 400 ASTM D 2393

Flash Point, F, min. 50 ASTM D

SECTION 1039.90 POLYESTER POLYMER WEARING SURFACE.

1039.90.1 Scope. This specification covers MMA primer, polyester resin binder and aggregate to be used for a

polyester polymer wearing surface.

1039.90.2 Primer. The prepared surface shall receive a wax-free low odor, high molecular weight methacrylate

prime coat complying with the following requirements:

Property Requirement Test Method

Viscosity (Brookfield RVT w/UL adapter, 50 rpm at 77 F), Pa-s, max. 0.025 ASTM D 2196[a]

Specific Gravity (at 75 F), min. 0.90 ASTM D 1475[a]

Volatile Content, %, max. 30 ASTM D 2369[a]

Flash Point, F, min. 180 ASTM D 3278[a]

Vapor Pressure (at 77 F), mm Hg, max. 1.0 ASTM D 323[a]

Tack Free Time (at 77 F), minutes, max. 400 ASTMC 679

PCC Saturated Surface-Dry Bond Strength (24 hrs at 70 F +/- 1°), psi, min. 500 California Test 551

[a]Tested prior to adding initiator

1039.90.2.1 Mixing Requirements. The prime coat initiator shall consist of a metal drier and peroxide. If

supplied separately from the resin, at no time shall the metal drier be mixed directly with the peroxide.

1039.90.2.2 Storage. The containers shall be stored in a manner that will not allow leakage or spillage from one

material to contact the containers or materials of the other.

1039.90.3 Aggregates. The aggregates shall comply with Sec 1005, except as specified herein.

1039.90.3.1 Crushed Particles. Aggregate retained on the No. 8 sieve shall have a maximum of 45 percent

crushed particles as determined by AASHTO T 335.

1039.90.3.2 Absorption. The aggregate absorption shall not exceed one percent as determined by AASHTO T

85.

1039.90.3.3 Moisture Content. At the time of mixing with the resin, the moisture content of the aggregate, as

determined by AASHTO T 255, shall not exceed one half of the aggregate absorption.

1039.90.3.4 Temperature. The aggregate temperature shall be between 45 F and 100 F at the time of mixing.

1039.90.3.5 Combined Gradation. Aggregate for polyester polymer concrete shall comply with the following

requirements:

Sieve Size 1/2" Maximum % Passing by Weight 3/8" Maximum % Passing by Weight

½" 100 100

3/8" 83 – 100 100

No. 4 65 – 82 62 – 85

No. 8 45 – 64 45 – 67

No. 16 27 – 48 29 – 50

No. 30 12 – 30 16 – 36

No. 50 6 – 17 5 – 20

No. 100 0 – 7 0 – 7

No. 200 0 - 3 0 - 3

1039.90.3.6 Fine Aggregate. The fine aggregate shall consist of natural sand.

1039.90.3.7 Finishing Sand. The sand for abrasive finish shall be commercial quality blast sand having at least

95 percent passing the No. 8 sieve and at least 95 percent retained on the No. 20 sieve when tested in accordance

with AASHTO T 27. The absorption of the sand shall not exceed 1 percent when tested in accordance with

AASHTO T 84.

1039.90.4 Polyester Resin Binder. The resin shall be an unsaturated isophthalic-styrene co-polymer

conforming to the following requirements:

Property Requirement Test Method

Viscosity (RVT, No. 1 Spindle, 20 rpm at 77 F), Pa-s 0.075 to 0.200 ASTM D

2196[a]

Specific Gravity (at 77 F) 1.05 to 1.10 ASTM D

1475[a]

Elongation (Type I at 0.45 inch/minute, thickness = 1/4" +/- 0.04), %,

min. (Sampling Condition)

35 ASTM D

638

18h at 77 F & 50% RH +

5h at 158 F

ASTM D

618

Tensile Strength (Type I at 0.45 inch/minute, thickness = 1/4" +/-0.04),

psi, min. (Sampling Condition)

2500 ASTM D

638

18h at 77 F & 50% RH +

5h at 158 F

ASTM D

618

Styrene Content (by weight), % 40 to 50 ASTM D

2369[a]

Silane Coupler (by weight of polyester-styrene resin), %, min. 1.0

PCC Saturated Surface-Dry Bond Strength (24 hrs at 70 F +/- 1 F), psi,

min. 500 California

Test 551

[a] Tested prior to adding initiator

1039.90.4.1 Silane Coupler. The silane coupler shall be an organsilane ester,

gammamethacryloxpropyltrimethoxysilane.

1039.90.4.2 Hardener. The promoter/hardeners shall be compatible with suitable methyl ethyl ketone peroxide

(MEKP) and cumene hydroperoxide (CHP) initiators. MEKP initiators shall be used when the surrounding

concrete temperatures are above 60 F. A blend of initiators may be used as approved by the engineer when the

surrounding concrete temperature is 50 – 60 F.

SECTION 1042 HIGHWAY SIGN MATERIAL

1042.1 Scope. This specification covers the material used in signs and fastening devices, and the fabrication of signs.

1042.2 Material. Material shall be of new stock and shall be in accordance with the following, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

1042.2.1 Signs.

Item	Specification
Aluminum Flat Sheets	ASTM B 209, 6061-T6 or 5052-H38
Aluminum Extruded Sign Panels	ASTM B221, 6063-T6

1042.2.2 Sign Appurtenances.

Item	Specification
Aluminum Post Clip	ASTM B 108, 356-T6
Aluminum Bolts	ASTM B 211, 2024-T4 or 6061-T6
Aluminum Nuts	ASTM B 211, 2024-T4, 6061-T6, 6262-T9 or 2017-T4
Aluminum Flat Washers	ASTM B 209, or Alclad 2024-T4 or 2024-T4
Aluminum Lock Washers	ASTM B 211, 7075-T6
Aluminum Lock Nuts (Nylon Insert)	ASTM B 211, 2017-T4
Aluminum Edge Molding	ASTM B 221,6063-T6
Stainless Steel Bolts, Nuts, Screws and Washers	ASTM A 320 or SAE J405D, Austenitic Steel, Min. Yield 30,000 psi

1042.2.3 Certification. A manufacturer or supplier's Certification of Metal used for signing material listed above shall be furnished to the engineer at the fabrication plant at the time of material inspection. The contractor shall furnish to the engineer the fabricator's certification in accordance with Sec 903.3.5.2.

1042.2.4 Structural Signs. Structural signs shall be fabricated of 0.081-inch minimum extruded aluminum panels and mounted as shown on the plans. The maximum allowable deviation from flatness shall not exceed 0.010 inch per inch width of the panel. Shop drawings for approval from the engineer will be required for any variation in the assembly or mounting details.

1042.2.5 Sheet Signs. Flat sheet signs shall be fabricated as shown on the plans from sheet aluminum of the specified thickness. Flat sheet signs shall not have holes except those drilled or punched for proper mounting.

1042.2.6 Washers. Nylon washers recommended by the sign sheeting manufacturer shall be used between the bolt heads and sign faces on flat sheet aluminum signs. The washers shall be for use with 3/8-inch bolts and shall have a minimum outside diameter of 3/4 inch, and a nominal thickness of 1/16 inch.

1042.2.7 Retroreflective Sheeting. Retroreflective sheeting shall be in accordance with latest versions or ASTM D 4956 and AASHTO M 268, except as noted herein. Color and luminance values for all MoDOT types of reflective sheeting shall be in accordance with ASTM D 4956. Retroreflective sheeting shall have sufficient adhesion, strength and flexibility such that the sheeting can be handled, processed and applied

according to the manufacturer's recommendations without appreciable stretching, tearing, cracking or other damage. Adhesive performance for retroreflective sheeting shall be in accordance with ASTM D 4956. The sheeting surface shall be in condition to be readily screen processed and compatible with transparent overlay films, plus recommended transparent and opaque screen process colors. The retroreflective sheeting manufacturer shall furnish information as to the type of solvent or solvents that may be used to clean the surface of the sheeting without detrimental loss of performance and durability. Retroreflective sheeting having a datum mark on the surface shall be oriented vertically. ASTM D 4956 Type IX, XI or AASHTO M 268 Type C or D retroreflective sheeting applied as legend and border for specific signing applications, without a datum mark on the surface of the sheeting, shall be evaluated for rotational sensitivity per AASHTO M 268, Section 3.3. Retroreflective sheeting products that do not meet the rotational sensitivity requirements of Section 3.3 shall follow guidelines detailed in AASHTO M 268 Section 3.3.1 and fabricated per AASHTO M 268 Section 3.3.2.

1042.2.7.1 ASTM D 4956 Type I, Class 1 retroreflective sheeting shall be enclosed lens glass-bead or prismatic sheeting.

1042.2.7.2 Sign Sheeting. Background sheeting applied to flat sheet and extruded panel signs shall be in accordance with ASTM D 4956 Type IV, Class 1. All yellow, orange and yellow green sheeted signs shall be fabricated with ASTM D 4956 Type IX, XI or AASHTO M 268 Type C or D fluorescent yellow, fluorescent orange and fluorescent yellow green sheeting respectively. Retroreflective sheeting shall be high intensity that is an unmetallized micro prismatic reflective material.

1042.2.7.3 Channelizers. All reflective sheeting for channelizers and drum-like channelizers shall be in accordance with ASTM D 4956 Type IX or XI for fluorescent orange sheeting and in accordance with ASTM D 4956 Type IV for orange or white sheeting. All retroreflective marking on channelizers shall be in accordance with ASTM D 4956, Supplemental Requirements, and Section S2. Reflective sheeting applied to channelizers shall be reboundable in accordance with ASTM D 4956. Retroreflective marking on cones will not be required.

1042.2.7.4 Advanced Warning Rails. All reflective sheeting for advanced warning rails shall be in accordance with ASTM D 4956 Type IV.

1042.2.7.5 Delineators. All retroreflective sheeting for delineators shall be in accordance with ASTM D 4956 Type IX or XI requirements, except permanent and temporary tubular delineators, which shall be ASTM D 4956 Type IV requirements. All permanent and temporary tubular delineators' reflective sheeting shall be reboundable in accordance with ASTM D 4956.

1042.2.7.6 Retroreflective sheeting applied as legend and border shall be in accordance with ASTM D 4956, Type IX, XI or AASHTO Type C or D, Class 1. Retroreflective sheeting shall be an unmetallized cube corner microprismatic reflective material.

1042.2.7.7 Screen Print and Overlay. For screen printed transparent colored areas or transparent colored overlay films on white sheeting, the coefficient of retroreflection (RA) shall be no less than 70 percent of the original values for the corresponding color.

1042.2.8 Outdoor Exposure. Retroreflective sheeting, except for work zone signs, shall be submitted by the manufacturer to NTPEP for two years of 45-degree south-facing outdoor exposure. Retroreflective sheeting for work zone signs shall be submitted by the manufacturer to NTPEP for an exposure time of one year. Results shall be published by NTPEP and available for MoDOT review. For all NTPEP test decks, retroreflective sheeting shall have a coefficient of retroreflection at least 50 percent of the specified value for ASTM D 4956 Type I or 80 percent of the original reading for ASTM D 4956 Type IV, IX or XI.

1042.2.9 Manufacturer and Brand Name Approval. The manufacturer shall make available, upon request, NTPEP test results from all test decks, and certification to Construction and Materials, showing reflective material is in accordance with ASTM D 4956 specification. In addition, the manufacture shall, upon request, submit samples representing the retroreflective sheeting tested by NTPEP, and with compatible inks. These samples shall be accompanied by a product data sheet, an MSDS, technical bulletins on sign fabrication and any special fabrication instructions relative to the retroreflective sheeting submitted. Samples of retroreflective sheeting shall 10 x 10 inches and applied to an aluminum substrate.

1042.2.9.1 Materials that fail to provide satisfactory field performance will be evaluated and may be disqualified from future use on fabricated signs for MoDOT. All corrective actions made by MoDOT will control.

1042.2.10 Type of Characters. Letters, numerals, arrows, symbols, borders and other features of the sign message shall be of the type, size and series shown on the plans or as specified by the engineer. Completed letters, numerals and other units shall be formed to provide a continuous stroke width with smooth edges, and shall yield a flat surface free of air bubbles, wrinkles or other blemishes as determined by the engineer. Units of the sign message shown on the plans shall meet the requirements for the specified type.

1042.2.10.1 Screen Print, Transparent Overlay and Opaque Black Film.

1042.2.10.1.1 The letters, numerals, arrows, symbols and borders shall be applied to the background of the sign by the direct or reverse screen process. Messages and borders of a color darker than the sign field shall be applied to the retroreflective sheeting by the direct process. Messages and borders of a color lighter than the sign field shall be produced by the reverse screen process. Inks used in the silkscreen process shall be of the type to produce the desired color and durability when applied on retroreflective sheeting. Silkscreen inks shall be used in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The ink shall produce the desired color when applied on retroreflective sheeting background and shall dry to a good film without running, streaking or sagging. The screening shall be done in a manner that results in a uniform color and tone, with sharply defined edges of legend and border without blemishes on the sign field that will affect the intended use. Signs after screening shall be dried in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations to provide a smooth hard finish. Any signs on which blisters appear during the drying process will be rejected.

1042.2.10.1.2 Transparent overlay films may be used as a replacement for the reverse screen process, as recommended by the sheeting manufacturer.

1042.2.10.2 Direct Applied Characters. The letters, numerals, symbols, borders and other features of the sign message shall be cut from the color and type of sheeting shown on the plans, and applied to the sign field in accordance with the sheeting manufacturer’s recommendations.

1042.2.10.3 Allowable Variations. The design height of rounded letters or numerals shall be 1/64 inch of height greater than normal height, both on top and bottom of letter or numeral, where rounded. The loop portion of letters such as f, g and y, shall conform to the dimensions shown on the plans with the allowable tolerance. The following variations in dimensions of letters and numerals, regardless of character type, will be acceptable with all measurements made to the nearest 1/8 inch.

Allowable Variation		
Nominal Height, inches	**Variation in Height, inches**	**Variation in Width, inches**
4 thru 12	-1/8 to +3/8	-1/4 to +1/4
Over 12	-1/8 to +3/8	-3/8 to +3/8

1042.3 Sign Fabrication. A sign shall consist of aluminum flat sheets or extruded panels retroreflectorized on the face side with all letters, numerals, symbols, borders, corners and route shields mounted on the face, and shall include all necessary mounting devices shown on the plans. Signs equal to or greater in width than six feet are considered structural (ST) and shall be fabricated on extruded panels. Signs less than six feet in width will be considered sheet (SH) signs and shall be fabricated with flat sheet. Any exceptions to these fabrication standards will be indicated on the plans.

1042.3.1 All signs shall be of the highest quality with consistent daytime and nighttime color and retroreflectivity throughout the sign and produced as follows.

1042.3.1.1 All aluminum substrate shall be given a chromate conversion coating in accordance with ASTM B 449, Class 2, and shall be prepared by one of the Treatment Sequence Options described in ASTM B 449, Appendix X2. The chemicals and solvents shall be applied in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Sufficient laboratory facilities to test and control the concentration of the solutions used shall be maintained at the treating plant. A log of the concentration of treating solutions shall be maintained. Treated panels shall be handled in such a manner as to prevent contamination. Panels shall be stored in a dry, clean area free from dust, acid fumes or vapors. When aluminum is shipped to a secondary location for retroreflectorizing, adequate precautions shall be taken to ensure that the material arrives at the destination uncontaminated.

1042.3.1.2 All materials used to fabricate a sign legend, including retroreflective and non-retroreflective sheeting, used for background, letters, numerals, arrows, symbols, borders and other features of the sign message shall be from a single manufacturer.

1042.3.1.3 Retroreflective sheeting splices on structural signs shall be kept to a minimum. Rolled overlap splices in accordance with the sheeting manufacturer's recommendations may be used, with no more than one allowed per panel. Retroreflective sheeting shall be placed on the individual extruded panels in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The sign panels may be clear coated or edge sealed after application of the retroreflective sheeting, if recommended by the sheeting manufacturer. If edge sealer is used, the sealer shall be applied to all splices and edges. The completed sign shall have good color matching of retroreflective sheeting and shall be free from air bubbles, wrinkles or other blemishes.

1042.3.1.4 Retroreflective sheeting applied to standard flat sheet signs shall not have splices on signs where the smallest dimension is less than 4 feet. One vertical overlap splice approximately ¼-inch wide will be allowed on standard flat sheet signs where the smallest dimension is greater than 4 feet. Any special flat sheet signs requiring splicing other than noted for the standard flat sheet signs shall be as approved by the engineer. The sign panels may be clear coated, or edge sealed after application of the retroreflective sheeting if recommended by the sheeting manufacturer. If clear finish is used, the finish shall be applied after screening of messages and borders. If edge sealer is used, the sealer shall be applied to all splices and edges. The completed sign face shall be free from air bubbles, wrinkles or other blemishes.

1042.3.2 Nuts on panel bolts used to connect extruded panels together to form a structural sign shall be torqued to 220 - 230 inch-pounds.

1042.3.3 Signs will be accepted on certification from the manufacture assuring all fabrication and sheeting specifications are in compliance with all applicable requirements specified herein. Periodic shop inspections of sign fabrication will be made at the discretion of MoDOT, to include contractor furnished signs for MoDOT projects. Routine shop inspections will include inspection and sampling of materials, inspection of treatment and fabrication processes, and of any signs completed at time of inspection. Inspections on delivered signs for maintenance operations will be conducted for quality assurance purposes by the

appropriate district inspectors. Signs may be rejected at the fabrication shop and/or upon delivery based on unsatisfactory workmanship and/or material applications or based on any aspect of the product that is not in accordance with the specifications. The contractor will be charged with the transportation costs of sign inspectors for trips from Jefferson City, Missouri to which the inspectors must travel for signs provided to MoDOT projects. Transportation costs will be deducted by the Commission from monies due the contractor.

1042.3.4 Signs shall be packaged and shipped according to the reflective sheeting manufacture's recommendations. Signs fabricated and shipped to MoDOT for maintenance operations shall be shipped in accordance with manufacture's recommendations and in a manner that meets the requirements of the engineer. All signs shall include decals indicating sign production date, lot number of reflective sheeting used in the production of sign and other information necessary for proper sign fabrication. Upon shipment of signs to MoDOT, certifications shall be submitted thereafter to Construction and Materials. Required paperwork shall include a certification statement indicating signs meet all applicable requirements herein to include aluminum standard and extruded panel, reflective sheeting (manufacturer, series and color), and hardware certifications. Material quantities, such as square foot of flat sheet, extruded panels, if produced, reflective sheeting and a shipping list of all signs shall be included in the certification packet.

****END OF ITEM MoDOT 1042****

Intentionally Left Blank

SECTION 1046
PIPE LINER

1046.1 Scope. This specification covers material requirements for pipe liner.

1046.2 Material. Pipe liner shall be in accordance with one of the following.

(a) HDPE pipe in accordance with ASTM F 714, maximum DR 32.5.

(b) HDPE pipe in accordance with ASTM D 3350 cell classification 345464C. This pipe liner shall have approved dimensions on file with Construction and Materials.

(c) HDPE pipe in accordance with ASTM F 894 open profile, Class RSC 100 or RSC 160.

(d) PVC pipe in accordance with ASTM F 949, except that the PVC pipe and fittings shall be made of a PVC compound having a minimum call classification of 12454B, in accordance with ASTM D 1784. The joining method for PVC pipe shall be by elastomeric material in accordance with ASTM F 949.

1046.3 Pipe Marking. Each length of pipe liner furnished shall be permanently marked by the manufacturer with the manufacturer's name and applicable ASTM designation.

1046.4 Certification and Acceptance. The contractor shall furnish a manufacturer's certification to the engineer that the pipe liner was manufactured, tested, and is in accordance with this specification. Acceptance of the material will be based on the manufacturer's certification and statement, pipe liner identification markings and upon the results of such tests as may be performed by the engineer.

1046.5 Inspection.

1046.5.1 The engineer may inspect the fabricated pipe liner at the manufacturing plant, intermediate distribution point or destination. The manufacturer shall furnish to the engineer an itemized statement of the sizes and lengths of pipe liner in each shipment. The engineer shall have access to the manufacturing plant or intermediate distribution point for inspection. Each facility shall provide the means to safely inspect all aspects of production or storage. Any previously rejected pipe liner included in a later lot will be cause for rejection of the entire lot. A lot will be defined as all the material presented for inspection at one time.

1046.5.2 Inspection will include an examination of the pipe liner for markings, variance from specified diameter, net length of fabricated pipe liner, and any evidence of poor workmanship. The inspection may include taking samples.

1046.6 Rejection.

1046.6.1 Any individual section of pipe liner failing to meet the marking, diameter, length or workmanship requirements of these specifications will be rejected.

1046.6.2 If a pipe liner fails to meet the requirements, the pipe liner sampled will be rejected and the lot will be resampled. A resample will be of the same size as the original sample. The resample shall comply in all respects or the entire shipment will be rejected.

SECTION 1048 PAVEMENT MARKING MATERIAL

1048.1 Scope. This specification covers all temporary pavement markings, permanent pavement markings and drop-on glass beads.

1048.1.1 Certification and Acceptance. All material contained in Sec 1048 shall be in accordance with the following requirements.

1048.1.1.1 To obtain approval of the material, the manufacturer shall submit material and application specifications, samples of the material, and a history of satisfactory use to Construction and Materials for testing and evaluation. The sample quantity submitted shall be at the discretion of Construction and Materials. The approval process shall not be initiated prior to obtaining the concurrence of Construction and Materials. Following testing and evaluation, satisfactory material will be placed on a qualified list.

1048.1.1.2 For acceptance on a project, the contractor shall furnish to the engineer a manufacturer's certification stating the manufacturer and trade name, lot or batch number and that all material furnished is similar to the material originally qualified. Acceptance of the material will be based on the manufacturer's certification, the results of such tests that may be performed by the engineer and satisfactory performance in the field.

1048.1.1.3 The material may be inspected and sampled at the point of manufacture, at an intermediate shipping terminal or at destination. The engineer shall be allowed access to all facilities and records as required to conduct inspection and sampling. The contractor shall adequately mix the contents of all shipping containers prior to obtaining samples or transferring partial containers of material to tanks on the striping equipment.

SECTION 1048.10 TEMPORARY PAVEMENT MARKING MATERIALS.

1048.10.1 Temporary Paint Materials. This specification covers all temporary paint materials. All materials contained in Sec 1048.20.1 may also be used as Temporary Paint Materials.

1048.10.1.1 Cold Weather Pavement Marking Paint.

1048.10.1.1.1 Acrylic Copolymer Fast Dry Pavement Marking Paint.

1048.10.1.1.1.1 Description. Acrylic copolymer fast dry pavement marking paint shall be capable of receiving and holding glass beads for producing retroreflective pavement marking.

1048.10.1.1.1.2 Material. The paint shall contain no more than 3,200 ppm lead or more than 800 ppm chromium based on dry weight, and shall have limited VOC content as noted herein.

1048.10.1.1.1.2.1 General. The finished paint shall be formulated and manufactured from first-grade material and shall be a fast drying, solvent-based, acrylic copolymer resin type paint capable of withstanding air and roadway temperatures without bleeding, staining, discoloring or deforming. The dried paint film shall be capable of maintaining original dimensions and placement without chipping, spalling or cracking. The dry paint film shall not deteriorate because of contact with normal roadway chemicals or materials.

1048.10.1.1.1.2.2 Durability Testing. Determination of conformance to this specification will include,

but will not be limited to, the evaluation of test data from NTPEP or other MoDOT approved facilities. The maintained retroreflectivity and durability shall be in accordance with the following requirements after being installed on at least one NTPEP test deck in a northern, wet climate region for a minimum of six months, including December, January and February.

1048.10.1.1.1.2.3 Maintained Retroreflectivity. Photometric quantity to be measured will be the coefficient of retroreflective luminance (RL) in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E 1743 for 15-meter geometry or ASTM E 1710 for 30-meter geometry. The average RL for concrete and bituminous surfaces shall be expressed in millicandelas per footcandle per square foot and shall be at least 100 for 15-meter geometry or 75 for 30- meter geometry, when measured in the wheel path area.

1048.10.1.1.1.2.4 Durability. Paint shall have a durability rating of at least 4 for both concrete and bituminous surfaces when tested in the wheel path area of the NTPEP test deck.

1048.10.1.1.1.3 Mixed Paint.

1048.10.1.1.1.3.1 The mixed paint shall be strained before filling, using a screen or a sieving device no coarser than 40 mesh.

1048.10.1.1.1.3.2 The VOC content of the finished paint shall be less than 1.25 pounds of volatile organic matter per gallon of total non-volatile paint material when tested in accordance with ASTM D 3960.

1048.10.1.1.1.3.3 The paint shall have the following physical properties.

Property	Requirement
Viscosity, KU	80 - 95
Laboratory Dry Time, ASTM D 711, minutes, max.	10

1048.10.1.1.1.4 Color. For white, the color shall closely match Color Chip 37925 of Federal Standard 595b. For yellow, the color shall closely match Color Chip 33538 of Federal Standard 595b. Color determination will be made for markings and the diffuse daytime color of the markings shall be in accordance with the below CIE Chromaticity coordinate limits. Color determination for liquid marking materials will be made over the black portion of a 2A or 5C Leneta Chart or equal, at least 24 hours after application of a 15-mil wet film. Color readings will be determined in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E 1349 using CIE 1931 2-degree standard observer and CIE standard illuminant D65.

CIE Chromaticity Coordinate Limits (Initial)								
Color	**1**		**2**		**3**		**4**	
	x	**y**	**x**	**y**	**x**	**y**		
White	0.334	0.357	0.334	0.317	0.297	0.357	0.297	0.317
Yello	0.531	0.483	0.531	0.429	0.471	0.483	0.471	0.429

1048.10.1.1.1.4.1 Contrast Ratio. The contrast ratio shall be a minimum of 0.98 when drawn down as a 15-mil wet film on a 2A or 5C Leneta Chart or equal, and air-dried for 24 hours. The contrast ratio shall be calculated as follows: Contrast ratio = Black/White.

1048.10.1.1.1.4.2 Reflectance. The daylight directional reflectance of a 15-mil wet film applied to a 2A or 5C Leneta Chart or equal and dried for a minimum of 24 hours shall be 84% minimum for the white paint and 50% minimum for the yellow paint.

1048.10.1.1.1.5 Acceptance.

1048.10.1.1.1.5.1 Except as noted, each batch or lot of paint shall be sampled and approved by the engineer prior to use.

1048.10.1.1.1.5.2 No paint shall be used that is more than 15 months old.

1048.10.1.1.1.5.3 In addition to the requirements of Sec 1048.1.1, the certification supplied by the manufacturer shall include reference to the specific NTPEP test deck to which the paint formulation was applied, including NTPEP identification numbers and report numbers.

1048.10.1.1.2 Cold Weather Waterborne Pavement Marking Paint.

1048.10.1.1.2.1 Description. These specifications cover waterborne traffic paint for application on bituminous or Portland cement concrete pavements by department-owned spray equipment at application temperatures of 35 to 150ºF (2 to 66ºC). The paint shall be capable of receiving and holding glass beads for producing reflectorized traffic markings.

1048.10.1.1.2.2 Materials. The paint shall not contain more than 500 ppm lead and/or more than 780 ppm chromium based on dry weight and shall have limited Volatile Organic Content (VOC), as noted herein.

1048.10.1.1.2.2.1 Acrylic Emulsion Polymer. The acrylic emulsion polymer used in the manufacture of the paint shall be Dow Fastrack XSR or preapproved equivalent. Later generation acrylic emulsions may be substituted only after concurrence of the Chemical Laboratory Director.

1048.10.1.1.2.2.2 General. The finished paint shall be formulated and manufactured from first-grade materials and shall be a fast drying, water based, acrylic resin type paint capable of withstanding air and roadway temperatures without bleeding, staining, discoloring, or deforming. The dried paint film shall be capable of maintaining its original dimensions and placement without chipping, spalling, or cracking. In addition, it shall not deteriorate because of contact with sodium chloride, calcium chloride, mild alkalies and acids, or other ice control materials, or oil, gasoline or diesel fuel drippings from vehicles.

1048.10.1.1.2.2.3 Maintained retroreflectivity. Photometric quantity to be measured is coefficient of retroreflective luminance (RL) in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E1710 for 30-meter geometry. The average RL for concrete and asphalt surfaces shall be expressed in millicandelas per square meter per lux (milicandelas/m2/lux) and shall be at least 75 for 30 meter geometry, when measured in the wheel path area.

1048.10.1.1.2.2.4 Mixed Paint. The mixed paint shall conform to the following requirements.

1048.10.1.1.2.2.4.1 The paint shall be strained before filling, using a screen or strainer not coarser than 40 mesh or equivalent.

1048.10.1.1.2.2.4.2 The volatile content of the finished paint shall contain less than 150 grams of volatile organic matter per liter in accordance with ASTM D3960.

1048.10.1.1.2.2.4.3 The paint shall have the following properties:

1048.10.1.1.2.2.4.3.1 Physical Properties.

Property	Requirement
Weight per Gallon @77 F, lbs	Report
Viscosity, KU	75-92
Grind (Hegman Gage), min.	3
Laboratory Dry Time, ASTM D 711, minutes, max.	10
Dry Through Time, minutes, max	150

1048.10.1.1.2.2.4.3.2 Color. For white the color shall closely match Color Chip 37925 of Federal Standard 595b. For yellow, the color shall closely match Color Chip 33538 of Federal Standard 595b. Color determination will be made for markings and the diffuse daytime color of the markings shall conform to the below CIE Chromaticity coordinate limits. Color determination for liquid marking materials will be made over the black portion of a 2A or 5C Leneta Chart (or equal) at least twenty-four (24) hours after application of a 15- mil wet film. Color readings will be determined in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E1349 using CIE 1931 2º standard observer and CIE standard illuminant D65.

CIE Chromaticity Coordinate Limits (Initial)								
Color	1		2		3		4	
	x	y	x	y	x	y	x	y
White	0.334	0.357	0.334	0.317	0.297	0.357	0.297	0.317

Yello	0.483

0.531	0.531	0.429	0.471	0.483	0.471	0.429

1048.10.1.1.2.2.4.3.3 Flexibility. The paint shall show no cracking or flaking when tested in accordance with Federal Specification TT-P-1952B.

1048.10.1.1.2.2.4.3.4 Water Resistance. The paint shall show no cracking or flaking when tested in accordance with Federal Specification TT-P-1952B.

1048.10.1.1.2.2.4.3.5 Freeze-Thaw Stability. The paint shall show no coagulation or change in consistency greater than 10 Kreb Units, when tested in accordance with Federal Specification TT-P-1952B.

1048.10.1.1.2.2.4.3.6 Heat Stability. The paint shall show no coagulation, discoloration or change in consistency greater than 10 Kreb Units, when tested in accordance with Federal Specification TT-P-1952B.

1048.10.1.1.2.2.4.3.7 Dilution Test. The paint shall be capable of dilution with water at all levels without curdling or precipitation such that the wet paint can be readily cleaned up with water only.

1048.10.1.1.2.2.4.3.8 Storage Stability. After 30 days storage in three-quarters filled, closed container, the paint shall show no caking that cannot be readily remixed to a smooth, homogeneous state, no skinning, livering, curdling, or hard settling. The viscosity shall not change more than 5(10) Kreb Units from the viscosity of the original sample.

1048.10.1.1.2.2.4.3.9 Contrast Ratio. The minimum contrast ratio (hiding power) shall be 0.99 for White and
0.98 for Yellow when drawn down with a 0.015 film applicator on a 2A or 5CLeneta Chart (or equal) and air- dried for 24 hours. Contrast Ratio = Black/White.

1048.10.1.1.2.2.4.3.10 Reflectance. The daylight directional reflectance of the white paint shall not be less than 87 percent and not less than 50 percent for yellow paint of a 15 mil wet film applied to a 2A or 5C Leneta Chart (or equal). After drying for a minimum of 24 hours measure the reflectance of the paint over the black portion of the chart using colorimeter, ASTM E 1347.

1048.10.1.1.2.2.4.3.11 Bleeding. The paint shall have a minimum-bleeding ratio of 0.97 when tested in accordance with Federal Specification TT-P-1952B. The asphalt saturated felt shall conform to ASTM D 226 for Type I.

1048.10.1.1.2.2.4.3.12 Dry Through Time. The paint shall be applied to a non-absorbent substrate at a wet film thickness of 15 ± 1 mils and placed in a humidity chamber controlled at 90 ± 5 percent R.H. and 72.5 ± 2.5ºF. The dry through time shall be determined according to ASTM D 1640.

1048.10.1.1.2.5 Acceptance. The Missouri Department of Transportation reserves the right to make field tests of material after receipt of bids, but prior to award to determine the paint's suitability for application in its equipment and for purposes of determining compliance with drying time requirements of this specification.

1048.10.1.1.2.5.1 Stability in Storage. After storage for periods up to twelve (12) months from the date of manufacture, the paint shall comply with the following requirements: a) The pigment shall not settle badly or cake in the container, nor shall the paint skin or thicken in storage sufficiently to cause an undesirable change in consistency, nor show spoilage. b) The paint shall comply with all other provisions of these specifications and be capable of being re-dispersed with a paddle or mixer to a smooth uniform condition of usable consistency.

1048.10.2 Temporary Removable Pavement Marking Tape.

1048.10.2.1 General. Temporary removable pavement marking tape shall be capable of being removed and shall leave no objectionable or misleading image or damage to the pavement after removal.

1048.10.2.2 The tape shall have a minimum specific luminance as shown for White and Yellow per

ASTM D 4592, expressed as millicandelas/m2/lux. The tape shall be applied to an 8 x 36-inch panel per instrument recommendation for pavement marking tape and measured in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 8 at prescribed CEN geometry.

1048.10.2.3 Adhesive. Tape shall have a pre-coated pressure sensitive adhesive requiring no activation procedures. The adhesive shall be resistant to normal roadway chemicals or materials.

1048.10.2.4 Durability. The tape shall be weather-resistant and show no appreciable fading, lifting or shrinkage during the tape's useful life. Samples of the tape applied to standard specimen plates and tested in accordance with Federal Test Method No. 141, Method 6192, for 1,000 cycles, using a CS-17 wheel and 1,000-gram load shall not expose the backing material over more than five percent of the abraded area.

1048.10.3 Temporary Non-Removable Pavement Marking Tape.

1048.10.3.1 Reflectance. The tape shall have minimum specific luminance as shown for White and Yellow per ASTM D 4592, expressed as millicandelas/m2/lux). The tape shall be applied to an 8 in. x 36 in. panel per instrument recommendation for pavement marking tape and measured in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 8 at prescribed CEM geometry.

1048.10.3.2 Adhesive. Tape shall have pre-coated pressure sensitive adhesive requiring no activation procedures. The adhesive shall be resistant to normal roadway chemicals or materials.

1048.10.3.3 Durability. The tape shall be weather-resistant and show no appreciable fading, lifting or shrinkage during the tape's useful life. Samples of the tape applied to standard specimen plates and tested in accordance with Federal Test Method No. 141, Method 6192, for 1000 cycles, using a CS-17 wheel and 1000-gram load shall not expose the backing material over more than five percent of the abraded area.

1048.10.4 Temporary Raised Pavement Markers.

1048.10.4.1 General. The brand name and manufacturer shall be stamped or indelibly printed on each container.

1048.10.4.2 Temporary Raised Pavement Markers. Markers shall consist of an L-shaped or T-shaped flexible polymer body with a minimum of 6.0 squre inches of ASTM Type V reflective sheeting on both faces of the vertical section. The marker base shall have affixed a pressure-sensitive adhesive, protected by a release paper, for application to the pavement surface. When required per Sec 620.10.5.3.2, a protective sleeve that prevents contamination of the reflective faces during pavement surface treatment operations shall be affixed to each marker in a minimum of two locations. The protective sleeve shall be easily removable after the surface treatment operation is complete

1048.20 PERMANENT PAVEMENT MARKING MATERIALS.

1048.20.1 Pavement Marking Paint Materials.

1048.20.1.1 Standard Acrylic Waterborne Pavement Marking Paint.

1048.20.1.1.1 Description. Standard acrylic waterborne pavement marking paint shall be capable of receiving and holding glass beads for producing retroreflective pavement marking.

1048.20.1.1.2 Material. The paint shall contain no more than 3200 ppm lead or more than 800 ppm chromium, based on dry weight.

1048.20.1.1.2.1 General. The finished paint shall be formulated and manufactured from quality material and shall be a fast-drying, water-based, acrylic resin-type paint capable of withstanding air and roadway temperatures without bleeding, staining, discoloring or deforming. The dried paint film shall be capable of maintaining original dimensions and placement without chipping, spalling or cracking. The dry paint film shall not deteriorate from contact with normal roadway chemicals or materials.

1048.20.1.1.2.2 Acrylic Emulsion Polymer. The acrylic emulsion polymer used in the manufacture of the paint shall be Rohm & Haas E-2706, Dow DT211 or equal. Later generation acrylic emulsions may be substituted as approved by the engineer.

1048.20.1.1.2.3 Durability Testing. The provisions of Sec 1048.20.1.2.2.3 will apply.

1048.20.1.1.2.3.1 Maintained Retroreflectivity. Photometric quantity to be measured will be the coefficient of retroreflective luminance (RL) in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E 1743 for 15-meter geometry or ASTM E 1710 for 30-meter geometry. The average RL for concrete and bituminous surfaces shall be expressed in millicandelas/lux/m2 and shall be at least 100 for 15-meter geometry or 75 for 30-meter geometry, when measured in the wheel path area.

1048.20.1.1.2.3.2 Durability. Paint shall have a durability rating of at least 4 on both concrete and bituminous surfaces when tested in the wheel path area of the NTPEP test deck..

1048.20.1.1.3 Mixed Paint. The provisions of Sec 1048.20.1.2.3 shall apply.

1048.20.1.1.4 Acceptance.

1048.20.1.1.4.1 Except as noted, each batch or lot of paint shall be sampled and approved by the engineer prior to use.

1048.20.1.1.4.2 No paint shall be used that is more than 15 months old.

1048.20.1.1.4.3 In the addition to the requirements of Sec 1048.1.1, the certification supplied by the manufacture shall include reference to specific NTPEP test deck to which the paint formulation was applied, including NTPEP identification numbers and report numbers.

1048.20.1.2 High Build Acrylic Waterborne Pavement Marking Paint.

1048.20.1.2.1 Description. Acrylic waterborne pavement marking paint shall be capable of receiving and holding glass beads for producing retroreflective pavement marking.

1048.20.1.2.2 Material. The paint shall contain no more than 3,200 ppm lead or more than 800 ppm chromium, based on dry weight.

1048.20.1.2.2.1 General. The finished paint shall be formulated and manufactured from quality material and shall be a fast-drying, water-based, acrylic resin-type paint capable of withstanding air and roadway temperatures without bleeding, staining, discoloring or deforming. The dried paint film shall be capable of maintaining original dimensions and placement without chipping, spalling or cracking. The dry paint film shall not deteriorate from contact with normal roadway chemicals or materials.

1048.20.1.2.2.2 Acrylic Emulsion Polymer. The acrylic emulsion polymer used in the manufacture of the paint shall be Rohm & Haas HD-21, Dow DT400 or equal.

1048.20.1.2.2.3 Durability Testing. Determination of conformance to this specification will include, but will not be limited to, the evaluation of test data from NTPEP or other MoDOT approved facilities. The maintained retroreflectivity and durability shall be in accordance with the following requirements after being installed on at least one NTPEP test deck in a northern climate region for at minimum of six months, including December, January and February.

1048.20.1.2.2.3.1 Maintained Retroreflectivity. Photometric quantity to be measured will be the coefficient of retroreflective luminance (RL) in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E 1743 for 15-meter geometry or ASTM E 1710 for 30-meter geometry. The average RL for concrete and bituminous surfaces shall be expressed in millicandelas per footcandle per square foot and shall be at least 100 for 15-meter geometry or 75 for 30- meter geometry, when measured in the wheel path area.

1048.20.1.2.2.3.2 Durability. Paint shall have a durability rating of at least 4 for both concrete and bituminous surfaces when tested in the wheel path area of the NTPEP test deck.

1048.20.1.2.3 Mixed Paint.

1048.20.1.2.3.1 The paint shall be strained before filling using a screen or a sieving device no coarser than 40 mesh or equivalent.

1048.20.1.2.3.2 The volatile content of the finished paint shall contain less than 150 grams of volatile organic matter per liter in accordance with ASTM D 3960.

1048.20.1.2.3.3 The paint shall have the following physical properties:

Acrylic Waterborne Pavement Marking Paint Physical Properties	
Property	Requirement
Viscosity, 77 F, KU	83-98
Grind (Hegman Gage), minimum	3
Laboratory Dry Time, ASTM D 711, @ 15 mil, minutes, max.	10
Laboratory Dry Time, ASTM D 711, @ 25 mil, minutes, max.	25

Dry Through Time, minutes, max.	150

1048.20.1.2.3.3.1 Color. For white, the color shall closely match Color Chip 37925 of Federal Standard 595b. For yellow, the color shall closely match Color Chip 33538 of Federal Standard 595b. Color determination will be made for markings and the diffuse daytime color of the markings shall be in accordance with the below CIE Chromaticity coordinate limits. Color determination for liquid marking material will be made over the black portion of a 2A or 5C Leneta Chart or equal, at least 24 hours after application of a 15-mil wet film. Color readings will be determined in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E 1349 using CIE 1931 2-degree standard observer and CIE standard Illuminant D65.

CIE Chromaticity Coordinate Limits (Initial)								
Color	1		2		3		4	
	x	y	x	y	x	y	x	y
White	0.334	0.357	0.334	0.317	0.297	0.357	0.297	0.317
Yello		0.483						
	0.531		0.531	0.429	0.471	0.483	0.471	0.429

1048.20.1.2.3.3.2 Flexibility. The paint shall show no cracking or flaking when tested in accordance with Federal Specification TT-P-1952B.

1048.20.1.2.3.3.3 Water Resistance. The paint shall conform to Federal Specification TT-P-1952B. There shall be no blistering or appreciable loss of adhesion, softening or other deterioration after examination.

1048.20.1.2.3.3.4 Freeze-Thaw Stability. The paint shall show no coagulation or change in consistency greater than 10 Kreb Units when tested in accordance with Federal Specification TT-P-1952B.

1048.20.1.2.3.3.5 Heat Stability. The paint shall show no coagulation, discoloration or change in consistency greater than 10 Kreb Units when tested in accordance with Federal Specification TT-P-1952B.

1048.20.1.2.3.3.6 Dilution Test. The paint shall be capable of dilution with water at all levels without curdling or precipitation such that the wet paint can be readily cleaned up with water only.

1048.20.1.2.3.3.7 Storage Stability. After 30 days of storage in a 3/4 filled, closed container, the paint shall show no caking that cannot be readily remixed to a smooth, homogeneous state, and shall show no skinning, livering, curdling or hard settling. The viscosity shall change no more than 5 Kreb Units from the viscosity of the original sample.

1048.20.1.2.3.3.8 Contrast Ratio. The minimum contrast ratio (hiding power) shall be 0.96 when drawn down with a 0.005 bird film applicator on a 2A or 5C Leneta Chart or equal and air-dried for 24 hours. The contrast ratio shall be calculated as follows:
Contrast Ratio = Black/White.

1048.20.1.2.3.3.9 Reflectance. The daylight directional reflectance of a 15-mil wet film, applied to a 2A or 5C Leneta Chart or equal and dried for a minimum of 24 hours, shall be no less than 84 percent for the white paint and no less than 50 percent for the yellow paint.

1048.20.1.2.3.3.10 Bleeding. The paint shall have a minimum bleeding ratio of 0.97 when tested in

accordance with Federal Specification TT-P-1952B. The asphalt saturated felt shall be in accordance with ASTM D 226 for Type I.

1048.20.1.2.3.3.11 Dry Through Time. The paint shall be applied to a non-absorbent substrate at a wet film thickness of 15 ± 1 mil and placed in a humidity chamber controlled at 90 ± 5 percent relative humidity and 72.5
± 2.5 F. The dry through time shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D 1640, except that the pressure exerted shall be the minimum needed to maintain contact with the thumb and film.

1048.20.1.2.4 Acceptance.

1048.20.1.2.4.1 Except as noted, each batch or lot of paint shall be sampled and approved by the engineer prior to use.

1048.20.1.2.4.2 No paint shall be used that is more than 15 months old.

1048.20.1.2.4.3 In addition to the requirements of Sec 1048.1.1, the certification supplied by the manufacturer shall include reference to the specific NTPEP test deck to which the paint formulation was applied, including NTPEP identification numbers and report numbers.

1048.20.2 Durable Pavement Marking Materials.

1048.20.2.1 Plural Component Pavement Marking Materials. 1048.20.2.1.1 Epoxy Pavement Marking Materials.
1048.20.2.1.1.1 Fast Cure Epoxy Pavement Marking Materials.

1048.20.2.1.1.1.1 General. Epoxy pavement marking material shall not contain toxic heavy metals. The material shall be two-component, 100 percent solids and formulated and tested to perform as a pavement marking material with glass beads applied to the surface. The two components shall be epoxy resin and an amine curing agent.

1048.20.2.1.1.1.2 Toxicity. Upon heating to application temperature, the material shall not release fumes that are toxic to persons or property. Upon curing, the material shall be completely inert, with all components fully reacted and environmentally benign.

1048.20.2.1.1.1.3 No Track Time. The material shall have a no-track time of 10 minutes or less, when mixed in the proper proportions and applied at a 25-mil wet film thickness at 75 ± 2 F with the proper application of glass beads and when tested in accordance with ASTM D 711. The material shall fully cure under a constant surface temperature of 32 F or above.

1048.20.2.1.1.1.4 Adhesion to Concrete. The pavement marking material shall have a high degree of adhesion to the concrete surface such that there is a 100 percent concrete failure when tested in accordance with ACI 503, Appendix A.1. The prepared specimens shall have a film thickness of 15 ± 1 mil and shall be applied to concrete with a minimum compressive strength of 4,000 psi. The concrete surface shall be 90 ± 2 F when the material is applied. The applied material shall be cured for 72 hours at 75 ± 2 before performing the test.

1048.20.2.1.1.1.5 Hardness. The material shall have a minimum Shore D Hardness of 75 when tested in accordance with ASTM D 2240.

1048.20.2.1.1.1.6 Tensile Strength. The material shall have a minimum tensile strength of 5,000 psi after 72 hours of cure at 75 ± 2 F when tested in accordance with ASTM D 638.

1048.20.2.1.1.1.7 Compressive Strength. The material shall have a minimum compressive strength of 10,000 psi after 72 hours of cure at 75 ± 2 F when tested in accordance with ASTM D 695.

field tested at

1048.20.2.1.1.1.8 Abrasion Resistance. The material shall have a maximum abrasion resistance of 150 mg at 15 ± 1 mil thickness after 72 hours of cure and with a CS-17 wheel under a load of 1,000 grams for 1,000 cycles, when tested in accordance with ASTM C 501.

1048.20.2.1.1.1.9 Yellowness Index. The material shall have a maximum yellowness index of 6 before the QUV test and a maximum of yellowness index of 23 after the 72-hour QUV test, when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1925.

1048.20.2.1.1.1.10 Color. The finished white color shall be free from tint, furnishing good opacity and visibility under both daylight and artificial light. The finished yellow color shall closely match Federal Test Standard 595
- Color Chip Number 13538.

1048.20.2.1.1.1.11 Drop-on Glass Beads. Glass beads shall be in accordance with Sec 1048.30.

1048.20.2.1.1.1.12 Qualification. In addition to the requirements of Sec 1048.1.1, the material shall have been

field tested at NTPEP test decks in a northern, wet climate region for a minimum of six months. The maintained

retroflectivity and durability shall be in accordance with the following requirements after being installed on at least one NTPEP test deck for a minimum of six months, including December, January and February.

1048.20.2.1.1.1.12.1 Maintained Retroreflectivity. Photometric quantity to be measured will be the coefficient of retroreflective luminance (RL) in accordance with ASTM E 1743 for 15-meter geometry or ASTM E 1710 for 30-meter geometry. The average RL for concrete and asphalt surfaces shall be expressed in millicandelas per footcandle per square foot and shall be at least 125 for 15-meter geometry or 100 for 30-meter geometry, when measured in the wheel path area.

1048.20.2.1.1.1.12.2 Durability. Paint shall have a durability rating of at least 5 for both concrete and asphalt surfaces when tested in the wheel path area of the NTPEP test deck.

1048.20.2.1.1.1.13 Packaging. The manufacturer's name and address, product name, color, manufacturing date, date of expiration and if the material is Part A or B shall be visible on the containers. In addition to the requirements of Sec 1048.1.1, the certification supplied by the manufacturer shall include reference to the specific NTPEP test deck to which the paint formulation was applied, including NTPEP identification numbers and report numbers.

1048.20.2.1.2 Polyurea Pavement Marking Material.

1048.20.2.1.2.1 Polyurea Pavement Marking Material. Polyurea pavement marking material shall not contain toxic heavy metals. It shall be two components, 100 percent solids, and formulated and tested to perform as a pavement marking material with glass beads applied to the surface.

1048.20.2.1.2.2 Toxicity. Upon heating to application temperature, the material shall not release fumes that are toxic to persons or property. Upon curing, the material should be completely inert, with all components fully reacted and environmentally benign.

1048.20.2.1.2.3 No Track Time. The material shall have a no-track time of 10 minutes or less when mixed in the proper proportions and applied at 20 mils wet film thickness at 75 ± 2 F with the proper application of glass beads and when tested in accordance with ASTM D 711. The material shall fully cure under a constant surface temperature of 32 F or above.

1048.20.2.1.2.4 Adhesion to Concrete. The pavement marking material shall have a high degree of adhesion to the concrete surface such that there is a 100 percent concrete failure when tested in accordance with ACI 503, Appendix A.1. The prepared specimens shall have a film thickness of 15 ± 1 mils and be applied to concrete with a minimum compressive strength of 4,000 psi. The concrete surface shall be 90 ± 2 F when the material is applied. The applied material shall be cured for 72 hours at 75 ± 2 F before performing the test.

1048.20.2.1.2.5 Hardness. The material shall have a minimum Shore D Hardness of between 70 and 100 when tested in accordance with ASTM D 2240.

1048.20.2.1.2.6 Abrasion Resistance. The material shall have a maximum abrasion resistance of 150 mg at 15 field tested at NTPEP test decks in a northern, wet climate region for a minimum of six months. The maintained ± 1 mils thickness after 72 hour curing time and with a CS-17 wheel under a load of 1,000 grams for 1,000 cycles, when tested in accordance with ASTM C 501.

1048.20.2.1.2.7 Yellowness Index. The material shall have a maximum yellowness index of 6 before the QUV test and a maximum of 23 after the 72 hour QUV test, when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1925.

1048.20.2.1.2.8 Color. The finished white color shall be free from tint, furnishing good opacity and

retroflectivity and durability shall be in accordance with the following requirements after being installed on at least one NTPEP test deck for a minimum of six months, including December, January and February.

visibility under both daylight and artificial light. The finished yellow color shall be defined by Federal Test Standard 595
- Color Chip Number 13538, using Federal Tests Standard 141 (Method 4252).

1048.20.2.1.2.9 Accelerated Weathering. The material shall have been field tested at NTPEP test decks for a minimum of six months. The material shall have satisfactory results from the NTPEP test deck.

1048.20.2.1.2.10 Drop-on Glass Beads. Glass beads shall be in accordance with Sec 1048.30.

1048.20.2.1.2.11 Qualification. In addition to the requirements of Sec 1048.1.1, the material shall have been

field tested at NTPEP test decks in a northern, wet climate region for a minimum of six months. The maintained

retroflectivity and durability shall be in accordance with the following requirements after being installed on at least one NTPEP test deck for a minimum of six months, including December, January and February.

1048.20.2.1.2.11.1 Maintained Retroreflectivity. Photometric quantity to be measured will be the coefficient of retroreflective luminance (RL) in accordance with ASTM E 1743 for 15-meter geometry or ASTM E 1710 for 30-meter geometry. The average RL for concrete and asphalt surfaces shall be expressed in millicandelas per footcandle per square foot and shall be at least 125 for 15-meter geometry or 100 for 30-meter geometry, when measured in the wheel path area.

1048.20.2.1.2.11.2 Durability. Paint shall have a durability rating of at least 5 for both concrete and asphalt surfaces when tested in the wheel path area of the NTPEP test deck.

1048.20.2.1.2.12 Packing. The pavement marking material shall be shipped to the job site in strong, substantial containers. The manufacturer shall include the MSDS with each shipment. The manufacturer's name and address, name of the product, lot number and/or batch number, color, tare weight, manufacturing date, date of expiration, mixing proportions and if it is Part A or B shall be contained on a label and/or painted on the containers.

1048.20.2.2 Durable Preformed Pavement Marking Materials. 1048.20.2.2.1 Cold Applied Preformed Pavement Marking Tape Materials.
1048.20.2.2.1.1 Application. After application, the tape shall be immediately ready to receive traffic.

1048.20.2.2.1.2 Composition. Cold applied preformed pavement marking tape shall consist of a mixture of polymeric material and pigments with beads distributed throughout the cross-sectional area and with a reflective layer of glass beads embedded in the surface. The marking shall be capable of adhering to bituminous or concrete surfaces by a flexible conforming backing. A primer may be required to precondition the pavement surface.

1048.20.2.2.1.3 Dimensions. The marking tape as supplied shall be free of cracks, and have edges true, straight, and unbroken. The actual width of the rolls of preformed tape shall be no less than the nominal (stated) width and no more than 1/8 in. greater than the nominal width. The length shall be no less than the length stated.

1048.20.2.2.1.4 Adhesion. The tape shall be supplied with a precoated factory-applied pressure sensitive adhesive. The marking tape shall have minimum adhesion values as shown in table 2 of ASTM D1000.

1048.20.2.2.1.5 Color. The white and yellow marking tape shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D6628.

1048.20.2.2.1.6 Reflectance. The tape shall have a minimum specific luminance as shown for White and Yellow per ASTM D 4505, expressed as millicandelas /m2/lux. The tape shall be applied to an 8 x 36-inch panel per instrument recommendation for pavement marking tape and measured in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 8 at prescribed CEN geometry.

1048.20.2.2.1.7 Index of Refraction. The glass beads mixed into the pliant polymer shall have a minimum index of refraction of 1.50 when tested by the oil immersion method. If ceramic elements are used in the pavement marking, the ceramic elements shall have a minimum index of refraction of 1.70 when tested using the liquid oil immersion method. Ceramic beads with an index of refraction greater than 1.80 shall not be used.

1048.20.2.3 Durable Intersecton Marking Materials. 1048.20.2.3.1 Preformed Thermoplastic Material.

retroflectivity and durability shall be in accordance with the following requirements after being installed on at least one NTPEP test deck for a minimum of six months, including December, January and February.

1048.20.2.3.1.1 General. Pavement marking material shall not contain toxic heavy metals. The material shall be solid, formulated and tested to perform as a pavement marking material with glass beads uniformly throughout the marking.

1048.20.2.3.1.2 Toxicity. Upon heating to application temperature, the material shall not release fumes that are toxic to persons or property. Upon curing, the material shall be completely inert, with all components fully reacted and environmentally benign.

1048.20.2.3.1.3 Adhesion to Pavement. The pavement marking material shall have a high degree of adhesion to the pavement surface. The product shall be applied per manufactures specification on a clean dry surface.

1048.20.2.3.1.4 Abrasion Resistance. The material shall have a maximum abrasion resistance of 150 mg with a CS-17 wheel under a load of 1,000 grams for 1,000 cycles, when tested in accordance with ASTM C 501.

1048.20.2.3.1.5 Yellowness Index. The material shall have a maximum yellowness index of 6 before the QUV test and a maximum of yellowness index of 23 after the 72-hour QUV test, when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1925.

1048.20.2.3.1.6 Color. The finished white color shall be free from tint, furnishing good opacity and visibility under both daylight and artificial light. The finished yellow color shall closely match Federal Test Standard 595
- Color Chip Number 33538.

1048.20.2.3.1.7 Qualification. In addition to the requirements of Sec 1048.1.1, the material shall have been field tested at NTPEP test decks in a northern, wet climate region for a minimum of six months. The maintained retroflectivity and durability shall be in accordance with the following requirements after being installed on at least one NTPEP test deck for a minimum of six months, including December, January and February.

1048.20.2.3.1.8 Maintained Retroreflectivity. Photometric quantity to be measured will be the coefficient of retroreflective luminance (RL) in accordance with ASTM E 1743 for 15-meter geometry or ASTM E 1710 for 30-meter geometry. The average RL for concrete and asphalt surfaces shall be expressed in millicandelas per footcandle per square foot and shall be at least 125 for 15-meter geometry or 100 for 30-meter geometry, when measured in the wheel path area.

1048.20.2.3.1.9 Durability. Paint shall have a durability rating of at least 5 for both concrete and asphalt surfaces when tested in the wheel path area of the NTPEP test deck.

1048.20.2.3.1.10 Packaging. The manufacturer's name and address, product name, color, manufacturing date, date of expiration of the material. In addition to the requirements of Sec 1048.1.1, the certification supplied by the manufacturer shall include reference to the specific NTPEP test deck to which the product was applied, including NTPEP identification numbers and report numbers.

1048.20.2.3.2 Plural Component Intersection Marking Materials. 1048.20.2.3.2.1 Epoxy Materials. 1048.20.2.3.2.1.1 General. Epoxy Materials used for intersection markings shall be in accordance with Sec 1048.20.2.1.1.

1048.20.2.3.2.2 Polyurea Materials.

1048.20.2.3.2.2.1 General. Polyurea Materials used for intersection markings shall be in accordance with Sec 1048.20.2.1.2.

1048.20.2.3.3 Cold Applied Tape Intersection Marking Material.

1048.20.2.3.3.1 General. Cold Applied Tape Materials used for intersection markings shall be in accordance with Sec 1048.20.2.2.1.

SECTION 1048.30 DROP-ON GLASS BEADS.

1048.30.1 General. When tested in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 70 for water resistance, the beads shall show no readily discernible dulling and the amount of 0.1 normal hydrochloric acid needed to titrate the filtrate shall not exceed 4.5 mL. When tested in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 70 for calcium chloride and sodium sulfide resistance, the beads shall show no readily discernible darkening or dulling.

1048.30.2 Type P Drop-On Glass Beads. Type P beads shall be manufactured from glass of a composition that is highly resistant to traffic wear and to the effects of weathering. If coating is required to meet the performance

requirements for the specific marking material used, the beads shall be coated to ensure satisfactory embedment and adhesion.

1048.30.2.1 Refractive Index. Type P beads shall have a minimum refractive index of 1.51 when tested in accordance with AASHTO M 247.

1048.30.2.2 Roundness. All Type P beads passing the No. 30 sieve shall have a minimum of 75 percent true spheres when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1155 or AASHTO PP-74. All Type P beads retained on the No. 20 and No. 30 sieves shall have a minimum of 80 percent true spheres as determined by ASTM D 1155 or AASHTO PP-74.

1048.30.2.3 Gradation. Type P beads shall meet the following gradation requirements when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1214.

U. S. Standard Sieve No.	Percent Retained
20	3-10
30	15-35
50	45-75
70	0-10
Pan	0-5

1048.30.3 Type L Drop-On Glass Beads. Type L beads shall be embedment coated and manufactured from glass of a composition that is highly resistant to traffic wear and to the effects of weathering. The beads shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 247, Type 1, except as follows.

1048.30.3.1 Coating. The beads shall be coated to ensure satisfactory embedment and adhesion when applied to uncured traffic marking material. The coating shall be tested in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 70.

1048.30.3.2 Roundness. Type L beads shall have a minimum of 80 percent rounds per screen for the two highest sieve quantities, and no more than 3 percent angular particles per screen, as determined by ASTM D 1155 or AASHTO PP-74. The remaining sieve fractions shall be determined by ASTM D 1155 or AASHTO PP- 74to be no less than 65 percent rounds.

1048.30.3.3 Gradation. Type L beads shall meet the following gradation requirements when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1214:

Type L Bead Gradation Requirements	
Sieve Size	Percent Passing
No. 12	100
No. 14	95 - 100
No. 16	80 - 95
No. 18	10 - 40
No. 20	0 - 5
No. 25	0 - 2

1048.30.4 Type 1 Drop-On Glass Beads. Type 1 beads shall be moisture-resistant and manufactured from glass of a composition that is highly resistant to traffic wear and to the effects of weathering. Glass beads shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 247, Type 1.

SECTION 1053
CONCRETE SEALER AND CONCRETE CRACK FILLER

SECTION 1053.10 PENETRATING CONCRETE SEALER

1053.10.1 Scope. This specification covers concrete sealers for the protection of concrete against damage from de-icing chemicals.

1053.10.2 Acceptance. All material under this specification shall be obtained from a source identified on the PAL designated for this specification. All material under this specification will be inspected and accepted in accordance with Sec 106. ASTM and AASHTO specifications, when referenced, control only the physical and chemical properties of the material.

1053.10.3 The sealer shall be a alkyltrialkoxysilane, with low oligomer and polymer compound content. The chemical composition shall meet the following requirements:

Property	Specification
Purity	95% minimum monomer by weight
Solvent	Less than 5% by weight
Residue	Less than 2% by weight
Density	Per the manufacturer's recommendation
Flash Point	ASTM D93: greater than 125 degrees F
Dry Time	ASTM D1640 Sec 7.5.1: One hour or less

1053.10.3.1 The ASTM D1640 test shall be performed on a concrete surface. This concrete shall be a mix design called for in Sec 1053.10.3.2. The application rate shall be the same rate specified in Sec 703.

1053.10.3.2 The sealer shall meet the following performance criteria based on a single application at the application rate specified in Sec 703. MoDOT reserves the right to verify any qualification tests at their expense on any field application. Test specimens shall be produced using either the MoDOT Class B-2 concrete in accordance with Sec 501 or the concrete mix specified by the test being performed.

Test	Test Method	Duration	Max Absorption / Cl^-
Water Immersion	ASTM C642	48 hours	0.5 percent by weight (mass)
Water Immersion	ASTM C642	50 days	1.5 percent by weight (mass)
Salt Water Ponding (based on non-abraded specimen)	AASHTO T259	90 days	80% min reduction in Cl^- absorption & 0.50 lbs/cu yd Cl^- at a depth of 1/2" - 1" max

1053.10.3.3 The sealer shall not permanently stain, discolor or darken the concrete. Application of the sealer shall not alter the surface texture or form a coating on the concrete surfaces.

1053.10.3.4 The sealer shall not leave residue on glass, painted metal or automobiles.

1053.10.3.5 The sealer shall not reduce the bond of pavement markings or reduce the skid resistance of the surface being sealed. Any sealer determined to have these adverse effects will be removed from the pre-qualified list.

1053.10.3.6 The sealer shall be delivered to the project in unopened containers with the manufacturer's label identifying the product and with the seal(s) intact. Each container shall be clearly marked by the manufacturer with the following information:

(a) Manufacturer's name and address.

(b) Product name.

(c) Date of manufacture and expiration date.

(d) Lot identification.

(e) Storage requirements.

1053.10.4 Manufacturer and Brand Name Approval. Prior to approval and use of concrete sealers, the manufacturer shall submit to Construction and Materials a certified test report from an approved testing laboratory showing specific test results conforming to the requirements of these specifications. The certified test report shall also contain the manufacturer's name, product brand name, lot number and date of manufacture. Upon approval of the certified test report by the engineer the manufacturer and brand name will be added to the PAL designated for this specification. New certified test results shall be submitted any time the manufacturing process or the sealer formulation is changed, and may be required by the engineer when sampling and testing of material offered for use indicates nonconformance to any of the requirements herein specified.

SECTION 1053.20 CONCRETE CRACK FILLER

1053.20.1 Scope. This specification covers concrete crack fillers for the protection of concrete against damage from de-icing chemicals.

1053.20.2 Acceptance. All material shall be obtained from a source identified on the PAL designated for this specification, except as otherwise listed below. All materials under this specification will be inspected and accepted in accordance with Sec 106.

1053.20.3 The concrete crack filler shall be a low viscosity polymer. The chemical composition shall meet the following requirements:

Property	Test Method	Specification
Viscosity	AASHTO D-2393	Less than or equal to 25 cps
Gel Time	AASHTO T-237	Less than or equal to 20 minutes @ 70 deg F
Tensile Strength	ASTM D638	Greater than or equal to 1500 psi
Elongation	ASTM D638	Greater than or equal to 5%
Solids Content		Greater than or equal to 95%
Flash Point	ASTM D1310	Greater than or equal to 50 deg F
Cure Rate	AASHTO T-237	Less than or equal to 3 hrs@ 70 deg F

1053.20.4 The concrete crack filler shall meet the procedures and the application rates as specified in Sec 704. MoDOT reserves the right to verify any qualification tests at their expense on any field application.

1053.20.5 Manufacturer and Brand Name Approval. Prior to approval and use of concrete crack fillers, the manufacturer shall submit to Construction and Materials a certified test report from an approved testing laboratory showing specific test results conforming to the requirements of these specifications. The certified test report shall also contain the manufacturer's name, product brand name, lot number and date of manufacture. Upon approval of the certified test report by the engineer the manufacturer and brand name will be added to the PAL designated for this specification. New certified test results shall be submitted any time the manufacturing process or the crack filler formulation is changed, and may be required by the engineer when sampling and testing of material offered for use indicates nonconformance to any of the requirements herein specified.

SECTION 1054
CONCRETE ADMIXTURES

1054.1 Scope. This specification covers air-entraining admixtures, water-reducing admixtures, retarding admixtures, accelerating admixtures and latex emulsion admixtures for concrete.

1054.2 Acceptance. All material under this specification shall be obtained from a source identified on the PAL designated for this specification. All material under this specification will be inspected and accepted in accordance with Sec 106.

1054.3 Air-Entraining Admixtures. Air-entraining admixtures shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 154, except as modified herein.

1054.3.1 Certification. The manufacturer shall submit a certification to Construction and Materials prior to approval. The certification shall provide the following:

(a) The brand name and designation.

(b) The composition or description of the admixture.

(c) The manufacturing ranges for percent total solids and pH by AASHTO T 200.

(d) The infrared spectrum.

(e) The manner in which the material will be identified on containers.

(f) The material is in accordance with these specifications.

1054.3.1.1 Certifications shall include or have attached specific test results as required in Sec 1054.3.1.2 or Sec 1054.3.1.3.

1054.3.1.2 For an air-entraining admixture other than that specified in Sec 1054.3.1.3, the certification shall include results of tests conforming to the requirements of AASHTO M 154. Tests for bleeding, bond strength and volume change will not be required.

1054.3.1.3 For an air-entraining admixture that is an aqueous solution of vinsol resin manufactured by neutralizing the resin with sodium hydroxide, the certification shall include results of tests showing the ratio of sodium hydroxide to vinsol resin. The certification or test report shall also state that no other additive or chemical agent is present in the solution.

1054.3.2 Packaging and Marking. The containers in which air-entraining admixtures are delivered shall be plainly marked with the manufacturer's name, the brand name and designation of the material, lot number and net quantity. A delivery ticket showing this information shall accompany bulk shipments. If the manufacturer supplies air-entraining admixtures in more than one concentration, the concentration shall be designated on the container, or for bulk shipments, in a prominent manner on the delivery ticket.

1054.4 Water-Reducing Admixtures. Water-reducing admixtures shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 194, Type A, except as modified herein. High range water-reducing admixtures, when permitted for use, shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 194, Type F or Type G.

1054.4.1 Certification. The manufacturer shall submit certification to Construction and Materials prior to approval.

1054.4.1.1 The certification shall provide the following:

(a) The brand name and designation.

(b) The composition or description of the admixture.

(c) The manufacturing ranges for specific gravity at 77 F and percent total solids.

(d) The infrared spectrum.

(e) The manner in which the material will be identified on containers.

(f) The material is in accordance with these specifications.

1054.4.1.2 The certification shall include or have attached specific test results in accordance with AASHTO M 194, Type A, F or G, as applicable, and the recommendation for use, including amounts to be added.

1054.4.2 Packaging and Marking. The containers in which water-reducing admixtures are delivered shall be plainly marked with the manufacturer's name, the brand name and designation of the material, lot number and net quantity. A delivery ticket showing this information shall accompany bulk shipments.

1054.5 Retarding Admixtures. Retarding admixtures shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 194, Type B or D, except as modified herein.

1054.5.1 Certification. The manufacturer shall submit certification to Construction and Materials prior to approval.

1054.5.1.1 The certification shall provide the following:

(a) The brand name and designation.

(b) The composition or description of the admixture.

(c) The manufacturing ranges for specific gravity at 77 F and percent total solids.

(d) The infrared spectrum.

(e) The manner in which the material will be identified on containers.

(f) The material is in accordance with these specifications.

1054.5.1.2 The certification shall include or have attached specific test results in accordance with AASHTO M 194, Type B or D, and the recommendation for use, including amounts to be added.

1054.5.2 Packaging and Marking. The containers in which retarding admixtures are delivered shall be plainly marked with the manufacturer's name, the brand name and designation of the material, lot number and net quantity. A delivery ticket showing this information shall accompany bulk shipments.

1054.6 Accelerating Admixtures. Accelerating admixtures shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 194, Type C or E, except as modified herein.

1054.6.1 Certification. The manufacturer shall submit certification to Construction and Materials prior to approval.

1054.6.1.1 The certification shall provide the following:

(a) The brand name and designation.

(b) The composition or description of the admixture.

(c) The manufacturing ranges for specific gravity at 77 F and percent total solids.

(d) The infrared spectrum.

(e) The manner in which the material will be identified on containers.

(f) The material is in accordance with these specifications.

1054.6.1.2 The certification shall include or have attached specific test results in accordance with AASHTO M 194, Type C or E, and the recommendation for use, including amounts to be added.

1054.6.2 Packaging and Marking. The containers in which accelerating admixtures are delivered shall be plainly marked with the manufacturer's name, the brand name and designation of the material, lot number and net quantity. A delivery ticket showing this information shall accompany bulk shipments.

1054.7 Latex Emulsion Admixtures. Latex emulsion admixtures shall be non-toxic, film-forming, polymeric emulsion in water to which all stabilizers have been added at the point of manufacture. The admixture shall be a styrene-butadiene latex emulsion in which at least
90 percent of the non-volatiles are styrene-butadiene polymers.

1054.7.1. Properties. The admixture shall be homogeneous, uniform in composition and shall be in accordance with the following requirements when tested with the procedures shown in Report No. FHWA RD 78 35, April 1978, Styrene-Butadiene Latex Modifiers for Bridge Deck Overlay Concrete:

Property	Requirement
Color	White
Polymer Type	Styrene-Butadiene
Percent Solids	46 - 53
pH	5.0 - 12.0, the pH may not vary more than ± 1 from the pH of matl. submitted for prequalification.
Particle Size	1400 to 2500 Angstroms, the mean particle size shall not vary more than ± 300 Angstroms from the mean diameter of material submitted for prequalification.
Viscosity	± 20 centipoises of the viscosity of material submitted for prequalification.
Percent Coagulum	0.10 percent by weight, max.
Freeze-Thaw Stability	0.10 percent by weight max. coagulum after 2 freeze-thaw cycles.
Surface Tension	50.0 dynes/cm, max.
Percent Butadiene	30 to 40 by weight

1054.7.2 Certification. The manufacturer shall submit certification to Construction and Materials prior to approval.

1054.7.2.1 The certification shall provide the following:

(a) The brand name and designation.

(b) The composition or description of the admixture.

(c) The manufacturing ranges for specific gravity at 77 F by AASHTO T 157, percent total solids by ASTM D 1644, Method A and pH by AASHTO T 200.

(d) The infrared spectrum.

(e) The manner in which the material will be identified on containers.

(f) The material is in accordance with these specifications.

1054.7.2.2 The certification shall include or have attached specific test results in accordance with this specification.

1054.7.3 Packaging and Marking. The containers in which latex emulsion admixtures are delivered shall be plainly marked with the manufacturer's name, the brand name and designation of the material, lot number and

net quantity. A delivery ticket showing this information shall accompany bulk shipments.

SECTION 1055
CONCRETE CURING MATERIAL

1055.1 Scope. This specification covers material to be used for the purpose of curing concrete.

1055.2 Liquid Membrane-Forming Curing Compounds.

1055.2.1 Acceptance. All material under this specification shall be obtained from a source identified on the PAL designated for this specification. If the manufacturer is different from the source supplying the material, the manufacturer shall also be listed. All material under this specification will be inspected and accepted in accordance with Sec 106.

1055.2.2 Material.

1055.2.2.1 General. Water retention properties for all curing compounds shall be determined by ASTM Test Method C 156. The vehicle class of all curing compounds shall be Class A.

1055.2.2.2 Type 1-D Curing Compounds. Type 1-D liquid membrane-forming curing compounds shall be in accordance with ASTM C 309 for Type 1-D, clear or translucent with fugitive dye.

1055.2.2.3 Type 2 Curing Compounds. Type 2, liquid membrane-forming curing compounds shall be in accordance with ASTM C 309 for Type 2, white pigmented.

1055.2.2.4 Bridge Curing Compounds. Bridge curing compounds shall be liquid membrane-curing compounds in accordance with ASTM C 309 for Type 1-D or Type 2 and shall be designated to be dissipating. All bridge curing compounds shall be manufactured such that the curing compounds may be removed prior to dissipation.

1055.2.3 Documentation.

1055.2.3.1 Certification For Qualification. Prior to use and in addition to the required PAL documentation, the manufacturer shall submit certification to Construction and Materials, setting forth the brand name and designation, the composition or description of the curing material, the manner in which the material will be identified on the containers, and shall list typical values of current tests for consistency, drying time, reflectance and moisture retention.

1055.2.3.2 Additional Certification. Certification for bridge curing compounds shall include a statement that the product is manufactured to dissipate. The certification shall specify the method by which removal of the compound prior to dissipation or removal of residual material from the surface can be accomplished.

1055.2.3.3 Shipment Documentation. For each shipment of material, the source shall maintain the manufacturer's certification and test results showing that the product is in accordance with this specification. The manufacturer's certification and test results shall be made available upon request.

1055.3 Other Concrete Curing Material.

1055.3.1 Acceptance. All material under this specification shall be obtained from a source identified on the PAL designated for this specification. All material under this specification will be inspected and accepted in accordance with Sec 106.

1055.3.2 Material.

1055.3.2.1 Waterproof Paper. Waterproof paper shall be in accordance with ASTM C 171.

1055.3.2.2 Polyethylene Sheeting. Polyethylene sheeting shall be in accordance with Sec 1058 for curing Portland cement concrete.

1055.3.2.3 White Burlap-Polyethylene Sheeting. White burlap-polyethylene sheeting shall be in accordance with ASTM C 171.

1055.3.2.4 Burlap and Mats of Jute or Cotton. Burlap shall be fabric made from jute or other suitable fibers. Jute mats shall consist of two plies of burlap stitched together to maintain the shape and stability of the unit. Cotton mats shall consist of filler or cotton batts covered with unsized cloth or burlap, and tufted or stitched to maintain the shape and stability of the unit. Burlap, mats or other synthetic material equivalents shall, in the judgment of the engineer, be of such construction and in such a condition as required to adequately maintain free moisture on the surface of the concrete with the type of system being used to provide the water. Material shall be free from deleterious matter harmful to concrete.

1055.3.3 Documentation. The distributor shall maintain certification that the material supplied is in accordance with these specifications. The certification shall be made available upon request.

SECTION 1057 MATERIAL FOR JOINTS

1057.1 Scope. This specification covers joint material to be used as specified or as shown on the plans.

1057.2 Acceptance. All material under this specification shall be obtained from a source identified on the MoDOT PAL designated for this specification.

1057.3 Dowel Bars. Dowels for transverse joints shall be in accordance with the requirements for plain rounds of AASHTO M 31. The dowels shall be epoxy coated in accordance with Sec 1036, except the coating thickness shall be a 5-mil minimum, the flexibility of coating requirement will not apply and the cut ends will not be required to be coated. The dowels shall be free of cutting burrs and other projections. Dowel supporting units shall be in accordance with one of the types shown on the plans.

1057.3.1 Alternative Dowel bars manufactured with steel in accordance with ASTM A 1035 may be used in lieu of AASHTO M 31. Alloy Types CM and CS shall be used. The dowel bars manufactured with this type steel will not be required to be epoxy coated. Grades 100 and 120 may be used.

1057.3.2 Graphite Grease. The free end of the dowel bar shall be coated with an approved graphite grease for a length of 11 inches. Graphite grease shall contain a minimum of 25 percent graphite, and the graphite content shall be certified by the manufacturer or shown on the container label. Graphite grease shall be applied with a thin, uniform coating that will result in a thorough covering of the free end of the bar.

1057.3.3 Pre-Dipped Bondbreaker. In lieu of the graphite grease application, the dowel bar basket supplier may supply completed basket units pre-dipped in an approved bondbreaker solution. The bondbreaker solution shall not be applied in a spray or field application. The resulting dry dowel bar coating shall be visually evident. The coating shall be uniformly applied without excessive drips or thickness. Dirty or excessively scraped dowel bar units will be rejected. Rejected units may be used if the units are fully cleaned of all dirt and bondbreaker coating and graphite grease is applied according to these specifications. The dowel basket supplier shall provide a certification for the coating with each shipment, certifying the bondbreaker product name, manufacturer and date of coating application.

1057.4 Tie Bars. Tie bars for longitudinal joints and construction joints shall be round, deformed and in accordance with AASHTO M 31, except for tie bars that are to be bent and straightened shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 31, Grade 40. Tie bars shall not be bent and straightened more than one time. Tie bars shall be epoxy coated in accordance with Sec 1036, except the coating thickness shall be a 5-mil minimum, the flexibility of coating requirement will not apply and the cut ends will not be required to be coated.

1057.4.1 Alternative. Tie bars manufactured with steel in accordance with ASTM A 1035 may be used in lieu of AASHTO M 31. Alloy Types CM and CS shall be used. The tie bars manufactured with this type of steel will not be required to be epoxy coated. Grades 100 and 120 may be used for straight bars. For tie bars that are to be bent and straightened, ASTM A 1035 steel shall not be used.

1057.5 Concrete and Asphalt Joint Sealer, Hot-Poured Elastic Type. The sealer material shall be in accordance with ASTM D 6690, Type II. The joint sealer material shall be packed and shipped in suitable commercial containers clearly marked with the name of the material, the name of the manufacturer, brand name, weight, batch number, pouring temperature recommended by the manufacturer and maximum safe heating temperature.

1057.6 Pavement Joint Forming Material.

1057.6.1 Preformed Fiber Expansion Joint Filler. Not used.

1057.6.2 Semi-rigid, Closed-cell Polypropylene Foam, Preformed Expansion Joint Filler. This material shall be semi-rigid, closed-cell polypropylene foam, preformed expansion joint filler in accordance with ASTM D8139.

1057.7 Joints for Concrete Structures. Not used.

1057.8 Plastic Joint Compound for Vitrified Clay and Concrete Pipe. Not used.

1057.9 Tubular Joint Seal. Not used.

1057.10 Silicone Expansion Joint Sealant. Not used.

1057.11 Silicone Joint Sealant for Saw Cut and Formed Joints. Not used.

1057.12 Documentation. All material specified in this section shall include certification showing representative test results of the material and certify that the material supplied is in accordance with these specifications.

END OF ITEM MoDOT 1057

SECTION 1060
ELECTRICAL CONDUIT

1060.1 Scope. This specification covers electrical conduit to be used as specified or as shown on the plans.

1060.2 Acceptance. All material in this section will be accepted based on certification indicating the material is in accordance with this specification and any testing as required by the engineer.

1060.3 Material.

1060.3.1 Rigid Metallic Conduit and Tubing. Except for rigid aluminum conduit, rigid metallic conduit shall be galvanized on both the inside and the outside surfaces. The weight of zinc coating shall be no less than 0.5 ounce per square foot of coated surface, as determined in accordance with AASHTO T 65. The interior or exterior surface, or both, may be given a coating of suitable material to facilitate installation of wires and cables and to permit the conduit to be readily distinguished from pipe used for purposes other than electrical.

1060.3.1.1 Rigid Steel Conduit, Zinc Coated. Rigid steel conduit, zinc coated, (GRC) shall be in accordance with ANSI C80.1, except as noted herein.

1060.3.1.2 Intermediate Metal Conduit. Intermediate metal conduit (IMC) shall be in accordance with ANSI C80.6, except as noted herein.

1060.3.1.3 Rigid Aluminum Conduit. Rigid aluminum conduit (RAC) shall be in accordance with ANSI C80.5.

1060.3.1.4 Electrical Metallic Tubing, Zinc Coated. Electrical metallic tubing (EMT), zinc coated, shall be in accordance with ANSI C80.3 except as noted herein.

1060.3.1.5 Fittings for Rigid Metal Conduit and Electrical Metallic Tubing. Fittings shall be in accordance with ANSI C80.4.

1060.3.1.6 Fittings for Intermediate Metal Conduit. Fittings shall be in accordance with UL 1242, except the coating shall meet the same requirements as the conduit with which the fittings are used.

1060.3.1.7 Inspection. Conduit, tubing and fittings will be inspected for compliance with specifications. Test specimens for determination of weight of coating will be at least 2 inches long, cut no less than 6 inches from the end of the length of conduit or tubing selected for testing. If the prescribed two additional samples for retests are taken, and either sample does not comply, the lot represented will be rejected.

1060.3.2 Rigid Non-Metallic Conduit. Rigid non-metallic conduit shall be either polyvinyl chloride (PVC) or high-density polyethylene (HDPE).

1060.3.2.1 Polyvinyl Chloride Conduit. PVC conduit, bends, couplings and fittings shall be in accordance with UL 651.

1060.3.2.2 High Density Polyethylene Conduit. HDPE conduit shall be in accordance with ASTM D 3035 SDR11.

1060.3.2.3 Fittings for Polyvinyl Conduit. Fittings for PVC conduit shall be in accordance with UL 514. Cement used for the fittings shall be in accordance with the conduit manufacturer’s recommendations.

1060.3.2.4 Fittings for High Density Polyethylene Conduit. Fittings for HDPE conduit shall be in accordance with ASTM D 2683. Epoxy used for the fittings shall be in accordance with the conduit manufacturer’s recommendations.

1060.3.2.5 Inspection and Testing. Material will be inspected for compliance with the specifications, and samples for testing will be taken at either the project location or warehouse, as determined by the engineer.

1060.4 Certification. The contractor shall furnish a manufacturer's certification that the material supplied is in accordance with all requirements. If requested by the engineer, the contractor shall also furnish typical test

results representative of the material.

SECTION 1061
ELECTRICAL CONDUCTORS

1061.1 General. This specification covers electrical conductors and associated material for use on highway construction projects. Contractor furnished equipment that will become the property of the Commission shall be of new stock unless stated otherwise in the contract documents. Electrical conductors and associated equipment shall be in accordance with applicable requirements of ICEA, IMSA, NEMA, EIA, NEC, NFPA and regulations of the National Board of Fire Underwriters and shall meet the approval of the engineer.

1061.2 Conductors. Except as noted, all conductors shall be soft drawn, Class B or C stranded copper wire in accordance with NEMA WC70/ICEA A-95-658. Solid conductors may be used only for grounding where connected to a ground rod.

1061.3 High Voltage Power Cable. The voltage rating for high voltage power cable supplying primary electrical power shall be 5 KV for primary voltages less than 5,000 volts, and 15 KV for voltages of 5,000 volts and greater. The specific type of cable shall be as recommended and approved by the utility company or municipality supplying power.

1061.4 Low Voltage Power Cable. Low voltage power cable shall be 600-volt, single conductor cable and thermoplastic or thermosetting cross-linked polyethylene insulated. All cable shall be plainly marked on the outside with the manufacturer's name and identification in accordance with industry practice. Insulation type shall be THHN/THWN-2 orXHHW-2. Average thickness of insulation shall be no less than specified in the following table, with a minimum thickness of 90 percent thereof.

Size (AWG or kcmil)	Thickness, Mils THHN/THWN-2)
14-12	15
10	20
8-6	30
4-2	40
1-4/0	50
250-500	60
501-1000	70
Size (AWG or kcmil)	**Thickness, Mils THHN/XHHW-2)**
14-10	30
8-2	45
1-4/0	55
213-500	65
501-1000	80

1061.5 Cable-Conduit. Cable-conduit shall consist of one to four low voltage power cables with an insulated sized electrical neutral and a bare safety ground, factory installed in black polyethylene conduit intended for direct burial. The conduit shall be plainly marked on the outside with manufacturer's name and identification in accordance with industry practice and shall be in accordance with ASTM D 3485. Cable-conduit shall be accompanied by the manufacturer's certification stating the conduit is in accordance with the requirements of this specification.

1061.6 Pole and Bracket Cable. Pole and bracket cable located in the lighting or signal pole that supplies electrical power to highway lighting shall consist of two single conductors. Wire size shall be No. 10 AWG in accordance with the requirements of low voltage power cable. Insulation type shall be THHN/THWN-2 or XHHW-2. Average insulation shall be in accordance with Sec 1061.4.

1061.7 Multi-Conductor Cable. Multi-conductor cable for traffic signals shall be No. 16 AWG, rated at 600 volts. The cable shall be in accordance with IMSA Specification No. 19-1 or No. 20-1.

1061.8 Induction Loop Detector Cable. Induction loop detector cable shall be single-conductor No. 14 AWG wire, with Type XHHW insulation, marked as such, rated at 600 volts. The cable shall be in accordance with IMSA Specification No. 51-7.

1061.9 Loop Detector Lead-In Cable. Lead-in cable used between the loop detector and the controller shall be two-conductor, twisted, shielded No. 14 AWG wire rated at 600 volts. The cable shall be in accordance with IMSA Specification No. 50-2.

1061.10 Certification. All cables and conductors shall be accompanied by certification from the supplier indicating: (1) the supplier is familiar with the requirements of these specifications and, (2) cable furnished was from a lot manufactured by (manufacturer's name) whose test results are in accordance with these specifications.

SECTION 1062
PULL AND JUNCTION BOXES

1062.1 Scope. This specification covers pull and junction boxes intended for use on highway lighting and traffic signal projects.

1062.2 Pull Boxes. Pull boxes may be cast-in-place concrete, precast concrete, preformed polymer concrete or preformed fiberglass reinforced polymer concrete. Pull box dimensions shall be as shown on the plans. Each pull box shall be equipped with cable hooks as shown on the plans. Cable hooks shall be galvanized steel or brass with a minimum diameter of 3/8 inch and a minimum length of 5 inches.

1062.2.1 Cast-in-place concrete pull boxes shall be constructed of Class B or B-1 concrete, or a commercial mixture in accordance with Sec 501. Material, proportioning, mixing, slump and transporting of concrete shall be in accordance with Sec 501. Placing, finishing and curing shall be in accordance with Sec 703. Pull boxes shall be cast in a neat and workmanlike manner. Forms will be required for the inside surfaces of the pull box walls; and if the excavation is irregular, forms will also be required for the outside surfaces of the walls. An outside form shall be installed across all trenches leading into the pull box excavation. The ends of all conduits through the walls shall fit tightly against the form.

1062.2.2 Precast concrete pull boxes shall be constructed of Class B or B-1 concrete, or a commercial mixture in accordance with of Sec 501. Material, proportioning, mixing, slump and transporting of concrete shall be in accordance with Sec 501. Concrete for precast pull boxes shall be placed, finished and cured in accordance with Sec 703.

1062.2.3 Preformed pull boxes shall withstand a wheel load of 20,000 pounds. Pull box walls may be either flared or vertical. Metal conduit, if used in preformed pull boxes, shall be electrically bonded to one another inside each pull box.

1062.3 Pull Box Covers. Each pull box shall be equipped with a bolt down cover. The threaded hole that receives the cover lock-down bolt shall be open at the bottom to allow the cleanout of sand, dirt and other debris. Lock-down bolts shall be stainless steel or brass with a penta-head. Frames and covers for cast-in-place and precast concrete pull boxes shall be cast iron in accordance with AASHTO M 105, Class 30, and shall be of the dimensions and weights shown on the plans. Preformed pull box covers shall be polymer concrete and shall have a minimum wheel load rating of 20,000 pounds. A lift opening shall be provided on all covers. Covers for pull boxes to be used for highway lighting or sign lighting shall be embossed with "STATE LIGHTING". Covers for pull boxes to be used for traffic signals, or a combination of traffic signals and 120 volt intersection lighting, shall be embossed with "STATE SIGNALS". Covers for pull boxes to be used for fiber optics shall be embossed with “STATE FIBER OPTICS”.

1062.4 Junction Boxes. Junction boxes shall be flanged and designed for flush mounting if encased in concrete, or designed for surface mounting if external mounting is specified. Junction boxes shall be drilled or tapped for all conduit connections. Junction boxes shall be installed such that covers are removable. Junction boxes shall be stainless steel, fiberglass or PVC watertight NEMA 4 enclosures. PVC junction boxes shall have a minimum wall thickness of 1/4 inch. Junction boxes shall be in accordance with the following minimum sizes unless otherwise specified:

Maximum Entering Conduit Size, Inches	Minimum Box Size, Inches
2	12 x 12 x 4
4	16 x 12 x 6

1062.4.1 PVC and metal conduit shall be joined to junction boxes to make a rigid and waterproof connection. If metal conduit is used, an insulated bushing shall be provided at the end of the metal conduit on the inside of the junction box to prevent scuffing of the cable insulation.

1062.4.2 The junction box cover shall be made watertight with a suitable gasket and secured with stainless steel or cadmium plated screws or bolts.

1062.5 Certification and Acceptance. The contractor shall furnish a manufacturer's certification that the material supplied, excepting material made from cast-in-place concrete, is in accordance with these specifications.

SECTION 1063
TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES

1063.1 Scope. This specification covers material to be used for temporary traffic control devices.

1063.2 General Requirements. All temporary traffic control devices shall be manufactured as shown on the plans and as specified, in accordance with MUTCD requirements and shall be NCHRP 350 or MASH 2016 compliant. FHWA Category 1 temporary traffic control devices are not required to be crash tested unless modified. Non MASH 2016 FHWA Category 2 temporary traffic control devices and appurtenances manufactured prior to January 1, 2023 may be used until January 1, 2026. Non MASH 2016 FHWA Category 3 temporary traffic control devices and appurtenances manufactured prior to January 1, 2023 may be used until January 1, 2030. All FHWA Category 2 and Category 3 temporary traffic control devices and appurtenances manufactured after January 1, 2023 shall meet MASH 2016 Test Level 3 crash test requirements. MASH 2016 FHWA Category 4 temporary traffic control devices should be used when available. Nominal dimensions will be permitted for dimensional lumber where applicable. All temporary traffic control devices shall exhibit good workmanship and shall be free of objectionable marks or defects that affect appearance or serviceability. The brand name or model number shall be permanently identified on each traffic control device.

1063.3 Channelizers. All trim-lines and drum-like channelizers shall be manufactured from a non-metallic material, pigmented and molded of a Highway Orange color throughout and stabilized against fading by ultraviolet or other light rays by the incorporation of adequate inhibitors. All reflective sheeting for channelizers shall be in accordance with Sec 1042.2.7.3.

1063.3.1 Temporary Tubular Delineators. Temporary tubular delineators shall be a nominal height of 28 inches and manufactured from a non-metallic material, pigmented and molded of a Highway Orange color throughout and stabilized against fading by ultraviolet or other light rays by incorporation of adequate inhibitors. All reflective sheeting for temporary tubular delineators shall be in accordance with Sec 1042.2.7.5.

1063.4 Signs.

1063.4.1 Rigid Signs.

1063.4.1.1 Sign Substrate. All signs shall be fabricated of substrate designed to provide satisfactory structural rigidity.

1063.4.1.2 Sign Sheeting. All signs shall have a retroreflectorized background. Retroreflective sheeting shall be in accordance with Sec 1042.2.7.2. Sheeting shall be applied to the sign substrate in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and the surface shall be free of air bubbles, wrinkles or other blemishes as determined by the engineer.

1063.4.2 Roll-up Signs.

1063.4.2.1 Sign Substrate. Sign and overlay blanks shall consist of either white, yellow, fluorescent orange and/or pink microprismatic retroreflective sheeting sealed to a heavy-duty coated fabric or vinyl material. The sheeting shall have a minimum coefficient of retroreflection, expressed as candelas per footcandle per square foot, as shown below, when measured in accordance with ASTM E 810 and shall meet the minimum color requirements in accordance with MGS-04-01L specification. The color specifications shall be in accordance with ASTM D 4956. Material shall be submitted by the manufacturer to NTPEP for a minimum exposure time of one year. Results shall be published by NTPEP and available for MoDOT review. For all NTPEP test decks, weathered material shall be within the color specification limits. Heat and impact resistance of the sheeting shall be in accordance with the latest version of ASTM D 4956.

1063.4.2.2 Overlays. Overlays, when used, shall be mechanically fastened to the face of the sign in a manner that will ensure the overlay remains securely attached. Fasteners shall not detract from the appearance of the sign when the overlay is not in use. Velcro fasteners will not be permitted.

1063.4.2.3 Bracing. Each sign shall have a horizontal and vertical cross brace and at least one anti-kiting device located near the center of the sign. Cross braces of sufficient cross-section shall be fastened to each other at the midpoints and the ends securely held to the back of the sign by mechanical means. The design shall ensure that the sign remains taut and retains the sign's intended shape when exposed to normal field conditions.

1063.4.3 Legend and Borders. Legends and borders of all signs shall be vinyl or silk-screened. Vinyl shall be cut by die or a computer-driven cutter. Stencil ink used shall be in accordance with the sheeting manufacturer's recommendations. Free-hand legend and borders will not be permitted.

1063.4.4 Sign Layout and Design. Sign layout and design shall be as shown on the plans or as directed by the engineer.

1063.4.5 Flag Assembly. Flag assemblies, when specified, shall consist of a flag bracket and two flags. Flags shall be 18 in x 18 in fluorescent orange, vinyl and be securely attached on one side to a blank suitable for displaying the flag as shown on the plans. The flag shall not be of mesh material. The blank shall be securely attached to the flag bracket, be of sufficient cross-section to display the flag in wind speeds up to 50 mph and be of sufficient length to hold the flags approximately six inches from the sign.

1063.4.6 Advance Warning Rails. Advanced warning rails shall be supplied as a system of three rails as shown on the plans. The rail system may be post mounted or mounted on portable structures. When used on post mounted signs, the advance warning rails shall consists of substrate of high-density polyethylene plastic. The rail wall thickness shall be 1/4 in. with white and orange reflective sheeting in accordance with Sec 1042.2.7.4, and shall be applied as shown on the plans.

1063.5 Sequential Flashing Warning Lights. Sequential flashing warning lights shall meet the following requirements:

(a) Number of lens directional faces: 1.

(b) Flashing rate per minute: 55 to 75.

(c) Hours of operation: 24 hours per day.

1063.6 Flashing Arrow Panels. All lamps shall have a nominal 5-inch, 360-degree tunnel visor. A lamp on the back side of the flashing arrow panel shall be continuously energized during operation of the flashing arrow panel. Lamps shall be visible at an angle of 15 degrees to the left and right of center and 4 degrees above and below center during "on" time. The flashing arrow panel shall contain a device to align the arrow panel to oncoming traffic. Arrow panels shall be capable of displaying the flashing arrow, flashing double arrow and four corner flashing caution modes. Solar-powered flashing arrow panels shall be capable of operating in the flashing arrow mode for 20 consecutive days and shall be provided with a device to indicate the remaining charge in batteries.

1063.6.1 Trailer-Mounted Flashing Arrow Panels. Trailer-mounted flashing arrow panels shall be MUTCD, Type C. Trailer-mounted flashing arrow panels shall be solar powered.

1063.6.2 Truck-Mounted Flashing Arrow Panels. Truck-mounted flashing arrow panels shall be MUTCD, Type B.

1063.7 Changeable Message Sign. Each portable Changeable Message Sign (CMS) shall consist of a message board, solar power supply, control systems and mounting and transporting equipment. The unit shall be assembled to form a complete self-contained CMS that can be delivered to the job site and placed into immediate operation. The sign unit shall be capable of operating at an ambient air temperature of -20 to 120 degrees F. and shall not be affected by two-way radio transmissions other than those required to control the CMS.

A CMS shall be permanently mounted on a trailer, truck bed, or truck cab per manufacturer's recommendations. The CMS must be securely mounted on the support vehicle such that it should remain attached during an impact to the vehicle. If it is mounted on a trailer, the trailer must be capable of being leveled and plumbed.

CMS trailers should be delineated on a permanent basis by affixing retroreflective material, per Sec 1042.2.7 in a continuous line on the face of the trailer as to be seen by oncoming road users.

1063.7.1 Message Board. The CMS shall be equipped with a power source and battery back-up to provide continuous operation when failure of the primary power source occurs. Either message board shall be capable to

provide three lines of eight individual changeable characters per line. Each character shall be yellow in display on a black background and be a minimum of 18-inches in height. CMS used on roadways with speed limits of 55 mph or higher should be visible from ½ mile under both day and night conditions. The message should be designed to be legible from a minimum of 600 ft. for nighttime conditions and 800 ft. for normal daylight conditions. When environmental conditions that reduce visibility and legibility are present, or when the legibility distances stated in the previous sentences in this paragraph cannot be practically achieved, messages composed of fewer units of information should be used and consideration should be given to limiting the message to a single phase.

1063.7.1.1 The CMS shall have a control system to allow the message to be changed from the CMS location. The control system shall include a display screen upon which messages can be reviewed before being displayed on the sign and a variable display rate that allows the operator to match the information display to the speed of the approaching traffic. For on-site operation, the CMS shall have a removable waterproof keyboard with display panel that allows the operator to generate an unlimited number of additional messages in addition to the preprogrammed stored messages. The keyboard must be equipped with a security lockout feature to prevent unauthorized use of the controller.

1063.7.2 Changeable Message Sign with Communication Interface. The CMS with communication interface shall have a digital cellular transceiver capable of receiving a message in the location deployed from a remote location and forwarding the message to the CMS controller to change the displayed message.

1063.7.3 Solar Power Supply. The CMS shall be equipped with a power source and battery back-up to provide continuous operation when failure of the primary power source occurs.

1063.8 Portable Traffic Signals. Each portable traffic signal (PTS) system shall consist of two trailer-mounted PTS units, a controller assembly and communication link. Each PTS unit shall consist of signal heads and indications, a solar power supply, vehicle detection and mounting and transporting equipment. All components shall be capable of operating in a temperature range of -20 to 120 F.

1063.8.1 Controller Assembly. The controller assembly shall be a minimum two-phase, solid-state traffic signal controller with a conflict monitor capable of operating the signals in accordance with MUTCD requirements and NEMA Standard TS1. The controller shall operate as a fully-actuated unit and shall have the capability of being manually operated to display simultaneous red on both phases. The controller shall be capable of red rest during non-actuated periods. Upon detection of a conflict, the system shall change to a solid red clearance interval followed by flashing red.

1063.8.2 Communication Link. A continuous communications link between the PTS units shall be provided. If a break in communications between the PTS units occurs, the system shall change to a solid red clearance interval followed by flashing red. Upon restoration of communications, the system shall change to a solid red clearance interval followed by normal operations.

1063.8.3 Signal Heads and Indications. Each unit shall consist of two polycarbonate signal heads, including backplates and visors. One signal head shall be mounted on the mast arm assembly and the other on the vertical upright. The signal head mounted on the mast arm shall provide a minimum lateral clearance of 9.5 feet from the center of the outer signal head to the edge of the trailer and a minimum vertical clearance of 16 feet from the bottom of the backplate to the roadway surface. The signal head mounted on the vertical upright shall provide a minimum clearance of 8 feet from the bottom of the backplate to the roadway surface. All signal indications shall be 12 inches in diameter. Traffic signal heads and indications shall be in accordance with the vehicle traffic control signal head requirements of ITE and NEMA Standard TS1 and TS2.

1063.8.4 Solar Power Supply. The power supply shall use a battery bank with sufficient capacity to operate the PTS for 20 consecutive days with no sun. All terminals and connections shall be clearly labeled.

1063.8.5 Vehicle Detection. Detection shall be provided by one of the non-intrusive vehicular detection methods specified in Sec 902 or temporary loop detectors with the capability of providing coverage for a 6-foot x 30-foot area. Temporary loops shall be preformed at the factory. The temporary loops shall have self-adhesive rubberized asphalt backing, which shall bond to the pavement.

1063.8.6 Support. A factory trained service representative shall be available at the delivery location to provide technical assistance and training, including the installation and operation of software. No additional payment

will be made for travel expenses.
1063.9 Portable Signal Flagging Device. Each portable signal flagging device (PSFD) system shall consist of four portable cart-mounted units. Each PSFD unit shall provide a vertical upright with one signal head, vehicle detection, radio controller, and self-contained power supply capable of operating the unit for 16 continuous hours. All components shall be capable of operating in a temperature range of –20 to 120 F.

1063.9.1 Signal Heads and Indications. The signal head shall consist of three (red ball, amber ball, green ball) 12-inch LED signal indications. All signal heads shall be mounted on the vertical uprights with a minimum clearance of 7 feet when the upright is fully extended.

1063.9.2 Vehicle Detection. Detection shall be provided by one of the non-intrusive vehicular detection methods specified in Sec 902 with the capability of providing coverage for a 6-foot x 30-foot area.

1063.9.3 System Operation. The system shall be able to operate in a fixed-time, traffic-actuated, and manual-control mode. The system shall be MUTCD compliant with a controller and conflict monitor and include a wireless radio communication package and wireless remote.

1063.10 Radar Speed Advisory System. Each radar speed advisory system shall consist of a radar unit, speed display, speed limit display, solar power supply and mounting and transporting equipment.

1063.10.1 Radar Unit. The radar unit shall include necessary cables for connection to the digital display and power supply, shall be capable of instantaneously displaying and locking readings and shall meet the following minimum requirements:

Radar Unit Requirements	
Speed range	15 to 99 mph
Accuracy	±1 mph
Internal test	32 mph check

1063.10.2 Speed Display. The speed display shall be a minimum of 12 inches high and shall be capable of displaying the radar unit output from 0 to 99 mph.

1063.10.3 Speed Limit Display. The speed limit display shall indicate the work zone speed limit by means of a 36 x 48-inch speed limit sign. The speed limit sign may be comprised of a rigid or roll-up sign or a rigid sign with a variable speed display. The variable speed display shall be a minimum of 12 inches high and shall be capable of displaying two digits.

1063.10.4 Solar Power Supply. The power supply shall be capable of operating the radar unit, speed display and speed limit display, if applicable, for a minimum of eight hours per day.

1063.11 Truck or Trailer Mounted Attenuators. Each TMA shall have a standard trailer lighting system, including brake lights, taillights, turn signal lights and Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration identification bar lights. In the operating position, the rear facing of the TMA shall be marked with alternating 8-inch yellow and 8-inch black retroreflective sheeting forming an inverted “V” at the center and slope downward at an angle of 45 degrees toward each side of the unit or a checkered board pattern consisting of 12-inch square red and 12-inch square white retroreflective sheeting. The TMA may be marked with the same operating pattern or red and white DOT conspicuity tape to simulate the looks of a standard van body trailer when traveling. The TMA shall have the same standard trailer lighting system noted above when the unit is in the transport position.

1063.12 Certification. The contractor shall furnish a manufacturer's certification for all material governed by this specification. The certification shall indicate full compliance with each applicable specification.

SECTION 1066
MORTARS AND GROUT

1066.1 Scope. This specification covers mortars and grout for use in pipe joints, rubble and brick masonry.

1066.2 Mortars and Grout. Mortars and grout shall be mixed in small quantities as needed and shall not be retempered or used after setting has begun. Type I Portland cement shall be accordance with Sec 1019. Sand shall be clean and shall be in accordance with Sec 1005, except the minus No. 200 sieve requirement will not apply. Water shall be in accordance with Sec 1070.

1066.2.1 Mortar For Pipe Joints. Mortar shall consist of one part Type I Portland cement and two parts sand, by volume, mixed with sufficient water to form a plastic mortar.

1066.2.2 Mortar for Grout. Mortar used for grout shall consist of one part Type I Portland cement and three parts sand, by volume, mixed with sufficient water to form a grout of proper consistency.

1066.2.3 Mortar For Rubble and Brick Masonry. The mortar shall be composed of one part Portland cement plus 10 percent, by volume, of hydrated lime and of two parts sand by volume. Hydrated lime shall be in accordance with ASTM C 207, Type N. After the dry material has been thoroughly mixed, water shall be added, and the mixture shall be turned and chopped by hand or mechanical methods until a stiff mortar results. Mortar shall be mixed no more than 30 minutes prior to use. Mortar for pointing shall be mixed in the proportions of one part Portland cement to one part sand by volume.

1066.2.4 Expansive Mortar.

1066.2.4.1 Aluminum Powder Expansive Mortar. The mortar shall consist of one part Type I Portland cement and three parts sand, by volume, mixed with sufficient water to form a stiff plastic mortar. Unpolished aluminum powder at the rate of 4 grams per sack of cement shall be thoroughly dry mixed with the cement before incorporation with other ingredients.

1066.2.4.2 Other Expansive Mortars. Upon approval from the engineer, other expansive mortars may be used. The expansive mortars shall contain no more than 0.02 percent chlorides by weight and, when subjected to a pull-out test, shall equal or exceed the results of tests conducted using the material specified in Sec 1066.2.4.1.

SECTION 1068 TRENCH DRAINS

1068.1 Scope. This specification covers trench drains used in median and shoulder drainage systems.

1068.2 Acceptance. All material shall be obtained from a source identified on the Qualified List (QL)

designated for this specification.

1068.3 Materials.

1068.3.1 Drain grates shall meet AASHTO M 306 requirements for proof-load testing.

1068.3.2 The drain grate inflow area shall be a minimum of 0.27 ft2/lf. Drain grate retaining devices shall not

obstruct hydraulic flow in the channel.

1068.3.3 The drain grate retaining device shall withstand, without maintenance, repetitive cyclic vertical loads

of 500 pounds.

1068.3.4 The drain grate retainers shall withstand a pullout resistance of 250 pounds per foot after completing a

1,000-hour ASTM B117 salt spray test.

1068.4 Drain grates shall be bicycle safe.

1068.5 The use and location of the trench drain shall be as shown on the plans.

SECTION 1070
WATER

1070.1 Scope. This specification covers water for use in mixing and curing concrete, and for use in mortar and grout.

1070.2 Requirements. Water for use in mixing and curing concrete, and in mortar and grout, shall be reasonably clean and shall be free from injurious quantities of deleterious substances such as oil, acid, alkali, salt or organic matter. Potable water may be accepted without being tested. Requirements for testing water for mixing or curing purposes may be waived if in the judgment of the engineer, the water is considered satisfactory for the purpose.

1070.3 Testing. As required by the engineer, and if laboratory testing shows that the pH of the water is less than 4.5 or more than 9.5, or that the water contains deleterious substances, the following requirements shall also be met. Autoclaved bars, made with the water and a cement that shows satisfactory soundness when mixed with distilled water, shall show an expansion not to exceed 0.5 percent. The compressive strength at seven days of a mortar consisting of one part cement and 2.75 parts of natural silica sand and the water being tested shall show a reduction of no more than 10 percent of the compressive strength developed by 1:2.75 mortar containing the same cement and sand and mixed with distilled water.

SECTION 1071
ASPHALT RELEASE AGENTS, FIBER ADDITIVES AND LIQUID ANTI-STRIP ADDITIVES

1071.1 Scope. This specification covers asphalt release agents for use in coating truck beds and bituminous mixture additives.

1071.2 Acceptance. All material under this specification shall be obtained from a source identified on the Pre-Acceptance List designated for this specification. All material will be inspected and accepted in accordance with Sec 106.

1071.3 Asphalt Release Agent. The asphalt release agent shall not be detrimental to bituminous mixtures and shall not dissolve asphalt binder when applied to the truck bed.

1071.3.1 Physical Properties. The following physical properties shall be determined.

1071.3.1.1 Unit Weight. The weight per gallon shall be determined in accordance with AASHTO T 59, Weight per Gallon of Emulsified Asphalt.

1071.3.1.2 Solids. The percent solids shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D 1644, Method A.

1071.3.1.3 Acidity or Alkalinity Level (pH). The pH of the undiluted agent shall be determined by appropriate methods.

1071.3.1.4 Asphalt Miscibility. When tested in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 63, the asphalt release agent shall show no evidence of dissolving the asphalt binder.

1071.3.2 Dilution. Dilution by diesel or other petroleum products will not be permitted.

1071.3.3 Documentation. The manufacturer shall submit a certification and guarantee to Construction and Materials prior to initial approval showing the brand name and designation, the composition or description of the release agent, and the manner in which the material will be identified on the containers. The manufacturer shall certify that the material is in accordance with this specification and shall list typical values of current tests for the properties listed in Sec 1071.3.1. The certified test report shall show the manufacturer's name, brand name of material, lot and date tested. The manufacturer shall also submit a one-quart sample accompanied by an MSDS for the material. In addition, the manufacturer shall furnish information for any dilution requirements, including the minimum dilution rate and special application requirements.

1071.3.4 Packaging and Marking. The containers in which release agents are delivered shall be plainly marked with the manufacturer's name, the brand name and designation of the material, lot number and net quantity. Special applicators and dilution rates shall be designated on the container. Bulk shipments shall be accompanied by a delivery ticket showing this information.

1071.4 Bituminous Mixture Fiber Additives. Fibers for stone matrix asphalt mixture may be either cellulose or mineral fiber, and shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 325 for mineral fibers when tested in accordance with MoDOT Test Method TM 60.

1071.4.1 Documentation. The manufacturer shall submit a certification and guarantee to Construction and Materials prior to initial approval, showing the brand name and designation, the composition or description of the fibers, and the manner in which the material will be identified on the containers. The manufacturer shall certify that the material is in accordance with this specification and shall list typical values of current tests for the properties listed in AASHTO MP8. The certified test report shall show the manufacturer's name, brand name of material, lot and date tested. The manufacturer shall submit at least a 5-pound sample accompanied by an MSDS for the material.

1071.4.2 Packaging and Marking. The containers in which fibers are delivered shall be plainly marked with the manufacturer's name, the brand name and designation of the material, lot number and net quantity. Bulk shipments shall be accompanied by a delivery ticket showing this information.

1071.5 Liquid Anti-Strip Additives. Liquid anti-strip additives shall not be detrimental to the bituminous mixture.

1071.5.1 Physical Properties. Amine-type liquid anti-strip additives that are physically mixed with the asphalt binder will be classified as Type I. Latex-type liquid anti-strip additives that are applied to the aggregate will be classified as Type II. The following physical properties shall be determined for each type.

1071.5.1.1 Type I Liquid Anti-Strip Additives.

Test	Test Method
Specific Gravity @ 77 F	AASHTO T 228
Brookfield Viscosity 77 F using an RVT viscometer. The report shall include the corresponding test temperature, speed, spindle and model of instrument.	ASTM D2196
Pensky-Martens Closed Cup Flash Point or Cleveland Open Cup Flash Point	ASTM D93 AASHTO T 48
Infrared Spectrum (neat material)	Appropriate Method

1071.5.1.2 Type II Liquid Anti-Strip Additives.

Test	Test Method
Weight Per Gallon @ 77 F	ASTM D1475
Brookfield Viscosity 77 F using an RVT viscometer. The report shall include the corresponding test temperature, speed, spindle and model of instrument.	ASTM D2196
pH	Appropriate Method
Percent Solids	ASTM D1644 Method A
Infrared Spectrum (latex portion)	Appropriate Method

1071.5.2 Heat Stability. The additive shall be stable and shall not separate under all manufacturer listed storage and use temperatures. When Type I or Type II additives are blended with the proposed bituminous material to be used at the anticipated application rate, the blended material shall still meet all bituminous material specifications and shall be heat stable. Heat stability shall be established by comparing AASHTO T 283 specimens made by preparing three conditioned specimens using aged, blended material that has been held at 325 F for 96 hours and three conditioned specimens using fresh blended material. The average tensile strength of conditioned specimens using aged material shall be compared with conditioned specimens made with fresh blended material. If the average conditioned strength of the mixture with aged material is less than 90 percent of the mixture with fresh blended material, the anti-strip additive will not be permitted for use. This requirement will also apply if tested on any specific mix design using the approved anti-strip additive.

1071.5.3 Unconditioned Strength. The anti-strip additive shall not significantly lower the unconditioned strength of AASHTO T 283 specimens. This shall be determined by preparing an additional six unconditioned specimens, three with and three without the liquid anti-strip additive. The average tensile strengths of unconditioned specimens shall be compared with specimens with and without the liquid anti-strip additive. If the average unconditioned strength of the mixture with the additive is less than 90 percent of the mixture without the additive, the anti-strip additive will not be permitted for use in that bituminous mixture.

1071.5.4 Documentation. The manufacturer shall submit a certification and guarantee to Construction and Materials prior to initial approval showing the brand name and designation, the composition or description of the anti-strip liquid, and the manner in which the material will be identified on the containers. The manufacturer shall certify that the material is in accordance with this specification and shall list typical values of current tests for the properties listed in Sec 1071.5.1. A copy of the bituminous mix design used to test for heat stability and unconditioned strength shall be included with the test results. The certified test report shall show the manufacturer's name, brand name of material, lot and date tested. The manufacturer shall submit at least a one-gallon sample accompanied by an MSDS for the material.

1071.5.5 Packaging and Marking. The containers in which anti-strip liquids are delivered shall be plainly marked with the manufacturer's name, the brand name and designation of the material, lot number and net quantity. Bulk shipments shall be accompanied by a delivery ticket showing this information.

SECTION 1080
STRUCTURAL STEEL FABRICATION

1080.1 Scope. This specification covers the fabrication and inspection of bridges and structures made of structural steel and miscellaneous metals.

1080.2 Material. Except as amended by Sec 1080.2.4, all material shall be in accordance with Division 1000, Material Details, and specifically as follows:

Item	Section/Specification
Paint for Structural Steel	1045
Coating of Structural Steel	1081
Structural Carbon Steel	AASHTO M 270, Grade 36 ASTM A 709, Grade 36
Structural Low Alloy Steel	AASHTO M 270, Grade 50 ASTM A 709, Grade 50 AASHTO M 270, Grade 50W ASTM A 709, Grade 50W
Quenched and Tempered Alloy Steel	AASHTO M 270, Grade HPS 50W ASTM A 709, Grade HPS 50W AASHTO M 270, Grade HPS 70W ASTM A 709, Grade HPS 70W ASTM A 709, Grade 100/100W
Low Carbon Steel Bolts and Nuts	ASTM A 307
High Strength Bolts, Nuts and Washers	ASTM A 325 ASTM A 490 ASTM F 436 ASTM A 563 AASHTO M 292
Cold Finished Carbon Steel Shafting	AASHTO M 169
Carbon Steel Forgings	AASHTO M 102 Class F
Alloy Steel Forgings	AASHTO M 102 Class G
Gray Iron Castings	AASHTO M 105 Class 50
Malleable Iron Castings	ASTM A 47
Carbon Steel Castings	AASHTO M 103 Grade 485-275
Galvanized Coatings	AASHTO M 111 AASHTO M 232 Class C ASTM B 695 Class 55
Lead for Bearing Pads	ASTM B 29
Identification of Metals1045	ASTM A 6

1080.2.1 Galvanized Bolts. Bolts, nuts and washers specified to be galvanized shall be galvanized in accordance with the requirements of AASHTO M 232, Class C or shall be mechanically galvanized in accordance with ASTM B 695, Class 55. Except for anchor bolts, galvanizing thickness shall not exceed 6 mils. Fasteners installed prior to the completion of shop blast cleaning will not require galvanizing. The thickness of the zinc coating for galvanized bolts shall be measured on the wrench flats and top of the bolt head. For mechanically galvanized bolts, the significant surfaces as referenced in ASTM B 695 shall be the entire bolt surface, excluding the underside of the surface of the head and the shank surface between the threaded portion and the underside

of the head. The thickness of the zinc coating on the galvanized nuts shall be measured on the wrench flats. For mechanically galvanized nuts, the significant surfaces shall be all surfaces of the nut excluding the threads. The thickness of the zinc coating on galvanized washers shall be measured on both sides. The significant surfaces on mechanically galvanized washers shall be all surfaces of the washer.

1080.2.2 Fit Up Bolts. Fit up and shipping bolts shall be coated to prevent corrosion where a finish coat will not be applied. Shipping bolts for uncoated weathering steel will not require coating.

1080.2.3 Falsework. Falsework material will be subject to the engineer's approval. All falsework material shall be in good condition such that the material performs as designed. Falsework piling shall be capable of withstanding driving to a depth sufficient to develop adequate bearing.

1080.2.4 Certified Mill Test Reports. For structural steel, the contractor shall submit a copy of the certified mill test report giving the chemical analysis and results of physical tests on the material furnished. The mill test report shall state the location of the mill where the molten metal was produced. Two copies of the mill test report will be required for material used in railroad structures. If steel is produced outside the United States, the contractor shall submit a certified test report from a MoDOT approved U. S. laboratory showing specific results of chemical analysis and physical tests for each heat furnished and stating that the material meets the specification requirements. Mill tests and laboratory reports shall be submitted for approval before any request is made for shop or field inspection. In addition, the engineer may take samples for chemical analysis and physical tests from the fabricated steel delivered to the project site. Any time or cost effects caused by obtaining and analyzing samples from delivered steel shall be anticipated by the contractor as part of the quality assurance process and no compensation or additional time will be allowed for costs or delays associated with this activity. Unless otherwise specified, the supplementary requirements of AASHTO M 270 for Charpy V-notch impact tests in temperature zone 2 shall be mandatory where the contract documents indicate notch toughness is required for fracture critical or non-fracture critical components. Mill test reports shall include the results of Charpy V-notch testing and impact serial numbers for fracture critical components.

1080.2.5 High Strength Fastener Assemblies. In addition to the requirements of Sec 712.2, high strength bolts, nuts and washers shall meet the following requirements. The contractor shall furnish a manufacturer's certification showing results of tests performed. Identification in accordance with the appropriate AASHTO/ASTM specifications shall be maintained by container markings which shall match identifying numbers on the certifications and be traceable to the certified mill test reports. High strength fastener assemblies shall be galvanized unless used with unpainted weathering steel or specifically indicated otherwise by the contract documents. When high strength bolts are used with weathering steel, the fasteners shall be Type 3. ASTM A 490 bolts shall be installed black, tensioned and then cleaned and coated with the coating system as specified on the plans. The cleaning and the zinc coating shall not be applied by any process, which can cause hydrogen embrittlement. All certification testing requirements and mill test reports referenced in the following sections shall be in accordance with MoDOT's Control of Material requirements and the requirements of this contract.

1080.2.5.1 Bolts. All bolts shall be in accordance with ASTM A 325 except when ASTM A 490 bolts are specified on the plans. If the contractor elects to use load indicator bolts, only a hex head will be permitted. The type of head used shall be consistent throughout the entire structure, unless otherwise approved by the engineer.

1080.2.5.1.1 Proof Load Tests. Proof load tests in accordance with ASTM F 606 Method 1 shall be performed. Minimum test frequency shall be in accordance with ASTM A 325.

1080.2.5.1.2 Wedge Tests. Wedge tests on full size bolts, in accordance with ASTM F 606, paragraph 3.5 shall be performed. If bolts are to be galvanized, tests shall be performed after galvanizing. Minimum test frequency shall be in accordance with ASTM A 325.

1080.2.5.2 Nuts. All nuts shall be in accordance with AASHTO M 292 as applicable or ASTM A 563, except as follows.

1080.2.5.2.1 Nut Grades. Ungalvanized nuts shall be grades 2, C, D or C3 with a minimum Rockwell hardness of 89 HRB or Brinell hardness 180 HB or heat treated grades 2H, DH or DH3. Nuts that are to be galvanized shall be heat treated grade 2H, DH or DH3.

1080.2.5.2.2 Overtapping. Nuts to be galvanized shall be tapped oversize the minimum amount required for proper assembly. The amount of overtap in the nut shall be such that the nut will assemble freely on the bolt in the coated condition and shall be in accordance with the mechanical requirements and the rotational-capacity test requirements of ASTM A 563. The overtapping requirements of ASTM A 563 will apply, except these limits shall be considered maximum values instead of the minimum, as currently shown.

1080.2.5.2.3 Nut Lubrication. All galvanized nuts, including ASTM A 194 nuts, shall meet the supplementary requirements of ASTM A 563. Galvanized nuts shall be lubricated with a lubricant containing a dye of any color that contrasts with the color of the galvanizing.

1080.2.5.2.4 Proof Load Tests. Proof load tests in accordance with ASTM F 606 shall be performed. Minimum test frequency shall be in accordance with ASTM A 563 or AASHTO M 292. If nuts are to be galvanized, tests shall be performed after lubricating.

1080.2.5.2.5 Weathering Steel. When Type 3 fasteners are specified for use with weathering steel, nuts shall be in accordance with ASTM A 563 and shall be grades C3 or DH3.

1080.2.5.3 Washers. All washers shall be in accordance with ASTM F 436. Hardness testing shall be performed on galvanized washers. The coating shall be removed prior to taking hardness measurements.

1080.2.5.4 Rotational-Capacity Tests. Rotational-capacity tests shall be performed on all bolt, nut and washer assemblies by the manufacturer or distributor prior to shipping. Washers shall be part of the test, regardless if they are required as part of the installation procedure or not. Tests shall be conducted after galvanizing when galvanizing is required.

1080.2.5.4.1 Test Methods. Except as modified herein, the rotational-capacity test shall be performed in accordance with ASTM A 325.

1080.2.5.4.2 Test Lots. Each combination of bolt production lot, nut lot and washer lot shall be tested as an assembly. Where washers are not required as part of the installation procedures, washers need not be included in the lot identification. A rotational-capacity lot number shall be assigned to each combination of lots tested. The minimum frequency of testing shall be two assemblies per rotational-capacity lot.

1080.2.5.4.3 Testing Device. The bolt, nut and washer assembly shall be assembled in a Skidmore-Wilhelm Calibrator or an acceptable equivalent device.

1080.2.5.4.4 Minimum Rotation. The minimum rotation, from a snug tight condition, 10 percent of the specified proof load, shall be as follows:

Minimum Bolt Rotation	
Bolt Length	**Rotation**
≤ 4 Diameters	240° (2/3 turn)
> 4 Diameters and ≤ 8 Diameters	360° (1 turn)
> 8 Diameters	480° (1 1/3 turn)

1080.2.5.4.5 Required Tension. The tension reached at the above rotation shall be equal to or greater than 1.15 times the required installation tension. The installation tension and the tension for the turn test for ASTM A 325 and ASTM A 490 bolts shall be as follows:

Required Bolt Tensions									
Diameter, in.	**1/2**	**5/8**	**3/4**	**7/8**	**1.00**	**1-1/8**	**1-1/4**	**1-3/8**	**1-1/2**
ASTM A 325									
Req. Installation Tension, kips	12	19	28	39	51	56	71	85	103
Turn Test Tension, kips	14	22	32	45	59	64	82	98	118
ASTM A 490									
Req. Installation Tension, kips	15	24	35	49	64	80	102	121	148
Turn Test Tension, kips	17	28	40	56	74	92	117	139	170

1080.2.5.4.6 Torque. After the required installation tension has been exceeded, one reading of tension and torque shall be taken and recorded. The torque value shall be as follows:

$$\text{Torque} \leq 0.25\,PD$$

Where:

Torque = measured torque, foot-pounds
P = measured bolt tension, pounds
D = bolt diameter, feet

1080.2.5.4.7 Short Bolts. Bolts that are too short to test in a Skidmore-Wilhelm Calibrator may be tested in a steel joint. The maximum torque requirement shall be computed using a value of P equal to the turn test tension shown in Sec 1080.2.5.4.5.

1080.2.5.5 Reporting. The results of all tests, including zinc coating thickness, required herein and in the applicable AASHTO/ASTM specifications and the location and date of the tests performance, shall be recorded on the appropriate document. The tests need not be witnessed by an inspection agency. The manufacturer or distributor performing the tests shall certify the results are accurate.

1080.2.5.6 Documentation for High Strength Fastener Assemblies.

1080.2.5.6.1 Mill Test Reports. A Mill Test Report (MTR) shall be furnished for all mill steel used in the manufacture of the bolts, nuts or washers. The MTR shall indicate the location where the material was melted and manufactured.

1080.2.5.6.2 Manufacturer Certified Test Reports. The manufacturer of the bolts, nuts and washers shall furnish a Manufacturer Certified Test Report (MCTR) for each item furnished including the following information:

(a) The lot number of each of the items tested.

(b) The rotational-capacity lot number as required in Sec 1080.2.5.4.2.

(c) The results of the tests required in Sec 1080.2.5.5.

(d) The pertinent information required in Sec 1080.2.5.4.2.

(e) A statement that MCTR for the items are in conformance to this specification and the applicable AASHTO/ASTM specifications.

The location where the bolt assembly components were manufactured.

Rotational capacity testing if completed by the manufacturer.

1080.2.5.6.3 Distributor Certified Test Reports. The Distributor Certified Test Report (DCTR) shall include MCTR for the various bolt assembly components. The rotational-capacity test may be performed by a distributor in lieu of a manufacturer and shall be reported on the DCTR. The DCTR shall indicate the following if not included in the MCTR:

(a) The results of the tests required in Sec 1080.2.5.5.

(b) The pertinent information required in Sec 1080.2.5.4.2.

(c) The rotational-capacity lot number as required in Sec 1080.2.5.4.3.

(d) A statement that the MCTR are in accordance with this specification and the applicable AASHTO/ASTM specifications.

(e) Certification of galvanizing from the galvanizing supplier shall be in accordance with Sec 1080.2.1.

1080.2.5.7 Shipping of High Strength Fastener Assemblies. Bolts, nuts and washers, where required, from each rotational-capacity lot shall be shipped in the same container in proportionate quantities for use. If there is only one production lot number for each size of nut and washer, the nuts and washers may be shipped in separate containers. Each shipping container shall be permanently marked by the manufacturer or distributor with the rotational-capacity lot number such that identification will be possible at any stage prior to installation. The appropriate MTR, MCTR or DCTR shall be supplied in accordance with the contract documents.

1080.2.6 Machine Bolts. Machine bolted field connections shall be made with machine bolts having American Standard Regular Heads and Nuts of hexagonal shape and shall be in accordance with ANSI B 18.2.1 and B 18.2.2. Threads shall extend slightly beyond the nut to permit burring. One plain washer in accordance with ANSI B 18.22.1 shall be used at all slotted holes.

1080.2.7 Cast Steel. For cast steel, the foundry shall furnish a certified copy of foundry reports giving the chemical analysis and results of physical tests on the material from each heat. These reports shall be submitted for approval of material being furnished before any required machine work is done on the castings.

1080.2.8 Cast Iron. For gray iron castings, the foundry shall furnish one finished tension test specimen in accordance with AASHTO M 105 from each heat. The required machine work shall not proceed until material being furnished has been approved. If cast steel is furnished in lieu of gray iron, the minimum tensile strength shall be 50,000 psi.

1080.2.9 Identification of Metals. The steel shall be stamped or stenciled and color striped with paint at the mill. Heat numbers shall be steel stamped or stenciled with paint at the mill. Separate markings and color codes shall be in accordance with ASTM A 6. The characteristic color stripes shall be placed on each part cut from the mill piece. For steels not covered by ASTM A 6, the fabricator shall furnish the engineer the color coding in writing before fabrication begins. Heat numbers shall be painted on all principal pieces and these pieces shall be so noted on the shop drawings. Principal pieces for this requirement shall include all beams, flanges, webs, splice plates, cover plates, bearings, bearing stiffener plates, load bearing members of end diaphragms, pin plates, hanger plates and others as may be directed by the engineer. Principal pieces shall include individual plates of all truss members, truss gusset plates, splice plates and floorbeam connection angles. The color code and heat number markings shall be placed on the material such that the markings are visible throughout the work of fabrication. Loss of identification on pieces or items will be cause for rejection of the pieces or items.

1080.2.9.1 Fracture Critical Members. Principal pieces requiring identification shall also include components of fracture critical members. Traceability of both heat numbers and impact serial numbers shall be maintained for fracture critical members and attachments.

1080.2.9.2 Direction of Rolling. Unless otherwise indicated in the contract documents, steel plates for main members and splice plates for flanges and main tension members shall be cut and fabricated such that the primary direction of rolling is parallel to the direction of the principal tensile or compressive stresses. The direction of rolling shall be maintained for all principal pieces during fabrication.

1080.2.10 Steel Stamping. Any metal die stamping of match marks and erection marks in structural steel members shall be limited to a position in the end 1 1/2 inches of flange plates and flange splice plates, the middle third of web plates and the outside edge of the middle third of web splice plates. Metal die stamping at other locations or for other purposes may be approved by the engineer provided low stress dies are used. Low stress dies will be defined as those manufactured to produce impressions that are rounded at the bottom rather than sharp edged. Metal die stamping on pin plates and hanger plates will not be permitted.

1080.3 Fabrication and Inspection.

1080.3.1 Quality Assurance Inspection. The engineer will be responsible for QA inspection to assure the quality of the fabricated material. QA inspection by the engineer will not relieve the contractor of the responsibility to provide fabricated structural steel items in accordance with the contract documents. Sufficient QC, as necessary to assure work being performed conforms to the contract documents, shall be the responsibility of the contractor and fabricator. Following adequate notification that QC inspections and testing by the fabricator have been performed, QA inspection will be at the option of the engineer. Regardless of the location and degree of QA inspection, material and workmanship not meeting specified performance criteria or conforming to the contract documents or recognized good practice may be rejected at any time prior to final acceptance of the work.

1080.3.1.1 Locations of Inspection. QA inspection of fabricated material will ordinarily be made in the shop for fabricating shops within the 48 contiguous States and for shops outside the U. S., but within 1,000 miles of Jefferson City, MO. High strength bolts, nuts and washers shall be presented for sampling at the fabrication shop performing the primary fabrication or at a location agreed to by Construction and Materials. In some cases, QA inspection in the fabrication shop may be waived and inspection made when the fabricated material is delivered to the project site. All costs of QA inspection at fabricating shops located both outside the 48 contiguous States and more than 1,000 miles from Jefferson City, shall be at the contractor's expense. In such

cases, the contractor will be charged with transportation costs and expenses of QA inspectors for trips made from Jefferson City to locations to which the inspectors must travel for shop inspection work. These transportation costs and expenses of QA inspectors will be deducted by the Commission from monies due the contractor.

1080.3.1.2 Notification of Inspection. The engineer shall be notified at least four working days prior to the beginning of the shop fabrication so a QA inspector may be present if so desired and to allow the QA inspector to make travel arrangements. If the fabricator notifies and requests inspection and the QA inspector arrives at the location of inspection to find the material is not ready for inspection as indicated in the request, any travel costs incurred by MoDOT for additional inspection shall be paid by the contractor.

1080.3.1.3 Access for Inspection. The engineer shall have full access to all parts of the shop or project site where material is being fabricated or assembled and shall be provided with every reasonable facility for determining the character of material and workmanship.

1080.3.1.4 Field Inspection. No increased time or compensation will be allowed for additional work, delays or additional costs as a result of QA inspection at the project site, including required repairs, including where samples were removed, refabrication, securing samples for chemical analysis and physical tests.

1080.3.1.5 Office Space. A suitable office area shall be provided for exclusive use by the engineer. The office may be enclosed or semi-enclosed as available at the location of QA inspection, but shall be suitable for use as determined by the engineer. The floor space shall be at least 120 square feet unless otherwise approved by the engineer, weatherproof, secure, insulated and lighted. The office space shall be adequately ventilated, heated and air conditioned. Electric outlets with 110-120 volt, 60 Hz current and a telephone with outside line, interplant and dial-up computer capabilities shall be provided. Office furniture consisting of a desk, a minimum of 30 x 60 inches with drawers, a swivel desk chair with arms and a storage/filing cabinet with lock hardware and key shall be provided. All office furniture will be subject to approval by the engineer. Should any furniture become unsatisfactory, the furniture shall be promptly repaired or replaced to the satisfaction of the engineer. Accessible parking shall be provided near the office any time the shop is in operation on MoDOT projects. No direct payment will be made for furnishing and maintaining an acceptable office area for QA inspection.

1080.3.1.6 Certifications. All structural steel fabricators performing work for the following listed components of steel structures shall be certified prior to the start of fabrication under the appropriate category of the AISC Certification Program for Steel Bridge Fabricators or the AISC Certification Program for Bridge and Highway Metal Component Manufacturers as follows:

(a) Fabricators of unspliced rolled beams and temporary bridges shall be certified to the Simple Bridge (SBr) requirements.

(b) Fabricators of straight or curved (radius over 500 feet) rolled beams with field or shop splices, built-up welded constant depth straight or curved (radius over 500 feet) I-shape plate girders, built-up welded variable depth straight or curved (radius over 1000 feet) I-shaped plate girders, and trusses with a total length less than 200 feet or substantially pre-assembled and shipped in no more than three subassemblies shall be certified to the Intermediate Bridge (IBr) requirements.

(c) Fabricators of bridges beyond the listed structures of 1080.3.1.6(a) or 1080.3.1.6(b) shall be certified to the Advanced Bridge (ABr) requirements.

(d) Fabricators of fracture-critical members indicated in the contract plans shall also meet the requirements for fracture-critical certification in addition to the other bridge certifications.

(e) Fabricators of overhead sign trusses, steel bearings, POT bearings, finger plate expansion devices, and flat plate expansion devices shall be certified to the Bridge and Highway Metal Component

Manufacturers requirements unless the fabricator is certified to one of the Steel Bridge Fabricator levels (SBr, IBr, or ABr).

(f) AISC certification will not be required for manufacturers of simple laminated or elastomeric bearing pad assemblies or PTFE bearing pad assemblies.

(g) Fabricators that apply steel painted coatings in the fabrication shop shall be certified to the AISC Applicators of Complex Coatings Endorsement (SPE) or SSPC QP3 – Shop Painting Certification Program.

1080.3.2 Shop Drawings. Shop drawings for structural steel and miscellaneous metals shall be required and shall be prepared in strict accordance with the design details shown on the plans. If details are lacking, the details shall be supplied and shall conform to the design plans and specifications. All drawings shall be clear and complete and shall be thoroughly checked before submittal. Shop drawings shall be completely titled in accordance with the contract plans and shall pertain to only a single structure. Four sets of the shop drawings for railroad structures and two sets for other structures shall be submitted to Bridge for approval. The prints submitted shall be legible and shall have distinct details of sufficient contrast to be suitable for microfilming. Prints that do not have the desired clarity and contrast will be returned for corrective action. One set of prints will be returned marked reviewed or approved subject to noted corrections. The contractor shall promptly make necessary corrections and resubmit for final approval. When shop drawings are approved, the contractor shall furnish as many additional prints as requested. Reproductions on cloth or film of the original shop drawings shall be required for railroad structures and shall be delivered to the engineer prior to completion of the work. The approval of shop drawings will cover only the general design features and in no case shall this approval be considered to cover errors or omissions in shop details. The contractor shall be responsible for the accuracy of the shop drawings, the fabrication of material and the fit of all connections. All changes in the fabrication and erection work caused by errors in shop drawings and any changes in fabrication necessary for satisfactory results shall be at the contractor's expense. After shop drawings have been approved, no changes in dimensions or substitutions of sections shall be made without written approval from the engineer. Shop drawings shall be revised to show any authorized changes and the required number of prints shall be furnished to the engineer.

1080.3.2.1 Non-Domestic Shop Drawings. Shop drawings from fabricators located outside the 48 contiguous States, whether marked approved or approved subject to the corrections noted, will be returned to the contractor and the contractor shall be responsible for transmitting the drawings to the fabricator for further handling. Should such fabricator also be the contractor, all prints will be returned to the office located on the project.

1080.3.2.2 Weld Procedures. All welding procedures to be used shall be prepared by the manufacturer, contractor or fabricator as a written procedure specification. For new welding procedures, two copies shall be submitted for approval prior to submitting shop drawings. Approved weld procedures will be kept on file by Bridge and may be considered for use on multiple projects. Any changes to the parameters of an approved welding procedure shall require submittal for approval. The shop drawings submitted for approval shall indicate the welding procedure to be used for each joint.

1080.3.2.3 Verification of Work. By submission of shop drawings, the contractor represents to the Commission that all material, field measurements, construction requirements, performance criteria and similar data have been verified. The contractor further represents that the shop drawings have been coordinated and verified with the details of the work to be performed by other fabricators and entities on the project. No allowance for additional costs or delays will be made to the contractor for incorrect fabrication as a result of failure to coordinate or perform these verifications.

1080.3.3 Fabrication. Fabrication of all parts of the structure shall be carefully done in strict accordance with the approved shop drawings.

1080.3.3.1 Straightening. Straightening of any deformed structural material shall be performed by noninjurious methods prior to being worked in the shop. Sharp kinks and bends will be cause for rejection.

1080.3.3.2 Holes. Holes for connections of main members shall be subpunched or subdrilled and reamed while assembled in the shop or may be drilled from the solid with main members and each splice plate fully assembled in their final erected positions. Holes for floor beams and framed stringer connections shall be drilled or reamed to a steel template of sufficient thickness to center the drill accurately and all members to be secured through the same group of holes shall be drilled or reamed from the same template. Holes may be punched full size in secondary members such as lateral, longitudinal and sway bracing, lacing bars, stay plates and diaphragms. Stacking of web splice plates during drilling or reaming operations on straight girders will be permitted.

1080.3.3.3 Reaming and Finishing of Holes. Reaming or drilling full size from the solid shall be done while the truss, girder, continuous I-beam or other component as noted, is assembled, either in an upright position or on its side, properly adjusted for camber and sweep and after the connecting parts have been firmly fastened together. A minimum of one full span, from bearing to bearing, shall be fully assembled before reaming or drilling full size begins. Connecting parts assembled in the shop for the purpose of reaming or drilling holes for field or shop connections shall not be interchanged or reversed and shall be matchmarked. A diagram showing such marks shall be detailed on the shop drawings. Burrs resulting from reaming, drilling or punching shall be removed. All connections shall be disassembled after drilling or reaming to make these holes accessible for deburring. Required cleaning and painting shall be done after disassembly. Reamed, drilled or punched holes shall be round and perpendicular to the member. Any hole out of round more than 1/16 inch will be cause for rejection of the plate. Eighty-five percent of the holes in any group shall not show an offset greater than 1/32 inch between adjacent thicknesses of metal after reaming or drilling. All holes shall be drilled or reamed and aligned such that a bolt of the specified diameter will enter the hole and the head and nut will seat on the metal before tensioning.

1080.3.3.4 Applicable Codes. All welding, oxygen cutting, shearing and clipping and dimensional tolerances shall be in accordance with the ANSI/AASHTO/AWS D1.5: 2002, Bridge Welding Code. Tubular steel structures shall be governed by the current edition of the AWS D1.1, Structural Welding Code - Steel, in effect at the time of the contract, unless specified otherwise. Aluminum structures shall be governed by the current edition of the AWS D1.2, Structural Welding Code - Aluminum, except as amended by Sec 903, unless otherwise indicated.

1080.3.3.5 Modifications to the Bridge Welding Code. The following modifications to the ANSI/AASHTO/AWS D1.5 2002, Bridge Welding Code (AWS), shall apply:

1080.3.3.5.1 AWS Sec 1.3 Paragraph 1.3.4 - Paragraph 1.3.4 shall be replaced with the following:

The gas metal arc welding process shall not be used on any structural components of bridges. Approved gas metal arc processes may be used for incidental, non-structural components as may be specifically approved by the engineer. Tack welding with an approved gas metal arc process will be permitted for joints that will subsequently be welded using an approved submerged arc automatic welding process.

1080.3.3.5.2 AWS Sec 1.3 Paragraph 1.3.7 - A new Paragraph 1.3.7 shall be added as follows:

All primary shop welds shall be made by approved submerged arc automatic welding processes. The automatic welding process shall be one in which the wire or electrode feed, speed of travel and guidance are all mechanically controlled. Noncompliance with this requirement will be cause for rejection of the welded material unless prior approval is granted by the engineer for welding the specified joints by the use of other processes. The automatic welding process requirement for primary shop welds shall be shown on the shop drawings for each joint. Primary shop welds will be defined as flange and web butt welded splices in I-beams, box members and plate girders, plate girder or box flange to web fillet welds and cover plate to flange fillet welds.

1080.3.3.5.3 AWS Sec 2.8 Paragraph 2.8.1.1 - Paragraph 2.8.1.1 shall be replaced with the following:

The minimum fillet weld size, except for fillet welds used to reinforce groove welds, shall be as shown in the following table or as calculated using procedures established to prevent cracking in accordance with Paragraph 4.2.2. In both cases, the minimum size will apply if the size is sufficient to satisfy design requirements.

Material Thickness of Thicker Part Joined, in.	**Minimum Size of Fillet Weld[a], in.**
To ¾	1/4[b]
Over 3/4 to 2 ½	5/16[b]
Over 2 1/2	1/2

[a]Except that the weld size need not exceed the thickness of the thinner part joined.
[b]Single pass welds must be used.

1080.3.3.5.4. AWS Sec 3.2 Paragraph 3.2.2.2 (4) - A new Paragraph 3.2.2.2 (4) shall be added as follows: Quenched and tempered steel plate may be thermally cut provided sufficient preheating is applied according to the steel producer's written recommendations. Procedures for thermal cutting of quenched and tempered steel plate, along with the steel producer's written report, shall be submitted to the engineer for approval prior to the start of such work.

1080.3.3.5.5 AWS Sec 3.2 Paragraph 3.2.3.4 - Paragraph 3.2.3.4 shall be replaced with the following:

The corrective procedures described in Table 3.1 shall not apply to discontinuities in rolled base-metal surfaces. Such discontinuities may be corrected by the fabricator in accordance with ASTM A 6, except that repair by welding will be permitted only when approved by the engineer. Approval will be limited to areas where there will be less than the maximum design stress in the finished structure. When surface imperfections in alloy, low alloy and carbon steel plates are repaired by grinding, the surfaces shall have edges faired to the plate surface with a maximum slope of 1 in 10.

1080.3.3.5.6 AWS Sec 3.2 Paragraph 3.2.11 - A new paragraph 3.2.11 shall be added as follows:

Sheared edges of plates not to be welded that are more than 5/8 inch thick and carrying calculated stress shall be planed to a depth of 1/4 inch. 1080.3.3.5.7 AWS Sec 3.3.8 - Sec 3.3.8 shall be replaced with the following: Temporary welds shall be subject to the same WPS requirements as final welds. Temporary welds shall be removed unless otherwise permitted by the engineer and the surface shall be made flush with the original surface. Unless previously approved in writing by the engineer, there shall be no temporary welds for fabrication, transportation, erection or other purposes on main members except at locations more than 1/6 the depth of the web from the flanges of beams and girders. There shall be no temporary welds in tension zones of members of quenched and tempered steels. Temporary welds at other locations shall be shown on shop drawings and shall be made with approved consumables. Removal of temporary welds shall conform to Paragraphs 3.3.7.3 and 3.3.7.4.

1080.3.3.5.8 AWS Sec 3.4 Paragraph 3.4.6 - Paragraph 3.4.6 shall be replaced with the following:

All shop splices in each component part of a cover-plated beam or built-up member shall be made and all required nondestructive testing completed and approved by the engineer before the component part is welded to other component parts of the member. Long members or member sections may be made by shop-splicing subsections, each made in accordance with this subsection (See 2.17.6). All shop splices shall be made using full penetration welds that fully develop the capacity of the original member. Additional shop splices required due to length limits of available material may be used if detailed on the shop drawings and placed at locations approved by the engineer. No additional payment will be made for any additional shop splices placed in the members at the option of the contractor, including shop splices that may be required as a result of material limitations.

080.3.3.5.9 AWS Sec 3.5 Paragraph 3.5.1.8.1 - A new Paragraph 3.5.1.8.1 shall be added as follows:
The maximum permissible variation from specified width for rolled or burned flange plates shall be -1/8 inch to +3/8 inch.

1080.3.3.5.10 AWS Sec 3.5 Paragraph 3.5.1.9 - Paragraph 3.5.1.9 shall be replaced with the following:

The bearing ends of bearing stiffeners shall be flush and square with the web and shall have at least 75 percent of this area in contact with the inner surface of the flanges. The remaining 25 percent of the area of the bearing stiffener shall be within 0.010 inch of the inner surface of the flanges. When bearing against a steel base or seat, all steel components shall fit within 0.010 inch for 75 percent of the projected area of web and stiffeners and not more than 1/32 inch for the remaining 25 percent of the projected area. Girders without stiffeners shall bear on the projected area of the web on the outer flange surface within 0.010 inch. The included angle between web and flange shall not exceed 90 degrees in the bearing length. The top surface of a flange or shelf plate supporting a steel bearing rocker shall be considered a flat surface with a tolerance of 0.003 inch per inch in any direction over the projected area of the rocker. The top surface of a flange or shelf plate in direct contact with elastomeric bearings shall not deviate from a true plane surface by more than 1/16 inch.

1080.3.3.5.11 AWS Sec 3.5 Paragraph 3.5.1.16 - A new Paragraph 3.5.1.16 shall be added as follows:

Permissible variation in length of assembled beams or girders between the centerline of bearing devices shall not exceed plus or minus 1/4 inch for any one span or plus or minus 1/2 inch for any two or more spans within the assembled unit. The actual centerline of any bearing device shall lie within the thickness of the bearing stiffener.

1080.3.3.5.12 AWS Sec 3.7 Paragraph 3.7.2.5 - A new Paragraph 3.7.2.5 shall be added as follows:

If, after three repairs to the same area of a weld requiring radiographic quality, there is any part of the original defect remaining or there is a new rejectable indication, the total joint shall be cut apart, all deposited weld metal removed, joint preparation made and the total joint rewelded.

1080.3.3.5.13 AWS Sec 3.7 Paragraph 3.7.2.6 - A new Paragraph 3.7.2.6 shall be added as follows:

The gas metal arc welding process shall not be used for the repair of welds except when repairing welds made with the GMAW process.

1080.3.3.5.14 AWS Sec 5.21 Paragraph 5.21.6.2 - A new Paragraph 5.21.6.2 shall be added as follows:

Any cost involved in qualifying welders, welding operators and tackers, including all material costs, finishing of test specimens, the physical testing of finished specimens and any radiography required shall be borne by the contractor. Required radiography and physical testing of finished specimens shall be performed at test facilities approved by the engineer.

1080.3.3.5.15 AWS Sec 6.6 Paragraph 6.6.5 - Paragraph 6.6.5 shall be replaced with the following:
If the engineer subsequently requests nondestructive testing, not specified in the original contract agreement, the contractor shall perform any requested testing or shall permit any requested testing to be performed. Handling, surface preparation, repair welds and any nondestructive testing requested by the engineer, as a result of weld repair, shall be at the contractor's expense. Payment for any non-destructive testing that does not indicate the need for repair to the tested weld will be the responsibility of the party requesting the testing.

1080.3.3.5.16 AWS Sec 6.7 Paragraphs 6.7.1, 6.7.1.1 and 6.7.1.2 - Paragraphs 6.7.1, 6.7.1.1 and 6.7.1.2 shall be replaced with the following:

Radiographic inspection shall be required for areas of both shop and field butt welds as specified herein. One hundred percent inspection shall be required for flanges of rolled beams and girders and 100 percent of transverse butt welds in webs for a distance of no less than one-sixth of the web depth from each flange and 25 percent of the remainder of the web depth. At least one-third of the length of all longitudinal web splices shall be radiographed at even intervals throughout the length of the splice. When a rejectable defect is found by radiography in any partially tested joint, either initially or in a later additional radiograph, tests shall be conducted on either side of and adjacent to the rejectable test area. If a rejectable defect is found in any additional areas, then 100 percent of vertical web splices and an additional 10 percent of total weld length in longitudinal web splices shall be tested. The location of these additional test areas shall be as directed by the engineer. All complete joint penetration groove welds in T- and corner joints shall be tested by ultrasonic testing.

1080.3.3.5.17 AWS Sec 6.10 Paragraph 6.10.3.4 - A new Paragraph 6.10.3.4 shall be added as follows:

Edge blocks shall be used when radiographing butt welds greater than 1/2 inch in thickness. The edge blocks shall have a length sufficient to extend beyond each side of the weld centerline for a minimum distance of 2 inches and shall have a thickness equal to the thickness of the weld, plus or minus 1/16 inch. The minimum width of the edge blocks shall be no less than 1 inch. The edge blocks shall be centered on the weld with a snug fit against the plate being radiographed, allowing no more than 1/16 inch gap. Edge blocks shall be made of radiographically clean steel and the surface shall have a finish of ANSI 125µin. or smoother (refer to ANSI/AWS D1.1-98 Structural Welding Code - Steel, Sec 6.17, Paragraph 6.17.13 and Figure 6.15).

1080.3.3.5.18 AWS Sec 6.10 Paragraph 6.10.11.2 - Paragraph 6.10.11.2 shall be replaced with the following:

If the greatest and least thickness of a weld connecting parts of different thickness cannot be rendered with adequate contrast on a single film with a single exposure, a dual film or dual exposure technique shall be used to obtain suitable density for both the greatest and the least thickness of the weld.

1080.3.3.5.19 AWS Sec 6.12 Paragraph 6.12.4 - A new Paragraph 6.12.4 shall be added as follows:

After completion of all radiographic inspection, the contractor shall submit to the engineer one set of drawing details showing the location and identification numbers of all radiographs taken.

1080.3.3.5.20 AWS Sec 6.26 Paragraph 6.26.2.1 - Paragraph 6.26.2.1 shall be replaced with the following:

For any welds, the greatest dimension of any porosity or fusion type discontinuity that is 1/16 inch or larger in greatest dimension shall not exceed the size, B, indicated in Figure 6.8 for the effective throat or weld size involved. The distance from any porosity or fusion type discontinuity described above to another such discontinuity, to an edge or to the toe or root of any intersecting flange-to-web weld shall not be less than the minimum clearance allowed, C, indicated in Figure 6.8 for the size of discontinuity under examination.

1080.3.3.5.21 AWS Sec 6.26 Paragraph 6.26.2.2 and Figure 6.9 - Delete paragraph 6.26.2.2 and Figure 6.9.

1080.3.3.5.22 AWS Sec 6.26 Paragraph 6.26.3.1 - Paragraph 6.26.3.1 shall be replaced with the following:
Welds subjected to ultrasonic testing in addition to visual inspection shall conform to the requirements of Table 6.3.

1080.3.3.6 Calibrated Tapes. When the contract involves fabrication of a bridge with a bearing-to-bearing span of 100 feet or more, certifications and identifying numbers of calibrated measuring tapes or numbered tapes matched to a calibrated master shall be kept on file for review by the engineer. Certification of the measuring tape to be used or certification of the master from which the tape was matched shall be traceable to

the U. S. National Bureau of Standards. Certification of tapes for shop use shall be renewed at least every two years.

1080.3.3.7 Connection Angles. Connection angles for floor beams and stringers shall be flush and shall be correct as to position and length of member. If milling is required, no more than 1/16 inch shall be removed from the thickness of the angles.

1080.3.3.8 Longitudinal Stiffeners. Longitudinal girder web stiffeners shall be a single length if possible. If more than a single length is necessary, such lengths shall be joined by a full penetration butt weld. The location of these butt welds shall be shown on the shop drawings for each joint and shall be subject to approval by the engineer. Runoff plates in accordance with AWS Section 3.12 shall be used. The welds shall be radiographically tested and accepted in accordance with AWS Sec 6.10 prior to being attached to the web.

1080.3.3.9 Pins. Pins shall be furnished true to size and shall be straight, smooth and free from flaws. Pins shall be provided with hexagonal chamfered nuts. The screw ends shall be sufficiently long to permit burring the threads when members are connected. Pilot and driving nuts shall be furnished for each size of pins where required. Threads for all pins and bolts shall conform with the ANSI B1.1 Free Fit - Class 2 Series except that when recessed nuts are specified, pin ends requiring a threaded diameter of 1 3/8 inches or more shall have six threads per inch. If standard nuts are specified for this size pin, a minimum of four threads to the inch shall be used.

1080.3.3.10 Pin Holes. Pin holes shall be bored true to size, smooth and straight, at right angles to the axis of the member and parallel with each other. The boring shall be done after the member is assembled and welded. The center-to-center distance of pin holes shall be correct within 1/32 inch for an individual component or member. The diameter of pin holes shall not exceed that of the pin by more than 1/50 inch for pins 4 inches or less in diameter or no more than 1/32 inch for pins larger than 4 inches in diameter.

1080.3.3.11 Casting. Castings shall be free from inclusions of foreign material, casting faults, injurious blow holes or other defects which render the castings unsuitable for the service intended. Castings shall be properly filleted at re-entrant angles. No tolerance will be allowed below the dimensions shown on the plans for thicknesses over an appreciable area of the casting. A reasonable oversize will not be cause for rejection.

1080.3.3.12 Bent Plates. Bent plates shall be cold bent and taken from the stock plates such that the bend line will be at right angles to the direction of rolling. The radius of bends, measured to the concave face of the metal, shall be in accordance with the requirements as shown in the table below, in which "T" is the thickness of the plate. If a shorter radius is required, the plates shall be hot bent. Hot bent plates shall be bent at right angles to the direction of rolling. Before hot or cold bending, the corners of the plate shall be rounded to a radius of 1/16 inch throughout that portion of the plate at which the bending is to occur.

Angle Through Which Plate is Bent	Minimum Radius
61 degrees to 90 degrees	1.0 T
Over 90 degrees to 120 degrees	1.5 T
Over 120 degrees to 150 degrees	2.0 T

1080.3.3.13 Surface Finish. Bearing plates of rolled steel not requiring a surface finish shall be straightened to a plane surface. The surfaces of plates of rolled steel or cast material which are to be in contact shall be finished as shown on the plans and the final finish shall be prepared in a manner to give at least 50 percent contact as indicated by standard machinist's blue test. Rockers and pedestals made from rolled steel shall be finished after welding. If a flat surface is shown on the plans, the tolerance shall be 0.003 inch per inch in any direction. Flat surfaces in full contact shall be finished at right angles to each other. Bearing plates shall be assembled in sets. The surface finish of bearing and base plates and other bearing surfaces that are to come in contact with each

other or with concrete shall meet the following surface roughness requirements as defined in ANSI B 46.1, Surface Roughness, Waviness and Lay, Part I:

Surface Roughness Requirements	**Micro-inches, Max.**
Steel Slabs	2,000
Heavy Plates in Contact in Shoes to be Welded	1,000
Milled Ends of Compression Members, Stiffeners and Fillers	500
Bridge Rollers and Rockers	250
Pins and Pin Holes	125
Sliding Bearings	125

1080.3.3.14 Horizontally Curved Rolled Beams and Plate Girders. If the plans show rolled beams or welded plate girders to be finished to a horizontal curvature, fabrication shall be as follows:

(a) Rolled beams shall be curved by the heat curving procedure.

(b) Welded plate girders may be fabricated by cutting the flanges to the specified curvature before the girders are attached to the webs or, if not prohibited by the contract, may be curved by the heat curving procedure.

(c) If the heat curving procedure is used, the procedure shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) Material. Heat curving of rolled beams and welded plate girders shall be limited to AASHTO M 270 Grade 36, AASHTO M 270 Grade 50, AASHTO M 270 Grade 50W and AASHTO M 270 Grade HPS 70W.

(2) Type of Heating. Beams and girders may be curved by either continuous or V-type heating.

(3) Temperature. The heat curving operation shall be conducted such that the temperature of the steel never exceeds 1,100 F as measured by temperature-indicating crayons or other suitable means applied before heating. The heating of the steel to a temperature greater than 1,200 F will be considered destructive heating and will be conclusive cause for rejection of the steel. Quenching with water or water and air, will not be permitted. Cooling with dry compressed air will be permitted after the steel has cooled to 600 F.

(4) Position for Heating. The girder may be heat curved with the web in either a vertical or a horizontal position, unless noted on the contract plans. When curved in the vertical position, the girder shall be braced or supported in such a manner that the tendency of the girder to deflect laterally during the heat curving process will not cause the girder to overturn. When curved in the horizontal position, the girder shall be supported near the ends and at intermediate points, if required, to obtain a uniform curvature. When the girder is positioned horizontally for heating, intermediate safety catch blocks shall be maintained at the midlength of the girder within 2 inches of the flanges at all times during the heating process.

(5) Sequence of Operations. Heat curving shall be completed before the girder is painted. The contractor shall submit a curving procedure addressing the attachment of stiffeners, connection plates and cover plates for review prior to commencement of the heat curving process.

1080.3.3.15 Shop Assembly.

1080.3.3.15.1 If required by the contract, the structural steel for bridges shall be completely shop assembled for inspection, supported only at points of bearing. Long bridges required to be entirely shop assembled may be divided into units for assembly with each unit extending from expansion device to expansion device.

1080.3.3.15.2 Beams and girders of all other bridges shall be assembled for inspection in line assemblies with a minimum length assembled of one complete span, from bearing to bearing.

1080.3.3.15.3 During shop assembly, connecting parts shall be firmly fastened together and held in alignment with a minimum of four drift pins and four make-up bolts per flange splice plate, web splice plate or similar connecting part, until assembly inspection is complete.

1080.3.3.15.4 All trusses, plate girders and continuous I-beams shall be assembled to permit inspection of all parts. QA inspection of the assembly will be at the option of the engineer.

1080.3.3.16 Shop Measurement of Curvature and Camber. Horizontal curvature and vertical camber will not be measured for QA inspection in the shop until all welding, drilling and heat curving operations have been completed and the flanges have cooled to a uniform temperature. For bridges not requiring complete shop assembly, the vertical camber will be checked with the girder in a horizontal position and the horizontal curvature will be checked with the girder in either a horizontal or vertical position. The shop drawings shall show the required offsets for both curvature and camber at approximately 10-foot intervals, measured along the girder. The permissible variation in specified sweep for horizontally curved beams and girders, measured in inches, but not to exceed 1/2 inch, shall be as follows: 1/8 inch x 0.1 x (number of feet from end bearing)

1080.3.4 Shear Connector Studs. Shear connector studs may be attached to the beams or girders either in the fabricating shop or in the field. All applicable requirements of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) shall be met. If the shear connector studs are to be attached in the field, the contractor shall notify the engineer no less than one week before the contractor begins welding shear connectors to the beams or girders so the engineer may inspect for approval the proposed welding procedure and equipment. Only welding procedures, equipment and operators meeting the requirements of Secs 1080.3.3.4, 1080.3.3.5 and 712 shall be used. Areas to which shear connectors are to be attached shall be cleaned of all foreign material, such as oil, grease or paint by a suitable method. Where a shop coat of inorganic zinc primer has been applied, removal shall be limited to the minimum area necessary to apply the studs. After completion of the welding operations, the primed area shall be touched up with a suitable inorganic zinc primer or epoxy mastic paint (non-aluminum). Where galvanized steel beams or girders are specified, galvanizing material shall be omitted or removed one inch clear of weld locations. The method used to omit or remove the galvanizing material shall be masking, grinding or other methods approved by the engineer. After completion of the welding operations, the ungalvanized areas of the beam or girders shall be coated with epoxy mastic paint (non-aluminum).

1080.3.5 Shipping. Fabricated material shall not be shipped before a "Fabrication Inspection Shipment Release" is issued by the engineer. All parts shall be loaded and protected to prevent damage in transit. Pins, nuts, bolts and other small parts shall be boxed or crated. The "Fabrication Inspection Shipment Release" shall be delivered by the contractor to the engineer at destination prior to erection of steel.

1080.4 Weathering Steel.

1080.4.1 Description. This section contains provisions that shall modify, supplement and expand the requirements of the contract plans and other provisions of Sec 1080 when the use of weathering steel is specified for structures. Weathering steel will be defined as structural steel specified under AASHTO M 270 Grades 50W, HPS 50W and HPS 70W that is intended to be primarily used in a bare, uncoated application for the structure.

1080.4.2 High Performance Steels.

1080.4.2.1 Material Requirements. All high performance steel shall be in accordance with the latest edition of AASHTO M 270 and supplements. As an option, HPS 50W and HPS 70W thermomechanical-controlled

processing (TMCP) steel plates available from the manufacturer in limited thicknesses may be directly substituted for the quenched and tempered product.

1080.4.2.2 Fabrication Requirements. All fabrication shall be in accordance with the latest edition of the AASHTO Guide Specifications for Highway Bridge Fabrication with HPS70W Steel, an addendum to be used in conjunction with ANSI / AASHTO / AWS D1.5: 2002, except as modified by this section. Only fabricators meeting the requirements of the AISC Certification Program for Steel Bridge Fabricator Advanced Bridge (ABr) classification or approved equal may be used to fabricate HPS 50W and HPS 70W steel. Whenever magnetic particle testing is conducted, only the yoke technique will be permitted as described in Sec 6.7.6.2 of AWS D1.5: 2002, modified to test using alternating current only.

1080.4.2.3 Welding Requirements for HPS. All welding for high performance steel shall be in accordance with AASHTO / ANSI / AWS D1.5: 2002 Bridge Welding Code except as modified herein and by the latest edition of the AASHTO Guide Specifications for Highway Bridge Fabrication with HPS70W Steel. Only submerged arc and shielded metal arc welding processes shall be permitted when welding Grade HPS 70W steel. The matching submerged arc consumables using the ESAB electrode and Lincoln flux combinations, recommended in Appendix A of the guide specification shall not be allowed. Filler metals used for single pass fillet welds or for complete joint penetration groove welds connecting Grade HPS 70W plate to ASTM A 709 Grade HPS 50W or Grade 50W may conform to the matching or undermatching requirements from AWS D1.5: 2002 as indicated in the guide specification. Moisture resistant coating shall be required for all shielded metal arc welding. The contractor may request approval of alternate consumables in lieu of the filler metals listed in the guide specification for submerged arc welding in accordance with AWS D1.5 Table 4.1. The request for approval shall include documentation of successful welding and shall include diffusible hydrogen tests indicating the levels of diffusible hydrogen to meet the requirements of the guide specifications. Grade HPS 50W may be welded under the same requirements as ASTM A 709 Grade 50W.

1080.4.3 Cleaning. Except for the areas of the structure to be partially coated as described in Sec 1080.4.4, all surfaces of the structural steel shall be blast cleaned in the fabrication shop to meet the requirements of the Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC) SSPC-SP6 and may be left uncoated. Faying surfaces of connections to be shop bolted shall be blast cleaned prior to permanent assembly of the connections. After blast cleaning, the steel shall be kept clean of all foreign material. If the steel becomes contaminated, the steel shall be cleaned with a method approved by the engineer. Girders contaminated with concrete or grout splatters shall be washed off before the material is allowed to dry.

1080.4.4 Partial Coating. The surfaces of all structural steel located under expansion joints, but not in contact with concrete, shall be coated with complete System H within a distance of 1 1/2 times the girder depth, but no less than 10 feet, from the centerline of all deck joints. Within this limit, items to be coated shall include all surfaces of beams, girders, diaphragms, stiffeners, bearings and miscellaneous structural steel items. The prime coat for the specified paint system shall be applied to the structural steel within the above limits in the fabrication shop. The intermediate and finish coats shall be applied in the field in accordance with Sec 1081.10.3.11. The color of the finish coat shall be brown. Portions of the structural steel embedded in or in contact with concrete, including but not limited to the top flanges of girders, shall be coated with no less than 2.0 mils of the prime coat for System H. Shear connectors may not be coated or protected from overspray.

1080.4.4.1 Surface Preparation. All surface preparation and application of the partial coating described herein shall be as specified in Sec 1081. Required work shall include blast cleaning for all areas to receive the specified prime coat to SSPC-SP-10 (Near White Blast Cleaning) in accordance with Sec 1081.10.3.3, except that areas to be primed that will be embedded in concrete may be prepared to no less than SSPC-SP-6. The limits of the areas to be shop and field coated shall be masked to provide crisp, straight lines to prevent overspray on adjacent areas.

1080.4.4.2 Drain Bracket Coating. The galvanized surfaces of drain support brackets shall be prepared according to the coating manufacturer's recommendation and field coated with a gray epoxy mastic primer (nonaluminum) within a distance of 6 inches from the point of connection to the weathering steel structure.

1080.4.5 Bolting and Fasteners. All fasteners, such as bolts, nuts and washers, that bolt directly to the weathering grade structural steel, including fasteners located in areas of the structure to be partially coated and fasteners for expansion device supports and similar items shall be high strength weathering fasteners with atmospheric corrosion resistance and weathering characteristics comparable with the A 709 weathering steel. Bolts shall be in accordance with ASTM A 325, Type 3. Nuts shall be in accordance with the requirements of ASTM A 563 and shall be Grades C3 or DH3. Washers shall meet the requirements of ASTM F 436, Type 3. All other requirements of Secs 712 and 1080 relating to high strength fastener assemblies and fastener assembly installation shall remain in effect. Fasteners for slab drain brackets may be plain uncoated assemblies in accordance with Sec 1080.2.5 and coated in accordance with Sec 1080.4.5.1.

1080.4.5.1 Coated Connections. Weathering grade fasteners in contact with coated structural steel items or located in areas of the structure to be partially coated shall be initially prepared and coated in the field with a gray epoxy mastic (non-aluminum) after the erection of the structure in accordance with the same procedure specified in Sec 1081. The epoxy-primed fasteners shall be subsequently coated with the System H field coats specified for the structure in areas to be partially coated.

1080.4.5.2 Cleaning. Prior to field bolting connections of high strength fasteners, the faying surfaces shall be cleaned of loose rust by abrasive blast, power hand tools or other approved methods. Tightly adhering rust will not be required to be removed.

1080.4.6 Welding. All welds shall utilize welding processes and electrodes as required that will provide corrosion resistance and weathering characteristics for the welds comparable to the base metal, in accordance with the Section 4 of AWS D1.5: 2002 or as modified in Sec 1080.4.2.3.

1080.4.7 Bearings and Anchor Bolts. Steel bearings, plate steel for elastomeric and PTFE bearings, structural steel for POT bearings, anchor bolts, sole plates, masonry plates and associated items shall be in accordance with ASTM A 709 Grade 50W. Anchor bolt nuts shall be heavy hexagon nuts in accordance with ASTM A 563, Grades C3 or DH3. The exposed surfaces of all bearings for weathering steel structures under expansion joints shall be shop primed and field coated with the complete System H in accordance with Sec 1080.4.4 and 1081.

1080.4.8 Protection of Concrete Masonry. This section is not applicable to this project..

1080.4.9 Storage of Weathering Steel. Weathering steel shall be stored under conditions that will prevent unsightly, uneven weathering and excessive corrosion. If uneven weathering occurs, the contractor shall reclean the steel to the satisfaction of the engineer. If cleaning does not produce satisfactory uniformity in appearance or if in the judgment of the engineer, excessive corrosion or chemical contamination has occurred, the contractor shall replace the material at the contractor's expense. As a minimum, the following conditions shall be avoided and the contractor shall take additional precautions as deemed necessary:

(a) Storage in transit, open cars or trucks for an extended period of time.

(b) Standing water on material in storage or entrapment of moisture.

(c) Contact with chemically treated lumber used for blocking or other types of foreign matter.

(d) Exposure to chlorides or other chemical contamination.

1080.5 High Strength Bolt Installation. Shop installed high strength bolts shall be in accordance with Sec 712.

1080.6 Coating of Structural Steel. Shop coating of structural steel shall meet the requirements of Sec 1081.

****END OF ITEM MoDOT 1080****

SECTION 1091
LIGHTING EQUIPMENT

1091.1 Lighting Poles.

1091.1.1 Pre-Approval. Fabricators shall submit two copies of shop drawings to Traffic. Submittals shall be approved by Traffic in writing prior to fabrication of the lighting poles. Shop drawings shall indicate design details required for pole fabrication, including material grades and thicknesses, welding and orientation of any longitudinal seams. Shop drawings shall provide pole installation and hardware details. Design details for all possible pole combinations shown on the plans may be submitted. Shop drawings stress calculations shall be signed and sealed by a registered professional engineer in the State of Missouri. Upon written approval, pre-approved drawings may be used on any project where the design conditions of the shop drawings are not exceeded.

1091.1.2 Requirements. Lighting poles shall be steel or aluminum in accordance with the contract and shall be of the same material and design throughout the project. Poles shall be of the type shown on the plans. The fabricator may furnish poles with other shapes, gages and dimensions meeting or exceeding those shown on the plans and specifications. The mounting height of the slipfitter above the pavement and the pole design numbers will be specified by numbers following the pole type designation. Clamps shall be provided for connecting bracket arms to poles to obtain the specified mounting height. All poles shall have removable raintight metal pole caps. All handhole covers and pole caps shall be attached to the pole with a chain constructed of the same material as the pole and shall be held in place by screws. The screws shall penetrate through the metal cap or cover and pole securely attaching the cap or cover to the pole. The chain shall be capable of supporting at least six times the weight of the cover or cap and be securely attached to the inside of the pole and of sufficient length to allow removal of the cover or cap for maintenance access. An aluminum or stainless steel identification tag with embossed or engraved letters and numbers shall be provided with all poles as shown on the plans. The tag shall be attached to the pole 6 inches above the top of the handhole or 18 inches above the base plate over the transformer base door. Shims may be used between the pole base or transformer base and the foundation for leveling purposes. Four copies of applicable pre-approved drawings shall be supplied with the poles and shall be provided to the engineer.

1091.1.2.1 Type AT. Each Type AT pole shall be provided with a transformer base in accordance with Sec 901. A grounding conductor shall be attached to the ground lug in each transformer base as shown on the plans.

1091.1.2.2 Type B and MB. Each Type B and MB pole shall have a wiring handhole with a suitable metal cover near the base using a grounding lug inside the pole as shown on the plans. A grounding conductor shall be attached to the ground lug in each pole as shown on the plans.

1091.1.2.3 Steel. Steel lighting poles shall be round or octagonal shaft poles. The shaft section shall be fabricated from basic oxygen or open hearth steel sheet, No. 11 gage, as one continuous shaft or as individual segments no less than 10 feet in length, joined together using electrically welded, intermediate, transverse, full penetration, circumferential joints. Each sheet shall be formed into a tube with one continuous-welded longitudinal seam. After manufacture, the material shall have a minimum yield strength of 48,000 psi, including the weld. Poles shall be manufactured with steel shoe bases or base plates attached to the lower end of the shafts and arranged for bolting to a transformer base or to a foundation. All base plates and shoe bases shall be equipped with four cast steel or cast iron nut covers in accordance with AASHTO M 103 or M 105 or four aluminum nut covers and shall have four galvanized or stainless steel screws for securing covers to the pole. Welding and fabrication of the assemblies shall be in accordance with the ANSI/AWS D1.1 Structural Welding Code-Steel. All poles, shoe bases, base plates and cast steel or cast iron nut covers shall be fully galvanized after fabrication.

1091.1.2.3.1 For shoe base-type poles, each shoe base shall be a one-piece casting in accordance with AASHTO M 103, Grade 65-35 with four anchor bolt holes. Each shoe base shall consist of a collar, flange and gussets, all integrally cast. Ample fillet radii shall be provided at the juncture of these components to reduce the effects of stress concentration. The flange of the base shall be flat and continuous around the outside of the collar. The base shall telescope from the shaft and be secured by two continuous welds. One weld shall be on the inside of the base at the end of the shaft and the other weld shall be on the outside at the top of the base. The shoe base shall be arranged for bolting to a transformer base or to a foundation.

1091.1.2.3.2 For base plate-type poles, the base plate shall be no less than 13 inches square and no less than 1 1/4 inches thick.

1091.1.2.4 Aluminum.

1091.1.2.4.1 Aluminum lighting poles shall be round shaft poles. Each shaft shall be manufactured as a two-piece pole by the spun drawn method from seamless extruded aluminum tubing, ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T6 and shall have a nominal wall thickness for the lower section of 0.250 inch and a nominal wall thickness for the upper section of 0.188 inch. The one-piece shaft for 30-foot mounting height shall have a nominal wall thickness of 0.188 inch, except those with twin-truss type arms shall have a nominal wall thickness of 0.250 inch. Shoe base-type poles shall be manufactured with heavy cast aluminum shoe bases attached to the lower ends of the shafts. Each shoe base shall be a permanent mold casting in accordance with ASTM B 108, Alloy 356.0-T6 and shall be free from cracks, pits and blowholes. The shoe base shall be arranged for bolting to a transformer base or to a foundation. The base shall have four anchor bolt holes, shall be equipped with four cast aluminum bolt covers and shall have four stainless steel fasteners for securing covers to the shoe base. Each shoe base shall consist of a collar, flange and gussets, all integrally cast. Ample fillet radii shall be provided at the juncture of these components to reduce the effects of stress concentration. The flange of the base shall be flat and continuous completely around the outside of the collar. The base shall telescope from the shaft and be secured by two continuous welds. One weld shall be on the inside of the base at the end of the shaft and the other weld shall be on the outside at the top of the base. The base and shaft shall be welded in the T4 temper with filler alloy 4043 and precipitation heat treated, artificially aged, to the T6 temper by an approved method after welding. Welding shall be in accordance with Article 6.9 of AASHTO's Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals.

1091.1.2.4.2 At the fabricator's option, the shafts for aluminum lighting poles may be formed from one piece of aluminum sheet, ASTM B 209, Alloy 5086-H34, having one continuous weld. The one-piece shaft for the 30-foot mounting height shall have a 9-inch diameter at the base and a nominal wall thickness of 0.135 inch. Shafts for 35 to 55-foot mounting heights shall have a 13.4-inch diameter at the base and a nominal wall thickness of 0.135 inch for both sections. Each shoe base shall be a permanent mold casting having an integral cast aluminum riser and shall be in accordance with ASTM B 108, Alloy 356.0-T6 and shall be free from cracks, pits and blow holes. The integral riser shall be designed to slip-fit into the pole shaft a sufficient distance to develop the full strength of the pole. The riser shall be bonded to the shaft with a structural epoxy adhesive that shall develop the strength of the pole. The epoxy shall develop a minimum of 1,200 psi in shear when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1002. The shoe base shall have four anchor bolt holes, shall be equipped with four cast aluminum bolt covers and shall have four stainless steel fasteners for securing the covers to the shoe base. Each shoe base shall consist of a collar, flange and gussets, all integrally cast. The flange of the shoe base shall be flat.

1091.2 Transformer Bases. Transformer bases shall be permanent mold castings in accordance with ASTM B 108, Alloy 356.0-T6 and shall be free from cracks, pits and blow holes. The transformer base shall be designed to accommodate and provide access to electrical equipment. The base shall have internal lugs for mounting on a foundation and shall be designed for bolting to the base plate of the lighting pole using flat and lock washers. A grounding lug shall be provided in each base. The access opening shall have a hinged fiberglass or plastic door with a tamper-resistant fastening device. The outside of the door shall be imprinted or adequately labeled with the warning, "DANGER - HIGH VOLTAGE". No direct payment will be made for transformer bases.

1091.3 Circular Steel Pile Foundations. Circular steel pile foundations, the steel connector plate and steel closure plate shall be of the dimensions shown on the plans. The slotted hole may be saw cut or flame cut. All sharp edges shall be ground smooth. The steel connector plate and steel closure plate shall be welded to the steel pile foundation. The foundation assembly shall be fully galvanized after fabrication. Bolts shall project no less than 1/4 inch nor more than 5/8 inch beyond the nut when properly tensioned. Flat and lock washers shall be used for attachment.

1091.4 Steel H-Pile Foundations. Steel H-pile foundations and steel connector plates shall be of the dimensions shown on the plans. The steel connector plates shall be welded to the H-pile foundation. The foundation assembly shall be fully galvanized after fabrication. Bolts shall project no less than 1/4 inch or more than 5/8 inch beyond the nut when properly tensioned. Flat and lock washers shall be used for attachment.

1091.5 Screw Anchor Foundations. Screw anchor foundations and steel connector plates shall be of the dimensions shown on the plans. The slotted hole may be saw cut or flame cut. All sharp edges shall be ground

smooth. The steel connector plates shall be welded to the screw anchor shaft. The foundation assembly shall be fully galvanized after fabrication. Bolts shall project no less than 1/4 inch nor more than 5/8 inch beyond the nut when properly tensioned. Flat and lock washers shall be used for attachment.

1091.5.1 Fabricators for screw anchor foundations shall submit four copies of shop drawings to Traffic. Shop drawings shall indicate complete design details required for fabrication, including material grades, dimensions, thicknesses and welding. Shop drawings shall provide installation procedures and indicate the maximum torque ratings of the foundations.

1091.5.2 Submittals shall be approved by Traffic in writing prior to fabrication. Upon written approval, pre-approved drawings may be used on any project where the design conditions of the shop drawings are not exceeded.

1091.6 Bracket Arms. Bracket arms shall be similar in design to those shown on the plans, arranged for 2-inch slipfitter luminaire mounting, and shall be attached to the poles as shown on the plans. Bracket arms shall be of the same material as the pole. Bracket arm mounting plates shall match the shape of the pole. A one-inch pipe nipple shall be welded in place in the wire entrance hole on the mounting plate. The welds shall be placed on the side of the plate away from the pole. Flat and lock washers shall be used for attachment.

1091.7 Luminaires.

1091.7.1 Pre-Approval. Manufacturers of LED luminaires shall submit a completed New Product Evaluation Form. Family grouping in accordance with LED Lighting Facts is permitted, provided this is clearly indicated on the submittal form, and clearly communicated via a letter that includes detailed calculations relating the tested product to the submitted product. The luminaire size shall be as specified in the contract. A pipe stop shall be included in the assembly to locate the luminaire properly on the bracket arm. Product cutsheets shall be submitted for luminaire, LED light source, LED driver and surge protection device, if applicable. If dimmable LED driver is specified, provide diagrams illustrating light output and input power as a function of control signal. Instructions for installation and maintenance of LED luminaires shall be provided. Summary of luminaire recycled content and recyclability in accordance with the FTC Green Guides, expressed as a percentage of luminaire weight. IES LM-79 luminaire photometric report shall be produced by a test laboratory that satisfies LED Lighting Facts accreditation requirements. The report shall include, name of test laboratory, report number, date, complete luminaire catalog number, description of luminaire, LED light source, LED driver, and Goniophotometry. IES TM-15 Backlight-Uplight-Glare (BUG) ratings shall be for initial (worst-case) values, i.e., Light Loss Factor (LLF) = 1.0. If luminaires are tilted upward for Energy Star TM-21 calculations, BUG ratings shall correspond to the same angle of tilt.

1091.7.1.1. Lumen maintenance calculations and supporting test data shall be in accordance with LED Lighting Facts guidance, with the exception calculations shall be based on 50,000 cumulative hours of operation and an ambient temperature range of max. 40°C (104°F) to min.-20°C (-4°F). Submit completed ENERGY STAR TM-21 Calculator as an electronic excel file. Provide computer-generated point-by-point photometric analysis of maintained light levels. Calculation/measurement points shall be per IES RP-8. Separated vehicular lanes, bikeways, and walkways shall be evaluated separately. Calculations shall be for maintained values, i.e. Light Loss Factor (LLF) < 1.0, where LLF = LLD x LDD x LATF. Lamp Lumen Depreciation (LLD) shall be 0.90 or the value calculated in the Energy Star TM-21 calculations, whichever is lower. Luminaire Dirt Depreciation (LDD) shall = 0.90 and Luminaire Ambient Temperature Factor (LATF) shall = 0.96. Mesopic multipliers (i.e., effective luminance factors) shall not be used. All values shall assume photopic visual adaptation. Submit IES LM-63 format electronic file containing luminous intensity data associated with submitted LM-79 report(s) and used for point-by-point calculations. Summary of Joint Electron Devices Engineering Council (JEDEC) or Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries (JEITA) reliability testing performed for LED packages. Summary of reliability testing performed for LED driver(s). Safety certification and file number indicating compliance with UL 1598. Applicable testing bodies are determined by the US Occupational Safety Health Administration (OSHA) as Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratories (NRTL) and include: CSA (Canadian Standards Association), ETL (Edison Testing Laboratory), and UL (Underwriters Laboratory). Documentation supporting any U.S. origin claims for the product, in accordance with FTC guidance.

1091.7.1.2. Before approval and purchase, vendor shall supply luminaire sample(s) identical to product configuration(s) submitted for inspection. Commission may request IES LM-79 testing of luminaire sample(s) to verify performance is within manufacturer-reported tolerances. Electrically test fully assembled luminaires before shipment from factory. After installation, Commission may perform IES LM-50 field measurements to

verify performance requirements, giving consideration to manufacturing tolerances and measurement uncertainties as outlined in IES LM-61 and NEMA LSD 63.

1091.7.1.3. Written product warranty shall be of the minimum duration of ten years, and shall cover maintained integrity and functionality of luminaire housing, wiring, connections, LED light source(s) and LED driver(s). Negligible light output from more than 10 percent of the LED packages constitutes luminaire failure. Warranty period shall begin 90 days after date of invoice, or as negotiated by Commission such as in the case of an auditable asset management system. Manufacturer or local sales representative shall provide installation and troubleshooting support via telephone and/or email.

1091.7.2 Requirements.

1091.7.2.1. Roadway. Luminaire shall be designed for ease of component replacement and end-of-life disassembly. Type III medium distribution, semi-cutoff light distribution shall be set in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations unless otherwise directed by the engineer, or shown on the plans. Transmissive optical components shall be applied in accordance with OEM design guidelines to ensure suitability for the environment (e.g., electromagnetic, thermal, mechanical, chemical). LED light source(s) and driver(s) shall be RoHS compliant. Nominal luminaire input wattage shall account for nominal applied voltage and any reduction in driver efficiency due to sub-optimal driver loading. Luminaire shall accept the voltage or voltage range specified at 50/60 Hz, and shall operate normally for input voltage fluctuations of plus or minus 10 percent. All internal components shall be assembled and pre-wired using modular electrical connections. The following shall be in accordance with corresponding sections of ANSI C136.37, wiring and grounding, terminal blocks for incoming AC lines (electrical mains wires), photocontrol receptacle, latching and hinging, mounting provisions, and ingress protection.

1091.7.2.1.1.Underpass. Luminaires for underpass lighting shall be high-pressure sodium The luminaires shall consist of a pre-wired unit for wall mounting, with raintight cast aluminum housing, cast aluminum door with integral cast guard, heat-resistant glass prismatic refractor, asymmetric aluminum reflector and socket for horizontal lamp position, complete with 150-watt lamp and 240-volt or 480-volt ballast as required. Type IV short distribution, non- cutoff light distribution shall be set in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, unless otherwise directed by the engineer or shown on the plans. The door shall have a stainless steel hinge along the bottom, stainless steel latches at the top and non-ferrous metal or stainless steel safety chains. Provisions shall be made for attaching the unit directly to a wall or to an outlet box stud with non-ferrous metal or stainless steel hardware. Ballasts for underpass luminaires shall be in accordance with Sec 901. The ballast power cables shall be individually fused with in-line fuse holders between the line and load, in the junction box or the luminaire housing if no junction box is shown on the plans. The fuse rating shall be three amps unless otherwise shown on the plans.

1091.7.2.2. Painted or finished luminaire surfaces exposed to the environment shall exceed a rating of six per ASTM D1654 after 1000 hours of testing per ASTM B117. Each luminaire shall have aluminum housing with two 2-inch slipfitters or one 4-bolt slipfitter or one 2-inch slipfitter with a longitudinal leveling system. The housing shall have a natural aluminum or gray baked enamel finish. The coating shall exhibit no greater than 30% reduction of gloss per ASTM D523, after 500 hours of QUV testing at ASTM G154 Cycle 6. All metal parts, such as springs on the latches and hinges, U-bolts and screws shall be made from non-ferrous metal or stainless steel. All parts of the luminaire shall be fabricated from corrosion resistant material.

1091.7.2.3. Luminaire shall start and operate in ambient temperature range specified. Maximum rated case temperature of driver and other internal components shall not be exceeded when luminaire is operated in ambient temperature range specified. Wiring inside the luminaire housing shall be protected by suitable heat resistant insulating material. Mechanical design of protruding external surfaces (heat sink fins) shall facilitate hose-down cleaning and discourage debris accumulation. Liquids or other moving parts shall be clearly indicated in submittals, shall be consistent with product testing, and shall be subject to review by Commission. Luminaire designation indicated “ANSI C136.41, 7-pin” on New Product Evaluation Form shall be fully prewired and shall incorporate an ANSI C136.41 compliant receptacle. If a dimmable LED driver is specified, the 0-10V or DALI control wires shall be connected to the receptacle pads as specified in ANSI C136.41; connection of the two remaining pads shall be by Manufacturer, as directed by Commission.

1091.7.2.4. Luminaire shall be listed for wet locations by a U.S. Occupational Safety Health Administration (OSHA) Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL), shall have locality-appropriate governing mark and certification, and shall meet the performance requirements specified in ANSI C136.2 for dielectric withstand,

using the DC test level and configuration. Luminaire shall meet the performance requirements specified in ANSI C136.2 for electrical immunity, using the combination Enhanced Wave Test Level (10kV/5kA) for whether failure of the electrical immunity system can possibly result in disconnect of power to luminaire. Luminaire shall comply with FCC 47 CFR part 15 interference criteria for Class A (non-residential) digital devices, and shall comply with section 5.2.5 (luminaires rated for outdoor use) of ANSI C82.77 at full input power and across specified voltage range.

1091.7.2.5. Color Rendering Index (CRI) shall be no less than 50. Nominal Correlated Color Temperature (CCT) shall be 3000k with allowable IES LM-79 Chromaticity Values of 2870 to 3220 measured CCT (k) and -0.006 to 0.006 Measured Duv. Luminaire shall have an external label per ANSI C136.15 and shall have an internal label per ANSI C136.22.

1091.7.3 Navigation. All lanterns shall be weatherproof and operate on a 120-volt system. Lanterns shall be of the fresnel lens-type and shall be fabricated from a corrosion-resistant material. Each lantern shall provide an LED or a standard service lamp with at least four standby lamps controlled by a lampchanger mechanism capable of illuminating the standby lamp after each lamp burnout. Mounting brackets and all accessories shall be provided with each lantern. A swing arm and retrieval chain shall be provided for main channel lanterns to hold the fixture in proper operating position. The swing arm and retrieval chain shall be capable of being locked in both the upright and inverted positions. Mounting brackets shall be fully galvanized or stainless steel, and all hardware shall be stainless steel.

1091.8 Control Stations. Control stations shall consist of all equipment and material necessary for the distribution of secondary electrical power as shown on the plans. Control stations will be specified by the secondary voltage.

1091.8.1 Cabinets. Control cabinets shall be of sufficient size to house all equipment as shown on the plans. All equipment such as circuit breakers, switches, contactors, fuses, photoelectric controls and terminal blocks shall be installed on the panel as shown on the plans. Control cabinets shall have a control panel constructed of the same material as the cabinet. Cabinets shall be NEMA 4, dust-tight, watertight and constructed of 0.125-inch minimum reinforced sheet aluminum alloy and be of clean-cut design and appearance. All hinges, catches and other hardware shall be non-ferrous metal or stainless steel. Cabinets shall have a No. 2 Corbin cabinet lock and provisions for locking with a padlock. Two keys for cabinet locks shall be furnished by the contractor. Mounting shall be as shown on the plans.

1091.8.2 Lightning Arrestors. Lightning arrestors shall be of the rated voltage as shown on the plans.

1091.8.3 Photoelectric Controls. Photoelectric controls shall be of the cadmium-sulfide or solid-state type operating on 120 volts or 240 volts, as shown on the plans and shall operate on a line supply of 50 to 60 hertz. The load capacity of the photoelectric cell relays shall be a minimum of 1,000 watts. Photoelectric cells shall operate a lighting system through mercury load relays or contactors as shown on the plans. The photoelectric cell circuitry shall be designed to be normally closed at night. The photoelectric cell shall be configured such that in the event of failure, the lights shall be on. The turn-on range shall be adjustable from 1.0 to 3.0 footcandle. A turn-on setting of 1.0 footcandle and a turn-off setting of 2.0 footcandles shall be made at the factory. The photoelectric cell shall have a time delay to avoid operation due to lightning and transient light. A suitable bracket for mounting the photoelectric cell shall be provided. The photoelectric cell shall be mounted into a three-prong twist lock socket. All top mount photoelectric controls shall face an open sky and side mount photoelectric controls shall face north. Each photoelectric control unit shall include a lightning arrestor. Test switches used with photoelectric controls shall be three-position switches or two single-pole breakers as shown on the plans. Test switches shall be clearly labeled and mounted in the control cabinet.

1091.8.4 Contactors. Contactors shall be NEMA Type 1 enclosed, magnetic-type, two-pole, single phase for 600 volts, 60-hertz service. The operating coil shall be designed for 120-volt or 240-volt operation as shown on the plans. The contactor shall be electrically held, have the minimum rating and shall be housed in the control cabinet as shown on the plans. Mercury load relays shall be two-pole, normally-open, mercury contact, magnetic-type with load capacity as shown on the plans.

1091.8.5 Circuit Breakers. All circuit breakers shall be molded-case thermal-magnetic circuit breakers. The number and trip rating of circuit breakers shall be as shown on the plans. All breakers shall be designed for panel mounting with cable connections on the line and load sides.

1091.8.5.1 Type A Circuit Breakers. Type A circuit breakers shall have a minimum of 18,000 amps alternating current interrupting rating at 240 volts alternating current and 14,000 amps alternating current interrupting rating at 480 volts alternating current. Breakers shall be full-size and designed to accept wire sizes up to 2/0 AWG. Terminals shall be provided for the wire sizes as shown on the plans.

1091.8.5.2 Type B Circuit Breakers. Type B circuit breakers shall have a minimum of 10,000 amps alternating current interrupting rating at 240 volts alternating current. Type B circuit breakers shall have a nominal size no greater than one inch wide by 4 inches high by
3 inches deep. Terminals shall be configured for the wire sizes as shown on the plans. If the breaker terminals are not designed for the required wire sizes, suitable terminal adapters, connectors or terminal blocks shall be used to convert the wire sizes.

1091.9 Power Supply Assembly.

1091.9.1 Disconnect cabinets shall be NEMA 4, dust-tight and watertight. The operating handle shall have full cover interlock to prevent the door from opening when the breaker is on. The enclosure shall have provisions for padlocking the enclosure and for padlocking the switch in the on or off position.

1091.9.2 Meter boxes shall be NEMA 3R or NEMA 4.

1091.10 Cable Splicing.

1091.10.1 Splice blocks shall be designed for the wire size used, shall have one port per wire and the wires secured with set screws. The set screw holes shall be protected with removable plugs.

1091.10.2 Resin splice kits shall consist of a protective plastic case designed for the type of connector used, filled with a resin insulating compound mixed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

ITEM F-162 CHAIN-LINK FENCE

DESCRIPTION

162-1.1 This item shall consist of furnishing and erecting a chain-link fence in accordance with these specifications, the details shown on the plans, and in conformity with the lines and grades shown on the plans or established by the RPR.

MATERIALS

162-2.1 FABRIC. The fabric shall be woven with a 9-gaugegalvanized steel wire in a 2-inch (50 mm) mesh and shall meet the requirements ASTM A-392, Class 2.

162-2.2 BARBED WIRE. Barbed wire shall be 2-strand 12-1/2 gauge zinc-coated wire with 4-point barbs and shall conform to the requirements of **ASTM A-121, Class 3, Chain Link Fence Grade.**

162-2.3 POSTS, RAILS, AND BRACES. Line posts, rails, and braces shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F1043 or ASTM F1083 as follows:

- Galvanized tubular steel pipe shall conform to the requirements of Group IA, (Schedule 40) coatings conforming to Type A, or Group IC (High Strength Pipe), External coating Type B, and internal coating Type B or D.
- Roll Formed Steel Shapes (C-Sections) shall conform to the requirements of Group IIA, and be galvanized in accordance with the requirements of ASTM F1043, Type A.
- Hot-Rolled Shapes (H Beams) shall meet the requirements of Group III, and be galvanized in accordance with the requirements of ASTM F1043, Type A.
- Aluminum Pipe shall conform to the requirements of Group IB.
- Aluminum Shapes shall conform to the requirements of Group IIB.
- Vinyl or polyester coated steel shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F1043, Paragraph 7.3, Optional Supplemental Color Coating.
- Composite posts shall conform to the strength requirements of ASTM F1043 or ASTM F1083. The strength loss of composite posts shall not exceed 10% when subjected to 3,600 hours of exposure to light and water in accordance with ASTM G152, ASTM G153, ASTM G154, and ASTM G155.
- Posts, rails, and braces furnished for use in conjunction with aluminum alloy fabric shall be aluminum alloy or composite.

Posts, rails, and braces, with the exception of galvanized steel conforming to ASTM F1043 or ASTM F1083, Group 1A, Type A, or aluminum alloy, shall demonstrate the ability to withstand testing in salt spray in accordance with ASTM B117 as follows:

- External: 1,000 hours with a maximum of 5% red rust.

- Internal: 650 hours with a maximum of 5% red rust.

The dimensions of the posts, rails, and braces shall be in accordance with Tables I through VI of Federal Specification RR-F-191/3.

162-2.4 GATES. This section is not applicable.

162-2.5 WIRE TIES AND TENSION WIRES. Wire ties for use in conjunction with a given type of fabric shall be of the same material and coating weight identified with the fabric type. Tension wire shall be 7-gauge marcelled steel wire with the same coating as the fabric type and shall conform to ASTM A824.

All material shall conform to Federal Specification RR-F-191/4.

162-2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FITTINGS AND HARDWARE. Miscellaneous steel fittings and hardware for use with zinc-coated steel fabric shall be of commercial grade steel or better quality, wrought or cast as appropriate to the article, and sufficient in strength to provide a balanced design when used in conjunction with fabric posts, and wires of the quality specified herein. All steel fittings and hardware shall be protected with a zinc coating applied in conformance with ASTM A153. Barbed wire support arms shall withstand a load of 250 pounds (113 kg) applied vertically to the outermost end of the arm.

162-2.7 CONCRETE. Concrete shall have a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (2670 kPa).

162-2.8 MARKING. Each roll of fabric shall carry a tag showing the kind of base metal (steel, aluminum, or aluminum alloy number), kind of coating, the gauge of the wire, the length of fencing in the roll, and the name of the manufacturer. Posts, wire, and other fittings shall be identified as to manufacturer, kind of base metal (steel, aluminum, or aluminum alloy number), and kind of coating.

CONSTRUCTION METHODS

162-3.1 GENERAL. The fence shall be constructed in accordance with the details on the plans and as specified here using new materials. All work shall be performed in a workmanlike manner satisfactory to the RPR. The RPR shall establish and mark the property line or fence line for the work. The Contractor shall span the opening below the fence with barbed wire at all locations where it is not practical to conform the fence to the general contour of the ground surface because of natural or manmade features such as drainage ditches. The new fence shall be permanently tied to the terminals of existing fences as shown on the plans. The Contractor shall stake down the woven wire fence at several points between posts as shown on the plans.

The Contractor shall arrange the work so that construction of the new fence will immediately follow the removal of existing fences. The length of unfenced section at any time shall not exceed 300 feet

(90 m). The work shall progress in this manner and at the close of the working day the newly constructed fence shall be tied to the existing fence.

162-3.2 CLEARING FENCE LINE. All trees, brush, stumps, logs, and other debris which would interfere with the proper construction of the fence in the required location shall be removed a minimum width of 5 feet (1.5m) on each side of the fence centerline before starting fencing operations The cost of removing and disposing of the material shall not constitute a pay item and shall be considered incidental to fence construction.

162-3.3 INSTALLING POSTS. All posts shall be set in concrete at the required dimension and depth and at the spacing shown on the plans.

The concrete shall be thoroughly compacted around the posts by tamping or vibrating and shall have a smooth finish slightly higher than the ground and sloped to drain away from the posts. All posts shall be set plumb and to the required grade and alignment. No materials shall be installed on the posts, nor shall the posts be disturbed in any manner within seven (7) days after the individual post footing is completed.

Should rock be encountered at a depth less than the planned footing depth, a hole 2 inches (50 mm) larger than the greatest dimension of the posts shall be drilled to a depth of 12 inches (300 mm). After the posts are set, the remainder of the drilled hole shall be filled with grout, composed of one part Portland cement and two parts mortar sand. Any remaining space above the rock shall be filled with concrete in the manner described above.

In lieu of drilling, the rock may be excavated to the required footing depth. No extra compensation shall be made for rock excavation.

162-3.4 INSTALLING TOP RAILS. The top rail shall be continuous and shall pass through the post tops. The coupling used to join the top rail lengths shall allow for expansion.

162-3.5 INSTALLING BRACES. Horizontal brace rails, with diagonal truss rods and turnbuckles, shall be installed at all terminal posts.

162-3.6 INSTALLING FABRIC. The wire fabric shall be firmly attached to the posts and braced as shown on the plans. All wire shall be stretched taut and shall be installed to the required elevations. The fence shall generally follow the contour of the ground, with the bottom of the fence fabric no less than one inch (25 mm) or more than 4 inches (100 mm) from the ground surface. Grading shall be performed where necessary to provide a neat appearance.

At locations of small natural swales or drainage ditches and where it is not practical to have the fence conform to the general contour of the ground surface, longer posts may be used and multiple strands of barbed wire stretched to span the opening below the fence. The vertical clearance between strands of barbed wire shall be 6 inches (150 mm) or less.

162-3.7 ELECTRICAL GROUNDS. Electrical grounds shall be constructed where a power line passes over the fence at 500 feet (150 m) intervals. The ground shall be installed directly below the point of crossing. The ground shall be accomplished with a copper clad rod 8 feet (2.4 m) long and a

minimum of 5/8 inches (16 mm) in diameter driven vertically until the top is 6 inches (150 mm) below the ground surface. A No. 6 solid copper conductor shall be clamped to the rod and to the fence in such a manner that each element of the fence is grounded. Installation of ground rods shall not constitute a pay item and shall be considered incidental to fence construction. The Contractor shall comply with FAA-STD-019, Lightning and Surge Protection, Grounding, Bonding and Shielding Requirements for Facilities and Electronic Equipment, paragraph 4.2.3.8, Lightning Protection for Fences and Gates, when fencing is adjacent to FAA facilities.

162-3.8 CLEANING UP. The Contractor shall remove from the vicinity of the completed work all tools, buildings, equipment, etc., used during construction. All disturbed areas shall be seeded per T-901.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

162-4.1 Chain-link fence will be measured for payment by the linear foot (meter). Measurement will be along the top of the fence from center to center of end posts, excluding the length occupied by gate openings.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

162-5.1 Payment for chain-link fence with or without 3 Strand Barbed Wire will be made at the contract unit price per linear foot (meter) of fence.

The price shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, and for all preparation, erection, and installation of these materials, and for all labor equipment, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the item.

Payment will be made under:

Item F-162a	Chain-Link Fence - per linear foot (meter)
Item F-162b	Vehicle Gates - per each
Item F-162c	Pedestrian Gates - per each

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM A121	Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Carbon Steel Barbed Wire
ASTM A153	Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A392	Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
ASTM A491	Standard Specification for Aluminum-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric

ASTM A824	Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Steel Marcelled Tension Wire for Use with Chain Link Fence
ASTM B117	Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM F668	Standard Specification for Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC), Polyolefin and other Organic Polymer Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
ASTM F1043	Standard Specification for Strength and Protective Coatings on Steel Industrial Fence Framework
ASTM F1083	Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Hot-Dipped Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Welded, for Fence Structures
ASTM F1183	Standard Specification for Aluminum Alloy Chain Link Fence Fabric
ASTM F1345	Standard Specification for Zinc 5% Aluminum-Mischmetal Alloy Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
ASTM G152	Standard Practice for Operating Open Flame Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials
ASTM G153	Standard Practice for Operating Enclosed Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials
ASTM G154	Standard Practice for Operating Fluorescent Ultraviolet (UV) Lamp Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials
ASTM G155	Standard Practice for Operating Xenon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

Federal Specifications (FED SPEC)

FED SPEC RR-F-191/3	Fencing, Wire and Post, Metal (Chain-Link Fence Posts, Top Rails and Braces)
FED SPEC RR-F-191/4	Fencing, Wire and Post, Metal (Chain-Link Fence Accessories)

FAA Standard

FAA-STD-019	Lightning and Surge Protection, Grounding, Bonding and Shielding Requirements for Facilities and Electronic Equipment

FAA Orders

5300.38	AIP Handbook

END OF ITEM F-162

APPENDIX A

FAA ADVISORY CIRCULAR 150/5370-2
OPERATIONAL SAFETY ON AIRPORTS DURING CONSTRUCTION

APPENDIX B

CONSTRUCTION SAFETY AND PHASING PLAN

CONSTRUCTION SAFETY AND PHASING PLAN

Schedule 1 (base bid) - all Civil, site work , and utilities.
Schedule 2 - All foundation work including the slab and all cast in place concrete
Schedule 3 - All Precast concrete including all Tower Walls, floor slabs, stairs, catwalk, 1st floor bathroom hardened room.Will also include windows of tower and exit door of the tower to complete the building shell
Schedule 4 - The entire base building: all structural and architectural elements
Schedule 5 - The Control Cab and Roof including lightning protection and antennas
Schedule 6 - All remaining interior work for the Tower including interior walls, finishes, flooring, insulation, doors, drop ceilings, furniture, and casework.
Schedule 7 - All MEP including equipment , Telecomm, Fire
Schedule 8 - Demolition of the existing ATCT (the owner will remove any equipment we wish to salvage within 30 days of opening of the new tower)

Jefferson City MEMORIAL AIRPORT

Sponsored By:
City of Jefferson
Federal Aviation Administration
MoDOT Aviation

JVIATION®
A WOOLPERT COMPANY
12200 NW Ambassador Drive | Suite 610 | Kansas City, MO | 64163
Main 816.243.1322
JVIATION.COM

Issued for Bid
April 21, 2024

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. COORDINATION

During construction, airport operational safety is of paramount importance. Coordination of project information to all individuals involved with the project is essential for ensuring safe operations are maintained at all times. In order to minimize potential for incidents during construction, it is imperative that all individuals involved with the project and/or airport users be kept informed of any and all changes to operations. Discussions of operational safety will need to take place throughout the entire life of the project, including design, bidding, pre-construction, and construction. Meetings between the Resident Engineer, Jefferson City Memorial Airport (JEF), Contractor, sub-contractors, airport tenants and airport users will be required to discuss specific project related impacts to operations. The Airport staff is ultimately responsible for the safety at the airport. Notice to users of operational changes due to construction will be issued via NOTAMs by the airport. Emergency access for (Police, Fire, and EMT) based emergency service shall be maintained at all times. Routing for such traffic shall be determined and made known to all supervisor personnel involved in the construction project. Coordination of this access will be proposed by the Contractor and approved by the Resident Engineer and the Airport Director.

A pre-construction meeting will be held after the project has been awarded and prior to the Contractor beginning work or staging major construction material and equipment on-site. The Airport, the Contractor's on-site supervisory staff, and representatives from the Engineer shall be present. Safety and this document will be a significant topic on the agenda. Operational safety during construction will be a main topic of discussion at the pre-construction meeting.

A. CONTRACTOR PROGRESS MEETINGS

The Contractor is required to have weekly construction progress meetings to discuss all relevant construction topics including safety reminders, scheduling, and general construction issues. Attendance of the Contractor, Resident Engineer, Airport, and any other pertinent personnel are required at these meetings. Operational safety will be a standing agenda item for discussion during these progress meetings. A review of the Contractor's adherence to the project's Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP) and Safety Plan Compliance Document (SPCD) will be made at each meeting. Immediate correction of any deficiencies or violations will be required. The location and time of the weekly meetings will be determined during the pre-construction meeting. Where operational safety is concerned, the Contractor shall update the Resident Engineer overseeing construction on daily basis or more frequently if needed, of any changes or Contractor concerns.

B. SCOPE OR SCHEDULE CHANGES

In the event of a scope or schedule change, the Contractor shall notify the Resident Engineer and the Airport Director immediately. All parties involved will need to evaluate the impact(s) of the change and will determine what measures will need to be taken to maintain a safe construction site. Change in the scope or duration of the project may necessitate revisions to the Construction Safety and Phase Plan (CSPP).

C. FAA ATO COORDINATION – *NOT APPLICABLE*

The FAA ATO will need to be notified immediately of any changes that affect aircraft movement within the airport which include airway facility shutdowns and restarts. The Airport will be responsible for coordinating any changes including NOTAMs to the FAA ATO. It is not anticipated that any shutdown to FAA facilities will be required for this project.

2. PHASING PLAN

The single-phase plan proposed was developed to impose the least amount of impact on construction operations, and without sacrificing safety. The phasing for this project is presented below and is visually depicted in the Drawings Sheets attached at the back of this document.

This project will be completed in one phase. The phase is discussed in further detail in the Construction Safety Drawing plan sheets included at the end of this document. ***Within this one phase there will be two schedules. Schedule 1 is the Air Traffic Control Tower (ATCT). Schedule 2 is construction of the access road and all necessary site and utility work.***

A. PHASE ELEMENTS

I. Phase 1 – All Schedules

During this one and only phase, the Contractor will be constructing a new Air Traffic Control Tower and Access Road accompanied with necessary site and utility work. Prior to beginning work on this phase, the Contractor shall have safety devices in place in accordance with the plans and clearly identified all areas to access necessary construction areas.

B. UTILITY & SITE WORK PHASING REFERENCE DRAWING

Reference Drawings are attached to the back of this document to show the phasing requirements for this project. Along with the phasing information the drawing shows contractor operation limits to help assist with airport operations and maintaining safety during this project. The Safety Plan are additional plan sheets containing safety requirements during construction and are also included in the back of this report.

C. ROAD & PARKING ACCESS PLAN

New construction of the ATCT access road will be connected to Mokane Road. Parking for the Contractor shall be limited to the contractor staging area designated for each schedule. For all Schedules road access will be along Mokane Road.

.

3. AREAS AND OPERATIONS AFFECTED BY THE CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITY

All work within the Airport Operations Area shall be accomplished in conformance to Advisory Circular 150/5370-2G, Operational Safety on Airports During Construction. The contract drawings include information regarding requirements for operational safety on the airport during construction.

The Contractor shall prepare a detailed Safety Plan Compliance Document (SPDC) as stated in the Advisory Circular 150-5370-2G. The Contractor's SPDC shall identify specific methods, sequencing,

phasing that they intend to use in order to accomplish the project work. The SPCD shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Engineer for approval prior to the pre-construction conference for the project. The Engineer will review the SPCD with the Sponsor/Owner and supply any changes or revisions to the Contractor for incorporation into the plan. The final SPCD shall be the result of a coordinated effort between the Owner/Sponsor, the Engineer, and the Contractor.

The Contractor shall adhere to the approved SPCD as agreed upon by Airport Staff, Engineer, and Contractor. Modifications or deviations from the approved safety plan shall be submitted to the Engineer for review and approval prior to implementation.

A. IDENTIFICATION OF AFFECTED AREAS

No airfield pavement is impacted by this project.

B. MITIGATION OF EFFECTS

No airfield pavement is impacted by this project.

4. PROTECTION OF NAVIGATION AIDS (NAVAID'S) – *NOT APPLICABLE*

NAVAIDS are not impacted by this project.

5. CONTRACTOR ACCESS

Access to the project site shall be from Mokane Road. Construction traffic will not be allowed to enter AOA. Passengers in any authorized vehicles shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. Penalties associated with deviations from these security provisions are identified in Section 12 of this document.

A. LOCATION OF STOCKPILED CONSTRUCTION MATERIALS

The Contractor's Staging Area is shown on the Construction Safety Plan & Drawing and is located near the limits of work. All material storage and staging will occur in this area. All construction materials must be secured to ensure they cannot get blown away by the wind.

B. VEHICLE AND PEDESTRIAN OPERATIONS

I. Construction Site Parking

Construction site parking will be inside the Staging Area as shown on the Construction Safety Plan & Drawing.

II. Construction Equipment Parking

Construction equipment parking will be allowed at the Contractor's Staging Area in the same location as shown on the Construction Safety Plan & Drawing or at a location approved by the Resident Engineer. No equipment or material shall be parked or stored in any runway or taxiway safety area or object free area.

III. Access and Haul Roads

The Contractor shall obtain approval from the Engineer prior to establishing haul roads within the airport property. Once established, the haul roads shall be utilized for all equipment traffic, and the equipment shall not be allowed to stray or wander away from the established routes. The haul roads shall be the responsibility of the Contractor and shall be maintained and kept in good order at all times. When required, water shall be applied at the locations and in the amounts necessary to minimize dust and dirt in the air operations area. Since construction operations will be near active airport operation areas, the airport will require additional dust control measures be used on haul roads and the work area in order not to interfere with airport operations. The Contractor shall be prepared at all times to repair any damage caused by the movement of equipment on any of the haul roads at the direction of the Engineer, whether in designated or undesignated areas. After completion of the project, the Contractor shall be required to regrade any unpaved portions of the haul road and to reseed the area with local native grasses to match the existing conditions of the area. The performance of any work as specified by this provision, including watering, maintenance, and repair of the haul roads, shall not be measured and paid for directly, but shall be considered as necessary and incidental to the work.

Establishment of haul roads off of Airport property shall be the sole responsibility of the Contractor.

Contractor movement shall be restricted to the pre-determined access routes as shown on the attached Construction Safety Drawings and within the work area. Work areas shall be delineated with barricades as shown on the phasing drawings. The Contractor shall not operate outside of these areas without approval of the Engineer or the Airport Director.

IV. Marking and Lighting of Vehicles

If a vehicle must enter the AOA, vehicles in the movement area must clearly identify themselves for control purposes. The identification symbols should be a minimum 8-inch block-type characters of a contrasting color and easy to read. They may be applied either by using tape or a water-soluble paint to facilitate removal. Magnetic signs are also acceptable.

During daylight operations, all authorized vehicles and construction equipment must display rotating beacons or a three-foot-by-three-foot flag with international orange and white 12-inch squares displayed in full view above the vehicles. Any vehicle operation on the movement areas during hours of darkness or reduced visibility must be equipped with a working rotating beacon.

V. Description of Proper Vehicle Operations

Proper vehicle operations are described as confirming to all rules and regulation for driving as directed by the Jefferson City Memorial Airport.

VI. Required Escorts

No construction vehicles or equipment will be allowed inside the AOA.

VII. Training Requirements of Vehicle Drivers

Jefferson City Memorial Airport vehicle rules and regulations will apply to all personnel that plan on operating a vehicle in the active AOA. Airport rules and regulations will be explained during the preconstruction meeting.

VIII. Situational Awareness

Vehicle drivers must confirm by personal observation that no aircraft is approaching their position (either in the air or on the ground) if given clearance to cross a runway, taxiway, or any other area open to airport operations. In addition, it is the responsibility of the escort vehicle driver to verify movement/position of all escorted vehicles at any given time.

IX. Two-way Radio Communication Procedures

If contractor is on the AOA, the Contractor's superintendent and, if required, flagmen/haul route monitors shall be required to monitor transceiver radios tuned to the Jefferson City Memorial Airport Common Traffic Advisory Frequency (CTAF) 125.6 MHz at all times. The Contractor shall supply radios. Such radios shall be used to obtain proper clearance, in regard to the movement of equipment, trucks, etc., within the movement area. The Contractor's personnel shall demonstrate proper procedures for communications, pertinent to airport operations. Further, any unusual occurrences in the flight pattern of approaching or departing aircraft shall be acknowledged by all concerned so that operation of the airport and the construction work can be safely carried on at all times.

X. Construction Site Safety

All personnel working on the construction site, including gate guards, are recommended to have personal protective equipment on at all times. This includes but is not limited to vests, hard hats, hearing protection, eye protection, and radios.

6. WILDLIFE MANAGEMENT

All wildlife management within the Airport Operations Area shall be accomplished in conformance to Advisory Circular 150/5200-33, *Hazardous Wildlife Attractants On or Near Airports*, and CertAlert 98-05, *Grasses Attractive to Hazardous Wildlife*. In general, the Contractor must carefully control and continuously remove waste or loose material that might attract wildlife.

A. TRASH

The Contractor is responsible to complete a daily inspection or more frequently, if deemed necessary by the Resident Engineer, of the construction site (including the Contractor's Staging Area) for any trash or objects that might attract wildlife. The contractor shall implement a plan to avoid debris creating Foreign Object Debris (FOD) on the airfield keeping wind and weather events in mind.

B. STANDING WATER

Because standing water can attract wildlife, the Contractor is responsible to complete a daily inspection of the construction site for any standing water. With the discretion of the Resident Engineer, the Contractor shall remove this hazard.

C. TALL GRASS AND SEEDS

The Contractor will install soil, seeding and hydro-mulch as specified in the *T-901 Seeding* specification for this project or as directed by the Engineer.

D. POORLY MAINTAINED FENCING AND GATES

The Contractor shall be required to maintain all fences and gates throughout the duration of the project, to the satisfaction of the Resident Engineer. Removed salvaged fence and gates and return material(s) to owner.

E. DISRUPTION OF EXISTING WILDLIFE HABITAT

The Contractor shall notify the Resident Engineer when a wildlife sighting has occurred on the project site to mitigate any disruption to the existing wildlife habitat.

7. FOREIGN OBJECT DEBRIS (FOD) MANAGEMENT

The presence of FOD in the AOA is a significant safety concern, as debris can be ingested into an aircraft's engine causing extensive damage or can be launched across the apron by jet blast, potentially causing bodily injury or damaging other aircraft. Materials capable of creating FOD must be continuously removed during the construction project. The Contractor is required to keep all adjacent AOA free from FOD at all times. The Contractor is required to maintain FOD control continually and to the satisfaction of the Resident Engineer. FOD Control measures shall include the use of power brooms, FOD boss, and manual removal as well as any other means deemed necessary. Prior to opening any pavement to aircraft, the Contractor shall conduct a sweep of the pavement to verify that it is FOD free.

8. HAZARDOUS MATERIAL (HAZMAT) MANAGEMENT

Although hazardous material is not anticipated to be present on this project, if hazardous material is encountered, the Contractor shall inform the Resident Engineer and the Airport Director immediately.

9. NOTIFICATION OF CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITIES

Prior to commencing any construction activities as well as prior to beginning a new construction phase the Contractor shall notify the Resident Engineer and Airport Operations 72 hours in advance. During construction activities the Contractor shall immediately notify the Resident Engineer and Airport Operations of any conditions that may adversely affect the operational safety of the Airport. There are no planned interruptions to water lines associated with this project.

A. LIST OF RESPONSIBLE REPRESENTATIVES/POINTS OF CONTACT

Agency Name	Type of Agency/Contact Name	Telephone No.
Jefferson City Memorial Airport	Airport Manager, Eric Bowers	(573) 634-6469
Jefferson City Police Department	Police Department	(573) 634-6400 or 911
Jefferson City Fire Department	Fire Department	(573) 634-6401 or 911
Capital Region Medical Center	Hospital/Emergency Room	(573) 632-5000
Jefferson City Public Works	Public Works Department	(513) 634-6410
Airport Administrative/Badging	Airport Administration	(573) 634-6469
Jviation	Project Manager, Derek Johnson	(720) 279-3770

B. NOTICES TO AIRMEN (NOTAM)

Only the Airport Operations may initiate or cancel NOTAMs on airport conditions and is the only entity that can close or open a runway or taxiway. The Airport Director must coordinate the issuance, maintenance, and cancellation of NOTAMs about airport conditions resulting from construction activities and must provide information on closed or hazardous conditions on airport movement areas to the FAA Flight Service Station (FSS) so it can issue a NOTAM. The Contractor must notify the Resident Engineer and the Airport Director when scheduling/scoping for the project has changed that would require a modification to the NOTAMs.

C. EMERGENCY NOTIFICATION PROCEDURES

In an event of an emergency, the Contractor shall notify the Resident Engineer and Airport staff. If necessary, the Contractor shall contact 911 and Airport Emergency.

D. COORDINATION WITH EMERGENCY PERSONNEL

In an event that the Contractor must coordinate construction activities with emergency personnel, the Contractor will notify the Airport Director or Resident Engineer. The Airport Director or Resident Engineer will be responsible to notify the event to emergency personnel.

E. NOTIFICATION TO THE FAA

Any person proposing construction or alteration of objects that affect navigable airspace, as defined in Part 77, must notify the FAA. This includes construction equipment and proposed parking areas for this equipment. FAA Form 7460 is used for temporary and permanent construction.

In regard to federally owned NAVAID's damage, the Airport shall contact 1-866-432-2622.

10. INSPECTION REQUIREMENTS

A. DAILY (OR MORE FREQUENT) INSPECTIONS

Inspections shall be conducted on a periodic basis and at key milestone as necessary by the Resident Engineer to ensure conformance with this document. The checklist provided at the end of this report was copied from FAA AC 150/5370-2G Appendix 4, *Construction Project Daily Safety Inspection Checklist*. This checklist shall be completed by the Contractor to the Engineer's satisfaction and the Contractor shall submit a copy of all the completed checklists to the Engineer and the Airport Operations Manager. The Contractor should fill out this checklist every day construction operations occur on this project.

B. FINAL INSPECTIONS

Final inspections shall be conducted after every construction phase is complete as detailed in Section 2 of this document. A project punch-list will be created at the end of all phases for project closeout. The final inspection should be completed with the Contractor, Resident Engineer, and the Airport Director.

11. UNDERGROUND UTILITIES

Prior to beginning excavation activities, the Contractor shall notify the Resident Engineer and Airport Operations at least 3 working days prior to the scheduled excavation. The FAA shall attempt to locate all of their underground cables that are located in the vicinity of the work areas, prior to construction in the area. The Contractor shall attempt to locate the Sponsor's underground cables and other sub-surface utilities prior to construction. Damage to the underground cables, whether FAA's or Sponsor's, through negligence on the part of the Contractor will require replacement by the Contractor at no cost to the Sponsor. Any splicing or replacing of damaged cable shall meet current FAA specifications. Damage to other underground utilities through Contractor's negligence shall be repaired according to the relevant utility's standards and at no cost to the Sponsor.

12. PENALTIES

All penalties are specified under the Contract Documents for this project.

13. SPECIAL CONDITIONS – ***NOT APPLICABLE***

This section is not applicable to this project.

14. RUNWAY AND TAXIWAY VISUAL AIDS – *NOT APPLICABLE*

A. EQUIPMENT AND METHODS FOR COVERING SIGNAGE AND AIRFIELD LIGHTS

There are no AOA closures during this project.

B. EQUIPMENT AND METHODS FOR TEMPORARY CLOSURE MARKINGS (PAINT, FABRIC, OTHER)

There are no AOA closures during this project.

C. TYPES OF TEMPORARY VISUAL GUIDANCE SLOPE INDICATORS (VGSI)

This is not applicable to the project.

15. MARKING AND SIGNS FOR ACCESS ROUTES

All required signs and markings shall conform to Advisory Circular 150/5340-18, *Standard for Airport Sign Systems*, and to the Federal Highway Administration Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD), to the extent possible. Signs adjacent to areas used by aircraft must comply with the frangible requirements as stated in Advisory Circular, *Frangible Connections*. The location and design of any signs will be directed by the Engineer or the Airport Director and provided by the Contractor.

16. HAZARD MARKINGS AND LIGHTINGS – *NOT APPLICABLE*

A. PURPOSE

This is not applicable to the project.

B. EQUIPMENT

This is not applicable to the project.

17. PROTECTION OF RUNWAY AND TAXIWAY AREAS – *NOT APPLICABLE*

A. RUNWAY SAFETY AREA (RSA)

The project limits are outside of RSA.

B. RUNWAY OBJECT FREE AREA (ROFA)

The project limits are outside of ROFA.

C. TAXIWAY SAFETY AREA (TSA)

The project limits are outside of TSA.

D. TAXIWAY OBJECT FREE AREA (TOFA)

The project limits are outside of TOFA.

E. OBSTACLE FREE ZONE (OFZ)

The project limits are outside of the OFZ.

18. OTHER LIMITATIONS ON CONSTRUCTION

A. PROHIBITIONS

The use of open flame welding or torches is prohibited unless adequate fire safety precautions are provided, and the Airport Director has approved their use. The use of flare pots within the AOA is prohibited at all times. The use of electrical blasting caps is prohibited on or within 1,000 feet of the Airport property.

B. RESTRICTIONS

Construction suspension may be required during specific Airport operations. Project areas may be worked on simultaneously only if approved by the Resident Engineer and Airport Director. Night construction may only be performed if approved by the Resident Engineer and Airport Director. Construction operations shall only be allowed in weather conditions compliant with the project specifications

PROPOSAL FORM

City of Jefferson City
State Block Grant Project No. Project No: 24-040B-1

TO: City of Jefferson City

The undersigned, in compliance with the request for bids for construction of the following Project:

Schedule 1 (base bid) - all Civil, site work , utilities,
Schedule 2 - All foundation work including the slab and all cast in place concrete
Schedule 3 - All Precast concrete including all Tower Walls, floor slabs, stairs, catwalk, 1st floor bathroom hardened room . Will also include windows of tower and exit door of the tower to complete the building shell.
Schedule 4 - The entire base building: all structural and architectural elements
Schedule 5 - The Control Cab and Roof including lightning protection and antennas
Schedule 6 - All remaining interior work for the Tower including interior walls, finishes, flooring, insulation, doors, drop ceilings, furniture, casework,
Schedule 7 - All MEP including equipment , Telecomm, Fire
Schedule 8 - Demolition of the existing ATCT (the owner will remove any equipment we wish to salvage within 30 days of opening of the new tower)

hereby proposes to furnish all labor, permits, material, machinery, tools, supplies and equipment to faithfully perform all work required for construction of the Project in accordance with the project manual, project drawings and issued Addenda within the specified time of performance for the following prices:

Intentionally Left Blank

JEF ATCT BID PROPOSAL SUMMARY

Bidder Name: _____

SCHEDULE I TOTAL- (base bid) - all civil, site work, and utilities:	$	_____
SCHEDULE II TOTAL- All foundation work including the slab and all cast-in-place concrete:	$	_____
SCHEDULE III TOTAL - All Precast concrete including all tower Walls, floor slabs, stairs, catwalk, 1st floor bathroom hardened room. Will also include windows of tower and exit door of the tower to complete the building shell:	$	_____
SCHEDULE IV TOTAL - The entire base building: all structural and architectural elements:	$	_____
SCHEDULE V TOTAL - The control cab and roof including lightning protection and antennas:	$	_____
SCHEDULE VI TOTAL - All remaining interior work for the tower including interior walls, finishes, flooring, insulation, doors, drop ceilings, furniture, and casework:	$	_____
SCHEDULE VII TOTAL - All MEP including equipment, telecomm, fire:		_____
SCHEDULE VIII TOTAL - Demolition of the existing ATCT (the owner will remove any equipment we wish to salvage within 30 days of opening of the new tower:	$	_____
JEF ATCT TOTAL ALL SCHEDULES	$	_____

Bidder has examined the proposed site and is familiar with all site conditions.

_____

Signature

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS BY BIDDER

a. By submittal of a proposal, the BIDDER acknowledges and accepts that the quantities established by the OWNER are an approximate estimate of the quantities required to fully complete the Project and that the estimated quantities are principally intended to serve as a basis for evaluation of bids. The BIDDER further acknowledges and accepts that payment under this contract will be made only for actual quantities and that quantities will vary in accordance with the General Provisions subsection entitled "Alteration of Work and Quantities".

b. The BIDDER acknowledges and accepts that the Bid Documents are comprised of the documents identified within the General Provisions. The BIDDER further acknowledges that each the individual documents that comprise the Bid Documents are complementary to one another and together establishes the complete terms, conditions and obligations of the successful BIDDER.

c. As evidence of good faith in submitting this proposal, the undersigned encloses a bid guaranty in the form of a certified check, cashier's check or bid bond in the amount of 5% of the bid price. The BIDDER acknowledges and accepts that refusal or failure to accept award and execute a contract within the terms and conditions established herein will result in forfeiture of the bid guaranty to the owner as a liquidated damage.

d. The BIDDER acknowledges and accepts the OWNER'S right to reject any or all bids.

e. The BIDDER acknowledges and accepts the OWNER'S right to hold all Proposals for purposes of review and evaluation and not issue a notice-of-award for a period not to exceed 120 calendar days from the stated date for receipt of bids.

f. The undersigned agrees that upon written notice of award of contract, he or she will execute the contract within thirty (30) days of the notice-of-award, and furthermore, and provide executed payment and performance bonds within thirty (30) days from the date of contract execution. The undersigned accepts that failure to execute the contract and provide the required bonds within the stated timeframe shall result in forfeiture of the bid guaranty to the owner as a liquidated damage.

g. Time of Performance: By submittal of this proposal, the undersigned acknowledges and agrees to commence work within ten (10) calendar days of the date specified in the written "Notice-to-Proceed" as issued by the OWNER. The undersigned further agrees to complete the Project within 400 Working days from the commencement date specified in the Notice-to-Proceed.

h. The undersigned acknowledges and accepts that for each and every Calendar day the project remains incomplete beyond the contract time of performance, the Contractor shall pay the non-penal amount of 500 per Calendar day as a liquidated damage to the OWNER.

i. The undersigned prime contractor, if not a MoDOT certified DBE, hereby assures that they will subcontract (DBE) percent of the dollar value of the prime contract to DBE firms or make good faith efforts to meet the DBE contract goal. In addition, the prime contractor will include the DBE clauses (see Supplementary Provision No. 6 of the Federal and State Provisions) required by the DBE Program adopted by MoDOT and the city in all contracts and subcontracts relating to this project. The undersigned will complete the DBE Participation information included herein, when a DBE goal has been established, including a demonstration of good faith efforts if the DBE goal is not met. If the undersigned prime contractor is a MoDOT certified DBE firm, then the prime contractor must perform at least thirty percent (30%) of the total contract value work with its own forces, and will receive DBE credit for all work which the prime contractor and any other MoDOT certified DBE firm performs directly.

j. The BIDDER, by submission of a proposal, acknowledges that award of this contract is subject to the provisions of the David Bacon Act and the Missouri Prevailing Wage Law. The BIDDER accepts the requirement to pay prevailing wages for each classification and type of worker as established in the attached wage rate determinations as issued by the United States Department of Labor and the Missouri Division of Labor Standards. The BIDDER further acknowledges and accepts their requirement to incorporate the provision to pay the established prevailing wages in every subcontract agreement entered into by the Bidder under this project. The highest rate between the two (Federal and State) for each job classification shall be considered the prevailing wage.

k. Compliance Reports (41 CFR Part 60-1.7): Within 30 days after award of this contract, the Contractor/Subcontractor shall file a compliance report (Standard Form 100) if s/he has not submitted a complete compliance report within 12 months preceding the date of award. This report is required if the Contractor/Subcontractor meets all of the following conditions:

   a. Contractors/Subcontractors are not exempt based on 41 CFR 60-1,5.
   b. Has 50 or more employees.
   c. Is a prime contractor or first tier subcontractor.
   d. There is a contract, subcontract, or purchase order amounting to $50,000 or more

l. The undersigned acknowledges receipt of the following addenda:

Addendum No. _____, dated _____ Date Received _____
Addendum No. _____, dated _____ Date Received _____
Addendum No. _____, dated _____ Date Received _____
Addendum No. _____, dated _____ Date Received _____
Addendum No. _____, dated _____ Date Received _____

REPRESENTATIONS BY BIDDER

By submittal of a proposal (bid), the BIDDER represents the following:

a. The BIDDER has read and thoroughly examined the bid documents including all authorized addenda.
b. The BIDDER has a complete understanding of the terms and conditions required for the satisfactory performance of project work.
c. The BIDDER has fully informed themselves of the project site, the project site conditions and the surrounding area.
d. The BIDDER has familiarized themselves of the requirements of working on an operating airport and understands the conditions that may in any manner affect cost, progress or performance of the work
e. The BIDDER has correlated their observations with that of the project documents.
f. The BIDDER has found no errors, conflicts, ambiguities or omissions in the project documents, except as previously submitted in writing to the owner that would affect cost, progress or performance of the work.
g. The BIDDER is familiar with all applicable Federal, State and local laws, rules and regulations pertaining to execution of the contract and the project work.
h. The BIDDER has complied with all requirements of these instructions and the associated project documents.

CERTIFICATIONS BY BIDDER

a. The undersigned hereby declares and certifies that the only parties interested in this proposal are named herein and that this proposal is made without collusion with any other person, firm or corporation.

The undersigned further certifies that no member, officer or agent of OWNER'S has direct or indirect financial interest in this proposal.

b. Prohibition of Non-Segregated Facilities (*41 CFR Part 60;* 2 *CFR Part 200, Appendix II(C)*) The BIDDER agrees that it does not maintain or provide, for its employees, any segregated facilities at any of its establishments and that it does not permit its employees to perform their services at any location, under its control, where segregated facilities are maintained. The BIDDER agrees that a breach of this clause is a violation of the Equal Opportunity Clause in this contract.

"Segregated facilities" as used in this clause, means any waiting rooms, work areas, restrooms, and washrooms, restaurants and other eating areas, timeclocks, locker rooms and other storage or dressing areas, parking lots, drinking fountains, recreation or entertainment areas, transportation, and housing facilities provided for employees which are segregated by explicit directive or are in fact segregated on the basis of race, color, religion, sexual orientation, gender identity, or national origin because of written or oral policies or employee custom. The term does not include separate or single-user rest rooms or necessary dressing or sleeping areas provided to assure privacy between the sexes.

The Bidder shall include this clause in every subcontract and purchase order that is subject to the Equal Employment Opportunity clause of this contract.

c. Trade Restriction Certification (49 U.S.C. § 50104, 49 CFR Part 30)
By submission of an offer, the Offeror certifies that with respect to this solicitation and any resultant contract, the Offeror--

1. is not owned or controlled by one or more citizens of a foreign country included in the list of countries that discriminate against U.S. firms published by the Office of the United States Trade Representative (USTR);

2. has not knowingly entered into any contract or subcontract for this project with a person that is a citizen or national of a foreign country included on the list of countries that discriminate against U.S. firms as publish by the USTR; and

3. has not entered into any subcontract for any product to be used on the Federal project that is produced in a foreign country included on the list of countries that discriminate against U.S. firms published by the USTR.

This certification concerns a matter within the jurisdiction of agency of the United States of America and the making of a false, fictitious, or fraudulent certification may render the maker subject to prosecution under Title 18 USC Section 1001.

The offer/contractor must provide immediate written notice to the Owner if the Offeror/Contractor learns that its certification or that of a subcontractor was erroneous when submitted or has become erroneous by reason of changed circumstances. The Contractor must require subcontractor provide immediate written notice to the Contractor if at any time it learns that its certification was erroneous by reason of changed circumstances.

Unless the restrictions of this clause are waived by the Secretary of Transportation in accordance with 49 CFR 30.17, no contract shall be awarded to an Offeror or subcontractor:

1) who is owned or controlled by one or more citizens or nationals of a foreign country included on the list of countries that discriminate against U.S. firms published by the USTR or
2) whose subcontractors are owned or controlled by one or more citizens or nationals of a foreign country on such USTR list or

3) who incorporates in the public works project any product of a foreign country on such USTR list.

Nothing contained in the foregoing shall be construed to require establishment of a system of records in order to render, in good faith, the certification required by this provision. The knowledge and information of a contractor is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.

The Offeror agrees that, if awarded a contract resulting from this solicitation, it will incorporate this provision for certification without modification in all lower tier subcontracts. The Contractor may rely on the certification of a prospective subcontractor that it is not a firm from a foreign county included on the list of countries that discriminate against U.S. firms as published by USTR, unless the Offeror has knowledge that the certification is erroneous.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when making an award. If it is later determined that the Contractor or subcontractor knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, the Federal Aviation Administration may direct through the Owner cancellation of the contract or subcontract for default at no cost to the Owner or the FAA.

d. Certification of Offeror/Bidder Regarding Debarment (2 CFR Part 180 (Subpart C), 2 CFR Part 1200, DOT Order 4200.5)

By submitting a bid/proposal under this solicitation, the Bidder or Offeror certifies that neither it nor its principals are presently debarred or suspended by any Federal department or agency from participation in this transaction

e. Certification of Lower Tier Contractors Regarding Debarment (2 CFR Part 180 (Subpart C), 2 CFR Part 1200, DOT Order 4200.5)

The successful Bidder, by administering each lower tier subcontract that exceeds $25,000 as a "covered transaction", must verify each lower tier participant of a "covered transaction" under the project is not presently debarred or otherwise disqualified from participation in this federally assisted project. The successful bidder will accomplish this by:

1. Checking the System for Award Management at website: http://www.sam.gov;
2. Collecting a certification statement similar to the Certificate Regarding Debarment and Suspension (Bidder or Offeror), above; and
3. Inserting a clause or condition in the covered transaction with the lower tier contract.

If the FAA and/or MoDOT later determines that a lower tier participant failed to disclose to a higher tier participant that it was excluded or disqualified at the time it entered the covered transaction, the FAA and/or MoDOT may pursue any available remedies, including suspension and debarment of the non-compliant participant.

f. Certification of Offeror/Bidder Regarding Tax Delinquency and Felony Convictions (Section 415 and 416 of Title IV, Division L of the Consolidated Appropriations Act, 2014 and DOT Order 4200.6)

The applicant must complete the following two certification statements. The applicant must indicate its current status as it relates to tax delinquency and felony conviction by inserting a checkmark (✓) in the space following the applicable response. The applicant agrees that, if awarded a contract resulting from this solicitation, it will incorporate this provision for certification in all lower tier subcontracts.

1. The applicant represents that it is (__) is not (__) a corporation that has any unpaid Federal tax liability that has been assessed, for which all judicial and administrative remedies have been exhausted or have lapsed, and that is not being paid in a timely manner pursuant to an agreement with the authority responsible for collecting the tax liability.

2. The applicant represents that it is (__) is not (__) is not a corporation that was convicted of a criminal violation under any Federal law within the preceding 24 months.

3. The undersigned shall require that the language of this certification be included in the award documents for all sub-awards at all tiers (including subcontracts, sub-grants, and contracts under grants, loans, and cooperative agreements) and that all sub-recipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

g. Certification Regarding Lobbying (31 U.S.C. § 1352, 2 CFR § 200 Appendix II(J), 49 CFR Part 20, Appendix A)

The Bidder or Offer certifies by signing and submitting this bid or proposal, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:

4. No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the Bidder or Offeror, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of an agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employer of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

5. If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form-LLL, "Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying," in accordance with its instructions.

6. The undersigned shall require that the language of this certification be included in the award documents for all sub-awards at all tiers (including subcontracts, sub-grants, and contracts under grants, loans, and cooperative agreements) and that all sub-recipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by Section 1352, Title 31, United States Code. Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $100,000 for such failure.

h. Buy American Certification: (Title 49 U.S.C. § 50101)

The Contractor certifies that its bid/offer is in compliance with 49 USC § 50101, BABA and other related Made in America Laws,3 U.S. statutes, guidance, and FAA policies, which provide that Federal funds may not be obligated unless all iron, steel and manufactured goods used in AIP funded projects are produced in the United States, unless the Federal Aviation Administration has issued a waiver for

the product; the product is listed as an Excepted Article, Material Or Supply in Federal Acquisition Regulation subpart 25.108; or is included in the FAA Nationwide Buy American Waivers Issued list.

The bidder or offeror must complete and submit the certification of compliance with FAA's Buy American Preference, BABA and Made in America laws included herein with their bid or offer. **The Airport Sponsor/Owner will reject as nonresponsive any bid or offer that does not include a completed certification of compliance with FAA's Buy American Preference and BABA.**

The bidder or offeror certifies that all constructions materials, defined to mean an article, material, or supply other than an item of primarily iron or steel; a manufactured product; cement and cementitious materials; aggregates such as stone, sand, or gravel; or aggregate binding agents or additives that are or consist primarily of: non-ferrous metals; plastic and polymer-based products (including polyvinylchloride, composite building materials, and polymers used in fiber optic cables); glass (including optic glass); lumber; or drywall used in the project are manufactured in the U.S.

The bidder certifies it and all associated subcontractors will comply with the Buy American preferences established under Title 49 U.S.C. Section 50101 as follows:

U.S.C. Section 50101 - Buying goods produced in the United States

(a) Preference. - The Secretary of Transportation may obligate an amount that may be appropriated to carry out section 106(k), 44502(a)(2), or 44509, subchapter I of chapter 471 (except section 47127), or chapter 481 (except sections 48102(e), 48106, 48107, and 48110) of this title for a project only if steel and manufactured goods used in the project are produced in the United States.

(b) Waiver. - The Secretary may waive subsection (a) of this section if the Secretary finds that -

(1) Applying subsection (a) would be inconsistent with the public interest;

(2) The steel and goods produced in the United States are not produced in a sufficient and reasonably available amount or are not of a satisfactory quality;

(3) When procuring a facility or equipment under section 44502(a)(2) or 44509, subchapter I of chapter 471 (except section 47127), or chapter 481 (except sections 48102(e), 48106, 48107, and 48110) of this title -

A. The cost of components and subcomponents produced in the United States is more than 60% of the cost of all components of the facility or equipment; and

B. Final assembly of the facility or equipment has occurred in the United States; or

(4) Including domestic material will increase the cost of the overall project by more than 25%.

(c) Labor Costs. - In this section, labor costs involved in final assembly are not included in calculating the cost of components.

The FAA Office of Airports maintains listings of projects and products that have received a waiver from the Buy American Preference requirements for project specific and nationwide use. Each of these conformance lists is available online at www.faa.gov/airports/aip/buy_american/. Products listed on the FAA Nationwide Buy American Conformance list do not require additional submittal of domestic content information. Nationwide waivers expire five years from the date issued, unless revoked earlier by the FAA.

Certification of Compliance with FAA Buy American Preference – Equipment/Building Projects

(Buildings such as Terminal, SRE, ARFF, etc.)

As a matter of bid responsiveness, the bidder or offeror must complete, sign, date, and submit this certification statement with their proposal. The bidder or offeror must indicate how they intend to comply with 49 USC § 50101, and other Made in America Laws, U.S. statutes, guidance, and FAA policies by selecting one on the following certification statements. These statements are mutually exclusive. Bidder must select one or the other (not both) by inserting a checkmark (✓) or the letter "X".

☐ Bidder or offeror hereby certifies that it will comply with 49 USC § 50101, BABA and other related U.S. statutes, guidance, and policies of the FAA by:

a) Only installing steel and manufactured products produced in the United States;
b) Only installing construction materials defined as: an article, material, or supply – other than an item of primarily iron or steel; a manufactured product; cement and cementitious materials; aggregates such as stone, sand, or gravel; or aggregate binding agents or additives that are or consist primarily of non-ferrous metals; plastic and polymer-based products (including polyvinylchloride, composite building materials, and polymers used in fiber optic cables); glass (including optic glass); lumber or drywall that have been manufactured in the United States.
c) Installing manufactured products for which the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) has issued a waiver as indicated by inclusion on the current FAA Nationwide Buy American Waivers Issued listing; or
d) Installing products listed as an Excepted Article, Material or Supply in Federal Acquisition Regulation Subpart 25.108.

By selecting this certification statement, the bidder or offeror agrees:

a) To provide to the Airport Sponsor or FAA evidence that documents the source and origin of the steel and manufactured product.
b) To faithfully comply with providing U.S. domestic product.
c) To furnish U.S. domestic product for any waiver request that the FAA rejects.
d) To refrain from seeking a waiver request after establishment of the contract, unless extenuating circumstances emerge that the FAA determines justified.

☐ The bidder or offeror hereby certifies it cannot comply with the 100 percent Buy American Preferences of 49 USC § 50101(a) but may qualify for a Type 3 waiver under 49 USC § 50101(b). By selecting this certification statement, the apparent bidder or offeror with the apparent low bid agrees:

a) To submit to the Airport Sponsor or FAA within 15 calendar days of being selected as the responsive bidder, a formal waiver request and required documentation that supports the type of waiver being requested.
b) That failure to submit the required documentation within the specified timeframe is cause for a non-responsive determination that may result in rejection of the proposal.
c) To faithfully comply with providing U.S. domestic products at or above the approved U.S. domestic content percentage as approved by the FAA.
d) To refrain from seeking a waiver request after establishment of the contract, unless extenuating circumstances emerge that the FAA determines justified.

Required Documentation

Type 2 Waiver (Nonavailability) - The iron, steel, manufactured goods or construction materials are not available in sufficient quantity or quality in the United States. The required documentation for the Nonavailability waiver is:

a) Completed Content Percentage Worksheet and Final Assembly Questionnaire

b) Record of thorough market research, consideration where appropriate of qualifying alternate items, products, or materials including;

c) A description of the market research activities and methods used to identify domestically manufactured items capable of satisfying the requirement, including the timing of the research and conclusions reached on the availability of sources.

Type 3 Waiver – The cost of the item components and subcomponents produced in the United States is more that 60 percent of the cost of all components and subcomponents of the "item". The required documentation for a Type 3 waiver is:

a) Completed Content Percentage Worksheet and Final Assembly Questionnaire including;
b) Listing of all product components and subcomponents that are not comprised of 100 percent U.S. domestic content (Excludes products listed on the FAA Nationwide Buy American Waivers Issued listing and products excluded by Federal Acquisition Regulation Subpart 25.108 (products of unknown origin must be considered as non-domestic products in their entirety).
c) Cost of non-domestic components and subcomponents, excluding labor costs associated with final assembly at place of manufacture.
d) Percentage of non-domestic component and subcomponent cost as compared to total "item" component and subcomponent costs, excluding labor costs associated with final assembly at place of manufacture.

Type 4 Waiver (Unreasonable Costs) - Applying this provision for iron, steel, manufactured goods or construction materials, would increase the cost of the overall project by more than 25 percent. The required documentation for this waiver is:

a) Completed Content Percentage Worksheet and Final Assembly Questionnaire from
b) At minimum two comparable equal bidders and/or offerors;
c) Receipt or record that demonstrates that supplier scouting called for in Executive Order 14005, indicates that no domestic source exists for the project and/or component;
d) Completed waiver applications for each comparable bid and/or offer.

False Statements: Per 49 USC § 47126, this certification concerns a matter within the jurisdiction of the Federal Aviation Administration and the making of a false, fictitious, or fraudulent certification may render the maker subject to prosecution under Title 18, United States Code.

Date	Signature
Company Name	Title

BUY AMERICA WAIVER REQUEST

Title 49 U.S.C Section 50101 (b)

For Airfield Development Projects funded under the Airport Improvement Program

Instructions for Permissible Waivers

Nationwide Waivers: The FAA Office of Airports maintains listings of projects and products that have received a waiver from the Buy American Preference requirements for project specific and nationwide use. Each of these conformance lists is available online at www.faa.gov/airports/aip/buy_american/. Products listed on the FAA Nationwide Buy American Conformance list do not require additional submittal of domestic content information. Nationwide waivers expire five years from the date issued, unless revoked earlier by the FAA

Section 50101(b)(1) & (b)(2) Waivers:

The bidder may request a waiver based upon the best interests of the public, Section 50101 (b)(1) or request a waiver based upon insufficient supply of U.S. manufactured products, Section 50101 (b)(2), however approval is rare and waivers may only be approved by the FAA Office of Airports in Washington DC.

Section 50101(b)(3) Waiver:

The bidder may request a waiver if 60% or more of the components and subcomponents in the facility or equipment are produced in the United States and final assembly occurs in the U.S. Bidder is hereby advised that the Owner's approval with the bidder's waiver request is contingent upon FAA approval.

1. "Equipment" in Section 50101 shall mean the following:
   a) Individual type "L" items (Airfield Lighting Equipment) as listed in FAA Advisory Circular 150/5345-53.
   b) Individual bid items as established within FAA Advisory Circular 150/5370-10.
   c) A waiver request may only address one specific equipment item. Submit separate requests for each equipment item for which a waiver.
   d) Items listed under the Nationwide Waiver referenced above do not require further review.
2. The bidder must base the U.S. percentage upon the value that results from completing the following Content Percentage Calculation Worksheet. The Bidder must submit the content percentage calculation worksheet as an attachment to the waiver request.
3. Components/subcomponents are the material and products composing the "equipment".
4. The final assembly of the AIP-funded "equipment" must be within the USA *(Section 50101(b)(3)(B))*. Final assembly is the substantial transformation of the components and subcomponents into the end product. Final assembly location is the location where the equipment is assembled, not the project site itself.
5. All steel used in the "Equipment" must be produced in the United States.

6. The Buy American requirements apply to all tier contractors and subcontractors. All contractors/subcontractors are required to provide appropriate documentation that indicates origin of manufacturer and percentage of domestic made product.
7. The bidder is hereby advised there is no implied or expressed guarantee that a requested waiver will be issued by the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA). Less than 60% USA component/subcomponent proposed for this facility CANNOT be waived. Products made with foreign steel are not eligible for a waiver.
8. Products and material made in Canada or Mexico must be considered as foreign made products.
9. Preparation of a Content Percentage Calculation Worksheet is not necessary for equipment listed on the FAA national listing:

http://www.faa.gov/airports/aip/buy_american/

Bidder however shall submit a listing of any equipment it proposes to install on the project that is included on the Nationwide Buy American conformance list.

10. In any calculation of Buy American percentage, the labor for the final assembly is excluded.

This is because the Buy American statute is based on the cost of materials and equipment, not

Labor.

Instructions for Section 50101(b)(4) Waiver:

1. The bidder may request a waiver if application of Buy America preferences results in a 25% cost increase in the overall project. This waiver is rarely applicable. Consult the Owner before making this request.

U.S. Department of Transportation
Federal Aviation Administration

OMB CONTROL NUMBER: 2120-0569
EXPIRATION DATE: 6/30/2023

– CONFIDENTIAL –

NOT SUBJECT TO DISCLOSURE UNDER EXEMPTION # 4 OF THE FREEDOM OF INFORMATION ACT

FAA Buy American Preference Construction Project Content Percentage Worksheet

Airport Sponsor: Date:

Airport Worksite:

Worksite LOCID:

Project Description:

Total material cost:

U.S. Content: %

Non-U.S. Content: %

Project Material Structure List (Bill of Materials)

Line	Material Level (1 or 2)	Materials	Cost of U.S. Origin Materials	Cost of Non-U.S. Materials
1				
2				
3				
4				
5				
6				
7				
8				
9				
10				

For FAA Use Only

Line	Material Level (1 or 2)	Materials	Cost of U.S. Origin Materials	Cost of Non-U.S. Materials
11				
12				
13				
14				
15				
16				
17				
18				
19				
20				
		SUBTOTAL		

For FAA Use Only

TOTAL MATERIAL COST:

U.S. Content: %

Non-U.S. Content: %

The undersigned certifies that this information is true and accurate to the best of their knowledge.
A false certification represents a violation of 18 U.S.C § 1001 and 49 U.S.C § 47126.
Signatory has the burden of proof to establish compliance.

Signature:

Name:

Title:

Submit by Email

U.S. Department of Transportation
Federal Aviation Administration

OMB CONTROL NUMBER: 2120-0569
EXPIRATION DATE: 6/30/2023

-- CONFIDENTIAL –
NOT SUBJECT TO DISCLOSURE UNDER EXEMPTION # 4
OF THE FREEDOM OF INFORMATION ACT

Buy American Preferences – Final Assembly Questionnaire

To assist the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) in making the determination of whether final assembly of the product occurs in the United States, please complete and submit this questionnaire when requesting a Buy American Waiver under 49 USC § 50101(b)(3)(A).

Company Name: Date:

FAA Eligible Item: FAA Item Number (if applicable):

Address of Final Assembly Location:

1. Provide a description of the assembly process occurring at the specified final location in the United States.
   a. Describe the final assembly process and its various operations.
   b. How long does the final assembly process take to complete?
2. Provide a description of the resources used to conduct the assembly of the product at the specified location in the United States.
   a. How many employees are involved in the final assembly process and what is the general skill level of those employees?
   b. What type of equipment is used during the final assembly process?
   c. What is a rough estimate of the associated cost to conduct final assembly of the product at the specified location in the United States?

The undersigned certifies that this information is true and accurate to the best of their knowledge. A false certification represents a violation of 18 U.S.C § 1001 and 49 U.S.C § 47126. Signatory has the burden of proof to establish compliance.

Signature:

Name:

Submit by Email

FAA Form 5100-137 (8/20) SUPERSEDES PREVIOUS EDITION

BUY AMERICA CONFORMANCE LISTING

Title 49 U.S.C Section 50101 (b)

For Airfield Development Projects funded under the Airport Improvement Program

- Preparation of a Component Cost Calculation Table is not necessary for equipment listed on the FAA national listing: http://www.faa.gov/airports/aip/buy_american/

- Bidder shall submit a listing of equipment it proposes to install on the project that is included on the current National Buy American conformance list.

Equipment Type	Name of Manufacturer	Product Number

Certification Signature:

Bidder hereby certifies that the above listed equipment, which we propose for installation on the subject project, is on the current National Buy America Conformance list as established at:
http://www.faa.gov/airports/aip/buy_american/

I hereby certify the above information is accurate and complete.

_____ _____

Bidder's Firm Name *Date*

455
456 _____
Signature
457

i. Compliance with the Work Authorization Law (as required by Section 285.530 Revised Statutes of Missouri)

For all contracts where the total bid amount is in excess of $50,000 (local match in excess of $5,000), the Bidder, by submission of an offer and by signing the Worker Eligibility Verification Affidavit for All Contract Agreements in Excess of $50,000, certifies that it:

1. does not knowingly employ any person who is an unauthorized alien in connection with the contracted services;

2. has enrolled and actively participates in a federal work authorization program;

A general contractor or subcontractor of any tier shall not be liable under sections 285.525 to 285.550 when such general contractor or subcontractor contracts with its direct subcontractor who violates subsection 1 of this section, if the contract binding the contractor and subcontractor affirmatively states that the direct subcontractor is not knowingly in violation of subsection 1 of this section and shall not henceforth be in such violation and the contractor or subcontractor receives a sworn affidavit under the penalty of perjury attesting to the fact that the direct subcontractor's employees are lawfully present in the United States

WORKER ELIGIBILITY VERIFICATION AFFIDAVIT FOR ALL CONTRACT AGREEMENTS IN EXCESS OF $50,000
(Local match in excess of $5,000)

(for joint ventures, a separate affidavit is required for each business entity)

STATE OF _____)
) ss
COUNTY OF _____)

On this _____ day of _____, 20____, before me appeared _____ _____, personally known to me or proved to me on the basis of satisfactory evidence to be a person whose name is subscribed to this affidavit, who being by me duly sworn, deposed as follows:

My name is _____, and I am of sound mind, capable of making this affidavit, and personally certify the facts herein stated, as required by Section 285.530, RSMo, to enter into any contract agreement with the state or any of its political subdivisions to perform any job, task, employment, labor, personal services, or any other activity for which compensation is provided, expected, or due, including but not limited to all activities conducted by business entities:

I am the _____ of _____
(title name) (business name)
_____, and I am duly authorized, directed, and/or empowered to act officially and properly on behalf of this business entity.

I hereby affirm and warrant that the aforementioned business entity is enrolled in a federal work authorization program operated by the United States Department of Homeland Security, and the aforementioned business entity shall participate in said program to verify information (employment eligibility) of newly hired employees working in connection to work under the within contract agreement. I have attached documentation to this affidavit to evidence enrollment/participation by the aforementioned business entity in a federal work authorization program, as required by Section 285.530, RSMo.

In addition, I hereby affirm and warrant that the aforementioned business entity does not and shall not knowingly employ, in connection to work under the within contract agreement, any alien who does not have the legal right or authorization under federal law to work in the United States, as defined in 8 U.S.C. § 1324a(h)(3).

I am aware and recognize that, unless certain contract and affidavit conditions are satisfied pursuant to Section 285.530, RSMo, the aforementioned business entity may be held liable under Sections 285.525 through 285.550, RSMo, for subcontractors that knowingly employ or continue to employ any unauthorized alien to work within the state of Missouri.

I acknowledge that I am signing this affidavit as a free act and deed of the aforementioned business entity and not under duress.

_____
(Affiant Signature)

Subscribed and sworn to before me this _____ day of _____, 20____.

_____
(Notary Public)

My commission expires:

[Documentation of enrollment/participation in a federal work authorization program is attached. Acceptable enrollment and participation documentation consists of the following two pages of the E- Verify Memorandum of Understanding: (1) A valid, completed copy of the first page identifying the business entity; and (2) A valid

copy of the signature page completed and signed by the business entity, the Social Security Administration, and the Department of Homeland Security – Verification Division.]

DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DBE) PARTICIPATION

The information shown in this section must be completed when a DBE contract goal has been established. The percentage must equal or exceed the DBE contract goal. If the percentage is below the contract goal, then the bidder must submit complete written documentation of good faith efforts taken to meet the DBE contract goal.

Only those firms currently certified as DBEs by the Missouri Department of Transportation (MoDOT), City of St. Louis, Metro, City of Kansas City, and Kansas City Area Transportation Authority are eligible to participate as DBEs on this contract. A list of these firms is available on MoDOT's Office of External Civil Rights webpage at the following address:

http://www.modot.org/dbe-program

a. The undersigned submits the following list of DBEs to be used in accomplishing the work of this contract. The work, supplies or services, applicable value and percent of total federal contract each DBE is to perform or furnish is as follows:

b. Joint venture with a DBE. The undersigned submits the following list of bid items the DBE prime is responsible for and any items that will be subcontracted out are noted with an asterisk or a similar notation. The work, applicable value and percentage of total federal contract the DBE prime is responsible for are as follows:

(A) DBE Name and Address	(B) Bid Item Number(s) Or Work Performed	(C) Dollar Value of DBE Work **	(D) Percent Applicable to DBE Goal (100%, 60%)	(E) Dollar Amount Applicable to DBE Goal (C x D)	(F) Percent of Total Contract (C / Total Contract Amount)
TOTAL DBE PARTICIPATION				$	%

**Cannot exceed contract amount for given item of work.
Truck services credited at 100% if the DBE owns the trucks or is leasing from a DBE firm.
Merchant wholesalers (supply) are credited at 60%.
Brokered services will only receive credit for fees.

(Please reproduce the above sheet if additional space is needed.)

CONTRACTOR'S STATEMENT OF QUALIFICATIONS

Qualifications shall be furnished with the bid proposal as described in Section 20 of the General Provisions, including resumes of all key personnel detailing experience on similar airfield construction projects as stated in paragraph 2 of Section 2, Instructions to Bidders.

_____

Name of firm, address with zip code

_____	_____	_____
Project Contact Name.....	Area Code/Telephone Number	Area Code/Fax Number

_____

Federal I.D. Number

The Contractor is **required** to perform an amount equal to or at least **50 percent** of the total contract cost.

_____	_____	_____
% of work by Contractor	No. of permanent employees	No. of years in business

_____

Have you done business under different name? If so, please give name and location.

- Provide list of equipment available for the work.
- Provide resumes of all key personnel that would be available.
- Provide list of projects completed within last five years that are similar in scope to the one being bid, including cost of each, and owner contact information.
- Provide list of projects currently under construction, including costs of each, and owner contact information.
- Provide "evidence of competency" and "evidence of financial responsibility" in accordance with Section 20-02 of the General Provisions. If the Bidder is presently pre-qualified with the Missouri Department of Transportation (MoDOT), evidence of this pre-qualification may serve as evidence of financial responsibility in lieu of the certified financial statements and reports.

Intentionally Left Blank

THIS EXECUTED PROPOSAL FORM MUST BE SUBMITTED WITH SECTIONS B-1 THROUGH B- 27 FILLED OUT COMPLETELY

SIGNATURE OF BIDDER

The undersigned states that the correct LEGAL NAME AND ADDRESS of (1) the individual bidder, (2) each partner or joint venturer (whether individuals or corporations, and whether doing business under a fictitious name), or (3) the corporation (with the state in which it is incorporated) are shown below; that (if not signing with the intention to bind themselves to become responsible and sole bidder) they are the agent of, and they are signing and executing this (as indicated in the proper spaces below) as the bid of a

( ) sole individual ( ) partnership ( ) joint venture

( ) corporation, incorporated under the laws of state of _____.

Executed by bidder this _____day of _____20_____.

Name of individual, all partners or joint venturers:	Address of each:
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
doing business under the name of:	Address of principal place of business in Missouri:
_____	_____
(If using a fictitious name, show this name above in addition to legal names)	_____
_____	_____
(If a corporation, show its name above)	_____
ATTEST: (SEAL)	
_____	_____
(Signature) Secretary	(Signature) (Title)
_____	_____
Please print name	Please print name

NOTE: If bidder is doing business under a fictitious name, the bid shall be executed in the legal name of the individual partners, joint ventures, or corporation, with the legal address shown, and registration of fictitious name filed with the secretary of state, as required by sections 417.200 to 417.230 RSMo. If the bidder is a corporation not organized under the laws of Missouri, it shall procure a certificate of authority to do business in Missouri, as required by section 351.572 et seq RSMo.

Intentionally Left Blank

PERFORMANCE BOND	BOND NUMBER
PRINCIPAL *(Legal Name and Business Address)*	
SURETY *(Legal Name and Business Address)*	STATE OF INCORPORATION
PENAL SUM OF BOND *(Expressed in words and numerals)*	CONTRACT DATE

OBLIGATION

KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS, that the above named PRINCIPAL, hereinafter referred to and called CONTRACTOR, and the above named SURETY hereby bind themselves unto City of Jefferson City, 320 E. McCarty Street, MO 65101 as OBLIGEE, hereinafter referred to and called OWNER, in the penal sum stated above, in lawful money of the United States of America to be paid to OWNER. For payment of the penal sum, we bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

WHEREAS,

CONTRACTOR has entered into the written contract agreement identified hereinabove with the OWNER for the following project:

Schedule 1 (base bid) - all Civil, site work , utilities.
Schedule 2 - All foundation work including the slab and all cast in place concrete
Schedule 3 - All Precast concrete including all Tower Walls, floor slabs, stairs, catwalk, 1st floor bathroom hardened room . Will also include windows of tower and exit door of the tower to complete the building shell.
Schedule 4 - The entire base building: all structural and architectural elements
Schedule 5 - The Control Cab and Roof including lightning protection and antennas
Schedule 6 - All remaining interior work for the Tower including interior walls, finishes, flooring, insulation, doors, drop ceilings, furniture, casework.
Schedule 7 - All MEP including equipment , Telecomm, Fire
Schedule 8 - Demolition of the existing ATCT (the owner will remove any equipment we wish to salvage within 30 days of opening of the new tower)

which said contract and associated contract documents, including any present or future amendment thereto, is incorporated herein by reference and is hereinafter referred to as the Contract.

CONDITION

NOW, THEREFORE, THE CONDITION OF THIS OBLIGATION is such that, if CONTRACTOR shall promptly and faithfully perform all undertakings, covenants, terms, conditions and agreements of the Contract during the original term of the Contract and any extensions thereof that are granted by the OWNER, with or without notice to the SURETY, and during the period of any guarantee or warranties required under the Contract, and if CONTRACTOR shall perform and fulfill all undertakings, covenants, terms, conditions and agreements of any and all duly authorized modifications of the Contract that hereafter are made, then this obligation shall be void; otherwise it shall remain in full force and effect subject to the following additional conditions:

1. SURETY, for value received, hereby stipulates and agrees that no change, extension of time, modification, omission, addition or change in or to the Contract, or the work performed thereunder or the specifications accompanying the same, shall in any way affect the SURETY'S obligation on this bond; and SURETY hereby agrees to waive notice of any and all such extensions, modifications, omissions, alterations, and additions to the terms of the Contract, work or specifications.

2. Whenever CONTRACTOR shall be and declared by the OWNER to be in default under the Contract, the Surety shall promptly and at the SURETY'S expense remedy the default by implementing one or more of the following actions:

    a. Arrange for the CONTRACTOR, with consent of the OWNER, to perform and complete the Contract; or

    b. Undertake to perform and complete the Contract itself, through its agents or through independent contractors; or

    c. Obtain bids or negotiated proposals from qualified contractors acceptable to the OWNER for a contract for performance and completion of the Contract; arrange for a contract to be prepared for execution by the OWNER and the contractor selected with the OWNER'S concurrence, to be secured with performance and payment bonds executed by a qualified surety equivalent to the Bonds issued on the Contract; and make available as work progresses (even though there should be a default or a succession of defaults under the contract or contracts of completion arranged under this paragraph) sufficient funds to pay the cost of completion less the balance of the contract price; but not exceeding, including other costs and damages for which the Surety may be liable hereunder, the penal sum of the bond. The term "balance of the contract price", as used in this paragraph, shall mean the total amount payable by OWNER to CONTRACTOR under the Contract and any amendments thereto, disbursed at the rate provided in the original contract, less the amount properly paid by OWNER to CONTRACTOR.

    d. With written consent of the OWNER, SURETY may waive its right to perform and complete, arrange for completion or obtain a new contractor and with reasonable promptness, investigate and determine the amount the SURETY is liable to the OWNER and tender payment therefor to the OWNER.

3. CONTRACTOR and SURETY agree that if in connection with the enforcement of this Bond, the OWNER is required to engage the services of an attorney, that reasonable attorney fees incurred by the OWNER, with or without suit, are in addition to the balance of the contract price.

4. No right of action shall accrue on this bond to or for the use of any person or corporation other than the OWNER named herein or the successors or assigns of the OWNER.

WITNESS

In witness whereof, this instrument is executed this the _____ day of _____, 20_____.

INDIVIDUAL PRINCIPAL:

Company Name:

_____

Signature:

_____

Name and Title:

_____

CORPORATE PRINCIPAL:

ATTEST:

Signature: _____

Name and Title: _____

(Affix Corporate Seal)

Corporate Name: _____

Signature: _____

Name and Title: _____

SURETY:

ATTEST:

Signature: _____

Name and Title: _____

(Affix Seal)

Surety Name: _____

Signature:_____

Name and Title: _____

(Attach Power of Attorney)

OWNER ACCEPTANCE:

The OWNER approves the form of this Performance Bond.

Date: _____

Signature: _____

Name and Title: _____

(Affix Seal)

Signature: _____

Name and Title: _____

Intentionally Left Blank

PAYMENT BOND	BOND NUMBER
PRINCIPAL *(Legal Name and Business Address)*	
SURETY *(Legal Name and Business Address)*	STATE OF INCORPORATION
PENAL SUM OF BOND *(Expressed in words and numerals)*	CONTRACT DATE

OBLIGATION

KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS, that the above named PRINCIPAL, hereinafter referred to and called CONTRACTOR, and the above named SURETY hereby bind themselves unto City of Jefferson City, 320 E. McCarty Street MO as OBLIGEE, hereinafter referred to and called OWNER, in the penal sum stated above, in lawful money of the United States of America to be paid to OWNER. For payment of the penal sum, we bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

WHEREAS,

CONTRACTOR has entered into the written contract agreement identified hereinabove with the OWNER for the following project:

Schedule 1 (base bid) - all Civil, site work , utilities
Schedule 2 - All foundation work including the slab and all cast in place concrete
Schedule 3 - All Precast concrete including all Tower Walls, floor slabs, stairs, catwalk, 1st floor bathroom hardened room . Will also include windows of tower and exit door of the tower to complete the building shell.
Schedule 4 - The entire base building: all structural and architectural elements
Schedule 5 - The Control Cab and Roof including lightning protection and antennas
Schedule 6 - All remaining interior work for the Tower including interior walls, finishes, flooring, insulation, doors, drop ceilings, furniture, casework
Schedule 7 - All MEP including equipment , Telecomm, Fire
Schedule 8 - Demolition of the existing ATCT (the owner will remove any equipment we wish to salvage within 30 days of opening of the new tower)

which said contract and associated contract documents, including any present or future amendment thereto, is incorporated herein by reference and is hereinafter referred to as the Contract.

CONDITION

NOW, THEREFORE, THE CONDITION OF THIS OBLIGATION is such that, if CONTRACTOR shall promptly make payment to all employees, persons, firms or corporations for all incurred indebtedness and just claims for labor, supplies, materials and services furnished for or used in connection with the performance of the Contract, then this obligation shall be void; otherwise it shall remain in full force and effect subject to the following additional conditions:

1. CONTRACTOR and SURETY indemnify and hold harmless the OWNER for all claims, demands, liens or suits that arise from performance of the Contract

2. SURETY, for value received, hereby stipulates and agrees that no change, extension of time, modification, omission, addition or change in or to the Contract, or the work performed thereunder or the specifications accompanying the same, shall in any way affect the SURETY'S obligation on this bond; and SURETY hereby agrees to waive notice of any and all such extensions, modifications, omissions, alterations, and additions to the terms of the Contract, work or specifications.

3. No final settlement between the OWNER and the CONTRACTOR shall abridge the right of any beneficiary hereunder, whose claim may be unsatisfied.

4. The amount of this bond shall be reduced by and to the extent of any payments made in good faith hereunder.

5. Amounts owed by the OWNER to the CONTRACTOR under the Contract shall be used for the performance of the Contract and to satisfy claims, if any, under any Performance Bond. By the CONTRACTOR furnishing and the OWNER accepting this Bond, they agree that all funds earned by the CONTRACTOR in the performance of the Contract are dedicated to satisfy obligations of the CONTRACTOR and the SURETY under this Bond, subject to the OWNER'S priority to use the funds for the completion of the project.

WITNESS

In witness whereof, this instrument is executed this the ____ day of _____, 20____.

INDIVIDUAL PRINCIPAL:

Company Name: _____

Signature: _____

Name and Title: _____

CORPORATE PRINCIPAL:

ATTEST:

Signature: _____

Name and Title: _____

(Affix Corporate Seal)

Corporate Name: _____

Signature: _____

Name and Title: _____

SURETY:

ATTEST:

Signature: _____

Name and Title: _____

(Affix Seal)

Surety Name: _____

Signature: _____

Name and Title: _____

(Attach Power of Attorney)

OWNER ACCEPTANCE:

The OWNER approves the form of this Payment Bond.

Date: _____

Signature: _____

Name and Title: _____

(Affix Seal)

Signature: _____

Name and Title: _____

Intentionally Left Blank

FORM OF CONTRACT AGREEMENT

City of Jefferson City
State Block Grant Project No. Project No: 24-040B-1

THIS AGREEMENT, made as of this _____day of _____, 20_____, is

BY AND BETWEEN

the OWNER:	Name:	_____
	Address:	_____
	City/State/Zip Code:	_____
And the CONTRACTOR:	Name:	_____
	Address:	_____
	City/State/Zip Code:	_____

WITNESSETH:

WHEREAS it is the intent of the Owner to make improvements at Jefferson City Memorial Airport generally described as follows;

Schedule 1 (base bid) - all Civil, site work , utilities
Schedule 2 - All foundation work including the slab and all cast in place concrete
Schedule 3 - All Precast concrete including all Tower Walls, floor slabs, stairs, catwalk, 1st floor bathroom hardened room . Will also include windows of tower and exit door of the tower to complete the building shell.
Schedule 4 - The entire base building: all structural and architectural elements
Schedule 5 - The Control Cab and Roof including lightning protection and antennas
Schedule 6 - All remaining interior work for the Tower including interior walls, finishes, flooring, insulation, doors, drop ceilings, furniture, casework
Schedule 7 - All MEP including equipment , Telecomm, Fire
Schedule 8 - Demolition of the existing ATCT (the owner will remove any equipment we wish to salvage within 30 days of opening of the new tower)

hereinafter referred to as the Project.

NOW THEREFORE in consideration of the mutual covenants hereinafter set forth, OWNER and CONTRACTOR agree as follows:

Article 1 – Work
It is hereby mutually agreed that for and in consideration of the payments as provided for herein to the CONTRACTOR by the OWNER, CONTRACTOR shall faithfully furnish all necessary labor, equipment, and material and shall fully perform all necessary work to complete the Project in strict accordance with this Contract Agreement and the Contract Documents.

Article 2 – Contract Documents
CONTRACTOR agrees that the Contract Documents consist of the following: this Agreement, General Provisions, Supplementary Provisions, Specifications, Drawings, all issued addenda, Notice-to-Bidders, Instructions-to-Bidders, Proposal and associated attachments, Performance Bond, Payment Bond, Wage Rate

Determinations, Insurance certificates, documents incorporated by reference, documents incorporated by attachment, and all OWNER authorized change orders issued subsequent to the date of this agreement. All documents comprising the Contract Documents are complementary to one another and together establish the complete terms, conditions and obligations of the CONTRACTOR. All said Contract Documents are incorporated by reference into the Contract Agreement as if fully rewritten herein or attached thereto.

Article 3 – Contract Price

In consideration of the faithful performance and completion of the Work by the CONTRACTOR in accordance with the Contract Documents, OWNER shall pay the CONTRACTOR an amount equal to:

_____	_____
(Amount in Written Words)	(Amount in Numerals)

subject to the following;

a. Said amount is based on the schedule of prices and estimated quantities stated in CONTRACTOR'S Bid Proposal, which is attached to and made a part of this Agreement;

b. Said amount is the aggregate sum of the result of the CONTRACTOR'S stated unit prices multiplied by the associated estimated quantities;

c. CONTRACTOR and OWNER agree that said estimated quantities are not guaranteed and that the determination of actual quantities is to be made by the OWNER'S ENGINEER;

d. Said amount is subject to modification for additions and deductions as provided for within the Contract General Provisions.

Article 4 – Payment

Upon the completion of the work and its acceptance by the OWNER, all sums due the CONTRACTOR by reason of faithful performance of the work, taking into consideration additions to or deductions from the Contract price by reason of alterations or modifications of the original Contract or by reason of "Extra Work" authorized under this Contract, will be paid to the CONTRACTOR by the OWNER after said completion and acceptance.

The acceptance of final payment by the CONTRACTOR shall be considered as a release in full of all claims against the OWNER, arising out of, or by reason of, the work completed and materials furnished under this Contract.

OWNER shall make progress payments to the CONTRACTOR in accordance with the terms set forth in the General Provisions. Progress payments shall be based on estimates prepared by the ENGINEER for the value of work performed and materials completed in place in accordance with the Contract Drawings and Specifications. Progress payments are subject to retainage requirements as set forth in the General Provisions.

Article 5 – Contract Time

The CONTRACTOR agrees to commence work within ten (10) calendar days of the date specified in the OWNER'S Notice-to-Proceed. CONTRACTOR further agrees to complete said work within 400 working days of the commencement date stated within the Notice-to-Proceed.

It is expressly understood and agreed that the stated Contract Time is reasonable for the completion of the Work, taking all factors into consideration. Furthermore, extensions of the Contract Time may only be permitted by execution of a formal modification to this Contract Agreement in accordance with the General Provisions and as approved by the OWNER.

Article 6 – Liquidated Damages

The CONTRACTOR and OWNER understand and agree that time is of essence for completion of the Work and that the OWNER will suffer additional expense and financial loss if said Work is not completed within the authorized Contract Time. Furthermore, the CONTRACTOR and OWNER recognize and understand the difficulty, delay, and expense in establishing the exact amount of actual financial loss and additional expense. Accordingly, in place of requiring such proof, the CONTRACTOR expressly agrees to pay the OWNER as liquidated damages the non-penal sum of $500 per day for each calendar day required in excess of the authorized Contract Time. In addition, up to $1,730/working day(s) for the construction manager plus up to $1,390/working day(s) for each additional resident engineer plus any incurred expenses (per diem, lodging, etc.) will be charged to the Contractor for that time which exceeds the number of working days allowed in this paragraph. Further, each phase of work under the project has additional liquidated damage clauses, as outlined in Section 80-08 FAILURE TO COMPLETE ON TIME. Update Specific LDs and titles per each project.

Furthermore, the CONTRACTOR understands and agrees that;

a. the OWNER has the right to deduct from any moneys due the CONTRACTOR, the amount of said liquidated damages;

b. the OWNER has the right to recover the amount of said liquidated damages from the CONTRACTOR, SURETY or both.

Article 7 – CONTRACTOR'S Representations

The CONTRACTOR understands and agrees that all representations made by the CONTRACTOR within the Proposal Form shall apply under this Agreement as if fully rewritten herein.

Article 8 – CONTRACTOR'S Certifications

The CONTRACTOR understands and agrees that all certifications made by the CONTRACTOR within the Proposal shall apply under this Agreement as if fully rewritten herein. The CONTRACTOR further certifies the following;

a. **Certification of Eligibility** (29 CFR Part 5.5)

i. By Entering into this contract, the CONTRACTOR certifies that neither he or she nor any person or firm who has an interest in the CONTRACTOR'S firm is a person or firm ineligible to be awarded Government contracts by virtue of Section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1);

ii. No part of this contract shall be subcontracted to any person or firm ineligible for award of a Government contract by virtue of Section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1);

iii. The penalty for making false statements is prescribed in the U.S. Criminal Code 18 U.S.C.

b. **Certification of Non-Segregated Facilities** (41 CFR Part 60-1.8)

The federally-assisted construction CONTRACTOR, certifies that it does not maintain or provide, for its employees, any segregated facilities at any of its establishments and that it does not permit its employees to perform their services at any location, under its control, where segregated facilities are maintained. The BIDDER certifies that it will not maintain or provide, for its employees, segregated facilities at any of its establishments and that it will not permit its employees to perform their services at any location under its control where segregated facilities are maintained. The Bidder agrees that a breach of this certification is a violation of the Equal Opportunity Clause, which is to be incorporated in the contract.

As used in this certification, the term "segregated facilities" means any waiting rooms, work areas, restrooms, and washrooms, restaurants and other eating areas, timeclocks, locker rooms and other storage or dressing areas, parking lots, drinking fountains, recreation or entertainment areas, transportation, and housing facilities provided for employees which are segregated on the basis of race, color, religion, or national origin because of habit, local custom, or any other reason. The Bidder agrees that (except where it has obtained identical certifications from proposed subcontractors for specific time periods) it will obtain identical certifications from proposed subcontractors prior to the award of subcontracts exceeding $10,000 which are not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause and that it will retain such certifications in its files.

Article 9 – Miscellaneous

a. CONTRACTOR understands that it shall be solely responsible for the means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures of construction in connection with completion of the Work;

b. CONTRACTOR understands and agrees that it shall not accomplish any work or furnish any materials that are not covered or authorized by the Contract Documents unless authorized in writing by the OWNER or ENGINEER;

c. The rights of each party under this Agreement shall not be assigned or transferred to any other person, entity, firm or corporation without prior written consent of both parties;

d. OWNER and CONTRACTOR each bind itself, their partners, successors, assigns and legal representatives to the other party in respect to all covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents.

Article 10 – OWNER'S Representative

The OWNER'S Representative, herein referred to as ENGINEER, is defined as follows:

Woolpert, Inc.
720 South Colorado Boulevard, Suite 1200-S
Glendale, CO 80246

Said ENGINEER will act as the OWNER'S representative and shall assume all rights and authority assigned to the ENGINEER as stated within the Contract Documents in connection with the completion of the Project Work.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, OWNER and CONTRACTOR have executed five (5) copies of this Agreement on the day and year first noted herein.

OWNER	**CONTRACTOR**
Name: _____	Name: _____
Address: _____	Address: _____
_____	_____
_____	_____
By: _____	By: _____
Signature	*Signature*
_____	_____
Title of Representative	*Title of Representative*
ATTEST:	ATTEST:
By: _____	By: _____
Signature	*Signature*
_____	_____
Title	*Title*